

ms/

2.15

~~XIII a 1424 #55~~



R

ESTICA

B 948.



*Philip Krusius  
Ambassador.*



*Otton Brugman  
Ambassador.*

*The high and mighty  
Prince*

*the  
Compleat  
MUSCOVY  
PERSIA & the  
Translated*



*Frederick  
Duke of Holstein.*

*History of  
TARTARY  
East INDIES  
by J. D*

*Adam Olearius Secretary  
of the Embassy.*

*John Albert Mandelslo  
Gentleman of the Retinue.*



1470  
XI

THE  
Voyages and Travells  
OF THE  
AMBASSADORS

Sent by FREDERICK DUKE of HOLSTEIN,  
to the Great Duke of Muscovy, and the King of Persia.

Begun in the year M. D. C. XXXIII. and finish'd in M. D. C. XXXIX.

Containing a Compleat

H I S T O R Y  
OF  
Muscovy, Tartary, Persia.  
And other adjacent COUNTRIES.

With several Publick Transactions reaching near the Present Times;  
In VII. Books.

*whereto are added*

The TRAVELS of JOHN ALBERT de MANDELSLO,  
(a Gentleman belonging to the Embassy) from PERSIA, into the  
East-Indies.

CONTAINING

A particular Description of INDOSTHAN, the MOGUL'S Empire, the  
ORIENTAL ISLANDS, JAPAN, CHINA, &c. and the Revo-  
lutions which happened in those Countries, within these few years.

In III. Books.

*The whole Work illustrated with divers accurate Mapps, and Figures.*

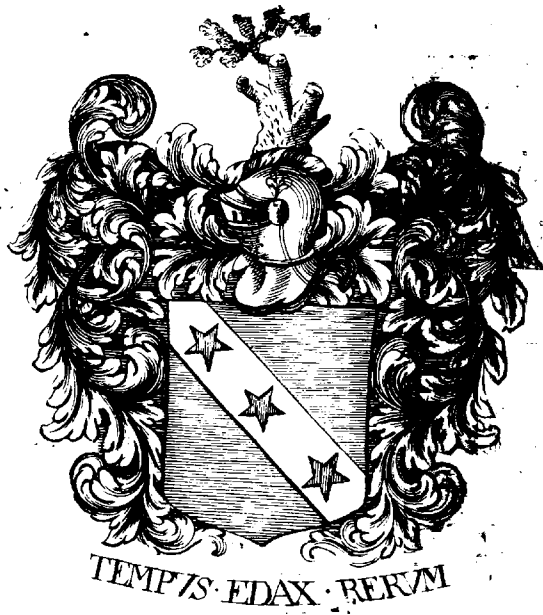
Written originally by ADAM OLEARIUS, Secretary to the Embassy.

*Faithfully rendred into English, by JOHN DAVIES, of Kidwelly.*

The Second Edition Corrected.

LONDON,

Printed for John Starkey, and Thomas Basset, at the Mitre near Temple-Barr, and at the George near  
St. Dunstons Church in Fleet-street. 1669.



Est B  
Universitas  
Aboensis  
1924: 458.  
1834

234640933





*To the Right Worshipful,*  
**The GOVERNOUR and FELLOWSHIP of ENGLISH  
MERCHANTS, for discovery of *New Trades*, in  
MUSCOVY, RUSSIA, &c.**

Right Worshipful,

**H** *Ad these been the Travels of some private Person,*  
*I should have contented my self with a personal*  
*Dedication thereof. But being the accompt of a*  
*Solemn Embassy, sent to two of the greatest Prin-*  
*ces of Europe and Asia, upon so Publick and Noble a Design*  
*as that of the Silk-Trade, carried on with vast charge and*  
*many difficulties, for several years, the address of my En-*  
*deavours herein is most properly due to that Body of Mer-*  
*chants, to whom the advancement of our Trade into those*  
*Parts is particularly recommended. It is not unknown to*  
*you, what opposition this Negotiation met withall from the*  
*several Parties therein concern'd; and consequently, you can*  
*best judge, what advantages may be made thereof, in order*  
*to the Interest of this Nation.*

*The Travels of particular Persons have their benefit and*  
*delight; but those of Ambassadors have this further recom-*  
*mendation, that they contain such Discoveries, as having*  
*been made to Them, out of a deference to their Publick and*  
*Sacred Character, were not to be expected by any others, Tra-*  
*velling only upon a Private Accompt. They were first pub-*

---

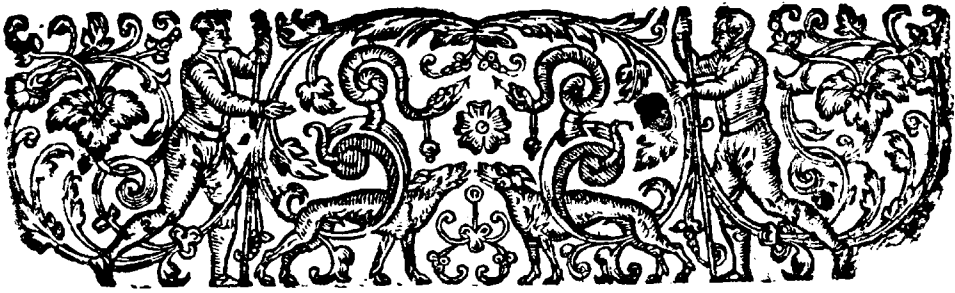
lished by Adam Olearius, a Person, by his near Relation to the Embassy, (whereof he was Secretary) his Knowledge of the Mathematicks, but particularly his Acquaintance with the Languages of the Countries, through which they Travell'd, perfectly accomplish'd for a Work of this Nature.

What he writ of these Travels in his own Language, the German, was so kindly receiv'd, that it soon after Travell'd into several others, which gave some encouragement to the sending of them into English; the more seasonably at this time, in as much as this Kingdom, especially this City, begins to disperse its Industrious Inhabitants, and spreads the Wings of its Trade into the most remote Cantons of the World. Which that it may do, till its Wealth at home, and Honour abroad, be so highly improv'd, as that this Corner of the Universe may give Laws to the Noblest parts thereof, shall be the constant and earnest wish of,

Right Worshipful,

Your most humbly devoted Servant,

JOHN DAVIES.



T O T H E  
R E A D E R :



HISTORY hath this advantage of *Philosophy*, that it instructs more efficaciously; this, of *Romance*, that it is more divertive; inasmuch as *Examples* make a deeper impression than *Precepts*, and *Truth* Instils into rational minds a satisfaction, which they find not in *Fables*. But *Travels* have this over and above, that they do both incomparably better than *History*. For as, on one side, a man, reflecting on the *Policy* and *Morality* of divers Nations, deduces thence useful *Lessons* of *Prudence*, and delightfully surveys the strange *Circulations* of humane Nature; so, on the other, he finds the greater divertisement in the *Relations*, out of this regard, that he participates of the *Pleasure*, which charms the Travellers, but not of the *hardships*, *hazards*, and *inconveniencies* wherewith they are attended.

The *Travels* into *Muscovy* and *Persia*, publish'd by *Adam Olearius*, have been so well receiv'd by such as were able to judge of the worth of that Piece, that I dare presume, others will take it kindly, to find, in this Edition, what he had promis'd the World in his first. The aboad he had made at *Moscou* and *Ispahan*, and the knowledge he had acquir'd of the Language of the Country, had, as he affirmed then, brought him acquainted with the mysteries of their Religion; but printing his Book in some hast, he omitted many things, which he should otherwise have insertèd. He hath since done it at leisure, so fully, that it seems to be quite another Relation, in as much as, considering this Revision, what is now publish'd is both a more curious, and more compleat Piece. They will find that

## The Preface.

he hath added thereto the Maps of *LIVONIA*, *MUSCOVY*, the *CASPIAN-SEA*, *PERSIA*, and the *INDIES*, and, what may be justly accounted the greatest curiosity, the *Course of the Great River WOLGA*, whereof there had been little seen in these parts before, and without which, it were impossible to track the Travellers through all those remote Countries. Besides which, there is, in this Edition of ours, a Map of *CHINA*, and several other pieces of Sculpture, for the further satisfaction and entertainment of the Reader.

There is no necessity of repeating here what the Preface of the first Edition entertain'd the Reader withall, concerning the occasion of the Embassy, sent by the Duke of *Holstein* into *Muscovy* and *Persia*; the endowments and worth of that great Prince; the noble design he had fram'd to himself, for carrying on the *Silk-Trade* by Land; the difficulties, or rather impossibilities, which happened in the prosecution thereof; the insolent, rash, and extravagant carriage of the Ambassador *Brugman*, his treacherous designs, and unfortunate end: But I cannot forbear giving some account of the Illustrious *John Albert de Mandelslo*, the *Heroe*, of the Travels into the *East-Indies*, which title I give him, in regard there are in his Travels some miraculous adventures.

*MANDELSLO*, a Gentleman well born, had his Education at the Duke of *Holstein's* Court, to whom he had been a Page. Hearing of an Embassy intended for *Muscovy* and *Persia*, he would needs be one in it; and as if he were that *Vertuous Man*, who looks upon the whole World as his Country, he would not depart, ere he had obtain'd his Prince's leave, to see the other parts of *Asia*. During his aboad at *Isfahan*, he got acquainted with some *English* Merchants, who, speaking to him of the *Indies*, rais'd in him a desire to go thither. The King of *Persia*, to engage his stay at his Court, proffers him a Pension of ten thousand Crowns; he flights the favour of so great a Prince, gets on horse-back, with no great Sums about him, and sets forward on his Journey, with a retinue of three *German* Servants, and one *Persian*, who was to be his Guide and Interpreter, but forsook him, when he stood in most need of his service and assistance. It was also a very strange Adventure, which made him find civil entertainment and hospitality at *Surat*; made him subsist at the charge of others; conducted him by Land to the Great *Mogul's* Court; brought him safely back again to *Surat*; preserv'd the ship he was in after so many tempests near the Cape of *Good-Hope*; and miraculously deliver'd him at his first arrival into *England*, when he was given over for irrecoverably lost in the very haven, as may be seen near the end of his Travels.

To these *Mandelslo* had a particular inclination, and knew so well  
how



---

*The Preface.*

---

how to make his advantages thereof, that *Olearius* himself makes no difficulty to confess, that he met with, in his Notes, many things, which might have been added to his Relation, and have found a kind reception even among the more Curious, had he been as forward to have his Travels publish'd, as he had been to prosecute them. But *Mandelslo*, instead of giving the world that satisfaction, and continuing with his Friend, who might have further'd him in his design, left the Court of *Holstein*, where he found not employment proportionable to his merit, and betaking himself to another Profession, he got into a Regiment of Horse, commanded by a *German*, who, purely by his Military accomplishments, had rais'd himself to one of the greatest dignities of *France*. He had therein the Command of a Troop, and, being a person of much courage, and endu'd with all the qualities requisite to the making up of a great man, was likely to have rais'd himself to a more than ordinary fortune, when coming to *Paris* to pass away the Winter, he there died, of the small Pox.

Being at *Surat*, in *December* 1638. he made a kind of *Will*, concerning his Papers, which he put before the beginning of his Relation, wherein he desir'd his Friend *Olearius*, not to suffer it to be publish'd, in regard he had not had the leisure to digest it into order, or if he did, that he would rather regard therein his reputation after his death, than the friendship they had mutually promis'd one another, and faithfully improv'd, during the four years of their joynt-Travels.

*Mandelslo* was no great Scholar, but could make a shift to understand a Latin Author, which helpt him much in the attaining of the *Turkish* Language, wherein he came to a considerable perfection. His Friend taught him also the use of the *Astrolabe*, so that he was able to take the Longitudes and Latitudes that are in several places of his Book, and without which it had been impossible for him, to be much skill'd in Geography, which makes the most considerable part of this kind of Relations.

*Olearius* hath indeed been very much his Friend, not only in reforming and refining his Style, which could not be very elegant in a person of his Profession, but also in making several observations and additions thereto, printing it in *Folio*, in a very fair character, and adorning it with several pieces of Sculpture.

*Olearius*'s kindness to his Friend, in enriching his Relation, with many excellent remarks, taken out of *Emanuel Osorio*, *Maffæus*, and the chief Voyages of the *Dutch*, gave the *French* Translator thereof, *A de VVicquefort*, occasion to augment the said Book with whatever he found excellent in all those, who have given the best account of the *East-Indies*. So that it is to him we are oblig'd for the exact description of the Province of *Guzuratta*, the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, and

---

*The Preface.*

---

*Siam, &c.* the state of the affairs of *Zeilon, Sumatra, Java*, the *Molucca's*, and *Japan*, as also for the Religions of these people. So that there is, in this Edition of ours, especially as to the Travels of *Mandelslo*, a third part more than there is in the largest of the *German* Editions.

The Reader will find therein many things, which will haply seem incredible to him, as, among others, he may haply be astonish'd at the wealth of a Governour of *Amadabah*, and at that of a King of *Indosthan*, as also at the vast revenues of the Provinces and Lords of *China* and *Japan*; but, besides that there is nothing of Romance in all this, and that there is no comparison to be made between the wealth of *Europe* and that of *Asia*, there are many persons, in *France* and *England*, that will justify our Relation, though it said much more than it does.

I might here trouble the Reader with what I find in the Learned *Isaac Vossius's* Observations upon *Pomponius Mela* (Lib.3. c.5. v.16. concerning the length and breadth of the *Caspian* Sea, wherein he differs from our Author, and prefers the measure of it by our Countryman *Jenkinson*, before that of *Olearius*. But I choole rather to refer the more critical to the place it self, and leave them to satisfy their own curiosity, by conferring what is there said by *Vossius*, with the account given by *Olearius*, of the said Sea, pag. 190, 191, 192. of this *Englisb* Edition of the Travels.

I have only this to add, that the *French* Translator, *de Wicquefort*, promises the world (if it be not abroad already) a Piece of his own; which coming out under the authentick name of *History*, will contain some thing beyond what may be expected from a Relation.



A  
JOURNAL  
OF THE

TRAVELS of the Ambassadors from the Duke of *Holstein* into  
MUSCOVY, TARTARY, and PERSIA;

*Which may serve for a Table to this Relation.*

THE FIRST VOYAGE.

INTO

MUSCOVY.

M. DC. XXXIII.

OCTOBER.



The 22. the Ambassadors from the Duke of *Holstein* leave *Gottorp*; the occasion of the Embassy; the names and qualities of the Ambassadors; their retinue. Pag: 1.

NOVEMBER.

The 6. they leave *Hamborough*; where they took order for their Voyage; come the next day to *Lubeck*, the 8. to *Travemunde*, where they embark'd the 9. *ibid*

The 10. they pass away near the Island of *Bornholm*, and anchor the 12. at *Cap de Dominnes*, in *Courland*, the 18. come to *Dunemunde*. p. 2.

The same day, come to *Riga*; the Magistrate Present; *Riga* described, its foundation; is made an Archbishopsrick; subject to *Poland*; taken by the *Swedes*; its Fortifications, and Commerce. p. 3

*The Ambassadors continue there near a month.*

DECEMBER.

The 14. they leave *Riga*, and come the 18. to *Wolmar*, 3. daies 18. 1. the 20. to the Castle of *Ermes*; the 21. to that of *Halmet*; the 22. to that of *Ringen*, and the 23. to the City *Torpat*, or *Derpt*. p. 3

*A description of Torpat, where they pass over the Christmasholy-daies.* *ibid.*

M. DC. XXXIV.

JANUARY.

The 3. (having left *Torpat*, the 29. of *December*), the Ambassadors came to *Narva*. *ibid.*  
*There they continue 5. months, JANUARY, FEBRUARY, MARCH, APRIL, and MAY, during which, they send part of their Train, to Novogorod, and go themselves to Reuel, where the Swedish Ambassadors met them, in order to their going together into Muscovy.* p. 4

MAY.

The 15. leave *Reuel* and return to *Narva* the 18. *ibid.*

The 28. they leave *Narva*; come to *Gamfort*, *Kapurga*; the civilities of the *Muscovian Ladies*; come to *Iohannestal*, or *St. John's Valley*. p. 5

JUNE.

The 1. they come to the *Neuschans*; to the *Lake Ladoga*; to *Noteborough*. *ibid.*

*Spiring*, a *Swedish* Ambassador; the *Swedish* Ambassadors depart; a *Swedish* resolution; the *Muscovites* sleep after dinner; the reception of the *Swedish* Ambassadors. p. 6

A *Muscovian* Collation; the situation of *Notebourg*, its description. *ibid.*

*Here they continue six weeks.*

JULY.

The Ambassadors come to *Laba*; their reception. *ibid.*

Another *Muscovian* Collation.

The

# THE TABLE.

The Ambassadors are defrayd all the time of their abroad in *Muscovy*, according to the custom, and they take their allowance in money

p. 7

The Musick and dancing of *Muscovy*. *ib.*

They embark upon the *Wolgda* (a distinct River from the *Wolga*.) The devotion of the *Muscovites*. *ibid.*

*Wolgda* described; a dangerous fall of water; troublesome flies and other insects; the Presents of a *Muscovian* Monk; the *Muscovites* do not condemn those of a contrary belief.

p. 7. 8

The come to *Corodiza*; to *Soliza*; to *Grunza*; to *Wisoke*; to *Krifzeniza*: to *Novogorod*: to *Brunitz*.

p. 8

## AUGUST.

The 1. a *Muscovian* Procession. *ibid*  
They come that day, to *Crasnistsansky*; the 2 to *Gam-Chresta*; to *Fazelbitza*; to *Sinnagora*; to *Wolfolk*; to *Columna*; and the 7. to *Badena*.

p. 9

The 8. come to *Torsock*, travelling in those eight dayes, 71. leagues. *ibid.*

The 9. come to *Tuere*, (upon a River of the same name, which falls into the *Wolga*). The 13. to *Nicholas-Nachinski*; the 14. to **MOSCOU**.

*ibid.*

There they stay above four months.

Their reception, and entrance into *Moscou*.

p. 10

The 19. they have their first Audience; Their Cavalcade. *ibid.*

p. 11

The Presents made to the Great Duke. *ib.*

The Ceremonies of the Audience. 13.

The Great Duke treats the Ambassadors. *ibid.*

They are permitted to go abroad, contrary to the ordinary custom of the *Muscovites*. p. 14

## SEPTEMBER.

The 1. was celebrated the *Muscovian* New-years-day. *ibid.*

Their Epoche is the Creation of the World. *ibid*

The Ambassadors of *Holstein* negotiate jointly with those of *Sweden*, about the *Silk-trade* in *Persia*. *ibid.*

The entrance of the *Tartarian* Embassy. 15

The entrance of a *Turkish* Ambassador. 16

The *Turkish* Ambassador's Presents. *ibid.*

Those of certain *Greek* Ecclesiasticks. 17

## OCTOBER.

A *Muscovian* Festival, celebrated Oct. *ibid*  
The Cavalcade of the Great Duke and Dutcheffs. *ibid.*

## NOVEMBER.

The 19. the Ambassadors have their last private Audience; the Great Duke grants them passage through the Country; Another *Muscovian* Procession. 18

A Cavalcade of *Crim-Tartars*, 72. in number, all Ambassadors; Our last publick Audience. *ibid.*

The Great Duke's Present to the Ambassadors. 19

## THEIR RETURN

towards

## HOLSTEIN.

The Ambassadors leave *Moscou*. *ibid.*  
Come December the 26. to *Twere*, the 20 to *Tarsock*, and the 31. to *Novogorod* 120. leagues, in seven daies. 20

M. DC. XXXV.

## JANUARY.

1. Leave *Novogorod*, come the next day to *Mokrizza*; the 2. to *Tuerin*, the 3. to *Orlin*, the 4. to *Zariza*, and the 5. to *Narva*, 38. leag. and a half in 9. daies. *ibid.*

7. Leave *Narva*, and come to *Reuel* the 10. *ib.*  
Here they staid near 3. weeks.

## FEBRUARY.

Leave *Reuel*, Jan. 30. and come Feb. 2. to *Parnau*, taking their way by land, along the *Baltick-Sea*, and so through *Livonia*, *Curland*, *Prussia*, *Pomerania*, and *Meklenbourg*.

The City of *Parnau* described. *ibid.*

The Ambassadors come to *Riga*, Febr. 6. and leave it the 13. and come to *Mitau* the 14. 21

Description of the *Dutchy* of *Courland* and the *Prince* now reigning there. *ibid.*

The Ambassadors come to *Bador* in *Poland*, 22 leagues in three daies. *ibid.*

Come the 19. to *Memel*, in the *Dutchy* of *Prussia*, 16. l. in 3. daies. *Memel* described. *ib.*

Leave *Memel*, Febr. 20. and come the 21. to *Koningsberg*, the *Metropolis* of *Prussia*, 16. l. 2. daies. 22

*Koningsberg* described, where they see, among other things, the *Electors* of *Branderburg's* Library. *ibid.*

Leave *Koningsberg*, the 24. and exchange the *Sledges* for *Waggons*, come to *Elbing*, and thence to *Dantzick*, 20. leag. 3. daies. *ibid.*

There they continue 17. daies.

*Dantzick* described, its situation, *Magistrate*, *Privileges*, *Commerce*, &c. *ibid*

## MARCH.

The 16. they leave *Dantzick*, and come the 25. to *Stetin*, which described. 23

Come the 29. to *Rostock*, in the *Dutchy* of *Mecklenbourg*. *ibid.*

A description of the City of *Rostock* and its University. *ibid.*

Leave *Rostock*, the 30. and come the same day,

# THE TABLE.

day, to *Wisnar*, which described.  
*Mar.* the last, come to the Castle of *Schonberg*.

*ibid*  
*ibid*

## A P R I L.

The 1. Leave *Schonberg*, and come to *Lubeck*, which described.  
 Leave *Lubeck* the 3. come the next day to *Arnsbock*, the 5. to *Pretz*, the 6. to *Kiel*, and the same day to *Gottorp*.

*Lu-ibid*  
 24

## THE SECOND VOYAGE

into  
*Muscovy and Persia.*

M. DC. XXXV.

## O C T O B E R.

The Ambassadors having made their report, and augmented their Train, leave *Hamborough*, *Oct.* 22. and come the 24. to *Lubeck*, 10. leagues.

Embark at *Travemunde*, the 27. come the 29. near the Castle of *Bornholm*, touch against a Rock the night following, land in the Iland of *Oeland*, come to *Caliner*.

A description of the Iland of *Gotland*.  
 A description of the Iland of *Hogland*, against the Rocks whereof the Ship is split, but the men, goods and horses are saved, the provisions are spoil'd and lost, and the Embassy reduc'd to great extremities in a desert Iland.

10.  
 25  
 26  
 27  
 28

## N O V E M B E R.

The 17. the Amb. leave *Hogland*, in two Fisher-boats, with much danger, and land in *Livonia*, the 18.

29

## D E C E M B E R.

The 2. they come to *Ruel*, the Metropolis of *Esthonia*, where they continue three months.

*ibid*

A description of *Livonia*, its Frontiers, Lords, Fertility, Inhabitants, Order of Knights, the manner of life of the *Livonians*, the Ceremonies of their marriages, the Religion, Barbarism, and Superstition of the Peasantry of those parts, their Nobility, the Government of *Livonia*.

p. 30. &c.

M. DC. XXXVI.

## M A R C H.

The 2. the Ambassadors leave *Renel*, and come the fifth to *Narva*, 17. l. 4. daies.  
 A description of *Narva*, its Commerce, Po-

34

litical Government, the Castle of *Juanogorod*, A remarkable story of a mad Wolf and a Bear.

35

The 7. they leave *Narva*, come the same day to *Lilienbagen*, the 8. to *Sarits*, the 9. *Orlin*, and, the same day, thence to *Tzuerin*, 3. daies 24. leagues, thence to *Dofan*, thence to *Mokriza*, 8. l.

*ibid.*

A *Pristaf* meets them at *Orlin*, and receives them in the Great Duke's name.

36

The 11. they came to *Novogorod*, where they stay five daies.

*ibid.*

A description of the said City, its situation on the River *Wolgda*, its bigness, the cruelties exercis'd there by the Great Dukes of *Muscovy*, the fabulous voyage of *St. Anthony*.

37

The 16. they leave *Novogorod*; pass through *Brunits*, *Miedna*, *Kressa*, *Faselbitza*, *Simnagora*, *Columna*, *Wisnawolkoka*, and *Windrapusk*, and came the 21. to *Torsock*, 59. leagues 6. dayes.

38

The 22. they leave *Torsock*, pass through *Troitzka* *Miedna*, and came the next day to *Twere*, 12. l. two daies, There they embark upon the *Wolgda* the 23. but the next day prosecute their journey by land, pass through *Garodna*, *Sawidowa*, *Saukyspas*, *Klin*, *Beschick*, and *Zerkizowo*, and come the 28. to *Nichola Darebna*, 29. l. 6. daies.

*ibid.*

The 29. they leave *Nichola Darebna*, and the same day make their entrance into *Moscou*, where they stay three months

*ibid*

## A P R I L.

Their Cavalcade and reception; their lodgings in the City of *Moscou*.

39

Their allowance of provisions; their first publick Audience; the Great Duke's treatment of them; their first private Audience.

*ibid*

Their second private Audience; the *Muscovian Palm-sunday Procession*; the *Muscovian celebration of Easter*; *Easter-eggs*, and other Ceremonies.

40

The Amb. *Brugman's* private Audience. *ibid*

## M A Y.

Several Audiences and Conferences of the Ambassadors.

*ibid.*

## J U N E.

The 1. was celebrated the birth day of the Prince of *Moscovy*; the Great Dutchess's Cavalcade.

41

The Ambassadors last Audience; the Audience of the Secretary of the Embassy.

*ib.*

They augment their Train; the entrance of Ambassadors from *Poland*; the fierceness of a Polish Ambassador; the Great Duke's pass.

*ibid*

The Amb. leave *Moscou*; its description; situation; buildings; quarters; the Great Duke's Palace, its markets, Monasteries; the great

Bell;

# THE TABLE.

<p>Bell; its Churches and Chapels. p. 42</p> <p>Muscovy described; the Provinces of Wolo- dimer, and Smolensko. 45</p> <p>Rhesan, Permie, Jugarie, Wiathka, Bielsk, Rschowie, Tuere, Plefcou, Siberie, Jaroslaw, Rosthou, Sufdal, Dwina. 46</p> <p>Archangel, Uftingha, Vologda, Bielejezo- ro, Petzora, Obdory; the source of the Wol- ga. 47</p> <p>The River Boristhenes; that of Dwina; the air of Muscovy extremely cold in Winter and hot in Summer. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Its fertility, fruits, especially Melons; more fertile than Livonia; the seed-time and harvest. 48</p> <p>Boranez, what; flowers, asparagus, veni- son and fowl; no Deer; furs. 49</p> <p>No Carps in Muscovy; mines, and iron forges. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The Samojedes, a different people from the Samogithes; their habitations, manner of life, stature, cloathing. 50</p> <p>The error of certain Geographers. 51</p> <p>A description of Groenland. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The stature of the Groenlanders. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their language, 53</p> <p>Their cloathing, and ordinary exercises. 54</p> <p>They are Salvages; have no gold or silver; are Pagans. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Whence it comes that the Inhabitants of Sep- tentrional-Countries are swarthy. 55</p> <p>The stature of the Muscovites. 56</p> <p>They are great admirers of long beards, and great bellies. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The women paint; their dress. 56</p> <p>The Muscovites constant to their own fashion. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their manner of life; they have an aversion for the Sciences, whereof they know nothing, es- pecially the Mathematicks and Anatomy. 57</p> <p>They are naturally ingenious; liars, distrust- ful, and calumniators. 58</p> <p>A pleasant story of a woman who fastly accus'd her husband. 59</p> <p>They are indiscreet, uncivil, quarelsom, and insolent in their expressions. 60</p> <p>Not addicted to any study; shameless. 61</p> <p>Drunkards. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The women much given to drink. 62</p> <p>Tobacco forbidden among them: they are all Slaves to the Great Duke, as well strangers, as such as live in Muscovy. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The Knez and Bojares keep many slaves, who commit great disorders, both in City and Coun- try. 63</p> <p>They are good Soldiers. 64</p> <p>The siege of Smolensko, in the year 1635. <i>ib.</i></p> <p>Their haus-keeping; ordinary food; Cavayer. 65</p> <p>Hydromel, a kind of mead; how made. 66</p> <p>The expences of persons of quality; the high- est act of Muscovian civility. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The Muscovites sleep after dinner; their stoves and barbing-places. 67</p>	<p>Are long-liv'd; subject to fornication, and brutality. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The ceremonics of their Marriages. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The nuptial bed; the ceremonies in the Church. 68</p> <p>How the women live; their divertisement; why the Muscovites bang their wives. 69</p> <p>Divorce. 70</p> <p>The Government of Muscovy; the true signi- fication of the word Czaar, or Zaar; his Arms; the veneration the Muscovites have for their Prince; know not what liberty is. 71</p> <p>The Great Duke's absolute power; changes the Governours of Provinces every three years. 72</p> <p>The money of Muscovy; Muscovian Am- bassadors; a remarkable Present. 73</p> <p>An abridgement of the History of Muscovy, from the beginning of the last Century. 74</p> <p>The tyranny of Juan Basilouits, commonly called Iohannes Basilus. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>The usurpation of Boris Gudenou. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Foedor Borissouits, his son, ejected. 75</p> <p>A counterfeit Demetrius; the history of him, and his end. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>John Basilouits Zuski, made Great Duke; a second counterfeit Demetrius; a third Impos- stor. 76</p> <p>The Muscovites choose Uladislaus, Prince of Poland, Great Duke of Muscovy; are disconten- ted with the Polanders; an insurrection at Moscou. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Michael Federouits chosen Great Duke; the story of a counterfeit Zuski, his impostures, and death. 77</p> <p>The ceremonies of the Czaar's Coronation. 81</p> <p>The story of the Great Duke's Favorits. 82</p> <p>An insurrection at Moscou; which costs the lives of some of the Favorits creatures. 84</p> <p>The Officers and Ministers of State of Mos- covy. 87</p> <p>Their expence; they esteem Nobility. 88</p> <p>The Great Duke's revenue; expence. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>His Table, Physicians, Interpreters, Privy Council. 90</p> <p>Their administration of Justice. 91</p> <p>Their ordinary punishments. 92</p> <p>The Religion of the Muscovites. 93</p> <p>The Characters of the Muscovian language. 95</p> <p>Their Baptisin. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their Chaldeens. 96</p> <p>Their Profelites. 97</p> <p>The admirable constancy of an English Gentle- woman. 98</p> <p>Their Festivals. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their Divine service. 99</p> <p>Their corruptions of the stories of the Bible, particularly that of Mary Magdalen. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their Images. 100</p> <p>Their Churches, bells. 102</p> <p>Their Hierarchy. 103</p> <p>Their Patriarch, and Archbishops. <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>Their Prelats marry not; their Monks; the habits of Ecclesiasticks. 104</p> <p>Their Priests are oblig'd to marry; their Mo- nasteries. <i>ibid.</i></p>
--	---

# THE TABLE.

*Wasteries.*  
*Their Fasts, Confession, and Communion.* 105  
*Their Interrments.* 106  
*They tolerate all Religions, but Roman Catho-*  
*licks.* 107

*ibid.* the *Cosaques.* *ibid.*  
 The 5. they come before the City of *Basiligorod*, which described. 113  
 The *Tartars* called the *Ceremisses*; their habitations, their Religion; their belief concerning the immortality of the Soul; their superstitions, sacrifices; Polygamy lawful among them; the cloathing of the men and Women. *ibid.*

## THE TRAVELS of the AMBASSADORS from MUSCOVY into Tartary and Persia.

M. DC. XXXVI.

JUNE.

The 30. the Ambassadors leave *Moscou*, in order to their departure for *Persia*; embark upon the River *Mosca*, so to go by that of the *Wolga*, to *Astrachan*. 109

JULY.

The 2. they come to *Columnna*, 24. l. *ibid.*  
 Within three quarters of a league of *Columnna*, the *Mosca* falls into the *Occa*, *ibid.*

The 4. they come to the City of *Perestas*, 22. l. 110  
 Leave *Perestas* the 4. and pass in sight of *Rhesan*. *ibid.*

The 7. they come to the little City of *Cassinogorod*, in *Tartary*, where they sent to complement a *Tartar-Prince*, subject to the Duke of *Muscovy*, 25. l. 3. daies. *ibid.*

The 8. they come to *Moruma*, the greatest City of the *Tartars* of *Mordwa*, 22. leagues; 2. daies. 111

The 10. they leave *Moruma*, and come the next day to the great City of *Nise* or *Nisenovogorod*, at the meeting of the *Occa*, and the *Wolga*. *ibid.*

They continue 3. weeks before the City, till the ship was finish'd, for their sailing along the *Wolga*, and the *Caspian Sea*. *ibid.*

A description of the City of *Nise*; the *Weywode's* magnificence. *ibid.*

From *Moscou* to *Nise*, there are 100. leagues by land, and 150. by water. *ibid.*

The River **WOLGA**; its breadth; is one of the greatest Rivers in the World, there being from its source to its mouth, above fifteen hundred *French* leagues; it is very full of Sandbanks. 112

AUGUST.

The 4. the Ambassadors settle their Guard, to prevent what danger they might fear from

The 6. they come to *Kusmademianski*, 8. l. 2. daies. 114  
 The 8. to *Sabackzar*, 8. l. 1. day. 115  
 The 9. to *Kocks-chaga*, 5. leagues 1. day. *ibid.*

The 13. to *Suiatzki*; and the same day opposite to *Casan*, where they find a Caravan; conducting a *Tartar-Prince*, and a Factor of the King of *Persia's*. *ibid.*

The description of *Casan*, its situation, buildings, Castle; how the Province (of the same name) conquer'd by the *Muscovites*, which occasions a pleasant diversion; the exemplary fidelity of a *Weywode*; the Great Duke forc'd out of *Muscovy*; takes the City of *Casan* by storm. *ibid.*

Melons of extraordinary bigness. 116

The 15. they leave *Casan*, come the 17. to the mouth of the River *Kama*, which falls into the *Wolga* on the left hand, 12. leagues from *Casan*. 117

The Iland of *Sokol*. *ibid.*

The 18. they come to the River *Serdick*, and afterwards to that of *Utka*, and see as they pass by the City of *Tetus* 25. leag. from *Casan*. 118

The 19. they pass before the Iland *Staritzo*, which is three leagues in length. *ibid.*

The fishing of the *Muscovites* and *Tartars*. *ibid.*

*Botenska* Iland; the Cape of *Polibno*; the River *Beitma*; and several Cities ruin'd by *Tamerlane*. *ibid.*

The mountain *Arbeuchim*. *ibid.*

The River *Adrobe*; the Salt-mountain; the River *Ussa*; the mountain *Divisagora*. *ibid.*

*Jubla-nen-quas*, or the *Cider-valley*. *ibid.*

The mountain *Sariol-Kurgan*, and that of *Savobie*. 119

*S. Nicholas's* red Snakes. *ibid.*

The 28. betimes in the morning, they come to the City of *Samara*, 60. l. from *Casan*, upon the River of the same name, within two werstes of the *Wolga*. *ibid.*

The same day, they come to the mountain of the *Cosaques*, and opposite to the fall of the River *Ascola*. 120

The River *Pantzina*; the Iland of *Zagerinsko*. *ibid.*

The 30. to the River *Zagra*; the Iland of *Sofnon*, and the mountain *Tichi*. *ibid.*

The 31. to the Iland *Osino*, and that of *Schifmamago*, to that of *Koltrof*; the mountain of *Smiowa*, and the 40. Ilands. *ibid.*

The fabulous metamorphosis of a Dragon

\* \*

kill'd

# THE TABLE.

kill'd by a Heroe.

*ibid.*

## SEPTEMBER.

The 1. they come to the City of *Soratof*, which lies upon a branch of the *Wolga*, 70. leagues from *Samara*. 121

The 2. pass by the Ilands *Kriusna*, and *Sapunofka*, and come to the mountain *Achmats-Kigori*, 10. l. from *Soratof*. *ibid*

4. leagues lower, to the Iland *Solotoi*, and the mountain *Solottogori*, or the *Golden mountain*; that of *Craye*; the mountain of *Pillars*; the River *Ruslana*; the mountain *Urakofskerul*, 30. l. from *Soratof*; the mountain *Kamuschinka*, and River of the same name. *ibid.*

At this place, the *Don* or *Tanais*, is within 7. leag. of the *Wolga*.

Visits from the chief Persons of the *Caravan*. 122

The River *Bolloclea*, 18. l. from *Kamuschinka*: The first branch of the *Wolga*. 123

The 6. they come to *Zariza*, 70. l. from *Soratof*, on the right side of the River. *ibid*

Thence to *Astrachan* there are only barren lands and heaths.

The Iland *Zerpinske*, behind which there falls a River into the *Wolga*, whereby there might be a communication with the *Don*. *ibid*

The 7. they come to the Iland and mountain *Nassonofsko*. 124

*Tziberika*, a Fish of a rare figure. *ibid*

The 8. to the Cape *Popowitzka jurka*, 14. l. from *Zariza*, and the mountain *Kamnagar*, 8 l. lower; the Iland and River *Wesowoi*, and that of *Wolodinarski-Utsga*, *Achtobenisna-Utsga*, a second branch of the *Wolga*; the Iland *Offino*; an extraordinary kind of *Liquorice*. *ibid.*

The 9. to the little City *Tzornogar*, 40. l. from *Zariza*; its original, *ibid*

Carps weighing 30. pound, *Sandates*, &c. 168

The 10. leave *Tzornogar*, come to the mountain *Polowon*, and the Iland *Kissar*. 125

The 3. and 4. branches of the *Wolga*; the Ilands of *Coppono* and *Katarniski*. *ibid*

The Iland *Peruski*; the 5. branch of the *Wolga*; the excellent fruits of *Nagaia*; *Cormorants*; the 6. and 7. branches of the *Wolga*. *ibid*

The 15. the Ambassadors (having pass'd by the Ilands, *Itziburki*, and *Basan*, and the River *Biltzick*,) come to *Astrachan*. *ibid*

The 7. branch of the *Wolga* maketh the Iland *Dolgoi*, in which *Astrachan* lies.

From *Moscou* to *Astrachan* there are above six hundred German leagues.

A description of *Astrachan* where they stay near a month. 126

A description of *Nagaia*; the Iland of *Dolgoi*; the Salt-pits. 127

*Astrachan*, 12. l. from the *Caspian Sea*; the fruits of *Nagaia*. *ibid*

Its Inhabitants; *Nagaia*, when conquer'd

by the *Muscovites*; the greatness of the City; its Structures, Ammunition, Garrisons, Governours; the *Tartars* not permitted to come into it; their manner of life, and cloathing, wars with the *Kalmukes*, and *Tartars* of *Buchar*. 128

Their Princes, Religion, food. 129

The Ambassadors visited by the *Persians* who came along with the *Caravan*. *ibid*

The *Cuptzi's* Present; a visit of the *Tartar-Prince*, and his reception. *ibid*

The *Cuptzi's* visit; the *Weywode's* Present to the Ambassadors; the Ambass. visit to the *Tartar-Prince*. 130

The *Cuptzi's* Feast. 131

The *Tartars* much addicted to *Hawking*; the treatment of another *Persian Merchant*; *Brugman's* imprudence; the visit of another *Tartar-Prince*. 132

The *Weywode's* Present. *ibid*

## OCTOBER.

The 1. the Secretary sent to the *Weywode*; Provision made for the continuation of the Voyage. *ibid*

The 10. the Amb. leave *Astrachan*, and embark upon the *Wolga*; Simples of extraordinary bigness near *Astrachan*. 133

The 12. come to *Tomanoigor*, or the *Snaky mountain*. *ibid*

Many Ilands at the mouth of the River; the Sepulchre of a *Tartar-Saint*; the Sacrifices of the *Tartars*; dog-fishes; several sorts of Birds. *ibid*

The 15. come to the mouth of the *Wolga*, and to the entrance of the *Caspian Sea*, where it is very troublesom sailing. 134

A *Muscovian Slurre*; the civility of a *Persian Pilot*; an ominous day. 135

## NOVEMBER.

The 1. they come before the City of *Terki* in *Circassia*, having sailed but 60. l. in 16. daies; the situation of *Terki*, upon the River *Timenski*; its fortifications, Garrison. *ibid*

The *Cuptzi's* Present to the Ambassadors; a mutiny in the ship; an Eunuch, belonging to the King of *Persia*, visits the Ambassadors; their Present to the *Weywode*. 136

Their message to the *Tartar-Prince*, his house; his reception of those sent to him; a collation; the curiosity of the *Tartar-Ladies*. 137

The Princess's Present to the Ambass. The *Tartars* inclin'd to theft. *ibid*

The *Weywode's* Present. *ibid*

Nov. 10. the Ambassadors leave *Terki*; An Iland in the *Caspian Sea*. 138

A description of the Iland *Tzetlan*, by the *Persians* called *Tzenzeni*. *ibid*

Come in the sight of the mountain *Salatto*, which is the *Caucasus* of the *Antients*, in *Mengrelia*, or *Colchis*; mount *Ararat*. 139

Are



# THE TABLE.

Are forc'd by a tempest upon the Coasts of *Persia*. *ibid*

The Ambass. dis-embark, with part of their retinue. 140

The Ship run a ground. 141

A description of the *Caspian* Sea; its names; It is a particular Sea, having no communication with any other. 142

Above a hundred Rivers fall into it, yet is it not known what becomes of them. *ibid*

The length and breadth of it, contrary to the common opinion of Geographers; its water is salt; *Q. Curtius's* error; the *Caspian* Sea not known to the Antients. 143

It neither ebbs nor flows; hath few Havens; its fish and fishing. *ibid*

A description of the Province of *Shirwan*, which is the antient *Media*. 145

A description of *Persia*; its etymology, greatness, frontiers, Provinces; the Province of *Erak*. *ibid*

*Fars*, *Schirwan*, *Iran*, *Aderbeitzan*. 146

*Kilan*, *Mesanderan*, *Labetzan*, *Rescht*, *Kesker*, 147

*Chorasán*, *Sablustan*, *Sitzistan*, *Kirman*, 148

*Chassán*, *Tzifire*, or *Diarbeck*. 149

A particular description of the Province of *Shirwan*. *ibid*

The houses of *Persia*; the Governour of *Derbent's* Present to the Ambassadors; which is refus'd through *Brugman's* uncivility. 150

A *Mehemandar*, sent to the Ambassadors, to conduct them through the Country. *ibid*

The *Cuptzi* comes to *Niasabath*. *ibid*

The *Tartar-Prince* of *Dagestan* visits the Ambassadors; *Brugman's* indiscretion. 151

## DECEMBER.

The 22. the Ambassadors leave *Niasabath*, by land, and lodge at the Village of *Mordou*; its Inhabitants, a people called *Padars*. 152

*Caravansera*, what it signifies; the mountain *Barmach*, described; ruins of the Fortresses antiently called *Porta Caspia*; the opinions of the *Persians*, concerning the said Fortresses. *ibid*

The 26. leave *Barmach*, and come the next day to *Pymaraas* a place famous for the Sepulchre of a *Persian* Saint; A description of it, as also that of another. 153

An error of *J. Camerarius*, *Varro* and *Ammianus Marcellinus*. *ibid*

Shells in mountains far from Sea; false Miracles wrought by the *Persian* Saint; the superstition of the *Persians*; 154

The 30. come to *Scamachie*. *ibid*

The ceremonies of their reception there; the kindred of *Aly* distinguish'd by their habit, the *Chan's* retinue. 155

The Musick of the *Persians*; the *Chan* treats the Ambassadors; the services of the Feast; the Napkins. *ibid*

The cleanliness of the *Persians*; the *Chan* an excellent Marks-man; One of the company, a *Persian*, kills himself with drinking *Aquavitæ*; the *Chan's* present to the Ambassadors. 156

*We continued at Scamachie three months.*

## M. DC. XXXIII.

### JANUARY.

The enterrment of the fore-said *Persian* Gentleman; the Ceremonies of the Armenians consecrating of the Water, on Twelf-day. 157

The Calenter's Feast; the Ambassadors Present to the *Chan*; the Governour permits the Armenians to build a Church. 158

The *Schach's* orders for the Ambassadors. 159

The 28. the *Muscovian* Envoy leaves *Scamachie*. *ibid*

### FEBRUARY.

A College for the instruction of Children. 160

What taught in the said College; Another School; the *Persians* have *Euclid*; and make use of the *Astrolabe* *ibid*

The Prior of a Monastery of *Augustine* Friers, at *Tiflis*, visits the Ambass. 161

A Feast in memory of *Aly*; a *Persian* Priest pleasantly dress'd; a Procession after Sermon. *ibid*

The 14. ended the *Persian* Lent, which began Jan. 16. the Amb. treated by the *Chan*; hunting with a tame Leopard. 162

### MARCH.

The 1. the *Persians* celebrate a Feast; their New-years-day; their Epoche; their year consists of 12. Lunar moneths. 163

The *Chan* makes his last visit to the Ambass. their *Persian* Intepreter turns *Renegado*. 164

The 24. the *Chan* sent his New-years-gift to the King; the Ambassadors reimburs'd their expence. *ibid*

A description of *Scamachie*. 165

Its name and situation; is the Metropolis of *Media Atropatia*; its Founnder, Streets, Houses, Inhabitants, Commerce, Market-place, Caravanseras. *ibid*

Its Hamams, or publick stoves; the *Chan's* charge; a character of the *Chan* and Calenter. 166

A ruin'd Fortrefs, named *Kolekulethan*; two sepulchres of Saints; the tomb of a Princess of *Perlia*. *ibid*

The perpetual fire of the *Persians*, kept in the mountain of *Elbours*. 167

The 18. the Ambassadors leave *Scamachie*; the Sepulchre of a *Persian* Saint. *ibid*

The 30. come to *Kasilu*; the 31. to *Tzavar*; the conjunction of *Cyrus* and *Araxes*. 168

# THE TABLE.

## A P R I L

The 2. the Ambass. cross the River *Cyrus*, by a bridge of Boats; change their *Mehemandar*; a kind of Deer not known in *Europe*. *ibid*

The torrent of *Balharu*; *Tortoises*, how they hatch their eggs; the Inhabitants thereabouts; *Tartarian* huts. 169

Ill weather; a venomous herb; the *Schach* sends another *Mehemandar* to meet the Ambassadors. *ibid*

The mountain *Tzizetlu*. *ibid*

The 10. of *April* the Ambassadors make their entrance into *Ardebil*, having travell'd 45 leagues in 12. daies. 170

*They continue there two months.*

The ceremonies of their entrance; the *Chan* and *Calenter* of the City; their names and qualities; the *Chan's* Collation. *ibid*

The *Chan's* house described; the veneration the *Persians* have for their *Prince*; *Thaberick*, what; *Is serv'd* without wine; the allowance of the *Ambass.* during their stay at *Ardebil*. 171

The *Governour's* visit; that of an *Armenian Bishop*; *Christian Churches* in *Persia*; the *Kurban*, or sacrifice of the *Persians*. *ibid*

The *Pilgrimage* of the *Turks* and *Persians* to *Meca*. 172

The fabulous story of the sacrifice of *Abraham*. 173

*Prayers for the Dead*; the *Chan* treats the *Ambassadors*, and acquaints them with the violent death of the *Grand Seignior*. 174

## M A Y

The 4. the *Chancellor* of *Persia's* son visits the *Ambass.* *ibid*

The 14. a particular *Feast* kept only by the *Persians*. *ibid*

A strange kind of devotion; a false *Miracle*; the last Ceremonies of the *Festival*. 175

*Persian Poets*; *Fire-works*. *ibid*

The enterrment of *Hossein* represented; a bloody devotion. 176

A description of *Ardebil*; its situation, air, and soil. *ibid*

Its streets; market-place; the sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*; its *Mezids* or *Mosqueis*, 177

The *Ambassadors* visit *Schich-Sefi's* sepulchre; lay down their *Arms* at the entrance of it. 178

*Laicks* not permitted to approach the sepulchre; its miraculous *Vault*; the *Library* belonging to it. 179

The *Kitchin*; the charity of the place; the sepulchres of the *Kings* of *Persia*.

*Commissaries* for the reception of the profits belonging to the sepulchre. 181

The *Insolence* of a *Favorite* punish'd. *ibid*

Another *Saint's* sepulchre. 182

The tomb described; the *Governour* of *Arbil* administers an *Oath* to the *Religious Men* belonging to the sepulchre; *Medicinal waters*. *ibid*

*Sulphureous sources*; *Springs* of hot water;

the wholesomness whereof discover'd by the *Serpents*; the pool of *Scherkol*. *ibid*

The *Ambassadors* Presents to the *Chan*. *ibid*

## J U N E

The 1. there came another *Mehemandar* from the *King*, 183

The 12. the *Ambassadors* leave *Ardebil*; the *Chan* takes leave of them; the *Province* of *Chalcal*; the corruption of the *Persian Officer*; strange *Grass-hoppers*. *ibid*

*Kisilosein*; the *Mehemandar's* complaint; the *Ambassadors* come to *Kcintze*; to *Kamabl*. 184

The *Persians* set upon the *Ambassadors* Guard; they come to the City of *Senkan*; a Gentleman on horse-back who had neither hands nor feet; *Senkan*, destroy'd by *Tamerlane*; 30. leagues, in seven daies. 185

A branch of the mount *Taurus*. *ibid*

The 21. they come to *Sulthania*; 6. l. one day; its description; built by *Chodabende*. 186

*There they stay three daies.*

A paraphrase of the *Alchoran*; the superstition of the *Persians*; *Artillery*; a *Mosquey* founded by *Schach Ismael*. *ibid*

*Tamerlan's* respect for the *Mosques*; the *Persian Ladies* travel in great *Chetts*. 187

The 27. the *Ambassadors* come to *Caswin*. 188

The *Situation*, *Inhabitants*, *Language*; is the antient Residence of the *Kings* of *Persia*. *ib.*

Its *Palace*, *Market-places*; *Turqueses* and *Rubies* very cheap there; *Turqueses* and *Rubies* very cheap there; the *Sepulchre* of *Hossein's* son; Its *Caravanseras*. *ibid*

The fabulous story of *Locman*; *Rifa*, a false *Prophet*; the *History* of the *Indian-Prince*. 189

*Schach-Tamas's* evasion; the *Ambassadors* send to visit the *Indian-Prince*. 190

## J U L Y

The 2. the *Chan* gives the *Ambassadors* a divertisement, the error of the *Antients* concerning the *Elephant*; the mountain of *Elwend*. 191

A pleasant story. *ibid*

## J U L Y

The 13. the *Ambassadors* leave *Caswin*, and come the 17. to *Saba*, 20. l. four daies; the situation of *Saba*. 192

Leave *Saba* the same day, and come the 19. to *Kom*, 11. leagues in two daies. 193

Their entrance into *Kom*, its situation; it is the *Guriana* of *Ptolomey*; Its fruits, traffick, and *Inhabitants*. *ibid*

The 21. they leave *Kom*; and come the 24. before day to the City of *Kaschan*, 18. l. in three

# THE TABLE.

<p>three daies. 194  <i>Their entrance into Kaschan; the Daruga's advancement.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>Its situation; the house with a thousand doors; Its publick structures; its soil and fruits.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>Venemous Creatures; the remedy against the stinging of Scorpions; the Author stung by one; another venemous insect, its venom and the operation of it; the remedy.</i> 195  <i>The Fable of Schurza Adin; Hassan Kalchi an Arabian Author; Elmacini, another.</i> 196            The 26. they leave Kaschan, and come the 28. to the little City of Natens, 12. leag. 2. daies. <i>ibid</i>            They Travel on the 29. and having got ten leagues in six daies, come to Ispahan the 3. of</p>	<p>ning at the Ring; the scuandalous life of one of the Ambassadors. 207  <i>Ceremonies of Marriage among the Armenians; their Communion.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The Baptism of the Armenians; the Tragical history of a Clock-maker.</i> 208  <i>His execution, his barial; the King takes the Ambassadors along with him a-hunting.</i> 209  <i>An Astrologer; Crane-hunting; Duck and wild Goose hunting.</i> 210  <i>Leo pards; a Perlian Lord turns executioner.</i> <i>ib.</i>  <i>Wild-Ass-flesh esteem'd in Persia; Present from one of the Ambassadors to the King.</i> 211  <i>Pidgeon hunting; the King carries the Ladies of the Court a-hunting; his liberality in his debauches.</i> 212</p>
<h2 style="margin: 0;">AUGUST.</h2>	
<p><i>The Ambassadors continue at Ispahan above four months and a half.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>Their entrance into Ispahan; they are ledg'd in that quarter of the Suburbs, where the Armenians live, and visited by the Dutch Factor, of the East-Indy Company.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>A quarrel with the Indian Ambassadors domesticks, which occasion'd an engagement wherein many were kill'd on both sides.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The King interposes his Authority.</i> 199  <i>The Indian Ambassador dismiss'd; his aboard at Ispahan; his Presents; the occasion of his Embassy,</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The Ambassadors change their quarters; which they fortify against the Indians, have their charges defraid by the King; their allowance.</i> 200  <i>They go into Muscovian Habits: their first Audience; the Presents made in the Prince his name: the Presents from the Ambassadors themselves: the Persians observe no order in their ceremonies.</i> 201  <i>The Reception of the Ambassadors, the Hall for Audience, silver pails to water Horses; the King's person, age, aspect, stature, dress, retinue.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The particulars of their Audience; they dine with the King.</i> 202  <i>The gold-plate, Schiras-wine: the Carver; the manner of sitting at meat, silence at meals, Musick.</i> 203  <i>Their first private Audience, at which the King is in person.</i> 204            The 28. of Aug. the Ambassadors are treated by the Augustine Friers, at their Monastery. <i>ibid.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center; padding: 10px 0;"> <h2 style="margin: 0;">NOVEMBER.</h2> </p> <p><i>The 19. the Chancellor treats the Ambassadors; a Hall set all about with Looking-glasses; the Perlian treatments have all diversions.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>A character of the Chancellor; his Fortunes and Advancement; the same of an Armenian Lord; a second conference with the Chancellor; the visit of two Armenian Lords.</i> 213</p>
<h2 style="margin: 0;">SEPTEMBER.</h2>	
<p><i>The Ambassadors highly treated by the Armenians.</i> 205  <i>Porcelane-Musick, de magnificence of an Armenian Lord.</i> <i>ibid</i>            The 19. the Ambass. have their second private Audience, they are treated by the English Merchants, Indian Dancing-Women, their dress. 206            The Ambass. are treated by the French Merchants. <i>ibid</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center; padding: 10px 0;"> <h2 style="margin: 0;">DECEMBER.</h2> </p> <p><i>The King's Presents to the Ambassadors; their last treatment at Court; the Chancellor's Present to the King; the Ambass. take leave; the Muscovian Postanick dismiss'd.</i> 214  <i>The Presents from some Perlian Lords to the Ambassadors; Brugman's imprudence; one of the Gentlemen of the retinue takes Sanctuary.</i> 215  <i>Brugman's insolence, the King's patience.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>A description of Ispahan, the Metropolis of Persia.</i> 217  <i>Its greatness; the River Senderut.</i> 218  <i>Ispahan destroy'd by Tamerlane; its gardens; its fountains.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The houses, stoves, streets; the Maidan or Market-place.</i> 219  <i>The King's Palace; his Guard, and the several appartments.</i> 220  <i>The Sanctuary; the Cittadel; another Sanctuary; the chief Mosque of Ispahan-</i> 221  <i>The exercises of the Grandees; Taverns and other drinking-houses.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The The, or Tea-houses; those for Tobacco and Coffee; Barbers and Surgeons; the Bazar.</i> 222  <i>Ispahan, a place of great Trade; the Persian money.</i> 223  <i>Caravanferas, or publick Inns or Storehouses; the Monasteries.</i> 224  <i>The King's Stables; his Garden; fruit-trees; the Suburbs.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>The Religion of the Kebbers.</i> 225  <i>Villages neer Ispahan; the fields about it; the air of Persia.</i> 226  <i>The diseases of the Country; its soil.</i> <i>ibid</i>  <i>Cotton, domestick Creatures.</i> 227  <i>The reason why the Persians abhor Swine.</i> 228  <i>Camels, several particulars of them.</i> 229  <i>Horses, &amp;c. Fruits.</i> 230  <i>Why the Mahumetans drink no wine.</i> 231  <i>Their ordinary drink which is Duschab &amp;c.</i> 232</p>
<h2 style="margin: 0;">OCTOBER.</h2>	
<p><i>The 1. the Ambassadors make a Feast, run-</i></p>	<p><i>Fruit;</i></p>

# THE TABLE.

Fruit-trees. *ibid*  
 Netfe, salt, iron; the stature of the Persians. 233  
 They paint their hands, and nails; their cloathing. 234  
 Kifilbachs, what. 235  
 The habit of the women; the Persians are very neat; ingenious and complemental. 236  
 Addicted to lying; constant in their friendships. 237  
 Luxurious; the King of Persia hath several Wives and Concubines; Sodomy not punish'd in Persia; Polygamy allowed. *ibid*  
 Their house-keeping, & house-hold-stuff. 238  
 Their ordinary food, and drink; they take Opium. 239  
 And Tobacco; they drink Cahwa, or Coffee, two pleasant stories concerning the effect of it. 240  
 The use of The or Tea. 241  
 Where the best stuffs of Persia are made. *ibid*  
 What silk it produces yearly. *ibid*  
 Trading not obstructed by War; the inconveniences of Polygamy. 242  
 Incest tolerated. 243  
 Their ceremonies of Mariage. *ibid*  
 The watch in the night. 244  
 Mariage for a certain time; the superstition of the Persians. 245  
 Their Jealousy; Adultery punish'd; Divorce lawful; stories to that purpose. *ibid*  
 The education of their Children; their Authors for reading; their writing, Ink, Pens; the Persian language. 247  
 The Persians learn the Turkish language; their characters; their Universities; their best Authors. 248  
 A fabulous history of Alexander the Great. &c 249  
 The Persians addicted to Poesie; their best Poets. 251  
 Their Law, Medicine, Astronomy. *ibid*  
 The Lunar and Solar year. 252  
 They are much addicted to Judiciary Astrology. 253  
 The political Government of Persia. 254  
 The quality of Sophy, the Kingdom of Persia hereditary: the Arms of Persia, the Coronation of their Kings. 255  
 A short history of the late Kings of Persia, Ismael I. Jacup. *ibid*  
 Schach Tamas. 256  
 Ismael II. Mahomet Chodabende. 258  
 Emir Hemse, Ismael III. Schach Abas. *ibid*  
 He engages in a war against the Tartars. 259  
 Another against the Turks. *ibid*  
 His severity; puts to death his eldest son. 261  
 His voluntary penance for the said warther. 262  
 Several other particulars of Schach Abas; of his cruelty, &c. 263  
 Schach Besi succeeds his Grand-father Schach-Abas. 265  
 Several examples of his cruelty; kills an Uncle and his three sons. 266  
 Kills Seinel-Chan with his own hands. *ibid*  
 Puts to death his Chancellor and others. 267

Causes 40. Ladies to be buried alive, among whom, his own Mother. 269  
 Express'd more temerity than courage in his actions; is subject to wine. *ib.*  
 His Wives, Concubines, death. 270  
 Schach Abas succeeds his Father; dignities not hereditary in Persia; the Persian Armies consist most of horse. *ibid*  
 Their Military Officers; they hate Cowards. 271  
 The Schach's revenue: the Officers of the Court, their names, and places. 272  
 The administration of Justice; Usury forbidden; their punishments. 275  
 The Religion of the Persians; the signification of the word Mussulman; Circumcision; the difference between the Religion of the Persians and that of the Turks. *ibid*  
 The initials of the Religion of the Persians; their Saints. 276  
 Their Festivals; Commentators upon the Alcoran. 277  
 Their Miracles. 278  
 Their purifications, and prayers. 279  
 The Persians very devout; their opinion concerning Heaven and Hell. 280  
 They dedicate their Children to Saints; their Lent; the kindred of Mahomet. *ibid*  
 Another sort of lewd Religions men called Abdallas. 281  
 The enterrments of the Persians. 282

## THE RETURN of the AMBASSADORS From Persia, through Tartary and Muscovy, to Holstein. M. DC. XXXVIII. DECEMBER.

Some of the retinue takes Sanctuary. 284  
 The 21. the Ambassadors leave *Ispahan*; and take their way back by the little City of *Nalens*, whence they come to *Kaschan*. 285  
 JANUARY.  
 The 3. come to *Kom*; the 6. to *Saba*; the 11. to *Caswin*; 60. leagues in 14. daies. 286  
 The mountain *Kilissim*, and other salt-mountains. *ibid*  
 They meet with a Polish Ambassador. *ibid*  
 The superstition of the Persians. 287  
 The Ambass. leave *Caswin*. *ib.*  
*Fauces Hyrcanix*; a Caravanera upon a Bridge; a dreadful road; Summer and Winter the same day. 288  
 The Province of *Kilan* described; its fruits. *ib.*  
 Its Inhabitants. *ib.*  
 The history of *Karib-Schach*; a strange punishment. 289  
 The *Kilek* disarm'd; their habit; and language; the *Thalischs*; the different employments of men and women in those parts. 290  
 The

# THE TABLE.

The Ambassadors come to Rescht, the Metropolis of Kilan; a feast in honour of Aly; Sefi Myrza's Sanctuary; they leave Rescht. 291  
 They come to Kurab, Metropolis of the Province of Kesker. *ibid.*

## FEBRUARY.

The 1. they leave Kurab, and come the 11. to Kislagats, in the Government of Astara, 50. l. in 8. daies.

They cross several little Rivers, among others that of Dinatzar, which divides the Provinces of Kesker and Astara. 292

Come to the Province of Lenkerkunan; leave Lerkeran; the City of Kislagats. 293

The Inhabitants of a Village extirpated for their incest; a false Miracle of Aly; A barbarous action of the Ambassador Brugman. 294

Causes a Kislbach to be kill'd in cold blood. *ibid*

A Robber General of an Army, and Governour of a Province. 295

The River Aras; some errors in Geography corrected by the Author. 296

The mountain of Scamachie; the Chan treats the Ambassadors. 297

## MARCH.

Several treatments given the Ambassadors by the Chan and others; how the King of Persia assures the Chans of his favour. *ibid*

The ceremonies of that assurance. *ibid*

Ceremonies of the Armenians; their Easter; the Ambassador from the King of Persia for Holstein comes to Scamachie. 298

The Ambassadors leave Scamachie March 20. and come the 7. of April to the City of Derbent; 42. leagues in 9. daies. 299

## APRIL.

Padars, a people, otherwise called Kurs; who are high-way-men. *ibid*

Above 30. sources of Nefte, black and white.

Derbent described. *ibid*

Built by Alexander the Great. *ibid*

The Fable of Izumzum and his Sepulchre; Many other Sepulchres upon occasion of the defeat of Kassan, King of Media; the Inhabitants of Derbent. 300

The Chan of Tarku proffers to convoy the Ambassadors; they take order for their departure; the Governour hinders it; Other Saints Sepulchres. 301

The 14. the Ambassadors leave Derbent; enter into Dagesthan; pass through the Country of Osmin, and the Seigniorship of Boinack; and come the 16. to Tarku the Metropolis of Dagesthan; 18. l. in 3. daies. 302

There they continue, in much danger, and with great inconvenience, near a month. *ibid*

The Tartars of Dagesthan, their Habit; Arms; the Prince of the Tartars. *ibid*

The Country of Osmin: the Lordship of Boinack; Brugman's impertinence; a Polish Ambassador kill'd. 303

The Author in danger to be taken by the Tartars. *ibid*

The Ambassadors in great danger; are treated by the Prince of Tarku; their drink. 304

The Present sent to Surkou-Chan; who invites the Ambassadors to Dinner; particulars of the entertainment; Another Tartarian feast. 305

The Governour of Terki refuses a Convoy. 306

## MAY.

The Ambassadors leave Tarku; enter the 18. into the Circassian Tartary, and come, the 20. to the City of Terki, the Metropolis thereof; 26. leag in 9. daies.

The Schemkal grants the Ambassadors passage. *ibid*

The River Koisu, the Albanus of Ptolomy, they come to Andre. 307

The Schemkal's Present to the Ambassadors, theirs to him, Brugman's policy; they leave Andre, and cross the Rivers Ascai and Bustro, which last divides the Dagesthan from the Circassians. 308

They enter Circassia; abundance of Serpents, a kind of Field-Mice. *ibid*

The Government of Circassia; the language; habit, the dress of Widdows; their women very familiar, yet chaste. 309

Their Religion, sacrifices, enterrments, their mourning. 310

## JUNE.

The 4. the Ambassadors leave Tarku, and travel over a great sandy Plain, and come the 15. to Astrachan, 60. leagues in twelve daies.

The desert of Astrachan, in which, being 11. daies journey, they saw neither City, nor Village, nor House, nor Tree, nor any River, but that of Kisilar, nor meet with so much as fresh water. 311

They cross the Wolga to get to Astrachan; the Weywodcs Present to the Ambass. theirs to him. 312

There the Ambassadors continue from the 14. of June, to the 7. of September. *ibid*

A pernicious design of one of the Ambassadors; the Muscovian Ambassador leaves Astrachan; poisons himself. *ibid*

## AUGUST.

The 1. was celebrated the Reduction of Astrachan, the Persian Ambassador's entrance into it. 313

## SEPTEMBER.

The Ambassadors divide their Baggage; Brugman buies two young Girls; the Persian Ambass. buys him a wife. *ibid*

The 7. the Ambass. leave Astrachan, and embark upon the Wolga, come to Tzornogar; to Sariza. *ibid*

## OCTOBER.

The 6. came to Soratof; the 24. to Slanara. *ibid*

## NOVEMBER.

The 6. they come to the River Casan, the Wolga, being frozen up, and go to the City of Casan. 314

There

# THE TABLE.

<p><i>There they continue five weeks.</i>  <b>DECEMBER.</b>                  The 13. they leave <i>Casan</i>, by Sledges, are drawn along the <i>Wolga</i>, and come the 21. following to <i>Nisa</i>.                  The 16. the <i>Muscovites</i> celebrated the feast of their Patron <i>St. Nicholas</i>. 314</p> <p style="text-align: center;">M. DC. XXXIX.  <b>JANUARY.</b>                  The 2. the Ambassadors make their entrance into <i>Moscon</i>. It was according to the accustomed manner; they have several conferences with the Officers of the Court.                  The 8. the <i>Czaar's</i> second Son dies. <i>ibid</i>                  The Ambassadors continue at <i>Moscon</i> six weeks.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>FEBRUARY.</b>                  The 3. the <i>Persian</i> Ambassador made his en-</p>	<p>trance into <i>Moscon</i>. <i>ibid</i>  <b>MARCH.</b>                  The 15. the Ambassadors leave <i>Moscon</i>; come the 18. to <i>Tuere</i>; the 19. to <i>Torsock</i>; the 23. to <i>Novogorod</i>; the 27. enter <i>Ingermania</i>, and the last, make their entrance into <i>Narva</i>. <i>ibid</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>APRIL.</b>                  The 4. they leave <i>Narva</i>, and come the 15. to <i>Reuel</i>, where the Author leaves them, and embarks for <i>Lubeck</i>. 316                  They continue at <i>Reuel</i> three months.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>JULY.</b>                  The 11. the Ambassadors leave <i>Reuel</i>, come the 23. to <i>Travemunde</i>, the 30. to <i>Kiel</i>.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>AUGUST.</b>                  The 1. they put a period to their Travels into <b>MUSCOVY</b>, <b>TARTARY</b> and <b>PERSIA</b>, and came to <i>Gottorp</i>. <i>ibid</i></p>
---	--

*The end of the JOURNAL of the AMBASSADORS Travels.*

## A

### Catalogue of all the Pieces of *Sculpture* contained in these TRAVELS.

1. The Frontispiece, containing, in one Plate, five Heads, viz. *Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein*; the two Ambassadors, *Crusius*, and *Brugman*; *Olearius*, Author of the Travels into *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, and *Persia*; and *John. Albert de Mandelsto*, Author of the Travels into the *East-Indies*.
2. A Map of *LIVONIA*, Part 1. lib. 2. pag. 30.
3. A Map of *MUSCOVY*, P. 1. lib. 3. pag. 45.
4. The Pourtraiture of *MICHAEL FEDEROVITS*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*; P. 1. lib. 3. p. 77.
5. The Characters of the *Muscovian* Language, P. 1. lib. 3. p. 95.
6. A Map of the Great River *WOLGA*, P. 1. lib. 4. p. 112.
7. A Map of *PERSIA*, P. 1. lib. 5. p. 145.
8. The Pourtraiture of *SCACHSEFI*, King of *Persia*, P. 1. lib. 6. p. 265.
9. A Map of the Province of *KILAN*, as it lies on the *Caspian* Sea, P. 1. lib. 7. p. 288.
10. A Map of the *EAST-INDIES*, P. 2. lib. 1. p. 13.

By the *First-Part* are meant the Travels of the Ambassadors into *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, and *Persia*; By the *Second*, those of *John Albert de Mandelsto*, into the *East-Indies*.



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
 DUKE of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, and P E R S I A.**

The First Book.



THE Most High and Mighty Prince, *Frederick*, by the Grace of God, Hereditary Prince of *Norway*, Duke of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, of *Stormarie* and *Ditmars*, Count of *Oldenburg*, &c. having built the City of *Frederickstad*, in the Dutchy of *Holstein*, would settle there the Trade of Silks, the most important, no doubt, of any in *Europe*. *Persia* is the Kingdome, which of any in the World, yeilds most of it, upon which accompt, the said Prince resolv'd to court the friendship of the *Sophy*. But in regard there were several reasons, why the Silks could not be brought home by Sea, and that, to transport them by Land, he stood in need of the permission of the *Czarr*, or great Duke of *Muscovy*, he thought fit in the year 1633. to send a solemn Embassy to those two great Monarchs.

He employ'd in this Embassy, *Philip Crusius*, a Lawyer and his privy Councillor, and *Ottobrunneman*, a Marchant of *Hamborough*, whom he honour'd with the quality of Councillor. On the 22. of *October* in the year aforesaid, they departed from *Gottorp*, the place where *Duke Frederick* made his residence, and went to *Hamborough*, where they took order for their Voyage.

There they entertain'd their retinue, which consisted of 34 persons, and departed thence the 6. of *November*. The next day they came to *Lubeck*; the 8. to *Tauemund*, where the Ambassadors took into their service an experienc'd Sea-Captain named *Michael Cordes*, who was to be their Pilot, especially upon the *Caspian Sea*.

The 9. we took leave of our Friends, who had come along with us from *Hamborough*, and imbarqu'd in a Ship called the *Fortune*, whereof *John Muller* was Commander. We took aboard along with us *Wendelin Sibelist*, a Physician, who was going to *Muscovy*, to be principal Physician to the Great Duke.

We got out of the Haven about 2. in the afternoon, and anchor'd in the Road at 8. fathom water. About 9. at night, the wind South-West, we set sail, and made that night 20. leagues. The next day, the Ambassadors thought fit to make some particular Orders to be observ'd during our Voyage, so to prevent the disorders which are but too frequent among those, who ordinarily leave not their own Country, but out of a hope to live with greater freedom elsewhere; and to see the execution of them the better performed, they named several Officers, giving the Secretary of the Embassy the quality of Fiscal, and to *Wendelin Sibelist*, and *Hartman Gramam*, our Physician, that of Assessors. They discharg'd their places well, and Justice was to duely administred, that at the end of our Voyage, which was but of five dayes, the penalties

1633.

The occasion of these Travels.

An Embassy sent the King of Persia and Great Duke of Muscovy.

The Embassadors.

OCTOB.

Their retinue.

NOVEM.

Orders for civil behaviour.

1633. came to above 22. Crowns, which were put into the hands of the Captain, with order they should be equally distributed between the Poor of *Riga* and *Lubeck*.

*Bornholm*. The same day, toward evening, we pass'd by the Island of *Bornholm*, leaving it a good league on the right hand. That Island is conceiv'd to be distant from *Lubeck* 40. German Leagues. The length and breadth of it is near the same, viz. 3. leagues; it hath a Royal Palace, named *Hammerhusen*, belonging to the King of *Denmark*. Towards the North-side of the Island are the Rocks called *Erdholm*, well known by reason of the frequent wracks, which make them so much the more formidable to Mariners in the Autumn, in regard the darkness of the nights keeps them from being discover'd, and that all about them those that found meet with no bottom.

The 11. at noon, we were at 56. degrees of latitude, the weather continuing fair; but, towards night, the wind, still at South-West, rais'd such a tempest, that we were forc'd to take in all our sails, and go before the wind till the next morning. Those among us who were not us'd to the Sea, were so sick, that some vomited blood: but in regard we had the wind a-stern, it's violence hindred us not from keeping on our course, and making fifteen Leagues that night.

*Sea sickness.*

*Its cause.*

Some are of opinion, that the stinch of the salt water, corrupting in the sink, is that which provokes such vomiting. Others, on the contrary, affirm, that it is caused by the violent agitation of the Ship, which makes the head turn, and the stomach to cast up what is in it. But certain it is, that both contribute thereto, in as much as if the agitation trouble the brain, the stinch also offends it, and makes those heart-sick whose smelling is subtle, provoking vomiting, even without any violent motion, wherever they are, not only at Sea, but also any where else. Those who conceive, that people are not subject hereto upon Rivers are deceiv'd; for, besides that experience hath evinc'd the contrary, we have there the same motion, and fresh water being corrupted, stinks no less than the salt.

*A Calm.*

The 12. we had so great a calm, that the Ship being as it were fasten'd to the same place, we had the convenience to bring our Musical Instruments upon the deck, to sing a *Te Deum*, and to give God thanks for our deliverance, out of the imminent danger we had been in the night before.

*Cap de Demesnes.*  
*Dunemunde.*

About noon the wind came to South, which carried us to the *Cap de Demesnes*, in *Courland*, where we cast Anchor, and staid all night. The next day 13. the wind West, we weighed Anchor, doubled the Cape, enter'd into the Bay, and came, the 14. before the Fort of *Dunemunde*, so called, because situated at the mouth of the River *Dune*, where that River enters the *Baltick* Sea, within two leagues of *Riga*. And forasmuch as the thick mist hindred those of the Fort from seeing us, we caus'd the Trumpets to sound, to oblige them to send us a Pilot, without whose assistance we should hardly have got into the Haven. Those who had the oversight of the Customes, came immediately to search our Ship, but finding no Merchants goods in it, for which they might challenge ought, they return'd back, and sent us a Pilot, who conducted us that night as far as before the City of *Riga*. The Ambassadors being got ashore, at the entrance of the City found a coach, which the Governour had sent to meet them: but in regard they were not far from their Inn, they would make no use of it, and so kept on their way afoot.

*The Ambassadors come to Riga.*

*The Magistrate's presents.*

The 21<sup>th</sup>. the Magistrate sent his Presents to the Ambassadors, viz. an Ox, some Sheep, some Poultry, Hares, Partridges, and other Fowl, Wheaten and Ry-Bread, and half a Tun of Rhenish Wine. The 24<sup>th</sup>. The Ambassadors entertained, at Dinner, *Andrew Erichzon*, the Governour of the City, as also the Magistrate, the principal Minister, who amongst the *Lutherans* is look'd upon as a Bishop, and some Officers of the Garrison.

During our abode in this City, which was almost five weeks, in expectation the Fens of those parts should be frozen up, and the snow cover the Way, which we were to Travel in Sledges, we augmented our retinue with some necessary persons for that great journey, and we had the leisure to learn the condition of the City, whereof we shall here give a short description.

*Riga described.*

*Its foundation.*

*Made an Archbishoprick.*

*Subject to Poland.*

*Clytraus*, in his History of *Saxony*, p. 19. says, That the City of *Riga* was built by *Albert* the third, Bp. of *Livonia*, in the Year 1196. but *Alnoul*, Abbot of *Lubeck*, an Author of the same time (as living under *Otho* IV.) says, in the continuation of the Chronicle of *Helmsold*, l. 7. c. 9. that it was built in the year 1189. by *Bertold*, Abbot of *Locken*, in the County of *Shauenbourg*, in the Diocese of *Minden*, of the Order of *White-Friers*, successor to *Menard* in the Bishoprick of *Livonia*, the seat whereof he setled at *Riga*. In the Year 1215. it was rais'd to an Archbishoprick, and made Metropolitane of all *Livonia*, *Prussia*, and *Curland*. The Knights of the *Espadon*, and, afterwards, the Master of the *Teutonic* Order in *Prussia*, have, many times, divided the administration of Justice and the Sovereignty in that place, with the Archbishop, till that, in consequence of the Reformation of Religion, both lost the Authority they had in this City. It was forc'd afterwards to have recourse to the Crown of *Poland*, whose it became by a voluntary rendition, made in the year 1561. occasion'd by the War with the *Muscovite*. Since that, *Charles*, Duke of *Sudermania*, having usurp'd the Crown of *Sueden*, from *Sigismund*, his Nephew, who had been called to that of *Poland*, thought it not enough to fortify himself in the possession of what he had usurped, but conceiving



advantage, that the Commerce of *Archangel* being by that means interrupted, the Ships that were wont to go to *Muscovy* made use of the Haven of *Narva*, whither there came in the year 1636. above sixty Ships, and took up, there, Merchandizes amounting to above 500000 Crowns. Upon this they took occasion to cleanse and augment the Town, to build new and regular streets for the convenience of strange Merchants, and to facilitate the passage of Ships into the Haven. *Queen Christina* of *Sueden*, exempted this City out of the general Jurisdiction of the Governour of the Province, and gave it a particular Lieutenant, to judge of affairs Secular and Ecclesiastical, without appeal to any other place.

The Castle is on this side the River, and on the other, that of *Juanogorod*, which the *Muscovites* have built upon a very steepy Rock, whereof the River of *Narva* makes a peninsula, so that the place was judg'd impregnable, till *Gustavus Adolphus* took it, in the year 1617. At the foot of this Castle is a Town called *Narva Muscovite*, to distinguish it from the *Teutonick* or *German Narva*, whereof our discourse hath been. This Town is inhabited by natural *Muscovites*, but Subjects of the Crown of *Sueden*, to which the said *Gustavus* hath also joyned the Castle of *Juanogorod*, where *Nichola Gallen* govern'd, at our passage that way, in quality of the King's Lieutenant.

The Country between *Reuel* and *Narva*, as also generally all *Ingermania* and *Livonia*, have in the Woods, a great number of Beasts that are yellowish and black; and among others such abundance of Wolves and Bears, that the Peasants have much ado to keep them off their Cattel and themselves. In Winter, when the ground is covered with snow, the Wolves, not meeting with ought abroad, will come, in the day time, into mens yards, and carry away the Doggs that keep them, and will break through the Walls, to get into the Stables.

We were told, that in the year 1634. upon the 24. of *January*, a Wolf, not of the biggest, had set upon 12. *Muscovian* Peasants, who were bringing Hay to the City. He took the first by the throat, got him down, and kill'd him; he did the like to the second. He flead the third's head; eat off the nose and cheeks of a fourth, and hurt two more. The other six got together, put themselves into a posture of defence, struck down the Wolf, and kill'd him. It was afterwards discovered, that he was mad, for all those he had hurt dyed so. The Magistrate of *Narva* had caus'd the skin to be preserv'd, which was shew'd as a thing very remarkable.

We were told also that a Bear, finding a Vessel of Herrings, which a Peasant had laid down at an Alehouse door, fell a-eating of them, and went thence into the Stable, whither the Peasants follow'd him; but having wounded some of them, the rest were glad to get away. Thence he went into a Brewhouse, where meeting with a fat of new Beer, he got so drunk, that the Peasants perceiving he reel'd every step, and at last fell asleep in the High-way, pursu'd and kill'd him. Another Peasant having turn'd out his Horse a-grazing in the night, found him next morning dead, with a Bear lying by him, who had fed very heartily upon him. But as soon as the Bear perceiv'd the Peasant, he leaves the Prey he was already assur'd of, got hold of the Peasant, and was carrying him away between his paws to his Den; but the Peasants Dog having got the Bear by the foot, made him let go, and, while they were engag'd, the Malter had time to get up a Tree and save himself.

In the year 1634. A Bear digg'd up thirteen Carcasses out of a Church-yard, belonging to a little Village near *Narva*, and carried them away with the Coffins. Nor is it long since that a Lady of quality in those parts met one carrying away a Carcass, with the throwd trailing after it, which frighted the Horse that drew the Lady's Sledge, so as that he ran away with her, cros the fields, to the great hazard of her life. Many other stories were told us; as that of a Bear who had kept a Woman 15 days together in his Den, and the manner how she was deliver'd thence; but we shall forbear any further account of them, as relating more to natural History than Travels. I shall only add, that the Peasants, who are not secure from these Creatures when they goe but into the fields, especially in the night time, are of opinion, that the noise of a stick, they fasten to the Sledges, frights the Wolves, and makes them run away.

*March 7.* We left *Narva*, and lodg'd at night at *Lilienhagen*, seven leagues from it. The 8. we travel'd six leagues, to *Sarits*. The 9. before noon, we got four leagues to *Orlin*, where the Interpreter we had sent before, to give notice of our departure from *Reuel*, met us, with this news, that a *Pristaf* waited for us upon the Frontiers. And whereas many disorders were crept into our retinue, insomuch that some express'd but little respect to their Superiours, the Ambassadors caus'd all to come before them, and told them, that being upon their entrance into *Muscovy*, where they judge of the quality of the Embassy, and the greatness of the Prince that sends it, by the honour which the Ambassadors receives from those that are about them, they should be mindful of their duty.

We all promis'd not to fail therein, provided we were mildly treated, every man according to his place and quality. Which the Ambassadors having promised for their parts, we parted cheerfully, to go and meet the *Pristaf*. We found him in a Wood within a league of *Orlin*, where

1636, where he stay'd for us, in the Snow, with twenty four *Strelits* about him, and ninety Sledges.

As soon as the *Pristaf*, whose name was *Constantino Juanovits Arbuson*, had perceiv'd us, and saw that the Ambassadors were alighting, he also came out of his Sledge. He was clad in a Garment of green flower'd Velvet, which came down to his Hams, with a great Golden Chain crossing over his breast, and an upper Garment lined with Sables. As the Ambassadors advanced, he also came forward, till that being come up to them, and the Ambassadors having put off their hats, the *Pristaf* said, *Ambassadors, be uncover'd*. The Ambassadors return'd him answer by the Interpreter, that he saw, they were uncover'd, whereupon the *Pristaf* read out of a Paper, That *Knez Peter Alexandrowits Repuin*, *Weywode of Novogorod*, had sent him, by order from the Grand Seigneur, *Czaar*, and Great Duke *Michael Federovits*, *Conservator of all the Russes*, &c. to receive the Ambassadors *Philip Crusius*, and *Otton Brugman*, and to accommodate them with Horses, Carriages, Provisions, and what else were necessary for the continuance of their Voyage to *Novogorod*, and thence to *Moscou*. After we had return'd him our thanks, he gave us the precedence, enquir'd how we did, and of the particulars of our voyage, and causing the Horses to be put before the Sledges, he made us travel six leagues further that day, to a Village named *Tzuerin*.

Tzuerin.  
Desan.  
Mokriza.  
Come to  
Novogorod.

March 10. About noon, we came to *Desan*, and at night to *Mokriza*, a Village 8 leagues from *Tzuerin*.

The 11. We came to *Novogorod*. At the entrance of the City, the *Pristaf* took precedence of the Ambassadors, though they endeavour'd to hinder him. But as soon as we were lodg'd, he desir'd the Interpreter to excuse the incivility he had been guilty of, and to satisfie the Ambassadors, that what he had done was by express order from the *Weywode*, who would have done him some ill Office about the Great Duke if he had not obey'd him.

A description  
of the  
City of No-  
vogorod.

From *Narva* to *Novogorod* are counted 40 *German* leagues; thence to *Plescou* 36. and to *Moscou* 120. leagues. *Novogorod* is situated upon the River *Wolgda*, at 58 degrees, 23 min. elevation. *Lundorp* in his Continuation of *Sleidan*, puts it at 62. and *Paulus Jovius*, at 64 degrees: but at the exact observation I made of it on the 15 of *March* 1636. I found, that, at noon, the Sun was above the Horizon 33 degr. 45 min. and that the declination of the Sun, by reason of the Leap-year, because of 55. degr. was 2 degr. and 8 min. which being subtracted out of the elevation of the Sun, that of the Equinoctial line could be but 31 degr. 27 min. which taken out of 90 degr. there remains but 58 degrees, 23 minutes. Which almost agrees with the calculation made of it by *Bureus*, some time Ambassador for the Crown of *Sueden* in *Muscovy*, who puts the City of *Novogorod*, at 58 degrees, 13 minutes. It is seated in a spacious plain upon the River *Wolgda*, or *Wolchon*, which hath its rise out of the Lake of *Ilmen*, half a league above this City, and crossing the Lake of *Ladoga*, does, in its way, pass through the River *Niowa*, near *Notebourg*, and by the Gulf of *Finland*, falls into the *Baltick* Sea. It abounds with all sorts of fish, especially *Breme*, which are there excellent good, and very cheap. But the greatest advantage accrues to this City from this River, is by Commerce. For being Navigable from its very source, and the Country abounding in Wheat, Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, and *Russia* Leather, which is better dress'd at *Novogorod*, than in any other City of *Muscovy*, the easiness of the transportation of these Commodities, brought thither not only the *Livonians* and *Suedes*, who are Neighbours, but also *Danes*, *Germans*, and *Flemmings*, who settled themselves there so well, that it was, without dispute, the greatest City for Trade in all the North. The Hanseatick Towns had an Office of Address in this City, which enjoying many great Privileges under its Prince, who had no dependance on the Great Duke, was grown so powerful, that it grew into a Proverb, *Ochto Moschet stoiati protif Bocho dai welik Novogorod? Who can oppose God and the great City of Novogorod?*

Some would compare it, for greatness, with *Rome*; but they are mistaken. For though it be called *Weliki Novogorod*, the great *Novogorod*, yet can it not be compar'd to *Rome*. It's not unlikely, it hath been greater than it is now, not only because it was the greatest for Commerce of any in the North, but also for that all about may be seen the ruins of Walls, and several Steeples, which, no doubt, had been part of the City. The number of its Steeples promises yet somewhat more great and noble, than what may be now seen; since that coming to the City, we see onely Walls of Wood, and Houses built with Beams lay'd one upon another.

*Vithold*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, and General of the *Polish* Army, was the first that, in the year 1427. oblig'd it to pay a considerable Tribute, which some would have amount to 100000 Roubles, which come to above 200000 Crowns. The Tyrant *John Basli Grosdin*, having after a seven years War, gain'd a great victory over an Army rais'd by this City, in the month of *November* 1477 forc'd the Inhabitants to submission, and to receive a Governour from him: but considering withall that he could not make himself as absolute as he would be there, and that it would be hard for him to settle himself there by force, he thought it best to go thither in person, pretending some concernments of Religion, and that he would prevent their

their embracing the Roman Catholick. The Archbishop *Theophilus*, who had most authority there, was the most forward to promote his design, and the first rewarded for his pains. For no sooner was the Tyrant got into the City, but he pillag'd it, so that, at his departure thence, he carry'd away three hundred Wagons loaden with Gold, Silver, and Jewels, besides the rich stuffs and other sumptuous moveables, which he dispos'd into other Wagons, and convey'd to *Moscou*, whither he also transported the Inhabitants, and sent *Muscovites* thither in their stead. But nothing contributed more to the destruction of this Citie, than the brutish cruelty of *John Basilonits*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*. This Tyrant, upon a meer suspition he had conceiv'd of the Inhabitants of *Novogorod*, enter'd the City, in the year 1569. and caus'd to be kill'd or cast into the River 2770. persons, without any respect of quality, age, or sex, besides an Infinite number of poor people who were trampled to death by a party of horse. A Gentleman, sent by the King of *Denmark*, to this Tyrant, eight years after the taking of the City, relates in his *Itinerary*, that persons of quality had assur'd him, that there were to many bodies cast into *Wolgda*, that the River stopping overflow'd all the neighbouring fields. The Plague which soon follow'd this cruelty, was so great, that, no body venturing to bring in Provisions, the Inhabitants fed on the dead Carcasses. The Tyrant took a pretence from this inhumanity to cause to be cut in pieces all those who had escap'd the Plague, Famine, and his former cruelty, which was no doubt more dreadful than all the other chastisements of God. I shall allege onely two Examples relating to *Novogorod*. The Archbishop of this place, having escap'd the first fury of the Soldiery, either as an acknowledgement of the favour, or to flatter the Tyrant, entertains him at a great Feast in his Archiepiscopal Palace, whither the Duke say'd not to come, with his Guard about him: but while they were at Dinner, he sent to pillage the rich Temple of *St. Sophia*, and all the Treasures of the other Churches, which had been brought thither, as to a place of safety. After Dinner he caus'd the Archbishops Palace to be in like manner pillaged, and told the Archbishop, that it would be ridiculous for him to act the Prelate any longer, since he had not to bear himself out in that quality; that he must put off his rich habit, which must thence-forward be troublesome to him, and that he would bestow on him a Bagpipe and a Bear, which he should lead up and down, and teach to dance, to get mony; That he must resolve to marry, and that all the other Prelates and Abbots that were about the City should be invited to the Wedding, setting down the precise sum which it was his pleasure that every one should present to the new-married couple. None but brought what he had made a shift to save, thinking the poor Archbishop would have had it. But the Tyrant took all the money, and, having caus'd a white Mare to be brought, said to the Archbishop; There is thy wife, get up on her, and go to *Moscou*, where I will have thee entertain'd among the Violins, that thou may'st reach the Bear to dance. The Archbishop was forc'd to obey, and, as soon as he was mounted, they ty'd his legs under the Mare's belly, hung about his neck some Pipes, a Fidle, and a Timbrel, and would needs make him play on the Pipes. He escap'd with this punishment, but all the other Abbots and Monks were either cut to pieces, or, with Pikes and Halbards, forc'd into the River.

An example of cruelty.

Nay, he had a particular longing for the mony of one *Theodore Sircon*, a rich Merchant. He sent for him to the Camp neer *Novogorod*, and, having fasten'd a rope about his waste, order'd him to be cast into the River, drawing him from one side of it to the other, till he was ready to give up the ghost. Then he caus'd him to be taken up, and ask'd him what he had seen under water. The Merchant answer'd, That he had seen a great number of Devils thronging about the Tyrant's soul, to carry it along with them to Hell. The Tyrant reply'd, Thou art in the right on't: but it is just I should reward thee for thy prophecy, whereupon calling for seething oil, he caus'd his feet to be put into it, and continu'd there, till he had promis'd to pay him ten thousand Crowns. Which done, he caus'd him to be cut to pieces, with his brother *Alexis*.

The Baron of *Herberstein*, who travel'd into *Muscovy*, in the time of the Emperor *Maximilian* the first, and about his Affairs, says, that heretofore, before the City of *Novogorod* was converted to the Christian Faith; there was an Idol called *Perun*, that is, the God of *Perun*; Fire, *perun*, in the *Muscovian* language signifying fire. This God was represented with a Thunder-bolt in his hand, and hard by him was kept a constant fire of Oak, which was not to go out, but at the peril of their lives who kept it. The same Author addes, that the Inhabitants of *Novogorod* having received Baptism, and being made Christians, cast the Idol into water, that it went against the stream of the River, and that being near the Bridge, it call'd to the Inhabitants, and casting a stick among them, bid them keep it for his sake; That in his time, on a certain day in the year, the voice of *Perun* was heard there, and that thereupon the Inhabitants fell a-fighting with sticks, so earnestly, that the *Weywode* had much ado to separate them. But now there is no talk of any such thing, there being no monument of *Perun* left, other than that there is a Monastery called *Pernmski Monastir*, which they say is built in the place where the Temple of the Idol stood before.

Without the City, and on the other side of the River, is a Castle, encompass'd with a stone-wall,

1636. wall, where live the *Weywode* and the Metropolitan, or Arch-bishop, who hath the over-sight of Ecclesiastical affairs all over the Province. This Castle joyns to the City by a great Bridge, from which, Duke *John Basilonits* caus'd a great number of Inhabitants to be cast into the River, as was said before. Over against the Castle, on the same side with the City, is a Convent, dedicated to *St. Anthony*. The *Muscovites* say, he came from *Rome* into those parts upon a Mill-stone, upon which he came down the *Tiber*, cross'd the Sea, and so up the River *Wolgda*, to *Novogorod*. They add, that, by the way, he met certain Fisher-men, with whom he bargain'd for the first draught they should make: that they brought up a Chest full of Priests Vestiments to say Mass in, Books, and Money, belonging to this Saint, and that afterwards he built a Chapel there, in which they say he lies interr'd, and that his Body is there to be seen, as entire as when he departed this World. Many Miracles are wrought there, as they say; but they permit not strangers to go in, thinking it enough to shew them the Mill-stone, upon which the Saint perform'd this pretended voyage, and which indeed may be seen lying against the Wall. The Devotions performed there have been such as have built a very fair Monastery in that place.

St. Anthony's Monastery.

We staid at *Novogorod*, five days, during which the *Weywode* sent us a Present of 24 sorts of meat, dress'd after their way, and 16 sorts of drink. The Chancellor, *Bogdan Fæderonits Oboburou*, who had been our *Pristaf* in the former Voyage, sent us also divers delicacies. The Ambassadors presented the *Weywode* with a new Coach.

The Ambassadors leave Novogorod. Brunits. Miedna. Kressa. Iafelbitza. Simnagora. Columna. Wisna wolloka. Wndra Pusk. Torsock. Troitza Miedna. Tuere. Sawidowa Saulkspas.

March 16. We had brought us 129 fresh Horses for our Sledges, and we got that day four leagues to *Brunits*, where we took up fresh Horses again, wherewith, the next day, we travel'd in the forenoon 8 leagues to *Miedna*, and in the afternoon, four and a half to *Kressa*. The 18 we got before dinner six leagues to *Faselbitza*; in the afternoon, four to *Simnagora*. The 19. nine leagues to *Columna*; and the 20. five, to *Wisna wolloka*, where we saw a young man of 12 years of age that was married. At *Tuere*, we saw a married woman that was but 11. and this is ordinary in *Muscovy*, as also in *Finland*. The same night we came to *Windra Pusk*, having travel'd that afternoon seven leagues. In this last place, there were but three houses, and the stoves so nasty and stinking, that we had a very ill night of it, though indeed in other places the stoves are not kept much better than stables in our Country.

Klin.

The 21 we got 7 leagues, to *Torsock*. The 22. six, to *Troitska Miedna*; and the 23. six more, to *Tuere*, mentioned before. Here the snow beginning to melt in several places, we quitted our Sledges, and took the *Wolgda*, which was itill frozen, and travel'd that day six leagues, to *Gorodna*. The 24. we went by land again, for the Ice began to give way, and got to *Sawidowa*; and thence to *Saulkspas*, seven leagues from our last lodging, having, by the way, pass'd several Brooks with great difficulty, by reason the Ice was loose. The 25. we pass'd by a great Village called *Klin*, behind which is the Brook *Sestrea*, which falls into the River *Dubna*, and, with it, into *Wolgda*. We were forc'd to stay the flakes of Ice with stakes, which we made a shift to fasten in the Brook, to hinder them from carrying us away. The next day we pass'd it again, by reason it winds it self up and down in those parts, and lodg'd that night at *Beschick*, seven leagues from *Klin*. The 27. we pass'd two other little Brooks, and got 6 leagues forwards, to *Zerkizouo*. The 28. we got but three leagues, to *Nicola-Darebna*, which the Author, in the first Book calls *Nicola Nachinski*, within two leagues of *Moscou*, where the Ambassadors are wont to expect the Great Duke's pleasure, and the order he would have observ'd in their entrance. In the mean time we fitted our Liveries, and set our selves in order for our Cavalcade, which we made the next day at Noon, as followeth.

Beschick. Zerkizouo. Nicola-Darebna.

Their entrance into Moscou.

First, went the 24 Muskietiers who had conducted us from the Frontiers, being all *Cosaques*. After them our Mareschal alone.

Then the Officers and Gentlemen, three a-breast, and those of best quality first.

Three Trumpetters, with silver Trumpets.

Then the Ambassadors, each in his Sledge, having before them six with Carabins, and on both sides as many, with Partizans.

Next the Sledges, came the Pages, and after them, the rest of the retinue on horse-back, and the baggage, all in very good order. The *Pristaf* took place of the Ambassadors. Being come within half a league of the City, there met us many Troops of horse, *Muscovian*, *Tartars*, and some *Germans*, who having rid about our Cavalcade, return'd to the City. After these came several other Troops, which divided themselves, and encompassing us on both sides, conducted us to the City.

About a quarter of a league from the City we met two *Pristafs*, with a very noble attendance, and the same equipage they had at our former reception. Being come within 20. paces of us, they sent word to the Ambassadors, that they should alight out of their Sledges, and come to them. The *Pristafs* neither alighted, nor uncover'd themselves, till the Ambassadors had done both. They are enjoyn'd to proceed with this reservedness, and to stand very much upon the grandeur and reputation of their Prince, upon pain of being cast out of favour, which disgrace is many times attended with whipping or cudgeling.

and dry'd Salmon. The *Pristaf* who was to bear our charges, ask'd whether he should provide for us, or that we had rather take the money allow'd by his Majesty for our entertainment, and have our meat dress'd by our own Cooks. We made choice of the later, according to the custom of those Ambassadors who go into those parts. So that we bought our provisions our selves, which we found cheap enough, in comparison to what the *Pristaf* provided for us. Two *Copecks*, which make two sols French, would buy a tame Fowl, and for a peny we had nine Eggs. We were allow'd every day two Roubles and five *Copecks*, amounting to four Crowns five pence, which found us very good fare. After dinner, we embark'd on a River which brought us to *Ladoga*, which is distant from *Laba* 17 leagues, whither we came the same night. We met by the way a *Pristaf*, going to meet the *Suedish* Resident, with three Boats. In all our Travels had we not seen so many Children under 7 years of age, as we found at *Ladoga*. Some of ours being gone to take the Air, they run after us, having Goosberries to sell, whereof we bought a hatful for a *Copeck*. 'Twas pleasant to see those Children, to the number of fifty together, leaping about us, as we lay on the grass to eat our Goosberries, so dress'd as that we could not distinguish the Boies from the Girls, for both had their hair cut all off, excepting only two mustaches, which were suffer'd to grow at their Temples, and were clad in shirts reaching to their ancles. Our Physician would needs make a discovery of sexes among them, and having caught one of the Children by the shirt, it happen'd to be a Boy, who told him laughing, *Deske met*, that he was no Girl, and thereupon pointed to some that were.

The 23. at dinner, was the first time we heard any of the Country Musick, which consisted of a Lute and Violin, with some voices, singing aires to the honour of their *Czaar*, *Michael Fedorovits*, and perceiving they were permitted, they fell a-dancing after a strange manner. The men and women danc'd much after the same manner, every one alone, making strange faces, with as strange gesticulations; the motions of the hands, shoulders, and hips, being more violent than those of the feet, which they do but gently stir, not moving as it were from the same place. The women have commonly handkerchers in their hands, fring'd with silk of divers colours, which they cast about their heads.

After dinner we embark'd upon the River *Wolgda*. Our Musketers, or *Strelits*, begg'd the benediction of a Monk that happen'd to be by the River side; it being their custom to beg it of all Monks, and in all the Churches they come to by the way, which if they have not the time to go into, they think it enough to do reverences to the Crosses they see upon the Churches and Chapels, pronouncing these words, *Hospodi Buchmilo*, that is to say, Lord be merciful to me.

The wind being with us, it was thought fit we should make use of our sails, but, the Musketers being not the most expert Mariners, one of the Ropes broke, and the sail falling on one of the Musketers, struck him down so as that we gave him over for dead, but coming to himself again within an hour after, and having taken a considerable dram of the *Aquavitæ* bottle, he was as well as ever.

The *Wolgda* is as broad as *Elbe*, but runs much more slowly. It rises near great *Novogorod*, out of the Lake called the Lake of *Ilmen*, and falls into that of *Ladoga*. Seven *werstes* (whereof five make a *German* League) from *Ladoga*, there is a strange fall of Water in that River, and about a league and a half thence, another, where the water falls with such violence, that it runs like a shaft, amidst the many Rocks scatter'd up and down near those places: in so much that to draw the loaden Boats up the River, there needs above a hundred men. We got ashore at the former, and saw our Boats pass safely, all save the last, in which we had left *Simon Frisius*, a Merchant's Son of *Hamborough*, who being extremely sick was forc'd to stay in it. This Boat being drawn up to the highest pitch of the water, the rope broke, so that the water forc'd it back with such violence, that it would have split against the Rocks, if, by an unexpected good hap, one end of the rope, which was fasten'd to the mast, had not twin'd it self about one of the Rocks, by which means the Boat was stay'd. till we had the convenience to dis-engage it. There we were told, that a certain Bishop, coming that way in a Boat laden with Fish, had been cast away some few dayes before. The other fall we pass'd without any danger, and came that night to a Convent, called *Nicolai Nepostiza*, where we took up our quarters, and stay'd the next day, expecting the Boats that were coming after us.

From *Renel* to *Moscou*, are nothing but Woods, Fenns, Lakes and Rivers, which produce such abundance of Flies, Gnats, and Wasps, that people have much ado to keep them off, in so much, that, in the night time, they are forc'd to wrap themselves up in certain linnen cloaths, such as Travellers make use of in *Livonia* and *Muscovy*: those among us who had not been careful to cover themselves, having their faces so spotted, as if they were newly recover'd from the small pox. The Wagoners and Contry people, who have not convenience enough of those cloaths, are forc'd to make use of fire against the importunity of those Insects; insomuch that *Muscovy* being every where well furnish'd with wood, they make good fires, and lye down by them; all which hinders not but that they are extremely troubled with them.

There were but four Monks in the Convent; the most aged among them made us a Present of Turneps, pickled Cowcumbers. some green Pease, and two wax candles. We gratify'd him with

1634.

Come to  
Ladoga;The Mus-  
sick of  
Muscovy:The devoti-  
on of the  
Musco-  
vites.Wolgda  
described.  
A danger-  
ous fall of  
water.Trouble-  
some Flies  
and other  
insects.The Pre-  
sents of a  
Muscovian  
Monk;

1634. with a Crown piece, which he took so kindly, that he let us into his Church, contrary to the Custom of the Country, and put on his Sacerdotal Vestments, that we might see them. He shew'd us, in the Portal, the Miracles of S. *Nicholas*, painted according to the mode of the Country, very roughly, and without proportion. Upon the door was represented the last Judgement, wherein the Monk pointed to a Man habited after the *German* fashion, and told us, That the *Germans* and other Nations were not uncapable of Salvation, provided they had a *Muscovite* Soul, and that they lived justly in the sight of God. He shew'd us also a Bible in his own Language ( for no *Muscovite* knows any other than his own and the *Sclavonian* ) and read to us the first Chapter of S. *John's* Gospel, which we found absolutely conformable to our Text. To which he added, that being once at *Reuel*, he had there had a conference with some of our Pastors, concerning the Holy Scripture; but that he could give them no great satisfaction, because he did not well understand the *German* Interpreter. He would have shewn us all the Church, but our Musketers coming in grumbled at it, and reproach'd him for having communicated too much to us. We gave him the tother Crown, for which he gave us many thanks, bowing his head to the very ground, and smiting it with his forehead. We intended to have made our repast upon the grass, but were hardly set, ere the wind turning for us, the Monk brings us another present of Turneps and Cowcumbers, telling us, that the kindness we had done him had obtain'd of S. *Nicholas* the good wind which was to carry us on in our Voyage.

The Muscovites do not condemn those of a contrary belief.

Corodiza. About 2. afternoon, we set off, made four leagues that day, and came at night to a Village called *Corodiza*: but finding it more pleasant to be by the water side, than in a Village, we caus'd our meat to dress'd there, and supp'd, while the Marriners, who made accompt to goe thence that night, took some hours rest.

Soliza. We slept not, but made sport with a young Bear, the *Pristaf* had brought us, which could shew a thousand tricks. After midnight we set forward, and got four leagues to the Village *Soliza*; where the *Pristaf*, who had stay'd at *Corodiza*, overtook us, bringing along with him his Host, who was a *Knez*, or *Muscovite* Prince, named *Roman Jovanovits*. He had treated him so well, that both were got drunk: however, seeing they were still desirous to drink, we supply'd them so well with *Aquavita* and Sack, whereof we had good store, that we laid them asleep.

Grunza. We got that day six leagues to a Village called *Grunza*, which the Country people had also absolutely forsaken, which oblig'd us to take up our Lodging in the Fields, in a Meadow near a great Pool, where we made three great fires: and in regard we had slept almost all day in the Boat, we spent some part of the night in telling of stories, and diverting our selves with the Bear. The Musketers, who had been somewhat busy with the *Aquavita*, entertain'd us with some feats of their activity. Here we saw abundance of Cranes, and counted, upon the Pool, above 300 of them.

Wisoko. The next day, *Jul. 26.* about three in the morning we prosecuted our Voyage, and before noon got four leagues, to the Village of *Wisoko*. The *Pristaf*, whom we had invited to dinner, hearing the name of *Jesus* pronounc'd, made the sign of the Cross several times upon his breast, and desir'd to have our Prayer in writing, and liked it so well, that he said, he could not have believ'd, that the *Germans* were so good Christians, and so just men.

Krisseuiza. The 27. all day, and the night following, we prosecuted our Voyage, so that the 28. with the day, we were come to the Village of *Krisseuiza*. There we staid that day, to give the *Pristaf* time to acquaint the Governour of *Novogorod* with our arrival, and to know his pleasure concerning our reception.

This Village is within 2 leagues of *Novogorod*, and about 600 paces from it is a very fair Monastery, which some call *Nachatim*, but it is commonly called *Krisseuiza Chrtina Spasof Monastir*. It is well built, and better situated, having an Abbot, 60 Monks, and 400 Country people to husband the grounds belonging to it: but it is oblig'd out of its Revenue to maintain a hundred men of the Garrison of *Novogorod*, for the service of the Great Duke.

The Ambassadors came to Novogorod. Brunits. The 29. we continu'd our Voyage, and came to *Novogorod*, within a league of which we met with some of our retinue, whom we had sent away from *Riga*, and who had expected us for several moneths with much impatience. They met us in a Boat, and express'd much joy at our arrival. The *Weywode* sent to our Inn, one Tun of Beer, another of Hydromel, and a Barrel of *Aquavita*; and we sent him a silver Cup, Vermilion gilt. We left *Novogorod* the 13. of *July*, and went 4 leagues farther by water, to *Brunits*, whence we finish'd our Journey by Land.

AUGUS. A Muscovian Procession. As we were dis-embarking our Baggage at *Brunits*, *August 1.* came to the River side a *Muscovian* Procession, to bless the water thereof. In the first place march'd two men, one carrying a Cross, having at the four corners the four Evangelists; the other, an old Image, painted, and cover'd with a clean linnen cloath. After them came a Priest pontifically vested, holding in his hands a wooden Cross, a good half foot wide, and singing in consort with a little Boy who carri-

carried a Book after him. Then came the Country people with their Wives and Children, those who were of age carrying a wax Candle. After all came one who seem'd to be the Clark of the Parish, having ten Tapers fastned together, all lighted. The Priest being come to the River side, spent half an hour or better in linging and reading: Then he took the wax Candles from the Clark, and extinguish'd them in the Water, in imitation of whom, the people did the like with theirs. Then the Priest dipp'd his Cross three several times in the Water, when he took it out letting it drop into a Balin destin'd for the preservation of that Water, which they esteem'd most sacred. This Ceremony over, the Women put their Children, great and small, into the Water, some with their shirts on, others naked. Those who needed not the assistance of others leap'd in themselves. Nay some brought their Horses to drink, that they might also participate of the vertue of that Holy Water. This done, the whole Procession return'd to the Church, where the Priest, having given the people his benediction, dismiss'd them.

About 4. afternoon, we got on Horse-back, after we had dispos'd our Baggage into 50. Wagons, and travell'd that day five leagues, to a Village nam'd *Crasnistansky*. The next, *August 2.* we travell'd eight leagues, and came at night to *Gan Chresta*. *Gan*, among the *Muscovites*, are those places where Travellers take fresh Horses.

The 3. we came to *Jazelbitza*, a little Village which the Country people had forsaken. There we met with this misfortune, that our Cook being gone two leagues further to provide our Supper, we could not come up to him, by reason of the badness of the way, so that we had a sleepless night of it. We met that day with several Officers, who, upon the Peace concluded between the *Polanders* and *Muscovites* at *Smolensko*, had desired leave to go to their own Habitations.

The 4. we met at *Simnogora*, where are fresh Horses to be taken up, with Colonel *Fuchs*; and the 6. at *Wolfolk*, with Colonel *Charles*. They both honour'd our Ambassadors with their visits, which occasioning entertainments, begat also those excesses and disorders which ordinarily attend them in *Germany*; in one whereof our Trumpetter mortally wounded one of our Muskettiers, without any injury done him by the other. We left the wounded person behind, and gave money to those who were to look to him. The Trumpetter was kill'd afterwards, after he had been entertain'd into the Great Dukes service, at our return from *Persia*.

The 5. we pass'd through a Village, which the Inhabitants had forsaken, to avoid quartering the *German* Souldiers, who had been disbanded near *Moscon*. We lodg'd at night in the Village *Columna*. In those parts, we found many great blue stones, which the Tyrant *John Basilouits*, had caus'd to be taken out of the Sepulchres, when he took the City of *Reuel*, having design'd them to be brought to *Mosco*; but news being come that he was dead, they were unladen in the high-way, where they have remain'd ever since.

The 7. we came *Budena*, a Village also; but at our entrance into it, our Horses began to wince, stand upon their hinder feet, and beat the ground, as if they had been bewitch'd, whereof we could not imagine what should be the cause, till that having alighted, we found them cover'd all over with Bees, which were beginning to fall upon us, and prosecuted their animosity so far, as to force us to keep them off with our Cloaks, and other Garments, and to go and take up our quarters in the Fields. We understood since, that it was a Stratageme of the Inhabitants, who had incens'd the Bees, purposely to prevent our lodging in the Village.

The 8. we came to a Stage where were fresh Horses, and so to *Torsock*, a little Town situate upon the descent of a Hill, not far from the High-way, fortified with Ramparts, and Bastions of wood. Bread, Beer, and Hydromel were there excellent good. The Ambassadors caused Huts to be made of boughs of Trees without the Town, where we Supp'd and Lodg'd that night.

The 9. we pass'd over two Torrents, one near *Torsock*, the other half a League from *Miedna*. We came at night to the Citie of *Tuere*, which is also on a Hill-side, as *Torsock*, but somewhat bigger. These two places have each of them their *Weywode*, or Governour. The latter hath its name from the River *Tuere*, which passes by it, as well as the *Wolga*, which continuing its course from this City, through *Muscovy* and *Tartary*, disembogues its self above 600 *German* Leagues thence (which make above 1500 *French*) in the *Caspian* Sea. It is already so broad in those quarters, that we were forc'd to make use of a Ferry-boat to cross it. We were lodg'd the other side of the City, in the Suburbs. This was our last stage for fresh Horses, till we came to *Moscon*.

*August 13.* we came to a Village called *Nichola Nachinski*, two Leagues from *Moscon*, whence our *Pristaf* dispatch'd an Express to give notice of our arrival.

The 14. the *Pristaf*, attended by his Interpreter and Secretary, came to Complement the Ambassadors, giving them thanks for the kind treatment he had receiv'd from them, and making an Apology for the ill they might have receiv'd from him. We presented him with a Vermilion Gilt-Cup, and gave some ten or twelve Crowns among the rest. The same day, the Messenger sent by the *Pristaf* return'd from *Moscon*, and oblig'd us to prepare for our Entrance, which we made the same day in the order following.

1634.

1. The *Strelits*, or *Muscovian* Musketeers, who had convoy'd us, march'd in first.
2. After them, *Jacob Scheve*, our Harbinger, *Michael Cordes*, Captain of the ship, and *John Algueyer*, Clark of the Kitchin, all three abreast.
3. Three led Horses, to be presented to the Great Duke; one, black, and two, dappled-grey.
4. A Trumpetter.
5. Marshall, or Steward.
6. Three of our Gentlemen a-breast.
7. Three more of our Gentlemen.
8. The Secretary, Physician, and Controller.
9. The Ambassadors, attended each, by a Guard of four, with their Carabines, having on their right hand, but a little distance, the *Pristaf* who had conducted them.
10. The six Pages, in two ranks.
11. A Coach with four grey Horses.
12. The Master of the Waggon, with eight others, three in a rank.
13. The Presidents design'd for the Great Duke, carry'd in five Litters, covered with *Turkie* Tapistry.
14. An open Waggon, wherein *Simon Frifins* lay sick.
15. Forty six Waggon, loaded with baggage.
16. Three Servants.

Having march'd in this order, very slowly, till we came within half a League of the City; we met ten Courriers ( or Messengers ) who came one after another with full speed towards us, to acquaint the *Pristaf* with the place, where they were whose Office it was to receive us; with order, one while, to march on very slowly, another, to make more haste, to the end we should be much about the same time with them at the place appointed for our reception. We saw also several *Muscovites*, very well mounted and richly clad, who only rid at some distance from us, and return'd having taken a view of us. Within a quarter of a League of the City, we pass'd through a Body of above 4000 *Muscovites*, all excellently well mounted and sumptuously clad. Most of the *Suedish* Ambassadors retinue came also to meet us, but were not permitted to come near us, so that we could only salute them at a distance.

Within a Pistol shot thence we saw coming towards us, two *Pristafs* clad in coats of Purpled Satin mounted on two gallant white Horses. Instead of Bridles, they had Chains of silver, whereof the links were two inches broad, but no thicker than the back of a knife, and of such a compass as that a man might thrust in his fist into them, which made a strange noise as the Horses went along. The Great Duke's Master of the Horse followed them, with twenty led Horses all white, and was accompany'd by a great number of persons both a foot and a horse-back. When the Ambassadors and *Pristafs* were alighted, the antienter of the two uncover'd himself, and said; *The Grand Seigneur, Czaar, and Great Duke, Michael Federouits, conservator of all the Russians, Prince of Vladimir, Mosco, Novogorod, Czaar of Cassan, Czarr of Astrachan, Czaar of Siberia, Lord of Plescon, Great Duke of Tuersky, Jagersky, Premsky, Wadsky, Bolgarsky, &c. Lord and Great Duke of Novogorod in the Low Countries, Commander of Rosansky, Rostofsky, Gerasstafsky, Besolerski, Udorski, Obadorski, Condinski, and of all the North, Lord of the Countries of Iveria, Czaar of Kartalinski and Ingusinski, Prince of the Countries of Kabardinski, Cyrcaski, and Iorkski, Lord and Sovereign of many other Seigneries, receives you, as great Ambassadors from the Duke of Sleswick, Holstein, Stormarie and Ditmars, Count of Oldenbourg and Delmenborst. He grants you and the Gentlemen of your retinue the favour to make your entrance upon his own Horses, and hath appointed us *Pristafs* to have a care of you, and so to furnish you with all things necessary, during your aboad at Mosco. To which Complement when the Ambassador *Crusius* had made answer, there were brought two very stately white Horses, with Saddles after the *German* fashion, Embroider'd with Gold and Silver, with Footh-cloaths, and Harnes's suitable.*

As soon as the Ambassadors were mounted, the *Pristaf* and Musketeers, who had conducted us from the Frontiers, were drawn off. There were brought also ten other white Horses for the chiefest of our retinue, with Saddles after the *Muscovian* fashion, of Cloath of Gold and Purpled Satin. The *Pristafs* took the Ambassadors between them, though in *Muscovy*, he is thought to have the more honourable place, who hath the right hand free. After them march'd the *Muscovian* Grooms of the stable, who had the coverings of their Saddles of Leopard-skins, Cloath of Gold, and Scarlet. The Cavalry we had seen in the fields, and the other *Muscovites*, came powring into the City with the Ambassadors, and accompany'd them to their Lodgings, within the white wall, in that quarter which is called *Czarski gorod*, that is to say, the City of the Czaar. We had assign'd us two Citizens houses built of wood, the *Pristaf* making this excuse, in the name of the Great Duke, that a fire having not only consum'd the ordinary house for the entertainment of Ambassadors, but also another great house appointed for our Lodgings, we could not possibly be better accommodated for the present; And indeed, at

The reception of the Ambassadors.

The *Pristafs* take the upper hand of the Ambassadors. Their Lodgings.



our entrance into the City, we had observed whole streets burnt down, the fire having been so violent, that it had reduc'd to ashes above five thousand houses: insomuch that most of the Inhabitants were forc'd to lodge in Tents and Huts. 1634.

Ere we had taken a view of our Lodging, the presents from the Great Duke's Kitchin and Cellar were brought us; viz. eight Sheep, thirty Capons and Pullets, great store of white and brown bread, and 22 sorts of drinks, Wine, Beer, Hydromel and Aquavitæ, all brought in by 32 *Muscovites*, who marching all in a file made the shew so much the greater. This done, the doors of our Lodging were lock'd upon us, and a Guard of twelve Musketers set, to prevent all communication between us and the Inhabitants, till after the first Audience. The *Priests* in the mean time fail'd not to visit us every day, to assure us of their readiness to serve us. They had also left with us an Interpreter, to facilitate the service which the Musketers were oblig'd to do us in the buying of our Provisions and other things. This Interpreter was a *Muscovite* born, and had been taken prisoner by the *Polanders*; by which means he fell into the hands of Prince *Ianus Radzivil*, who brought him to *Leipsig*, where he learnt the *German* Tongue.

The Great Dukes refreshing present to the Ambassadors. They are under a Guard.

Aug. 15. The *Muscovites* celebrated the Feast of our B. Lady's ascension, and the same day ended a Fast they had begun the first of that moneth. The 17. was design'd for our first Audience; but the Great Duke being gone out of the City to do his Devotions, we spent the day in giving God our humble thanks for his happy conduct of us to the place for which our Embassy was design'd. We caus'd *Te Deum* to be sung, with Musick, and our Minister to make a Sermon, at which, as also at the Dinner which follow'd it, was present, by permission of the Great Duke, M. *Balthazar Moucheron*, who manag'd the Affairs of the Duke of *Holstein at Mosco*, in the quality of Commissary. He told us, that the *Muscovites* thought our entrance very handsome, and wondred much that *Germany* should have Princes able to send so considerable an Embassy. They give all strange Princes the quality of *Knez*, though their *Knez* are properly no more than what Gentlemen are with us, and, those excepted who have publick employments relating to the State, the rest have no great Estates, it may be, about 800. or 1000 *per annum*.

The 18. The two *Priests* came to acquaint us that the Great Duke would give us publick Audience the next day. They desir'd also, in the Chancellors name, a Catalogue of the presents we were to make his Majesty. After Dinner, the younger *Priest* came to confirm the notice they had given us in the morning, viz. that on the morrow we should have the honour to kiss the Great Dukes hand. We ask'd him what the discharging of the great Guns the day before meant, and the shooting we had seen out of our Windows in a great Meadow. He told us, it was only to make tryal of some pieces which the Great Duke had lately order'd to be cast. Others said, that they had been discharg'd, only to make it appear that the *Muscovites* had not lost all their Artillery before *Smolensco*, as some would have had it believ'd.

Aug. 19. The *Priests* came to see whether we were ready for Audience; and having perceiv'd that our men had put on their best Cloaths, and that all was in readiness, they went immediately to give notice thereof at the Castle, whence were brought us the white Horses which we had at our Entrance. About 9 of the Clock the *Priests* return'd to us, having their stript-satin Coats carried after them, as also their Caps of Martins skins, which they left in the Ambassadors Antichamber. We mounted with our Cloaks on, but no Swords, none being permitted to wear any in the Great Dukes presence, and rode towards the Castle, the Cavalcade being as followeth.

The Ambassadors Cavalcade

In the front, march'd 36 Musketers.

After them our Steward.

Three Gentlemen of the Ambassadors retinue.

Three other Gentlemen.

The Commissary, Secretary, and Physician.

After them went the Presents, led and carried by *Muscovites*; viz. One Horse coal-black, with a rich covering.

One, dapple grey.

Another, dapple-grey.

Harnes for one Horse, set out with Silver, and enrich'd with Turkish Stones, Rubies, and other precious Stones, carried by two *Muscovites*.

One Cross of Chrysolite enchac'd in Gold, about half a foot long, carried in a Basin.

An Ebony Cabinet, garnish'd with Gold, like a little Apothecaries Shop, with its Boxes and Vials of Gold, enrich'd with precious Stones, full of several excellent Chymical extractions, carried by two *Muscovites*.

A small Vessel of Rock-Christal, garnish'd with Gold, and beset with Rubies.

A great Looking-Glass, being an ell and a quarter high, and half an ell broad, in an Ebony frame, with Boughs and Fruits carv'd thereon in Silver, carried by two *Muscovites*.

1634.

A Clock, on which was represented, in painting, the Parable of the Prodigal Child.

A Walking-Staff, Vermilion Gilt, in which was a piece of Perspective.

A great Ebony Clock, in an Ebony Case, garnish'd with Silver.

Next went two Gentlemen of the Chamber, carrying up on high in the Air, the Credential Letters from his Highness, one to the Great Duke, the other to the Patriarch his Majesties Father. His name was *Philaretus Nikidits*; He dy'd after our departure from *Holstein*, but we were told it would not be amiss to make it known we had Letters of credence for him.

Then follow'd the Ambassadors between the two *Pristafs*, having before them the Interpreters, on each side four Lacqueys, and behind them, the Pages.

It was, from our Lodging to the Castle a good quarter of a *German* league, there being above 2000 Strelits or Musketers dispos'd on both sides of the street, to make us free passage to the place of Audience. The streets, windows and houses tops were full of people, who were come from all quarters of the City to see our Cavalcade. We march'd in very good order, halting and advancing according to the orders, which the Courriers, who rid with full speed from the Castle, brought our *Pristafs*; to the end we might come to the Hall of Audience, just as the Great Duke were fate in his Throne.

Being come into the Castle-Court, we pass'd before the *Pofolsky Prechase*, or the Chancery for strangers affairs, where we alighted. After the Officers, and Gentlemen had taken their places, to wit, the Steward, in the head of the Presents, and the Gentlemen, with the other Officers, immediately before the Ambassadors, we were brought to Audience. The Hall for Audience is on the right hand of the Cour: when there come any Ambassadors from *Persia*, *Turky*, or *Tartary*, they are carried up a stone pair of stairs on the right hand; but in regard we were Christians, we took the left hand, and were led through a vaulted Gallery, purposefully that we might pass by a very fair Church, where they were then at service. Before we came into the Hall, we saw, in a spacious vaulted apartment, abundance of people, and among others many antient Men, venerable for their long snowy beards, whereof some fate, others stood along the walls, all clad in long Coats of stript Satin, and Caps of Martins skins: they told us they were his Majesties *Gofes*, that is, his principal Merchants or Factors, who had those habits out of the Great Dukes Wardrobe, that they might honour him in those kinds of Ceremonies, conditionally they return'd them as soon as they were over.

The Ambassadors being come to the door of the Antichamber, they met with two *Bojares*; or Lords, clad in Coats of Purpled Satin, cover'd with an embroidery of great Pearls, who were to receive them at their Entrance. They told them that his *Czaarick* Majesty did them, and the Gentlemen of their retinue, the favour of admitting them into his Presence. The Presents were stay'd in the Antichamber, and they conducted into the Hall the Ambassadors with the Officers, Gentlemen, and Pages, there going before them *John Hermes*, the Great Dukes principal Interpreter. As soon as he had set his foot within the Hall; he saluted his Majesty with a loud voice, wishing him all prosperity and long life, and acquainted him with the arrival of the Ambassadors. The Hall was square, and vaulted, hang'd and floor'd with Tapestry. The roof was gilt, and had several Sacred Stories painted therein. The Great Duke's Chair was opposite to the door, against the wall, rais'd from the floor three steps, having at the four corners Pillars which were Vermilion Gilt, about three inches about, with each of them, at the height of an ell and a half, an Imperial Eagle of Silver, near which the Canopy or upper part of the Chair rested upon the same Pillars: besides which the said Chair had at the four Corners as many little Turrets of the same stuff, having also, at the ends, Eagles, after the same manner. We were told there was another Chair of State a-making, about which were bestow'd 1600 Marks of Silver, and 120 ounces of Ducat-gold for the gilding, and that it would amount to above 25000 Crowns. The designer of it was a *German*, born at *Nuremberg*, his name, *Efsay Zinkgraf*.

The Great Duke fate in his Chair, clad in a long Coat, embroider'd with Pearls, and beset with all sorts of precious Stones. He had above his Cap, which was of Martins-skins, a Crown of Gold, beset with great Diamonds, and in his right hand a Scepter of the same Metall, and no less rich, and so weighty, that he was forc'd to relieve one hand with the other. On both sides of his Majesties Chair stood young Lords, very handsome, both as to Face and Body, clad in long Coats, of white Damask, with Caps of a Linx's skin, and white Buskins, with Chains of Gold, which crossing upon the breast, reach'd down to their hips. They had laid over their shoulders each a Silver Ax, whereto they put their hands, as if they had been going to give their stroke. On the right side of the Chair, upon a Pyramid of Silver carv'd thorough, stood the Imperial Apple, of massy Gold, representing the World, as big as a Canon-bullet of 48 pound weight; and at a like distance, on the same side, a Balin and Ewer and a Napkin, to wash and wipe the Great Dukes hands, after the Ambassadors and those of their retinue had kiss'd them. The principal *Bojares* or Lords of the Court, to the number of fifty, were all set upon Benches by the wall-side, on one side, and opposite to the Great Duke

Duke, very richly clad, with great Caps, of a black Fox furr, a good quarter of an ell high. 1634. The Chancellor stood on the right hand, some five paces from the chair.

They having made a low reverence at their Entrance, were plac'd in the midst of the The Ceremonies of the audience. Hall opposite to the Great Duke, and about ten paces from him, having behind them the Officers and Gentlemen of their retinue, on the right, the two Gentlemen who carry'd the Credential Letters, which they held before them, and on the left, the Interpreter *John Helmes*. This done, the Great Duke made a sign to the Chancellor, that he should tell the Ambassadors, that his Majesty granted them the favour to do him reverence. The Ambassadors went one after another, and kiss'd his right hand, which he very gracefully reach'd to them, and with a smiling countenance, taking the Scepter in the mean time in his left hand. Now it is to be observed, that in these ceremonies, he who kisses the Great Duke's hand is not to touch it with his own, and that only the Ambassadors of Christian Princes have the honour to kiss it, which the *Turks* and *Persians*, much less the *Tartarians*, have not.

This Ceremony ended, he caus'd the Chancellor to tell them, that if they had ought to propose from their Prince, they might do it. Whereupon the Ambassador *Crusius* made him a complement from the Duke our Master, and his condolences for the death of the Patriarch his Father, adding, that his Highness hoping we should have found him living, had given them Letters of Credence for him, and that they had brought them along with those his Highness writ to his Majesty. Whereupon he took the Letters from those that held them, and was advancing to deliver them; but the Great Duke made a sign to the Chancellor to take them, and having commanded him to come to him, he whisper'd in his ear the answer he would make the Ambassadors. The Chancellor being return'd to his place, said, *The Grand Seigneur Czar, and Great Duke, &c.* tells thee, *Philip Crusius*, and thee, *Orton Brugman*, Ambassadors from the Duke of *Holstein*, that he hath received the Letters of his Highness, that he will order them to be translated, and he will acquaint you with his intention by his *Bojares*, and that he will make answer thereto. The Chancellor, who had not uncover'd himself, no more than the other Lords, took off his Cap when he pronounc'd the name of his Majesty, or that of his Highness of *Holstein*.

This done, The Ambassadors were seat'd on a Bench cover'd with a *Turkie* Carpet, which was set behind them, and the Chancellor told them, that the Great Duke was pleas'd that their Officers and Gentlemen should have the honour of kissing his hand. Which done, the Great Duke rais'd himself up a little in his Chair, and said to the Ambassadors, *Knez Frederic jescha sdorof?* Is Duke *Frederick* in good health? Whereunto it was answer'd, that at our departure we had left him very well, *God grant a good life and a long, and all happiness to his Majesty and Highness.*

Then was brought in a List of the Presents, which were sent in with it, and stood some time before the Great Duke, till the Chancellor ordered them to be taken away. The said Chancellor presently after told the Ambassadors, that the *Czar and Great Duke of all the Russians, Lord and Sovereign of many Seignories, &c.* was further pleas'd they should speak of their Affairs; but they desir'd, that, to avoid doing any thing prejudicial to the Treatise made between the Crown of *Sueden* and his Highness, concerning the Commerce of *Persia*, they might have a private Audience together; which was accordingly granted. After this, the Great Duke caus'd them to be asked, whether they were in health, and whether they wanted any thing, giving them notice, that that day he would do them the favour to treat them with meat from his own Table. This was the first publick Audience the Ambassadors had. They were brought back to the Antichamber by the same *Bojares* who had receiv'd them at their entrance. We mounted at the same place where we alighted, and return'd to our Lodgings, accompany'd by our *Prisafs*, in the same order as we had gone thence. We were hardly alighted ere there came in one of the Gentlemen of the Great Duke's Chamber. He was of the quality of the *Knez*, to The Grand Duke treats the Ambassadors. which his countenance and behaviour was suitable, being of great stature, magnificently clad, excellently well mounted and attended, and had been sent by the Great Duke, to treat the Ambassadors at Dinner. As soon as he was come in, he caus'd the cloath to be laid, on which were in the first place set, a Salt-feller, and two Vinegar-dishes of Silver, and certain drinking-cups, whereof three were of Gold, and two others of Silver, and so big, that they were above a foot diameter, a great Knife and some Forks. This Lord, seating himself at the end of the Table, ordered the Ambassadors to sit down by him, the Gentlemen standing before them. He caus'd to be set on the Table before the Ambassadors three great vessels full of Sack, Rhenish-Wine, and Hydromel, and caus'd the meat to be serv'd out, on 38. great Silver Dishes, which consisted in boil'd, rosted and pastry. All being serv'd, the *Knez* rise, caus'd the Ambassadors to come before the Table, and told them, there was the Provision which the *Czar* had commanded him to entertain them withall, praying them to be pleas'd with the treatment. Then he took the great Cup, which he caus'd to be fill'd with excellent good Hydromel, made with Raspices and having drunk his Majesties health, he caus'd as much to be given the Ambassadors, and all their retinue, obliging us to drink the Great Duke's health all at the same time. Some of us would

1634. would have reach'd their arms over the Table, to take the Gobelet, but the *Muscovites* would not suffer it, saying, that Table then represented the Great Duke's, who permits none to go behind his Table, and so oblig'd them to come round about and take the Cup. This health was follow'd by that of our Prince, which he began to the Ambassadors, saying, *God grant health and prosperity to his Highness, and make him long to continue in a good correspondence and amity with his Majesty.* The third health was that of the Prince, the Great Duke's son. This done, they fate to the Table, and some Gobelets of a Wine made of Cherries and Mulberries were drunk about. The Ambassadors presented him with a Vermilion-gilt cup, of the weight of three Marks and a half, which he caus'd to be carried before him, as he return'd to the Castle.

Aug. 20. The *Pristafs* came to tell us, that the Great Duke was pleas'd we should go abroad, and gave us the liberty to walk about the City, and to that end Horses should be brought us from his own stables, when ere we should desire it. We were also permitted to visit the *Suedish* Ambassadors, and to receive their Visits. All which were thought so great favours, that the *Muscovites* themselves were astonish'd at it; for till then it had not been suffer'd, that the Domesticks of strange Ambassadors should walk about the City, but, when their occasions oblig'd them to go abroad, they were accompany'd by one or more of the Musketers. Two dayes after, the *Pristaf* accompany'd by a Groom of the Great Duke's stables, brought us six horses, and conducted us to the Lodgings of the *Suedish* Ambassadors, whom we saw several times after, and held a very fair correspondence with them.

Aug. 23. The Ambassadors would have invited to Dinner Dr. *Wendelin*, the Physician, the Apothecary, and some other servants of the Great Duke; but the Chancellor would not suffer them to come, and forbad them seeing us for three dayes; of which rigorous treatment we could have no accompt, till afterwards, that we were told, it was, because, the Presents had not yet been valu'd, among which was the Cabinet made like an Apothecaries shop, we spoke of before, which could not be valu'd but by them.

The 24. Came before *Moscou Arnald Spirin*, Farmer General of the Customs in *Livonia*, through which he had pass'd, and was sent by the Crown of *Sueden* to be present at the Negotiation, which the Ambassadors thence were to manage for Commerce, wherein he was very well vers'd. The *Muscovites*, who knew him, made some difficulty to entertain him in that quality; but perceiving the *Suedes* took it ill, they were at last content to do it, and sent a *Pristaf* to meet and receive him.

SEPTEMBER. *September 1.* The *Muscovites* celebrated the first day of their New year; for having no other Epouche than that of the Creation of the World, which they believe to have been in Autumn, they begin the year with the Moneth of *September*, and they accompted then 7142 years, according to the opinion of the *Greeks*, and the Eastern Church, which count 5508. from the Creation of the World to the birth of Christ; wherero add 1634. you will find the number 7142. whereas we accompt from the Creation of the World to the same year 1634. but 5603 years. Their Procession was handsom enough, consisting of above 20000 persons, of all ages, who were admitted into the outer Court of the Castle. The Patriarch, attended by almost 400 Priests, all Pontifically habited, and carrying a many Banners, Images, and old Books open, came out of the Church, which is on the right hand of the second Court, while the Great Duke came out on the left hand of the same Court, accompany'd by his Councillours of State, *Knez*, and *Bojares*. The Great Duke and the Patriarch advanc'd one towards the other, and kiss'd, the Duke having his Cap in his hand; and the Patriarch, who had a Mitre on his head, held in his hand a Golden Cross, about a foot long, beset with Diamonds and other precious stones, which he presented to the Great Duke to kiss. That done, the Patriarch gave his Majesty his Benediction, as also to all the people, wishing them all prosperity in the New year. There were many *Muscovitis* who held their Petitions in the air, and, their way of presenting them to the Great Duke, was, to cast them with no small noise at his feet, whence certain Officers gather'd them up, to be carried to his Majesties chamber, that they might be answer'd. This done, the Processions parted, and return'd to the place from whence they came.

Sept. 3. *Gillenstiern*, *Bureus*, and *Spiring*, who were to Negotiate joyntly with us concerning the Passage into *Persia*, were conducted to their publick audience, with the same Ceremonies as we had been, while the two other *Suedish* Ambassadors, Mr. *Philip Scheiding*, and Col. *Henry Fleming* were to treat in private, of the difference which were between the Crown of *Sueden* and the Great Duke. The Three former desired in their audience to be receiv'd joyntly with us, to treat with those whom it should please his Majesty to appoint for that purpose: which was granted.

Hereupon, all the Ambassadors, as well the *Suedish* as ours, went the 5th to the Castle. They were at first conducted into a spacious apartment, on the left hand, where they found the same *Gofes*, or Merchants, and in the same habits, as we had seen at our first Audience. Thence they went into a Hall, where the four Commissioners appointed to treat with us, were fate at a Table expecting us. They were, two *Bojares*, and two Chancellors, or Secretaries

of State, very richly clad, having Coats of stript Satin, embroidered with very great Perls and other precious stones, and great Golden Chains which made a Cross upon their breasts. The *Bojares* had Caps, after the fashion of calotts, beset with Perls, having in the midst a clustre of Diamonds and precious Stones. The other two had their Caps of black-fox fur, according to the ordinary fashion. They receiv'd the Ambassadors very civilly, and intreated them to sit down by them; but with all their civility they took up the best places themselves, at one corner of the Hall, where the benches joyn'd. The Ambassadors took up theirs neer them against the Wall; and there was brought a seat without any back, for the Chancellors or Secretaries of State, opposite to the others. *John Helmes*, the Great Duke's chief Interpreter, stood among our *Pristafs*, and all the Gentlemen, with all the rest of our retinue, stay'd in the Antichamber, except only the two Secretaries of the *Suedish* Ambassy and ours, as many Interpreters, and a *Muscovite* Clark, who was taken in to take notes of what was treated of. All having taken their places, one of the *Bojares* ask'd the Ambassadors, whether they were supply'd with necessary provisions, or wanted any thing? The Ambassadors made answer, that they had occasion rather to commend those who had the management thereof, and that they gave his Majesty their most humble thanks for his care of them. After this complement, all rise up, and being uncover'd, the more considerable of the two *Bojares*, said, *The Grand Seigneur Czaar and Great Duke* (reciting all his Titles, and being all sat down again, he went on) gives you to understand, you Lords Ambassadors from the Crown of *Sueden*, and Duke of *Holstein*, that he hath caus'd your Letters to be translated into the *Muscovian* Language, and that he hath also hearkned to the Propositions you made to him, at the publick audience he gave you. Upon that they all rose again, and the other *Bojare*, uncovering himself, said, *The Grand Seigneur, Czaar and Great Duke*, &c. (not omitting any of the former titles, and so sitting down, continued) wishes the Queen of *Sueden* and the Duke of *Holstein* all prosperity, and victory over their Enemies, and tells you, that he hath read their Letters, and that he well understands their intention. The third Commissioner proceeded with the same Ceremonies, saying, *The Grand Seigneur*, &c. hath seen the Letters you have brought him, is satisfy'd, that all credence is to be given you in what you shall say and propose, which shall accordingly be done. To which the fourth added, That his Majesty, the *Czaar*, had appointed them Commissioners, to receive from them, what they had to propose and desire; and thereupon read the names of the Commissioners, who were:

*Knez Boris Michaelonits, Likow Obolenscoi, Weywode of Tuere*

*Knez Vasilii Juanonits Stresnow, Weywode of Tarschock*

The two Secretaries of State, whom they call *Dumnoi Diaken*, were,

*Juan Tarasconits Granmatin*, Lord Keeper of the Seals or Chancellor, &c.

*Juan Offonassowfin Gauaarenow*, Vicechancellor.

This done, they all rise, and one of the *Suedish* Ambassadors, *Eric Gillenstierna*, having given his Majesty thanks on the behalf of his Mistribs, for their admission to a private audience, read to the Commissioners their proposition, contained in one sheet of paper, written in the the *German* tongue. We would have done the like with ours; but being larger than the other, to forbear importuning the Commissioners, we thought it enough to put it in with that of the *Suedish* Ambassadors. The Commissioners, having receiv'd them, went up to the Great Duke's Chamber, to communicate them to him, leaving us alone, save that the *Pristafs* and Gentlemen of our retinue were permitted to come into the room to entertain us. Having expected a good half-hour, the Vice-chancellor came down to tell us, that we should have no other answer at that time, than that his Majesty would cause the propositions to be translated, and would let us know his resolution with the soonest.

Sept. 10. The *Suedish* Ambassadors had their last private audience, as to what concern'd the affairs of that Crown.

The 12. We saw a Cavalcade of three *Tartarian* Ambassadors. sent by the Prince of *Cassan*, <sup>A Tartari</sup> an Caval-  
a Vassal of the Great Duke's. They had no other retinue or company than that of sixteen ser-  
vants, who follow'd them, with their Bows and Arrows in their hands. Their Cassocks, were  
of a very coarse red cloath; but at their return from audience, they were in Damask coats, some  
red, some yellow, which the Great Duke had bestow'd on them by way of present. There  
hardly passes a year, but these Gentlemen, as well as the other Tartars their Neighbours, send  
such an Ambassy to *Moscou*; not so much for any business they have, as to get some Furs,  
Martins skins, and silk Vestments.

The 15. Our *Pristafs* came to tell us, that the Great Dutchess was, the day before, deliver'd of a Daughter, who was already Christned, and nam'd *Sophia*, according to the custom of the *Muscovites*, who baptize their Children immediately after their birth, and without any Ceremonies or entertainments, as they do in other Countreys. The Patriarch was her Godfather, as he had been to all the rest of the Great Duke's Children, who would nevertheless have

1634. have us to participate of that joy, upon which account, our ordinary allowance was doubled.

The entrance of a Turkish Ambassador. The 17. Came in a Turkish Ambassador, who was receiv'd with great Ceremonies; and though they sent 16000 Horse to meet him, yet in all that Army there were seen but six Colours. The first, which was that of the Duke's Guard, was of white Satin, and had in the midst, within a circle of Laurel, an Imperial Eagle with a triple Crown, with this Motto, *Virtute supero*. One of Crimson Damask branch'd, having in the midst a *Janus* with two faces. One of a plain red Damask; and the other three, blew and white, whereof one had a Gryffon, another, a Snail; the third, a naked Arm coming out of the Clouds, and holding a sword. 'Tis thought these were the devises of the German Officers, during the War at *Smolensko*. Every Colour was attended by Timbrels and Hautbois, but the white had six Trumpets, which made a wretched inharmonious noise. The *Knez* and Lords that were sent to meet this Ambassadors, were excellently well mounted, upon Horses that came out of *Persia*, *Poland*, and *Germany*, very richly set out, having with them out of the Great Dukes Stable, twenty led Horses, with great silver Chains instead of Bridles, such as we have mention'd before.

We, with the Gentlemen and Officers of the Swedish Officers retinue, made up a Troop of fifty Horse, under the command of *Wolfwolf Spar*, Gentleman of the Horse to the Swedish Embassy, who, as our Captain, march'd in the head of the Troop. We went a good league to meet the Ambassador, who no sooner perceiv'd us, but he look'd very earnestly upon us; and we upon him. We kept along with him a good while, to take the better notice of his retinue, and Cavalcade, which march'd in the order following.

First, march'd 46 Strelits, having, instead of Muskets, Bows and Arrows, and Cimitars by their sides. After them came a *Pristaf* clad in a Coat of Brocado, and follow'd by eleven Men, clad in Red Branched Velvet, whereof some were *Grecian* and *Turkish* Merchants, some *Greek* Ecclesiasticks. After them march'd the Ambassador's Steward, alone, and behind him a Guard of four, with Bows and Arrows. After them two Cavalliers very richly clad, immediately preceding the Ambassador, who march'd alone. He was a middle-statur'd Man, much tann'd in the face, his Beard very black: His under-coat was of a White-Flower'd Satin, and his upper Garment of Satin purpled with Gold, lined with Martins-skins. His Turbant was white, as were also those of his retinue. He was in a sorry Wagon, of a white kind of Wood, but all cover'd with rich Tapestry. The rest of his Train consisted in above forty Waggon of Baggage, which were every one kept by one or two Boys. Being come within a quarter of a league of the City, near, as he imagin'd, the place where the *Muscovites* would receive him, he mounted an excellent *Arabian* Horse. Nor indeed had he rode a Pistol-shot, ere he met the two *Pristafs* appointed for his reception, with the Great Duke's Horses, according to the custom. The *Pristafs* continued on Horsback, till the Ambassador had alighted; but he, on the other side, stirr'd not his Turbant, though the *Muscovites* took off their Caps, when they pronounc'd the Great Duks name.

After this first Complement, the *Pristafs* immediately mounted; the Ambassador did what he could to be in the Saddle as soon as they, or sooner; but they had brought him a very high Horse (with a Saddle yet much higher, according to the *Muscovian* fashion) and so skittish withal, that he not only found some difficulty to get up, but very narrowly escap'd being hurt by him. Being got up, the *Pristafs* took him between them, and conducted him to the ordinary place for the entertainment of Ambassadors, which had been built up since our coming thither. As soon as he was got in, the doors were shut, and several Guards of Musketers plac'd about it.

Our Ambassadors intended to have gone that day to those of *Sueden*, who had invited them to dinner, to shew them the *Turks*, who were lodg'd near them, the *Suedes* having a prospect into their Court: but the Chancellor sent to desire us not to stir abroad that day, for reasons he could not discover.

The 19. We had the second private Audience with the Swedish Ambassadors.

The 23. The Turkish Ambassador had his first publick Audience, to which he went in this order.

The Turkish Ambassadors first audience. In the Front march'd 20 *Cosaques*, mounted on white Horses, out of the Great Duke's stables: after them, the *Turkish* and *Greek* Merchants; and then the Presents, viz.

Twenty pieces of Satin stript with Gold, carried by so many *Muscovites*, who march'd all in a file.

A Golden Cross, about a fingers length, beset with several large Diamonds, carried by a *Muscovite* in a Basin.

A Vessel of Rock-Chrystal, adorn'd with Gold, and enrich'd with precious Stones.

A Belt or Girdle for a Cimitar, enrich'd with Gold, and beset with precious Stones.

A Pearl of great bigness, laid on a piece of water'd Taffata, in a Basin.

Harnes for two Horses, embroider'd with Gold, and set with Pearls.

A very fair Diamond-ring, in a Basin.

A Ruby, as big as a Crown piece of Silver, enchac'd in Gold, in a Basin.

A very fair Battel-Ax, which they call *Bulaf*, form'd like a Scepter.

After the Presents march'd eight *Turks*, two a-breast, and after them, two very handsome young men, carrying upon great pieces of silk, the Credential Letters, which though folded, were yet at least half an ell wide. The *Greek* Ecclesiasticks were not in the Cavalcade, but had their Audience by themselves the 28. following. Two *Muscovy* Priests went to them at their Lodgings, and conducted them to the Castle, where they met a great number of Priests, who accompany'd them to their audience. Their presents were;

1634.

Six Basins with Relicks, or a parcel of Bones, whereof some were gilt.

Linings for a Priest's Cope, embroider'd with Gold and Perls.

A Head-stall for a Horse, beset with precious Stones.

Two pieces of Satin purpled with Gold.

One Priest's Cope.

One piece of silver'd Taby, with flowers of Gold.

The *Greeks* march'd after the Presents, clad in Violet Chamlet, and had a Cross carried before them.

Our Ambassadors had also Letters from the Elector of *Saxony* to the Great Duke, and thought fit to deliver them at a Publick Audience, for which was appointed St. *Michael's* day, *Sept. 29.* We went in the same order as the time before, and the Letters were carried *M. Uchterits* upon black and yellow *Taffata*, which are the Elector's Colours. The Great Duke receiv'd them with much kindness, enquir'd after the health of his Electoral Highness, and commanded we should once more be furnish'd with meat from his own Table; which indeed was brought us, not ready dress'd as the former, but we were left to order it as we would our selves.

*October 1.* the *Muscovites* keep as one of their most solema Festivals, or *Prasnick*: the Ce- OCTOBER  
remonies, these. The Great Duke attended by the whole Court, and the Patriarch, accompa- A Muscov-  
ny'd by all the Clergy, went in Proceffion to the Church which is in the outer Court of the Ca- vian Festi-  
stle, called by the *Muscovites*, that of the *Blessed Trinity*, by the *Germans*, *Jernusalem*. But val.  
before they went into it, they turn'd aside to a place balcony'd about much after the form of a  
Theatre, on the right hand as you go to the Church, neer which place are two great pieces of  
Canon, whereof the bore is at least half an ell diameter. The Great Duke and the Patriarch,  
being got into it, not admitting any other, the Patriarch presented to his Majesty an Image  
painted upon a piece of past-board, which folded as it had been a book, enrich'd with silver in  
the middle, and at the four corners, to which Image the *Czaar* made a most low reverence, and  
touch'd it with his fore-head, the Priests in the mean time muttering over their Prayers. Which  
done, the Patriarch approaching the Great Duke again, presented him, to kiss it, a Golden  
Cross, of about a foot length, beset with Diamonds. He also touch'd his forehead with tem-  
ples with it: whereupon they all went into the Church, where they concluded the service.

The *Greeks* that came along with the *Turkish* Ambassador, went in also, by a priviledge particular to them, of all Christians, whom the *Muscovites* suffer not to enter their Churches; but they permit the *Greeks*, as such as profess the same Religion with them.

*Octob. 8.* we had our third private Audience, with the *Suedish* Ambassadors, and were above two hours in conference with the Great Duke's Ministers.

The 12. the Great Duke went on Pilgrimage, to a Church half a league from the City. He The Great  
rode alone on horseback, with a whip in his hand, and was follow'd by above 1000. horse. Duke goes  
The *Knez* and *Bojares* who attended him, march'd ten a-breast, which made a noble show, and a Pilgri-  
express'd the greatness of the Prince. The Great Dutcheff, with the young Prince and Prin- mage.  
cess, followed them in a large Chariot, all of Joyners work, cover'd with Scarlet, the curtains  
of yellow Taffata, drawn by sixteen white horses. After the Dutcheffe's, the Court-Ladies  
were carried in 22. other Chariots, of wood, painted green, covered with Scarlet, the curtains  
drawn close, so that those within could not be seen. I had the happiness, the wind having  
blown those of the Great Dutcheffs, a little on one side, to have a glimps of her, and I thought  
her very handsome, and very richly clad. On both sides march'd above a hundred *Strelits*, ha-  
ving white staves in their hands, to keep off the people, who were thronging to bless their Prin-  
cess, for whom the *Muscovites* have a particular respect and devotion.

The 23. we had, with the *Suedish* Ambassadors, our fourth private Audience, wherein we concluded our Negotiation, The 28. the *Suedish* had their last publick Audience in order to their departure, returning from which, they caus'd the Answer to their Letters, to be carried by two Gentlemen. The 7. and 10. of *November* they departed from *Mosco*, in three troops, some taking the way of *Livonia*, others that of *Sueden*.

*Nov. 19.* we had our fifth and last private Audience, at which it was told us, that NOVEMBER  
his *Czaarick* Majesty, having taken our propositions into serious consideration, had at last re-  
solv'd to gratifie his Highness the Duke of *Holstein*, as his Friend, Uncle, and Ally, as to  
what

1634. what he had desir'd of him, and to grant him, what he had deny'd many other Princes and Potentates of *Europe*, to wit, a passage through *Muscovy* to go into *Persia*, and that his Ambassadors might go thither, but with this proviso, that they should first return back to *Holstein*, and bring him the ratification of the present Treaty.

The Great Duke grants the Ambassadors a passage through his Country.

Having so happily, though with much difficulty, perfected our negotiation, we thought it not amiss, to divert our selves, for some days, among our friends; as we did at the Christening of a Child of the Residents of *Sueden*, at a feast which *Dr. Wendelin* made, at the marriage of a Kinsman of his, and at the magnificent entertainment which *David Ruts*, one of the chiefest Dutch Merchants there, gave us at his own house.

The 22. The *Muscovites* made a solemn Procession to a Church, near the ordinary place where the Ambassadors are entertain'd, at which the Great Duke and the Patriarch were present. There was a passage made with Deal-boards, from the Castle to the Church, along which came first several pedling Merchants, who sold wax Candles; after them, some that swept the passage and kept it clean. The Procession was thus.

- First, went a man carrying an Ewer, and a Napkin.
- Three men carrying Banners, like Cornet's Colours, half Red, half White.
- Sixty one Priests, in their Copes.
- Four Cherubins carried upon long poles.
- A man carrying a Lantern at the top of a long pole.
- Forty Priests.
- Eight Priests, carrying a great Cross, fasten'd in a great piece of timber, double-cross'd.
- A hundred Priests and Monks, carrying every one a painted Image.
- A great Image cover'd, carried by two men.
- Forty Priests.
- A great Image, adorn'd with abundance of precious Stones, carried by three men.
- Another lesser Image.
- Four Priests singing.
- Another Image.
- A Cross of Diamonds, in a Basin.
- Two men, carrying each a lighted Taper.
- The Patriarch, in Pontificalibus, very richly clad, under a blew Canopy, and led by the Arms by two Men, having behind, and on one side of him, about fifty Priests and Monks.
- The Great Duke under a red Canopy, supported by two Lords of his Counsel, and attended by his *Knez* and *Bojares*.
- The Great Duke's Chair of State, of red Velvet, carried by two men.
- The Great Duke's Horse.
- His S'edge, drawn by two white Horses.
- This Procession was occasion'd upon the finding of an Image of our Lady's in a certain place; where, since, there is a Church built.

A Cavalcade of Crim-Tartars.

December 12. We saw a Cavalcade of seventy two *Crim-Tartars*, who all took the quality of *Ambassadors*, and were going to have Audience, which the Great Duke gave them, and whereat he had the patience to endure them for the space of three hours. Being come into the Hall of Audience, some sat on the ground, others lay along, and there was given every one a Gobelet of Hydromel; to the two Chief of the Embassy, Garments of Brocado, to others of Scarlet, and to the most inconsiderable among them, Cloaths of some more common Stuff, with some Furrs, and Caps of Martins-skins, which they had upon their other cloaths, as they return'd from Audience. 'Tis a Nation absolutely barbarous and dreadful to look on. Though they are at a great distance from *Muscov*, towards the South, yet they do the Great Duke abundance of mischief by their incursions, and the robberies they incessantly commit upon his Subjects. The *Czaar*, *Fedor Juanovits*, the present Great Duke's Father, endeavour'd to prevent their incursions, by causing the Woods to be cut down, and by means of a Causeway and a Moat, which he had caus'd to be drawn a hundred leagues together, to hinder their entrance into his Country: but they never rested till they had pull'd down one, and fill'd the other; so that, to keep them at home, the Great Duke is oblig'd from time to time, to suffer these Embassies, the design whereof is only to get Presents, whereof the expence would not trouble the Great Duke, if they would keep the Barbarians quiet, but they continue in peace but till they perceive they can make any advantage by the breach of it.

The Ambassadors have their last Audience.

The 16. we had Audience, in order to our departure, to which we were conducted with the same Pomp and Ceremonies as to the first, save that by reason of the Ice and Snow, which hinder great Lords to make use of horses, they sent us two sumptuous Sledges, whereof one was lin'd with a Crimson water'd Satin, the other, with Damask of the same colour. There were within them some white Bears-skins, and over head rich *Turkie* Tapistry, to serve for a covering



ing. The Buckles of the Harnests were cover'd of all sides with Fox-tails, which is the richest Ornament, that the Great Lords, nay indeed the Great Duke himself, can make use of. The *Pristafs* had each his Sledge, and went on the right hand of the Ambassadors. At our alighting, we were receiv'd by two *Bojares*, after the accustomed manner. As soon as the Ambassadors were come into the Great Duke's presence, and that the Chancellor had given him an account of their health, a seat was brought, and they were intreated to sit down. Whereupon the Chancellor said, *The Grand Seigneur, Czaar, and Great Duke, Michael Federouits, Conservator of all the Russes, &c.* tells you the Lords Ambassadors, that his Highness, Duke *Frederick of Holstein*, having sent you to his *Czaarick* Majesty with the Letters which he hath received, he hath, upon your intreaty, caus'd your propolitions to be communicated unto and examined by his *Bojares* and Counsellors, *Knez Boris Michaelouits Lukou, Vasili Juanouits Strenou*; and the *Dumnoi, Diakan, Juan Tarassouits, and Juan Ganarenou*, upon which all sides are agreed to a Treaty which you have signed. His Majesty hath also received the Letters you brought him from *John-George*, Elector of Saxony, the contents whereof he hath also considered. You shall immediately receive his Majesties answer, both to Duke *Frederick*, of *Holstein*, and to the Elector *John-George*. Wherupon he deliver'd them the Letters before the Great Duke's Chair, and the Ambassadors having receiv'd them with much respect, the Great Duke said, *When the Ambassadors shall have arriv'd at the Court of the most Serene John-George, Elector of Saxony, and his Highness, Duke Frederick of Holstein, they will salute them from me.* Which done, they were told by the Chancellor, that his Majesty was pleas'd to grant the Ambassadors, and Gentlemen, and Officers of their retinue, the favour of kissing his hand once more.

That done, they told us, we should have meat sent from the Great Duke's own Table. The Ambassadors gave the *Czaar* thanks for all the favours they had receiv'd from him, wishing his Majesty long life and a happy Government, and, to the whole house of the *Czaar* all prosperity. Having taken their leaves, they return'd to their quarters. About an hour after, the meat from the Great Duke's Table was brought, in forty six dishes, most fish, boyl'd, broyl'd, and fry'd in Oyl, some Sallets and Pastry; but no flesh, by reason of the Fast which the *Muscovites* very rigorously observe before Christmas. *Knez Juan Wolf*, came along with them, to treat us, with the same ceremonies as we were treated with at our first publick audience. After Dinner, we were visit'd by the Groom of the Stables, the Butler, and the Pourveyer, who came to demand their Presents. The *Knez*, the Groom, and the Butler, had each of them a drinking Cup of Vermilion-gilt. The rest, who were about sixteen, had bestow'd among them 32. Roubles, which amount to about 64. French Crowns.

The next day, the two *Pristafs*, accompany'd by their Interpreters, *John Helmes*, and *Andrew Angler*, of whom the former had serv'd us in our Negotiation, with the Great Duke and the *Bojares*, the other, in our private affairs, came to ask us how many Horses we should stand in need of for our return. We demanded 80. and presented each of them with a large drinking Cup, of Vermilion-gilt. We did the like to the chief Secretary of the Chancery, and some of the great Lords.

The 21. Our *Pristafs* presented to us another *Pristaf*, named *Bogidan Tzergewits Gomodof*, who had orders to conduct us to the Frontiers of *Sueden*.

The next day were brought us the Horses appointed for our journey, and at the same time came, with one of our *Pristafs*, the Lord Treasurers Secretary, accompany'd by 12. *Muscovites*, loaden with Martins-skins, to be presented, from the Great Duke, to the Ambassadors, and those of their retinue. The Ambassadors had for their shares eleven Zimmers (every Zimmer makes twenty pair) of the best kind of Sables; The Officers, Gentlemen, Pages, Harbinger, the Clerk of the Kitchin, and the Master of the Wagons, had each a Zimmer of Martins-skins. The rest had some two, some but one pair. We gave the Secretary a drinking Cup, of Vermilion-gilt, and to the rest 30 Crowns. The Great Duke sent also to tell us, that if we would make a little longer stay at *Moscou*, by reason of the approaching Festivals of Christmas, and the cold weather, which indeed was to extremity, he should take it kindly, and, though we had our dispatches, yet should we be furnish'd with the ordinary provisions; but the desire we had to return into *Germany*, would not permit us to accept of his favour, so that we put all things in readines for our journey. To that end, we bought Sledges, that we might travel with more convenience; they standing us in but three or four Crowns apiece. But in regard we were to travel into *Persia*, having obtain'd the Great Dukes permission to do it, it was thought fit, that *Michael Cordes*, with six other persons of our retinue, should be sent to *Nisa*, which is a hundred Leagues from *Moscou*, there to order the building of such ships as we should stand in need of, as well upon the River *Volga*, as the *Caspian* Sea.

Decemb. 24. Was the day of our departure from *Moscou*, in order to our return. The two *Pristafs* came about noon, accompany'd by a certain number of Musketers, who had brought with them those two Sledges, which we had made use of at our last audience, and conducted us in very good order a quarter of a League from the City; where we took leave of them, as also of those friends who had brought us so far on our way.

1634. That day, and the night following, we made 90 Werstes, or eighteen German Leagues; to a Village named *Klin*, where the next day we had a Sermon, it being Christmas day. In the afternoon, we parted thence, and kept on our way all night, so that the next day in the morning, Decemb 26. we arriv'd at *Tuere*, where we took fresh Horses, with which departing that night, we came the next day to *Tarsock*. Four days after, viz. Decemb. 31. which was the 7<sup>th</sup>. after our departure from *Moscou*, we came to the City of *Novogorod*, which is distant from the other 120 German Leagues. Which is not to be much wondred at, for that *Muscovy* is a plain Country, and during the cold weather, many times the Horses travel upon the Snow ten or twelve German Leagues together without ever drawing bit.

1635. JANU- After Prayers and Sermon, we left *Novogorod*, and got forwards 36 WERSTES, or seven Leagues, to *Mokriza*. The 2. We came to *Tuerin*, six leagues and a half. The 3. to *Orlin*, six Leagues; the 4. to *Sariza*, 8 Leagues; and the night following vve made four Leagues, to *Lilienhagen*, belonging to Dame *Mary Stop*, the Relict of *John Muller*, who, living, had been Agent from *Sueden*, in *Muscovy*. We were very vvell treated there; and the next day we got seven Leagues, and came to *Narva*.

JANU- The 6. We sent away our baggage. The Ambassadors follow'd the next day, and three days after, viz. the 10. we came to *Reuel*, vvhence we stirr'd not for the space of three weeks. But considering at last, that the *Baltick* Sea was not Navigable that time of the year, and being withal unwilling to stay there the rest of the Winter, vve conceiv'd it vwould be our best course to be gone thence with the soonest, and to prosecute our journey by Land, through *Prussia*, *Pomerania*, and *Mecklenbourg*.

The Ambassadors left *Reuel* Jan. 30. having tabled most of their retinue with Mr. *Henry Kosen*, and vvith a retinue of ten persons, took their way to *Riga*. The two first nights vve pass'd over at *Kegel*, a house belonging to *John Muller*, Counsellor of the City of *Reuel*, my Father-in-law; vvhence vve vvere very vvell entertain'd.

FEBRU- Feb. 2. vve came to *Parnau*, at vvhich place God was pleased to favour me with a great deli- ARY. verance, vvhich vvas thus; discharging their Canon at our entrance, the Tampon, which they had forgotten to take out of one of the pieces, pass'd very near me, and struck against the vwall of the City Gate, where it broke, the splinters of it flying about my head with such violence, that, being stunn'd thereby, it was half an hour ere I recover'd my self.

The City of *Parnau* is but a small one, but hath a good Castle, built of wood, and after the *Muscovian* fortification; to which the Houses, the Gates, and the Churches are suitable. It is seated upon the little River of *Parnau* or *Parnou*, which gives it the name, and which rising out of the great Forrest near the little River *Beca* and the Castle of *Weissenstein*, and receiving in its passage the waters of the Rivers *Fela* and *Pernkeia*, disembogues it self into the *Baltick* Sea, near this City, which is divided into two parts, the Old and the New. 'Tis numbred among the Hanseatick Towns, though it hath not in a manner any other Commerce than that of Wheat. *Eric*, K. of *Sueden*, took it from the *Poles*, in the year 1562. but they recovered it again by stratagem, in the year 1565. The *Muscovites* became Masters of it July 9. 1575. but it was re-united to the Crown of *Poland*, with the rest of *Livonia*, by the Treaty of Peace made between that Crown and the Great Duke. In the year 1617. the *Suedes* took it, and have kept it ever since.

We met there with the Countess Dowager *La Tour*, named *Magdalene*, of the house of *Hardek*, in *Anstria*. The Ambassadors sent me, with two more of our retinue to complement her, and to make proffers of service to her in their names. She took it so kindly, that not content to make us drink his Highness's health three times over, she forc'd us to take the bowls out of her ovvn hands, and in the mean time entertain'd us vvith much excellent discourse, in commendation of his Highness and that Embassy; as also concerning the manners and Religion of the *Muscovites*, vvith a sweetness and gravity vvhich cannot vvell be exprefs'd. She vwould needs have the young Counts, *Christian*, and *Henry*, her sons, go to the Inn vvhence the Ambassadors vvere Lodg'd, to complement them; vvhich the young Lords perform'd handfomly; and to heighten their civility, they also stay'd Supper vvith them.

The next day, the Countess sent us all manner of Provisions, and Letters for Count *Mathew Henry de la Tour*, her father-in-law. She sent also to desire the Ambassadors to recommend her sons to his Highness, and to assure him of their services, when they should be of an age, and in a capacity to do him any. As we were getting on horse-back, our Host shew'd himself an honest man, and refus'd to take our money, telling us, the Countess had sent in most of the Provisions for the Ambassadors Supper, and that the rest was not worth the reckoning; so that to requite his sincerity we gave him twenty Crowns. But we were not got a League off the City, ere we were overtaken by a man he had sent, to return us our money, and to tell us the Present was too small, in requital of the trouble we had given him. We sent back our Harbinger, with the Messenger, who gave the Host twelve Crowns more, wherewith he seem'd to be satisfy'd.

The 6. We enter'd *Riga*. The next day, the Governour visited the Ambassadors, and the 10. <sup>1635.</sup> he made a great Feast for them, to which he invited the chiefest of the City. Some days following were also spent in Feasting, among some or other of our friends.

Febr. 13. The Ambassadors left *Riga*, having in their Company a certain Ambassador of France, who was called *Charles de Tallerañd*, and assum'd the quality of Marquess of *Exidueil*, Prince of *Chalais*, Count of *Grignol*, Baron of *Marueil* and *Boswille*. *Lewis xiii.* King of France and *Navarre*, had sent him with *James Roussel* upon an Embassy into *Turky* and *Muscovy*. But *Roussel*, his Collegue, had done him such ill Offices with the Patriarch, that the Great Duke sent him to *Siberia*, where he continu'd three years a prisoner; till such time, as the malice and artifices of *Roussel*, who endeavour'd nothing so much as to inflame the differences between the Princes, being discover'd, he was set at liberty, after the Partriarch's death. During his restraint, his diversion had been to learn by heart the four first books of *Vergil's Aeneids*, which he had, as they say, *ad unguem*. He was a person of an excellent good humour, aged about 36. years.

We took our way through *Courland*, and came the 4. about noon to *Mittan*. This little City is situated in that part of *Courland*, which is called *Semgalles*, six Leagues from *Riga*, and it is the place where the Duke ordinarily resides. The Dutchy of *Courland* was some time part of *Livonia*, from which it is divided by the River *Dune*: but all this Province having been miserably ruin'd by the *Suedes* and *Muscovites*, and the Archbishop of *Riga* and the Master of the *Teutonick Order* having submitted to the Crown of *Poland*, with all they were still possess'd of there, *Sigismund Augustus*, King of *Poland*, rais'd *Courland* to a Dutchy, and gave it to *Godard Ketler*, of *Nesselrot*, last Master of the *Teutonick Order* in *Livonia*, to be held immediately from the Crown of *Poland*. *Godard* dies, *May 17. 1587.* leaving, by *Anne*, the Daughter of *Albert Duke of Meklenbourg*, two sons; *Fredrick*, who died without issue, and *William*, who succeeded his brother in the Dutchy of *Courland*. This *William* having been dispossest'd by *Sigismund III.* and the States of *Poland*, was forc'd to live in Exile, till that, upon the mediation of several Foreign Princes, he was re-establish'd in the year 1619. During the first War between *Poland* and *Sueden*, the City of *Mittan* was taken by the *Suedes*, who fortifi'd it, and restor'd it not to the Duke of *Courland*, till oblig'd thereto by a Cessation agreed on between those two Crowns, in the year 1629. *James* (*William's son*) who now hath the Dutchy, and assumes the quality of the Duke of *Courland*, *Livonia*, and *Semgalles*, is married to *Louise-Charlotte*, Daughter to *George-William*, Elector of *Brandenbourg*, and *Elizabeth-Charlotte*, of *Baviere*. It is not long since, that this Duke of *Courland*, having dispatch'd a Gentleman for *Moscow*, to manage some affairs there, the *Weywode* of *Tlesan* would not give him passage, and sent him word, that *Courland* being dependent on the Crown of *Poland*, could not have particular Agents and Ministers, but was to negotiate Affairs by means of the Ambassador, which the King his Master had at *Muscovy*. But this Prince hath been so fortunate, as, since this last War, to obtain the neutrality of all the neighbouring Princes, so that it is very likely, the Treaty to be agreed on between them will be such, as that he shall have no dependance on any of them.

At night we came to a Village, called *Doblen*, three Leagues from *Mittan*. The Inn-keeper, who took us for Souldiers or Gyflies that were in distrefs for Lodging, made some difficulty to let us into his house: but at last he was perswaded, and lodg'd us. All we had to supper, was, hard Cheese, very brown Bread, and four Beer.

The 15. we travell'd 7. Leagues, and came to *Bador*, in *Poland*, where an antient Gentleman, who had sometime been a Captain of horse, named *John Amdod*, lodg'd us, and treated us extremely well, especially with all sorts of drinks, as *Lithuanian Hydromel*, excellent Sack, and good Beer, which made us spend some part of the night in carowing: the Wine having the vertue of contracting a great friendship between the Ambassadors and him. The next day he gave us a very sumptuous entertainment, and the diversifement of *Timbrells*; and that all might be compleat, in the treatment, he would needs bring in his two Daughters, whom we had not seen the night before. He also presented the Ambassadors, one with a Fire-lock, the other with a Sword: and the Ambassadors gave him each of them a fair Watch. This breakfast, which lasted till the afternoon, hindred us so, that we could get but four Leagues that day, to *Halshoff*, where we went to bed supperless. The 18. we travell'd six Leagues, to a Village called *Walzau*.

The 19. we came to *Memel*, six Leagues from *Walzau*. 'Tis a pleasant little Town, at the entrance of the Gulf called the *Courishaf*, or Lake of *Courland*. The *Courlanders*; in their Jar-gon, call this Town *Cleupeda*, and *Cromerus*, in his History of *Poland*, calls it *Troipes*. The Castle belonging to it is pleasant, and well fortify'd, and its Haven very commodious. The River *Tange* compasses it round, and not far thence falls into the Gulf. It was built in the year 1250. and was at that time part of the revinue of *Livonia*. The Friers of the Order of *Livonia*, in the year 1328. sold this City to the Master of the Order of *Prussia*, and it is, with that Dutchy, come to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, who hath been possess'd of it, ever since the *Suedes* restor'd it, by vertue of a cessation of 26. years, which *France* got concluded, in the year

1635. year 1635. between the Crowns of *Poland* and *Sueden*. The 20. we got upon the *Haf*, or Gulf of *Curland*, and din'd that day at *Snenzel*, three leagues from *Memel*, and lodg'd at *Bulcapen* five leagues from the said *Memel*.

Swenzel.  
Bulcapen.  
Konings-  
berg.

The 21. we travel'd 8 leagues, and came to *Koningsberg* where, the snow beginning to fail us, we were forc'd to quit our Sledges. This city, called by the *Polanders* *Krolefsky*, is seated by the River *Pregel*, the chiefest of that part of *Prussia*, which is called the *Ducal*, because it hath its Duke, or particular Prince, under the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Poland*. 'Tis a Production of the thirteenth age, in which the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order built it, and named it *Coningsberg*, or *Royal-mount*, in honour of *Primislas Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia*, and in acknowledgement of the assistance he had brought them against the Heathens in those parts. It is now much bigger than it was then, inasmuch as, besides the suburbs, which are very great, there was added in the year 1300. that part of the city which is called *Lebenicht*, and in the year 1380. that of *Kniphof*, both which have their severall Magistrates, both as to policy and administration of Justice. The Palace owes its perfection to *George Frederick*, of *Brandenburgh*, Duke of *Prussia*, who built it, about the later end of the last age. Among other remarkable things, there is a Hall, that hath no pillars, and yet is 274 Geometrical feet in length, and 59 in breadth; and a fair Library well furnish'd with abundance of excellent Books; among which, in drawers full of Books adorn'd with silver, is to be seen, that which *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, first Duke of *Prussia*, made and writ with his own hand, for the instruction of his Son, and goverment of the country, after his death. The University was founded by the same Prince, who made it his business to render this city one of the most considerable of all the North, The River *Pregel*, or *Chronus*, which rises in *Lithuania*, and falls into the Gulf, called the *Frisshaf*, a league below the City, contributes very much to the improvement of its commerce; and the City is so populous, that many times there are seven or eight families in a house. They generally speak the *German* language, though there are few inhabitants but have also the *Polish*, with those of *Lithuania* and *Courland*. There are brought thither, from *Poland* and *Lithuania*, Oak for Joyners work, Soap-ashes, Wax, Honey, Hydromel, Leather, Furrs, Wheat, Rye, Flax, and Hemp; and the *Suedish*, *Dutch*, and *English* Ships, bring Iron, Lead, Tinn Cloath, Wine, Salt, Butter, Cheese, &c. We say nothing here of *Prussia*, out of a fear of making too great a digression, and meddling with ought relating to the History of *Germany*, which hath nothing common with our Travells; but only, that the Crown of *Poland* hath quitted all pretension of Sovereignty over the Duchy of *Prussia*, by the last treaty it made with his Electoral Highness of *Brandenbourg*.

Elbing.

We left *Coningsberg*, Feb. 24. and came the next day to *Elbing*, a City seated upon a River of the same name, between the Lake of *Dranfer*, and the *Frisshaf*, in the Royal, or *Polish* *Prussia*. It is not very big, but its streets are streight and spacious; and its fortifications, made by the late King of *Sueden*, during the last War of *Poland*, before his entrance into *Germany*, are very regular. If he who is Master of it, were also Commander of the Fort of *Pilan*, which the Elector of *Brandenbourg* is possess'd of, at the entrance of the *Frisshaf*, it might be made a very considerable place for Commerce.

Dantfig.

The 27. we came to *Dantfig*, where we staid 16 or 17 days, during which time, the Magistrates treated us with the ordinary Presents of refreshments, and the principal Inhabitants gave us severall noble entertainments. The *Polanders* call this place *Gdansko*, whence comes the modern *Latine* word *Gedannum*. It is not very antient, and yet it cannot be certainly affirm'd whether it was built by the Dukes of *Pomerania*, or by the *Danes*, since it seems to have its name from the later. It was a long time possess'd by the Dukes of *Pomerania*, and afterwards by the Kings of *Poland*, and by the Masters of the *Teutonick* Order in *Prussia*. In the year 1454 it redeem'd it self out of subjection to the Order, and made a voluntary rendition of it self to *Casimir*, King of *Poland*. It is situated in *Cassuba*, upon the *Vistula*, and *Rodauna*, which they say is the *Eridanus* of the Antients (because in that place there is found much yellow amber) and near the *Moslava*, which falls into the *Vistula*, a quarter of a league below the City. But the River is so shallow there, that great Ships cannot come up to the City: Towards the West, it hath severall mounts of sand, which they were forc'd to bring within the fortifications, because they commanded the city: though Canon cannot be discharg'd to any great purpose, when they shoot point-blank downwards, and that there would not have been space enough between the mount and the ditch, to put forces in order, and to give an assault. Towards the South and North, it hath a pleasant Plain, and on the East, the River. It is well built, but the streets nor over-clean. The publick Structures are magnificent, and those of private persons very commodious, and handsome. On the other side of the *Moslava*, lies part of the Suburbs, called *Schotland*, or *Scotland*, as large as a pretty little City, but it depends not on the City of *Dantfig*, but on the Bishop of *Cujavia*. It hath its seat and suffrage in the Diets of *Poland*, even in those which are called for the election of the King. 'Tis one of the four Cities, which have the superintendency of all the *Teutonick* Association, or *Hanseatick* Towns, and hath so many other Privileges, that, though it contributes

tributes to *Poland*, and gives the King half the duties raised there, yet does it in a manner enjoy an absolute freedom. There is so great a Commerce of Wheat in this City, that it is thought, there are sold every year above seven hundred and thirty thousand Tuns, whereof two make a Last. The Magistracy consists of fourteen Senators, and four Burgomasters; whereof are to be added the Governour, appointed by the King of *Poland*, some Echevins, or Sheriffs, for civil and criminal causes, and a hundred Counsellors for affairs of importance. Criminal causes are finally judged, without admitting any appeal, as also Civil, not exceeding a thousand Livres. It makes Statutes, and imposes taxes upon the Inhabitants, according to the exigencies of publick Affairs, without staying for any superiour Permission, and regulates the exercise of those Religions that are permitted by the Laws of the Empire.

*March 16.* We left *Dantzig*, and came the 25 to *Stetin*, the chief City of *Pomerania*. It is at 53 deg. 27. min. latitude, and 38 d. 45. m. longitude, seated in a very pleasant place, upon the descent of a Hill. The River *Oder* divides it self there into four branches, whereof that which runs by the City keeps its name (the others taking those of *Parnitz*, and the greater and lesser *Kegelitz*) and straggles so, as that to come to the City from *Dam-side*, a man must pass over six bridges, which, put together, are in length, 996 *German* ells, and 24 foot broad, and are all joyn'd by a noble Causey, well paved, and having in the middle a Royal Fort. The structures of it are beautiful, and it is excellently well fortify'd, especially since the *Suedes* became Masters of it. *John Frederick* Duke of *Pomerania*, in the year 1575. laid the first foundations of the sumptuous Palace which is there built after the Italian Architecture, with very noble appartements, where, before these last Warrs, there were worth the seeing, a noble Library, a Magazine of Arms, many rarities, and the rich Wardrop and Plate of the Dukes of *Pomerania*. 'Tis one of the *Hanseatick* Towns, and enjoys many great Privileges, among others, that of obliging strangers to disburthen in the City all the Merchandises which pass through it, what nature soever they are of: as also that the Gentlemen thereabouts cannot build any Castle or strong place any way within three Leagues from it; nay, that the Dukes of *Pomerania* themselves cannot build any Fort upon the *Oder*, or the *Suine*, or upon the *Frishaf*, between that and the Sea. But this advantage is lost by it's coming into the hands of the *Suedes*.

*Mar. 29.* being Easter-day, we came to *Rostock*, a City seated on the River *Warne*, in the Duchy of *Meklenbourg*, where heretofore lived the people called the *Varini*. *Pribisli II.* the son of *Niclot*, last Prince of the *Obotrites*, incircumscribed it with a wall, in the year 1160. and made it a City out of the ruins of that of *Kessin*, which *Henry le Lyon*, Duke of *Saxony*, had destroy'd. Its Port is not commodious, in regard Vessels of burthen are forc'd to unload at *Warnemunde*, two Leagues below the City, at the mouth of the River. The City is handsome enough, having three great Market-places, 27 streets, 14 little gates, and four great gates. Its University is one of the most antient in all *Germany*, and was founded, by *John* and *Albert*, Cousin-Germans, Dukes of *Mecklenbourg*, who, together with the Magistrate, opened it in the year 1419. Among its Professors are many very great Persons, of whom one was *Albert Crantz*, Rector of it in the year 1482. This City, having been taken by the Imperialists, in the year 1629. with all the rest of the Duchy of *Mecklenbourg*, the late King of *Sueden*, *Gustavus Adolphus*, besieg'd it in the year 1631. and took it the 16. of *Octob.* the same year.

The 30. of *March*, we left *Rostock*, and came the same day to *Wisnar*, seven Leagues. Those who say this City was built by *Wisnar*, King of the *Vandals* about the year 340. tell a fabulous story, whereof the vanity is so much the more visible, in that it is certain, that it was no City, till *Henry* of *Jerusalem*, Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, made it such, by the privileges he bestow'd on it, in the year 1266. It is near as big as *Rostock*, and its Port, which no doubt is one of the best upon the *Baltick* Sea, brings it very great Traffick. Its situation, being amidst Fens, and upon the Sea, is very advantageous, and its Citadel fortify'd with five regular Bastions, makes it one of the most considerable places in all *Germany*. *Adolphus Frederick*, Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, and General *Todr*, took it, *Jan. 10.* 1632. from Colonel *Grainma*, who had the command of it, for the D. of *Fridland*; ever since which time the *Suedes* have kept it, as one of the most precious Jewels of their Crown.

The last of *March*, we came to the Castle of *Schonberg*, belonging to the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*, where some friends of our Comrade, *John Albert de Mandelslo*, received us, and treated us very nobly. For my part, I am particularly oblig'd to acknowledge their kindness, for, being casually shot in the arm with a pistol by one of our company, I was forc'd to stay there two or three dayes, during which time I receiv'd very great civilities from them.

*Apr. 1.* the Ambassadors left *Schonberg*, but *M. Mandelslo* and my self stay'd two dayes after them, and the third of *April* overtook them at *Lubeck*. This City is so well known, that I need not give any particular description of it, after so many other Authors that have written of it. Only I shall say, that it is situated between the Rivers of *Traue* and *Wagenitz*, at 28. d. 20. m. longitude, and at 54. d. 48. m. latitude, two leagues from the *Baltick* Sea. Those who have chiefly contributed

1635. buted to the building of it, were, *Adolphus II.* Count of *Holstein*, *Henry le Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, and *Henry* Bishop of *Aldembourg*. The Emperor *Frederick I.* re-united it to the Empire, and *Frederick II.* his Grand-Son, gave it some of those Privileges, which it enjoys to this day. It lies in the *Wagria*, at the entrance of the Country of *Holstein*, and is very well fortify'd, according to the modern fortification, having, besides the other advantages which it hath equally with the other Imperial Towns, that of the oversight of the *Teutonick Association*, whereof all the *Archivi* are kept in the Guild-Hall of this City. How considerable it is in the Empire, may be judg'd by the contributions it payes towards the charges of the journey to *Rome*, which amount to 21 horsemen, and 177 foot, and, reduc'd to money to 1980 Livers a month. As for its rank at the Diets, it hath a place alternatively with the city of *Wormes*. In this city the Peace between the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* and *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark*, was concluded, in the year 1629. The Bishoprick of *Wagria*, which was transferr'd from *Aldembourg* to this city, is now possess'd by *John*, Duke of *Holstein*, brother to *Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein*, who lives at *Oitin*. Here also I escaped another great misfortune; as I alighted off my horse, I fell upon my wounded arm, but ere I could get up again, *Mandelflo's* horse, which was furious and skittili, starting thereat, stood up on his hinder feet, and very narrowly mis'd my head with his fore-feet. We travel'd on, in the Afternoon, and came that night to an Inn in the suburbs of *Arnsbock*. This little city, lying in *Wagria*, between *Lubeck* and *Pretz*, belonged heretofore to the *Carthusians*; but now it is possess'd by *Joachim Ernest*, Duke of *Holstein*, by the branch of *Sonderborg*, who is married to *Dorothea Augusta*, our Prince's Sister. Upon which accompt it was that he sent a coach and six horses to bring us to the Castle, where the Ambassadors and some of the retinue supp'd at his own Table, and lay there the night following.

*Pretz.* The next day we broke our fast at the Castle, which done, we were brought in the Duke's coach to our Inn, whence we continued our journey, and got the same day to *Pretz*, where there is a very rich and sumptuous Monastery of young Ladies Nobly descended, who are maintain'd there, till they leave the place to embrace a married life.

*Kiel.* *April 6.* about noon, we came to *Kiel*, a city situated upon the *Baltick Sea*, and famous for a Fair kept there yearly at *Twelf-tide*, which brings thither all the Nobility about the country, and a very great number of Merchants. We got the same night to *Gottorp*, for which we are to give Almighty God our humble thanks; and the next day, the Ambassadors made a report of their negotiation. And so much by way of accompt of our first Voyage into *Muscovy*.



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
 DUKE of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, and P E R S I A.**

The Second Book.



His Highness had no sooner understood, that the Great Duke of *Muscovy* had <sup>1635.</sup> permitted his Ambassadors to pass through his country, to go into *Persia*, but all his thoughts were busied about the prosecution of the second Voyage, whereof the expence was incredible, which he gives order for, causing all necessary preparations to be made, and presents to be sought out worthy so great a <sup>Preparatives for the second Voyage.</sup> Monarch.

He also augmented the Ambassadors retinue, and ordered, that, till the time of their departure, the Gentlemen, Officers, and Servants, should be entertain'd at *Hamboough*, at the house of *Otton Brugman*, one of the Ambassadors; where they were very well treated, every one according to his condition and quality, the Trumpet always sounding when the meat was carried up, which was also done all along the Voyage.

The retinue consisted of a Mareschal, or Steward, a Secretary of the Embassy, four Gentle-<sup>The Ambassadors retinue.</sup> men of the Chamber, and eight other Gentlemen for ordinary attendance, among whom were the Minister and interpreter, four Pages of the Chamber, four other Pages, four Grooms of the Chamber, four Musicians, a Controler, a Harbinger, two Sumpter-men, an Overseer of the Servants, two Trumpeters, two Watch-makers, eight Halbaldiers, who were of several professions, as Bakers, Shoe-makers, Taylors, Smiths, Sadlers, &c. ten Laqueys, a Clark for the Kitchin, with two Head-cooks, and one Under-cook, a Master of the Waggon and his Servant, ten Servants belonging to the Gentlemen, an Interpreter for the *Muscovian* Language, another for the *Persian*, and a third for the *Turkish*. The Sumpter-men, the Musicians, and the Trumpeters had also their boys, eight in number, besides twelve other persons for the ordering of things belonging to the Ship, and 30 Souldiers, and four *Muscovian* Officers, with their Servants, whom we entertain'd into our service in *Muscovy*, with the Great Duke's permission.

All Summer, and some part of Autumn, were spent in preparation for this Voyage, info-<sup>They embark.</sup> much that we could not get from *Hamborough*, till the 21 of *October* 1635. The 24 we got to *Lubeck*, where we staid two days, during which, our Baggage, and Horses, which were 12. were embark'd at *Tranemunde*. The 27. we followed, and went aboard about noon, with all our people, into a new Ship, that had never been at Sea before. The wind serv'd as well as could be wish'd, to get out of the Harbour, and yet we met with such a strong current of water, that we could not avoid falling foul on two great Ships that were in the Port, between which we were so intangled, that we could not in three hours dis-engage our selves. Which many among

1635. among us took for an ill omen of the misfortune that happen'd to us some few dayes after.  
*Oct.* 28. about five in the morning, after prayers said, we set sail with a West-South-West wind, which growing higher at noon, was at night heightned to a dreadful Tempest. It continu'd all night, during which, we discover'd, that our Mariners were as raw as the Ship was new, which had never seen the Sea till that time; and it was our continual fear that the Mast would slip out of its place, in as much as, the ropes, being new, stretch'd so, that they seem'd not to have any hold of it.

The Ship  
 strikes a-  
 gainst a  
 Rock.

The 29. we found our selves to be on the Coasts of *Denmark*, which our Captain took for the Isle of *Bornholm*, and we perceived, that we had directed our course streight towards the Country of *Schonen*; so that if we had not at the break of day, discover'd Land, and found we were at 4. fathom water, which soon oblig'd us to alter our course, there had been an end of both us and our Ship. About 9. of the clock we discover'd the Island of *Bornholm*, and the wind being fair, made all the sail we could. But about ten at night, when we thought our selves most secure, and made accompt to rest our selves after the precedent night's toil, even, while *Brugman*, one of the Ambassadors, was charging the Master's Mate to be carefull, and the other answer'd, there was no danger, since we had Sea-room enough, the Ship, being then under all the sail she could make, struck against a Rock which was cover'd by the water. The shock made such a horrible noise, that it made all start up. The amazement we were in surpris'd us so, that there was not any one but might easily be perswaded, that the end of both his Voyage and Life were neer at hand.

At first we knew not where we were, and in regard the Moon was but newly chang'd, the night was so dark, that we could not see two paces from us, We put our Lantern at the Castle, and caus'd some Muskets to be discharg'd, to see if there were any help to be had neer us. But no body made answer, and the Ship beginning to lye on one side, our affliction began to turn into despair; so that most cast themselves on their knees, begging of God, with horrid cries, that he would send them that relief which they could not expect from men.

The Master himself wept most bitterly, and would meddle no further with the conduct of the Ship. The Phyitian and my self were sitting one close by the other, with a design to embrace one another, and to die together, as old and faithful friends, in case we should be wrack'd. Others took leave one of another, or made vows to God, which they afterwards so Religiously kept, that coming to *Reuel*, they made up a portion for a Poor, but Virtuous Maid, who was married there. The Ambassador *Crusius's* Son mov'd most compassion. He was but 12. years of age, and he had cast himself upon the ground, importuning Heaven with incessant cries and lamentations, and saying, *Son of David have mercy on me*; whereto the Minister added, Lord, if thou wilt not hear us, be pleas'd to hear this Child, and consider the innocence of his age. At last God was so gracious as to preserve us, though the Ship struck several times, with great violence, against the Rock.

About one in the morning, we saw fire, whence we inferr'd that we were not far from Land. The Ambassadors commanded the Boat to be cast out, with design to get into it, with each of them a Servant, and to go streight towards the fire, to see if there were any means to save the rest: but no sooner had they thrown in two Cabinets, in which were the Credential Letters and some Jewels, ere it was full of water, which had almost occasion'd the loss of two of our people, who had leapt first into it, thinking to save themselves; in so much that they had much ado to get into the Ship ere the Boat sunk. We were forc'd to continue there the rest of that night, expecting to see a period of that danger.

At break of day we discover'd the Isle of *Oleand*, and saw the ruins of a *Danish* Ship, which had been cast away thereabouts a month before. The wind being somewhat abated, two Fishermen of the Isle came aboard us, and Landed the Ambassadors, having a very considerable reward for their pains, and after them, some of their retinue.

About noon, we found the two Cabinets, and when the Sea was a little calm'd, many people of the Isle came in to our relief, to get off our Ship from among those Rocks: but with this misfortune, that as they would have let down the Anchor, which they had carried in the Boat about a hundred paces from the Ship, the Boat over-turn'd, so that those in it were toss'd into the Sea. Our Masters Mate went immediately with one of the Isle boats to their relief; and in regard, as they were over-turn'd, some caught hold of the Boar, others of an Oar, or somewhat else, as also that the Wine they had drunk a little before, had somewhat heightned their Courage, we had the time to send twice to them, and to save all but our Carpenter, who was lost for want of having fasten'd on somewhat that might have kept him above water.

The streight  
 of Calmer.

While they were getting off our Ship, the waters increas'd so, as that the wind, coming to the North-West, made our passage thence into the Sea the easier. Whither we were no sooner gotten, but the wind turn'd again to South-West, and brought us safely through the streight of *Calmer*, which is so much the more dangerous in that season of the year, in as much as the Sea thereabouts is full of Rocks, and that even in the Summer time, it is ill sailing there by reason of the banks of Sand. The Ship stay'd for the Ambassadors, at *Calmer*, whither they got by Land,



Land, upon the first of *November*, and came aboard neer an old ruin'd fort, called *Ferstat*.

1635.

Being come to *Calmer*, we sent back a Page and a Lacquey to *Gottorp*, to get other Credentials, the Sea-water having spoil'd those we had at first. It was there also taken into consideration, whether it were not our best course to take our way by Land, through *Sueden*, or prosecute our Voyage by Sea. The latter was resolv'd on; and that we might do it with the less danger, we laid out for a skilfull Master for the *Baltick* Sea; but there being none to be had, we took only two Pilots, who conducted us half a League through the Sand banks, till we were got into the main Sea.

NOVEM.

The 3. we continu'd our course, and pass'd by a Rock called, the *Suedish Lady*, which we left on the lar-board. From *Calmer* thither are accounted eight Leagues.

About noon, we spy'd the Castle of *Bornholm*, in the Isle of *Oeland*. At night we doubled the point of the Isle; with such a Tempest from the North-East, that the fore-part of the Ship was more under water than above it, and ever and anon our sails were wash'd by the Waves.

Another misfortune was, that our Pump was out of order; in so much that till it could be made to do its Office, all the Kettles and other Vessels were little enough to empty out the water. This trouble lasted till the next day at noon, with so much danger to us, that if the wind had not chang'd, it would have been impossible for us to escape shipwreck. But the wind being somewhat better for us than it had been, we kept on our course, and came towards night in sight of *Gotland*.

The Isle of *Gotland* is opposite to the Province of *Scandinavia*, or *Schoven*, which hath also the same name given it, at 58. degr. of Latitude. It is in length 18. *German* Leagues; in breadth, between three and four. The Country is full of Rocks, Firre-Trees, and Juniper-Trees, having East-wards, many commodious Havens; as those of *Ostergaar*, *Sleidaf*, *Sandwig*, *Narwig*, and *Heiligolm*. *Ostergaar* is a small Isle standing at an equal distance from the two points of the great one, with a convenient Harbour, for those who can avoid the Sand-banks, which thereabouts reach out a good way into the Sea. *Sleidaf* is higher towards the North, than *Ostergaar*, and hath a safe Harbour against all winds, the Ships lying under the shelter of four little Isles, or rather Mounts of Sand, which break the violence of the Waves. There's but one Town in all the Island; but there are above 500. Farms, and the Churches are built within a League distance one of another, as they are in the Isle of *Oeland*, so that the Steeples give a great direction to the Ships that sail that way. The Inhabitants are *Danes*, and the Island was subject to the King of *Denmark*, till that after a tedious War it submitted to the Crown of *Sueden*, to which it payes annually 100. lasts of Pitch. All their Traffick lies in Cattel, and Wood, for building and fire, and thence the best deal Boards come. I would needs, with some other Camerades, go and see the Town of *Wisby*. It is built on the descent of a Rock, upon the Sea side, encompass'd with a good Wall, and fortify'd with some bastions. The ruins of 14. Churches, and several Houses, Gates, and Walls of Free-stone and Marble, which we observ'd there, argue it hath been bigger than it now is. It is said, that the foundations of it were laid, about the end of the eighth Age, and that it hath been since so populous, that it had 12000. Inhabitants, for the most part Merchants, not accounting the *Danes*, *Suedes*, *Vandols*, *Saxons*, *Muscovites*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Prussians*, *Poles*, and *Livonians*, who traded thither. There, they say, were made the first Orders concerning maritime affairs, which *Lubeck*, and the other *Hanseatick* Cities still make use of; But now the Port is quite lost, so as that Ships cannot get into it.

The Isle of  
Gotland.

The 5. the wind became more boisterous than before, so that the Vessel, at every great Sea, was all under water. About 10. at night, we founded, at 12. fathom; whereupon we chang'd our course, and got into the main Sea, for fear of running against the Land, which if we had, we must needs have been cast away.

The 6. we met a *Holland* Vessel, which directed us towards the Isle of *Tageroort*, whither we came at night; but, the same night, we were again forc'd into the main Sea.

The 7. at noon, we were upon the point of *Tageroort*; but the Masters Mate was mistaken, who, thinking the wind would have carried us North-ward, would perswade us it was *Oetgen-sholm*, and upon that presumption, imprudently engag'd himself in a most dangerous passage, called the *Honde-shuig*. He was not convinc'd of his error, till he saw the Church-Steeples; so that we were forc'd to return into the main, with greater hazard than we had run, at our entrance into that passage. That day, we met a bark, which had lost its course; so that understanding we intended for *Reuel*, she follow'd us a while, but at night left us, and cast Anchor before *Tageroort*, and, as we heard since, came safely the next day to *Reuel*. All the afternoon we lost not sight of the coasts of *Livonia*, and at night were within a League of the Isle of *Narga*, which is at the entrance of the Haven of *Reuel*. Our Master and his Mate, would neither go into, nor anchor before *Tageroort*, choosing rather the main Sea, though in a great Tempest, which kept us in action all that night, and took away our Main-mast, which was soon follow'd by the Mizen, and the fore-castle, and it was no less than a miracle, that our compass was left us, without which it had been impossible for us to have kept on our intended course.

Oetgen-  
sholm.  
Honde-  
shuig.

Narga.

The 8. we perceiv'd that we had pass'd the Haven of *Reuel*, and about ten, the weather be-

1635. came so foul, that it seem'd rather an Earthquake, that should turn the World upside down, than a storm. Our danger and fears encreas'd till three in the afternoon, that one of the Seamen having got up into the scuttle of the Sprit-sale, told us, he discover'd *Hogland*. We got thither by 7 at night, and cast Anchor at 19 fathom water. There we stayd the 9. and resolv'd, that thence-forward, Prayers should be said twice a day, to give God thanks for our deliverance the day before, from a danger we could not have avoided, otherwise than by passing among the Rocks upon the Coasts of *Finland*, as we must have resolv'd to do, if we had not discover'd that Island. The Ambassadors went ashore, to observe the situation of the Country, and refresh themselves. At night it was consider'd, whether we should continue our Voyage by Sea to *Narva*, or return to *Reuel*; but the diversity of Opinions was such, that nothing was resolv'd on. About 9 at night, the Master came to the Ambassadors Lodgings, to tell them, that the wind being East, and forcing the Ship towards the Shore, he saw no likelier way to be safe than by making for *Reuel*. The Ambassadors bade him do what he thought most convenient, and went aboard: but as they were weighing Anchor, the wind ris'd so, that there was no possibility of taking the course intended, so that the Master and his Counsel chang'd their design, and thought it best to ly still at Anchor, for fear of running-a-ground. But all to no purpose. For being near the shore, the Orders given could not be put in execution with diligence enough to avoid shipwrack. All could be done was to let down the Boat, and to set the Ambassadors ashore with some of their retinue. After the Ship had struck several times against certain pieces of Rocks, whereof there is abundance all along the Coast, it split and sunk. All the men were sav'd, a good part of the goods, and seven horses, whereof two dy'd the next day.

We shelter'd our selves in Fishers huts, along the Sea-side, where we met with some *Livonians* that dwelt thereabouts who could speak nothing but the jargon of the country. That poor refuge sav'd their lives who had escap'd the wrack; else, their cloaths being all wet about them, most of them would have been starv'd to death in the snow, which fell the night following.

The 10. we thought fit to try whether any more of the goods could be gotten out of the Ship, but the rough weather continuing, none would venture going near it with a Boat, till that in the afternoon some things were gotten out. Our Cloaths, Books, and other things we laid out a-drying, the Sea water having injur'd some, and utterly spoil'd others.

The greatest of our losses was that of a Clock, worth four thousand crowns, which the horses had broke to pieces, by striving to get loose.

This misfortune was follow'd by another, which though we saw at some distance, yet distracted us no less; and that was, want of provisions. The Sea-water had spoil'd ours, and our fear was, that the frost forcing us to winter in the Island, we must either be starved, or reduc'd to the extremities of feeding on the barks of trees, as some that had been cast away there some years before, were constrain'd to do. We had but little bread left, and the Bisket was so soak'd in Salt-water, that we were forc'd to boyl it in fresh, with a little Cummin or Fennel, and so made a Pottage of it for our Servants. One day, we took in a Brook which falls from the Mountains, as many small Fishes as found us two good meals.

The Island  
of Hog-  
land.

*Hogland* hath its name from the height of its situation, it being seen a great way into the Sea, and is about 3 leagues in length, and one, in breadth. You see nothing but Rocks, Firr-trees, and Thorns. We indeed saw some few Hares, which in Winter turn white, as they do all over *Livonia*; but our Dogs could not follow them through the Woods, and over the Rocks.

In the mean time, it was reported at *Reuel*, that we were all lost, rais'd by this, that there had been dead bodies found upon the coast of *Livonia*, clad in red, which was our Livery; as also with this addition, that the Bark, spoken of before, had related, that she had seen us carried away with the storm beyond the bay of *Reuel*. Besides, it was eight days before they heard from us; so that those of our people whom we had left there, at our return from *Muscovy*, were seeking out other services, when *M. Uchterits* (then Chamberlain to the Ambassadors, and now Gentleman of the Privy-chamber to his Highness of *Holslein* at *Gottorp*) brought them an account of us. We had the convenience to send him thither in one of the two *Finland* barks, which the tempest had forc'd to that Island on the 3 of *November*.

A danger-  
ous at-  
tempt of  
the Amba-  
sadors.

The 17. The Ambassadors embark'd themselves, each of them with a retinue of five persons, in two Fisher-boats, to pass over to the continent, from which this Island is distant above 12. leagues. Nor were we in less danger now than before, for as much as the Boats, being small and old, were not caulked, and were ty'd above, only with cords made of barks of trees. The sail was a great many rags fasten'd together, and so order'd, that there was no use to be made of it but when the wind blew right a-stern: so that the wind beginning to shift, after we had come five leagues, the Fisher-men would have tack'd about, but we prevail'd with them to let down the sail, and to make use of their Oars, to get to an Island which was within half a league of us, and where we arriv'd that night. We found there only two ruin'd huts; we made a fire, and

and pass'd over the night, but having neither Bread nor Meat, we made our supper on a piece of *Milan* Cheefe we had left. 1635.

The next day, we prosecuted our Voyage with a very good wind and fair weather, though the Sea was a little rough. Having made two leagues, a sudden blast coming from the East, though the wind were North turn'd the Boat, in which I was, with the Ambassador *Brugman*, so much upon one side, that it took in water; the surges at the same time rising half an ell above the brinck of it. All the Fisher-men could do was to let down the sail, and to run to the other side of the boat to weigh it down. The blast being over, we kept on our course, till a second put us to the same trouble. We had three of them in less than two hours; and this I think the greatest danger we had met with, in our Voyage: in as much as the Boat being old, and having in it, eight Persons, all the Silver Plate and other luggage, which in a manner fill'd it, so as that one wave might have overwhelm'd it, and cast us all away. But afterwards, when the Fisher-men saw the blast coming, they turn'd the side of the Boat to the wind, that the wave might not come with its full force upon it, and by that means we avoided the danger. Within three Leagues of Land we had also a violent shower of hail; but what is most to be admir'd in all this, was, that the Boat which carried the Ambassador *Crusius*, though within Pistol-shot of us, felt nothing of all this, but had fair weather all along.

Being gotten within half a League of Land, the wind, shifting to the South, was just in our teeth, and had oblig'd our Fisher-men to return, if the hope of a three-pint-Flagon of strong water, which we promis'd them, had not given them the courage to let down the sail, and to row us ashore. This was the 18. at night, in *Esthonia*, after we had roved two and twenty dayes upon the *Baltick* Sea, with all the danger that is to be expected by those, who trust themselves to the mercy of that Element in so uncertain a season. *The Ambassadors come into Livonia.*

The 22. came to *Hogland* two other barks forc'd thither by foul weather: Those we had left of ours in the Island pass'd in them to the continent, whither they came the 24. with the horses and baggage. We went thence to *Kunda*, a house belonging to my late Father-in-Law, *John Muller*, distant two Leagues from the Sea, where we staid three weeks, to refresh our selves after so much hardship at Sea. Most of us fell sick, yet none kept their beds above three dayes. Thence we went to *Reuel*, whether we came the second of *December*, with an intention to sojourn there some time, which we spent in ordering our Cloaths, and the Presents, which the salt-water, and the other inconveniences ensuing upon the wrack, had much prejudiced. *To Reuel! DECEMBER.*

The Ambassadors having all their people about them at *Reuel*, thought fit to publish the Order which the Duke would have observ'd through the whole Voyage. They had brought it with them seal'd with his Hignesse's Great Seal: but they added some things thereto, the better to prevent the disorders, which are but too frequent where there are so many Servants. But in regard they contain'd nothing extraordinary, we shall not insert them here, and only say, they were ill observ'd: for the Ambassador *Brugman* having arm'd the Lacquies with Pole-axes, which had Pistols in their handles, and given order they should not take any affront from the Inhabitants of *Reuel*, there hardly pass'd a day during the three Moneths we staid there, in expectation of other Credentials, but there was some falling out and fighting. In so much that *Feb. 11. Isaac Mercier*, a French-man, that waited on the Ambassador *Brugman* in his Chamber, a person of a good humour and not quarrellous, hearing the noise of an engagement between the Ambassadors Servants and the Apprentices of the City, and desirous to relieve his friends, was struck over the head with an iron-bar, which bruis'd the skull so, as that he dyed the next day. The Magistrate did all lay in his power to find out the Murtherer; but, to no purpose, so that all the reparation was, that the Senate, together with the Ambassadors and their retinue, accompany'd him to the grave.

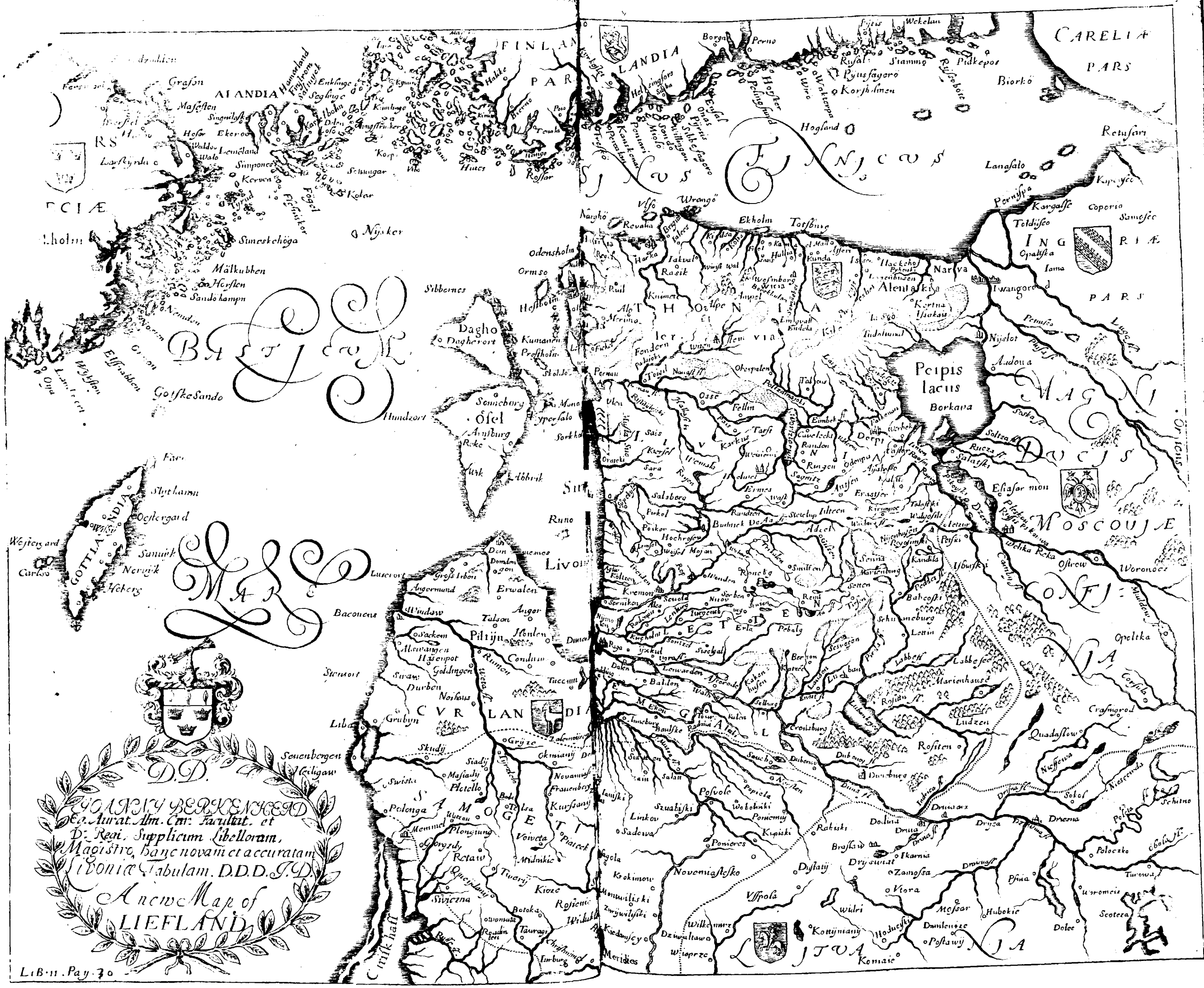
*Reuel* is situated at 50. degr. 25. min. latitude, and 48. deg. 30. min. longitude, upon the *Baltick* Sea, in the Province of *Esthonia*. *Waldemar*, or *Wolmar* II. King of *Denmark*, laid the foundations of it, about the year 1230. *Wolmar* III. sold it in the year 1347. together with the Cities of *Narvan* and *Wesenberg* to *Gosuin d'Eck*, Master of the Order of *Livonia*, for 19000. Marks of Silver. About 100. years since, *Livonia* groaning under a troublesome War against *Muscovy*, this City put it self under the protection of *Eric*, King of *Sueden*. It was so strong in those times, that it indur'd a notable Siege in the year 1570. against *Magnus*, Duke of *Holstein*, who commanded the Great Duke's Army; and another in the year 1577. against the same *Muscovites*, who were forc'd to raise it with loss. The situation of its Castle is so much the more advantageous, for that the Rock on which it is built is steepy on all sides, unless it be towards the City, which, being fortify'd according to the modern fortification, is almost as considerable a place as *Riga*; whence it came that for some years, it had the oversight of the College at *Novogorod*, joyntly with the City of *Lubeck*. It hath been these 300. years numbred among the *Hanseatick* Towns; but its Commerce began not to be great till about the year 1477. and at that time it might well keep up its Traffick, especially that of *Muscovy*, by reason of her excellent Port and Haven, which indeed are such, as if God and Nature had intended it for the convenience of Commerce. Had it not been ingross'd into few hands, it had still continu'd

1635. tinu'd in the same posture; but having broken with the other *Hanseatick* Towns in the year 1550. and the Great Duke having taken *Narva* soon after, the *Muscovites* establish'd, there, the Trading they before had at *Reuel*. It still enjoys the privilege of being a Mart, and the Inhabitants have, with the preference of the Merchandises discharg'd in their Port, the power to hinder the Traffick of *Livonia* into *Muscovy*, without their permission. These privileges have been confirmed to it by all the Treaties that have been made between the Kings of *Sueden*, and Dukes of *Muscovy*, as in the year 1595. at *Teusma*, in 1607. at *Wibourg*, and in 1617. at *Stolouna*. 'Tis true it hath lost some of these advantages since the last War of *Muscovy*, which were taken away, left, in imitation of several other of the *Hanseatick* Towns, it should attempt a defection from its Prince, yet does it still enjoy many other privileges, which have been confirmed to it, from time to time, by the Masters of the *Order*, while they were Lords of the Country, and afterwards by the Kings their Successors. It observes the same Customes with *Lubeck*, and hath a Consistory and a Superintendent for Ecclesiastical affairs, professing the Protestant Religion, according to the *Auspourg*-Confession, as also a very fair School, whence there come very good Scholars, who consummate their studies at *Derpt*, or some other Universities in those quarters. The Government of the City is Democratical, the Magistrate being oblig'd to summon the principal of several Professions, and the most antient Inhabitants, to consultations that concern affairs of Importance. There are still to be seen, within half a League of the City, towards the Sea-side, the ruins of a fair Monastery, founded by a Merchant of that City, at the beginning of the 15<sup>th</sup> age, out of a particular devotion he had for St. *Bridget*, under *Conrad de Jungingen*, Grand Master of *Prussia*, and *Conrad de Vitinghof*, Master Provincial of *Livonia*. It consisted of both Religious Men and Women, and the Book I saw of the foundation of this Monastery, pleasantly acquaints the Reader, that the *Friers* and *Nuns* there had found out a way to express their meanings one to another by signs, of which there is in it a little Dictionary.

The descrip-  
tion of  
Livonia.

*Livonia* hath, on the East, *Muscovy*; on the North, a Gulf of the *Baltick* Sea, dividing it from *Sueden* and *Finland*; on the West, the same *Baltick* Sea, and on the South, *Samogitia*, *Lithuania*, and *Prussia*. It is above 120. *German* leagues in length, and about 40. in breadth, and is divided into *Esthonia*, *Lettie*, and *Courland*. The first of these Provinces is subdivided into five Circuits, called *Harrie*, *Wirland*, *Allentaken*, *Ferwe*, and *Wiecks*, its chief City *Reuel*, as *Lettie* hath *Riga*, and *Courland*, *Goldingen*.

*Livonia*, and its Lords, the Masters of the *Order*, of whom we shall speak hereafter, were subject to the Emperor of *Germany*, not only since the Conquest of that Island from the Infidels by the *Germans*, but also, particularly since that in the year 1513. the Archbishop of *Riga*; with his Suffragans, and the Master of the *Order*, who had freed himself from the subjection of that of *Prussia*, were receiv'd among the Princes of the Empire. Let us now see how it is gone from the Empire. The *Muscovite* looking on this Province as lying very convenient for him; enter'd it, in the year 1501. with a powerful Army; but *Gualtier de Plettenberg*, Master of the *Order*, gave him battel, wherein above 40000 *Muscovites* were kill'd upon the place. This defeat produc'd a Cessation of 50 years. In the year 1558. *John Basilonits*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, having added to his territories the *Tartars* of *Cassan* and *Astrachan*, and willing to make his advantages of the differences between the Master of the *Order*, and Archbishop of *Riga*, enter'd *Livonia*, and having made incursions into the Bishoprick of *Derpt*, and *Wirland*, retreated into *Muscovy*. During these troubles, the *Livonians* were importunate with the Estates of the Empire, to send them relief against so cruel and barbarous an enemy; but none being to be expected, the City of *Reuel*, which was the most expos'd to danger, offer'd it self to the King of *Denmark*, and upon his refusal, apply'd it self to *Eric* King of *Sueden*, and desir'd of him a considerable succour of men and money. His answer was, that his Kingdom was not in a condition to supply them with either, but if the Town would put it self under his protection, he would maintain all its Privileges, and defend it against the *Muscovite*. Upon which, the City, having advis'd with the adjacent Nobility, broke off from the Master of the *Order*, and put it self under the protection of the King of *Sueden*, in the year 1560. The year before, 1559. the Archbishop of *Riga*, and the Coadjutor of the *Order*, had made their addresses to *Sigismund Augustus*, King of *Poland*, for assistance against the same enemy, and had promised him the sum of 600000. Ducats towards the charges of the War, engaging to him, for his security, nine of the best Baylywicks of the Country. But in the year 1561. the King of *Poland*, perceiving that all *Livonia* was likely to be lost, through the divisions of the Province, and that the City of *Reuel*, with part of *Esthonia*, had submitted to the King of *Sueden*, refus'd to execute the Treaty, and to send the relief promised, unless the Archbishop, and Master of the *Order*, would acknowledge the Sovereignty of the King of *Poland*. This extremity forc'd them to put all the Acts and Privileges they had obtain'd from the Empire and Pope, with the Seal, and other marks of Sovereignty, into the hands of the Prince of *Radzivil*, Commissioner from *Poland*, to whom also they took the Oath of fidelity. Upon which the King of *Poland* gave *Courland*, with the  
title



B

M



D.D.

JOANNES BERKENHOED  
 Ca. Aurat. Alm. Cam. Facultat. et  
 D. Regi. Supplicum Libellorum,  
 Magistro, hanc novam et accuratam  
 LIVONIAE Tabulam. D.D.D. J.D.

A new Map of  
 LIEFLAND

title of a Dutchy, to *Godard Ketler*, Master of the Order, who took the Oath of Allegiance to the Crown of *Poland*, on the 5 of *March* 1562. 1635.

By the Treaty concluded between the King of *Poland*, and the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, Jan. 15, 1582. the Duke restor'd to the Crown of *Poland* all the places of *Livonia*, those excepted which the King of *Sueden* was possess'd of in *Esthony*. Now, it is in a manner all under the power of the *Suede*.

*Livonia* is, in all parts, very fertile, and particularly in Wheat. For though it hath suffer'd much by the *Muscovites*, yet it is now more and more reduc'd to tillage, by setting the Forests afire, and sowing in the ashes of the burnt Wood and Turf, which for three or four years produce excellent good Wheat, and with great increase, without any Dung. Which is the more to be admir'd, in that 'tis known there remains no generative quality in the ashes: So that it is to be conceiv'd, that the Sulphur and Saltpeter, which remain with the Cinders upon the earth, leave behind them a heat and fatness able to produce, as well as dung. Which conceit is not dissonant from what *Strabo* says, at the end of his fifth book, where he speaks of the fertility of the Lands near the Mountain *Vesuvius* and *Mont-gibel*, in *Sicily*. There is also abundance of Cattel, and Fowl, so cheap, that many times we bought a young Hare for four pence; a Heath-Cock for six, and accordingly others, so that it is much cheaper living there than in *Germany*. *Its fertility*

The Inhabitants were a long time Heathens, it being in the 12 age that the rayes of the Sun of righteousness began to break in upon them, occasion'd by the frequentation of certain Merchants of *Bremen*, and the Commerce they were desirous to establish in those parts. About the year 1158. one of their Ships having been forc'd by a Tempest into the Gulf of *Riga*, which was not yet known, the Merchants agreed so well with the Inhabitants of the Country, that they resolv'd to continue their Traffick there, having withall, this satisfaction, that, the people being very simple, they thought it would be no hard matter to reduce them to Christianity. *Menard*, a Monk of *Segeberg*, was the first that preach'd the Gospel to them, and was made first Bishop of *Livonia*, by Pope *Alexander III.* in the year 1170. *Menard* was succeeded in the Bishoprick of *Livonia*, by *Bertold*, a Monk, of the Order of white Friers; but he, thinking to reduce those people rather by Arms than the word of God, met with a success accordingly, for having incens'd them, they kill'd him in the year 1186. and with him 11000. Christians. *Albert*, a Canon of *Bremen*, succeeded *Bertold*, in the Bishoprick. He laid the first foundations of the City of *Riga*, and of the Order of the Friers of the short sword, by authority from Pope Innocent the third, and by vertue of a power he had given them, to allow them the third part of that they should Conquer from the Barbarians. They observ'd the same rule as the *Templars*, and were call'd Friers or Knights of the short sword, because they had on their white Cloaks a red short sword, with a star of the same colour, which they have chang'd since into two short Swords, Saltar-wise. But in regard this new Religious Profession was not fully settled, it was joyn'd to the Order of St. *Mary* of *Jerusalem*, in the person of *Herman Balk*, Grand-Master of *Prussia*, in the year 1238. And it is since that time that the Master of *Livonia* had a dependence on the Grand-Master of *Prussia*, which was, till *Sigismond* King of *Poland* chang'd that quality into that of Duke of *Courland*, in the person of *Godard Ketler*, as is said before. *The Orders of Livonia an Knights*

All the Champain Countrey, of the two Provinces of *Letthie* and *Esthonia*, is to this day peopled with these Barbarians, who have nothing of their own, but are slaves, and serve the Nobility in the Countrey, and the Citizens in Cities. They are called *Venteutche*, that is, *not-Germans*, because their language was not understood by the *Germans*, who went to plant in those quarters; though that of *Letthie* hath nothing common with that of *Esthonia*, no more than there is between them, as to their Cloaths and manner of Life. The Women of *Esthonia* wear their Petticoats very narrow, and without any folds, like sacks, adorn'd above on their backs with many little brass Chains, having at the ends Counters of the same metal, and below set out with a certain lacing of yellow glafs. Those who would express a greater bravery, have about their Necks a Necklace of plates of silver of the bigness of a Crown, or half-Crown, and upon the breast, one as big as a round Trencher, but not much thicker than the back of a knife.

Maids wear nought on their heads, Summer nor Winter, and cut their hair as the men do, letting it fall negligently down about the head. Both Men and Women are clad with a wretched stuff made of Wool, or a coarse Linnen. They are yet unacquainted with Tannage, so that, in Summer, they have barks of Trees about their feet, and in the Winter, raw Leather of a Cow's hide. Both Men and Women do ordinarily carry all the Wealth they have about them.

Their Ceremonies of marriage are very odd. When a Country fellow marries a Lass out of another Village, he goes a horse-back to fetch her, sets her behind him, and makes her embrace him with the right hand. He hath in his hand a stick cleft at the top, where he puts a piece of brass money, which he gives to him who opens the wicket, through which he is to pass. Before, rides a man that plays upon the Bag-pipe, as also two of his friends, who, having naked swords in their hands, give two stroaks therewith, cross the Door of the House, where the marriage is to be

1635. be consummated, and then they thrust the point of one of the swords into a beam, over the Bridegroom's head, which is done to prevent Charms, which, they say, are ordinary in that Country. 'Tis to the same end that the Bride scatters little pieces of Cloath, or red Serge by the way, especially where cross-ways meet, near Crosses, and upon the Graves of little Children dead without baptism, whom they bury in the High-ways. She hath a Veil over her face while she is at the Table, which is not long; for, as soon almost as the Guests are set down, the married couple rise, and go to bed. About two hours after they get up, and are brought to sit down at the Table. Having drunk and danc'd till such time as they are able to stand no longer, they fall down on the floor, and sleep altogether like so many Swine.

They are  
sad Chri-  
stians.

We said the Gospel was preach'd in *Livonia* in the 12. age; but the *Livonians* are never the better Christians for it. Most of them are only such in name, and can hardly yet abstain from their Heathenish Superstitions. For though they are *Lutherans*, by profession, and that there is hardly a Village but hath its Church and Minister; yet are they so poorly instructed, and so far from regeneration, that it may be said, Baptism excepted, they have not any Character of Christianity. They very seldom go to Sermons, and never almost Communicate. They excuse their backwardness in frequenting the Sacraments, by alleging the great slavery they are in, which, they say, is so insupportable, that they have not time to mind their Devotions. If they go at any time to Sermon, or to the Communion, it is by force, or upon some other particular accompt. To this effect is a story was told me by *Andrew Besiq*, Provost of the Church of *Luckenhausen*, which was, That having been sent for to comfort, and administer the Communion to a Country-fellow who lay very sick, he ask'd him how he came to send for his Pastor in the condition he was then in, when for so many years before he had never bethought him of reconciling himself to God? The fellow ingenuously answer'd, that, for his own part, he should not have minded it then, but what he did, was by the advice of a friend, who told him, that if he did it not, he could not be buried in the Church-yard, nor carried to the ground with the ordinary Ceremonies. 'Tis true, the gross and inexcusable ignorance of most of the Pastors in those quarters, who might well come to be Catechiz'd themselves, hath contributed much to the obduration of those poor people: but the late King of *Sueden* hath taken order, therein enjoyning, by a severe Ordinance, the Bishop of the Province, who hath his residence in the Cathedral Church of *Renel*, to convocate a Synod once a year, for the regulation of Church affairs, and then to examine, not only the *Recipendiaries*, but also the *Pastors* themselves, thereby to oblige them to apply themselves to the constant study of the holy Scripture.

Their sla-  
very.

It must be acknowledg'd, the slavery these people are in is great, and indeed insupportable; but it is true withall; that upon the least liberty given them, they would break out into any extravagance. For being perswaded that their Predecessors have been Masters of the Country, and that only force hath enslav'd them to the *Germans*, they cannot forbear their resentments of it, and discovering, especially in their drink, if any opportunity of regaining their liberty should offer it self, a readiness to prosecute it. Of which they gave an evident example, when, upon the irruption of Colonel *Bot*, the Peasants would side with the Enemy, and head together, to secure their Masters and deliver them up to the *Polanders*.

Their opi-  
nion of e-  
ternal life.

They believe there is another life after this; but their imaginations of it are very extravagant. A *Livonian* woman, being present at her husband's burial, put a Needle and Thread into the Grave, giving this reason for it, that, her husband being to meet, in the other World, with persons of good Rank, she was atham'd he should be seen with his Cloaths rent. Nay, they so little mind what is to happen in the next World, that in the Oath they take to decide any difference at Law, instead of interesting the salvation of their Souls therein, they are oblig'd to consider their present and temporal advantages, and so they are sworn, as followeth: *I, N.N. am here present before thee: since thou, O Judge, desirest to know, and askest me, whether this Land, on which I now am, is God's and mine with a just title, I swear to God and his Saints, and accordingly God judge me at the last day, that this Land belongs to me of right, that it is God's and mine, and that my father hath been possess'd of it, and hath enjoy'd it a long time. And if the Oath I take prove to be false, I consent, that the Curse of God fall upon my Body and Soul, upon my Children, upon whatsoever appertains to me, even to the ninth generation.* And to shew that their Language hath nothing common with any of those, wherewith the most learned have any acquaintance, we shall here set down the same Oath, word for word, as they take it.

Their Oath  
in Law-  
sutes.

*Nucht seisen minna N. N. Seihn. Kui sinna sundia minust tabat, eht minna se Kockto perrašt tunnis tama Pean, eht sefinnane mah, Kumba pehl minna seisan, jumla ninc minnu verteenitut mahon, Kumba pehl minna minno eo aial ellanut ninck prukiru tollen seperašt sihs mannut an minna jumla ninck temma poha de eest. Ninc kui nued jummal peph sundina selb wihmb sel pelwal; & ses in nane mah jumla ninck minnu verteenitut permah on, Kumba minna ninck minno issa igkas prukinut oltemci, kus ma ulle Kock so wannutan, sihs tulke sedda minno tho ninck bingje pehl, minno ninck Keick minno lapsede pehl, nink Keick minna onne pehl emmis se udnya polwe tagka.*

'Tis

'Tis the same in *Esthonia*; but about *Riga*, when the Peasants swear at Law, they put a Turf upon their heads, and take a white stick in their hands, expressing thereby, that they are content, that they, their Children, and Cattel, may become dry as that Turf, and that itick, if they swear falsely. 1635.

These customs favour of their antient Idolatry. The Ministers do all they can to weed it out of them by little and little: to which end we saw, at *Narva*, the Catechism, Epistles, and Gospels, with their explications, which *Henry Stahl*, Superintendent of Ecclesiastical affairs in those parts (a person much esteem'd for his Learning and pains in instructing those *Barbarians*) had caused to be translated and Printed in their Language, to give them some apprehensions of Christian Religion. But Idolatry and Superstition are too deeply rooted in them, and their stupidity and stubbornness too great to give way to any hope, that they will ever be susceptible of instruction. They do their devotions commonly upon hills, or near a tree they make choice of to that purpose, and in which they make several incisions, bind them up with some red stuff, and there say their prayers, wherein they desire only temporal blessings. Two leagues from *Kunda*, between *Ruvel* and *Narva*, there is an old ruin'd Chapel, whither the Peasants go once a year on Pilgrimage, upon the day of our Lady's Visitation. Some put off their cloaths, and in that posture having kneel'd by a great stone that is in the midst of the Chapel, they afterwards leap about it, and offer it Fruits and Flesh, recommending the preservation of themselves and their Cattel to it for that year. This piece of devotion is concluded with eating and drinking, and all kind of licentiousness, which seldom end without quarrels, murders, and the like disorders.

They have such an inclination to Sorcery, and think it so necessary for the preservation of their Cattel, that Fathers and Mothers teach it their Children, so that there is scarce any Peasant but is a Sorcerer. They all observe certain superstitious Ceremonies, by which they think to elude the effects of it, upon which account it is, that they never kill any Beast, but they cast somewhat of it away, nor never make a Brewing, but they spill some part of it, that the Sorcery may fall upon that. They have also a custome of rebaptizing their Children, when, during the first six weeks after their birth, they chance to be sick or troubled with fits, whereof they think the cause to be, that the name, given them at their baptism, is not proper for them. Wherefore they give them another; but in regard this is not only a sin, but a crime which the Magistrate severely punishes in that Country, they conceal it.

As they are stubborn in their superstitions, so are they no less in the exact observation of their Customs. To which purpose we had a very pleasant, but true, story, related to us at Colonel *de la Barr's*, concerning an old Country fellow. Being condemn'd, for faults enormous enough, to lye along upon the ground, to receive his punishment, and *Madam de la Barre*, pitying his almost decrepit age, having so far interceded for him, as that his corporal punishment should be chang'd into a pecuniary mulct of about 15. or 16. pence, he thank'd her for her kindness, and said, that, for his part, being an old man, he would not introduce any novelty, nor suffer the Customes of the Country to be alter'd, but was ready to receive the chastisement which his Predecessors had not thought much to undergo, put off his cloaths, layd himself upon the ground, and receiv'd the blows according to his condemnation. *Their obstinacy.*

This is accounted no punishment, but an ordinary chastisement in *Livonia*. For, the people, being of an incorrigible nature, must be treated with that severity, which would elsewhere be insupportable. They are not permitted to make any purchase, and to prevent their so doing, they have only so much ground to manage, as will afford them a subsistence. Yet will they venture to cut down wood in some places of the Forests, and, having order'd the ground, sow wheat in it, which they hide in pits under ground, to be secretly sold. When they are taken in this, or any other fault, they make them strip themselves naked down to the hips, and to lye down upon the ground, or are ty'd to a post, while one of their Camerades beats them with a Switch, or Hollywand, till the blood comes of all sides; especially when the Master says *Selcke nack maha pexema*, Beat him till the skin falls from the flesh.

Nor are they suffer'd to have any money; for as soon as it is known they have any, the Gentlemen and their Officers, who are paid by the Peasantry, take it from them, nay force them to give what they have not. Which cruelty of the Masters puts these poor people many times into despair, whereof there happened a sad example. A Peasant press'd by his Officer to pay what he neither had, nor ought, and being depriv'd of the means whereby he should maintain his Family, strangled his Wife and Children, and when he had done hung himself up by them. The Officer coming the next day to the house, thinking to receive the money, struck his head against the man's feet that was hanging, and so perceiv'd the miserable execution, whereof he was the cause.

The Nobility of *Livonia*, especially of *Esthonia*, is free from all charges and taxes. Their courage, and the services they have done against the Infidels and *Muscovites*, have acquir'd them this liberty, and most of their privileges. *Volmar II.* King of *Denmark*, first gave them Manors to be held by Fealty, which have been since confirm'd by *Eric VII.* who gave them Letters



1635. Patents to that purpose. The Masters of the Order of the *Short Sword*, and the Grand Masters of the Order of *Prussia*, augmented them. *Conrad de Jungingen* extended the succession of such Mannors, in *Harric* and *Wirland*, to the daughters and their issue, to the fifth degree: and *Gaultier de Plettenberg*, who was chosen Grand-Master, in the year 1495. and acknowledg'd Prince of the Empire in 1513. absolutely exempted the Nobility of *Esthonia* from all subjection; excepting only the service which Gentlemen are oblig'd to do in person, upon the account of their Mannors. Once a year there is a review made of them, and that body of Nobility is look'd upon as a Nursery, that hath furnish'd, and still doth furnish *Sueden* with a great number of Officers, even to Generals of Armies; besides the Noble Cavalry it is able to raise, for the service of that Crown. The said Nobility came not under the protection of the King of *Sueden*, till such time as, being forsaken by all their Neighbours, and not able to oppose their enemies any longer, they were forc'd to make their applications to a foreign Crown, which hath promis'd to secure unto them all the Privileges, they have by their courage acquired.

The Government of the Country, both as to Policy and Justice, is in the Nobility, who commit the administration thereof to twelve of themselves, who are the Council of the Country, and have for their President, him who is Governour of the Province for the Crown of *Sueden*. In the time of our Embassy *Philip Scheiding* was President, who hath been since succeeded by *Eric Oxienstern*, Baron of *Kemilko*, Counsellor of the Crown of *Sueden*, and he, by *Henry*, Count de la *Tour*.

They meet yearly, in *January*, and then decide all differences between parties, all their proceedings consisting in a Declaration and an Answer, upon which they immediately give judgement. To this purpose is chosen a Gentleman, who hath the quality of Captain of the Province, and represents to the Governour and Council the grievances of the people, if there be any, and this employment is not continued in the same person above three years. And whereas, during the Wars with the *Muscovites* and *Polanders*, private mens Inheritances in the Provinces of *Harric*, *Wirland*, and *Wieck*, have been so confounded, that the sutes occasion'd thereby could not be peremptorily decided; there are appointed certain Judges from three years to three years, who take cognizance thereof, and if any one find himself aggriev'd by their judgement, he may appeal to the Governour and Council of the Country, who appoint Commissioners, who having been upon the places in question, do either reverse or confirm the former judgement. They have also particular Judges for the High-ways, which are there very bad, because of the Fens, Bridges, and Causeways, which are frequent all over the Country.

The continuation of our Voyage FEBRU. MARCH  
The Ambassadors leave Reuel. Kunda. Come to Narva.  
To return to our Voyage. We said before, that the Ambassadors, coming to *Calmer*, in the beginning of *November*, had sent a Page and a Lacquey to *Gottorp*, for other Credentials, instead of those the Sea-water had spoil'd. *John Arpenbeck* our Interpreter, had been sent to *Musron*, to give an account there of our delay, as also of the particulars of our wrack. Being all return'd to *Reuel*, we prepar'd for the prosecution of our Voyage, and the 24 of *Febr.* the Ambassador sent away the Controller of their house with 31 sledges, with part of the train and baggage. We all went along with the rest. *March 2.* the Magistrate and some of our friends brought us a league out of the City. We lay that night at *Kolka*, a house belonging to the Count de la *Garde*, Constable of *Sueden*, 7 leagues from *Reuel*. *March 3.* we came to *Kunda*, whereof we have spoken elsewhere; and the 4. to a house belonging to *M. John Fock*, 5 leagues from that of the Count de la *Garde*'s.

*March 5.* after five leagues travelling, we came to *Narva*. 'Tis a small Town, but strong, and hath a very good Castle. It is situated at 60 degrees of the Equinoctial, in the Province of *Allentaken*, so called from the River *Narva* or *Nerva*. This River rises out of the Lake *Peipis*, and falls into the Gulf of *Finland*, two leagues below this Town. It is in a manner as broad as the *Elbe*, but much swifter, and its water is very brownish. About half a league above this Town, there is a fall of water, which makes a dreadful noise, and is so violent, that breaking upon the Rocks, it is reduc'd as it were to powder, which filling the Air affords a strange sight, by reason that the Sun shining upon it, makes a kind of Rain-bow, no less pleasant than that fram'd in the Clouds. This fall occasions the unlading of all Merchandizes which pass that way from *Plescon* and *Derpt* for *Narva*, to be sent into the Gulf of *Finland*. 'Tis said that *Volmar II. K.* of *Denmark*, built it in the year 1213. *John Basilouits*, G. D. of *Muscovy*, took it in the year 1558. and *Pontus de la Garde*, General of the *Suedish Army*, recover'd it from the *Muscovites*, on the 6 of *September* 1581. and ever since the *Suedes* have been masters of it. *Nielis Asserfon* was Governour of it, at the time of our Embassy, who was succeeded since by *Eric Gyllensstierna* Governour and Lieutenant General for the Crown of *Sueden*, in *Ingermania*. It hath a long time enjoy'd the same privileges with the other *Hanscatick* Towns: but the Wars between *Muscovy* and *Sueden* had so far destroy'd the commerce of it, that it is within these few years that there are some hopes conceived of its re-establishment, which cannot encrease but as that of *Reuel* abates. The War between the *English* and *Hollanders* was so much to its advan-

advantage, that the Commerce of *Archangel* being by that means interrupted, the Ships that were wont to go to *Muscovy* made use of the Haven of *Narva*, whither there came in the year 1654. above sixty Ships, and took up, there, Merchandizes amounting to above 500000 Crowns. Upon this they took occasion to cleanse and augment the Town, to build new and regular streets for the convenience of strange Merchants, and to facilitate the passage of Ships into the Haven. Queen *Christina* of *Sueden*, exempted this City out of the general Jurisdiction of the Governour of the Province, and gave it a particular Lieutenant, to judge of affairs Secular and Ecclesiastical, without appeal to any other place.

The Castle is on this side the River, and on the other, that of *Juanogorod*, which the *Muscovites* have built upon a very steepy Rock, whereof the River of *Narva* makes a peninsula, so that the place was judg'd impregnable, till *Gustavus Adolphus* took it, in the year 1617. At the foot of this Castle is a Town called *Narva Muscovite*, to distinguish it from the *Teutonick* or *German Narva*, whereof our discourse hath been. This Town is inhabited by natural *Muscovites*, but Subjects of the Crown of *Sueden*, to which the said *Gustavus* hath also joyned the Castle of *Juanogorod*, where *Nichola Gallen* govern'd, at our passage that way, in quality of the King's Lieutenant.

The Country between *Reuel* and *Narva*, as also generally all *Ingermania* and *Livonia*, have in the Woods, a great number of Beasts that are yellowish and black; and among others such abundance of Wolves and Bears, that the Peasants have much ado to keep them off their Cattel and themselves. In Winter, when the ground is covered with snow, the Wolves, not meeting with ought abroad, will come, in the day time, into mens yards, and carry away the Doggs that keep them, and will break through the Walls, to get into the Stables.

We were told, that in the year 1634. upon the 24. of *January*, a Wolf, not of the biggest, had set upon 12. *Muscovian* Peasants, who were bringing Hay to the City. He took the first by the throat, got him down, and kill'd him; he did the like to the second. He flead the third's head; eat off the nose and cheeks of a fourth, and hurt two more. The other six got together, put themselves into a posture of defence, struck down the Wolf, and kill'd him. It was afterwards discovered, that he was mad, for all those he had hurt dyed so. The Magistrate of *Narva* had caus'd the skin to be preserv'd, which was shew'd as a thing very remarkable.

We were told also that a Bear, finding a Vessel of Herrings, which a Peasant had laid down at an Alehouse door, fell a-eating of them, and went thence into the Stable, whither the Peasants follow'd him; but having wounded some of them, the rest were glad to get away. Thence he went into a Brewhouse, where meeting with a fat of new Beer, he got so drunk, that the Peasants perceiving he reel'd every step, and at last fell asleep in the High-way, pursu'd and kill'd him. Another Peasant having turn'd out his Horse a-grazing in the night, found him next morning dead, with a Bear lying by him, who had fed very heartily upon him. But as soon as the Bear perceiv'd the Peasant, he leaves the Prey he was already assur'd of, got hold of the Peasant, and was carrying him away between his paws to his Den; but the Peasants Dog having got the Bear by the foot, made him let go, and, while they were engag'd, the Master had time to get up a Tree and save himself.

In the year 1634. A Bear digg'd up thirteen Carcasses out of a Church-yard, belonging to a little Village near *Narva*, and carried them away with the Coffins. Nor is it long since that a Lady of quality in those parts met one carrying away a Carcass, with the shrowd trailing after it, which frighted the Horse that drew the Lady's Sledge, so as that he ran away with her, croses the fields, to the great hazard of her life. Many other stories were told us; as that of a Bear who had kept a Woman 15 days together in his Den, and the manner how she was deliver'd thence; but we shall forbear any further accompt of them, as relating more to natural History than Travels. I shall only add, that the Peasants, who are not secure from these Creatures when they goe but into the fields, especially in the night time, are of opinion, that the noise of a stick; they fasten to the Sledges, frights the Wolves, and makes them run away.

March 7. We left *Narva*, and lodg'd at night at *Lilienhagen*, seven leagues from it. The 8. we travel'd six leagues, to *Sarits*. The 9. before noon, we got four leagues to *Orlin*, where the Interpreter we had sent before, to give notice of our departure from *Reuel*, met us, with this news, that a *Pristaf* waited for us upon the Frontiers. And whereas many disorders were crept into our retinue, insomuch that some express'd but little respect to their Superiours, the Ambassadors caus'd all to come before them, and told them, that being upon their entrance into *Muscovy*, where they judge of the quality of the Embassy, and the greatness of the Prince that sends it, by the honour which the Ambassadors receives from those that are about them, they should be mindful of their duty.

We all promis'd not to fail therein, provided we were mildly treated, every man according to his place and quality. Which the Ambassadors having promised for their parts, we parted cheerfully, to go and meet the *Pristaf*. We found him in a Wood within a league of *Orlin*,

1636, where he stay'd for us, in the Snow, with twenty four *Strelits* about him, and ninety Sledges.

As soon as the *Pristaf*, whose name was *Constantino Juanonits Arbuson*, had perceiv'd us, and saw that the Ambassadors were alighting, he also came out of his Sledge. He was clad in a Garment of green flower'd Velvet, which came down to his Hams, with a great Golden Chain crossing over his breast, and an upper Garment lined with Sables. As the Ambassadors advanced, he also came forward, till that being come up to them, and the Ambassadors having put off their hats, the *Pristaf* said, *Ambassadors, be uncover'd*. The Ambassadors return'd him answer by the Interpreter, that he saw, they were uncover'd, whereupon the *Pristaf* read out of a Paper, That *Knez Peter Alexandrowits Repuin*, *Weywode of Novogorod*, had sent him, by order from the Grand Seigneur, *Czaar*, and Great Duke *Michael Federonits*, *Conservator of all the Russes*, &c. to receive the Ambassadors *Philip Crusius*, and *Otton Brugman*, and to accommodate them with Horses, Carriages, Provisions, and what else were necessary for the continuance of their Voyage to *Novogorod*, and thence to *Moscou*. After we had return'd him our thanks, he gave us the precedence, enquir'd how we did, and of the particulars of our voyage, and causing the Horses to be put before the Sledges, he made us travel six leagues further that day, to a Village named *Tzuerin*.

March 10. About noon, we came to *Desan*, and at night to *Mokriza*, a Village 8 leagues from *Tzuerin*.

The 11. We came to *Novogorod*. At the entrance of the City, the *Pristaf* took precedence of the Ambassadors, though they endeavour'd to hinder him. But as soon as we were lodg'd, he desir'd the Interpreter to excuse the incivility he had been guilty of, and to satisfy the Ambassadors, that what he had done was by express order from the *Weywode*, who would have done him some ill Office about the Great Duke if he had not obey'd him.

From *Narva* to *Novogorod* are counted 40 *German* leagues; thence to *Plescou* 36. and to *Moscou* 120. leagues. *Novogorod* is situated upon the River *Wolgda*, at 58 degrees, 23 min. elevation. *Lundorp* in his Continuation of *Sleidan*, puts it at 62. and *Paulus Jovius*, at 64 degrees: but at the exact observation I made of it on the 15 of *March* 1636. I found, that, at noon, the Sun was above the Horizon 33 degr. 45 min. and that the declination of the Sun, by reason of the Leap-year, because of 55. degr. was 2 degr. and 8 min. which being subtracted out of the elevation of the Sun, that of the Equinoctial line could be but 31 degr. 27 min. which taken out of 90 degr. there remains but 58 degrees, 23 minutes. Which almost agrees with the calculation made of it by *Bureus*, some time Ambassador for the Crown of *Sueden* in *Muscovy*, who puts the City of *Novogorod*, at 58 degrees, 13 minutes. It is seated in a spacious plain upon the River *Wolgda*, or *Wolchou*, which hath its rise out of the Lake of *Ilmen*, half a league above this City, and crossing the Lake of *Ladoga*, does, in its way, pass through the River *Niowa*, near *Notebourg*, and by the Gulf of *Finland*, falls into the *Baltick* Sea. It abounds with all sorts of fish, especially *Breme*, which are there excellent good, and very cheap. But the greatest advantage accrues to this City from this River, is by Commerce. For being Navigable from its very source, and the Country abounding in Wheat, Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, and *Russia* Leather, which is better dress'd at *Novogorod*, than in any other City of *Muscovy*, the easiness of the transportation of these Commodities, brought thither not only the *Livonians* and *Suedes*, who are Neighbours, but also *Danes*, *Germans*, and *Flemmings*, who settled themselves there so well, that it was, without dispute, the greatest City for Trade in all the North. The Hanseatick Towns had an Office of Address in this City, which enjoying many great Privileges under its Prince, who had no dependance on the Great Duke, was grown so powerful, that it grew into a Proverb, *Ochto Moschet stoiati protiv' Bocho dai welik Novogorod?* Who can oppose God and the great City of *Novogorod*?

Some would compare it, for greatness, with *Rome*; but they are mistaken. For though it be called *Weliki Novogorod*, the great *Novogorod*, yet can it not be compar'd to *Rome*. It's not unlikely, it hath been greater than it is now, not only because it was the greatest for Commerce of any in the North, but also for that all about may be seen the ruins of Walls, and several Steeples, which, no doubt, had been part of the City. The number of its Steeples promises yet somewhat more great and noble, than what may be now seen; since that coming to the City, we see onely Walls of Wood, and Houses built with Beams lay'd one upon another.

*Vithold*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, and General of the *Polish* Army, was the first that, in the year 1427. oblig'd it to pay a considerable Tribute, which some would have amount to 100000 Roubles, which come to above 200000 Crowns. The Tyrant *John Basli Grosdin*, having after a seven years War, gain'd a great victory over an Army rais'd by this City, in the month of *November* 1477 forc'd the Inhabitants to submission, and to receive a Governour from him: but considering withall that he could not make himself as absolute as he would be there, and that it would be hard for him to settle himself there by force, he thought it best to go thither in person, pretending some concernments of Religion, and that he would prevent their

Tzuerin.  
Desan.  
Mokriza.  
Come to  
Novogorod.

A description  
of the  
City of  
Novogorod.

their embracing the Roman Catholick. The Archbishop *Theophilus*, who had most authority there, was the most forward to promote his design, and the first rewarded for his pains. For no sooner was the Tyrant got into the City, but he pillag'd it, so that, at his departure thence, he carry'd away three hundred Wagons loaden with Gold, Silver, and Jewels, besides the rich stuffs and other sumptuous moveables, which he dispos'd into other Wagons, and convey'd to *Moscow*, whither he also transported the Inhabitants, and sent *Muscovites* thither in their stead. But nothing contributed more to the destruction of this Citie, than the brutish cruelty of *John Basilouits*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*. This Tyrant, upon a meer suspicion he had conceiv'd of the Inhabitants of *Novogorod*, enter'd the City, in the year 1569. and caus'd to be kill'd or cast into the River 2770. persons, without any respect of quality, age, or sex, besides an Infinite number of poor people who were trampled to death by a party of horse. A Gentleman, sent by the King of *Denmark*, to this Tyrant, eight years after the taking of the City, relates in his *Itinerary*, that persons of quality had assur'd him, that there were so many bodies cast into *Wolgda*, that the River stopping overflow'd all the neighbouring fields. The Plague which soon follow'd this cruelty, was so great, that, no body venturing to bring in Provisions, the Inhabitants fed on the dead Carcasses. The Tyrant took a pretence from this inhumanity to cause to be cut in pieces all those who had escap'd the Plague, Famine, and his former cruelty, which was no doubt more dreadful than all the other chastisements of God. I shall allege onely two Examples relating to *Novogorod*. The Archbishop of this place, having escap'd the first fury of the Soldiery, either as an acknowledgement of the favour, or to flatter the Tyrant, entertains him at a great Feast in his Archiepiscopal Palace, whither the Duke say'd not to come, with his Guard about him: but while they were at Dinner, he sent to pillage the rich Temple of *St. Sophia*, and all the Treasures of the other Churches, which had been brought thither, as to a place of safety. After Dinner he caus'd the Archbishop's Palace to be in like manner pillaged, and told the Archbishop, that it would be ridiculous for him to act the Prelate any longer, since he had not to bear himself out in that quality; that he must put off his rich habit, which must thence-forward be troublesome to him, and that he would bestow on him a Bagpipe and a Bear, which he should lead up and down, and teach to dance, to get mony; That he must resolve to marry, and that all the other Prelates and Abbots that were about the City should be invited to the Wedding, setting down the precise sum which it was his pleasure that every one should present to the new-married couple. None but brought what he had made a shift to save, thinking the poor Archbishop would have had it. But the Tyrant took all the money, and, having caus'd a white Mare to be brought, said to the Archbishop; There is thy wife, get up on her, and go to *Moscow*, where I will have thee entertain'd among the Violins, that thou may'st teach the Bear to dance. The Archbishop was forc'd to obey, and, as soon as he was mounted, they ty'd his legs under the Mare's belly, hung about his neck some Pipes, a Fiddle, and a Timbrel, and would needs make him play on the Pipes. He escap'd with this punishment, but all the other Abbots and Monks were either cut to pieces, or, with Pikes and Halbards, forc'd into the River.

An example of cruelty.

Nay, he had a particular longing for the mony of one *Theodore Sircon*, a rich Merchant. He sent for him to the Camp neer *Novogorod*, and, having fasten'd a rope about his waste, order'd him to be cast into the River, drawing him from one side of it to the other, till he was ready to give up the ghost. Then he caus'd him to be taken up, and ask'd him what he had seen under water. The Merchant answer'd, That he had seen a great number of Devils thronging about the Tyrant's soul, to carry it along with them to Hell. The Tyrant reply'd, Thou art in the right on't: but it is just I should reward thee for thy prophecy, whereupon calling for seething oil, he caus'd his feet to be put into it, and continu'd there, till he had promis'd to pay him ten thousand Crowns. Which done, he caus'd him to be cut to pieces, with his brother *Alexis*.

The Baron of *Herberstein*, who travel'd into *Muscovy*, in the time of the Emperor *Maximilian* the first, and about his Affairs, says, that heretofore, before the City of *Novogorod* was converted to the Christian Faith, there was an Idol called *Perun*, that is, the God of *Perun* and Fire, *perun*, in the *Muscovian* language signifying fire. This God was represented with a Thunder-bolt in his hand, and hard by him was kept a constant fire of Oak, which was not to go out, but at the peril of their lives who kept it. The same Author addes, that the Inhabitants of *Novogorod* having received Baptism, and being made Christians, cast the Idol into water, that it went against the stream of the River, and that being near the Bridge, it call'd to the Inhabitants, and casting a stick among them, bid them keep it for his sake; That in his time, on a certain day in the year, the voice of *Perun* was heard there, and that thereupon the Inhabitants fell a-fighting with sticks, so earnestly, that the *Weywode* had much ado to separate them. But now there is no talk of any such thing, there being no monument of *Perun* left, other than that there is a Monastery called *Perunski Monastir*, which they say is built in the place where the Temple of the Idol stood before.

Without the City, and on the other side of the River, is a Castle, encompass'd with a stone-wall,

1636. wall, where live the *Weywode* and the Metropolitan, or Arch-bishop, who hath the over-sight of Ecclesiastical affairs all over the Province. This Castle joyns to the City by a great Bridge, from which, Duke *John Basilovits* caus'd a great number of Inhabitants to be cast into the River, as was said before. Over against the Castle, on the same side with the City, is a Convent, dedicated to *St. Anthony*. The *Muscovites* say, he came from *Rome* into those parts upon a Mill-stone, upon which he came down the *Tiber*, cross'd the Sea, and so up the River *Wolgda*, to *Novogorod*. They add, that, by the way, he met certain Fisher-men, with whom he bargain'd for the first draught they should make: that they brought up a Chest full of Priests Vestiments to say Mass in, Books, and Money, belonging to this Saint, and that afterwards he built a Chapel there, in which they say he lies interr'd, and that his Body is there to be seen, as entire as when he departed this World. Many Miracles are wrought there, as they say; but they permit not strangers to go in, thinking it enough to shew them the Mill-stone, upon which the Saint perform'd this pretended voyage, and which indeed may be seen lying against the Wall. The Devotions performed there have been such as have built a very fair Monastery in that place.

St. Anthony's Monastery.

We staid at *Novogorod*, five days, during which the *Weywode* sent us a Present of 24 sorts of meat, dress'd after their way, and 16 sorts of drink. The Chancellor, *Bogdan Fæderovits Oboborou*, who had been our *Pristaf* in the former Voyage, sent us also divers delicacies. The Ambassadors presented the *Weywode* with a new Coach.

The Ambassadors leave Novogorod. Brunits. Miedna. Kressa. Iselbitza. Simnagora. Columna. Wisna wolloka. Windra Pusk. Torsock. Troitza. Miedna. Tuere. Sawidowa. Saulkspas.

March 16. We had brought us 129 fresh Horses for our Sledges, and we got that day four leagues to *Brunits*, where we took up fresh Horses again, wherewith, the next day, we travel'd in the forenoon 8 leagues to *Miedna*, and in the afternoon, four and a half to *Kressa*. The 18 we got before dinner six leagues to *Iselbitza*; in the afternoon, four to *Simnagora*. The 19. nine leagues to *Columna*; and the 20. five, to *Wisna wolloka*, where we saw a young man of 12 years of age that was married. At *Tuere*, we saw a married woman that was but 11. and this is ordinary in *Muscovy*, as also in *Finland*. The same night we came to *Windra Pusk*, having travel'd that afternoon seven leagues. In this last place, there were but three houses, and the stoves so nasty and stinking, that we had a very ill night of it, though indeed in other places the stoves are not kept much better than stables in our Country.

Klin.

The 21 we got 7 leagues, to *Torsock*. The 22. six, to *Troitza Miedna*; and the 23. six more, to *Tuere*, mentioned before. Here the snow beginning to melt in several places, we quitted our Sledges, and took the *Wolgda*, which was still frozen, and travel'd that day six leagues, to *Gorodna*. The 24. we went by land again, for the Ice began to give way, and got to *Sawidowa*; and thence to *Saulkspas*, seven leagues from our last lodging, having, by the way, pass'd several Brooks with great difficulty, by reason the Ice was loose. The 25. we pass'd by a great Village called *Klin*, behind which is the Brook *Sestrea*, which falls into the River *Dubna*, and, with it, into *Wolgda*. We were forc'd to stay the flakes of Ice with stakes, which we made a shift to fasten in the Brook, to hinder them from carrying us away. The next day we pass'd it again, by reason it winds it self up and down in those parts, and lodg'd that night at *Beschick*, seven leagues from *Klin*. The 27. we pass'd two other little Brooks, and got 6 leagues forwards, to *Zerkizono*. The 28. we got but three leagues, to *Nicola-Darebna*, which the Author, in the first Book calls *Nicola Nachinski*, within two leagues of *Moscou*, where the Ambassadors are wont to expect the Great Duke's pleasure, and the order he would have observ'd in their entrance. In the mean time we fitted our Liveries, and set our selves in order for our Cavalcade, which we made the next day at Noon, as followeth.

Beschick. Zerkizono. Nicola-Darebna.

Their entrance into Moscou.

First, went the 24 Musketers who had conducted us from the Frontiers, being all *Cosaques*. After them our Mareschal alone.

Then the Officers and Gentlemen, three a-breast, and those of best quality first.

Three Trumpeters, with silver Trumpets.

Then the Ambassadors, each in his Sledge, having before them six with Carabins, and on both sides as many, with Partizans.

Next the Sledges, came the Pages, and after them, the rest of the retinue on horse-back, and the baggage, all in very good order. The *Pristaf* took place of the Ambassadors. Being come within half a league of the City, there met us many Troops of horse, *Muscovian*, *Tartars*, and some *Germans*, who having rid about our Cavalcade, return'd to the City. After these came several other Troops, which divided themselves, and encompassing us on both sides, conducted us to the City.

About a quarter of a league from the City we met two *Pristafs*, with a very noble attendance, and the same equipage they had at our former reception. Being come within 20. paces of us, they sent word to the Ambassadors, that they should alight out of their Sledges, and come to them. The *Pristafs* neither alighted, nor uncover'd themselves, till the Ambassadors had done both. They are enjoyn'd to proceed with this reservedness, and to stand very much upon the grandeur and reputation of their Prince, upon pain of being cast out of favour, which disgrace is many times attended with whipping or cudgeling.

Our reception was after the same manner as the first time, the more aged *Pristaf* beginning in these termes; *The Grand Seigneur, Czaar, and Great Duke*, Michael Federouits, &c. (repeating all the other Titles) hath commanded us to receive thee, Philip Crusius, and thee Ottron Brugman, great Ambassador from the Grand Signor, Frederick Duke of Holstein, and to conduct you to his Capital City of Moscou. To which the other added; His Majesty hath appointed these Tumoronins, or Gentlemen, here present, *Juan Juaniosin Salmosin, and my self Andrew Juanouits Zabaron*, to be your *Pristafs* during the abode you shall make there. Then the Master of the Horse presented himself, made his complement, and brought the Ambassadors, two very stately Horses, white as snow, and twelve others for the chief of their retinue. From the Gate to our Lodgings, we pass'd through a double file of Musketers, to the number of above 3000. and we were lodg'd in that quarter of the City which is called *Cataigorod*, not far from the Castle, in a stone-house, built by an Archbishop named *Susinski*, who fell into disgrace some years before, and was banish'd.

As soon as we had alighted, there were brought in, from the Great Duke's Kitchin and Cellar, all sorts of meats and drinks. And from that time during our stay at *Moscou*, we were allow'd, every day, sixty two Loaves, a quarter of Beef, four Sheep, a dozen of Pullets, two Geese, one Hare, and one Heath-cock, alternately, fifty Eggs, ten pence towards Candles, and five pence for small things us'd in the Kitchin, one Pot of Sack, eight of Hydromel, three of Beer, and three small pots of Strong-water. Besides all this, for a common stock, a Tun of Beer, a lesser Tun of Hydromel, and a Barrel of Strong-water. With this we had, by way of extraordinary in the week, a *poude*, that is, forty pound of Butter, and as much Salt, three Pails of Vinigre, two Muttons, and a Goose. This allowance was doubled at our arrival, as also upon *Palm-Sunday*, *Easter-day*, and the young Prince's Birth-day; but we had them dress'd by our own Cooks. The house-door was kept by a *Desernick*, or Corporal, who had nine Musketers about him: but the *Pristaf's* came every day, to entertain and divert us; and immediately after our first publick Audience, or as soon as we have been so happy as to have seen the bright eyes of his Majesty the *Czaar*, as they express it, they gave us the same liberty as we had at our former Voyage.

*Arril 3.* we had our first publick Audience, to which we were conducted with the same Ceremonies as before, and, in our Cavalcade, we observ'd the same order as we had at our entrance; unless it were, that the Secretary went next the Ambassadors carrying the Credential Letters upon a great piece of Crimson Taffata. The Musketers had made a lane from our Lodging to the Castle, but all could not keep off the people from thronging in to see us.

The Courriers went and came, as their custome is, to give directions for our march; to order it so, as that the Great Duke might ascend his Throne, just at the arrival of the Ambassadors.

The Ceremonies of the Audience were as is before mentioned. And the Propositions made contained only complements, thanks for his Majesties favour, in granting the Ambassadors a passage into *Persia*, and desires to have some secret conferences.

As soon as we were return'd to our Lodgings, came one of the Great Duke's Carvers, named *Knez Simon Petronits Luon*, with forty dishes of meat from his Majesty, all Fish, fry'd things, and pulse, it being in their Lent: and twelve pots of several sorts of drinks.

The Cloath being layd, and the meat serv'd up, he presented, with his own hand, to the Ambassadors and those of their retinue, to every one a Gobelet full of a very strong Aquavitz, took himself a great Vermilion gilt cup, and drunk the Great Duke's health, then the young Prince's, and then that of his Highness, obliging all to pledge him. He was presented with a piece of Plate gilt, and those who brought in the meat had two Crowns a-piece given them.

We fate down; but most of the dishes being dress'd with Onions and Garlick, we eat very little, and sent the rest to our friends in the City. But what we spar'd in meat, we made good in drink, whereto we were partly encourag'd by the *Persian* Ambassadors, who being lodg'd near us, gave us the divertisement of their Bagpipes, and Hautbois, and partly by the excellent Wines; which the Great Duke had sent us.

*Apr. 5.* we had our first private Audience, with the ordinary Ceremonies, having the same Commissioners we had in our former negotiation, except the Chancellour *Juan Tarassouits Grammatin*, who, by reason of age, had resign'd his charge, which was conferr'd upon *Fedor Fedorouin Lichozou*. While we were at this Audience, there died at our Lodging one of our Lacqueyes, who, some few dayes before, having been overturn'd in one of the Sledges, had been hurt by the Ambassador *Brugman's* Cabinet, which fell upon his breast. Being of the reform'd religion, his body was carried to the Church of that Profession, where he had a Funeral Sermon, after which he was buried in the Church-yard belonging to the *Germans*. The Great Duke sent us for the solemnity of the enterment, a *Pristaf*, and 15. white Horses out of his own Stables.

The 9. We had our second private Audience. The 10. being *Palm-Sunday*, the *Muscovites* had a noble Procession, to represent our Saviour's entrance into *Jerusalem*, and, that we might

1636.  
The reception of the Ambassadors.

Their allowance.

APRIL

The Palm-Sunday Procession.

1636. the more conveniently see it, having express'd our desires to that purpose, the Great Duke sent the Ambassadors their ordinary Horses, and fifteen others for their retinue. He order'd also to be kept for us a place, near the Castle-Gate, whence they drove out the people which had throng'd in to the number of 10000. The *Persian* Ambassadors were plac'd behind us, in the little Theatre we have spoken of before.

The Great Duke having been at service in our Lady's Church, came out of the Castle with the Patriarch in very good order.

First, came a very large Chariot, made of boards nail'd together, but low, drawing after it a Tree, on which hung abundance of Apples, Figs, and Grapes. In it were four little Boys with surplises, who sung the Hosanna.

Then follow'd many Priests, in their surplises and copes, carrying Crosses, Banners, and Images, upon long Poles; some of them sung, others cast Incense among the people. Next came the *Gofes* or Duke's Merchants; after them the *Diaken*, *Clerks*, *Secretaries*, *Knez* and *Bojares*, having, most of them Palms in their hands, and went immediately before the Great Duke, who was most richly clad, with a Crown upon his head, supported by the two principal Counsellors of State, *Knez Juan Borisowits Cyraski*, and *Knez Alexey Michaelouis Wou*, and led, himself, by the bridle, the Patriarch's Horse, which was cover'd with Cloath, and made to represent an Ass. The Patriarch, who rid on him, had on his head a round white Satin Cap, beset with rich Pearls, and about it a very rich Crown. He had in his right hand a Cross of Diamonds, wherewith he bless'd the people, who receiv'd his benediction with great submission, bowing their heads, and incessantly making the sign of the Cross. About and behind him were Metropolitans, Bishops, and other Priests, whereof some carried Books, others Censers. About fifty little Boys, most clad in red, put off their Casacks and scatter'd them along the way: others had pieces of Cloath about an Ell-square, of all colours, which they laid on the ground, for the Great Duke and Patriarch to pass over. The Great Duke being come over against us, made a halt, and sent his principal Interpreter, *John Helmes*, to ask after our health, and went not on till our answer was brought him. This done, he went into the Church, where he stay'd about half an hour. In his return, he stopp'd again at the same place, to give the Ambassadors notice that he would send them a Dinner from his own Table: which yet was not done, but instead thereof, our ordinary allowance was doubled.

The honour the Great Duke did the Patriarch in leading his horse, is worth to him 400 Crowns, which the Patriarch is oblig'd to give him. Upon *Pain-Sunday*, the same Ceremonies were observ'd all over *Muscovy*; the Metropolitans and Bishops representing the person of the Patriarch, the *Weiwodes* or Governours, that of the Great Duke.

*April. 17.* was their *Easter-day*. 'Tis the greatest of all their Festivals, and they celebrate it with abundance of Ceremonies, and great rejoycings, as well in remembrance of our Saviour's Resurrection, as that it puts a period to their *Lent*. The streets were all full of a sort of Merchants, who sold Eggs of all sorts of colours, which the *Muscovites* send by way of Present one to another, for a fortnight together after *Easter*, during which time, when they meet, they kiss each other, and their salutation is in these words, *Christos was Chrest*, that is, *Christ is risen*, whereto the other answers, *Wostin was Chrest*, that is, *He is risen indeed*. No person, what condition, sex, or other quality soever he be of, dares refuse these kisses, or the Eggs, that are presented to him. The Great Duke himself hath Presented some to the principal Counsellors, and Lords of his Court. He is wont also, on *Easter-day*, betimes in the morning, to visit the Prisoners before he goes to Church, and to order every one to have an Egg given him, and some sheep-skin fur bestow'd on them, exhorting them to rejoyce, since Christ dy'd for their sins, and was now truly risen again. That done, he causes the Prison-doors to be shut again, and goes to his Devotions. Their greatest rejoycings consist in Feasts, and good Cheer; but especially in debauches, in common drinking-houles, which are full of all sorts of persons, Men and Women, Ecclesiastick and Laicks, who get so drunk, that the streets are pav'd with Drunkards. The present Patriarch hath prohibited them, and order'd that on *Easter-day* no drinking places should be open; but he is not much obey'd.

*Brugman hath a private audience.* *April 29.* The Ambassador *Brugman* desir'd, and had, a private audience of the *Bojares*; to which he went alone, without his Colleague, and but few persons about him. It was given him in the Exchequer, and lasted above two hours; what he treated about we could never learn, till afterward, by the charge put in against him at our return home.

*MAY.* *May 6.* The Ambassadors had together their third conference with the *Bojares*; the 17. the fourth; and the 27. the fifth and last private audience.

*May 30.* The Great Duke permitted the young Prince's Governour, to go a-hawking, and to invite, to that Divertisement, the Gentlemen of our retinue. He sent us Horses, and carried us two Leagues from the City into most pleasant Meadow grounds. Having sported two or three hours, we were treated with a Collation, under a Tent pitch'd there for that end. The treatment was ordinary, Strong-water, Hydromel, Ginger-bread, and preserv'd Cherries.

June

June 1. The *Muscovites* celebrated with great solemnities the birth-day of their young Prince, *Knez Juan Michaelouits*. Our ordinary allowance of Provisions was doubled. 1636.  
JUNE.

The 3. The Ambassador *Brugman* had a second private conference with the *Bojares*. June 14. being Whitsun-eve, the Great Duke gave publick audience to all the Ambassadors then in *Mosco*, in order to their departure. That of *Persia* went first to audience: he was a *Cupzin*, or Merchant; as he came back he had on his other Cloaths, according to the *Persian* custom a Garment of Crimfon-Satin, lined with the best kind of Sables which the Great Duke had Presented him with.

After him went the *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Tartars*, who in their return, caus'd their Letters, and the Presents they had receiv'd, to be carried before them.

The 12. Arrived there our Controller, who had stay'd at *Dantzick*, to look after the finishing of some Presents which we were to carry into *Persia*. The Great Duke was gone on a Pilgrimage out of the City, and the Chancellor durst not permit the Controller to enter in without his Majesties exprefs order; which occasion'd his staying three dayes in the Suburbs.

The 15. The Great Duke and Dutchesf return'd to *Moscou*. The Duke was attended by a great number of Lords: the Dutchesf had about her 36. Ladies, or Maids of honour. They were all on Hors-back, sitting a-stride, cloath'd in red, white Hats on their heads, with great red bands dangling at their backs, white Scarfs about their necks; they were most wickedly be-painted. *The great Dutchesf her Cavalcade.*

The 17. I was sent to the Chancellor, to speak to him concerning our dispatches. He would do me the greatest honour I could expect, and order'd, I should be brought in to audience by a *Pristaf*. That importunate civility cost me two hours attendance in the Antichamber, till a *Pristaf* was found. The Chancellor and Vice-Chancellor receiv'd me kindly, and dismiss'd me well satisfy'd. The Table in the Audience Chamber was cover'd with a very rich *Persian* Carpet, upon which was a silver Standish, but without any Ink in it: I was told afterwards, that they were set there only for the time I was to stay in the room, which was but poorly furnish'd without them.

The 20. The *Pristafs* came to tell us, that we might take our journey for *Persia* when we pleas'd, and that at our return thence, we should have the honour to kiss his Majesties hand, it being not fit they did it then, since the Ambassadors were not to return into their own Country, and that at the last publick audience only, the Great Duke was oblig'd to answer the Credentials they had brought.

We accordingly prepar'd for our departure, got Boats to be provided to carry us upon the River to *Nisa*, and took into our service, three Lieutenants, four Serjeants, and twenty three Souldiers, *Scots* and *Germans*. The Great Duke gave us leave to take them out of his own Guard, for our security against the incursions of the *Tartars*, which make travelling near *Wolgda* very dangerous. We also hir'd certain *Muscovites*, for ordinary Employments. The 24. and 25. were spent in putting our things aboard, and sending away certain bras Guns we had brought out of *Germany*, and some Cabinets we had bought at *Moscou*, and part of our Baggage, ordering the Conductor to stay for us at *Nisa*.

The 26. came in Ambassadors, or, as the *Muscovites* call them, *Courriers of quality*, from the King of *Poland*. We went out of the City, to observe their entrance. As soon as they perceiv'd us, they saluted us very civilly, putting off their Hats, but their demeanour towards the *Muscovites* was much wanting of respect, never offering to be uncovered. They also oblig'd the *Pristafs* to alight, and uncover themselves first, saying, they were not there to do the *Muscovites* any honour, but to receive it from them. There were no Horses out the Great Duke's Stables at the entrance of these Ambassadors, because another *Polish* Ambassador, had, some few dayes before, refus'd them, and made use of his own. *The entrance of Ambassadors from Poland.*

This other *Polish* Ambassador had been sent to the Great Duke immediately after the defeat of the *Muscovites* before *Smolensco*, which gave him occasion to be so insolent as he was, during his stay at *Mosco*. He would needs make his proposition fitting, and perceiving that, when he pronounc'd the name and titles of his King, the *Bojares* were not uncover'd, he stopp'd, till such time as the Grand Duke had commanded them to be so. The King of *Poland* had sent the Great Duke no Present, but the Ambassador gave him, as from himself, a very fair Coach, and yet when the Duke sent him a rich Present of Sables, he refus'd them. Whereupon the Great Duke sent back his Coach, which the Ambassador being angry at, took that occasion to tumble the *Pristaf* from the top of a high pair of stairs to the bottom. The Great Duke was so incens'd thereat, that he sent one to tell the Ambassador, that he knew not, whether this demeanour of his was according to his Master's order, or that the rudeness proceeded from his own passion; that if his King had commanded him to do so, patience must be had, till God enabled him to exprefs his repentment of it, that the event of War was in his hands, and that another time he might be the more fortunate: but that if he had done this without *The fierceness of a Polish Ambassador.*



1636. order, and upon his own accompt, complaint should be made of it to the King his Master. The 26 of June, the *Pristaf* brought us the Great Dukes Pass, which for the odness of the stile, we think fit to insert here, faithfully translated out of the *Muscovian* language.

The Great Duke's Pass.

From the Grand Seigneur and Great Duke of all the *Russes*, Michael Federouits; We enjoyn all our Bojares, Weiwodes and Diaken, and all our Commanders from the City of Moscou to Columna, and thence to Pereftaf, Refansky, and Kalimoua, to Murama, and Nise-Novogorod, to Casan, and Astrachan, to let pass Philip Crusius and Otton Brugman, Ambassadors and Counsellours from Frederick, Duke of Holstein, whom we have permitted to go from Moscou into Persia, to Schach Sefi of Persia: by vertue of a Treaty made for the Passage and Commerce of the Merchants of Holstein. We have also permitted them to take along with them their Germans of Holstein, to the number of 85 persons, and for their convoy 30 Souldiers, chosen, with our consent, out of the Germans, who serve in Muscovy, which number they may augment, for the safety of their Voyage of Persia, at Nisa, Cassan, or Astrachan, by eleven men, Germans or Muscovites, voluntiers. We also permit them, at Nisa, to hire two Pilots, who are acquainted with the course of the Wolgda. We consent, and in like manner permit the said Ambassadors of Holstein, if, at their return from Persia, they stand in need of a Convoy, or other people for business, to take at Cassan, or Astrachan, or any where else they shall think fit, forty men, or such other number as they shall think requisite for the prosecution of their Voyage: provided, that those of our people who shall hire themselves to the said Ambassadors, give in their names to the Bojares, Weiwodes, and Diaken of the place of their abode, as well at their departure thence, as at their return thither, that there may be a Register kept thereof. And if they return from Persia in the Winter, it shall be lawful for them, for their money, to take into their service such a number of men, and Sledges, as they shall think requisite for the continuation of their Voyage.

We have also appointed Rodiuon Gabato, Gentleman of Astrachan, to conduct the said Ambassadors from Moscou to Astrachan, Wherefore we command you, our Bojares; Weiwodes, Diaken, and Commanders, to let pass the said Rodiuon, with the Ambassadors of Holstein, Without any let. And if after their Voyage of Persia, at their return thence, they are desirous to to repass through the Countries in our obedience, you shall permit them to take into their service, for labour, or for convoy upon the Wolga, forty men, or such other number as they shall stand in need of, which they shall take by vertue of this present Pass-port, at Astrachan, Cassan, or any other place they shall think fit. And our said Subjects shall be oblig'd to cause their names to be enroll'd, as well at their departure as at their return, to the end notice may be taken, that no Robbers, Golops, or fugitive Slaves get in among them. In like manner at the return of their Voyage, if they pass through Muscovy in the Winter time, it shall be lawful for them, at their own charge, to hire such a number of Sledges, as they shall think fit, so as that they be not hindred in the prosecution of their Voyage, either in Cities or in the Country. Enjoyning further, that all respect be given to the Ambassadors of Holstein, and all civillity done their people, both going and coming, not permitting that they should suffer any violence, or be robbed: obliging them also, for their part, not to take any provisions by force of any whatsoever; but it shall be lawful for them, to buy, for their money, of those that shall be willing to sell to them, both going and coming. Writ at Moscou, in the year 7144. June 20. and signed, The Czaar, and Great Duke of all the *Russes*, Michael Federouits; and lower, Deak Maxim Matuskin; and sealed with the great Seal.

The Ambassadors leave Moscou.

The *Pristaf* having given us our Pass-port, we appointed Jun. 30. for our departure. Mr. David Ruts gave us another entertainment that day, and kept us till the last hour of the day, which (the *Muscovites* beginning it at Sun-rising, and ending it at Sun-set) having struck, the *Pristaf* caus'd to be brought out the Great Dukes Horses, and hasten'd our departure, being accompany'd by several persons of quality, who brought us as far as the Monastery of *Simana*, three leagues from Moscou, where our Boat waited for us, avoiding by that means the many windings of the River from Moscou thither.

A description of Moscou.

But it were not handsome to leave Moscou without giving some account of that great City, the Metropolis of all *Muscovy*, to which it gives the name, as it takes its own from the River *Moska*. This River, which passes through, and divides all the rest of the City, from that quarter of it which is called *Strelitza Slanoda*, rises out of the Province of *Tuere*, and having joyn'd its waters with those of the *Occa*, near *Columna*, it falls together with the other, about half a league thence, into the *Wolga*. The City is elevated 55 degr. 36 min. its longitude 66 degrees, in the midlt of all the Country, and almost at an equal distance from all the Frontiers, which is above 120 *German* leagues. It is about three leagues about, and, no doubt, hath been heretofore bigger than it is now. *Mathius de Michou*, a Canon of *Cracovia*, who flourish'd at the beginning of the last age, says, that, in his time, it was twice as big as the City of *Prague*. The *Tartars* of *Crim* and *Precop*, burnt it in the year 1571. and the *Poles* set it a-fire in the year 1611. so as that there was nothing left of it but the Castle; and yet now there are numbred in it above 40000 houses, and it is out of all controversie one of the greatest Cities in Europe.

'Tis true, that, the Palaces of great Lords, and the Houses of some rich Merchants excepted, 1636. which are of Brick or Stone, all the rest are of Wood, and made up of beams, and cross-pieces of Firr laid one upon another. They cover them with barks of trees, upon which they sometimes put another covering of Turfes. The carelesness of the *Muscovites*, and the disorders of their house-keeping are such, that there hardly passes a moneth, nay not a week, but some place or other takes fire, which, meeting with what is very combustible, does in a moment reduce many houses, nay, if the wind be any thing high, whole streets into ashes. Some few days before our arrival, the fire had consumed the third part of the City; and about 5 or 6 years since, the like accident had near destroy'd it all. To prevent this, the *Strrelits* of the Guard, and the Watch, are enjoyn'd, in the night time to carry Pole-axes, wherewith they break down the houses adjoining to those which are a-fire, by which means they hinder the progress of it, with much better success than if they attempted the quenching of it. And that it may not fasten on other more solid structures, the doors and windows are very narrow, having shutters of Lattin, to prevent the sparks and flashes from getting in. Those who have their houses burnt, have this comfort withall, that they may buy houses ready built, at a market for that purpose, without the white-Wall, at a very easy rate, and have them taken down, transported, and in a short time set up in the same place where the former stood.

The streets of *Moscou* are handsome, and very broad, but so dirty, after rain hath ever so little moisten'd the ground, that it were impossible to get out of the dirt, were it not for the great Posts, which set together make a kind of bridge, much like that of the *Rhin*, near *Strasbourg* which bridges, in foul weather, serve for a kind of pavement.

The City is divided into four quarters, or circuits, whereof the first is called *Catayrogod*, Catayrogod god. that is, the mid-City, as being in the midst of the others. This quarter is divided from the rest by a brick-wall, which the *Muscovites* call *crasne stenna*, that is, red stone. The *Moska* passes on the South-side of it, and the River *Neglina*, which joyns with the other behind the Castle, on the North side. The Great Duke's Palace, called *Cremelena*, and which is of great extent than many other ordinary Cities, takes up almost one half of it, and is fortify'd with three strong walls, and a good ditch, and very well mounted with Canon. In the midst of the Castle are two Steeples, one very high, and cover'd with Copper gilt, as all the other Steeples of the Castle are. This Steeple is called *Juan Welike*, that is, the *Great John*. The other is considerable only for the Bell within it, made by the Great Duke *Boris Gudenou*, weighing 33600. pounds. It is not toll'd, but upon great Festivals, or to honour the entrance and audience of Ambassadors: but to stir it there must be 24 men, who pull it by a Rope that comes down into the Court, while some others are above to help it on by thrusting. The Great Duke's Palace stands towards the further side of the Castle, with that of the Patriarch; and appartements for several *Bojares*, who have places at Court. There is also lately built a very fair Palace of stone, according to the *Italian Architecture*, for the young Prince; but the Great Duke continues still in his wooden Palace, as being more healthy than stone-structures. The Exchequer, and the Magazine of Powder and provisions are also within the Castle.

There are also within it two fair Monasteries, one for men, the other for women, and above fifty Churches and Chapels, all built of stone; among others, those of the *B. Trinity*, *St. Mary's*, *St. Michael's*, wherein are the Sepulchres of the Great Dukes, and *St. Nicholas's*.

At the Castle-Gate, but without the Walls, on the South-side, is a fair Church Dedicated to the *B. Trinity*, and commonly called *Jerusalem*. When it was finish'd, the Tyrant *John Basilonits*, thought it so magnificent a structure, that he caus'd the Architect's eyes to be put out, that he might not afterwards do any thing that should be comparable to that. Near this Church are two great pieces of Canon, with the mouths towards that street by which the *Tartars* were wont to make their irruptions; but these pieces are now dismounted, and useles.

In the spacious place, before the Castle, is the chief Market of the City kept; all day it is full of people, but especially slaves, and idle persons. All the Market-place is full of Shops, as also all the streets abutting upon it: but every Trade hath a station by it self, so as the Mercers intermingle not with the Linnen or Wollen-Drapers, nor Goldsmiths with Sadlers, Shoemakers, Taylors, Furriers, and the like, but every Profession and Trade hath its proper street: which is so much the greater convenience, in that a man does, of a sudden, cast his eye on all he can desire. Sempstresses have their shops in the midst of the Market, where there is also another sort of Women Traders, who have Rings in their mouths, and, with their Rubies and Turquoises, put off another commodity which is not seen in the Market. There is a particular street where are sold the Images of their Saints. 'Tis true, these go not under the name of Merchandise, among the *Muscovites*, who would make some difficulty to say they had bought a Saint; but they say, they receive them by way of Exchange or Trucking, for money: and so when they buy, they make no bargain, but lay down what the Painter demands.

1636. There is yet another place, in this quarter, called the *Hair-market*, because the Inhabitants go thither to be trimm'd, by which means the place comes to be so cover'd with hair, that a man treads as softly as if it were on a Feather-bed. Most of the principal *Coses*, or Merchants, as also many *Knez* and *Muscovian* Lords have their houses in this first circuit.

Czaargorod. The second quarter is called *Czaargorod*, that is, *Czaar's Citie*, or the *Citie-Royal*, and includes the former as it were in a Semi-circle. The little River *Neglina* passes through the midst of it, and it hath its particular Wall, called *Biela Stenna*, that is, the *white Wall*. In this quarter is the *Arsenal*, and the place, where Guns and Bells are cast, which is called *Pogganabrut*, the management whereof the Great Duke hath bestow'd on a very able man, one *John Valk*, born at *Nuremberg*, whom he sent for out of *Holland*, for this reason, that he was the first who found a way to discharge a Bullet of sixteen pound weight with five pound of powder. The *Muscovites* who have wrought under this man, have so well learnt the Mystery of founding, that now they are as expert at it as the most experienc'd *Germans*.

In this quarter also there live many *Knez*, Lords, *Sinbojares*, or Gentlemen, and a great number of Merchants, who drive a Trade all the Countrey over, and Trades-men, especially Bakers. There are also some Butchers shambles, and Tipling-houses, which sell Beer, Hydromel, and Strong-water, Store-Houses of Wheat, Meal shops, and the Great Duke's stables.

Skoradom. The third quarter is called *Skoradom*, and includes the quarter called *Czaargorod*, from the East, along the North-side, to the West. The *Muscovites* affirm, that this quarter was five *German* Leagues about, before the City was burnt by the *Tartars*, in the year 1571. The little River *Jagufas* passes through it, and in its way falls into the *Mosca*. In this quarter is the Market for Wood and Houses before mentioned; where you may have Houses ready made, which may be taken asunder, transported thence, and set up any where else, in a short time, and with little pains and charge, since they consist only of beams, and posts, set one upon the other, and the vacuities are fill'd up with Mofse.

Strelitza. The fourth quarter is called *Strelitza Slauoda*, because of the *Strelits*, or Musketeers of the Great Duke's Guard, who live in it. It is situated towards the South of *Czatairogod*, on the other side of the *Mosca*, upon the Avenues of the *Tartars*. Its Ramparts and Battions are of Wood. The Great Duke *Basili Juanouits*, father of *Basilouits*, who built this quarter, design'd it for the quarters of such Soldiers, as were strangers, as *Poles*, *Germans*, and others, naming that place *Naeilki*, or, the quarter of *Drunkards*, from the word *Nali*, which signifies, *powre out*: for, these strangers being more inclin'd to drunkenness than the *Muscovites*, he would not have his own people, who were apt enough to debauch themselves, to become so much the worse by the others bad example. Besides the Soldiery, the poorer sort of the people have their habitations in this quarter.

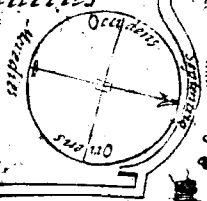
The number of Churches and Chapels in Moscou. There is, in the City and Suburbs of *Moscou*, a very great number of Churches, Monasteries and Chapels. In the former Impression of these Travels, we said, there were above fifteen hundred; but whereas *John Lewis Godefrey*, Author of the *Archontologia Cosmica*, thinks that number so excessive, that he sticks not to speak of it as a thing not likely to be true, I must indeed needs acknowledge, that I was much mistaken, and, now affirm for certain, that where I said there were 1500. there are above 2000. No *Muscovite* that hath liv'd at *Moscou*, nay no stranger, any thing acquainted with that City, but will confirm this truth, as knowing, there is no Lord but hath his private Chapel, nor any Street but hath many of them. 'Tis true, they are most of them very small ones, and but fifteen foot square; nay, before the Patriarch commanded they should be built of Stone, they were all of Wood: but that hinders not, but that the number of them may amount to what we have said.

30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 100 105 110 115



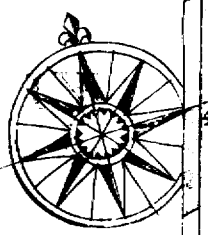
DD. ELIE ASHMOLE  
Medij Temp. Socie  
hanc novam et accuratam  
MOSCOVLE Sacrum  
D.D.D. J.D.

A  
New MAP  
of  
Muscovy  
by A. Olearius



PONT EVXIN Which y<sup>e</sup> Muscovites call  
ZORNO MORE

NATOLIA



55 60 65 70 75 80



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
 DUKE of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, and P E R S I A.**

The Third Book.



THE City of *Moscon*, which those of the Country call *Moskwa*, derives its name to the Province, wherein it is seated, and to all *Muscovy*, which was heretofore known under that of *Russia*, or *white Russia*. It is doubtless, the greatest of all the Estates of *Europe*, since it reaches in length near thirty degrees, or 450. leagues; and, in breadth, sixteen degrees, or 240. German leagues. Its Frontiers reach, Northward, beyond the *Arctic* Circle to the frozen Sea. On the East, it hath the River *Oby*; towards the South, the *Tartars* of *Crim* and *Precop*; and towards the West, *Poland*, *Livonia* and *Sueden*.

*Muscovy* is divided into many great Provinces, most of which we have named elsewhere with the Titles of the Great Duke. That of *Wolodimer*, or *Uladimer*, was heretofore the chiefest. Its capital City, whence it hath its name, was built by Prince *Wolodoimer*, who liv'd about the year 928. It is 36. leagues distant from *Moscon*, Eastward, between the Rivers of *Occa*, and *Wolga*, in a Country so fruitful, that one Bushel of Wheat sown, yeelds 25. or 30. The River *Clesma*, which passes by it, falls into the River *Occa* near the City of *Muron*. The Great Dukes had chosen it for the most convenient place for their residence, till Prince *Danilou Michalouits* translated the Emperial Seat to *Moscon*.

The Province of *Smolensko* hath, on the East, the Province of *Muscovy*, on the North, *Smolensko* *beria*, on the South, *Lithavie*, and towards the West, *Livonia*. The Metropolis of the Province, *Smolensko*, is seated upon the River *Nieper*, which they say is the same the Antients called *Boristhenes*, though that of *Berezine* comes nearer to that name. The other eminent Cities of it, are, *Prohobus*, upon the *Nieper*, *Wesma*, upon a River of the same name, and *Mosaysko*. The City of *Smolensko* hath, on the side of the River, a Cittadel, fortify'd with great Chains and good Ditches, with a good Counterescarp well palisadoed. The *Muscovites* took this City from the *Poles* in the year 1514. *Sigismond* King of *Poland* Recover'd it again in the year 1611. and the late Great Duke *Michael Federonits* belieg'd it in the year 1633. but was forc'd to raise the siege, as we shall have occasion to relate anon. The Great Duke that now is took it by composition, in the year 1654. and is still possess'd of it.

The Province of *Rhesan* lies between the Rivers *Don* and *Occa*, having on the West, *Muscovy*, *Rhesan* from which it is divided by the River *Aka*. This is the most fruitful Province of all *Muscovy*, and produces abundance of Wheat, Hony, Fish, and all sorts of Venison and Fowl. Besides the chief City, which is upon the River *Occa*, it hath also those of *Corstra*, and *Tulla*, upon the River of that name.

- 1636.** *Permie* is one of the greatest Provinces of all *Muscovy*, and distant from *Moscou* 250. or 300. *German* leagues, towards the East and North. Its chief City, whence it hath its name, lies upon the River of *Vischora*, which falls into *Kam*, 15. leagues thence. The Inhabitants of this Province have a Language and Characters peculiar to themselves. They eat Herbs instead of bread, and instead of Tribute, send the Great Duke, Horses and Furs. Its neighbours Eastward are the *Tartars* of *Tumen*.
- Jugarie.** The Baron of *Herberstein* sayes, that the Province of *Jugarie*, is that whence the *Hongrians* came, who now live in the Country that lies upon the *Dannow*,
- Wiathka.** The Province of *Wiathka*, is 150. *German* leagues distant from the City of *Moscou*, towards the East, beyond the River *Kam*. The River of *Wiathka* gives it the name, which falls into *Kam*, which falls into *Volga* 12. leagues below *Casan*. The Country is woody and barren, and much subject to the incursions of the *Tartars Szeremisses*, who were the Masters of it, till *Basili*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, united it to his Crown.
- Bielks. Rschouie. Tuere.** The Principality of *Bielsk* derives the name from *Biela* its chief City; as does the Province of *Rschouie* from that of the City of *Rschewa*; and that of *Tuere*, from the City of that name.
- Plescou.** The City and Dutchy of *Plescou* was govern'd by its own Princes, till the Great Duke *John Basilonits* re-united both to his Crown, in the year 1509. The *Muscovites* call it *Pskow*, from the Lake upon which the chief City is seated, and out of which rises the River of the same name, that passes through the City.
- Siberie.** *Siberia* is of great extent, and had a long time its own Princes, who paid Tribute to the Kings of *Poland*, upon the accompt of *Lithuania*, on which they had some dependence. They revolted from *Casimer*, son of *Jagellon*, King of *Poland*, and became subject to the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. The *Czaar Basili*, ejected the Duke of *Siberie*, and united the Province to his Crown. The chief City is *Novogorod*, but to distinguish it from others of the same name, it is called *Novogorod Siebersky*, that is, *Novogorod*, or the *New City of Siberie*. Its other eminent Cities are *Starodub*, *Perivola*, *Czernigon*, and *Bransko*.
- Jarostaf. Rosthou. Sufdal. Dwina.** The Dutchies of *Jarostaf*, *Rosthou*, and *Sufdal* were a long time enjoy'd by the younger Brothers of *Muscovy*, till *John Basilonits* re-united them to the Crown, in the year 1565.
- Archangel.** The Province of *Dwina* is the greatest, and more Northern of all *Muscovy*, and was heretofore subject to the Duke of *Novogorod*. The River of *Dwina* falls into the white Sea, near *Archangel*. It is not long since that this Province, which is a hundred leagues in length, had but one City in it, of the same name seated in the midst of it: but now that the *Muscovites* have Translated into those parts, the Trade which the English, Dutch, and Hanseatick Towns, were wont to bring to *Narva*, it is become one of the most considerable Provinces of all *Muscovy*. The greatest place of Commerce is called *Archangel*, from the Archangel, *St. Michael*, and situated at the mouth of the *Dwina*, where it makes the Island of *Podsemski*. The City is not very great, but of great Trading, by reason of the many Ships that come every year, which bring thither the *Muscovian* Merchants, especially those strangers that live at *Moscou*, with the commodities of the Country, to truck for those that are brought thither. The Great Duke makes great advantages of it; but the Impositions he laies upon all Merchandises are so great, that it is not unlikely Strangers will, in time, return to *Narva*, where the King of *Sueden* takes but two in the hundred, and, to which, navigation is not so dangerous.
- In the Gulf, which the Sea makes near the mouth of *Dwina*, are three Islands, called *Solofka*, *Anger*, and *Coloua*. There was heretofore in the former of these the Sepulchre of a *Muscovian* Saint, but 3. or 4. years since, the Great Duke caused the Body to be translated thence to *Moscou*. Some report, that the Great Dukes, Predecessors of him that now reigns, had hidden a great Treasure there, as being a place inaccessible, by reason of its high and steepy Rocks.
- Ustiugha.** The Province of *Ustiugha* is next to that of *Dwina*, but more Southerly, and was also subject to the Duke of *Novogorod*. The chief City, of the same name, is so called from the word *Ust*, which signifies the mouth of a River, as the Latine word, *Ostium*; and *Jugh*, because it was seated at the place where the River of *Jugh* falls into *Suchana*, from which it is now half a league distant. Its Inhabitants eat no Bread, but are content with Fish and Venison dry'd in the Sun. Thence are brought the fairest black-Foxes skins.
- Vologda.** *Vologda*, seated in the Province of the same name, is the only City in all *Muscovy* that hath a stone wall about it, being the place whither the Great Duke, in time of War, was wont to send some part of his Treasures. It sometime belonged to the Duke of *Novogorod*, but is now, together with the Province, re-united to *Muscovy*. The River of *Vologda*, whence it takes its name, falls, with the *Dwina*, into the white Sea.
- Bielejezoro.** The Dutchy of *Bielejezoro* is also one of the Northern Provinces of this great State, but so full of Woods and Rivers, that it is in a manner inaccessible, unless it be when the Fenns and Rivers are frozen.
- Petzora.** The Province of *Petzora* reaches along the frozen Sea, towards the East and North. The River

River of *Petzora*, whence it hath the name, falls into the Sea near the Streight of *Weigats*, 1636. below the City of *Pustiozero*, by six several channels. The mountains, which the *Muscovites* call *Zimnapoias*, that is, the Girdle of the Earth, (the same, as it is believed, as the Antients called the *Ripbean* and *Hiperborean* mountains) lye on both sides of it, and afford the best Sables, and excellent Hawks. The City is but little, and the cold so great in this Province, that the Rivers are frozen from *August* to *May*. Upon this Province border the *Samoiedes*, a people we shall have occasion to speak of hereafter.

The Province of *Obdorie* derives its name from the River *Oby*, which rising out of the great Lake of *Kataisko*, and running from the East towards the North, falls into the frozen Sea, and is so broad at the mouth, that with a very good wind a Ship will have much ado to cross from one side to the other in two days.

As for the *Tartarian* Provinces that are subject to the Great Duke, we shall give an account of them in the prosecution of our Travels along the River *Volga*; of which River we shall only say by the way, that in the Province of *Rschonie*, two leagues from its chief City, and in the great forest of *Wolkowskiles*, is the Lake of *Wronow*, out of which rises a River, that, two leagues off that place, falls into the Lake of *Volga*, from which it derives its name, and is thence forward called *Volga*. The *Tartars* call it *Edel*, and 'tis the same as *Protolomy* calls *Rha*. 'Tis doubtless, the greatest River in all *Europe*; since that from the City of *Nise-Nogovorod*, near which we went into it, out of the River *Occa*, to the *Caspian* Sea, we have counted above 500 *German* leagues, not accounting above a hundred leagues more there is from its source to the place where the *Occa* falls into it.

The *Boristhenes*, which those of the Country call *Dnieper*, rises out of the same Province, ten leagues from the Lake of *Fronowo*, near a Village called *Dniepersko*. It divides *Lithuania* from *Muscovy*, and after it hath taken its course towards the South, where it passes near *Wiesna*, and thence towards the East, bathing the Cities of *Progobus*, *Smolensko*, *Orscha*, *Dubrowna*, and *Mohilouw*, it turns again towards the South, and passing by *Kionie*, by the *Circasses*, and thence toward *Otzakow*, a City of the *Tartarians* of *Preccop*, it falls into the *Euxine* Sea.

There are, in *Muscovy*, two Rivers called *Dwina*; one rises out of a Lake of the same name, ten leagues from the Lake of *Fronowo*, and the source of *Dnieper*, and falls into the *Baltick* Sea, below *Riga*. The other rising at the conjunction of the Rivers of *Fagel* and *Sachana*, gives its name to the Province before mentioned, and falls into the *White* Sea, near *Archangel*. The Rivers of *Mosca* and *Occa* are pleasant and very considerable; but, they lose their names, with all the other Rivers in the Countrey, when they fall into those we have before spoken of.

*Muscovy* then being of such extent, as we have said, it is not to be imagin'd, that in Provinces so distant, and situated in so different climates, Air and Earth are alike qualify'd every where. About *Moscou* and the adjacent Provinces, the Air is good and healthy, so that there is no talk of the Plague, or any other Epidemical disease. Which was the reason, that in the year 1654. at the beginning of the War of *Smolensko*, when the Infection made such havock in that great City, people were the more surpriz'd thereat, in regard the like had not been known in the memory of man. It was so great, that those were seen dying in the streets, who thought themselves well enough when they came out of their houses; and all *Muscovy* was so astonish'd at it, that all the Avenues of *Moscou* were block'd up.

The cold is so piercing, that no fur can prevent the Nose, Ears, Feet, and Hands from freezing and falling. At our first Voyage thither, in 1634. the cold was so sharp, that, in the great Market-place, before the Castle, we saw the earth open above twenty fathoms in length, and a foot broad. We could not go 50 steps, without hazard of losing some of our members. I saw there by experience, what others have left in writing, that spittle froze before it came to the ground, and water as it dropp'd.

I observ'd withal, that the earth is open there in a manner as soon as in *Germany*, and that the Spring fruits come much about the same time; for the more the earth is cover'd with Snow, the more it keeps in the heat requisite to promote vegetation. The Ice and Snow together make the ways so even, that it is much easier travelling there than any where else. For Winter-travelling, the *Muscovites* make use of Sledges, made very low, of the bark of Trees, cover'd with some coarse kind of Cloath. We lay all along in them, and covering our selves with sheep-skins, and the Sledges being cover'd with Sack-cloath, or some coarse Cloath, we not only felt not the cold, but even sweated in the depth of Winter.

The *Muscovian* Horses are very low, yet fit enough for this kind of travelling, for being swift and indefatigable, they will go 8. 10. nay many times 12 leagues without staying by the way. I have my self travell'd twice from *Tuere* to *Torsock* without any halt by the way. Hence is it that travelling is so cheap, that a Country fellow shall bring you fifty leagues for three or four Crowns at most.

**1636.** If the cold be sharp in the Winter, the heat is no less troublefom in Summer, not proceeding so much from the scorching rayes of the Sun ( which is there in a manner always above the Ho-  
*Very hot in* rizon, and makes the day 18. hours long ) as occasion'd by the Flies, Wasps, Gnats, and  
*Summer.* other insects, which the Sun produces in the Moors and Fens, which take up a great part of the Country, in such abundance, that night and day they are extremely troublefome,

*Fertility.* But, the Fens and Forests, which *Muscovy* is well stor'd with, hinder not but the Land they cultivate is very Fertile. For unless it be about *Mosco*, where the soyl is barren and gravelly, let them take ever so little pains with their grounds in other places, they will bring forth more Wheat and Pasture than the Countrey can consume. The *Hollanders* acknowledge, that *Muscovy* is to them what *Sicily* was sometime to *Rome*. You never hear talk of dearth, though in the Provinces that have not the convenience of Rivers to transport their Corn, the Inhabitants manure only so much ground as will afford them a bare subsistence for the present year, not minding the future, as confident their ordinary increase will never fail them. Thence it comes that so much excellent ground lies fallow, producing only Hay, whereof they mow no more than will serve their Cattel.

*Muscovy more fertile than Livonia. The seed-time.* There is so great difference between this soyl, and that of the Province of *Allentaken* in *Livonia*, though there lies only the River *Narva* between them, that as soon as a man is over he perceives it. *Muscovy* and the Northern Provinces of *Livonia* have this common with *Inguermannia* and *Carelia*, that they sow not their Corn till within three weeks of Midsummer; for the cold having, as a man might say, pierc'd to the Centre of the earth, it must have leasure to unfreeze: but the Wheat is no sooner in the ground but it puts forth, and the heat of the Sun, which, as we said, is always above the Horizon, advances and ripens it. So that Sowing and Harvest is all over in two moneths. Wherein the *Muscovites* have this advantage over the *Livonians*, that they put in their Wheat dry, and ready to be thrash'd, whereas the *Livonians* are forc'd to use fire to dry it, by the help of a great Oven, built in the midst of a Barn, where they put their sheaves upon beams lay'd a-crofs, till such time as the heat hath so dry'd them, that beating them with a stick, the Grain falls out, so as that there is no need of thrashing or treading it, as they do in the East. There is yet this further inconvenience, that the Wheat thus dry'd is not good for seed, and many times the Barns take fire, which spreads into the houses about them, and consumes all.

*Their harvest.* In those Provinces which are not so much towards the North, especially neer the City of *Mosco*, their are excellent fruits, as Apples, Cherries, Plums, and Goose-berries. I have seen Apples in beauty and colour much like those which are called *Appians*, and so transparent, that holding them between your sight and the Sun, you may easily tell the Kernels. 'Tis true this Fruit having not time to bake in the Sun, ( it being rather a moderate slow heat, than an excessive scorching, that consumes the superfluous moisture ) will not keep, as it would do in *Germany* and other more Southerly Countreys: but the Commentator upon the Maps of *Atlas* is nevertheless mistaken, when he sayes, after the Baron of *Herberstein*, and *Guagnin*, that the cold is so great in *Muscovy*, that the Countrey cannot produce Apples or other Fruits that are worth sending up to the Table. They have also all manner of Pulse, Pot-herbs, Asparagus, Onions, Garlick, Roots, Cowcumber, Citruls, or Gourds, and Melons, and of these last abundance, excellent good, and so big, that at my being in *Muscovy* in the year 1643. a friend presented me with a Melon, that weigh'd forty pound. The *Muscovites* are very expert in the ordering of their Melons. They steep the seed, for the space of 48. hours, in Cow's milk, or an infusion of fair water and Sheep's dung: their beds they make of Horse dung, as it is carried out of the Stable, six foot deep, and then cover them with the best mold, in which they make flat Trenches, about a foot and a half broad. They thrust the seed so deep into the bed, as that it may not only be secur'd from the cold, and receive the benefit of the Sun-shine, but also have the advantage of the heat which the dung sends up from below, covering it in the night, and some times all day long, with bells of the Country-glass, or talk. They do not transplant them, but are careful to take away what is superfluous, and do what other things are commonly practis'd in other places, about that plant.

*Extraordinary Melons.* We were credibly inform'd, that near *Samara*, between *Volga* and the *Doa*, there is a kind of Melons, or rather Gourds, that are form'd like a Lamb, whereof this fruit represents all the members, being fasten'd to the ground by the stalk, which is as it were its navel. As it grows it changes place, as far as the stalk will give way, and, as it turns; makes the grass to wither. The *Muscovites* call this browsing, or feeding, adding, that when it is ripe, the stalk withers, and the fruit is cloath'd with a hairy skin, which may be dress'd and used instead of Furr. They call this fruit *Boranez*, that is to say, the *Lamb*. They shew'd us some of those skins, taken off the covering of a bed, and swore they came from that fruit, but we could hardly believe it. They were covered with a soft frizzling Wooll not unlike that of a Lamb newly wean'd, or taken out of the Sheep's belly. *Julius Scaliger* makes mention of it, *Exerc.* 181. and sayes this fruit grows till the grass fails it, and that it dies not but for want of nourishment. He adds, that no Beast will feed on it, but the Wolf, and that it is us'd as a bait to take him, which the *Muscovites* also confirmed.

*Boranez.*



It is not long that they have had Flowers and sweet Herbs, the Great Duke *Michael Federovits* being the first that bestow'd any expence in Gardening, which he did with very good success. Nor is it long that they have had any other than wild Roses. *Peter Marcellis*, Commissary from the King of *Denmark*, and Duke of *Holstein*, brought the first *Provence-Roses* thither. 1636.  
Flowers.

The *Holland* and *German* Merchants have but lately planted *Asparagus* there, which take very well, and are as big as a mans thumb. Nor have the *Muscovites* been long acquainted with *Lettice* and other *Salad-herbs*, and laugh'd at the Strangers who fed on them; but now they begin to like them. There are no *Hazel-trees*, nor *Vines* in *Muscovy*; but the *Dutch* bring such quantities of several sorts of *Wine* thither by the way of *Archangel*, that there is no want of any. There is also within these few years some brought in from *Astrachan*, upon the River of *Volga*. Asparagus.

*Muscovy* abounds in *Hemp* and *Flax*; and there is so much *Honey* and *Wax*, even in the *Woods*, that, besides what is spent in *Hydromel*, and in *Wax-Candles*, in this Commodity consists the greatest part of the commerce which the *Muscovites* have with Strangers, to whom they put off yearly above twenty thousand *Quintals* (or hundred weight) of *Wax*.

All *Muscovy* being but a continued Forest, those places only excepted where they have fir'd the *Woods* in order to agriculture, it must needs be very well furnish'd with all sorts of *Venison* and *Fowl*. Whence it comes, that *Heath-cocks*, *Peasants* of several kinds, and *Partridges* are very cheap; as also *wild Geese*, and *Ducks*; *Hérons* and *Swans* are not much esteem'd; much less *Thrushes*, *Fildevars*, *Quails*, *Larks*, and other small *Birds*, which the *Country* people will not take the pains to look after. There are no *Storks* in *Muscovy*, nor yet in *Livonia*; but abundance of *Birds of prey*, as *Faulcons*, *Tassels*, &c. In the more *Northerly* *Provinces* there are white ones, which are much esteem'd because of their rarity. Venison  
and Fowl.

There is all sorts of *Venison*, *Deer* excepted; Of *Elks* and *wild Boars* abundance. The *Hares* are grey, but in some *Provinces* they turn white in *Winter*, as in *Livonia*; and yet in *Courland*, which is contiguous to that *Province*, and divided from it only by the *River Dune*, the *Hares* change not their colour. 'Tis no hard matter to find the reason of this change, which must proceed from external cold; since I have known, that, even in *Summer*, *Hares* have chang'd their colour, when they have been kept some time in a *Cave*. No Deer.

The same Forests breed also abundance of *Bears*, *Wolves*, *Linxes*, *Tigres*, *Foxes*, *Martins*, and *Sables*, the skins whereof are the most considerable Traffick of the *Country*, since that some years, the *Muscovites* sell to Strangers as many as come to a *Million of Gold*, besides what is spent in the *Country*, or presented to the *Great Duke*. The most esteem'd *Furrs* are the skins of *black Foxes*, *Sables*, *Castors*, *white Bears*, *Ermins*, and *Squirrels*. Furrs.

The *Bears* and *Wolves* do abundance of mischief, and are as dangerous upon the *high-ways* as the *Robbers*. For what we have said of *Livonia* is no less true of *Muscovy*, viz. that, in the *Winter* time, they break open houses, and take away peoples *Cattle*, &c. as we have related in the second *Book* of these our *Travels*. We could add many other stories of these *Creatures*, but in regard, they would hardly, for the strangeness of them, be credited, at least by such as never heard any talk of these things, we forbear. When the *Muscovites* take any of the *Bears* Whelps, they tame them, and teach them a thousand tricks, and, in time, come to get a livelihood by them.

The *Lakes*, *Ponds* and *Rivers* affords all sorts of *Fish*, *Carps* excepted, which are not to be had either in *Muscovy* or *Livonia*. At *Astrachan*, we met with abundance of them, very large, but tough and unfavoury; which is the reason the *Muscovites* make no great account of them. No Carps  
in Muscovy.

Heretofore there were no *Mines* in *Muscovy*, but some years since there was one found out near *Tula*, upon the *Frontiers* of *Tartary*, 120 leagues from *Mosco*, which affords only *Iron*, where the *Workmen* are such as the *Electors* of *Saxony* sent over to the *Great Duke*. *Peter Marcellis*, a *Merchant*, born at *Hamborough* hath the management of it, who having built a *Forge* in a very pleasant *Valley* there, which hath a *Brook* running through it, hath taken it of the *Great Duke*, furnishing him every year with a certain number of *Iron Bars*, pieces of *Artillery* and *Bullets*. About 15 year since, information was brought to the *Great Duke Michael Federovits*, that *Gold* might be found in a certain *Province* in *Muscovy*, if any would be at the expence to dig for it; but he who brought the first news of it, instead of enriching himself, was utterly undone. Heretofore the *Muscovites* were simple enough to credit these informations, and to advance money upon the propositions that were made thereupon; but for some years past, they have been content to hearken to them; or if they advance any money, it is upon good security put in by the undertaker. I have seen an example of this in an *English Merchant*, who was perswaded that *Gold* would infallibly be found, and upon that imagination engag'd some of his friends to be answerable to the *Great Duke* for the money he should advance. But, after a great expence, to no purpose, he was put in prison, and his friends were forc'd to pay the money he had taken up. Mines.

1636. Having not seen the more Northerly Provinces of *Muscovy*, as *Dwina*, *Jugarie*, *Permie*, *Siberia*, and *Samojede*, I should content my self with what I have said of them in the beginning of this Book : But in regard this last named Province is absolutely unknown to all the rest of *Europe*, and that I have had the opportunity to discourse with some *Samojedes*, and to learn from their own mouths the particularities of their Country, I hope it will not be thought much if I make a short digression concerning them. Being at *Moscon*, in the year 1643. in the Great Duke's Antichamber, or *Posolse-Pricas*, staying till a *Persian* Ambassador were come out from Audience, that I might go in to have mine, I had the convenience to discourse with two Deputies of the *Samojedes*, who had been sent to the Great Duke with a present of many Elks, and white Bear-skins, which the *Muscovian* Lords use to adorn their Sledges. I laid hold on this occasion to enquire of them some part of what I was desirous to know concerning their manner of life ; which I did with the more ease, in that both of them understood the *Muscovian* Language.

The difference between *Samojede* and *Samo-gitia*.

The habitations of the *Samojedes*.

Their nourishment.

Their stature.

Their cloathing.

'Tis certain, these people were antiently comprehended under the name of those whom they called *Schites*, and *Sarmates*, and that they were not called *Samojedes*, till after they became Subjects to the Great Duke : for that word is *Muscovian*, signifying *Eaters of themselves*, as being compounded of that of *Sam*, himself, and *Geda*, I eat. They would argue thence, that these people are *Anthrophagi* ; for indeed, they did feed on mans flesh, even that of their deceas'd friends, which they mixt with Venison, which was, and is still their ordinary nourishment. What we have said discovers the difference there is between this Province and that of *Samo-gitia*, which the *Muscovites* call *Samotska sembla*, situated between *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, and is part of the Kingdom of *Poland* ; whereas *Samojede* lies towards the *Hyperborean* Mountains, on both sides of the River *Oby*, upon the *Tartarian* Sea, and towards the streight of *Weigats*, as we said before. I can hardly be perswaded, that it is of the *Samojedes*, *Quintus Curtius* would speak, when he sayes that the *Abii* sent their Ambassadors to *Alexander* the Great, and that instead of *Abii* we should read *Obii*, because they liv'd upon the River *Oby* ; but of the *Tartars*, who are near the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, which divides *Asia* from *Europe*. 'Tis of them rather than of the *Samojedes*, that *Q. Curtius* might affirm, that they had no Cities, nor settled Habitations, but liv'd in Woods and Desarts, shunning the conversation of men, and that if *Alexander* went thither, he must have Conquer'd impenetrable Forests, Rivers, Ice, and Snow, after he had triumphed over the Inhabitants. For though the *Samojedes* have indeed no Cities, yet are they not *Nomades*, nor change their habitations as the *Tartars* do. On the contrary, their Cabans or Huts, which are covered vault-wise, are built half under-ground, and have in the middle a hole, which does not only serve for a Chimney, but also for a door when the Snow is so high, that they are forc'd to make use of that hole to let in air ; Since that the Countrey being in the Frigid Zone, the Snow, which is there sometimes the depth of a Pike, makes their doors useles. They have walks under their Huts, by the means whereof they may visit and converse one with another. And this kind of life is so much the more supportable to them, for that the Sun going beyond the Line, and leaving them in continual darkness for six moneths together, the liberty they might have to go abroad would be of no advantage to them. During this long night, they have no other light than what their Lamps afford them, which is but a sad and melancholy one, as being maintain'd by the Oyl of a certain fish, of which they make provision in the Summer. Which Season begins with them, as soon as the Sun comes to the *Æquinoctial* line, and, entring into the Septentrional Signs of the Zodiack, melts the Snow, and brings them a day as long as the night had been tedious. Upon this accompt it is, that *Olaus Magnus*, *Alexander Guagnin*, and others, have grounded fables of people that sleep six moneths of the year, or, as Swallows, and Frogs, die in the beginning of Winter, and rise up again in the Spring. They do not cultivate the Earth, nor keep any Cattel, which is, no doubt, because the Earth would not require their pains, and affords no Grasse. So that having no Corn, they have no bread to make ; and having no Wool, they are forc'd to Cloath themselves with what nature and their Countrey can afford them. Their food is fish, dry'd in the Wind and Sun, Honey and Venison. They are of low stature, their faces large and flat, wearing their hair very long ; they have little eyes, and short legs, and are not much unlike the *Groenlanders*, of whom we shall have somewhat to say anon.

The Cloathing of the *Samojedes* is of *Renes* skins, whereof there are abundance in that Countrey, as indeed there is all over the North. This Creature, which is thought to be the *Tarandius* of the Antients, is called by the modern Latines *Rangifer*, from the word *Reen*, by which name the *Laplanners* call it, a beast not known in these parts. 'Tis as big as a Stag, but somewhat stronger, the hair grey or white, as they are in *Samojede*, having the breast high with a long and rough hair, the hoof cloven, and the horn so hard, that making an impression in the Ice, this animal goes as securely as if it were upon the ground, and so swiftly, that it will run above 30. *German* leagues in a day. The horns are higher than those of the Elk, and larger than a Stag's, having two brow-anklers on the forehead, wherewith he breaks the Ice to get water in Winter. 'Tis a sociable beast, feeding in herds. It is tam'd without any trouble,

and



and is very serviceable, especially in travelling, being set before little Sledges, made like a Boat, which they draw with incredible force and swiftness. 1636.

The *Samojedes* wear very large Caps, made of fur, or pieces of Cloath of several colours, which they buy of the *Muscovites*, and are so big that they fall down to their necks. Their shirts are made of the skins of young *Renes*, which are very soft, and have a short hair. They wear drawers under their shirts, and upon their shirts, Garments falling down to the mid-leg, border'd below with a very long fur. These Garments are made like those which are called *Cosjaques*, open only at the neck. Their Mittens are fasten'd to the end of their sleeves, and the fur of all their Cloaths is turn'd on the out-side. When the cold is extraordinary, they put their *Cosjaques* over their heads, and let the sleeves hang down, their faces being not to be seen, but at the cleft which is at the neck. Whence some have taken occasion to write, that in these Northern Countreys, there are people without heads, having their faces in their breasts. As also that there are some have feet so big, that one of them shades the whole body, and that having cover'd themselves with their feet, neither Sun nor Rain can come at them. But the error came thus, that the *Samojedes*, as also the *Laplanners* and *Finlanders*, wear a kind of shoes or patins, in the Winter time, to go upon the Snow, which are an Ell and a half long towards the Toe. The *Finlanders* and *Laplanners* make them as long towards the Heel as the Toes, and call them *Saksit*; but the *Samojedes* do not lengthen them at all towards the heel, and call them *Nartes*. All make them of barks of Trees, or some very thin Wood, and use them with a strange agility. Colonel *Porr*, Governour of *Narva*, who had many *Finlanders* among the Soldiers of his Garrison, would needs give us the pleasure of seeing them, when we pass'd that way, having order'd them to run down a Hill near the City, which they did with such swiftness, that a horie at full speed would hardly have overtaken them.

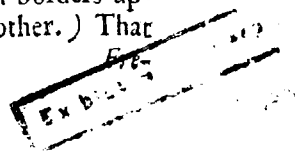
The error  
of certain  
Geogra-  
phers.

The Nerves and Veins of the *Rene* serve for Thread, among the *Samojedes*, to sew their Cloaths; their Boots they make of the same stuff, and after the same manner. They scrape the in-side of the bark of Beech, and what comes off is as fine as the shavings of Parchment or Ivory, and very soft, and serves them instead of Handkerchers. They take a handful of it, and wipe their hands, faces, or noses therewith.

The Relations of the second Voyage which the *Hollanders* made towards the North, in the year 1595. give the same account of the *Samojedes* as we do, and say, that some of their men going ashore Aug. 31. near *Weigats*, after they had gone about a league, discover'd 20. or 25. *Samojedes*, so accoutred as we have describ'd them. They at first took them for *Savages*, and were confirm'd in that opinion by the posture into which the *Samojedes* put themselves, making ready their Bows and Arrows, to shoot at the *Hollanders*: but the *Muscovian* Interpreter, which the *Hollanders* had with them, having told them they were friends, and that they need not to be afraid of them, they laid down their Arms, came up to them, and discover'd many particulars of their Country. They were much taken with the civility of the *Hollanders*, and one of them took a Bisket that was presented to him; but he betray'd much distrust in the eating of it; especially, when they heard a Musket shot, towards the Sea-side, though far enough from them, they were so frighten'd, that it was no easie matter to satisfy them, that they were far enough from any danger.

I had the curiosity to ask one of those *Samojedes*, what he thought of *Muscovy*, and whether it were a better Country than theirs, and the *Muscovian* manner of Life, the more pleasant. He answer'd, that *Muscovy* was indeed a pleasant Country, and the provisions of it not to be disliked; but that their Country also had those conveniences and pleasures, that were not to be had elsewhere, such as were so inviting, that he was confident, if the Great Duke had once a tast of them, he would leave *Moscou*, and come among them, to enjoy the security, quiet, and delightfulness of their manner of life. They were, till within these few years, Pagans and Idolaters, inasmuch as when the *Hollanders* made the Voyage I spoke of there, they found the Sea-side full of Idols, for which the *Samojedes* had so much affection, that they would not suffer one of them to be carried away. But they have been since baptized, and have embrac'd Christian Religion, by the means of a Bishop of *Vladimer* which the late Great Duke sent among them, with some Priests, to instruct them.

The Author, who hath here made one digression, to speak of the *Samojedes*, though not falling under the Subject of his Travels, thinks he may make another to say somewhat of *Groenland*, as well in regard of the consonancy there is between the people of that Country and those he had now spoken of, and also the *Tartars*, of whom he will have occasion to speak hereafter, as for that he hath seen, and discours'd with, some Inhabitants of *Groenland*, who have told such particularities, as would not be undelightful, if *M. de la Pereire* had not said before him all that could be said of a Country, which is as little known, as those parts of the World that have not yet been discover'd. The Treatise he hath publish'd upon this Subject is such, that we shall not need to repeat what he hath clearly and elegantly express'd, but only add, together with the opinion of our Author, (who thinks *Groenland* is a Continent, and borders upon *Tartary* towards the East on one side, and on *America*, Westward, on the other.) That



1636. *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, coming to the Crown, in the year 1648. had, besides all other Royal Vertues, a great desire to advance the Trade of *Groenland*. *Henry Muller*, Farmer General of the outland customs of *Denmark*, a curious person and rich, undertook it, and, to that end, set out a Ship in the year 1652. commanded by Capt. *David Dannel*, one of the most experienc'd Masters of his time. The first Voyage having had the success was expected from it, the said *Muller* sent him again to *Groenland* the next year, 1653. But as men of business, how curious soever they may be, are carried away with some other predominant passion, there was nothing learnt in these two Voyages, at least those employ'd in them neglected to make any relation thereof that ever could be seen: but in the year 1654. a Ship was set out, which going from *Copenhagen* in the beginning of the Spring, arriv'd not on the Coasts of *Groenland*, till the 28 of *July*, at a place where the mountains were still cover'd with snow, towards the shore the waters frozen, and the bottom so hard, that it being impossible the Anchor should fasten, they were forc'd to let the Ship float upon the water, because there were Rocks all about. As soon as this Ship appear'd upon the Coasts of *Groenland*, the Inhabitants set out above a hundred Boats, and came to view that strange structure, which was much different from what they ordinarily saw. At first they would by no means come near it, but seeing they were intreated to come into the Ship, they at last came, and in a few days were so familiar, that with their commodities, which they truckt for such toies as we had, they brought also their Wives, out of an intention to make advantage of them by another kind of Commerce, which though it be not less known elsewhere, yet is not so publickly practis'd as among them, where fornication is neither crime nor sin.

The *Danes* thought this freedom of the *Groenlanders* a good opportunity to carry away some of them. The Ship being ready to set sail for its return, and the Savages coming still aboard with their Commodities, a Woman that had a great mind to a pair of knives which one of the Sea-men wore at his Girdle, offer'd him for it a Sea-Dogs skin, which the Sea-man refusing as too little, she proffer'd him a kindness into the bargain. The Sea-man had no sooner express'd his being well satisfy'd with the proffer, but she begins to unty the point (for they as well as the men wear Drawers, and would have laid her self down upon the Deck. But the Sea-man made her apprehend that he would not have all see what they did, and that she must go under Deck. The Woman, having got her Father's leave, follow'd the Sea-man with two other aged Women, a young Boy, and a Girl of about 12 years of age, who were to be present at the consummation of the bargain. But as soon as they were down, the hatch was shut, they laid hold also of another Man, and set sail. The Savages perceiving they were trappan'd, made a hideous noise in the Ship. Those who were upon the Deck got into their Boats, and follow'd the Ship a great way into the Sea, to see if they could recover the Prisoners. The Boy, who went down with the Women, got out at one of the holes the Cable is put out at, and swam ashore. They also sent back one of the Women, as being too old to be transported; so that they had but four persons, one Man, two Women, and a Girl. The trouble they were in to be among people they knew not, was extraordinary; but at last, the kindness and good cheer wherewith they were entertain'd, won their hearts, together with the hope they were put into, that within a short time, they should be brought back again into their Country: so that when they came to *Bergues* in *Norway*, their affliction seem'd to be quite over, nay, the Man thought the Women of the Country so handsome, and was got into so good a humour, that, a Lady of quality being come out of curiosity to see these Savages, he proffer'd to try what she had under her apron. This man dy'd in the Ship before we came to *Denmark*. His Daughter seeing him in the agony of Death, bound up his head in his Casaque, and so let him dy. His name was *Ihiob*, aged about 40 years. The older of the two women, aged about 45 years, was called *Kuneling*; she by whose means they were taken, was about 25. her name *Kabelan*, and the Girls name was *Sigoka*. The Plague then very rife all over *Denmark*, had oblig'd the King to retire to *Flensbourg*, in the Duchy of *Holstein*, where these *Groenlanders* were presented to him. He boarded them at a Chirurgeons, and order'd them to be well entertain'd, as that at their return to *Groenland*, whither he intended to send them with the first opportunity, they might have occasion to celebrate the liberality of his Majesty, and the civil entertainment of his Subjects. The King honour'd the Duke my master so far, as to send them to him to *Gottorp*, where they were lodg'd in my house for some days, which I spent in sifting out their humour and manner of life.

Of the Inhabitants. They were all three low of stature, but strong, being well proportion'd in all parts, save that their faces were somewhat too broad, and their eyes little, but black and very lively, especially the more aged of the two women and the Girl, their hands and feet short, in all things else like the *Samojedes*, or *Tartars* of *Nagania*, save that they were beyond comparison much more black, those being of a brown Olive-like colour, their bodies much more swarthy than their faces, and their skins much softer than those other people we have spoken of. The third whose name was *Kabelan*, was not so black as the two others. Her eyes were also bigger, and she discover'd more wit, subtilty, and compliance, than the other two. We conceived the might

might be descended of those antient Christians, who some time lived in *Groenland*, in that she was observ'd to have somewhat of Religion in her, or rather a particular Superstition, by the aversion she had for flesh, which the other two did eat, such as that of those Beasts, which, being held unclean, are not eaten in *Europe*. Their hair was blacker than Jet, and having roll'd it up together they bound it up on their crowns. As soon as their Maids become marriageable, they make several blew strakes in their faces, as the *Americans* do. These strakes reach from the lip to the chin, or they are drawn larger at the upper end and above the nose, between the two eyes; nay there is one divides it self and reaches over the eye-brows into the Temples, where it ends with a little branch. These marks they make with a very small thread steep'd in Train-oil, or some other black fatness, which being brought between the flesh and the skin, leaves a mark, which through the skin seems blewish, much like the veins in a smooth and delicate complexion. They shew'd me that their ears had been holed through, and that they were wont to wear Pendants in them. Their breasts were very unhandsome, the nipple black as a coal, and the Breasts flapping and falling down upon their bellies, wherein the Girl had no advantage of the other two. They suckle their Children, whom they carry on their backs, over their shoulders. I have been told by those who have long observ'd them, that they have no hair any where but on their heads, and are not troubled with womens monthly diseases.

The *Groenlanders* speak fast, and from the throat, somewhat like the *Tartars*, especially they they pronounce very roughly the words that have a *G*. in them. They have no *R*. in their language, and when they are oblig'd to pronounce it, they turn it into *L*. 'Tis true, among so many words as their language consists of, there are some *Danish*, but very few; the rest have nothing common with the languages that are either spoken, or learnt, or known in *Europe*; unless it might be said that the word *Keiling* comes from *cælum*, *ilioum*, from the Greek ἰλιον, as signifying the same thing. It may be said also that the word *Igné* is *Latine*, but among all the rest, we shall hardly meet with three or four that any way relate to any other language. And to the end the Reader may himself judge, we will furnish him with some of those which are most common in ordinary conversation.

<i>Keiling</i> , Heaven.	<i>Itaguptan</i> , to morrow.
<i>Ubleisim</i> , a Star.	<i>Kona</i> , a Woman.
<i>Agakwugoo</i> , yesterday.	<i>Pannien</i> , a Child.
<i>Petting</i> , a Man.	<i>Kannoctuina</i> , old.
<i>Kajoictuinas</i> , young.	<i>Pinallu</i> , fair.
<i>Ekiken</i> , deformed.	<i>Ubia</i> , Father.
<i>Njakan</i> , the head.	<i>Nulia</i> , Mother.
<i>Siuta</i> , an ear.	<i>Isken</i> , an eye.
<i>Ukang</i> , the tongue.	<i>Keinga</i> , the Nose.
<i>Tikagga</i> , a finger.	<i>Kanexua</i> , the mouth.
<i>Nafekka</i> , the belly.	<i>Kiguting</i> , a Tooth.
<i>Ennowan</i> , a Waist-coat.	<i>Vimixuin</i> , the beard.
<i>Kaksua</i> , an arrow.	<i>Akseita</i> , the hand.
<i>Kalipsi</i> , a pot.	<i>Kablan</i> , the thumb.
<i>Uglessim</i> , a bird.	<i>Kuggie</i> , a nail.
<i>Kalulisen</i> , dry'd Haberdine.	<i>Kana</i> , a leg.
<i>Towak</i> , the Fish that hath the Horn called the Unicorn's horn.	<i>Sikadin</i> , a foot.
<i>Touwaksen</i> , the Horn it self.	<i>Neizin</i> , a doublet.
<i>Kapissiling</i> , a Salmon.	<i>Naglein</i> , breeches.
<i>Pauting</i> , an Oar.	<i>Karlein</i> , stockings.
<i>Ugaggan</i> , a stone.	<i>Suwigming</i> , Iron.
<i>Kaming</i> , a Boor.	<i>Mingakisin</i> , fish.
<i>Pisickse</i> , a Bow.	<i>Kajakka</i> , a little Boat.
<i>Jugeling</i> , a Knife.	<i>Keisuin</i> , Wood.
<i>Kejuta</i> , a Spoon.	<i>Ipsaw</i> , the Earth.
<i>Emeisa</i> , a Cup.	<i>Ippin</i> , grass.
<i>Tukto</i> , flesh.	<i>Nidlong</i> , Ice.
<i>Kackstuton</i> , a Drake.	<i>Apon</i> , Snow.
<i>Kalulia</i> , Haberdine.	<i>Siruksua</i> , rain.
<i>Nau</i> , a Boat.	<i>Ime</i> , water.
<i>Iglun</i> , a house.	<i>Imak</i> , the Sea.
<i>Iliout</i> , or <i>Ilioum</i> , the Sun.	<i>Igné</i> , fire.
<i>Aningang</i> , the Moon.	<i>Igga</i> , smoak.
<i>Ublan</i> , day.	<i>Kisakaun</i> , hot.
<i>Unuwoa</i> , night.	<i>Kaigenakaun</i> , cold.
	<i>Vanga</i> , I.

1636. *Akagoo*, to day.  
*Ab*, yes.  
*Nagga*, no.  
*Pissiak*, a Dog.  
*Amiga*, the skin.  
*Mekkone*, a Needle.  
*Mikkakaun*, little.  
*Angewo*, great.  
*Sua*, what wouldst ?  
*Magluna*, two.  
*Siffema*, four.  
*Akkukmen*, six.  
*Pingenguen*, eight.  
*Tellimen*, ten.  
*Agnessui*, high.  
*Eipa*, low.  
*Kachain*, hungry.

*Ibling*, thou.  
*Kasflakaun*, full.  
*Kepsiun*, to eat.  
*Fenekkaun*, to drink.  
*Keigerfon*, to weep.  
*Iglakton*, to laugh.  
*Aliafukton*, to be troubled.  
*Tabatton*, to be glad.  
*Feptone*, bring.  
*Nikatin*, go thy wayes.  
*Kia mecle*, which signifies.  
*Suna*, what is't.  
*Tansi*, one.  
*Pingegua*, three.  
*Tellima*, five.  
*Arleng*, seven.  
*Siffemen*, nine.

Their  
 cloathing.

The *Groenlanders* call those of their Countrey *Inguin*, and strangers *Kablunassouin*, and Cloath themselves with the skins of Sea-dogs, and Sea-calves, and Renes, much like the *Samojedes*. They wear under their Cloaths Waistcoats, of the skins of birds, as Swans, Geese, wild Ducks, and Teals, turning the feathers either inward or outward according to the seasons. The difference of Sex is not easily discover'd, unless it be that the Women are known by a piece of skin that hangs down before and behind to the half-leg, and by the capache of their Waistcoats, which is made like that of the *Recollects*, and large enough to hide their hair, whereas that of the men is narrower, and cut like that of the *Franciscans*. The mens breeches come down to their knees, and sometimes lower; but those of the women are shorter, and hardly cover half the Thigh.

Their ordi-  
 nary exer-  
 cises.

They live by hunting and fishing, and make use, in these two exercises, only of Bows and Arrows, which are the only Arms they have. They have also a kind of hook, which they call *Karlusfa*, made of the tooth of the fish *Towak*, which some would have thought the Unicorn's horn. Of this bone they make also the instrument they use in Whale-fishing, at which they are very expert, taking that Creature much after another manner than is done by the *Biskayans*, and others who drive that trade. To that end, they have a very long thong, cut out of a Whale's skin, and fasten to one end of it the said instrument, which they cast at the Whale, and at the other the skin of a Sea-Calf or Dog blown up, which floating upon the water, discovers the track of the wounded Whale. If she be not mortally wounded, they pursue her, and Dart two or three times more at her, with the same kind of instrument, till such time as blood and strength failing her, they come up, kill her, bring her ashore, and divide her. The Whales fat is one of their greatest dainties, but especially the Oyl, which is their best sawce, and the drink they best love. Their ordinary drink is only water; the Women I have seen, would never drink any Wine, nor eat of our bread, or sawces: for having no Salt, Spice, Sugar, nor Vinegar in their Countrey, it is not to be wondred that we could not bring them to like meats dreisd after our way. Yet do they not eat their meat raw, as some would perswade, but dress'd, either by boyling or roasting. 'Tis true, they love dry'd Haberdine, or Stockfish, and sometimes eat it raw; but that is not extraordinary even in *Germany*, where I have seen, at a desert at the Duke of *Wolfembuttel's*, Gammons of Bacon, and dry'd Salmon serv'd up un-boyl'd. Their ordinary food, are Sea-Dogs, and Calves, Renes, Foxes, Hous-Dogs, and Fish. When they eat, with one hand, they put a piece of the flesh into their mouths, and with the other cut off what they cannot get in, so that the bits being as much as their mouths can hold, they make very strange faces to get it down.

They are  
 Savages.

Their way of living is so different from what is seen elsewhere, that it is no injury to call them *Savages*. They have no discretion, civility, vertue, or shame. Their countenances are ever frowning, and they very seldom laugh: they are timorous and distrustful, and withall insolent, stubborn, and indisciplinable. They are very nasty, and their Tongues serve them for Handkerchers, as well for their Cloaths as their Bodies, so that they may very justly be said to live like beasts. Which yet admits of some distinction, according to the situation of several parts of the Countrey, it being certain, that the *English Pilot*, who went from *Denmark*, with *Godiske Lindenau*, of whom Mr. *Pereire* makes mention, and who took his course more towards the South-west, met with a people much more docile, and less Savage, than that which *Lindenau* met withall towards the North. Our three women, who had been taken at the entrance of *Davis-streight*, were rational enough, and easily learnt what they were taught. One of them imitated pretty well a head or hand, I was drawing with a piece of Charcoal, and the other came in a short time to do those things, which women and maids ordinarily employ themselves about

about in our parts. They danc'd after a strange manner, but with such exactness as to time and cadence, that the King of *Denmark*, having a Ball danc'd at *Flensbourg*, would needs bring in those three *Groenlanders*, who came off very handsomly, to the satisfaction of all: But they would never be got to learn our language, though they pronounc'd the *Danish* and *German* words dictated to them very distinctly. 1636.

There is no money in the Country, being yet so happy as not to know the value of Gold and Silver. Iron and Steel they most esteem, and prefer a Sword or a Hatchet before a Golden Cup, a Nail before a Crown piece, and a pair of Cifers, or a Knife, before a Jacobus. Their trucking is thus; they put all they have to sell together, and having pick'd out among the Commodities that are brought to them, what they like best, they put them also together, and suffer those they deal with to add or diminish till such time as they are content with the bargain. What they most value, are Knives, Cifers, Needles, Looking-glasses, Iron and Steel; and the Commodities they sell are the fat and Oyl of Whales, the skins of Sea-dogs and Calves, the Horns, or rather the Teeth of the Fish *Towak*, whereof Mr. *Percire* makes a large and true description, in his Treatise of *Groenland*. It is granted, to be an excellent Antidote against poyson, but it is long since men have been undeceiv'd in the opinion they had of it. The Duke of *Holstein* hath one that is eight foot and two inches long, and weighs eighteen pound: but the King of *Denmark's* is six inches longer. There is also in *Groenland* Talk, and Marble, white, and of all other colours, and it hath been argu'd from the vapours which were seen rising out of the earth, at the place where the *English* Pilot came ashore, that there are Mines of Sulphur. It is reported also, that in the time of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, some Oar was brought thence, whereof the hundred weight yielded twenty six Ounces of Silver; which is the more credible, in that it is certain, the more Northerly parts of the Countrey produce both Gold and Silver, since there hath been seen at the King of *Denmark's*, a Wedge of Silver of sixty Marks, which had been taken out of the Mines of *Norway*. *The Groenlanders have no Gold nor Silver in their Countrey.*

Of the *Groenland* Religion, I must confess I could never have any accompt; but it is most likely they are Pagans and Idolaters, for we have in our custody an Idol, which we bought out of the Study of Doctour *Paludanus*, a Physician at *Enck-huyssen*, who had fasten'd a Note to it, expressing it's being found at *Davis-streight*. And indeed, our *Groenland* women presently knew it and called it *Nalim-qui-sang*. 'Twas very roughly made, of a piece of Wood a foot and a half long, cover'd with Feathers and a hairy skin, having about the neck Sea-dogs Teeth. The women would make me understand, that the Children were wont to dance about those Idols; and our *Groenland* women were seen in fair mornings to prostrate themselves and weep, at sun-rising, whence it is to be inferr'd, that those people adore the Sun. *Zeiler*, in his Itinerary, says, that the *Groenlanders* are for the most part Sorcerers, and sell Winds, as the *Laplanners* do: but that's more than the *Danes* have observ'd in their Voyages. Only it was noted among those that were in *Denmark*, that when any of them fell sick, one of the Camerades lay down upon his back by him, and the sick person sitting up bound about his head who ail'd nothing, putting a stick between the forehead and the cloath that bound it, the other raising up his head, so as that the sick person might, at first, think it light, afterwards heavy, pronouncing and muttering certain words. After which he begun again, and he who had his head bound up, leaned it down very heavy at first, afterwards more lightly, the sick person still continuing his prayers and imprecations; none being able to guess at the mystery of this Ceremony. They have neither Magistrate nor Superiour among them; their condition is equal in all things, only he that hath most Children, most Bows and Arrows, and kills most Wildfowl, is the richest and most considerable among them. *Are Pa's gans.*

For the colour of these people, it might be admir'd that in the coldest Climate in the World, the Men should be of an Olive-colour, or rather swarthy, if what \* *Pliny* saies be true, that it is the heat of the Sun that burns the skin, and makes the hair curl, and that cold whitens the skin, and makes the hair of an Ash-colour. But we find the contrary by experience, not only in the people we have spoken of, but also in those who live at the *Magellan* Streight, who are white, though as near the Sun as the Negroes of *Africk*. The Inhabitants about the *Cape of good Hope*, are black, and yet the *Spaniards* and *Italians*, as also the *Persians*, who are in the same degree, are white. The *Ethiopians* are but of a dusky colour, and the *Malabares* and Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cedon*, who are equally distant from the Line, are black. In like manner, all over *America*, there are no Blacks, but only at *Quaerca*, though that vast part of the Universe reaches from one Circle to the other, through all the Climates of the World. 'Tis no more than conjecture to say, that this diversity of colours proceeds from certain qualities of the Country and Air, whereof the causes are not known. Nor is there any more certainly to affirm, that that colour in the skin proceeds from the constitution of the body, since that in any Climate whatsoever, the conjunction of a Black Man and White Woman shall produce a swarthy Child, or of such a colour as the *Spaniards* call *Mulatas*, which is so much the more probable, in that the Sun does not always blacken, but on the contrary, whitens some things, as Wax and Linnen: it being also known, that the Sun makes a picture look more lightsome, and that *Lib. 2. c. 2.*

1636. that the *Portuguez* expose their hair thereto, to take off somewhat of their dy. But to give a more Christian account thereof, it may be said, with the Learned Mr. *Bochart*, in his incomparable *Phaleg*; That the black colour is a mark of the curse in the posterity of *Cham*, which spread it self in these places of *Asia* and *Africa* where the Negroes live.

But it is time we return to our *Muscovites*, whom we shall consider, first, in relation to their habit and stature, then to that of their humour and manner of life.

*The stature of the Muscovites.* They are for the most part corpulent, fat, and strong, and of the same colour as other *Europeans*. They much esteem great beards (when the mustaches hide the mouth) as also great bellies; so that those who are well furnish'd about the mouth, and have good fat paunches, are very considerable among them. The *Gofes*, or Great Duke's Merchants, whom we found in the Antichamber, when we were brought to our publick Audience, had been chosen particularly for those two perfections, for the greater honour of their Prince.

The great Lords shave their heads; persons of lower condition cut their hair, and Priests, and others belonging to the Church, wear their hair so long, that it hangs down over their shoulders to half their backs. Those Lords that are out of favour at Court, let their hair grow and hang negligently about their heads, thereby expressing their affliction; no doubt after the example of the ancient Greeks, whom the *Muscovites* are apt to imitate in all their actions.

*The Women paint.* The Women are well proportion'd, neither too big, nor too little; having passable good faces, but they paint so palpably, that if they laid it on with a brush, and had a handful of meal cast in their faces when they had done, they could not disfigure themselves as much as the paint does. But the custom is so general, that the most handsome must comply, lest they should discredit the artificial beauty of others: whereof we saw an example in the wife of *Knez Juan Borissowits Cirkaski*, who was the handsomest Lady of all *Muscovy*, and was loath to spoil with painting, what the rest of her Sex took so much pains to preserve thereby: but the other Women inform'd against her, and would not be quiet, till their husbands had forc'd that Prince to give way that his wife might dawb her face after the ordinary manner. So that painting is so common in *Muscovy*, that when any are to be married, the Bridegroom, that is to be, sends among other Presents some paint to his Bride, as we shall see anon when we come to speak of their marriages.

*Their habit* Married Women put up their hair within their Caps or Coifs, but the Maids let theirs hang down their backs in two tresses, and tye it at the ends with a piece of Crimson-silk. Children under 10 years of age, as well Girls as Boys, have their hair cut, all except two mustaches which are left over the temples; so that there being no difference in their habits, that of their Sex is discovered only by the brass or silver Rings, which the Girls wear in their ears.

Their habit is somewhat like that of the ancient Greeks: Their shirts are broad, but so short that they hardly cover the thighs. They are not gather'd at the neck, but lin'd with a triangular piece from the shoulders to the reins, which piece is sow'd down with Crimson silk. Some have under the Armpits, and in the seams, a fringe of silk of the same colour. The more rich have the neck-piece, which is an inch broad or better, the end of the sleeves, and the breast, embroider'd with silk of several colours, and sometimes Gold and precious stones, and leave open so much of their Waist-coats, that the embroidery and the two great Pearls, or buttons of Silver or Gold, which fasten the shirt before, may be seen. Their Breeches are large, and gather'd towards the waste, so that they may be made larger or streightned, as our Drawers. Upon these they wear a kind of Waistcoat, which they call *Kaftan*, reaching to the knees, with the sleeves so long, that they cannot thrust their hands through without making many folds upon the arm. The Collar of this Waistcoat is above half a quarter both in height and breadth, so that it covers the head behind. And because that is very much seen, the better sort face it with Plush or Satin. Upon the *Kaftan* they wear a close Coat, which falls down to the mid-leg, and is called *Feres*. These are adorn'd with cotton; and indeed, both the *Kaftans* and *Feres* are made of Cotton, Taffeta, Damask, or Satin, according to their quality who wear them. When they go abroad they put on a Garment that reaches down to their heels, made of a violet colour, or dark green cloath, with buttons behind, down to the bottom. Those of the *Knez* and *Bojares* are made of Damask, Satin, or other rich stuff. Of this last kind are all the cloaths taken out of the Great Duke's Wardrobe, for those persons by whom he is attended at publick ceremonies.

Their *Feres*, or *Hongrelines*, or close Coats, have a very broad Collar, falling down upon their shoulders, with loop-buttons of Gold and Silver, nay some with embroidery at the open places before, and the sides. The sleeves are as long as the Coat it self, but narrow; so that when it is on, they hang down, and have this convenience that they serve to hide a cudgel, or stones, wherewith they many times surprize and kill those, whom they intend to rob.

All *Muscovites* wear Caps instead of Hats. The *Knez*, *Bojares*, and Ministers of State, have



have them of black-Fox skins, or Sables, half an ell high, when they are present at any publick Ceremonies; but in their houses, and about the City, they are of Velter, lined with the said Furrs, but with narrow brims, layd all over with buttons and loops of Gold and Silver, or embroider'd with Pearls. The common People, in the Summer time, wear Caps of some coarse stuff, and in Winter, of cloath, lin'd with Sheep skins, or some ordinary Furr. Their boots are short, as those of the *Polanders*, and pick'd towards the toe, and are made of *Russia* Leather, or Goats skin brought from *Persia*. They have not yet the art of dressing Spanish Leather, nor the invention of tanning Ox-hides, otherwise than the soles. The Womens shooes are half a quarter high at the heel, set on with little nails, in so much that they can hardly go in them. 1636.

The *Muscovian* Women are habited much after the same fashion as the Men, save that their *Hongrelines*, or Coats, are wider, and of the same stuff as their Waistcoats. The richer sort have them layd over very thick with Gold, Silver, or Silk-Lace, and have buttons and loops of the same stuff, or great buttons of Silver or Tinn, to fasten them. The sleeves are so put on, as that they may thrust their hands into them, or let them hang down. They wear no *Kaftans*, much less use those high collars, which are thought so ornamental for the Men. Their Smock sleeves are four or five ells long, and are set in little folds upon the arm. They wear very wide Caps or Coifs of Damask, plain or purpled Satin, embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and lined with Castors, the hair whereof does in a manner cover all their forehead. Maids that are marriageable wear cloath Caps, lined with Fox-skin.

It is not long since, that strangers, whether Physicians, or Merchants, as the *French*, *English*, *Hollanders* and *Germans*, went in *Muscovian* habits, to avoid the insolence of the people, who many times took occasion to affront them, out of no other reason than the diversity of their cloaths. But the present Patriarch, having observ'd in a *Procession*, that the *Germans* who had thrust in among the *Muscovites* to see it pass by, betraid a certain irreverence at their Ceremonies, especially at the Benediction he gave the people, was incens'd thereat, and said, that those strangers, being not worthy to participate of the Benediction which was given to the faithful, it were fit the Great Duke put out an Ordinance, obliging strangers to cloath themselves according to the fashions of their own Countries. The contempt of any Law is severely punish'd in *Muscovy*: but the observation of this was so much the more difficult, in that, for want of Taylors, it was almost impossible for people to get other cloaths within the time limited by the Ordinance. Yet were they forc'd to obey, which occasion'd very good sport, in that those who were servants to the Great Duke, being oblig'd to be every day at the Court, and not daring to appear there in *Muscovian* habits, they were forc'd to put on what they could meet withall, and to make use of those cloaths which their Grand-fathers, and Great-grand-fathers had worn, when the Tyrant *John Basilonits* forc'd them out of *Livonia*, to go and live at *Moscon*. 'Twas a strange sight to see them all in cloaths that were either too big, or too little, as having not been made for them, besides that there was no acquaintance at all between Breeches and Doublet, or any correspondence between the age wherein they had been made, and that they were then worn in. Ever since that time every Nation is clad according to their own modes.

The *Muscovites* never change their fashion, nor can I remember any more than one Lord, who took a fancy to the *French* mode. His name is *Knez Mikita Jovanonits Romanon*, very rich, and of near kin to the Great Duke, who is much taken with his humour and conversation. This Lord hath a particular affection for Strangers, and goes in the *French* and *Polish* modes in his cloaths, especially when he goes either into the Country or a-hunting. But the Patriarch, who dislik'd that freedom in him, and was displeas'd also with another, which that Prince took, to speak somewhat slightly of their Religion, enjoyn'd him not to speak any further of Religion. Nothing so wretched as the cloathing of the Country people. It is of a very coarse Canvas, and their shooes of barks of trees, which they have the art to sow and interlace like panniers, with a miraculous industry. There is hardly any *Muscovite* but is good at this Trade, and does exercise it; so that it may be said, *Muscovy* hath as many Shooemakers as men, or at least, that there is no Family, but hath its particular Shooemaker. It is upon the same account said of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, that he hath a Baylywick in the Dutchy of *Prussia*, which is that of *Insterbourg*, where there are above 15000. Shooemakers, for all the Peatants of that Baylywick make their own shooes.

If a man consider the natures and manner of life of the *Muscovites*, he will be forc'd to avow, there cannot any thing be more barbarous than that people. Their boast is that they are descended from the antient *Greeks*, but, to do them no injustice, there is no more comparison between the brutality of these *Barbarians*, and the civility of the *Greeks*, to whom all other parts of the World are oblig'd for all their literature and civilization, than there is between day and night. They never learn any Art or Science, nor apply themselves to any kind of Study: on the contrary, they are so ignorant, as to think, a man cannot make an Almanack unless he be a Sorcerer, nor foretell the Revolutions of the Moon and Eclipses, unless he have some communication with Devils. Upon this account it was, that the *Muscovites* generally grumbled

1636. when the Great Duke would have entertain'd me into his service, in the quality of his Astronomer and Mathematician, as we return'd from our Voyage into *Persia*, and rais'd a report, that their Prince was going to bring a Magician into his Court. This aversion I discover'd in the *Muscovites*, took off that little inclination I sometime had to embrace that employment, which was offer'd me, not so much upon the accompt of my abilities in Astronomy, as, to engage me to continue in the Countrey, because they knew, that I had exactly observ'd, and drawn into a Map the whole course of the River *Volga*, whereof they were unwilling that strangers should have any knowledge. When I came to *Muscovy*, upon the affairs of the Duke of *Holstein* my Master, in the year 1643. I shew'd them upon a Wall of an obscure Chamber, through a little hole I had made in the shutter of the window, by the means of a piece of glass polish'd and cut for Opticks, all was done in the street, and men walking upon their heads: This wrought such an effect in them, that they could never after be otherwise perswaded than that I held a correspondence with the Devil.

They esteem Physicians, and Medicine, but will not permit that people should make use of the same means as is done elsewhere to gain the perfection of that Science. They will not suffer the body to be opened, that so the causes of diseases may be found out, and they have a strange aversion for *Skeletons*. There is to this purpose a pleasant story of a *Dutch* Surgeon who liv'd at *Moscou* some years since. His name was *Quirin*, one much favour'd by the Great Duke, because of his facetious humour, and his experience in the Art he profess'd. It happen'd one day, that this good man diverting himself in his Chamber, and playing a Lesson on the Lute, the *Strelitz*, who are spying up and down every where, drew near to the place where that Mulick was: but perceiving through a chink, a *Skeleton* hanging behind him, which the wind coming in at the window caused to move, they were frightened, and reported, that the strange Surgeon had a dead Carcass that mov'd at the sound of his Musick. The Great Duke and the Patriarch desirous to be truly inform'd of the business, sent others to make a further discovery; and these not only confirm'd what the others had reported, but added, that they had seen the *Skeleton* dance, while the Surgeon play'd. The business was thought to be of such importance, as that it were fit to be communicated to the Council, where, *nemine contradicente*, it was declar'd, That it was done by Magick. That, consequently, the Surgeon was a Magician, and as such, ought to be burnt, together with the *Skeleton*. The Surgeon hearing of this sentence, intreated a Merchant of his acquaintance, who had much credit at Court, to represent to *Knez Juan Borissowits Cirkaski*, that most Surgeons and Physicians in *Germany* make use of those *Skeletons*, to find out the composition of the body, and juncture of the bones, that so they might the better know how to cure what may happen in those parts. Upon this Lord's representation, the former sentence was revers'd, but *Quirin* was forc'd to leave the Countrey, and the *Skeleton* was dragg'd along the streets, and burnt on the other side of the River *Moska*. A *German* Painter ran the same hazard about six years since. For the *Strelitz*, who were got into his house, with intent to pull it down, to hinder the Progress of a fire, which had already done mischief enough, meeting with a dead man's skull, or death's head, would have cast both it and the Master of the house into the fire, and had done it, if his friends had not deliver'd him out of the hands of those *Barbarians*, and convinc'd them of the innocent use of that head, in the art he profess'd.

They are  
ingenuous  
naturally.

'Tis true, The *Muscovites* do not want ingenuity, but they employ their wit so ill, that not any of their actions is directed to vertue and the glory which ever attends it. The *Danish* Gentleman, who publish'd the Embassy he was sent upon, into *Muscovy*, from *Frederick II.* gives the *Muscovites* a very true Character, in two Lines, when he says, That they are subtle, over-reaching, humourous, self-will'd, obstinate, insolent, and impudent, that they regulate their reason according to their power, and that they have shaken hands with all vertues, to run themselves into all manner of vice.

Their industry and subtilty is chiefly seen in their Traffick, in which there is no craft or cheat but they make use of, rather to circumvent others, than to prevent being deceiv'd themselves. I wonder'd to see them sell Cloath at three Crowns and a half the Ell, which they had bought of the *English* at four, and yet I was told they made a good profit thereby; for buying the Cloath at a twelve months time for payment, and selling it for ready money, though at a lower rate, they made use of the money, and employ'd it in other things, which brought in more profit, than they would have made by selling the Cloath upon time, though they sold much dearer than it cost them. They make a conscience to retain what is paid them more than their due, and are so honest as to return what they have receiv'd by mistake: but they think it no sin, in their dealings, to surprize those who Trade with them, giving this reason, that the Merchant is to make his advantage of the Wit and industry God hath bestow'd on him, or never meddle with Traffick. According to this principle, a certain *Dutch* Merchant having notoriously over-reach'd several *Muscovites*, these Gentlemen were so far from being troubled at it, that they spake of him, as of an excellent ingenuous man, and desir'd they might go partners with him, out of a hope they conceiv'd, that he would discover some great secret to them.

And

And whereas cheating cannot be exercis'd without treachery, lying, and distrust, which are its constant attendants, they are marvellously well vers'd in these qualities, as also in the Lectures of Calumny, which they commonly make use of against those on whom they would be revenged for theft, which among them is the most enormous of all Crimes; and the most severely punish'd. To this end, they are so cunning, as to pawn at, or get secretly convey'd into their Lodgings, whom they would accuse, those things which they would have believed were stolen from them, or they thrust them into their Enemies Boots; for in them the *Muscovites* commonly carry their money and Letters. To make some provision against these abuses, the Great Duke made an Edict in the year 1634. enjoying that for the future, all Promises or Obligations, whether for borrowing of money or pawning; though it were between Father and Son, should be set down in writing, and sign'd by both parties, else the debt to be lost. Heretofore, especially in the Reign of the Tyrant *John Basilonits*, there needed no more to procure a man's death or banishment, than to accuse him of High-Treason, without any Process, Evidence, or Defence allow'd, all that were charged being punish'd, without any distinction of Sex, Age, or Quality. Calumnies, and false suggestions were so common under that Prince, that many strangers, even publick persons, many times fell into those misfortunes, the Tyrant never regarding their Character as Ambassadors, nor that of the Princes by whom they were sent. He banish'd, into *Siberia*, the Emperours Ambassadour, and caus'd him to be so ill-treated, that the poor man resolv'd at last to change his Religion, hoping by his Apostacy to alleviate his misery. The Great Duke *Michael Federonits*, shew'd no more respect for the late King of *France*, when he sent the Marquesse of *Exidueil* into *Siberia*, where, by the Artifices of his Collegue, *James Rouffol*, he was a Prisoner 3 years, as we have mentioned elsewhere.

1636.

Are lyars  
and distrustful.

To this purpose, *Martin Baar*, Pastor of *Narva*, who liv'd at *Moscon* under the reign of the Great Duke *Boris Gudenou*, told us this story. The Great Duke being troubled with the Gout caus'd to be proclaim'd, that whoever could give him any ease should have very great rewards. The wife of a certain *Bojare*, exasperated by the ill usage she had receiv'd from her husband, went and inform'd, that the *Bojare* had an excellent remedy for the Gout; but had so little affection for his Majesty, that he would not communicate it. They sent for the man, who was not a little astonish'd when he understood the cause of his disgrace; but what excuses soever he made, all was attributed to his malice. He was whipp'd, even to blood, and cast in Prison, where he could not forbear breaking out into passion, and saying, that he saw well enough it was his wife had put that trick upon him, and that he would be reveng'd on her. The Great Duke imagining these menaces proceeded from the trouble it was to him that his wife had revealed what he would have kept secret, ordered him to be whipp'd more cruelly than the time before, and sent one to tell him, that if he did not apply his remedy, he should prepare himself for present death. The poor fellow perceiving his destruction unavoidable, said at last, that he knew indeed a remedy, but doubting of its certainty, he durst not try it on his Majesty; yet if they would allow him fifteen dayes to prepare it, he would apply it. Having that time granted him, he sent to *Czirback*, two dayes journey from *Moscon*, upon the River *Ocoa*, whence he had brought him a Wagon full of all sorts of Herbs, good and bad, and therewith prepar'd a Bath for the Great Duke, who thereupon grew somewhat better. For whether it were that the Disease was declining, or that among so many Herbs of all sorts, there were some good for his Disease, he had some ease. Then were they confirm'd in the opinion they had before, that the *Bojares* denial to apply his remedy proceeded from his malice, whereupon he had a more cruel whipping than the two former times, and there was given him a present of four hundred Crowns, together with eighteen Peasants to be his slaves; with a strict charge, not to entertain any animosity against his wife, who made this advantage thereby, that, ever after, they liv'd very lovingly together.

A pleasant  
story.

But now they proceed with more caution, and no man is condemn'd without an exact information of the Crime laid to his charge. And for the utter taking away of all calumny, the Accuser must be content to endure the Torture first; and if, while he is in the Torment, he persist in his accusation, the accused person is also put to it, nay, many times he is condemn'd without so much as being heard. We saw an example of this in the wife of one of the Great Duke's Farriers, who desirous to be rid of her husband, charg'd him that he would have poyson'd the Horses, and had he the opportunity, even the Great Duke himself. She endur'd the Torture without varying in her accusation, and her husband was sent to Prison into *Siberia*. We were shew'd the woman, who was still paid the one half of her husband's Pension. From this kind of demeanour among the *Muscovites*, and their infidelity one to another, it may be judg'd, what strangers are to expect from them, and how far they are to be trusted. They never proffer their friendship, nor contract any with others, but for their own interest and advantage. The ill education they have when young, never learning any thing beyond reading and writing, and certain vulgar prayers, makes them blindly follow that which in Beasts is called *Instinct*; so that Nature being in them depraved and corrupted, their whole life must needs be a constant course

1636. of viciousness. Thence it comes, they are brutish, doing all things according to their unbridled passions and appetites.

The fierceness of all other Nations, some *Islanders* excepted, argues something of Spirit and Generosity; but the opinion the *Muscovites* have of themselves and their abilities, is sottish, gross, and impertinent; and the pride and vain glory of those who are ever so little advanc'd in Honours or Estates, is insupportable. They dissemble if not, but all their behaviour, words, and actions, discover what they really are. Upon this principle they ground the fond conceit they have of the greatness, power, and wealth of their Prince, whom they prefer before all the other Monarchs of *Europe*. Thence it is also, that they would not have other Princes assume those qualities which may denote their competition with him. They sottishly and insolently command Ambassadors to be uncover'd first, and by force take all advantages over them, imagining it were a great injury to themselves and their Prince, to treat Strangers with any civility. Private persons write and speak in unhandsome terms, but such as give the less offence, in that they bear with the same treatment from others. 'Tis true, they begin to learn a little civility, since they became sensible of the advantages arising to them from the Commerce they have with Strangers, and there are some use them with discretion: but of these there are very few, and, excepting *Nikita*, whom we have spoken of, and two or three more, it would be hard to find as many others that deserve this commendation.

Have no civility.

Nor have they any more compliance one for another, than they have difference for strangers; for instead of being civil one to another, they take place, and all other advantages, one of another. When we were at *Nisenovogorod*, the Chancellor's Steward coming to see us, the Ambassadors invited him to Dinner; but when they were to sit down, the *Pristaf* would take place of him, which begat a contestation concerning their quality. One, as he was a *Sinbojar*, or Gentleman, pretended to precedence before the *Pristaf*, who was not a person eminent by birth; the later, being there upon the account of his Prince, would not have the other to make any comparison with him. Whore's son and dog were the mildest of their terms for half an hour and better, and that without any respect for the Ambassadors, who were at last forc'd to tell them, that they had invited them to be merry, and not to be troubled with their contests, and entreated them, at that time, to eat and drink, and to take some other, to decide their differences. They took their advice, and grew such good friends, as if the entertainment had been appointed for their reconciliation, which seem'd to be very sincere in their Wine, which, according to their custome made them kindly drunk.

Quarrel-some.

They are all much given to quarrelling, in so much that in the streets they will rail at, and abuse one another like Fish-Wives, and that with such animosity, that those who are not acquainted with their humour think they will not part without fighting; but they seldom come to those extremities, or if they fight, it is with their fists, or switches, and the height of their rage is kicking, as much as they can, in the belly and about the sides. 'Twas never yet known that any *Muscovite* fought with Sword or Pistol, or that they are sensible of that gallantry wherein many would unjustly place true courage. The great Lords, *Kncz* and *Bojares*, fight on horse-back, but the weapon is a good Whip, and so they soon decide what differences happen between them.

Insolent in their expressions.

When they quarrel, they forbear cursing, swearing and blaspheming, but rail at one another in such bitter and horrid expressions, as no Country being able to parallel them, 'tis but discretion to forbear desiring this relation therewith. The language of Fathers and Mothers to their Children, and of the Children to them again, is such as cannot be express'd without horror, much beyond what the most debauch'd persons elsewhere are guilty of. Some years since the Great Duke prohibited these insolences upon pain of whipping, and the Magistrate was ordered to send *Sirelits* and Serjeants among the people to surprize Offenders, and to see them immediately punish'd. But it was found by experience, that the remedy came too late, and that the mischief was so deeply rooted, and so generally spread, that it was, not only hard, but absolutely impossible to put those prohibitions in execution. So that, for the vindication of persons of quality an order was made, that he who affronts any such, or any of the Great Duke's Officers, either by word or deed, should be fined, which fine they call *Biscestia*, and sometimes amounts to 2000. Crowns, according to the quality of the Person injur'd. If an Officer of the Great Duke's makes his complaint of injury done him, his reparation will be according to his relation to the Court. To a Lady, 'tis doubled, to a Son, 'tis augmented by a third part; to a Daughter, there is an abatement of a third part: and the penalty is paid as many times as there are persons injured, though they were dead many years before. If the Offender hath not to pay, he is put into his Adversaries hands, who disposes of him so as to make him his Slave, or cause him to be whipt by the common Executioner. One *John Barnley*, an *English* Merchant, of whom we shall speak elsewhere, was sentenc'd to pay the *Biscestia* to another *English* man, *Dr. Day*, Physician to the Great Duke; and *Capt. de la Coste*, a *French* Gentleman found means to make an exchange of the penalty laid upon him at the sute of a *German* Colonel, for that which the same Colonel was to pay another *French* man, named *Anthony le Groin*, who was pleas'd thereby to oblige his friend, *la Coste*.

There

There is nothing polite in their conversation; on the contrary, they are not ashamed to yawn, belch, and stretch themselves, where ever they are, their belching being the more offensive, by reason of the abundance of Onions and Garlick they use in all their meat, which make their breaths strong enough, without those exaltations. This they are so accustomed to, that they stick not to do it in any company, the Great Duke's presence only excepted. 1636

They do not apply themselves to the study of any Art or Science, nor inquire into the affairs of other Countries, and consequently never discourse of any such thing: but it were well on the other side, if they could forbear talking of their uncleannesses and brutalities, which they make their divertisement in their debauches. I speak not of the Entertainments of Great Lords, but of the ordinary company keeping of the *Muscovites*, where all their discourse is of the abominations which they themselves have done, or seen committed by others, making ostentation of the crimes which here would be expiated by fire, and the memory thereof buried in their ashes. But as they are wholly given up to all licentiousness, even to sins against Nature, not only with Men, but also with Beasts, he who can tell most stories of that kind, and set them out in most gestures, is accounted the bravest Man. Their Fiddlers put them into Songs, and their Mountebanks make publick representations of them, and stick not to shew their Breeches, and sometimes all they have to their Spectators. Those who lead Bears about, Juglers; and Puppet-players, who erect a Stage in a moment, by the means of a coverlet, which, being ty'd about their waist, is brought over their heads, and within it show their Puppets, representing their brutalities, and sodomies, make sport to the Children, who are thereby induc'd to quit all sentiments of shame and honesty. *Not addicted to any study.*

Nay these are quite discarded by the *Muscovites*. The postures of their dancing, and the insolence of their Women, are infallible marks of their bad inclinations. We have seen at *Moscow* both Men and Women come out of the publick Brothell-houses stark naked, and incite some young people of our retinue to naughtiness by filthy and lascivious expressions. Idleness, which is the Mother of all Vices, and seems to have been bestowed on these barbarous people as their portion, is that which makes them run into these excesses, whereto their drunkenness does also contribute; in as much as being naturally inclin'd to luxury, when they are once got into their Wine they mind nothing else. I have to this purpose a story, which the Great Duke's Interpreter told me when we were at *Novogorod*: how that in the said City, there is an anniversary devotion, to which come abundance of Pilgrims. He who is allow'd to keep a tipling-house, gets a permission from the Metropolitan, to pitch several Tents, for the accommodation of the Pilgrims of both Sexes, who are sure to be there betimes in the morning before service, and to take off some Cups of strong-water. Nay some of them instead of minding their devotions spend the day in drinking, whence arise such strange disorders, that he told me, he saw a Woman got so drunk there, that coming out of the Tent she fell down; and fell asleep, naked as she was, in the street, in the day time. Which gave occasion to a *Muscovite*, who was also drunk, to lye down by her, and, having made use of her, to fall also asleep in sight of many people, who having made a ring about them, only laugh'd at the posture they were in, till at last an old man, conceiving a horrour at the spectacle, cover'd them with his own garment. *Shameless!*

There's no place in the World where drunkenness is more common than in *Muscovy*. All, of all conditions, Ecclesiasticks and Laicks, Men and Women, Old and Young, will drink strong-water at any time, before, at, and after their meals. They call it *Tzarkowino*, and fail not to offer of it to those who visit them. The lowest sort of people, Peasants and Slaves, refuse not the Cups which are given them by some person of Quality, but will drink of it till they lye down, and many times dye in the place. Nay their Great ones are not free from this vice, as for example, the *Muscovian* Ambassador, sent to *Charles* King of *Sueden*, in the year 1608. who, forgetting his quality and the affairs his Master had entrusted him with, took so much strong-water the night before he was to have audience, that the next day being found dead in his bed, they were forc'd to carry him to his Grave, instead of conducting him to Audience. *Drunkards.*

The meaner sort of people think it not enough to stay in the Tipling-house till they have not a *Copee* left in their purses, but many times pawn their cloaths there even to their shirts, which is no more than what is seen dayly during our aboad at *Moscow*. Being lodg'd at *Lubeck*-house, as I went to *Novogorod*, in my Voyage to *Muscovy* in 1643. I saw coming out of an Ale-house not far thence, several of those Drunkards, some without Caps, others without Shoes or Stockins, some without Waistcoats, and only their Shirts. One I took notice of above the rest, who came out first without his *Kaftan*, and in his Shirt, but meeting a friend by the way going to the Tipling-house, he went back with him, and came not out again till he had left his shirt behind him. I call'd to him, and ask'd him what he had done with his shirt, and whether he had been robb'd? He answer'd with the ordinary civility of the *Muscovites*, *Ja but fui matir, Mind thy own business; Good Wine hath put me into this posture: but since the shirt hath stayd behind, the Drawers shall go and keep them company*, which he had no sooner said, but he returns to the house, *house,*

1636. house, whence I saw him come presently afterward naked as an *Adamite*, covering his privy parts with a handful of flowers, which he had taken up at the door, and so went very jocundly to his own house.

Being in the same City of *Novogorod* at the time of our second Embassy, I saw a Priest coming out of the Tipling-house, who coming by our Lodging would needs give the benediction to the *Strelits*, who stood Sentinel at the door. but as he lifted up his hands, going to make the inclination used in that Ceremony, the head, fraught with the vapours of the Wine, was so heavy, that weighing down the whole body, the Pope fell down in the dirt. Our *Strelits* took him up with much respect, and receiv'd his daggled benediction; it being, it seems, a thing very ordinary among them.

The Great Duke *Michael Federovits*, who was a sober person, and hated drunkenness, considering with himself that it was impossible absolutely to prevent those excesses, made in his time several orders for the moderating of them, causing the Tipling-houses to be shut up, and prohibiting the selling of strong-water or Hydromel without his permission, and that those places where they were sold, should sell only by the Quart and Pint, and not by Cups. This had some effect, in that there was no more *Adamites* seen in the streets, but hindred not their being strew'd with Drunkards, the Neighbours and such of their friends, as had a design to be merry, sending to the Tavern for several Pottles of Strong-water, which they would be sure to turn off ere they parted.

Women given to drink. The women are no less given to drink than the men. I saw a pleasant example of it at *Narva*, in the house where I lodg'd, whither many *Muscovian* women came one day to their husbands, fate down with them, and took off their Cups as smartly as they did. The men being got drunk, would have gone home, but the women thought it not yet time to draw off, though invited thereto by a good number of boxes o'th'ear, and got their husbands to sit down again, and to drink roundly as before, till such time as that the men being fall'n down asleep upon the ground, the women fate upon them, as upon benches, and drunk on till they also were forc'd to lye down by them.

*James de Cologne*, at whose house I lodg'd at *Narva*, told me he had seen such another Comedy at his Wedding; at which, the *Muscovites* having given their Wives a good banging, fate down and drunk with them, till that being lay'd on the ground, the Women fate upon them, and grew so drunk, till at last they lay down among them.

Tobacco forbidden among them. Tobacco was heretofore so common there, that it was generally taken, both in smoak and powder. To prevent the mischiefs occasion'd by the use of it, which were not only, that the poorer sort of people ruin'd themselves thereby, in as much as if they had but a penny, they would rather bestow it in Tobacco than bread, but also because many times it set houses on fire and those that took it presented themselves with their stinking and infectious breaths before their Images, the Great Duke and the Patriarch thought fit in the year 1634. absolutely to forbid the sale and use of it. Those who are convicted of having either taken or sold any, are very rigorously punish'd. They have their Nostrils slit or are whipp'd, as we have often seen done; of the manner of which punishment we shall speak when we come to treat of the administration of Justice in that Countrey.

They are born to slavery. The perverse disposition of the *Muscovites*, the baseness of their education, and the slavery they seem born to, cause them to be treated like beasts, rather than people endued with reason. They are naturally so much inclin'd to idleness, that it were impossible to bring them to take any pains, but by the Whip and the Cudgel, which yet they are not much troubled at, as being hardened to blows, by the custom which the younger sort have to meet on Holy-dayes, and to divert themselves by cuffing or fighting with staves, never being angry at what happens. Those who are free-born, but poor, do so little value that advantage, that they sell themselves with their family for a small matter; nay, they are so mindless of their liberty, that they will sell themselves a second time, after they had recovered it, by the death of their Master, or some other occasion.

Strangers are in no better condition there. Their submissions to their Superiours discover the lowness of their spirits, and their slavery. They never come before persons of quality, but they bow down to the ground, which they touch and smite with their forehead, nay, there are some will cast themselves at their Lords feet, to give them thanks after they had been sufficiently beaten by them. No *Muscovite*, what quality toever he be of, but makes it his brag, to be the Great Duke's *Golop*, or Slave: and to express their humility or abjection, even in the least things, they put their names into diminutives, and neither speak nor write to him, but instead of *Iwan*, or *John*, they say *Iwantske*, that is the diminutive; and sign thus, *Petruskerwoy Golop*, *Petrillo your slave*. The Great Duke speaking to them uses the same expression, treating them in all things like slaves, as far as Whips and Cudgels can do it, which is but consonant to their own acknowledgement, That their persons and estates are God's and the Great Duke's.

Those strangers who settle in *Muscovy*, or are entertain'd into the *Czaar's* service, must resolve to do the same submissions, and be content with the same treatment. For what kindness soever

foever he may have for them, it requires so small a matter to deserve the Whip, that there is hardly any can brag he hath not had it. Heretofore there were none more subject to the Lath, than the Physicians, it being the persuasion of the *Muscovites*, that that art was infallible, and that the success of it depended on their wills, who profess'd the curing of diseases. Hence was it, that in the year 1602. *John Duke of Holstein*, brother to *Christian* the fourth King of *Denmark*, who had married the Great Duke *Boris Gudenous* daughter, falling sick, the *Czar* sent word to the Physicians, that if they recovered him not, their lives should answer for the Prince's: so that they seeing the remedies apply'd were fruitless, and that it was impossible to save the Prince, kept out of the way, and durst not come into the Great Duke's presence, till he himself was troubled with the Gowt, and sent for them. Among the rest, there was one a *German*, who having practis'd Phyllick some time in *Muscovy*, had some thoughts of returning into *Germany* to take the degree of Doctor. But the Great Duke desirous to know the occasion upon which he desir'd leave to go, understanding that he went thither to be examin'd, and so take his Degree, which the Faculty gives and confirms by its Letters Patents, he told him, that having been often eas'd of his pain by his remedies, he was satisfy'd of his sufficiency; and, as to Letters, if there were any need of them, he would give him such as should be as authentick as any he could get from the Universities of *Germany*, and so he needed not put himself to the trouble and expence of that journey.

This Physician was one of those who kept out of the way upon the Duke of *Holstein's* death, and imagining the Great Duke would send for him in order to his execution, he put on a tatter'd Garment, and having his hair negligently hanging down over his eyes and face, he came in that posture to the Great Duke's Chamber-door, into which he went, creeping on all four, and coming to his bed-side, told him, that he was not worthy to live, much less be admitted into his Majesties presence, since he was so unfortunate as to be out of his favour. Upon which one of the *Knez*, who were about the Duke, thinking to make his Prince some sport, treated him as a *Sabak*, or Dog, kick'd him in the head, and drew blood of him. The Physician, perceiving the great Duke look'd favourably on him, thought fit to make his advantage of it, and with a certain confidence said to him, *Great Prince, I know I am your Slave, but be pleas'd to give me leave to tell you, that I am only yours. I know I have deserv'd death, and should think my self happy to receive it from your hands; but it troubles me to be affronted by this Knez, who is but your Slave as well as my self; and I think it is not your desire, that any other should have power over me.* These words, and the need the Great Duke stood in of this Physician, procur'd him a present of a thousand Crowns; his Fellow-Physicians were pardoned, and the *Bojar* had a good cudgelling.

As for slaves, their number is not regulated, some Lords have above a hundred of them in their Country-houses and Farms, Those they entertain for their service in the City; do not diet in their houses, but have board-wages, their allowance so small, that it is as much as they can do to live upon it. And this is one of the chiefest causes of the many disorders and mischiefs done at *Moscou*, there passing hardly a night but violences and murders are committed. Great Lords and rich Merchants have a Guard in their Courts, who watch all night, and are oblig'd to express their vigilance, by the noise they make upon boards with a stick, much after the manner of playing upon the Timbrels, which done, they give as many knocks as the Clock hath struck hours. But these Guards watching many times more for the advantage of house-breakers, than that of their Masters, there is none used now, and no servant is taken into a house, but upon good City-security for his truth.

*They keep many Slaves.*

This great number of slaves makes it unsafe to walk the streets of *Moscou*, in the night time un-arm'd and without Company. We had the experience of it in some of our servants, upon several occasions. Our Master-Cook, who had been employ'd at a person's of quality, where the Ambassadors had Dined, was kill'd as he came home in the night; which misfortune happen'd also to the Steward belonging to the *Suedish* Ambassador, *Spiring*. The Lieutenant, who had commanded our *German* and *Scotch* Musketers, in our Voyage into *Persia*, was in like manner kill'd in the night, having been with some others at the Wedding of a *German* Merchants daughter. And as there pass'd no night almost without murder, so these disorders increas'd towards great Festivals, especially on flesh days, which they call *Maslowitzo*. On *St. Mastin's* Eve, we counted fifteen dead bodies in the Court of *Semskoy*, a place where they are expos'd, that their kinred and friends may know them, and take order for their burial. If no body owns them, they are dragg'd thence like Carrion, and thrown into a Ditch without any Ceremony.

The insolence of these Villains is so great, that they stuck not to set upon the Great Duke's principal Physician in the day time. They stopp'd him in the street as he was going home, struck him off his horse, and would have cut off his finger, on which he had a Gold Seal-ring, had he not been reliev'd by some sent to his rescue, by a *Knez* of his acquaintance, who living near thereabouts had seen him set upon. The misery is, that no Citizen will so much as look out at his window, much less come out of his house, to relieve those that are affronted, so much are they

1636, they afraid to come into the same misfortune they see others engag'd in. Since our being there, some course hath been taken herein, Watches being set, who stop those who go in the night without Torch or Lanthorn, and carry them to the *Strelitse prisons*, where they are punish'd the next day.

At Hay-making time, the road between *Moscou* and *Tuere* is very dangerous to travel, by reason of the great number of slaves employ'd in that work, making their advantage of a Mountain whence they discover those that pass, whom they rob and kill, without any reparation to be expected from their Masters, who, not allowing their slaves what to subsist upon, are forc'd to connive at their Crimes.

Masters dispose of their slaves, as they do of any other moveable; nay, a father may sell his son, and alienate him, for his own advantage. But the *Muscovites* have this piece of vain-glory, that not only they seldom come to those extremities, but also had rather see their Children starve at home, than suffer them to go out any where to service. 'Tis only debt that sometimes engages them to make over their Children to their Creditors, the Boyes at ten, the Girls, at eight Crowns, a year, the Children being no less oblig'd to satisfy the debt, than their fathers, as also to endure that cruel treatment, which desperate debtors are to expect, or to sell themselves to their Creditors.

*They are good Soldiers.* The subjection in which they are born, and the gross feeding they have even from their fancy, at which time they are taught to be content with any thing, makes them very good Soldiers, and such as would do very great services under strange Commanders. For though the Military Discipline of the *Romans* allow'd not the lifting of slaves in their Legions, yet does it not follow, but that the *Muscovites*, who are all such, may be advantageously employ'd in War, this being certain of them, that they are excellent good in a besieg'd place, and will maintain it to the utmost extremity. Of this we have an example at *Notebourg*, where two men made their capitulation in the year 1579. The *Poles*, who had besieg'd the Castle of *Suikols*, set it a fire as they were giving the assault; yet the *Muscovites* made good the breach and maintain'd it, even when the fire reach'd their Cloaths. At the siege of the Abbey of *Padis*, in *Livonia*, they held out till they became so weakned for want of Provisions, that they were not able to keep Guard, nor to meet the *Suedes* at the Gate.

They are not indeed so fortunate in the field, and very seldom gain'd any battel against the *Poles* or *Suedes*, their Neighbours, who have alwayes almost had the better of them, so that it prov'd a harder matter to pursue them, than to avoid their blows. But certain it is withall, that these misfortunes happen to them through the want of experience and conduct in their Generals, rather than of courage in their Soldiers.

*The Siege of Smolensko.* For as to the disgrace the *Muscovites* receiv'd at the Siege of *Smolensko*, in the year 1633: it is to be ascribed to the Generals perfidiousness, who paid his Master for his imprudence in putting the command of his Army into the hands of a Stranger. He was a *Polander*, named *Herman Schein*, who to curry favour with the Duke, had been so low-spirited as to receive re-baptization. The Army he commanded, consisted of above a hundred thousand men, among whom were above 6000. *Germans*, and several *Muscovian* Regiments exercised according to the *German* discipline, and commanded by strange Officers, *French*, *Germans*, and *Scots*, three hundred pieces of Cannon, and all other things requisite to carry on the Siege against that place, which the *Poles* had taken some time before from the *Muscovites*. The reduction of it had been so much the easier, in that the City is compass'd but with one simple wall, without ditch, or any kind of fortification. Whence it came, that the *Germans*, who had made a reasonable breach in it, propos'd to have it carried at the first assault. But the General oppos'd it, saying, That he would never suffer, it should be reproach'd to the Prince his Master, that he had rais'd so vast an Army to besiege a place, which a handful of *Germans* would have taken in so few dayes, and then presently to disband it. The Colonels that were Strangers, on the other side, considering that the Great Duke's reputation would suffer by that Siege, and the Army it self be destroy'd if it were not employ'd, resolv'd to give the assault, and were in a manner Masters of the breach, when the General commanding the great Guns to be discharg'd at them, they were forc'd to retreat. They complain'd of that procedure, so far as to make some discoveries of their distrust of his fidelity; but he sent them word, that if they kept not within the respect due to their General, he should find a way to chastise them, and that he would treat them as *Muscovites*. So that not daring to make any further attempt, the Army continu'd there some time without doing any thing, and gave the King of *Poland* time enough to get together a small body of 5000. men, who possess'd themselves of all the avenues, by which the *Muscovites* receiv'd their provisions, so as that within a few dayes their Army was more straightly besieg'd than the City it self. It had been easy for the *Muscovian* General to prevent the *Poles* from taking up those posts, but he gave them the leasure so to fortify themselves in them, that it had been impossible for him to force them in their quarters, even if he had attempted it. The *Muscovian* Army being reduc'd to this extremity, the General, to hinder it from starving, was forc'd to capitulate with the *Poles*; to come in with the whole Army at mercy, and, with all that Noble Artillery,



Artillery, to leave hostages for the ranfome of all the Officers and Soldiers, which the Great Duke was oblig'd to pay. The General was so impudent as to return to *Moscon*, and shew himself at Court, where he had friends enough to protect him, notwithstanding the charges put in against him by the Officers and Soldiers: but the people exprefs'd themselves so mov'd at his treachery, that to prevent an insurrection, which threatned both City and State, they were forc'd to execute him publickly in the market-place. 1636.

Most of the great Ones had a finger in his Treason, but lest he might accuse any, they perswaded him that he should not be startled at those proceedings, that it was only by way of pageant, to give the people some satisfaction, and that, before execution, his pardon would be brought him. Which he the more easily credited, for that his changing Religion had gain'd him the affection and favour of the Patriarch. But he had no sooner layd his head upon the block, ere a sign was made to the Executioner to strike it off. The same day was executed also his Son, who had some command under his Father at the Siege of *Smolensko*. He was brought into the open place before the Castle, where he was stripp'd stark naked, and whipp'd to death. All the rest of his kindred were banish'd into *Siberia*. This execution happened in *June*, 1634.

The *Muscovites* spend not much in house-keeping, nor the *Bojares*, as well as those of a lower condition. It is not above thirty years, that their Lords and chiefest Merchants have built their houses of stone: for before they were no better lodg'd than the meaner sort, in very poor wooden buildings. Their household-stuff are suitable to their Lodgings, and commonly consist only in three or four pots, and as many wooden or earthen dishes. Some have pewter, but very few, and unless it be some few drinking cups, and gobelets, there is not any of silver. They know not what scowring means, in so much that the Great Duke's plate looks little better than the Tavern-pots, which are made clean but once a year. The better sort hang their rooms but with mat; and to set them out yet a little better, they have only two or three Images wretchedly painted. They have few feather-beds, but are content with mattresses, nay with chaff or straw, and if not that to be had, they lye upon their cloaths, which in Summer they lay upon a bench, or table; in the Winter, upon their stoves, which are flat, as in *Livonia*. In this Country it is that Master and Mistres, Men and Maids, are shuffled all together into the same room; nay in some places in the Country, I have seen the Poultry, and the Pigs, had ordinarily the same Lodging with the Masters of the house. *Their house-keeping.*

They are not acquainted with our delicate meats and sawces. Their ordinary food is coarse Meal, Turneps, Coleworth, and Cowcubers, both fresh and pickled. Their great delicacy is Salt-fish, which being not well salted, infects the places near it, so that you may smell their Fish-market at a great distance. They cannot want Beef and Mutton, there being good pastures all over *Muscovy*, and the Forests breed such abundance of Swine, that they must needs be very cheap: but to avoid expence, as also for that their year hath more fasting dayes than flesh dayes, they are so accusom'd to Fish and Pulse, that they care not for flesh. Add to this, that their continual fasts have taught them so many wayes to dress their Fish, Herbs, and Pulse, that a man may well forbear those dishes of meat which are much esteemed elsewhere. We said, how that the Great Duke willing to entertain us from his own Table, sent us above forty dishes, most of Pulse and Herbs. Among other things they make a sort of Pies, which they call *Piroguen*, about the bigness and fashion of a twopenny Loaf. They fill the crust with Fish or minc'd meat, with Chibols and a little Pepper, and fry them in a Pan with Butter, and in Lent with Oil. 'Tis no ill dish, and may be called the *Bisque* of those parts. *Their feeding.*

The spawn of Fish, especially that of *Sturgeon*, they order thus. They take off the skin, very neatly, and then salt them. Having been in salt some eight or ten dayes, and by that means reduc'd as it were to a paste, they cut it into small slices, putting Onions and Pepper to them, and they are eaten with Oil and Vinegar like a Salad. It eats much better, if, instead of Vinegar, you put the juice of Citron. Yet to love this kind of Sallade, a man must be accusom'd to it, though they think it excites appetite and fortifies Nature. The *Muscovites* call it *Ikarry*, and the *Italians* *Cavaiar*. There is much of it eaten in *Italy* in the Lent time, instead of Butter. The best is made upon the *Wolgda*, and near *Astrachan*, whence it is transported in Tunns of 7. or 800. weight, by the way of *England* and *Holland*, into *Italy*. The Great Duke reserves the Trade of this Commodity to himself, farms it out, and makes a very great yearly advantage of it. To dispel the vapours rising up to the head, after excessive drinking, they take cold roasted Veal, mince it, not too small, with some pickled Cowcubers, adding thereto a sawce of Pepper, Vinegar, and the juice of pickled Cowcubers, and eat it with spoons. It recovers appetite, and tast well enough.

Their ordinary drink is a sort of small Beer which they call *Quas*, or Hydromel; but they never eat, without a dram of the Strong-water bottle before and after their meal. Persons of quality are furnish'd with strong Beer, Sack, and all other sorts of Wine. Their strong Beer is brew'd in *March*, and kept all Summer in their Snow-houses, where they make a bed of Ice and Snow mixt together, and then a layer of Barrels: upon them again a bed of Ice, and then

1636. then another row of Barrels, covering them with straw and planks, which are instead of a vault to them; for their Cellars are not covered.

*Hydromel how made.* The *Muscovites* care not much for *Rhenish* nor *French* Wines, thinking them not strong enough; but they love Hydromel, which they order with Cherries, Straw-berries, Mulberries, or Rasp-berries. That they make with Rasp-berries is the most pleasant of any. To make it well, they put the Rasp-berries a-soaking in fair water for two or three nights, till the water hath got their taste and colour. Into this water they put some of the purest Honey, allowing to every pound of Honey three or four of water, as they would have the Hydromel strong or small. They put into it a Toast dipp'd in the dreggs of Beer, which is taken out as soon as the Hydromel begins to work, lest, continu'd longer, it should give it an ill taste. If they desire it should be long a-working, they put it into some warm place; but if it be for present drinking, they put it in a cool place, where it soon gives over working, and then is taken off the Lees to be spent. To better the taste of it, they put in a little bag of Cinnamon, and grains of Paradise, with some few Cloves. Some instead of fair water, steep the Rasp-berries 24 hours in common Aquavite, which gives the Hydromel an excellent tast.

Common Hydromel is made of the Honey-combs, which they beat in warm-water, stirring it much, and after it hath rested seven or eight hours, they cleanse it through a Sieve, boyl it, scum it, and without any more ado expose it to sale.

*The expences of Persons of quality.* Persons of Quality discover themselves by their retinue and expence, which yet is not so great as might be imagin'd. For though they have sometimes 50. 60. or more Slaves about them, their itables well furnish'd, and make great feasts well supply'd with Meat, and all sorts of Beer, Wine, Hydromel, and Strong-water, yet all comes from their Country-houses and Dairies, so as that they buy but very little. Their entertainments are so many baits to draw in Presents, which they expect of those that are not of their own quality, in so much that they deerly buy the honour which the *Knez* and *Bojares* do them upon such occasions. Strange Merchants know well enough what that honour is to cost them, and desire it not, but to gain the favour of the Great ones, whose countenance they stand in need of. The *Weywodes* are sure to make two or three of these entertainments yearly in their Governments.

*The highest act of Muscovian civility.* The greatest honour a *Muscovite* thinks he can do his friend, is to let him see his Wife, to be presented with a Cup of Strong-water by her, and to permit he should kiss her. Count *Leo Alexander de Slakon* gave me to understand so much at my being in *Muscovy* in the year 1643. Having dined with him, he made me withdraw into another Chamber, where he told me, that he could not make a greater expression of the respects he had for me, nor a greater acknowledgment of the obligation he had to his Highness, than to shew me his Wife. She presently came in, very richly clad in her wedding-cloaths, and follow'd by a Gentlewoman with a bottle of Strong water and a Silver Cup. The Lady bid her fill out, and having put it to her mouth, presented it to me, and oblig'd me to drink it off; which I did thrice together. That done, the Count would have me kiss her, which I the more wondred at, in regard that kind of civility is not yet known in *Holstein*. Wherefore I would have contented my self to have kiss'd only her hand; but he so kindly engag'd me to kiss her lips, that there was no avoiding of it. She presented me a Handkercher, embroider'd at the extremities with Gold, Silver and Silk, with a deep fringe, such as are presented to the Bride on her Wedding day. Afterwards I found a note fasten'd to it, wherein was the name of *Stresnof*, Uncle by the Fathers side to the Great Dutchess.

The *Knez* and *Bojares* have not only pensions and considerable allowances, but also great real estates. Merchants and Trademen live by Commerce and their Trades. Those who may go out of the Country, and are permitted to Traffick into *Persia*, *Poland*, *Sueden*, and *Germany*, carry thither *Sables*; and other furs, flax, hemp, and *Russia*-leather.

Trademen find it not hard to gain a subsistence for their families, by reason of the plenty of all manner of Provisions. They are very handy, and easily imitate any thing they see done, though they are not so rich in inventions as the *Germans* and other *Europeans*; for I have seen some of their carv'd works as well done as the best in *Germany*; so that strangers who are not willing to have the secret of their professions discovered, must take heed of *Muscovites*, *John Valk*, whom we mention'd before, would never cast any thing in their presence. Now they cast pieces of Artillery themselves, and *Valk's* Disciple made a Bell, while we were there, which weigh'd 7700 *poules*, which amount to 3080 hundred weight. But it had not been long us'd ere it crack'd, and now 'tis broken to pieces, and another to be made of a far greater weight than the former.

*They sleep after Dinner.* No *Muscovite*, what condition or quality soever he be of, but sleeps after Dinner; whence it is that about noon most shops are shut up, and the Merchants or their Apprentices sleeping at the door: so that about that time, there is no more speaking with Persons of Quality or Merchants, than there is at midnight.

This was one sign whereby they discovered the imposture of the counterfeit *Demetrius*. We shall find in the ensuing story of him, that the Impostor slept not after Dinner, and that the

*Mus-*

*Muscovites* infer'd thence that he was a stranger; as also by his averſion to Baths, which are ſo common in *Muscovy*, that there is neither Town nor Village, but hath very many of them, both publick and private. This is all they have gentile among them, as a thing they conceive neceſſary upon ſeveral occaſions, eſpecially at *Marriages*. after the firſt Coition. 1636.

At *Aſtrachan*, I had the curioſity to go unknown into one of them, which by a diviſion of boards was contriv'd into two rooms. But, beſides that it was eaſie to look out of one into the other, by reaſon of the diſtance there was between the boards, both men and women went in and out at the ſame door, thoſe of either Sex who would expreſs a greater modeſty hiding what they would not have ſeen with a handful of leaves, which being dry'd in Summer, they, for this purpoſe put a-foking into warm water: but ſome were ſtark naked, and the women were not ſhy to come in that poſture and ſpeak with their husbands, even while other men ſtood by. *Their ſtoves and bathing places.*

'Tis almoſt a Miracle to ſee how their bodies, accuſtomed to, and hardned by cold, can endure ſo intenze a heat, and how that, when they are not able to endure it any longer, they come out of the ſtoves, naked as the back of a man's hand, both men and women, and go into the cold water, or cauſe it to be poured upon them, and, in Winter, how they wallow in the Snow. Some of our young men would often walk before theſe publick ſtoves, to ſee the ſeveral poſtures of the women that came out, and diverted themſelves in the water, and were ſo far from being aſham'd, that they would talk wantonly with them, and were not troubled when any of our people came into the water to them. And this we ſaw not only in *Muscovy*, but alſo in *Livonia*, where the Inhabitants, eſpecially the *Finlanders*, who are ſetled there, going out of theſe ſtoves, in the coldeſt of Winter, run into the Snow, and rub their bodies with it, as if it were Soap, then return into the ſtoves to take the advantage of a more moderate heat: and all this ſo as that this change of contrary qualities does not any way prejudice their health. The reaſon then of it muſt be Cuſtom, in as much as being thus uſed from their Childhood, and that habit being as it were converted into a ſecond nature, they are indifferently enured to both heat and cold.

At *Narva* we had *Muscovian* boys of about 8, 9, or 10. years of age, whom we employ'd about the Kitchin. Theſe would ſtand half an hour together barefoot upon the Ice, like ſo many Geefe, in the depth of Winter, and never complain of cold. The ſtoves belonging to the *Germans*, who live in *Muscovy* and *Livonia*, ate very ſumptuous, and it is no leſs pleaſant bathing in them. The floor is ſtrew'd with Pine leaves beaten to powder, all ſorts of Herbs and Flowers, which raiſe a very ſweet ſmell, as alſo the Ly which they make very odoriferous. Along the Walls are ſeats, or benches, upon which a man lies to ſweat and be rubb'd, ſome higher than others, that one may take ſuch a degree of heat as he pleaſes, and they are all cover'd with clean ſheers, and pillows fill'd with Hay. Every one hath a Servant-maid, who having only her ſmock on, rubs, waſhes, and wipes him, and what elſe is requiſite. As ſhe comes in, ſhe preſents you on a Trencher, with ſome Radish ſlic'd, with a little Salt, and if you are known in the houſe, the Miſtreſs her ſelf or her Daughter will preſent you with a certain compoſition, conſiſting of Wine and Beer, in which will be ſome bread crum'd, Citron ſliced, Sugar and Nutmeg. When this civility is omitted, it argues the Maſter of the houſe hath no great reſpect for his Gueſt. After bathing a man is put into a bed, then riſes to eat ſomething, and having eaten goes to bed again to ſleep.

The *Muscovites* are of a healthy and ſtrong conſtitution, long liv'd, and ſeldom ſick; which when they are, their ordinary remedies, even in burning Feavers, is only Garlick and Strong-waters. Perſons of quality make uſe of Phyſicians, though but within theſe few years, and are perſwaded that remedies may do them good.

Fornication is very common among them, and yet they permit not publick ſtews, which divers other *Chriſtian* Princes not only permit, but authorize, and have an advantage ariſing out of them for their protection. Marriage is thought honourable among them, and Polygamy forbidden. A Widdower or Widdow may Marry twice or thrice, but muſt not offer at a fourth Marriage, which if they ſhould, the Prieſt that ſhould bleſs them would be caſt off.

They obſerve in their Marriages the degrees of Conſanguinity, and do not willingly marry ſuch as are near to them either by Kinred or Alliance. Nor do they permit two Brothers to marry two Siſters; and they obſerve alſo a ſpiritual Alliance, not ſuffering that Godfathers and Godmothers to the ſame perſon ſhould intermarry. The celebration of Marriage among them is thus.

Young Men and Maids are not ſuffer'd to ſee one another, much leſs to have any diſcourſe of marriage, or to make any promiſe one to another, by word or writing. But when thoſe who have Children marriageable, eſpecially daughters, have found out a match they like, they ſpeak to the young mans Parents, and declare the deſire they have to make an Alliance with them. If they approve of what is propoſed, and the young man deſire to ſee the maid, yet is it abſolutely deny'd. If ſhe be handſome, they will be content the maſter or ſome other woman of the

1636. kinred, should see her, and if she be no way defective; that is, neither blind nor lame, the friends on both sides treat about the marriage, and conclude all things, the intended young couple not so much as being allow'd to see one another. For they bring up their daughters in very private Chambers (especially persons of quality) where they keep them lock'd up, so as that the Bridegroom does not see his Bride till she is brought into his Chamber. And thus it comes to pass, that he who thinks he hath married a handsome Maid, hath some crooked piece put upon him; nay, instead of the Mans Daughter he was to have, some kinswoman or servant-maid is thrust upon him; of which I have several examples. So that it is not to be wondred at, that matrimonial discontents are so frequent among them.

The nuptial bed.

When their Great Lords, *Knez*, and *Bojares* dispose of their Children in marriage, there is appointed on the Bride-groom's side a Woman, whom they call *Suacha*, and another on the Brides, who joyntly take order for the Nuptials. That on the Brides part, goes upon the Wedding-day to the Bridegroom's Lodgings, and there makes ready the Nuptial bed. She is attended by above a hundred men servants, who are all clad in Hongrelines, or long Coats, and carry on their heads, the things necessary for the Bed and Chamber, where the new Married couple are to lye. The Bed is made upon forty sheaves of Rye, which the young man causes to be rank'd in order, and compass'd about with several Barrels full of Wheat, Barley, and Oats.

All things being ready, the young man goes from his own house late in the evening, accompany'd by all his Kinred, having before him, on horse-back, the Priest, by whom he is to be married. At his Bride's door, he meets with all her friends, who receive him and his retinue, and press them to sit down at a Table. Three dishes of meat are serv'd up, but no body eats of them, and there is left at the upper end of the Table a place for the Bridegroom: but while he is talking with the Bride's friends, a young Lad sits down in it, and will not be gotten thence till the Bridegroom hath made him so many Presents, that he is content to give him the place. The Bridegroom having taken his place, the Bride is brought in most richly Clad, having a Veil over her face. She is seated by the Bridegroom, but to prevent their seeing one another, they are separated by a piece of Crimson Taffata, which is held up by two young Lads while they are set. This done, the Bride's *Suacha* comes to her, Paints her, tyes up her hair in two knots, puts the Crown on her head, and dresses her in all things like a married woman. The Crown is of leaves of Gold, or Silver Gilt, beaten very thin, lined with some silk stuff, and towards the Ears, it hath five or six rows of great Pearls, which fall down on her breast. The Robe, or upper Garment, the sleeves whereof are an Ell and a half wide, is embroider'd with Gold and Pearls at the extremities, especially at the neck, which is three fingers broad, and so heightned with Embroidery, that it looks more like a Dogs Collar than any thing else, and this kind of Robe amounts to above a thousand Crowns. The heels of their shooes, as well of those that are betroath'd, as of most of the other women and maids, are above half a foot high, so that being as it were a-tip-toe, they have much ado to stand. The other *Suacha* Paints the Bridegroom, and in the mean time, the women get up on benches and sing several foolish songs. After this come in two young men richly Clad, carrying between them upon a Beer a very large Cheefe, and some Loaves, there hanging from the Beer several Martins skins. The like is brought in on the Bride's part, and the Priest, having blessed them, sends them to Church. At last there is set on the Table a great Silver-basin, fill'd with little pieces of Satin and Taffata, about such a bigness as were fit to make little purses of, little square pieces of Silver, Hops, Barley, and Oats; all mixt together. The *Suacha* having cover'd the Brides face again, takes certain handfuls out of the Basin, and casts them among the company, who in the mean time sing a song, and take up what they find upon the ground.

The Ceremonies in the Church.

In the Church, where the Benediction is to be given, they cover some part of the floor with Crimson Taffata, upon which the young Couple stand, having over them another piece of the same stuff. Before they are married, the Priest makes them go to the offering, which consists in Fish, Fry'd Meats, and Pastry. That done, the married receive the Benediction, which is given by holding Images over their heads, and the Priest taking the man by the right hand, and the woman by the left at the same time, asks them three times, whether it is with their consent that they are married, and whether they will love one another as they ought to do. Having both answer'd, yes, all the Company joyn hands, and the Priest sings the 128. Psalm, he one verse, and the Company the next, dancing at the mean time, much after the same manner as they do in these parts, who sing and dance at the same time. The Psalm ended, he puts a Garland of Rue upon their heads, or about their shoulders, if it be a Widdow or Widdower, saying, *Increase and Multiply*, and then consummates the marriage, pronouncing these words, *Whom God hath joyned together let no man separate*. While the Priest pronounces those words, those who are invited to the Wedding do all light wax candles, and one of them gives the Priest, a wooden Cup, or rather a Glass, full of Claret Wine which he takes off, and when the Married Couple have pledg'd him by drinking it off, each of them three times, the Bridegroom throws down the Cup or Glass, and he and the Bride treading it under their feet, break it to pieces,

pieces, with these words, *May they thus fall at our feet, and be trod to pieces, who shall endeavour to sow division or discontent between us.* Then the Women cast at the young Couple some Flax-seed and Hemp-seed, and wish them all prosperity. They also pull the Bride by the Robe, as if they would force her away from her husband, but she keeps so close to him, that all their endeavours prove fruitless. The Marriage-Ceremonies being thus over, the Bride is put into her Sledge, which is encompass'd with six Torches, or Wax-candles, and the Bridegroom gets on horse-back to return to his own house, where the Wedding is kept. 1636

As soon as they are come thither, the Bridegroom, his kindred and friends sit down at a Table well furnish'd with Meat, but the Women carry the Bride to her Chamber, take off her cloaths, and lay her a-bed. That done, they make the Bridegroom rise from the Table, and six or eight young men, carrying each a Torch in his hand, conduct him to the Chamber. As they come in, they put the Torches into the barrels full of Wheat and Barley, and quit the room. They are each of them presented with two Martins skins. The Bride perceiving the Bridegroom coming, gets out of bed, gets on a morning Gown lin'd with Martins skins, meets him, and receives him very submissively, doing him reverence with a low inclination of the head; and this is the first time that he sees the Bride's face. They sit down together at a Table, and, among other Meat, there is brought them a roasted fowl, which the Bridegroom pulls asunder, casting away over his shoulders that part which comes off first, whether it be wing or leg, and eating the other. Having eaten, the young Couple go to bed, and all withdraw, save only one of the old servants of the house, who walks before the Chamber-door, while the kindred and friends are busied about all manner of charms, which they think may be advantageous to the New-married Couple.

This servant coming ever and anon to the door, asks whether the business be done. As soon as the Bridegroom answers that it is, the Trumpets and Timbrels which only expect the word, are plaid upon, and make an excellent noise, till such time as the stoves are made ready, where the New-married-couple bath themselves, but apart. They are wash'd with water, Hydromel and Wine, and the Bride sends to the Bridegroom a shirt, embroider'd with Gold and Pearls at the collar and extremities, and a rich habit. The two next dayes are spent in entertainments, dancing, and other divertisements, the Women making their advantage of the opportunity, while their husbands are drunk, to the loss of their honours.

Citizens, and persons of meaner condition are married with less Ceremonie. The night before the Wedding the young Man sends to his intended Bride some cloaths, a furr'd Coif, a pair of Buskins, a Cabinet with certain Jewels, a Bag for night cloaths, a Comb and a Looking-glass. The next day, the Priest is sent for, who comes with a little Silver Cross, and is brought in by two young Lads carrying Wax-candles lighted. As he enters the house, he gives the benediction with his Cross, first, to the two Lads, then to those that are invited. Then the young Couple are set at Table, the two Lads holding a piece of Taffata between them; but when the *Suacha* dresses the Brides head, a Looking-glass is brought, and the young Couple joyning their cheeks, look and smile one upon the other. The two *Suacha's* in the mean time cast hops upon them; which done, they are led to Church, where the Ceremonies are the same as for persons of quality.

As soon as the Wedding is over, the Women must resolve to live a retir'd life, and not go out of the house but very seldom, receiving the visits of their kindred and friends oftener than they give any. The Daughters of great Persons, and rich Merchants, as they are not much brought up to house-keeping, so they trouble themselves but little with it, when they are married. Their chief employment is sowing, or embroidering handkerchers of white Taffata, or cloath, or making little purses, or some such toies. The cloaths they wear within doors are made of some common stuff of little value; but when they go to Church, or that their Husbands would honour a friend with their presence, they are magnificently clad, and forget not to paint their faces, necks, and arms. *How the Women live.*

The Wives of the *Knez*, *Bojares*, and great Lords, in the Summer time, make use of Chariots cover'd with red cloath, which kind of covering they use in Winter for their Sledges, having at their feet a she Slave, and about them a great number of Servants and Lacquies, sometimes to the number of 30. or 40. The horse, which draws them, hath many Fox tails about the main and tail, which disguise him after a strange manner; and yet the *Muscovits* think it so ornamental, that not only Great Lords and Ladies make use of it, but many times the Great Duke himself, with this difference, that instead of Fox tails, they some times use Martins skins.

The Women living thus idly, making few or no visits, and not meddling with any thing of housewifery, are forc'd to divert themselves with their Maids. They lay a long plank over a block, and getting up on the ends of it, they are toss'd up and down, and sometimes by a violent motion they are forc'd up very high in the Air. They have also ropes to swing in, nay in some little Towns and Villages I have seen publick Swinging-places, so contriv'd as that three or four might have their divertisement at the same time. They are not asham'd to do this

1636. this in the open streets, giving two or three pence to little Boys who keep Swingers ready for that purpose. Their husbands are very glad to give them this kind of sport, and sometimes help them in their swinging.

Why the  
Muscovites  
beat  
their wives

It is not to be much wondred that they are so hardly treated by their husbands, for they have lewd tongues, are given to Wine, and will not let slip the opportunity to pleasure a friend. So that having all these three excellent qualities, they cannot take much unkindly the cudgelings, which they from time to time receive from their husbands: but they take comfort from the example of their friends and neighbours, who, behaving themselves after the same manner, are accordingly no better treated. Yet can I not believe, what *Barclay* says in his *Icon Ammorum*, That the *Muscovian* Women are not perswaded their husbands love them, if they are not beaten by them; at least I can say this, I never met with any who were glad when they were beaten. They have the same passions and inclinations as other Women have. They are sensible of good and bad usage, and it is not likely they should take the effects of anger and displeasure for expressions of kindness and friendship.

It is possible some foolish Woman might tell her husband so in jest, or that one distracted might desire to be beaten, such as she of whom *Petrejus*, in his Chronicle of *Muscovy*, speaks of, who having lived many years in good correspondence with her husband (who was an *Italian*, as he says, though the Baron of *Haberstein* affirms he was a *German*, and by profession, a Black-smith, named *Jordan*) told him one day, that she could not believe he loved her, since he had not yet beaten her. The husband willing to assure her of his real affection gave her a good cudgelling, and perceiving she took a certain pleasure in it, made use of that exercise so often, till at last she died. But were it granted that this is but a story, as it seems to be no other, yet ought we not to judge of all the *Muscovian* women by this particular example.

Adultery.

They think, that Adultery is not committed but when one man marries another mans wife: what ever else may be done amounts but to fornication, and when a married man is taken in it, his punishment is whipping, and some days imprisonment, or haply he is sentenc'd to live some time on bread and water. Then he is set at liberty, and may resent the complaints made by his wife against him upon that occasion. A husband who can convince his wife of a miscarriage of this nature, may have her shav'd, and put into a Monastery. Those who are weary of their wives, often make use of this pretence, accuse their wives of Adultery, and suborn false witnesses, upon whose depositions they are condemn'd, without being heard. Religious Women are sent to her lodgings, who put her into their habit, shave her, and carry her away by force into the Monastery, whence she never comes out, having once suffer'd the Razour to come upon her head.

The most ordinary cause of divorce; at least the most plausible pretence, is *devotion*. They say, they love God better than their wives, when an humour takes them to go into a Monastery: which they do without their consent, or making any provision for the children they have had between them. And yet this kind of retiring out of the World is so much approv'd among them, (though *St. Paul* says that such are worse than Heathens and Infidels) that if the woman marry again, they make no difficulty to conferr Priesthood on this new Profelite, though before he had been but a Tayler, or Shoemaker. Barrenness is also another cause of divorce in *Muscovy*: for he who hath no children by his wife may put her into a Monastery, and marry again within six weeks.

The Great Dukes themselves make use of this freedom, when they have only Daughters. 'Tis true, the Great Duke *Basili* did not put his Wife *Salome* into a Monastery, and marry *Helene*, daughter to *Michael Linski*, a *Polander*, but upon his having no Children one and twenty years after marriage; but it is also true; that, some few days after, she was brought to bed of a Son, and yet she was forc'd to continue there, because she had been shaved.

We saw an example of it in a *Polander*, who, having embrac'd the *Greek* Religion, purposely to marry a *Muscovian* beauty, was forc'd to take a journey into *Poland*, where he stay'd above a year. The young Lady, in her husband's absence, made a shift to be otherwise supply'd, so effectually that she augmented her family by a child; but, fearing her husband's displeasure, she retir'd into a Monastery and was shaved. The husband did all he could to get her out again, promising to pardon her offence, and never to reproach her with it. The woman was willing to come out, but would not be permitted, it being, according to their Theology, a sinne against the Holy Ghost, not to be forgiven either in this World or the next. This artifice *Boris Federovits Gudenou* made use of, who, having acquired much repute in the management of the publick affairs, during the minority of *Fædor Juanovits*, and perceiving the *Muscovites* were not fully resolv'd to make him Great Duke, to make them the more earnest to do it, pretended he would turn Monk, and went into a Monastery, where his Sister was a Nun. As soon as the *Muscovites* heard of it, they came in multitudes to the Monastery, cast themselves upon the ground, tore their hair, as being in a desperate condition, intreated him not to be shaven, and that he would be pleas'd to take the place of their deceased Prince. He, at first, would not hearken to them, but at last pretended himself overcome by their intreaties, and his Sister's inter-

intercession, by which means he came to be courted, to what he had not haply got otherwise, 1636; with all the subtlety he could have used.

The *Muscovites* are extremely venereous, yet will not have to do with a Woman, but they must first take off the little Cross which is hang'd about her neck when she is Christened: nor would they do it in a place where there are any Images of their Saints, till they had covered them. They go not to Church the day they have dealt with a Woman, till they have wash'd themselves, and chang'd their shirts. Those that are more devout go not into it at all, but say their prayers at the door. Priests are permitted to come into the Church the same day, provided they have wash'd themselves above and below the navil, but dare not approach the Altar. The women are accompted more impure than the men, and therefore they ordinarily stay at the Church-door all service time. He who lies with his wife in Lent may not Communicate that year; and if a Priest commit that offence, he is suspended for a year: but if one that pretends to Priesthood be so unhappy as to fall into it, he can never recover himself, but must quit his pretension.

Their remedy against this kind of uncleanness is rather bathing than repentance, which is the reason they use the former upon all occasions. *Demetrius*, who personated the son of the Great Duke *John Basilonits*, who had been kill'd long before at *Uglits*, never bath'd himself, upon which the *Muscovites* suspected him to be a stranger. For perceiving he would not make use of a bath made ready for him eight dayes after his marriage, they conceiv'd a horror against him, as a Heathen and profane person, sought divers other pretences, set upon him in the Castle, and kill'd him the 19. day after his Wedding, as we shall shew hereafter.

The politick Government of *Muscovy* is *Monarchical* and *despoticall*. The Great Duke is the hereditary Sovereign of it, and so absolute, that no *Knez* or Lord in all his Dominions, but thinks it an honour to assume the quality of his Majesties *Golop*, or slave. No Master hath more power over his slaves, than the Great Duke hath over his Subjects, what condition or quality soever they be of. So that *Muscovy* may be numbred among those States, whereof *Aristotle* speaks, when he sayes there is a kind of *Monarchy* among the Barbarians which comes near *Tyranny*. For since there is no other difference between a legitimate Government and *Tyranny*, than that, in the one, the welfare of the Subjects is of greatest consideration, in the other, the particular profit and advantage of the Prince, we must allow, that *Muscovy* inclines much to *Tyranny*. We said before, that the greatest Lords think it not below them to put their names in the diminutive; nor is it long since that for a small matter, they were whipt, like slaves, but now their lesser miscarriages are punish'd with two or three dayes imprisonment.

They give their Sovereign the quality of *Welikoi Knez*, that is Great Lord, as also that of *The true Czaar*, and his *Czaarick Majesty*. Since the *Muscovites* came to understand, that we call him *significati- Kayser*, who is the most eminent among the *Christian* Princes of *Europe*, and that that word comes from his proper name; who turn'd the *Popular* state of *Rome* into a *Monarchy*, they would have it believ'd, that their word *Czaar*, hath the same signification and etymologie. Whence it is that they would also imitate the Emperours of *Germany* in their great seal, which had a Spread-Eagle, but the wings not so large as the Imperial Eagle's, having on the breast, in an Escutcheon, one on horse-back fighting with a Dragon, representing the Archangel *St. Michael*, or rather *St. George*. The three Crowns, which are above and between the Eagle's heads, signify *Muscovy*, and the two Kingdoms of *Tartary*, *Cassan*, and *Astrachan*. The Tyrant *John Basilonits* first used these Arms, as willing to be thought descended from the antient *Roman* Emperours. The Great Dukes Interpreters, and the *Germans*, who live at *Moscow*, call him in their language *Kaysar*, that is to say, *Cesar* or Emperour. But it is certain, the word *Czaar* signifies *King*, which may be seen in their Bible, where the *Muscovites*, speaking of *David* and his Successors, Kings of *Judah*, and *Israel*, they call them *Czaars*. The Great Duke is indeed King in effect, since other Princes stick not to treat him with the word *Majesty*; the title of Great Duke being much below what that great Prince deserves. Nor accordingly does he take the quality of Great Duke, when he assumes that of *Welikoi Knez*, but that of *Grand Seigneur*, as well as the Emperour of the *Turks*, with whom he may be parallel'd, not only in respect of the extent of his Empire, but also by reason of the absolute power he hath over his Subjects.

No people in the World have a greater veneration for their Prince than the *Muscovites*, who from their infancy are taught to speak of the *Czaar*, as of God himself, not only in their acts and publick assemblies, but also in their entertainments and ordinary discourse. Thence proceed their submissive forms of speaking, *The honour to see the brightness of the eyes of his Czaarick Majesty*; *Only God and the Czaar knows it*; *All they have belong to God and the Czaar*. The Great Duke *John Basilonits* reduc'd them to these submissions.

Now to continue them in this lowness of spirit, and to keep them from seeing that liberty which other Nations about them enjoy, the *Muscovites* are, upon pain of death, prohibited to go out of the Countrey, without the Great Duke's express permission. *John Helmes*, the Great Duke's Interpreter, who died some three years since, aged 97. years, had got leave to

send

1636. send his son into *Germany*, to study *Physick*, where he afterwards grew famous: but the young Gentleman having spent 10. or 12. years up and down *Germany* and *England*, pleas'd with the sweetness of the climate and liberty, would never return into *Muscovy*. Whence it came, that, when *Peter Miklaf*, a Merchant of *Novogorod*, whom the Great Duke sent into *Germany*, 3 years since, in the quality of *Poslanick*, desired his Majesty would permit him to leave his son in *Germany*, neither the *Czaar*, nor Patriarch, would by any means consent thereto. But indeed, this despotical Government seems to be most suitable to their humour and disposition, which is insensible of the advantages of Liberty, as being unacquainted with it, and so not fit to enjoy a happiness, which they never heard of.

Yet are we not to attribute to the present time what may be read in the Baron of *Heberstein*, *Paulus Fovius* and *Guagnin*, concerning the violent and tyrannical Government of the Great Duke: for they writ during the reign of *John Basilovits*, whose Scepter was of Iron, and his Government more cruel and violent than that of any Prince mentioned in History. But the Great Duke that now is, is a very mild Prince, one that, according to his Father's example, instead of impoverishing his Subjects, relieves them, and allows sums of money out of his Exchequer, to set up those whom a bad year, or some other misfortune hath ruin'd. Nay, he hath the goodness to provide for such as are banish'd into *Siberia* for their Crimes, allowing to persons of quality, money; finding employment for those that are capable of it; and disposing Soldiers into some place where they have Pensions or ordinary pay during life. So that what is most insupportable to them, when they are out of favour, is, that they have not the honour to see the bright eyes of his Czaarick Majesty. For, were it not for that, this is become so mild a punishment, that many have, in their exile, got that wealth, which they could not have hoped before.

*The Great Dukes absolute power.* When we said the state of *Muscovy* was *Monarchical*; we presuppose that the Prince is a *Monarch*, and hath, alone, all the prerogatives of Sovereignty. He is not subject to the Laws, he only makes them, and all the *Muscovites* obey him, with so great submission, that they are so far from opposing his will, that they say, the Justice and word of their Prince is sacred and inviolable.

He only creates Magistrates, and deposes them, ejects them, and orders them to be punish'd, with such absolute power, that we may say of the Great Duke, what the Prophet *Daniel* says, of the King of *Babylon*, That, *he put to death whom he would, and saved whom he would*. He appoints Governours and Lieutenants for the Provinces, for the disposal of the antient Demesne, and Administration of Justice, who have, joyned with them, a *Deak*, or Secretary: and these take Cognizance of all matters, give final and absolute judgement in all causes, and cause their sentences to be put in execution, without any appeal.

*Changes the Governours of Provinces every three years.* And in this the Great Duke follows the advice of the best Politicians, who are so far from allowing a survivancy in Governments, that they would have a Sovereign, (that it might be in his power to punish the miscarriages committed by great ones in their Governments, and prevent their making intrigues to settle themselves in the Provinces) to change the Governours from three years to three years.

He alone hath the power to make War and Peace with other Princes. For though he takes the advice of his *Knez* and *Bojares*, yet does he not always follow it, but makes them know, that notwithstanding the freedom he gives them to advise him, he reserves to himself the power of doing what he thinks fit.

He only confers Honours, and rewards the services that are done him with the qualities of *Knez*, *Bojares*, Dukes or Princes; and whereas the *Muscovites* have heard, that it is a mark of Sovereignty in *Germany*, to make Doctors, the Great Duke meddles with that also, and grants Letters Patents to Physicians and Surgeons, that are Strangers.

*The Money of Muscovy.* All the Great Duke's Money, who only hath the power to make any, is of Silver, of an oval form, and little. The greatest piece is worth but a penny, and is called a *Copeck*, or *Denang*. For though, in trading, the *Muscovites* use the words, *Altin*, *Grif*, and *Rouble*, whereof the first is worth three; the second, ten; the third, a hundred *Copecks*, yet is there no Coins of that kind, the words being used only for the convenience of Commerce, to avoid the multiplication of *Copecks*. The *Poluske* is worth half, the *Mustofske*, the fourth part of a *Copeck*. This small money, which is also of Silver, is so troublesome in the telling and handling, that the *Muscovites* put handfuls of it into their mouths, for fear of losing it, but so as it no way hinders their speech. All their Money is marked at the same corner, having on one side the Arms of *Muscovy*, of which we have spoken upon occasion of their Great Seal, which Armes were heretofore peculiar only to the City of *Novogorod*, and on the other the Great Duke's name then reigning, and that of the City where it was coined. There are but four Cities in all *Muscovy* where money is coined, *Moscou*, *Novogorod*, *Tuere*, and *Plescou*: The Great Duke farming out the Mint to the Merchants of those places. *Rixdollers* are current in *Muscovy*, but in regard two Dollers outweigh a hundred *Copecks*, by two drams, the *Muscovites* know how to make their advantage of it, and so carry them to the Mint, as they do also *Spanish Reals*.

The



The *Rixdollers* they call *Fafimske*, from the modern Latine word *Foachimicus*, which name hath been given that money, as well by reason of the effigies of St. *Foachim*, heretofore stamped upon it, as of the City of *Faachimstad*, in *Bohemia*, where it was first coined, in the year 1519. The Great Duke coins no Gold, unless it be, that to perpetuate the memory of some great advantage gain'd against his enemies, he hath some Medals cast, to be afterwards presented to Officers that are Strangers, or to be scattered among the Souldiers of the victorious Army.

He only levies Taxes and impositions, and regulates them according to his pleasure, so that he takes five in the hundred upon all Merchandizes, upon the Frontiers of his Dominions, both coming and going out.

It is his prerogative to send Ambassadors, to the *Emperour*, the Kings of *Poland*, *Denmark*, *Muscoviat Sueden*, and other Princes his Neighbours. These Ministers are either *Welikoi Pofol*, Grand Courriers, or *Poslanicks*, Envoys. Heretofore, especially in the time of *John Basilouits*, they treated Strangers, even the publick Ministers of Princes, with much disrespect; but now it is otherwise. Ambassadors are entertain'd with great civility; and their charges defray'd from the day of their entrance into the Great Duke's Dominions, to that of their departure thence; they are treated at great feasts, and have very rich Presents bestow'd on them. Whence it comes, that other *European* Princes make no difficulty to send their Ambassadors thither, nay some have their ordinary Residents there, as the Kings of *England* and *Sueden*. All the Presents made by the Great Duke consist in Furrs, and he never sends any solemn Embassy, but it carries such as are very considerable for the Prince to whom it is sent. Those which the Great Duke *Fædor Juanouits* sent, in the year 1595. to the *Emperour Rodolph II.* were very remarkable, which amounted to above a Million of Livers, or 100000. sterl. viz. onethousand and three *Zimmers* (which we have said elsewhere, makes twenty pair, and in worth about 100. Crowns in *Muscovy*) of Sables, five hundred and nineteen *Zimmers* of ordinary Martins, six-score black-Fox-skins, three hundred thirty seven thousand ordinary Fox-skins, three thousand Beavers, a thousand Wolf-skins, and sixty four Elk's-skins. The *Poslanicks* make no Present from the Great Duke, but upon their own account they do, as baits to draw in others, and if they are not given them, they will have the boldness to ask for them. They defray foreign Ambassadors, not only as to provisions, but also provide for the carriage of them, and what ever they bring; and there are upon the Road appointed stages for the accommodation of their travelling, where the Peasants are oblig'd to be ready with a certain number of Horses, and to come upon the first order sent them. Nor is this done with any grievance to those Peasants; for besides a salary of 60 Crowns *per an.* duly paid them, they have land enough allow'd them for their subsistence. They are freed from Taxes, and all other Charges, and have the allowance of some *Altins* every journey they make. By this means we travell'd from *Novogorod* to *Moscou*, above 120. *German* leagues, in six or seven days, and in the Winter in four or five. 'Tis true, the Houses where the Ambassadors are lodg'd, are so poorly furnish'd, that unless a man will be content to ly on the ground or upon a bench, he must bring a Bed with him: but the *Muscovites* themselves are no better accomodated. Heretofore they shut up the Ambassadors and their retinue in their lodgings, kept them in as Prisoners, and set Sentinels at the door to hinder them from coming out; or if they permitted some of their people to goe abroad into the City, they were accompany'd by *Srrelits*, who observed all their actions: but now they are kept in only till the first Audience, and in the mean they are visited and entertain'd by two *Pristafs*, whose office it is, to see them supply'd with all things necessary. These take occasion to ask the Ambassadors, what the design of their Embassy is, as also to inform themselves whether they have any Presents for the Great Duke, and in what they consist, not forgetting to ask whether they have also any for them. As soon as the Ambassadors have delivered in their Presents, the Great Duke causes them to be valu'd by persons that know their worth. Heretofore, the Ambassadors were entertain'd, after their first publick Audience, in the Great Duke's Chamber, at his own Table; but some years since this custom was abolish'd, and they send, to their Lodgings, the Meat design'd for their treatment. All Ambassadors who bring Presents thither, receive others for themselves and their retinue; nay they give Presents to Gentlemen who come thither as Envoys, and to all those that bring but so much as a Letter from a foreign Prince. To make a fuller discovery of the Political Government of *Muscovy*, it will not be much from our purpose, by a short digression, to give an account of what hath pass'd there within this three hundred years.

The Great Duke *John Basilouits*, Son of *Basili*, came to the Crown very young, in the year 1540. No History of his time, but speak of his Wars, and the un-heard of cruelties exercis'd by him on all sorts of persons, through his whole reign. They are so horrid, that never any other Tyrant did the like; so that *Paulus Fovius*, a Bishop, might have forborn giving him that noble quality, of a *Good and Devout Christian*; since that it may, without any injury to him, be said, he deserves not to be numbred even among Men. 'Tis true, he would go often to Church, say the Service himself, sing, and be present at Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, and

1636. execute the Functions of Monks and Priests: but he abus'd both God and Men, and had not sentiments of humanity, so far was he from having any of piety. He had seven lawful wives, and by the first, two sons, *Juan* and *Fædor*, that is, *John* and *Theodore*. Being once very angry with the elder, he struck him over the head with a staff hoop'd with iron at the end, so as that within five days after he died of it. He had by the last, *Demetrius*, and dy'd the 28 of *March* 1584. feeling at his death some part of those afflictions, which an infinite number of innocent persons had suffered through his means.

*Fædor Juanovits*, now eldest by his Brother's death, was crown'd the last of *July*, the same year. He was 22 years of age when he succeeded his Father, but had so little understanding, that, being not fit for affairs, the administration thereof, with the Regency of the whole Kingdom was conferr'd on *Boris Gudenou*, High-Steward of *Muscovy*, and Brother in law to the Great Duke. *Salomon Henning*, in his Chronicle of *Livonia*, says, that this *Fædor* was so simple, that he could find himself no greater divertisement than tolling of the Bells before Service.

On the contrary, *Boris Gudenou* knew so well how to answer the good opinion conceived of him, and to insinuate himself into the affection of the people, that some stuck not to say, that if God should be pleas'd to dispose otherwise of the two hereditary Princes, it was not to be doubred, but they would call in him, who gave so many demonstrations of an excellent conduct. During the regency, *Boris*, perceiving that *Demetrius* was the more likely to stand in his way, resolv'd to remove him out of it. This young Prince was but nine years old, brought up in the City of *Uglits*, whither a Gentleman belonging to *Boris* went, and kill'd him with his own hands. But instead of receiving the great reward he expected for his pains, *Boris* caus'd him and all the Complices to be kill'd as soon as they were return'd to *Moscou*. By this execution of the Murtherers, he, for some time, kept undiscovered the true Author of the murther: but, to prevent the people from conceiving him any way engag'd in it, by giving them a greater cause of affliction, he caus'd several houses to be set a-fire, and so consum'd a great part of the City; while, on the other side, he ordered the Castle of *Uglits* to be demolish'd, and banish'd the Inhabitants, as if they had countenanc'd the murther, and sheltred the murtherers. The weakness of *Fædor Juanovits*, sensible, though of nothing else, yet of his own weakness, left the management of all affairs, to *Boris*, who was in effect what the other had only the name and appearance of, yet did he not think it fit to be over-forward, but let some years pass on, after which, *Fædor* fell suddenly sick, in the year 1597. and died without children, having reigned twelve years.

*Boris Gudenou.*

*Boris* was presently look'd upon. He, to divert the popular jealousy, was so crafty, as, in appearance, to refuse the Royal Dignity, and, as we have said before, to fly into a Monastery, while his Election to the Dukedom was, according to his secret instructions, press'd by some friends, by whose opportunity he seem'd to be overcome, and to accept the Crown.

In the reign of *Boris* happened a very remarkable thing, through the imposture of a *Muscovian* Monk, named *Griska Utropoja*, born at *Gereflau*, of a Noble house, but not very rich, one that had been thrust into a Monastery for his debauches, and lew'd life. He was a very handsome person, and had an excellent Wit, which qualities an old Monk of the same Monastery made his advantage of, to put this Impostor into the World, and advance him to the Throne. The better to carry on his design, he made him leave the Monastery, and go into *Lithuania*, where he was entertain'd by a Great Lord, named *Adam Wesnewetski*, into whose favour he in a short insinuated himself, by his ingenuity, and the constancy of his services. One day his Master being angry with him, call'd him *Bledinsin*, or Son of a Whore, and struck him. *Griska* making his advantage of that disgrace, fell a weeping, and told his Master, that if he knew who he was, he would not call him Son of a Whore, nor treat him in that manner. The curiosity of the *Polish* Lord was so great, as to press *Greska* to tell him who he was. The Impostor made answer, that he was lawful Son to the Great Duke *John Basilovits*, that *Boris Gudenou* would have murther'd him, but the misfortune fell upon a Priest's Son very like him, whom his friends had substituted in his place, while he was convey'd away. He thereupon shews a golden Cross beset with precious stones, which he said was hung about his neck at his Baptism. Adding that the fear of falling into the hands of *Boris Gudenou* had kept him from discovering himself till then. Upon which he casts himself at his Lords feet, and intreats him to take him into his protection, enlivening his relation with so many circumstances, and his actions with so much shew of sincerity, that his Master, perswaded he spoke nothing but truth, immediately furnish'd him with Cloaths, Horses, and attendance befitting the greatness of a Prince of that quality. The noise of it spreads over all the Country, finds credit every where, and the presumption grows so much the stronger, by reason the Great Duke *Boris Gudenou* proffers a great sum of money, to any that should bring in that counterfeit *Demetrius* alive or dead. His Master, not thinking him safe at his house, sends him into *Poland*, where he is receiv'd by the *Weywode* of *Sandomira*, who promises him a sufficient assistance to restore him to his Throne, upon condition he would tolerate the *Roman* Catholic Religion in *Muscovy*, as soon as he had settled himself in the Government thereof

thereof. *Demetrius* not only accepted of that condition, but, being secretly instructed, chang'd his Religion, and promised to marry the *Weywode's* Daughter, as soon as he should be establish'd. The hope of so advantageous an allyance, and the zeal the *Weywode* had for his Religion, engag'd him to employ his credit and friends, by whose means he got together a considerable Army, enter'd *Muscovy*, and declared a War against the Great Duke. He took in several Cities, debauch'd and corrupted most of the Officers employ'd by *Boris* against him, and grew so prosperous, that the grief *Boris* conceived thereat struck him so to the heart, that he died of it, *Apr. 13. 1605.* The *Knez* and *Bojars*, who were at *Moscou*, immediately caused his Son *Fædor Borissouits* to be crowned, though very young: but reflecting on the continual success of *Demetrius's* Arms, their minds chang'd, and deriving, from his victories, an ill presage against the new Great Duke, they concluded, that he must be the true *Demetrius*, the lawful Son of *John Basilouits*, and that they did ill to take up arms against their natural Sovereign. It was no hard matter to insinuate this into the people, who presently cry'd, *Live Demetrius, true Heir of the Kingdom, and may his Enemies perish.* Whereupon they ran to the Castle, seisd upon the young Great Duke, imprison'd him, ransack'd, misused, and forc'd away all the kindred and friends of *Boris Gudenou*, and at the same time sent to intreat *Demetrius* to come as soon as he pleas'd, and take possession of the Kingdom of his Ancestors. They also begg'd his pardon for what they had done through ignorance, upon the instigation of *Boris*, assured him of their affection and obedience, and as a pledge of their fidelity, they profer'd to put into his hands the deceased Duke's Son, his Mother, and all his Family, to be disposed of as he should think it. Upon these overtures *Demetrius* sent a *Deak*, or Secretary named *Juan Bogdanou*, with order to strangle the Mother and Son, and to give out that they were poison'd. Which was accordingly executed the 10. of *June 1605.* in the second moneth of the reign of *Fædor Borissouits*.

The 16. of the same moneth, *Demetrius* came to *Moscou*, with his Army, which strangely encreas'd as he came along. The whole City went out to meet him, and made him Presents. He was Crown'd the 21. of *July*, with extraordinary Ceremonies. And that there might be no question made of the lawfulness of his birth, he sent for the Mother of the true *Demetrius*, whom *Boris Gudenou* had shut up in a Monastery, at a great distance from *Moscou*. He went to meet her with a Noble retinue of Couriers, lodg'd her in the Castle, where he caus'd her to be treated with all magnificence, visiting her every day, and doing her all the honour a Mother could expect from a Son. The good Lady knew well enough, that *Demetrius*, her Son, had been kill'd, but she cunningly dissembled it, as well out of the resentment she had against the memory of *Boris Gudenou*, and the fear she was in to be ill-treated by this counterfeit *Demetrius*, as for that she was not a little pleas'd to see her self so much honour'd, and enjoy the sweetness of a happy life, after the miseries and afflictions she had endured in the Monastery, since her Son's death.

But when the *Muscovites* found his manner of life different from that of the Great Dukes his predecessors, that he was resolv'd to marry a *Roman Catholick*, the *Weywode* of *Sandomiria's* daughter, and ransack'd the Treasuries of the Kingdom to furnish her according to the advancement she expected, they began to mistrust him, and to perceive they had been mistaken. One of the principal *Knez*, named *Vasili Zuski*, was the first that offer'd to speak of it to some other Lords, as well Ecclesiastical as Secular, and to remonstrate to them the danger whereto both the State and Religion were expos'd, by the Alliance which that Counterfeit intended to make with a strange woman, and of a contrary Religion; adding, that, of necessity, he was an Impostor, and a lewd person. Upon this it was resolv'd he should be dispatch'd out of the way: but the Conspiracy being discover'd, and *Zuski* taken, *Demetrius* got him sentenc'd to death, but sent him a pardon upon the point of execution, hoping by that mildness, to gain the affection of the *Muscovites*. Accordingly all was quiet till the day of his marriage, which was the 8. of *May, 1606.* The Bride being arriv'd, with a great number of *Poles*, Armed, and in a capacity to become Masters of the City, the *Muscovites* began to open their eyes. *Zuski* got to his own house, several *Knez* and *Bojars*, propos'd to their consideration the present State of Affairs, the unavoidable ruine of both State and Religion, and, profer'd, for the preservation thereof, once more to expose his person and life. They gave him thanks, and promis'd to assist him with their Persons and Estates, when there should be an opportunity to put their design in execution. They had a fair one the last day of the Nuptial solemnity, which was the ninth after the Wedding, and the 17. of *May*. The Great Duke and his Company being got drunk and asleep, the *Muscovites* caus'd all the Bells in the City to be rung, as they are wont in case of fire, to give an Alarm, whereupon they immediately put themselves into Arms, and set upon the Castle, where, having defeated the *Polish* Guards, and forc'd the Gates, they enter'd the Great Dukes Chamber, who thought to avoid present death by leaping out at a window into the Court, in hope to save himself among the Guards, which were still there in Arms: but he was taken, and cruelly us'd. The Castle was ransack'd. *Zuski*, addressing himself to the pretended Mother of *Demetrius*, oblig'd her to swear by the *Cross*, whether *Demetrius* was her

1636. Son, or no, to which having answer'd, that he was not, and that she never had but one Son, who had been unfortunately murder'd, they shot the Counterfeit *Demetrius* in the head with a Pistol. They imprison'd the pretended Great Dutchess, with her Father and Brother, as also the *Polish* Ambassador. The Ladies and Gentlewomen were abus'd and deflower'd, and above 1700. men kill'd, among whom were many Jewellers, Merchants, who had abundance of Jewels about them. *Demetrius's* body was stripp'd, and dragg'd to the place before the Castle, where it lay expos'd for three whole days. After which they buried it, but it was immediately taken up again, to be burnt, and reduc'd to ashes.

Demetrius kill'd.

Zuski made Great Duke. A second counterfeitt Demetrius.

This conspiracy thus succeeding, the *Muscovites* chose into the place of *Demetrius*, Knez *Basilouits Zuski*, the Ring-leader of the Enterprize, who was Crown'd June 1. 1606. But he was no sooner got into the Throne, ere another Impostor disputed the possession of it. His name was Knez *Gregori Schacopski*, who at the pillaging of the Castle, having found the Seals of the Kingdom, fell into a League with two *Polanders*, and made a shift to go into *Poland*. He made use of the same invention as his Predecessor, and took the name of *Demetrius*, giving out, where he came, that he had escap'd the Massacre, in the night time, that they had kill'd another in his stead, and that he was going into *Poland* to raise another Army, to punish the *Muscovites* for their infidelity and ingratitude.

A third Impostor.

About the same time started up another *Demetrius*, in the City of *Moscou*. He was Clerk to one of the Secretaries of State, got into the field, made use of the same imposture as the two others, and found abettors, by whose assistance he became Master of many great Cities. This occasion'd many other disorders, which the *Polanders* countenanc'd out of their resentment of the affront they had receiv'd from the *Muscovites*. The events of the War, occasioned thereby, prov'd so fatal and unhappy, that the *Muscovites* quarrell'd at *Zuski*, and look'd upon him as the sole cause of all their misfortunes. They said, his Government was unjust, because unfortunate, and that there must needs be something fatal in his person, when victory seem'd to shun him, to side with his Enemies. Three *Muscovian* Lords, *Zacchary Lippanow*, *Michael Molsaneck*, and *Juan Kefeski*, were the first that amus'd the people with these reports, and, perceiving they were well receiv'd among them, proceeded in their design, depriv'd *Zuski* of his Dignity, shut him up in a Monastery, and had him shaved.

Uladislaus Prince of Poland chosen Czaar of Muscovy.

Upon this, the *Knez* and *Bojares*, to avoid the jealousy, which the Election might raise among themselves, resolv'd to take in a foreign Prince. The *Polanders* still countenanc'd the second *Demetrius*; so far as that they forc'd the former's Widow to acknowledge him for her husband, and expected satisfaction for the affront they had received at *Moscou*, at the marriage of *Demetrius*, so that the *Muscovites* willing to satisfy the *Polanders*, and not finding any Prince near them so well qualified as *Uladislaus*, eldest son to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, sent to the King, his father, to desire, that he might accept of the Crown of *Muscovy*. The King consented; but the Treaty agreed upon, among other Clauses, had this, that *John Basilouits Zuski* should be taken out of the Monastery, and, with some other Lords of his Kinred; should be put into the hands of the King of *Poland*, who kept them, a long time, Prisoners at *Smolensko*, where *Zuski*, at last, died, and his body was buried near the High-way, between *Thorn* and *Warsaw*. *Stanislaus Solkouski* was, in the mean time, advanc'd with his Army to the very Gates of *Moscou*, with order to revenge the death of *Demetrius*, and the *Polanders*, who were Massacred with him. But news coming of the conclusion of the Treaty, they laid down their Arms, and *Stanislaus* had order, in the Prince's name, to receive homage from the *Muscovites*, and to stay at *Moscou*, till the Prince were come thither in person. The *Muscovites* were content, and, having taken the Oath of Allegiance, they reciprocally administred it to him, and permitted him, with a thousand *Poles*, to enter the Castle, and to keep a Garrison there. The rest of the Army stay'd without the City, not doing any thing at which the *Muscovites* might conceive any jealousy. On the contrary, there was much kindness shewn on both sides, till that the *Poles*, having crept by degrees into the City, to the number of above six thousand, took up the Avenues of the Castle for their quarters, and began to incommode the Citizens, and to become insupportable, by reason of their insolences, and the violences they dayly committed upon Women and Maids, nay, upon the *Muscovian* Saints, at which they shot off their Pistols. So that the *Muscovites* not able to endure them any longer, and impatient for their Great Duke, met together on the 24. of *January* 1611. in the place before the Castle, where they made a noise, and complained of the outrages which they daily received from the *Polanders*, saying, it was impossible for them to maintain so great a number of Soldiers, that their Trade was destroy'd, that they were exhausted to the least drop of their blood, that the new Great Duke came not, which made them apprehend, there was something ominous in it; that they could live no longer at that rate, and that they should be forc'd to those remedies, which nature had furnish'd them with, for their safety, if some other course were not taken.

The Muscovites discontented against the Polanders.

An insurrection at Moscou.

The *Polish* General did all he could to appease them, causing to be severely punish'd some of his Soldiers who most deserv'd it; but the *Muscovites* thought not that enough. The *Polanders*,



1. part. Lib. 3. Page 77.

Michael Fedorowitz great Duke of  
Moscovie Aged .xxix. Yeares 1645.

On their side, fearing a general insurrection, doubled their Guards, possess'd themselves of the principal streets, and prohibited the *Muscovites* to assemble, and bear Arms. This incens'd them so, as that they all rose, and met together in several places of the City, purposely to oblige the *Polanders* to divide their forces. The *Polanders* thought it not enough to stand only upon the defensive, but set the City on fire in three or four several places, thereby obliging the *Muscovites* to run to the relief of their Wives and Children, and making their advantage of that calamity, they set upon the *Muscovites* where ever they met them, and made so horrid a slaughter of them, that it is said, the sword and the fire destroy'd, in those two dayes, above 200000. persons, and all the houses in the City, excepting the Castle, the Churches, and some few stone-buildings. The Great Duke's Treasury was ransack'd, as also the Churches and Monasteries, out of which the *Polanders* got, and sent into *Poland*, an incredible quantity of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, among which, the *Muscovites* do, to this day, regret the loss of a certain *Unicorn's* horn, enrich'd with *Diamonds*. They say, the Soldiery got such a booty, that some of them charg'd their Pistols with great round Pearls. Fifteen dayes after this disorder came *Zachary Listpenow* with a good Army, and besig'd the *Polanders* in the Castle, kill'd many of them in several assaults, and, at last, forc'd them to a composition, and to depart the Kingdom.

The *Muscovites*, having weather'd out all these calamities, proceeded to the Election of a new Great Duke, and chose *Michael Fæderowits*, the son of *Fædor Nikitis*, a Kinsman, but far remov'd, of *Juan Basilonits*. This man had forsaken his wife, for God's sake, as they call it, and became a Religious man, whereupon he was made *Patriarch*, and, in that dignity, chang'd the name of *Fædor*, into that of *Philaretus*. The Son, who was of a very good nature, and much inclin'd to Devotion, hath alwayes express'd a great respect for his Father, taking his advice in affairs of greatest importance, and giving him the honour of admittance to all publick Audiences and Ceremonies, at which he alwayes gave him precedence. He died in the year 1633. some few dayes before our first Embassy.

The first thing this new Great Duke did, after his establishment, was, to make a Peace with his Neighbour Princes, and to abolish the memory of his Predecessors Cruelties, by so mild a Government, that it is granted, *Muscovy* hath not had, these many ages, a Prince deserving so great commendations from his Subjects. He died July 12. 1645. in the 49<sup>th</sup>. year of his age, and the 33. of his reign. The Great Dutchess, his Wife, died eight dayes after him, and his son, *Knez Alexei Michalonits* succeeded him.

The reign of *Michael Fæderowits* was very quiet. But as, in the times of *Boris Gudenou*, and *John Basilonits Zuski*, there were Counterfeit *Demetrius's*, so, in *Michael's* time, there started up an Impostor, who had the boldness, to assume the name and quality of *Basili Fouanowits Zuski*, Son to the Great Duke *Juan Basilonits Zuski*. His name was *Timoska Ankudina*, born in the City of *Vologda*, in the Province of the same name, and son to a Linnen-Draper, named *Demko*, or *Dementi Ankudina*. The Father having observ'd somewhat of more than ordinary wit in him, had brought him up to writing and reading, which having attain'd, he was look'd upon as a very excellent person among those who have no further acquaintance with Learning. The excellency of his voice, and his skill in singing Hymns at Church, recommended him to the Arch-Bishop of the place, who took him into his service, wherein *Ankudina* behaved himself so well, that the Arch-Bishop having a kindness for him, married him to a Grand-Child of his. This Allyance, which might have been very advantageous to him, prov'd the first occasion of his ruine: for he presently began, in his Letters, to assume the quality of Son-in-law to the *Weywode* of *Vologda*, and *Velicopermia*. Having, after the Arch-bishops death, squander'd away his Wife's fortune, he came, with his Family, to *Moscou*, where, upon the recommendation of a friend of the Arch-bishop's, he found an employment in the *Novazetvert*, that is, the Office where such as keep common Tip-ling-houses are oblig'd to take the Wine, Strong-water, and Hydromel, which they sell by retail, and where they give an accompt of what they have spent. He was made Receiver there, but became so unfaithful, that, the first Accompt he made he could not bring in what was due to the Prince, by 200. Crowns: and in regard they expect a great exactness upon such an accompt in *Muscovy*, he put his invention upon the rack to make up the said sum. To that end, he went to one of his fellow Officers, named *Basili Gregorowits Spilki*, who had Christen'd a Child of his, and done him several kindnesses, when occasion required, and told him, that one of the chiefeft Merchants of *Vologda*, one to whom he was very much oblig'd, being come to the City, he had invited him to Dinner, and would be glad to let him see his Wife; intreating him to lend him his Wife's Pearls and Rings, that he might present her in a condition suitable to his employment. The other did it without any difficulty, nay, without any thing to shew from the other, of his having receiv'd them, though they were worth above 1000. Crowns. But *Timoska*, instead of pawning the Jewels to make up his accompts, fold them, made use of the money, and confidently averr'd that his friend had not lent him any. *Spilki* clapt him up in prison, but, having no evidence to convict him, he could not hinder his being set at liberty, *Timoska* had some difference with his

1636.

Michael Fæderowits chosen Great Duke.

A counterfeit Zuski, Son of a Linnen-Draper.

His first preferment.

Cheats his fellow Officer.

Wife,

1636. Wife, who often reproach'd him with his perfidiousness, and other vices, especially his Sodomy: so that fearing, on the one side, to be called to account for what he was in arrear to the Prince, and, on the other, that his Wife might haply be the first that should accuse him, he thought him one day to fend his son to a friend of his, to shut up his Wife in a stove, and to set the house a-fire, in which his Wife was burnt. Having done thus, he went into Poland, but so secretly, that it was thought at Moscou, the same fire had consumed him, with the rest of his family. Timoska went away, about the latter end of the year 1643. but hearing, in 1645. that the Greak Duke was to send an Ambassador to the King of Poland, and that his being at the Court of Warsaw was known in Muscovy, he went in the year 1646 to Chmielniski, General of the Cosaques, and begg'd his protection, against the persecutions which he suffer'd, upon no other account than this, that the Great Duke knew him to be a near kinsman to the Prince Juan Basillouits Zuski. He had wit enough to carry on the Imposture, and had got such an influence over Chmielniski, that he began to grow considerable, when a Muscovian Poslanik, named Jacob Koslou, who had been sent to this Cosaque General, knew him, and advis'd him to return to Moscou, and endeavour, to make up the sum which was due from him to the Great Duke, which was not so great, but, that having paid it, the intercession of his friends might easily get his pardon: for it was not yet known, that he pretended to be son to the Great Duke John Basillouits Zuski. But this course he thought not safe, and, fearing he might be secur'd, he went, in the year 1648. to Constantinople, where he abjur'd the Christian Religion, and was circumcised. He stay'd not long there, but, fearing to be punish'd for some Crimes he had committed there also, he went into Italy, and so to Rome, where he became a Roman Catholick. Thence he went in the year 1650. to Vienna, and thence into Transilvania, to Prince Ragotskie, who gave him Letters of recommendation to Queen Christina, of Sweden. This Princess receiv'd him kindly, and giving credit to what he related, allowed him an honourable subsistence. The Muscovian Merchants, who were then at Stockholm, soon acquainted the Great Duke with this man's Imposture, who stuck not to give out every where, that he was son to John Basillouits Zuski. The Great Duke immediately sent thither the aforesaid Koslou, who had teen him with Chmielniski, to desire the Queen to deliver up that man to him: but Timoska, who knew that enquiry would be made for him, was already got away. His man, whose name was Kostka, or Constantine, whom some business had detain'd after his Master at Stockholm, was taken, and sent, well chain'd, to Muscovy, where they found Timoska's Mother and Kinred, whereof some were put to the Rack and executed. Timoska was taken at Reuel, in Livonia, by order from the Queen of Sweden; but he made a shift to get out of prison, and went, by the way of Holland, to Brussels, where he saw the Arch-Duke Leopold. Thence he went to Wittenberg; and to Leipzig, where he made profession of the Lutheran Religion, and Writ, himself, his Confession of Faith in Latin. Thence he went to Noustadt, in the Dutchy of Holstein, where Peter Miklaf, who had brought Letters from the Great Duke to the Duke of Holstein, got him secur'd. He was carried thence to Gottorp, where he was well guarded, till the Great Duke had sent express order for the bringing of his person to Muscovy. The Letters which the Czar Writ upon that occasion are such as may be well inserted in this place, that we may thereby discover somewhat of the elegance of the Muscovian manner of writing.

In the name of Almighty God, who does all in all, and protects all Nations in good consolations, from Him, who, by the Grace, Providence, Power, Vertue, Operation, and good pleasure of God, to be magnifi'd in the blessed Trinity, and glorious in all Eternity, hath been chosen, and holds the Scepter of the true Christian Faith, to govern and preserve, with Gods assistance, in peace and quiet, without troubles, the Great Empire of the Russians, with all the Provinces thereunto annexed, by Conquest or otherwise. We the Grand Seigneur, Czar, and Great Duke, Alexei Michaelouits, Conservator of all the Russes, &c. To the most mighty Frederick, Hereditary Prince of Norway, Duke of Sleswick, Holstein, Stormarie and Ditmarse, Count of Oldenbourg, and Delmenhoft, Health. In the year 1644. or, according to the Calculation of Muscovy, in the year 7152. the mentioned Timoska Ankudina, and Kostka Konichou, having robbed our Treasure, to avoid the death they had deserved, departed the Countries under our Jurisdiction, to go to Constantinople, where they professed the Turkish Religion. There they did so great mischief in a short time, that they were forc'd to fly, and to retreat into Poland and Lithuania, where they endeavoured to sow divisions between the neighbouring Princes. To that end they went to Theodat Chmielniski, General of the Cosaques, whom the King John Casimir of Poland, our Brother, commanded to put those Robbers into the hands of M. Germolitzowi, Gentleman of his Chamber, who had order to send them to Muscovy, under the conduct of M. Peter Proteliowi, a Gentleman of our retinue, as the said Chmielniski had made known to our Czaarick Majesty. But these Robbers and Traitors got to Rome, where they embraced the Latin Religion. Afterwards they passed through several other Provinces of Europe, where they changed their names, so as Timoska, sometimes, assumed that of Zuski, and sometimes that of Sinenlis, while Kostka went under the name of his Servant, till such time as both having been known at Stockholm, by some of our Merchants of Novogorod, and other places, and thereupon secured, one at Reuel, the other at

Narva,

Narva, the Governours of those two places made some difficulty to deliver them up to us, without <sup>1636.</sup> express order from the Great Queen of Sweden. But when we had desired the said Great Queen of Sweden, to put those Traitors into the hands of the Gentleman whom we had sent expressly for that purpose, it happened that at his coming to Reuel, with the Orders of the said Great Queen, the Governour had already suffered one of them to make his escape, so that he could bring along with him but only the said Koltka. We have understood since, that the other hath been taken and imprisoned in the Country of Holstein, wherefore we have thought fit to send to your Highness our Postanick, Basili Spilki, accompany'd by some of our Subjects, with Letters from our Czarick Majesty, to intreat you, that you will be pleas'd to deliver up unto them, and to send to us those Traitors.

The Letters were dated the last of October, 1652. after which the Great Duke sent another of the 5 of January, 1653. to the same effect, save that, at the end of the Letter, were added the lines following. Since that time, there came to us, in the moneth of December last, Peter Micklaf, of Novogorod, who hath informed us, how that, in pursuance of your Orders, the said Traitor had been secured in your Ducal City of Neultat, and that upon the Remonstrance made to you by the said Micklaf, you had translated him to Cottorp, to be there kept under a good and sure guard. Wherefore we send back again unto you the said Micklaf, with Letters from our Czarick Majesty, to entreat you, to deliver up the said Traitor to him and Basili Spilki, that he may have no further opportunity to escape, and raise new troubles in the World. In acknowledgement whereof our Czarick Majesty shall serve your Highness, in such occasions as shall present themselves. This Robber and Traitor to our Czarick Majesty, named Timoska, is of very mean Birth, the son of a Linnen-Draper that dealt only in coarse cloaths, named Demki Ankudina, of the Suburbs of Vologda, His Mother is called Salmaniska, and his Son, who is yet living, Tereska. Timoska was an under Officer in the Nova Zetvert, and he hath robb'd our Treasury, hath kill'd his Wife, and, with his own house, hath burnt several other houses that were near his, whereby many of our Subjects have been ruined. Wherefore knowing that he could not avoid death otherwise than by flight, he got away in the manner we have mention'd. Given at our Czarick residence of Molcou, the third of January, in the year of the Worlds Creation, 7161. and of the birth of our Saviour, 1653. After this, he also writ a third Letter, of the 17 of October the same year, upon which the Prisoner was deliver'd up to those, whom the Great Duke had appointed to receive him.

One of these Deputies was the same Spilki whom Timoska had cheated of his Wife's collar and Pearls. To be Gossips is a great allyance in Muscovy, besides they had been fellow-Officers in the same Employment, wherefore Spilki desired, his Highness would give him leave to see the Prisoner, and to speak to him in the presence of some Officers of the Court. But Timoska behaved himself as if he knew him not, and would not speak the Muscovian, but the Polish language, purposely to gravel the other, who could not speak it well. Spilki asked him, whether his name were not Timoska Ankudina, and whether he had not robb'd the Great Duke's Treasury, and committed several other enormous crimes? Timoska made him answer, that it might be Timoska Ankudina had robb'd the Great Duke's Treasury, or converted his money to his own use, but that he was not concern'd in it. That his name was Johannes Sinensis, and in the Polish language Zuiski, cunningly avoiding to hint at what he had said before, to wit, that he was Son to the Great Duke, John Basilonits Zuski. But when Spilki ask'd him, whether he remembered not his life past; the other derided him, gave him injurious language, and added, that he could not acknowledge him in the quality of a Postanick, since he was but a poor Shop-keeper, and feller of Pins, alluding to his name, Spilki, which signifies, a Pin-maker. Timoska would needs, one day, intreat his Highness of Holstein to appoint his Chancellor, and some others of his Council, to receive from his own mouth the state of his affairs. They askt him what house and family he was of, and whether he were of kin to the Great Duke, why the Great Duke persecuted him, and wherein he could any way prejudice him? He answer'd, that it was known; his name was Johannes Sinensis, and in the Polish language, Zuski; that, at his Baptism, he had been named Timotheus; that he was the Son of Basili Domitian Suiski; and that he had been so surnamed, from a City in Muscovy called Suia: That he was originally a Muscovite, but born and brought up in Poland, in the Province of Novogarka Severskbia, and that he was hereditary Lord of Hukragina Severska, upon the Frontiers of Muscovy: That the Great Duke was not his Kinsman, in as much as the Great Duke's Father had been but a Gentleman, whereas his was a Prince born, and that was the reason why the Great Duke persecuted him. That the Cham of Tartary, who was then engaged in a War against the King of Poland, would have employ'd him in a War against the Great Duke, but he had a greater affection for the Country of his Predecessors, than to trouble its quiet: That it was in his power to send above a 100000 men into Muscovy, but that God, of his goodness, had diverted his thoughts from doing any such thing. He had written somewhat to that purpose to the Patriarch. For the Postanick, who came from Sweden, having enter'd into a Familiarity with him, and advised him to write to the Patriarch, as the most likely person to procure his pardon,



1636. don, he resolv'd to do it, and deliver'd his Letter to the *Poslanick*, in which he writ to the Patriarch, that he was indeed a *Muscovite*, and, at his Baptism, had been named *Timothy*, whereof the word *Timoska* is the diminutive. That he had had a desire to enter *Muscovy* with an Army of 300000 men, but that he had been diverted from that pernicious design by the Guardian Angel of *Muscovy*. That thereupon he came to himself, and was resolv'd to return into his Country, whereas, had he been minded to continue his wicked life, it had been easie for him to get out of the prison at *Neustat*, but that it was his intention to return into *Muscovy* voluntarily, with those whom the Great Duke had appointed to conduct him. The *Poslanick*, who doubted not, but that, upon this Letter, he would have made such a confession, as might have convinc'd him, open'd, and read it in his presence. But he had to do with a man, whom so small a matter would not make to betray himself. He would perswade them that the *Poslanick* was a cheat, and that the Letter was counterfeit'd, that he had never writ it, and to make good what he said, he writ another Letter of a Stile and Character so far different from that of the former, that the *Poslanick*, mad to see himself so abused, flung it in his face. *Timoska* took it up, and tore it to pieces.

*Timoska varies in his depositions.*

But the distraction of his conscience was but too apparent in the inconsistency of his depositions, and the declarations he had made, both by word of mouth and writing. For, one while, he said, he was Son to the Great Duke, *Basili Juanouits Zuski*; and another, he said his Fathers name was *Basile Domitian*, though it was known, that, in that time, there were but three Lords of the House of *Zuski*, and not any of them was of that name. Sometimes he would be thought a *Polander*, and would confidently maintain that he could make it as clear as the Sun at Noon, that he was no *Muscovite*, and that there was not any thing in his person, language, or manner of life which might perswade the World that he was. Indeed his beard was quite after another fashion than the *Muscovites* ordinarily wear theirs. He had the *Latin*, *Italian*, *German* and *Turkish* Languages, so well, as to be understood in any of them, and he had such an art in counterfeiting all sorts of hands, that it was hard to convince him by that which he writ in his first employment. Nay he would have had us suspect as counterfeit'd, the Letters sent by the Great Duke to our Prince, because he had not sign'd them, and might have surpriz'd us with that allegation, had we not learnt in *Muscovy*, that the Great Duke never signs expeditions, but leaves that to be done by the Secretaries of State.

*Would procure his own death.*

*Timoska* perceiving these evasions would not serve his turn, fell into despair, and would have kill'd himself. For, being upon his way to *Travemunde*, to be ship'd away, not far from *Neustat*, he cast himself down headlong from the Wagon, and shuff'd himself under the Wheels, hoping they would pass over his Body; but the ground being soft and sandy, his fall did him no hurt, and the Wagon was immediately staid; so that they had the time to return him to his place, where they fasten'd him beyond all fear of shewing such another trick. He seem'd to be in a very good humour all the way, yet sought all the means he could imagine, to compass his own death; but he was so narrowly watch'd, that at last being out of all hope to effect it, the joy he had express'd before was much abated. Coming to *Novogorod*, he fell into so deep a melancholy, that he was become absolutely disconsolate. Which yet hindred not but that amidst the greatest tortures he express'd an admirable constancy, at least if I may so call the resolute obstinacy, in which he persisted, as to his first depositions; whether it were his design thereby to confirm, in strangers, the opinion he would have imprinted in them, or that he considered with himself, that his confession would not prevent his death, nor alleviate his misfortune. As soon as he came to *Moscon*, he was put to the torture, in the presence of divers persons of quality; but he impudently told them, that, of all the *Bojares*, he would not vouchsafe to speak to any, but *Knez Nikita Juanouits Romanow*; and him only, as knowing him by fame, by reason of his goodness and courage he should be glad to have some discourse withall. While two *Bojares* were gone to find out *Nikita*, *Timoska* desired somewhat to drink. They presented to him some *Quas*, in a wooden dish, but he would have *Hydromel*, and that it should be brought him in a silver Cup; but after they had so far comply'd with his humour, he only put it to his lips, and would not drink. Seeing *Nikita*, and the other two *Bojares* come in, he gave them a civil salute: but still affirmed, that he was Son to *Basili Juanouits Zuski*, though it were prov'd against him, that he was the Son of *Dementi Ankudina*, a Linnen Draper of *Vologda*, and that the Great Duke *Basili* had had no children, but only two Brothers, *Knez Demetri Juanouits*, and *Juan Juanouits Zuski*, who both died without issue male. For of these three Brothers, who were sent Prisoners into *Poland*, at the election of *Vladislav*, in the year 1610. with the rest of the Great Dukes kinred, the two elder died there, and the third was releas'd, and sent back into *Muscovy*, where he died some few years before the execution of *Timoska*. 'Tis true, there was another Lord of the same Family, but he had left only one Son, named *Michael Basilonits Zuski Scapin*, who died without issue, when the *Suedes* took the City of *Novogorod*, in the year 1616.

*Is tortured*

While he endured the torture, they brought his Mother to him, who exhorted him to acknowledge his crime. He seem'd to be moved at her presence, but persisted in affirming he knew

her

her not, no more than he did *Juan Pefcon*, with whom he had left his Son, when he left *Muscovy*. This man represented to him how much he was to blame, for behaving himself so in the condition he was in, and told him, that he must at last pull off the vizard, he had made use of for so many years, to cheat the World, and disturb his Country, conjuring him to own his Son, and rely no longer on elusions and impostures, which would only aggravate his misery, and bring a greater weight of God's vengeance upon him. He was so mov'd hereat, that he would not speak one word afterwards, though there were divers persons brought before him, who had known him while he was employ'd at the Tavern-Office. He was search'd and found to be Circumcis'd. The next day they put him again to the torture, but he would not speak at all: so that he was immediately carried to the great Market-place, where his sentence was pronounced, and presently put in execution. They cut off, with an Ax, first, his right arm, below the elbow, then the left leg, below the knee, and afterwards the left arm and right leg, and last of all the head, The members were set up on stakes, and the trunk left upon the ground: but the Dogs devour'd it in the night, and the next morning the Executioner's Servants dragg'd the members to the place where all the City dirt is thrown. 1636.  
And Ex<sup>2</sup>  
cutted.

His man, *Kostka* was pardoned, because he had confess'd the truth; but, in regard he had been unfaithful towards his Prince, he was sentenc'd to lose three fingers of his right hand. The Patriarch got that punishment to be moderated, upon this accompt, that the Religion of the *Muscovites* obliging them to make the sign of the Cross with the right hand, which ought not to be maimed, he receiv'd his punishment in the left, and was sent into *Siberia*, where provision was made for his subsistence during life. About this time there came a *Polish* Envoy to *Moscou*. They gave him audience the same day that *Timoska* was put to death, and brought him through the Market-place just at the execution, that he might be an eye witness of it, and give an accompt, in *Poland*, of the Tragedy of that Impostor, who had been there look'd upon as son to the Great Duke, *Basili Juanonits Zuski*.

We said before, that the Great Duke *Michael Federonits* died Jul. 12. 1645. The very next day, the *Knez* and *Bojares* would needs crown his Son, *Alexei Michaelouits*, who was not full sixteen years of age. He it is that now reigns, and makes himself known by the War he made upon *Poland*, as also by that which he daily threatens against *Sueden*. He was born, March 17. 1630. *Knez Boris Juanonits Morosou*, fearing his enemies might take any advantage of the Prince's tender years, so hastened his Coronation, that they could not send for all those who are oblig'd to be present thereat, nor perform it with the requisite Ceremonies: which are as followeth.

They summon to *Moscou*, not only all the Metropolitans, Archbishops, Bishops, *Knez*, and *Bojares*, but also the Principal Merchants, of all the Cities in the Kingdom. The day appointed for the Coronation, the Patriarch, attended by the Metropolitans, conduct the new Great Duke to the Church within the Castle, where a Scaffold is erected three steps high, cover'd with rich *Persian* Tapistry, on which are set three Brocado Chairs, at an equal distance one from the other. One is for the Great Duke, another for the Patriarch, and upon the third are set the Ducal Cap and Robe. The Cap is embroider'd with Pearls and Diamonds, having upon the Crown a Tassel, on which hangs a little Crown, set as thick as may be with Diamonds: and the Robe is of a rich Brocado, lined with the best kind of Sables. They say the Great Duke *Demetri Monomach* found it, at the taking of *Kassa*, in *Tartarie*, and that he immediately design'd it for the Coronation of the Princes his Successors. The Ceremonies of the Czar's Coronation.

As soon as the *Czaar* is come within the Church, the Clergy begin to sing their Hymns, which ended, the Patriarch prays to God, to St. *Nicholas*, and the other Saints, desiring their presence at that day's Solemnity. The prayer ended, the Chief Counsellour of State, taking the Great Duke by the hand, presents him to the Patriarch, and says to him; Since the *Knez* and *Bojares* acknowledge the Prince here present to be the next of Kin to the late Great Duke, and lawfull Heir to the Crown, they desire, that, as such, you immediately Crown him. Whereupon the Patriarch leads the Prince up to the Scaffold, and having seated him in one of the three Chairs, he puts to his forehead, a little Cross of Diamonds, and blesses him. Then one of the Metropolitans reads the following Prayer. "O Lord our God, King of Kings, who didst choose thy servant *David*, by the Prophet *Samuel*, and who didst cause him to be anointed King over thy people *Israel*, hearken to our prayers, which, though unworthy, we offer up unto thee. Look down, from the highest Heavens, upon this thy faithful servant, who is here seated upon this Chair, and whom thou hast exalted to be King over thy people, whom thou hast redeemed by the blood of thy Son. Anoint him with the Oyl of gladness; protect him by thy power; set upon his head a precious Diadem; grant him a long and happy life; put into his hand a Royal Scepter, and make him sit upon the Throne of Justice. Make subject to him all barbarous Languages; Let his heart and his understanding alwayes continue in thy fear. In all the course of his life, let him be constantly obedient to thy Commandement. Suffer not any Heresie, or Schism to come near his Person or Government. Teach him to maintain and observe whatsoever the holy *Greek* Church commandeth and ordaineth.

1636. Judge thy people in Justice, and be merciful to the poor; that, when they leave this Valley of tears, they may be received into eternal joys. Which Prayer the Patriarch concludes with these words, For thine is the Kingdom, the Power, and the Glory; God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Ghost be with us, and remain with us.

The Prayer ended, the Patriarch commands two Metropolitans to take the Cap and Robe, and having caused some of the *Bojares* to come upon the Scaffold, he commands them to put them on the Great Duke, whom he blesseth a second time, by touching his forehead with the little Cross of Diamonds. Then he causes to be given to them the Ducal Cap, to be set upon his head, while he says, In the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, and then blesses him the third time. That done, the Patriarch causes all the Prelates to approach, who give the Benediction to the Great Duke, but it is only with their hands. That Ceremony ended, the Great Duke and the Patriarch sit down, but they immediately rise again, to give order for the singing of the Letany, whereof every verse ends with *Gospodi pomiluy*, Lord, have mercy upon us, putting in ever and anon the great Duke's name. After the Letany they sit down again, and one of the Metropolitans comes up to the Altar, and says singing, *God preserve our Czaar and Great Duke of all the Russes, whom God hath out of his love bestow'd on us, in good health, and grant him a long and a happy life.* All that are present, as well Ecclesiasticks as Laicks repeat the same words, which make the Church echo again with the greatness of their joy. Then the *Bojares* come up to the Great Duke, smite their foreheads in his presence, and kisse his hand. That done, the Patriarch comes up alone before the Great Duke, and tells him; *That, since, through the Providence of God, all the Estates of the Kingdom, as well Ecclesiastical as Temporal, have establish'd and Crowned him Great Duke over all the Russes, and have entrusted him with a Government and Conduct of so great importance, he ought to apply all his thoughts to love God, keep his Commandments, administer Justice, and protect, and maintain the true Greek Religion.* That done, the Patriarch gives him the Benediction, and the whole Assembly goes out of that Church, into that of St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, which is opposite to the other, where they sing over the same Letanies; which is done afterwards in that also of St. *Nicholas*, where they conclude the Ceremonies, and Dine in the Great Hall of the Duke's Palace.

The Great  
Dukes fa-  
vourite.

After the Coronation, *Alexei Michaelonits Morosou* chang'd the quality of Governour into that of Favourite and Chief Minister, and had the same power in Affairs, as he had over the Prince's person during his fathers life. He began his establishment with the great Employments which he bestow'd on the Kinred of the Great Dutchess-Mother, for whom the Prince had a great Veneration: but under that pretence he kept them at a distance from Court, which, as also the chiefest places of publick trust, he in the mean time fill'd with his own Kinred and Creatures, who wholly depended on his fortune. He permitted not any other to come near the Prince's person, whom he would often get out of the Capital City, under pretence of Hunting, or some other divertisement; so to beget in him an aversion to business, that he might have the managemment of all things. He thought the only way to make sure of him, would be to get him a Wife, and to that end, he brought him acquainted with a Gentlemans Daughter, who was an extraordinary Beauty, but of mean extraction. 'Twas his design to marry her Sister, by that means to interesse the Great Duke more nearly in his preservation. These Gentlewomens Father, was one *Ilia Danilonits Miloslanski*, very much look'd upon by the Favourite, not only upon the accompt of his two fair Daughters, but also in regard of his constant attendance on him. So that upon the confidence he had of his affection and fidelity, he one day took occasion to speak to the Great Duke of him, and thence, to celebrate so highly the beauty of those Gentlewomen, that, it rais'd in him a desire to see them. The Great Duke sent for them, under pretence of a Visit to the Princesses his Sisters, and having seen them, he was so taken with the Beauty of the Elder, that he immediately sent one to tell *Miloslanski*, that he would honour him with Alliance, and marry one of his Daughters. The Gentleman receiv'd the message with much respect, and return'd his humble thanks to the Great Duke for the favour he was pleas'd to do him. Soon after, they carried rich Presents to the intended Bride, and a good sum of money to the Father, who, with others of the Kinred, could not, without that supply, have appear'd at the Marriage of his Daughter. They were married on *Shrove-Sunday*, in the year 1647. but without any noise, lest the consequences of that Solemnity might be frustrated by Charms. Eight days after, *Morosou* was married to *Miloslanski's* second Daughter, and so became Brother-in-Law to the Great Duke.

*Ilia Danilonits Miloslanski* was no sooner advanc'd to this new-greatness, but he would have all the World to take notice of it. He pull'd down a Wooden house that had been given him in the Castle near the Great Duke's Palace, and built a Sumptuous one of Stone in it's place. He cast off, by degrees, the old Officers of the house, and brought in his own Kindred and Creatures; who being no less necessitous than the chief of their family, let slip no opportunity of advantaging themselves. Among others, he made one *Leponti Steppanovits Plesseou* Chief Judge of the Citie of *Moscou*, in that Jurisdiction which they call *Semskoi Duor*. No Concussion, no Extortion, but this man would undertake. He thought it not enough to receive Presents, but would

would reduce both parties to the utmost extremities. He suborn'd false Witnesses, whose employment was to bring in charges against those, who were rich enough to redeem themselves out of his persecutions, imprisoning, and oppressing them till they purchas'd their Liberties with the ruine of their Estates; and of these instruments of his Tyranny, one was called *Peter Tichonuits Trochaniotou*, his Brother-in-law. This *Peter* was one of those, whom, in *Muscovy*, they call *Ocolnits*, out of which number are chosen the *Bojares*, and he had the management of the *Puskarsse Pricas*, that is to say, was Overseer of the Armourers, Canoniers, and all the Mechanicks belonging to the Arsenal, who were very much oppress'd by him. For, instead of paying them monethly, as they are wont to do in *Muscovy*, where all that are in the Great Duke's service, are so punctually pay'd, that if they come not the first day of the moneth for their money, it is sent home to them; he, on the contrary, kept them several moneths without it, forc'd them to compound, and to give acquittances for the whole sum, though they received but some part. Besides, Trading was obstructed, Monopolies granted, and no Employment could be had, but by dearly purchasing the Favorite *Morosou's* good pleasure. One got a Patent, prohibiting the further use of the ordinary *Ells*, purposely to oblige the people to buy Iron ones with the Great Duke's mark upon them: but instead of selling them at 8. or 10 *d.* a piece, as they were worth, they could not be had under a Crown; by which means was rais'd a vast sum of money, by reason of the necessity there was of having them all over the Kingdom. Another found out the invention of raising the *Poude* (that is 40. pound) of Salt, to thirty pence, which before cost but twenty. But instead of making advantage of it, they found at the year's end, that the dearness of the Salt had so hindred the sale of it, that the Great Duke's revenue was not only very much diminish'd, but abundance of fish was lost for want of sufficient salting; so that had it not been their design rather to oppress the people than to promote the Great Duke's service, they would soon have put down that new imposition. The Inhabitants of *Moscou*, who had liv'd very quietly under the late Great Duke's reign could not but discover their resentment of these pressures. They had their assemblies about the Churches, at the hours when their Devotions brought them thither, and resolv'd at last to Petition the Great Duke. And in regard no one person either would or durst undertake the delivery of a Petition to him, they appointed a day to give it him themselves, as he should come out of the Castle, to go to his devotions or diversions. Their main spleen was against *Leponti Steppanouit's Plesseou*, to desire that his place might be supply'd by some person of honour, of whom they might expect more Justice. They had their Petition ready, and sought two or three times an opportunity to present it to the Prince; but the *Bojares*, who attend him in those Ceremonies, took it from them, and making only a report of it, as they had been instructed by *Morosou*, the Petition was not answered, nor the people reliev'd. This happen'd so often, that the people at last resolv'd to take some other course, and to make their complaints by word of mouth, upon the first opportunity that should offer it self. The 6. of July 1648. they took their advantage of a Procession, which the Great Duke made to a Monastery in the Citie called *Stertenskie*. The people were got together in the Market-place before the Castle, to see him pass by, as they were wont; but at his return, they broke through those that attended the Great Duke, came up to him, laid hold of his bridle, stay'd him, and entreated him to hear the complaints they had to make to him, concerning the injustices and violences committed by *Plesseou*, desiring there might be put into his place some person of integrity, who should better supply so important a charge. The Great Duke though a little startled at their procedure, still kept his countenance, and seem'd not a little troubled at the grievances of his good Subjects, promised, that he would examine how the matter stood, and that they should receive satisfaction. The people desir'd no more, and were going away well satisfy'd with that answer, when some *Bojares*, friends of *Plesseou*, would needs give the people abusive language, thrust some of their horses, and struck others with their whips, whereat being incens'd, they so pelted their Lordships with stones, that they were forc'd to make all speed they could to the Castle, whither the people pursued them so vigorously, that all the Guard could do was only to stop them till the others were gotten into the Great Duke's Chamber. This resistance of the *Strelits*, rather inflamed, than abated, the people's fury, who threaten'd to force the Prince's Lodgings, and take away all they found there, if *Plesseou* were not immediately put into their hands. *Morosou* came out into a Balcony, and endeavoured to appease the people, exhorting them, in the name of his *Czaarick* Majesty, to go all to their homes, and make no further tumult. But they told him, that they had as much to say to him as to the other. Accordingly, some went immediately to his Palace, which was forc'd, ransack'd, and demolish'd in a moment, having cast out at a window one of his Servants, who would have made some opposition. Their animosity was such, as that they spar'd not even the Images of their Saints, for which they are wont to have a great veneration. Yet did they shew some respect to *Morosou's* Wife, and thought it enough to take away her Pearls and Jewels, which they cast into the street, and to frighten her a little, by telling her, that had they not look'd upon her as Sister-in-law to the Great Duke, they would have cut her to pieces. Among other things, they broke his rich Coach, which, besides the expence in other things about it,

1636. had all silver even about the Wheels. Some got into the Cellar, and knock'd out the heads of the Strong-water Barrels, which taking fire consumed all those who had made themselves drunk. This was the Prologue to the ransacking of several other houses afterwards, as those of *Plesseou*, and *Tichonouits*, the Chancellors, and all that had any relation to, or dependance on the Favourite, which afforded them such a booty, as that they sold Pearls by handfuls, and so cheap, that for thirty Crowns a man might have bought a hat-ful; a black-foxe-skin, or a pair of Sables for 2 s. 6 d. and stuffs of Gold, Silver, and Silk, in a manner for nothing.

An Insurrection in  
Molcou.

*Nazari Juanouits Tzislou*, Chancellor of *Muscovy*, had farm'd the imposition upon the Salt, and lay sick in his bed, by reason of an accident that had happened to him three days before, which was, that, meeting with a mad Ox, his Horfed started and threw him, so violently, that he was in some danger of his life. But hearing that *Morosou's* house had been ransack'd, and not doubting but they would come to his, he hid himself under a heap of Birch, which they at a certain time make provision of, to serve the Stoves; and to raze off all suspicion, he caus'd himself to be cover'd with some Fitches of Bacon: so that he had certainly saved his life, had he not been betray'd by one of his Servants, who making his advantage of his Masters misfortune, took a good sum of Money, and went to *Nisfenovogorod*. The enrag'd multitude took him out by the heels, and dragg'd him down stairs into the Court, where they cudgell'd him to death. The body was thrown upon the Dung-hill, and the house so pillag'd, that there was not any thing left. While these disorders were committed in the City, they had the time to barricado themselves in the Castle, against the insolences of the people, who continued all night between the 6 and 7 of July, in arms, in such a posture, as shew'd they only expected day-light to begin again. Whereupon, Orders were sent to the *German Officers* and Soldiers, to meet at several rendezvous, in the City, and to come in to the Great Dukes relief at the Castle. They march'd with Drums beating, and Colours flying, and the *Muscovites* instead of opposing them, gave them way, and told them, that they had no quarrel against them, and knew them to be persons of honour who approved not the miscarriages of the Government. Being got into the Castle, they took up the posts of their Guards, and the Great Duke sent out *Knez Nikita Juanouits Romanow*, whom he knew the people much respected, to endeavour the breaking up of the Assembly. He came to the people, cap in hand, and told them, that he conceiv'd they ought to be satisfy'd with the assurance, which the Great Duke had made them the day before, that he would remedy the disorders of which they complained. That his Majesty had commanded him to tell them as much, and to advise them to go every man to his home, that he might the better perform what he had promised them. This message was well receiv'd, and the people made answer, that they were not dissatisfied with the Great Duke, but those who, under his name, abused his authority, and that they would not stir, till they had deliver'd up to them, *Boris Juanouits Morosou*, *Leponti Steppanouits Plesseou*, and *Peter Tichonouits Trachanistou*, that they might revenge, on their heads, the mischief they had done the whole Kingdom. *Romanow* gave them thanks for the kind answer they had made to his proposition, and told them he would acquaint the Great Duke with the zeal and affection which they express'd towards him; that he doubted not, but Order would be taken for the execution of those three Lords, but that he could safely take his oath, that *Morosou*, and *Trachanistou* had made their escape, and, for the third he should be immediately put to death. Accordingly, *Romanow* was no sooner return'd to the Great Duke, but word was sent to the people, that *Plesseou* was coming to be sacrific'd, and that the other two should come to the same end, as soon as they were found, and that they should send for the Executioner to do his Office. He was soon found, being at the Castle-gate with his servants, whence he came about a quarter of an hour after, leading *Plesseou* to the Market-place, to cut off his head. But the people spar'd him the trouble, falling upon him with Cudgels, so outrageously, that they dispatch'd him in a moment. They dragg'd the Body through the dirt, accompanying it with all the curses imaginable; till at last a Monk, whom the deceas'd had order'd to be cudgell'd, cut off his head. *Morosou* had indeed made his escape; but meeting with Waggoners and some of the people searching after him, he was so fortunate as to avoid them, and by secret ways to get into the Castle. And that it might not be thought, the Great Duke had consented to the escape of the others, there were some sent after *Trachanistou*, who was taken near the Monastery of *Troitza*, twelve leagues from *Moscou*. He was brought, the 8. to *Semskoy Duor*, that is, the place where his Master had fate as Judge, which the Great Duke hearing of, he commanded his head to be cut off. This execution wrought so much upon the people, that being informed how *Morosou* had been met in the Country, and none knew what was become of him, they forbore further pressing the Great Duke to give them what he had not, and, about 11. in the morning, went every man to his home. In the afternoon several houses in the quarters of *Merrofsky* and *Twersky*, were set afire; whither the people, which had not yet clear'd the street, ran, not so much to quench the fire, as to steal. It made such havock in a short time, that it consum'd the whole quarter of *Zuargorod*, reducing to ashes all the houses within the *White-Wall*, to the River *Neglina*, and getting over the River, into the Great Duke's Taverns, it got into those

Plesseou  
put to  
death.

those of his Strong-waters, and grew so violent, that it was fear'd it would have buried the Castle in its ashes. No body would endeavour to prevent it, those, who were oblig'd thereto, being got so drunk, that, lying along in the streets, the vapours of the fire, they had in their bodies, together with the smoak of that which was then in its way to burn down the whole City, choak'd them as they lay. About 11. at night, some strangers looking, with no small astonishment, on the fire in that house where they kept the Strong-water, for the Great Duke's Provision, perceiv'd at some distance a Monk coming towards them with a great burthen, which by his blowing they conceiv'd must needs be very heavy. Being come near, he call'd for some, desiring them they would help him to cast into the fire, the body of the abominable *Plesseon*, which he dragg'd after him, it being, as he said, the only way to quench it: But the  *Germans*  refusing to meddle with it, he fell a-swearing and cursing, till some *Muscovites* did him the good office, and help him to cast the Carcass into the fire, which immediately began to abate, and some time after went out ere they left the place.

Some dayes after this accident, the Great Duke treated the *Strelits* with Strong-water, and Hydromel, and his Father-in-law, *Ilia Danilouits Miloslausky*, invited divers Citizens of several Professions to dine with him, and spent several dayes together in entertainments. The Patriarch also enjoyn'd the Priests and Monks to endeavour the settlement of unquiet spirits, and to press unto them the respect and obedience to which their consciences oblige them. All thus quieted, and the Great Duke, having supply'd the places of the executed, with able and approved persons, he took the opportunity of a Procession, to speak to the people, in the presence of *Nikita Jvanouits Romanou*, and told them, that he was extremely troubled, to hear of the injuries and violences done by *Plesseon* and *Trachanistou*, under his name, but contrary to his intention; That he had put, into their places, persons of integrity, and such as being acceptable to the people, would administer Justice equally, and without corruption; and that they might not fail therein, he would have an eye over them; That he repeal'd the Edict about the imposition laid on Salt, and that he would, with the soonest, suppress all Monopolies; That they should enjoy all their Privileges, which if occasion were, he would augment. Whereupon, the people having smitten their forehead, and given his Majesty thanks, the Great Duke re-assumed his discourse and said, That it was true indeed, he had promis'd to deliver up to them the person of *Boris Jvanouits Morosou*, and acknowledg'd, that he could not absolutely justify him, but that he could not also resolve to condemn him; That he hoped, the people would not deny the first Request he should make to them, which was, that they would pardon *Morosou*, only for that time, as to what he might have displeas'd them in; That he would be answerable for him, and durst assure them, that *Morosou* should so behave himself for the future, as that they should have occasion to speak well of him; That if they would not have him to be any longer of his Council, he would dismiss him; but that he desir'd them to look on that Lord, as one who had been a Father to their Prince, and one that having married the Great Dutchess's Sister, must needs be extremely dear to him, and consequently, that it would be very hard for him to consent to his death. The tears which concluded this discourse of the Great Duke's, discover'd the affection he had for that Favorite, and so mov'd the people, that they all cry'd out, *God grant His Highness a long and happy life. God's and the Great Duke's will be done.* The Czaar conceived an extraordinary joy hereat, thanked the people, and highly celebrated the zeal and affection they express'd for his estate and person. Some few dayes after, *Morosou* appeared in publick, among those who attended the Great Duke, upon occasion of a Pilgrimage, which he made to the Monastery of *Troitza*. He went uncover'd, from the Castle to the City gate, saluting the people on both sides with great submissions; and from that time, he laid hold on all occasions to gratifie, and assist those, who address'd themselves to him, in any business they had at Court.

The story we have related confirms the truth of what we have said elsewhere, that the *Muscovites*, how submissive and slavish soever they may be, will endeavour the recovery of their freedom, when the Government becomes insupportable to them, and casts them into despair. I shall here add another later example, which will be the less tedious, in that it hath some dependence on the precedent, and relates very much to what we have seen, much about the same time, in all the other Countries of *Europe*.

The Great Duke of *Muscovy* sent in the year 1649. a solemn Embassy to the Queen of *Sueden*, the chief person whereof was, the *Ocolnitza*, *Boris Jvanouits Puskín*. He had order, among other things, to accommodate the difference, which seem'd to threaten those two States with an inevitable War, proceeding hence, that the Subjects of both Crowns, left their own habitations, and got into the other Kingdom to avoid the payment of their debts. And in regard that for 32 years, that account had not been clear'd, and that there were more *Suedes* in *Muscovy*, than there were *Muscovites* in *Sueden*, it was mentioned in the Treaty made by *Puskín* at *Stockholm*, that for the first thirty years, there should be a liquidation of all accounts, and for the two other, the Great Duke should pay to the Queen and Crown of *Sueden* 190000 *Roubles*, that is 390000 *Crowns*, part in mony, part in Rye, and that the payment should

1636. be made in the Spring of the year 1650. Accordingly, *John de Rodes*, being come at that time to *Moscou*, in the quality of Commissary for the Queen of *Sueden*; receiv'd, in *Copecks*, and *Ducats* 300000. Crowns, and order was sent to *Fædor Amilianou*, a Merchant of *Plescou*, to provide as much Rye as should amount to 90000. Crowns. This interest'd man caus'd all the Rye, wherever it were, to be seized, and permitted not private persons, to buy so much as a bushel without his permission, which good leave of his they were forc'd to buy at a dear rate. The Inhabitants of *Plescou* were so impatient under this oppression, that they not only quarrel'd at the avarice of the *Suedes*, but charg'd *Puskin* with prevarication in his Employment, and perfidiousness towards his Prince. They said that *Morosou* held correspondence with Strangers; and presuming that this negotiation was concluded, contrary to the Great Duke's intention, they endeavour'd to engage the City of *Novogorod* in their quarrel, and went so far on in their work, that some of the chiefest Merchants having declared for them, the *Weywode* had much ado to prevent an insurrection of the whole City. Both these and the others resolv'd that they would stop the money, when it was to be transported into *Sueden*, and that they would no longer endure the Treaty of the Rye, because it would in likelihood starve the Country. With this intention they sent three Deputies to *Moscou*, to wit, a Merchant, a *Cosaque*, and a *Sirelits*, with Order to know whether this Treaty was made, and put in execution with the Great Duke's consent. In the mean time, without expecting the return of their Deputies, they ransack'd *Amilianou's* house, and tortur'd his Wife, to make her confess, where her husband, who had made his escape, had laid up his money. The *Weywode* came, in hope to prevent the disorder, but he was forc'd out of the City, and the neighbouring Nobility invited to come in, and joyn with them against Monopolies and Patentees. These three venerable Deputies were no sooner come to *Novogorod*, but the *Weywode* caus'd them to be put into Irons, and in that posture, sent them to *Moscou*, whether came at the same time the *Weywode* of *Plescou*, and the Merchant *Amilianou*. Intelligence was brought, that those of *Plescou* had robb'd and abus'd a *Suedish* Merchant, whereupon the Great Duke sent back the *Weywode*, and with him a *Bojar*, to endeavour the further prevention of these disorders. Those of *Plescou*, who at first would not receive them, at length opened their Gates, but it was, to put the *Weywode* in prison, and to affront the *Bojare*, who had the imprudence, at so unseasonable a time, to treat them with so much severity, that the people fell upon him with Cudgels, and pursu'd him to a Monastery, where he was so beaten, that he was given over for a dead man.

However, the Great Duke pursu'd the execution of the Treaty made with *Sueden*, and paid money instead of the Rye, sending along with the *Suedish* Commissary a good Convoy of *Stre-lits*, who were to bring him to the Frontiers of *Sueden*. He gave order at the same time to *Juan Nikitonits Gavensky*, to assemble the Nobility of the neighbouring Provinces, and the foot-Regiments of Colonel *Kornichel*, and Col. *Hamilton*, which made up a bove 4000 men, and to besiege the City of *Plescou*. The Inhabitants, at first, pretended to stand out, but their courage and strength soon fail'd them, so that they were forc'd to make an accommodation, at the cost of the Authors of the Sedition, who were put to death, or sent into *Siberia*.

These disorders have occasion'd a great change in the Affairs and Government of *Muscovy*. For, though *Miloslanski* and *Morosou* have much credit, and the Patriarch himself a very great Authority about the Prince, yet have the other *Knez* and *Bojares* a great hand in publick Affairs, and execute their charges every one according to his Birth and Employment. There are commonly some 30 *Bojares* about the Court, though in *Zuski's* time there were numbred 70. In the year 1654. when the War of *Smolensko* was resolv'd on, there were present at the deliberations of that important affair, twenty nine *Bojares*, who names were these.

*Boris Juanonits Morosou*, the Czaar's Fanourite.

*Boris Nikita Juanonits Romanou*, the Czaar's Great Uncle.

*Juan Basilonits Morosou*.

*Knez Juan Andreonits Galizin*.

*Knez Nikita Juanonits Odonski*.

*Knez Jacob Kudemetenits Tzerkaski*.

*Knez Alexei Nikitonits Trubetskoj*.

*Gleeb Juanonits Morosou*.

*Wasili Petrowits Tzemeretou*.

*Knez Boris Alexandrouits Reppenin*.

*Michael Michelonits Soltikon*.

*Basili Juanonits Stresnou*.

*Knez Wasili Simononits Poforouski*.

*Knez Fedor Simononits Kurakin*.

*Knez Furgi Petrouits Buynessou Restonski*.

*Juan Juanonits Solikon*.

*Knez Furgi Alexeonits Dolgoruski*.

1636.

*Gregory Basilouits Puskin.*  
*Knez Fædor Federouits Volchanski.*  
*Laurenti Demetrouits Soltikon.*  
*Ilia Danilouits Miloslanski, the Great Duke's Father-in-Law.*  
*Basili Basilouits Butterlin.*  
*Knez Michael Petrouits Pronski.*  
*Knez Juan Nikitouits Gavenski.*  
*Knez Fædor Furgiouits Chworosting.*  
*Basili Borissouits Tzemereton.*  
*Nikita Alexouits Susin.*

The Ocolnits, or Lords, out of whose number, the *Bojares* are chosen, are,

*The Ocolnitza, Knez Andre Federouits Litwinou Masalskoi.*  
*Knez Juan Federouits Chilken.*  
*Mikifor Sergeouits Zabackin.*  
*Knez Demetri Petrouits Lewou.*  
*Knez Basili Petrouits Lewou.*  
*Knez Simon Petrouits Lewou.*  
*Knez Juan Juanouits Romadanouski.*  
*Knez Steppan Gabrielouits Puskin.*  
*Knez Simon Romanouits Bosarskie.*  
*Bogdan Mattheouits Chyttron.*  
*Peter Petrouits Gowowin.*  
*Juan Andreouits Miloslanski.*  
*Knez Juan Juanouits Labano Rostonski.*  
*Knez Demetri Alexeouits Dalgaruski.*  
*Simon Lukianouits Stresnou.*  
*Michael Alexeouits Artischo.*  
*Precossi Federouits Sochouin.*  
*Knez Boris Juanouits Troikuron.*  
*Alexei Demetrouits Collitziou.*  
*Wasili Alexandrouits Zioglockou.*  
*Juan Basilouits Alferion.*

The persons of greatest quality next the *Bojares*, and the *Ocolnits*, are those whom they call *Dumeny Duorainy*, and *Simbojarski*, that is to say sons of *Bojars*; and they are six in number, to wit,

*Juan Offenassouits Gabrienou.*  
*Fedor Cusmitz Fellissariou.*  
*Bogdan Fedrowits Narbickou.*  
*Sdan Basilouits Conderou.*  
*Basili Federouits Fanou.*  
*Ossonassei Ossipouits Prontzissou,*

The Chancellour and Secretaries of State, are,

*Almas Juanouits, Chancellour.*  
*Simon Juanouits Saborouski.*  
*Larioutou Demetrouits Prontzissou.*

These are the names of the Lords, who, at this day, have the principal charges, and govern the whole Kingdom of *Muscovy*, as well in the Council of State, as for private affairs; as we shall see anon.

The chiefest Dignity of the Kingdom was, heretofore, that of *Sunderstrewoi Coinische*, that is, Lord high Steward of *Muscovy*; but this charge was suppress'd when *Zuski*, who had it, was called to the Crown. The next, which is now the chiefest, is that of *Duorerskoy*, or, *Great Master*, who hath the over-sight and direction of all the great Duke's household. After him comes the *Orusnit schei*, who hath the over-sight of the Arms and Horses, which are for the Great Duke's peculiar service, as also of the Harnesses and other Ornaments, which are used at Entrances, and publick Ceremonies. These three Officers precede all the other *Bojares*, *Ocolnits*, *Dumeni-Diak*, and the Secretaries of State, who, in their turns precede the *Posilnizei*, or him who makes the Great Duke's bed, the *Comkutnoy Klutziom*, that is, the Chamberlain, the



1636. the *Craftzey*, or Carver, the *Stolniki*, or Gentlemen Sewers, the *Strapsi*, or Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber, and the *Duoraini*, or ordinary Gentlemen. The *Silzi*, or Pages, the *Diaki*, or Secretaries, and the *Boddiozrei*, or the Commissaries or Clerks, who are the last in Dignity and Function.

The *Bojares* oblig'd to follow the Court. All the *Knez* and *Bojares*, who have Estates, are oblig'd to set out their Lands, and to give their personal attendance at *Moscou*, where they are oblig'd to be every day at Court, and to smite their foreheads in the Great Duke's presence, who looks on this attendance of theirs as an argument of their fidelity, and an assurance of his Estate being in quiet, which might soon be disturb'd by the authority, these Great men might assume in the Provinces, were they permitted to make their aboad there.

Their expence. Their Houses, or Palaces, are great and magnificent, and they make great ostentation, as well in their expences at their houses, as in cloaths and retinue when they go abroad. When they ride, they have at the bow of their Saddle, a little Timbrel, a foot Diameter, which they ever and anon touch with the handle of their Whip, to make their way through the throngs, which are frequent in the Markets and Streets. The *Knez*, who have no employment at Court, and have not the means to make any great appearance there, retire into the Countrey, where their manner of life is not much different from that of Peasants.

They esteem Nobility. They make very great account of the antient Nobility; not only of that of their own Countrey, but also of others; which they very particularly inquire into, but above all, are very curious in informing themselves of the extraction of those that are sent Ambassadors in *Muscovy*. They never match but with those of an equal rank with themselves.

The *Bojares* are not only seen at publick Ceremonies and Audiences, but effectively participate of the management of publick affairs, and the decision of Law-sutes, wherein they assume the quality of Presidents. The Councils for State-affairs are ordinarily held in the night time, and the Counsellors meet at one in the morning, and are together till nine or ten.

We shall speak of the particular employment of the *Bojares*, when we have first given a short account of the Great Dukes revenue, who, having an Estate of a very vast extent, consisting of a great number of Provinces, must needs be very rich and very powerfull, as well in respect of his Demesn, as the advantages accrewing from the Traffick made by his Factors, and the Taxes, Duties, and Impositions paid by his Subjects. In times of peace, the Impositions are not great, but in the time of War, the Contributions are so excessive, that when the Great Duke *Michael Federovits*, was to besiege the Citie of *Smolensko*, in the year 1632. he oblig'd the subject to pay him the *Pettina*, or fifth part of their Estates; but the present Great Duke, at the beginning of the present War, contented himself with the tenth. The *Knez*, *Bojares*, and Gentlemen pay no Taxes, but are oblig'd, as are also the Monasteries, to raise and maintain a certain number of men, horse and foot, proportionably to their Revenue.

The Customs bring in so considerable a sum, that, some years, the Custom-house of the Citie of *Archangel* it self payes in above 600000. Crowns. The *Crucisnouduor*, that is to say, the Taverns, where the Great Duke allows the selling of Wine, Beer, Hydromel, and Aquavitzæ, pay a vast sum, since he receives from three Taverns of the Citie of *Novogorod* above 12009. Crowns, and that, since this duty came to belong to the Sovereign, they are above a thousand houses, where the Great Duke alone hath all the advantage made by the sale of Wine and Aquaviræ.

*Sables* also, and other Furs bring in much, because he reserves the Traffick thereof wholly to himself, as also that of *Savayar*, and several other Commodities. The Revenue of the money which he lets out to his Factors is not so certain, as well in regard the Merchants profit is not alwayes the same, as for that the Factors sometimes break. At our being there he had put 4000 Crowns in the hands of a Merchant named *Savelli*, who instead of improving it to his advantage, squander'd it away in less than three years, that he lived in *Persia*. The Great Duke, ordered the *Postanick*, *Alexei Sawinouits Romanitsfikou*, who went into *Persia* along with us, to take him, and bring him back into *Muscovy*. Coming to *Scannachy*, we had notice of his being in the City; but the *Postanick's* Interpreter dying, he dissembled his having any order to take him, and desir'd him to be his Interpreter, in that Negotiation, with a design, under that pretence, to bring him to the Frontiers, and so to carry him away. The other, who stood upon his Guard, serv'd him indeed during the *Postanick's* aboad at *Ispahan*, but, when he saw him ready for his departure into *Muscovy*, he got into the *Allacapi* or Sanctuary, was Circumcised, put himself under the protection of *Mahomet*, and continued in *Persia*.

His Expence. The Great Duke farms out all his Demesn, but the revenue arising thence, goes, for the most part, towards the subsistence of the *Strelits*, whereof he is oblig'd constantly to maintain a very great number, as well in the City of *Moscou*, where there are above 16000. of them, as upon the Frontiers; insomuch that the ordinary Militia makes above 100000. men. In a word, if his receipts are great, his expences are proportionable thereto. There hardly passes a year, but he is forc'd to purchase a Peace with the *Tartars*, with great sums of Money and Presents. He does not carry on his Wars at so easie a rate as they do elsewhere. For, taking into his service,

service, a great number of *Germans* and other Foreigners, as well Officers as Souldiers, he is forc'd to pay them extraordinarily, and some times before hand. The Embassies he receives stand him in no less than those he sends, for he defrays all publick persons, and makes them very considerable Presents. The expence of his Table, and the rest of his Court must needs be very great, there being above a thousand Persons who have meat provided for them.

At Dinner and Supper, there is no sounding of Trumpets, as there is elsewhere, but one of the Officers goes to the Kitchin and Sellar-doors, and cries *Godusar Kuschinung*, that is, The Grand Seigneur would be served, and immediately the meat is carried up. The Great Duke sits at the midst of the Table, alone; if he invites the Patriarch or any other great Lord to Dine with him, there is another Table set at the end of his, and they are serv'd with some of the meat which had been presented to the Great Duke, I say, presented, for as much as all making up but one Course of about fifty Dishes of meat, the Gentlemen set them not down upon the Table, but hold them in their hands, till the Carver hath shewed them to the Prince, and he made choice of what he is desirous to eat. If none Dine with him, he sends the Dishes he hath not medled with, to some Lords in the City, or to his Physicians. The present Great Duke hath but one, who is the same that went along with us into *Persia*. He is no superstitious *Galenist*, but, with very good success makes use of Chymical remedies: he is grown so famous, that not only the Prince, but the *Bojares* and other great Lords about the Court employ him. His salary is 124 Crowns, a Month, besides a Pension of six hundred Crowns, *per ann.* and he hath more Wheat, Barly, Honey, and several other Provisions than he can spend in his Family. The Great Duke is never purg'd, nor bled, but the Physician hath a present of a hundred Crowns, and a piece of Satin or Velvet, or a Zimmer of Sables, which is worth no less. The *Bojares* do not give their Physicians money, but a certain number of Fitches or Gammons of Bacon, Sables, Strong-water, and other Provisions. They are obliged to go every day to Court, and to smite their foreheads in the Great Dukes presence, or at least, before those who are entrusted with the care of his Cabinet of Druggs, and other Apothecary's stuff.

There are many Interpreters for other Languages, especially for the *German*, the *Polish*, the *Suedish*, the *Turkish*, and the *Persian*. He whom the Great Duke does chiefly make use of in his most important affairs is a *Dane*, and is so generally vers'd in all the *European* Languages, that coming three years since to the Court of *Vienna*, with *Juan Juanouits Boklakouskoi*, and *Juan Polycarpoussin Michailou*, the Emperor lik'd him so well, that, out of his own inclination, he made him a Nobleman. The Great Duke's Court hath this common with those of other Princes, that Vice takes place of Vertue, and gets nearer the Throne. Those who have the honour to be nearest his person, are withall more subtile, more deceitful, and more insolent than the others that have not. They know very well how to make their advantages of the Princes favour, and look for the greatest respects and humblest submissions imaginable, from those who make their addresses to them; which the others render them, as much to avoid the mischief they might do them, as for the good they expect from them.

The Great Duke's Council is divided into six Classes, or, as they call them, Courts of Chancery. The first is for strangers Affairs; the second for War; the third, for Crown-Lands and the Prince's Revenue; The fourth receives the Accompts of Factors, and those who manage the Taverns. The fifth takes Cognizance of Appeals in Civil Causes; and the sixth, of those, of Criminal Causes.

We said before, that the *Bojares* are not only employ'd in State-affairs, but also in the decision of private differences, at which they preside, alone, or with other Judges, according to the nature of those affairs that present themselves.

They call *Pololskie Pricas*, the place, where they regulate the affairs of Ambassadors, as also the Posts of the Kingdom, and what concerns such Merchants as are strangers. *Almas Juanouits* is Secretary of the Court.

In the second Court, or Chamber, which they call *Roseradni Pricas*, there is a Register kept of the quality and families of the *Bojares* and all the Gentlemen of *Muscovy*, as also of all exploits of War, and the advantages or losses which the Great Duke receives thereby. *Juan Ossonassinouits* hath the Presidency of it.

In the *Pomiestnoi Pricas*, which is the third Chamber, there is a Register kept of all the Mannors held by homage, and the sures concerning the same are judged. There are also received the duties belonging to the Great Duke, from the said Mannors; under the direction of *Fædor Cusmits Fellsariou*.

In the *Casamskoy*, and *Siberskoy Pricas*, that is to say, the fourth and fifth Chamber, the differences of the Provinces of *Casan* and *Siberia*, are judged, and an accompt is kept of the Skins and Furrs, which come from those Provinces to the Great Duke. *Bojar Knez Alexei Nikiteuits* is President of those two Chambers.

1636. In the *Durovoi Pricas*, are judged the differences between the Great Duke's Servants, and what concerns his House; under *Bojar Basilouits Butterlin*.

The *Inafemski Pricas*, is for such Military Officers as are strangers, whose Causes are there try'd; and who in times of Peace do there receive their Orders, from *Ilia Danielouits Miloflanski*, the Great Duke's Father-in-law, who is the President thereof.

The *Reitarskoi Pricas*, judges the Causes of the *Muscovian Cavalry*, and there, in time of Peace, they receive their Orders and pay; to wit, sixty Crowns, *per an.* for every Horseman, under the presidency of the same *Ilia Miloflanski*. This Cavalry consists for the most of Gentlemen, who have very little of Estate, yet hold Mannors by homage and fealty.

In the *Boschoi Pricod*, all the Receivers of the Great Duke's duties give in their accompts once a year. The *Bojar, Knez Michael Petrouits Pronski*, who is President of this *Pricas*, sets a tax on forein Bread and Wine. He hath also the over-sight of Weights and Measures all over the Kingdome. It is also his place, to pay those Strangers that are in the Great Duke's service.

The *Sudnoy Wolodimirskoy*, and the *Sudnoy Moskauskoj Pricas*, have for President the *Bojar, Knez Gregory Simonouits Kurakin*, who, in the former, judges the *Knez* and *Bojares*; in the other, the Gentlemen and Officers of the Court.

The *Bojar, Knez Boris Alexandrouits Reppenin* presides in the *Rosboinoy Pricas*, and judges Robberies upon the High-way, Murthers, and other criminal causes.

*Peter Tychonouits Trachaniflou*, was President in the *Puskarskoj Pricas*, and had the oversight of Founders, Furbishers, Canoniers, Armourers, Smiths and Carpenters, who wrought to the Arsenal; but his place is bestow'd on the *Bojar, Knez Furgi Alexouits Dolgaruskoj*, not only to judge of differences between them, but also to receive their work, and pay them their wages.

The *Jamskoj Pricas* is for the regulation of Stages and Post-masters, and the payment of their Salaries; as also to give passes to those that desire them, and are to have their carriage upon the Great Duke's accompt, under the Presidency of the *Ocolnitza, Juan Andreouits Miloflanski*.

The *Diaks*, Secretaries, Clerks, Captains of the Gates, and Messengers of the several *Pricas*'s have their particular Judge, who is the *Ocolnitza, Peter Petrouits Gollowin*, in the *Tziolobitnoi Pricas*.

The *Semskoy Duor*, or *Selmskoj Pricas*, is for the judgement of all other Civil Causes between the Citizens of *Moscon*. There, are paid the duties arising from places and houses that are sold, as also the rates levied for the reparations of Bridges, Gates, Fortresses, and other publick buildings, under the direction of *Ocolnitza, Bogdan Matheowitz Chitrou*.

The *Golops*, that is to say, Slaves, have a particular Court, where they make their declaration when they are sold, and where they take out a Certificate, when they redeem themselves, or recover their liberty any other way. This is called the *Choloppi Pricas*; the President, *Steppan Juanouits Islenion*.

The place, where an accompt is kept of all the Stuffs, as *Brocado*, Velvet, Satin, Damask, &c. which are for the use of the Court, and whereof Garments are made for the Great Duke to present to forein Ambassadors, and other persons of quality, is called the *Bolchikafni Pricas*.

Under the Magazine is the Treasury, or Exchequer, where all the money that remains at the years end, is put into the Kings Coffers, under the oversight of *Ilia Danilouits Miloflanski*, who is also President of the Chamber, where are judged the Causes of the Great Duke's principal Merchants and Factors, which is called *Casamoi Pricas*.

The *Ocolnitza, Knez Juan Federouits Chilkou*, is the Judge of all Ecclesiastical persons, as well Secular Priests as Monks, who are oblig'd to submit to the temporal Jurisdiction, unless it be in privileg'd Cafes; in the *Monasterski Pricas*.

The Great Duke hath a very vast structure design'd for the Stones, Lime, Wood, and other Materials which are for his own use, which place is called the *Carmenoi Pricas*; and there it is that the *Duorainin, Jacob Juanouits Sagraiskoi* decides the differences between Carpenters, Masons, and other Workmen, and pays them for their work.

The Revenue of *Novogorod* and *Nisenovogorod* is paid in at the *Pricas*, called *Novorodkoi Zetwert*, where the particular receivers of those two Cities give in their accompts. Sometimes the Causes of the Inhabitants of those two places are judged in this *Pricas*. For though ordinarily there be no appealing from the *Weywodes*, yet those who mistrust the success of their business, by the partiality they observe in the *Weywode*, may remove their Causes to *Moscon*. The Chancellor *Almas Juanouits* is the President of it.

The Provinces of *Gallitz* and *Volodimer* have also their particular *Pricas*, for the same purpose, it is called *Galliasko-Volodimirski Pricas*; the President, the *Ocolnitza, Peter Petrouits Gollowin*.

The monies arising from all the Taverns and *Kabacs* of *Muscovy* is paid in at the place called *Nova Zerwert*, where all those who keep publick drinking houses are oblig'd to take the Wine, Hydromel, and Strong-water they sell by retail, and to give an account of the sale of it. There they also punish those who sell any without Licence, as also those who sell or take *Tobacco*, if they be *Muscovites*, the *Germans* and others, Strangers, being permitted the Traffick and use of it. The *Ocolnitza Bogdan Matheowits Chitrou* presides in this *Pricas*. 1636

The *Bojar*, and Master of the Ordinance, *Gregori Basilouits Puskin*, under whose jurisdiction are *Castrom*, *Jareslou*, and other Cities of those quarters, receives their accompts, and decides their differences, in the *Castromskoi Pricas*; as the *Ocolnitza*, *Knez Demetri Basilouits Lewou* does those of *Ustoga*, and *Colmogorod*, in the *Ustogskoi Pricas*.

The same *Gregori Basilouits Puskin* keeps the Jewels of the Crown, and hath the oversight of the *German* Gold-smiths, who make Gold and Silver Plate, and sell precious Stones, and hath his Office for those things in the *Solotoya Alinasnoy Pricas*. He hath also a key to the Great Duke's Magazine of Arms, and administers Justice to those who are employ'd about Arms for his particular use, and pays them, in the *Rusiannoy Pricas*.

The Physicians, Apothecaries, Chirurgeons and Operators, and all of that function are oblig'd to smite their fore-heads in the presence of *Ilia Danilouits Miloslanski*, who is their Overseer, and whom they are to acquaint, if the Great Duke wants any thing that relates to their Professions.

*Tamosini Pricas* is for the receipt of all duties of entrance into the City of *Moscou*, which is made by one of the *Gofes*, accompany'd by two or three Assessors, who give in their accompt thereof to a Chamber called *Bolschoi Prichod*; these *Gofes* are changed every year.

The payment of the tenth penny, towards the War, is made to the *Bojar*, *Knez Michael Petronits Pronski*, and the *Ocolnitza*, *Juan Basilouits Alferion*, in the *Sbora dezatti dengi Pricas*.

The Affairs that have no peculiar *Pricas* have a general one, called *Siskoi Pricas*, under the superintendency of *Knez Furgi Alexowits Dolgaruskoj*.

The Patriarch hath his particular *Pricas's*; to wit; that of *Roscrad*, where a Register is kept of all the Church-goods, and where are the Charters and Archives; that of *Sudny*, where the Patriarch hath his Spiritual Jurisdiction; and that of *Casaunoy*, where the Patriarch's Revenue and Treasure is kept. He hath also his Ecclesiastical Judges and Officers, who give him an account of all their actions.

There is no *Pricas*, but hath its *Diak*, or Secretary, and many Clerks and Coppiers, who all write very well, and are skill'd in Arithmetick, according to their way, in which they make use of Plum-stones instead of Counters. Whence it comes, that there is no Officer but hath about him a certain quantity of them in a little purse. They are forbidden, upon pain of whipping, to take *Poschni*, or Presents; yet they venture to do it; nay their avarice is such, that many times, they will, of themselves, proffer Copies of dispatches, and private resolutions, out of a hope to get somewhat for them. But these proffers are to be mistrusted, for I know by experience, that those people seldom have what they put others in hope of; or if they have, it is so dangerous to communicate it, that for the most part they put off forgeries and supposititious pieces. In the year 1643. the Minister of a Foreign Prince being desirous to have a Copy of my Dispatches, one of the Clerks of the Counsel sold it him at a very dear rate. I was shewn it afterwards; but when at my return to *Holstein*, the Letters were translated, there was nothing of what I had seen in the Copy.

They do not keep a Register of their Acts in Books, but they write them in Rolls of paper pasted together, till they are 25. or 30. ells in length; of which their Offices are full.

At our coming to *Moscou*, we were made believe, that Presents could procure any thing at Court. Indeed I have known some Lords, who though they would not take ought themselves, were not sorry to see any thing sent to their Wives: but I have also known some, who made it appear, they were absolutely incorruptible, and that their fidelity to their Prince was Present-proof, to their great regret, who consider, that where nothing is given, nothing is thence obtain'd.

Justice is administred in the *Pricas's* we have spoken of. The *Bojar*, who presides there, hath his Secretary, and Assessors, and finally determines whatever comes before him. Heretofore the *Muscovites* had but few Laws, and few Customs, according to which all Cases were decided. They concern'd only attempts against the Great Duke's person; Treasons against the State, Adulteries, Thefts, and Debts between private persons. The decision of all other Affairs depended on the breast of the Judge. But in the year 1647. the Great Duke assembled together the most Famous Men of the Kingdom, and caused to be set down in writing, and to be publish'd, several Laws and Ordinances, whereby the Judges are to regulate themselves. They were printed, *in folio*, under the Title of *SOBORNA ULOSIENIA*, that is to say, *Universal and General Right*, for the direction of the *Bojares*. Their administration of Justice.

Heretofore their proceedings were thus. In those Causes, where the parties were not agreed as to the matter of fact, and had no evidence of either side, the Judge asked the Defendant, whe-

1636. ther he would take his Oath, that the matter was as he alleged, or refer it to the Plaintiff's Oath. He who proffer'd to take his Oath, was, once a week, for three weeks one after another, brought before the Judge, who every time, press'd unto him the importance of an Oath, and the sin he would burthen his Conscience withall, if he swore falsly. If, notwithstanding these remonstrances, he still persisted in his readines to take his Oath, though he swore nothing but the truth, yet people look'd on him as an infamous person, would spit in his face, and turn him out of the Church, into which he was never receiv'd afterwards, much less was he admitted to the Communion, unless it were at the point of death. Now, they do not proceed with so much rigour, but only bring him who is to take his Oath before an Image of one of their Saints, where he is asked, whether he will take his Oath upon the salvation of his Soul? If he persist, they give him a little Crucifix to kiss, and afterwards the Saint's Image, which for that purpose, is taken down from the Wall. If the Oath be good, the party who took it is not to be admitted to the Communion for three years, and though he be not treated as an infamous person, yet those of any quality will not easily suffer him in their Company: but a perjurd person, is severely punished; first cruelly whipt, then banish'd. Whence it comes, that the *Muscovites* endeavour all they can to avoid it, though upon any trivial occasion, especially in their dealings, they stick not to swear at every word, and have incessantly in their mouths their *Po Chrestum*, by Christ, making the sign of the Cross at the same time: but there is little credit to be given those kinds of Oaths, as proceeding from deceit and passion. They permit strangers to take their Oaths, according to the rules of their several Religions.

No invention but they make use of to force people to confess the truth by Torture. One of the most cruel, in my opinion, is the *Strapado*, which is often given in this manner. The Malefactor, having his hands ty'd behind him, is wound up into the air, and so hangs, having fasten'd to his feet, a great beam, upon which the Executioner ever and anon gets up, to augment the pain, and further the dislocation of the Members, while the smoak and fire which are made under his feet, burns and stifles him. Sometimes they cause the Malefactor's head to be shaven, and, as he is so hanging, they pour cold water, drop by drop, upon the crown; which is such a torment as no other comes near, not even that of whipping, (which they many times give those in that condition) though they at the same time clap a red-hot Iron upon the stripes.

In ordinary quarrels, he who gives the first blow gets the worst. Murder, committed without any necessity of defence, is punish'd with death. The guilty person is kept six weeks in a very close Prison, and fed only with bread and water; after which he receives the Communion, and hath his head cut off.

Thieves are Tortur'd, that they may discover their Complices, and confess their other Crimes. If it be the first offence, they are whipt from the Castle-Gate to the great Market place, where the offender hath an Ear cut off, and is put into prison for two years. If he offends the second time, he is punish'd in the same manner, and is kept in prison, till he hath company, to be banish'd into *Siberia*. Theft is never punish'd with death in *Muscovy*; but the concealers and receivers fare no better, which is the best course could be taken to bridle the lewd inclinations of that people.

Their ordinary punishments. The ordinary punishments, are flitting the nostrils, Whipping, and the *Baltoki*. The last is not always infamous and publick; yet is there not any Master of a Family, but gives it his Children and Servants. He who is to receive this Chastisement, puts off his *Kaftan*, and, having only his shirt on, layes himself down upon the ground, on his belly, and then two men set themselves cros upon him, one upon his Neck, the other upon his Feet, having each of them a little Wand or Switch in his hand, wherewith they beat him upon the Back, much after the manner that Fell-mongers beat their Furs, to get out the Worms. They ordinarily have their Nostrils slit who have taken Tobacco, in snuff, contrary to the Great Duke's prohibition.

Whipping as it is given in *Muscovy*, is one of the most barbarous punishments that ever were heard of. Sept. 24. 1634. I saw eight men and one woman Whipt, for selling of Aquavitæ and Tobacco. The Executioner's man took them up one after another upon his back, being stript down to the waste, and having their feet ty'd together with a Cord, which passing between his Legs that held them up, was held by another servant of the Executioner's, so fast, that they were not able to stir. The Executioner stood three paces off, with a Bull's Pizzel, having fasten'd to the end of it, three straps or thongs of an Elk's skin, not tann'd, and consequently as sharp as a Rasour, with which he lay'd on their backs with all his strength, so as that the blood gush'd out at every lash. The men had each of them 25. or 26. till the Clerk, who had in a Note what number of lashes they were to receive, cry'd *Polno*, that is to say, enough. The Woman had but 16. yet did she fall into a swoond. Being thus disciplin'd, so as that their backs were in a manner slic'd and slash'd all over, yet were they all tyed by the Arms, two and two together, those who had sold Tobacco having a little horn full of it, and those who had sold Aquavitæ, a little bottle about their Necks, and whipt through the Citie, and after they had walk'd them above half a league about, they were brought back to the place of their first execution, and dismiss'd. This is so cruel a punishment, that some die of it, as we

said before of the son of General *Herman Schein*. Some after they are thus punish'd wrap themselves up in the skin of a sheep newly kill'd. 1636.

Heretofore these punishments were not infamous, and those who had pass'd through the Executioner's hands, were admitted into the best Companies, as was also the Executioner himself, whose Profession was accounted so honorable, that sometimes even Merchants quitted theirs, to serve the Magistrate at Executions, and would buy the employment, and after certain years sell it again to others. The advantages of it ly in this, that the Executioner is not only paid by the Judge, but gets money also out of the Criminal, to be more gently treated, though indeed, the greatest profit he makes comes from the *Aquavite*, which he sells underhand to the Prisoners. But now this employment is not much courted, since the *Muscovites* have begun to learn somewhat of civility from their Neighbours. Nor is the Executioner permitted to sell his Office, but it must continue in his family, which failing, the Butchers are oblig'd to recommend to the place one of their body.

All we said of the cruelty of their punishments is yet below what they inflict on such as cannot pay their debts. He who pays not at his time, mentioned in the Bond, is put into a Sergeants house, having a certain further time to make satisfaction. If he fail, he is carried to prison, whence he is every day brought out, to the place before the Chancery, where the common Executioner beats him upon the thin-bone with a Wand about the bigness of a man's little finger, for a whole hour together. That done, he is return'd to prison, unless he can put in security to be forth-coming the next day at the same hour, to be treated in the same manner, till he hath made satisfaction. And this is executed with much rigour upon all fors of persons, what condition or quality soever they be of, Subjects, or Foreigners, Men, or Women, Priests, or lay persons. 'Tis true, some present being made to the Executioner, he suffers the Debtor to put a thin Iron-plate within his boot, to receive the blows; or it may be he smites more gently. If the Debtor have not to satisfie, he must be sold, with his Wife and Children, to the Creditor.

As to the Religion of the *Muscovites*, before we enter into the discourse of it, we shall say, that there have been *Lutherane* Doctours in *Sueden* and *Livonia*, who have made it a problematical question, whether the *Muscovites* were Christians or not? They might as well have made it disputable in their Acts, whether the *Muscovites* are men; since there is not so great a difference between their Religion and that of other Christians, as there is between their Morality and manner of life, and that of many other men: but as laughter and speech makes them men, so Baptism and their external profession of the *Christian* Religion, denominates them Christians. If a man would take their word for it, they are the only true Christians in the World, since they only have been baptized, whereas others have been only sprinkled; which is the reason, they receive no Profelyte, till he be re-baptized. They ground their Religion on the Books of the Old and New Testament, and they use Sacraments. Their Translation of the Bible is that, which they call of the seventy Interpreters, which some few years since they have got Translated and Printed in their own Language. They permit not that a man should bring the whole Bible to Church, for fear of profaning it by several, not over-modest, passages they find in the Old Testament: whence it comes they bring only the New, and some Verses taken out of the Psalms and Prophets; but in their houses they are permitted to read the whole Bible. In the explication of the Bible, they give much authority to St. *Cyrl Bp. of Jerusalem*, whom they call *Quirila Ferusalimski*, and who writ a Catechism, under the Emperour *Theodosius*. He flourish'd about the end of the fourth age, and is not to be confounded with *Cyrl of Alexandria*, whose memory the *Greeks* celebrate on the 9. of *June*, whereas they celebrate the Festival of the other upon the 18 of *March*, as may be seen in their Menologies. The other Fathers, whose authority they follow, are *Juan Domaskin*, (*John Damascene*) *Grigori Bogoslona*, (*St. Gregori Nazianzen*) *Juan Solotauska*, (*St. John Chrysostome*) and *Ephrem Syrin*, *Ephraim*, Deacon of the Church of *Edessa*, in *Syria*. They relate of him, as also does *Gerard Vossius*, who hath Translated him into *Latin*, that an Angel having presented to him a Book writ in Golden Characters, which no body could open, he immediately deriv'd those illuminations from it, which are at this day apparent in the books he hath publish'd. Besides him, they have also another particular Doctor, named *Nicholas Sudatworits*, who hath writ certain spiritual Treatises. The *Muscovites* have so great a Veneration for this man's memory, that it is not long since, that Wax-Candles were lighted before his Picture, for which they had built a particular Chapel, in the great street which leads to *Twere Gate*: but both were destroy'd by the late fire.

*S. Athanasius* Creed is their rule of Faith. They believe in *God the Father*, as Creator of all the World, in *God the Son*, as Saviour and Redeemer of all Mankind; and in *the Holy Ghost*, as Sanctifier of all the Faithful.

'Tis true, their Religion is full of abundance of chaffy Superstitions; in that they consider the *Virgin Mary*, the *Evangelists*, the *Apostles*, and an infinite number of other *Saints*, not only as simple Intercessors, as the most intelligent affirm, but also as causes, and co-operators

1636. tors of their Salvation. There is no *Muscovite* but gives his Saints and their Images, the honour due only to God, who is so jealous thereof, that he treats that false Worship as spiritual Whoredom. The ignorance of the meaner sort of people is so gross, that they place all Religion in the honours and veneration they give their Images. It is also all the instructions they give their Children, who in order to devotion, learn only to stand with great respect before those Images to say their Prayers. Their good works, (which they believe meritorious) are, building of Monasteries and Churches, and giving Alms; besides which they do nothing whereby a man might judge of their Faith by their works.

They stand very much upon their being Members of the *Greek Church*, and their Histories and Annals say, that Christian Religion was planted in *Russia* in the Apostles times. That St. *Andrew* leaving *Greece*, embark'd upon the River *Boristhenes*, and came, by the Sea of *Ladoga*, to *Novogorod*, where he preach'd the Gospel. That, since that time, *Christian Religion* had been absolutely destroy'd, by the *Tartars* and other Pagans, who became Masters of all *Muscovy*; and that about the year 989. *Wolodimer*, Great Duke of *Russia*, having gain'd very great victories over his Neighbours, and re-united several Provinces to his Crown, became so considerable, that *Basilius*, and *Constantinus Porphyrogenetes*, Emperours of *Constantinople*, sent a solemn Embassy to congratulate and complement him. That brought him first acquainted with the *Christian Religion*, which he afterwards embraced, and was baptized. The Bishops and Priests sent thither by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* further instructed and baptized the people, who have ever since made profession of the *Greek Religion*.

*Johannes Curopalates*, who writ part of the *Byzantine History*, and liv'd about that time; says, that this Conversion was not effected without miracle, and that the Bishops faith prevail'd more upon the spirits of these *Barbarians*, than the preaching of the Gospel. For being not able to comprehend the wonderful things which are said of our Saviours life, they desired a proof of that promise he makes to the faithful, of giving them by the Father what ever they should desire in his name. The Bishop undertook it, and told them, that he had so great an assurance of the Word of God, that they could not desire any thing, which his prayer should not obtain from God. Whereupon they said, that since God had preserv'd *Daniel's* companions in the fiery Furnace, he might as well prevent the Bible, which is full of all those marvelous things, from being consumed by fire. The Bishop was content to stand to this tryal, and so cast the Bible into a great fire, where having lyen till the fire was all spent, the Book was taken out as untouch'd as when it was cast in. *Cedrenus* and *Zonaras* confirm the truth of this story, and say that *Wolodimir* was so moved at this miracle, that he immediately abolish'd all Idolatry, and banish'd it his Territories.

Hence it comes that the *Muscovites* love the *Greeks*, and have a kindness for them; and do them all the good they can, when any occasion offers it self. In the year 1649. The Patriarch of *Jerusalem* came to *Moscon*, and brought the Great Duke some of the earth of our Saviour's Sepulchre, though it is known 'twas cut out of a Rock, and some holy-water from *Jordan*. He was most magnificently receiv'd, and conducted by the whole Clergy to his audience, which the Great Duke gave him, together with a Present of above 100000 Ducats: but he was so unfortunate in his return, as to fall into the hands of some *Turks*, who took away all had been given him. There come almost every year to the *Czaar's* Court, some of the *Greek* Priests or Monks, to sell their Reliques, which they put off at very good rates.

The *Muscovites* do all profess the same Religion, which being as it were particular to them; may be said to extend as far as the Great Duke's Dominions do; unless it be, that it is also exercised at *Narva*, under the Jurisdiction of the King of *Sueden*, and that the *Tartars* have also their *Mahometan* and *Pagan* Religion, along the *Volga*, and beyond *Astrachan*, upon the *Caspian* Sea. There are not any, not even among their Monks and Priests, that can give any reason of their belief; because they have not the Word of God preached unto them; upon which accompt it is, that the Patriarch suffers them not to dispute of Religion, or inquire into that of foreigners. Some few years since, a Monk of *Nisenovogorod* had some conference with a *Protestant* Minister; but the Patriarch coming to hear of it, sent for him, and cast him into prison, where he must have endur'd a great deal of misery, had he not had the wit to say, that the Minister had discover'd some inclinations to the *Muscovian* Religion, and would, in all likelihood, be converted.

Their Characters they have from the *Greeks*, as well as their Religion; but as they have altered the later, so also have they changed and augmented the former, as may be seen by the Table we shall here give of them.

1636.

Characteres linguæ Rutenicæ

А а	Aas	A	О о	on	o	Ѣ ѣ	Jet	ie
Б б	Buki	b	П п	Pokoi	p	Е е	ie	ieh
В в	Wedi	w	Р р	Ertzi	r	Ѧ ѧ	ito	iu
Г г	glagol	g	С с	Stowo	s	Ѩ ѩ	iús	iús
Д д	dobro	d	Т т	Twerdo	t	А а	Ace	ce
Е е	rest	e	У у	Sik	ú	Ѭ ѭ	kfi	ks
Ж ж	schüwet	sch	Ф ф	phert	ph	Ѱ ѱ	psi	ps
С с	Sielo	s	Х х	Chir	ch	Ѳ ѳ	phita	
З з	Zemla	z	Ц ц	ot	ot	Ѵ ѵ	ischil	ia u
И и	Ische	i	Ч ч	či	č	Numeri		
І і	Ii	ij	Ш ш	Tzerf	t	1	2	3
К к	kakoi	k	Щ щ	Scha	sch	4	5	6
Л л	liidi	l	Ъ ъ	Tscha	tſch	7	8	9
М м	Muslori	m	Ѣ ѣ	Jer	j	10	11	12
Н н	Naas	n	Ѧ ѧ	Peri		13	14	15
			Ѩ ѩ			16	17	18
			Ѭ ѭ			19	20	21
			Ѱ ѱ			22	23	24
			Ѳ ѳ			25	26	27
			Ѵ ѵ			28	29	30
						31	32	33
						34	35	36
						37	38	39
						40	41	42
						43	44	45
						46	47	48
						49	50	51
						52	53	54
						55	56	57
						58	59	60
						61	62	63
						64	65	66
						67	68	69
						70	71	72
						73	74	75
						76	77	78
						79	80	81
						82	83	84
						85	86	87
						88	89	90
						91	92	93
						94	95	96
						97	98	99
						100		

These Characters they make use of as well in their printed Books, as Writings, their Language being peculiar to themselves, but coming so near the *Sclavonian*, and the *Polish*, that he who hath one will find it no great difficulty to learn the other. It hath nothing common with the *Greek*, though indeed in their Liturgy there are some words, borrow'd from the *Greeks*, but they are not used any where else. We said before, that the *Muscovites* in their Schools learn only to read and write in their own Language, and care not for the Learning of any other: but within these few years, they have, with the Patriarch's consent, opened a School, where *Greek* and *Latine* is taught, under the direction of a natural *Grecian*, named *Arsenius*. It is not yet known, what may be expected from it, but certain it is that there are among the *Muscovites* those that want neither ingenuity nor an inclination to Study, and would learn any thing, did they but meet with any body to teach them. *Almas Juanovits*, the present Chancellor, or Chief Secretary of State, was so happy in his youth, as to have travell'd into *Turkey* and *Persia*, and learn'd the Languages of those two Countries so well, that he needs no Interpreter, when he hath ought to do with the *Grand Seigneur*, or King of *Persia's* Ministers. The *Danish* Interpreter we spoke of before, hath translated into their Language, certain *Latin* and *French* Books, which have taken so well, that it is hoped, the Courtiers will, in time, apply themselves to the study of those Languages, which can acquaint them with such excellent things.

All their exercise of Religion consists principally, in Baptism, Reading of the Word of God in the Church, going to Mass, praying to Saints, making reverences and inclinations before their Images, Processions, Pilgrimages, Fasting certain dayes in the year, Confession and Communion.

They think Baptism so much the more necessary, in that they think it the only door through which a man must enter into Christ, and so into Paradise. They acknowledge themselves conceived and born in sin, and that God hath instituted Baptism for their Regeneration, and to cleanse them, by water, from their original impurity. Whence it is that they baptize their Children as soon as they are born. If the child be weak, he is immediately baptized, yet not in the same room where the Woman lyes in: but if well, he is carried to Church by the Godfather and Godmother. The Priest receives him at the Church door, signs him with the sign of the Cross in the forehead, and gives him the Benediction, saying, *The Lord preserve thy coming in and thy going out.* The Godfathers deliver the Priest nine Wax-candles, which he lights and fastens cross the Font, which stands in the midst of the Church. He incenses the Godfathers,



1636. thers, and consecrates the water with many ceremonies. Then he makes a Proceſſion together with the Godfathers, who have wax-candles in their hands, about the Font. The Clark goes before carrying the Image of *St. John*, and they go about it three times, the Priest in the interim reading out of a Book, That done, the Priest asks the Godfathers, the name of the Child, who give it him in writing. He puts the paper upon an Image, which he holds upon the Child's breast, and having muttered over certain prayers, he asks the God-father, whether the Child believes in God the Father, Son, and holy Ghost? Then they all turn their backs to the Font, to shew their aversion and horreur for the three questions which the Priest is to make them afterwards; to wit, whether the Child forsakes the Devil, whether he forsakes his Angels, and whether he forsakes his Works? The Godfathers answer to every question, yes, and spet so many times upon the ground. That done, they face about to the Font, and then the Priest, having asked them whether they promise to bring up the Child in the true *Greek Religion*, exorcises him, by putting his hands upon the Child, saying, *Get out of this Child thou unclean Spirit, and make way for the holy Ghost*, and by blowing three times cross, upon the Child, to drive away the Devil, by whom they believe Children are really possessed before Baptism. I have been told, that now, the exorcism is performed at the Church-door, lest the Deuil, when he comes out of the Child, should profane the Church. Then, he cuts off a little of the Child's hair, and puts it into a Book, and having asked the Godfathers, whether they bring that Child to be baptised, he takes him, being stark naked, into his arms, and dips him three times into the water, pronouncing the ordinary words of the Sacrament, *I baptise thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Ghost*. After the Baptism, he puts a corn of Salt in the Child's mouth, makes the sign of the Cross, in the fore-head, upon the hands, the breast, and the back, with an Oil purposely consecrated for that use, and, putting a clean Shirt about him, says, *Thou art as clean and as clear from thy Original Sin as this Shirt*. The Ceremonies are concluded with a little Cross of Gold, Silver, or Lead, according to the ability of the Parents, such as our Bishops wear, which the Priest hangs about the Child's neck, with so strict an Obligation to wear it all his life time, that if it be not found about him at his death, they would not bury the Carcass, but drag it to the common Dung-hill. The Priest does also assign the Child a particular Saint, whose Image he delivers to the Godfathers, and charges them to oblige the Child, when he is come to years of discretion, to have a particular devotion for his Patron. Then he embraces, and kisses the Child, and the Godfathers, and exhorts them to love one another, but above all things that they take heed of inter-marrying. If it happens there are many Children to be Christned at the same time, the Font is emptied so often as there are Children to be baptised, and other water is consecrated; it being their persuasion, that the former being soil'd with the impurity of that Child's Original Sin who had been baptised before, is not fit to cleanse a second, much less a third. They will not by any means heat this water by fire but, when it is very cold, put it into a hot place to make it a little warmer. Persons of age that are to be baptised, such as Apostate *Christians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*, receive their Baptism in a Brook or River, where they are plunged over head and ears, be it as cold as it will, nay sometimes they break the Ice to get them into the water. Thus, above all others, are treated those whom they call *Chaldeans*, or *Chaldaans*. These are a sort of rascally fellows, who get leave of the Patriarch to disguise themselves, by putting on Vizards, and to run up and down the streets from the 18. of *December*, till *Twelve-tide*, with Fireworks, wherewith they set fire in their hair and beards whom they meet. Their main spleen is against the Peasants, whom they force, every time they are met, to pay a *Copeck* ere they get out of their hands: and this they exact with such insolence, that I have seen them set a load of Hay on fire, and burn the Peasant's beard and face, because he made some difficulty to give it them. They are all disguis'd, and have on their heads great wooden hats, fantastically painted, daubing their beards with honey, that the sparkles might not fasten in them. These artificial fires they make of a powder which they call *Plana*, made of a certain herb not known elsewhere. It makes a noble and very delightful flame, especially in the night. But of these hereafter, when we come to treat of the *Persian Fire-works*. These men, as they say, represent those who heated the Oven, into which *Shadrach*, *Mesak*, and *Abednego* were cast, by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar*.

These people are treated as profane persons, and are numbred among Pagans and Infidels; so that being in a state of inevitable damnation, they must necessarily be reconciled to God, and enter into the Church by Baptism. To that end they pitch on *Twelf-day*, as that on which sometimes happened the vocation of the Gentiles, and afterwards, they are as clean, and become as holy as the best *Christians*, who are ordinarily baptized but once, whereas one of these *Chaldaans* may have been baptised ten or twelve times. The insolences committed by them occasioned the prohibitions made by the late Patriarch, that any should put on Vizards or disguise themselves.

Those who are to profess the *Muscovian Religion* are oblig'd to go, for six weeks, into a Monastery, where the Monks instruct them, and teach them their Prayers, the manner of honouring the Saints, of doing reverence to the Images, and making the signs of the Cross. Then they

they are brought to the place where they are to be baptis'd, where they are obliged to abjure their former Religion, to detest it as Heretical, and to spit as often as it is named. After their Baptism, they are clad in *Muscovian* habits, being presented with a noble Vestiment from the Great Duke, who also allows them a Pension suitable to their quality. 1636.

There is a great number of Apostates at *Moscou*, where many forein Souldiers, especially *French*, were rebaptis'd, after the War of *Smolensko*, about 25 years since, though they were not acquainted with the Language of the Countrey, nor had any knowledge of the *Muscovian* Religion. Which may in some measure be excusable in common Souldiers, who mind not much what they are to expect in the other World; but my wonder is, how persons of Quality, such as want neither Ingenuity nor Judgement, should be induc'd to Apostatize, and embrace a contrary Religion, meerly for subsistence sake, as the Baron *de Raymond*, and Monsieur *Groin*, *French* Gentlemen, Colonel *Alexander Lesley*, and Count *Slakof*. This last came in the year 1640. to *Holstein*, and thence went into *Denmark*, where he pretended himself descended from the house of *Slick* in *Bohemia*, and that he had lost his Estate upon the account of Religion; which the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holstein* believing, gave him Letters of recommendation to the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. He was no sooner come to *Moscou*, but he gave out, that it was purposely to change his Religion, and to be a servant to his *Czaarick* Majesty. The Patriarch, and *Muscovian* Lords were the more glad to receive him because he was accounted among them, a person of noble extraction, and great worth, which yet was further heightned in him by his being vers'd in several Languages, especially the *Latin* and *Polish*. They receiv'd him with great joy, caus'd him to be baptis'd, and the Great Duke gave him, with the name of *Leo Alexander Slick*, and the quality of *Knez*, a Pension of 200. Crowns a moneth. He made his Addresses to the Princess *Irene Michaelouna*, and was so fond as to think, the Great Duke would have bestow'd his own Sister on him; so that hearing, there were two persons of quality dispatch'd away to Negotiate the Princess's marriage with a forein Prince, he fell into such a melancholy, that he came not to himself again, till they had given him a Daughter of one of the greatest *Bojares* in the Kingdom. The King of *Denmark* coming afterwards to hear of this man's carriage, and understanding withall, that, far from being of the Illustrious house of *Slick*, he was a subject of Count *Gaspar's*, of *Denhof*, in *Poland*, and that he had surpriz'd him in his recommendatory Letters, he sent notice thereof to the Great Duke, who reproach'd him with his dissimulation and imposture, but suffer'd him to enjoy what he had bestow'd on him, which he does still, under the name of *Knez Leo Alexandrouits Slakoujeskie*.

Colonel *Lesley* fell into that misfortune out of weakness. He had in that quality serv'd the Great Duke, during the first War of *Smolensko*, by which he had gotten a very great sum of money. But those of his profession being not alwayes the best husbands, he soon spent what grew every day less and less. To repair the breaches of his fortune, he thought it his best course to return to *Moscou*, which he did upon occasion of an Embassy which the Queen of *Sueden* sent, some time since, to the Great Duke, whereof *Eric Gillenstiern*, a Senator of the Kingdom was the chief. But for as much as there was at that time, no likelyhood of any War in *Muscovy*, and that the Great Duke was unwilling to burthen himself with Pensions, *Lesley* sent him word, that he would be content with some Lands, which he would make what advantage he could of, and thereupon got a noble Mannor upon the *Wolga*. He was now in such a condition, as that he might have lived like a Lord all the rest of his dayes, if his Wife's niggardly humour had not exasperated the Countrey-women against them. She treated them so hardly, that being not any longer able to endure it, they complain'd of her, alleging that she forc'd them to eat flesh on fasting dayes, that she allow'd them not the time to make their inclinations before the Images, much less to go to Church, and, what was worst of all, that she had taken the Images from the Walls, and cast them into the fire. There needed no more to make her odious to the whole Nation. They immediately sent for *Lesley* and his whole Family, and the Countrey-women, and the Colonel's Wife were brought face to face; she confess'd indeed, that she had forc'd them to work hard, but deny'd all the rest. All the Servants that were strangers took their Oaths on her behalf, and yet the others proffering to make good their accusation by enduring the torture, she could not so far clear herself, but that the Patriarch, taking cognizance of the business, oblig'd the Great Duke to take those Lands out of the Strangers hands, and to put out an act, whereby it should not be lawful for any to be possess'd of such Mannors if they were not *Muscovites*, either by Birth or Religion. *Lesley* finding himself reduc'd to his extremity, and having not wherewith to maintain his Children and Family, declar'd, that if the Great Duke would continue him in the said Mannor, he and his Family would change their Religion. They take him at his word, and he, his Wife and Children are put into a Monastery, where they are instructed and re-baptized. *Ilia Danilonits Miloslauski* and his Wife were pleas'd to answer for them at their Baptism, and to be at the charge of their Wedding, it being necessary they should be married a-new. The Great Duke made them great Presents, and, among other things, bestow'd on them, the sum of six thousand Crowns in ready money. But the Peasants

1636. hearing, that, by this change of Religion, they were to be reduc'd to their former slavery, petition'd His Majesty that they might have another Lord, and pitch'd upon Monsieur *Groin*, who had revolted at the same time, and had some pretence to those Lands, as having had a promise made him of some of that nature. So that *Lesley* was forc'd to content himself with a Pension of 90. Crowns *per menssem*, which is the ordinary pay of a Colonel in times of Peace, and another somewhat less for his Son.

The admirable constancy of an English Gentlewoman.

I shall here make a short digression for a Lady's sake, who hath, by an admirable constancy, made it appear, that, if Men are many times subject to the weakness of Women, it sometimes happens that Women have those Virtues which may be exemplary to Men. There is this to be said in commendation of the *Muscovites*, that they never force any to profess their Religion, unless that in a Family, the Husband or Wife be of it, in which case they suffer not the other to continue his former profession. We said, the Baron *de Raymond* was one of those that chang'd their Religion after the first War of *Smolensko*. He was married to an English Gentleman's Daughter ( who had liv'd many years at *Moscou*, and whose name was *William Barnesley*, being the handsomest Woman of any Stranger that was in the Country ) and had chang'd his Religion rather out of fickleness, and to comply with the Great Duke, than out of any conscientious motive, was re-baptised, and took the name of *Juan* instead of that of *Peter*, which had been given him at his first Baptism. According to the Law of the Country, his Wife was to follow his Example, which to effect, her Husband used all means imaginable, but found so great a constancy on the other side, that he was forc'd to recurr to the Aukority of the Great Duke and Patriarch. These at first went mildly to work, offering her very great advantages in their Religion: but the young Gentlewoman, though but 15. years of age, was inflexible, cast her self at the Great Duke's feet, and entreated him rather to take away her life, than force her to embrace a Belief, which she was not satisfy'd of in her Conscience. The Father us'd the same submissions, but the Patriarch put him off with kicks, and told him that she was to be treated as a Child, that she knew not what was for the good of her Soul, and that she must be baptized whether she would or no. Accordingly she was put into the hands of certain Religious Women, who violently dragg'd her to a Brook, where she was re-baptized, notwithstanding the protestations she made, that that pretended Baptism, which they then gave her against her own consent, could not blot out the Character, which her first true Baptism had imprinted in her Soul. When they plunged her in the water, she drew one of the Religious Women in along with her, and when they would oblige her to detest her former Religion, she spit in their faces, and would never abjure. After her Baptism, they sent her to *Stuatka*, where her Husband was *Weywode*, and there she stay'd till her Husband's three years Government was expired, who dying soon after his return to *Moscou*, she thought she might re-assume her former Habit, as she was a Stranger, and profess her former Religion, which was the *Protestant*. But that would not be permitted, her two Sons were taken from her, and she, with a little Daughter, was sent to the Monastery of *Beloffora*, some 10. or 12. leagues from *Moscou*, where she liv'd five years among the Nuns, and was never suffer'd to speak with any one that could give her the least account of her Friends, or Children. During all that time, she heard from them but once, by the means of a Tiler, a *German*, who, under pretence of calling his Boy, and shewing him the Tiles he wanted, directed the disconsolate Lady to a place where she should find Letters. The Patriarch dying, she got out of the Monastery, and his Successor allow'd her the liberty of her Conscience at her own House, as also to give and receive visits: but they would never permit her to go to Sermons. I often visited her while she was in that condition, and have heard, that this Virtuous Lady died some two years since, firm and constant in the profession of her Religion to the last gasp. To which I may add, by the way, that it is not long since, that her Father *William Barnesley* died in *England*, having attained the age of 126. years, after he had married a second Wife, at 100.

Those *Muscovites*, who change their Religion in other Countries, and would return to their Communion, must be first re-baptized; which is the more observable, in that the *Greek* Religion, though she approves not the Baptism of the *Latin* Church, yet seems to be satisfy'd with the former which they might have receiv'd in their Church, so as not to oblige Converts to re-baptization upon their change of Religion.

Their Festivals and Feasts are regulated and certain, and they observe them very strictly. Till within these few years, the *Muscovites* thought they kept Holy-day well enough, when they had been at Mass in the morning, though they spent the rest of the day in their ordinary Employments; insomuch that at the time of our first Embassy, upon Sundayes, and Holy-dayes, shops were open, and Merchants and Tradesmen were at work; it being, as they said, only for great Lords to mind their enjoyments upon Holy-dayes. But the present Patriarch, hath ordered shops to be shut, not only upon Sundayes, but also on Wednesdayes and Fridayes, which are their Fasting dayes, not permitting the Taverns to sell Wine or Aquavitæ in Service time.

Their great Festivals, besides Sunday, are thirteen, and, according to their year, which begins the first day of *September*, stand in this order;

The

The 8. of September, *Prasnick rosofua priziste bogorodice*, that is to say, the Feast of the Nativity of the Blessed Mother of God. 1636.

The 14. of September, *Ozemirna wofdui senja Chresta*, The Exaltation of the Cross.

The 21. of November, *Vedenja priziste bogorodice*, the Oblation of the blessed Mother of God.

The 25. of December, *Rosofua Christoua*, the Nativity of our Lord.

The 6. of January, *Boje jaulenia*, or *Creschenia*, the Epiphany.

The 2. of February, *Sratenia Gospada Boga*, Candlemas-day.

The 25. of March, *Blaganescenia priziste bogorodice*, the Annunciation of our Lady:

*Werbna Wofcreschenia*, Palm-Sunday.

*Welukoiden*, or *Wofcreschenia Christoua*, Easter-day, or the Resurrection of Christ.

*Wofnescenia Christoua*, the Ascension of Christ.

*Schiestuie swetaga Duchu*, Pentecost, or the sending of the Holy Ghost.

The 6. of August, *Preobrosiena gospada Christoua*, the manifestation of the Glory of Jesus Christ, upon the Mountain.

The 15. of August, *Uspenia priziste bogorodice*, the Ascension or Assumption of the Mother of God.

They celebrate the Feast of the *Trinity*, the morrow after *Pentecost*, and that of *All-Saints*, upon the Sunday following.

No day in the year but is the particular Feast of some Saint, sometimes of two or three, but the people observe them not. Only Ecclesiasticks are oblig'd to say the Offices of those dayes. They have their perpetual *Almanack*, according to the *Old-style*, wherein, without any trouble, they find all the Feasts both moveable and immoveable.

Upon the great Festivals and Sundayes, they go thrice to Church; first in the morning, before day, to *Mattens*, which they call *Sasterin*; at noon, to the *Obedny*; and in the evening, to *Wadschemi*, or *Vesspers*. The whole Service consists in the reading of certain Chapters out of the Bible, Psalms, and St. *Athanasius's* Creed: whereto they sometimes add a Homily out of St. *Chryostome*, and certain Prayers, which they sing, much after the same manner as *Antiphona's* are sung, saying ever and anon their *Gospodi Pomilui*, Lord have mercy upon me, which the people repeats three times, making the sign of the Cross. This done, the Priest goes up to the Altar, attended by a Clerk, and sayes the Office, according to the Liturgy of great St. *Basil*. He pours Claret-Wine and Water into the Chalice, with some little bits of Bread, consecrates them, and sayes certain Prayers, which ended, he takes out the Bread with a spoon, but gives not of it to any other, unless some sick Child be brought, to whom he gives the Communion. If the Priest hath known his Wife that day, he is not to come near the Altar, but must get Mass said by another. The people stand all the service time, and incessantly bow themselves before the Images, pronouncing the *Gospodi Pomilui*. They read only the bare Text of the Bible, and certain Homilies, as we said before, giving this reason for it, that the Holy Spirit having grounded the Church upon the pure Word of God, without any explication, neither are they to trouble themselves with any, since that the different interpretations of it, do partly occasion the Errours and Heresies, whereby the Church is divided. About five years since, the Protopope of *Morum*, taking upon him to Preach, and making use of God's Word, to exhort the people to Piety, the Patriarch deposed him, together with all the other Priests that would have follow'd his example, excommunicated them, and banish'd them into *Siberia*.

They have made a certain Book, wherein they treat the Histories of the Gospel after a strange manner, and adulterate them with so many fabulous, impious, and impertinent circumstances, that it is not to be much admired that vice and sin reign among them, when they are furnish'd with examples thereof in their Books of Devotion. This minds me of a story, which the *Danish* Gentleman, I have elsewhere spoken of, relates in his Travels into *Muscovy*. Discoursing one day with his *Priest*, concerning matters of Religion, the *Muscovite*, whose name was *Fædor*, a man well stricken in years, told him, that there was no great harm in contracting a habit of sinning daily, provided a man had an intention to repent him of it at the point of death, and brought for his reason the example of *Mary Magdalene*. This *Mary*, said he, was a profess'd *Curtezan*, so that it is not to be doubted but she offended God very often. Yet it happened one day, she met a man upon the high-way, who desired of her that kindness which she had not deny'd any other: but, those even of her profession being not alwayes in the same humour, she would do nothing, till such time as the man desir'd her to do it for God's sake: That then she satisfy'd his desire, and that doing, for God's sake, what she was unwilling to do out of complaisance, the action became so meritorious, that she had not only expiated all her other Sins, by that Act of Charity, but also deserv'd to be put in red letters in the Books of the Saints. There is no Evangelical story which they have not thus adulterated, and dress up in circumstances no less abominable.

They are all bare in the Church, even the Great Duke himself. Only their Priests have on their *Skusia*, or Caps, which are given them at their Consecration. When they make their In-

1636, inclinations to the Images, they often make the sign of the Cross, with three fingers of the right hand, touching, first, the fore-head, then the breast, then the right shoulder, and lastly the left. And that it might not be thought this is done without Mystery, they say, the three fingers signify the *Trinity*, putting them to the fore-head, they would signify, that *Christ* is Ascended into Heaven; to the breast, that a man should love God with all his heart; and the passing of them from the right shoulder to the left, puts them in mind of the day of Judgement, when God shall place the Righteous on his right hand, and the Wicked on the left; those, to be called to eternal Salvation; these, to be tumbled down into the abysses of Hell. The *Muscovites* undertake not any thing, but they first make the sign of the Cross, as eating, drinking, or any other civil actions.

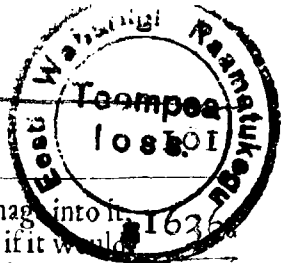
*Their Images.* As for *Images*, they confess there were not any in Churches, during the first Centuries, and till the time of *Constantine* the Great, or if there were, they were not honoured with any worship; but that they are used, only to represent the stories of the Bible. They say, that they follow herein the opinion of *John Damascene*: but it is most likely they have it from the *Greek* Church, with which, they suffer not any that are carved or graven, as being forbidden in the Decalogue, but they have Images painted with oil upon wood, wretchedly coloured, and ill-proportioned, about a foot in breadth, somewhat more in length. They will not meddle with them if they are not made by one of their Religion, though they came from the best Painter's hand in *Europe*. At *Moscow*, there is a particular Market-place for Images, where nothing else is sold, though they call that kind of Commerce, bartering or trucking with money, out of a belief they have, that the names of *buying* and *selling* carry not respect enough in them, for sacred things. Heretofore they oblig'd strangers to have of them in their houses, that their *Muscovian* Servants might be thereby excited to the exercise of their Devotion: But the present Patriarch permits not, they should be profaned by the *Germans*; insomuch, that *Charles du Moulin*, having bought a stone house, the Seller scrap'd the wall, where an Image had been painted, and carried away what he had scrap'd off. The Peasants would not permit us to touch them, not to turn our feet towards them when we lay down. Nay, some were at the charge of Incense to purify them, after we had left their Houses.

The walls of their Churches are full of them, and they represent, for the most part, our *Saviour*, the *Virgin Mary*, *St. Nicholas*, Patron of *Muscovy*, or the particular Saints they make choice of for the principal object of their Devotions. Those who commit sins deserving excommunication, are oblig'd to cause their Saint to be taken away, who is not to be suffer'd in their Churches, no more than their persons. Great Persons, and Rich Merchants adorn their Images with Pearls and other precious Stones. All *Muscovites* look upon them as things so necessary, as that without Images they could not say their prayers; which whenever they do, they alwayes set Wax-candles before their Saint, and look very stedfastly upon him, as long as the Devotion lasts.

When a *Muscovite* comes into a House, or Chamber, he saies not a word, till he hath fixt his eyes on the Saint he looks for, which they ordinarily hang in a corner behind the Table, or if he finds him not, he asks, *Fest le Boch*, where is the God? Assoon as he perceives him, he makes him one very low reverence, or more, and pronounces at every time, *Gospodi Pomilui*: then he turns to the Company and salutes them.

The *Muscovites* respect their Images, as if there were somewhat of Divinity in them, and they attribute unto them the virtue of Miracles, whereof we had this example in the year 1643. that an old Image beginning to change colour, and to turn a little reddish, they immediately cry'd out, a *Miracle*. The Great Duke and the Patriarch were frighted thereat, as if that red colour presag'd some misfortune to either the Prince or the people; nay, they had sent out Orders for extraordinary fasts and publick prayers to be made all over the Kingdom, if the Painters who were sent for to have their advise in this affair, had not all assured them, that there was nothing they should be troubled at, since there was nothing extraordinary, but that Time, having consum'd and eaten out the paint, had only discover'd the first colour of the wood, which was red.

Their Monks and Priests have nevertheless the art to make them do Miracles, or to observe such things in them as oblige the people to extraordinary Devotions, which must not want their offerings, that the Priest may not want his advantage. The City of *Archangel* furnishes us with a good example to this purpose, of two Priests there, who, having got together a vast sum of money by their Impositions, must needs fall out at the parting of it, and upbraid one another of their cheats, so loudly, that the Magistrate coming to hear of it, they had thirty lashes a-piece, with the Executioner's good will, after the manner we have before described their whipping. These Juglers put the people into continual frights, and besot them with so strange a veneration for their Images, that in their greatest dangers, their recourse is only to them. *Jacob de la Gardie*, General of the *Suedish* Army, having in the year 1610. taken the City of *Novogorod*, some part of it was set a-fire, and one of the Inhabitants seeing his House all of a flame, presented thereto an Image of *St. Nicholas*, entreating it to stay the progress of the furious Element, which



which was ready to ruine him. But perceiving the fire went on still, he flung his Image into it, saying to it, that since it would not help him, let it help it self, and quench the fire if it would. It was then also observ'd, that the *Suedish* Souldiers, not finding any thing in their Houses, carried away the Images of the *Muscovites*, and by that means oblig'd them to follow them, and to redeem their *Saints* at a very dear rate.

The first thing they teach their Children, is to make their reverences and inclinations to the Images. At *Ladoga* I lodg'd at a Womans House, who would not give his breakfast to a Child she had, who could hardly either stand or speak, till he had first made nine inclinations before the Saint, and as often, as well as he could pronounce it, said his *Gospodi*.

Nor is it to be thought, but that among to great a number of innocent persons, there are some so well instructed, as to see a glimpse of truth through these thick Clouds of ignorance. There was at *Russian Narva* a rich Merchant, who is still living, one that came often to visit the Ambassadors, and dined with them. He discours'd very rationally, and would say, that he did not approve the opinion, which the rest of the *Muscovites* have of their Saints, nor the worship of their Images, and he did not expect his Salvation from Colours, which he might wipe out with his handkercher, and from wood, which it was in his power to cast into the fire: That he found in the Holy Scripture, which he had attentively read over, much more solid comforts, and such foundations for his happiness, as could not be shaken: That their Fasting signify'd nothing, when, instead of eating Fleth, they glutted themselves with the best sorts of Fish, and the most delicious Hydromel, and Aquavitæ: That bread and water might suffice those who were desirous to fast, and that prayer was the best part of that mortification. The Ambassadors ask'd him, why, having all these good sentiments about him, he had not withall the Charity to inspire them into his Country-men? He answered, that it was not his calling, and that, if he endeavour'd it, he should not prevail, because he was already look'd on as a Heretick among them: That he suffer'd Images in his House, but, only for the honour of God, and to honour the memory of the Saints: That he had a Picture of the King of *Sueden's*, and kept it, for the Heroick actions done by that Prince, and that he conceiv'd he might do the like with those of *Jesus Christ* and the *Saints*, who had not only done great actions, but also Miracles. We found by the sequel of his discourse that he knew all the reasons alleged by the *Greeks* at the Council of *Constantinople* against those whom they called *Iconomachi*, in the year 787. against which Council *Charlemaign* called, in the year 797. that of *Frankford*, in which the Doctrine of the *Greeks* concerning Images was condemned and anathematized.

Not long since, a Protopope of *Casanskey*, whose name was *Juan Neronon*, began to inveigh against the honour done to Images, charging those with Idolatry who worshipped Colours and Wood. He said, that if there were any veneration due to Images, that they were rather to admire, in man, that of God, and to honour the Painter, rather than the Image made by him. But the Patriarch soon took an order with this Priest, degraded him, and shut him up in the Monastery called *Cameno Monastir*, upon the River *Volga*.

When the wood of their Images comes to rot, they do not cast it away, but throw it into the River, that the water may carry it away; or they bury it in some Garden, or Church-yard.

The Saints of *Muscovy*, as well as those of other places, have their Miracles. *Possevin* says, they are all Fables, and that the stories related of them are ridiculous. They have one of a very late date, named *Sudaworets Philip Metropolit*, of the House of *Colitzion*. He lived in the reign of the Tyrant *John Baslonits*, and grew famous for the remonstrances he made to that Prince of his wicked life. The Tyrant, troubled thereat, sent him into a Monastery far from *Moscou*, so as that he might be no longer importun'd with his reproaches: but the other made the Pen do what his tongue could not, and, from time to time, represented the Judgement of God to the Eyes of the Great Duke, so preffingly, that the other not able any longer to endure his reprehensions, sent one of his Servants to strangle him. The Executioner found him ready enough to dy, with this desire only, that, instead of strangling him with a Cord, he would run him with a Knife into the Heart; which he accordingly did. The Monks of the Monastery put him into the Catalogue of their Holy Martyrs, and sent his Body to be buried in the Island of *Solofka*, in the *White Sea*, near *Archangel*, where they say he hath done many Miracles. The present Patriarch perswaded the Great Duke, that, while he was Metropolitane of *Roston*, and *Jarislain*, he had heard that many sick persons had been healed there, and that the Body of the Saint was as whole as the day he was kill'd, and prevail'd with him to have it translated from *Solofka* to *Moscou*. The Miracles which are known to have been really done at the translation thereof, are these: viz. that *Knez Michael Levontgewits*, who was employ'd to see it done, going thither with a *Diak*, and his two Sons, and having embark'd himself with some of his retinue in a great open Boat, he got safely into the Island, but it could never be known what became of the three others, and all those that were with them. The other Miracle was, that the Great Duke, the Patriarch, and all the Court going a league out

1636. of *Moscou*, to meet the Saint, the Metropolitan of *Roston* and *Jaroslau*, named *Warlam*, being a corpulent fat Man, and about 70. years of age, wearied with so small a Journey, fell down stock-dead, As soon as he came to the shrine. Which at least, is as certain as what the *Muscovites* say of the great number of the blind, dumb, deaf, lame, persons troubled with agues, and paraliticks, whom that body hath healed, since it was placed in the great Church of the Castle. At first, no week pass'd, but it did five or six Miracles: but now it doth not any at all, and they say it is by reason of the incredulity of the people, that that Virrue hath left the Saints Body; which they say is still intire: but it is forbidden, upon pain of death, for any man to lift up the cloath which covers it.

In the Monastery of *Troitza*, 12. leagues from *Moscou*, they have another Saint named *Sergius*. He was a very tall man, a thing the *Muscovites* have a great veneration for, and had sometime been a Soldier; but the crimes and disorders he had committed in his youth, touch'd his Conscience so to the quick, that he forsook the World, and turn'd Hermite. He quitted that solitary kind of life, and got into the Monastery of *Troitza*, where he was soon chosen *Igumine*, or Abbot, and did there, with his Disciple *Nikon*, so many Miracles, that, dying in the year 1563. they were both Canonized. They say, their heads are there yet to be seen intire, and that when the *Polanders* besig'd that Monastery, the head of *Sergius* only, forc'd them back in the midst of their assault, and made them turn their arms against themselves. Of which yet there is nothing to be found in the History of that time, which speaks but of one siege of *Troitza*, under *John Sapiha*, a *Polish* General, who was indeed forc'd to raise it, not upon the vigorous resistance of the Monks, or by the assistance of *Sergius*, but by the *Suedish* Army, which came in to the relief of the *Muscovites*.

Since this Saint was buried there, that Monastery hath been called *Zergeofski Troitza*, though it be properly dedicated to the *Trinity*. It is so rich, that it maintains above 300. Monks, and its revenue increases dayly, through the Great Duke's liberality, and the alms of those who go thither to perform their Vows, they had made in their travels or sickness, and settle Annuities for Services to be said after their death. The Great Duke, who goes thither twice a year, lights off his Horse when he is come within half a league of the Monastery, and so walks it. Having ended his Devotions, he spends some dayes there in Hunting, during which, the Abbot maintains him and his retinue, both with Man's meat and Horse meat.

Some years since, the *Muscovites* found an Image of the Virgin *Mary*, at *Casan*, and sent a copy of it to *Moscou*, where there is a Church built for the reception of it in the Marketplace, near that street where the Cutlers have their shops. The Church is called *Precista Casanska*, the holy mother of *Casan*, and many Pilgrimages are made to it. They go also in Pilgrimage to the Monastery of *Chutina*, a league and a half from *Novogorod*, to the Sepulchre of their Saint *Warlam*, who was born at *Novogorod*, and buried at *Chutina*, whence they call his Festival, *Prasnick Warlama Chutinskoga*.

Their  
Churches.

As to their Churches, we said, there were above two thousand Churches and Chapels in the City and Suburbs of *Moscou*. Those which are of stone are round and vaulted, because God's Houses ought to represent Heaven which is his Throne. They have neither Seats nor Benches, by reason none sit down, but all say their prayers either standing or kneeling. The late Great Duke, who was much given to Devotion, lay all along upon the ground, when he said his prayers. They have no *Organs* or other musical instruments in their Churches, not using any, out of this persuasion, that things inanimate cannot glorify God; That they were allow'd in the Pædagoogy of the Law, but that, under the new Testament, they were no more to be used than any other of the Jewish Ceremonies. The Patriarch that now is hath shewn his enmity to Musick, yet greater, in prohibiting the use of all those musical instruments, which the *Muscovites* were wont to make use of at their merry meetings. Some four or five years since, he caused all private houses to be search'd, for Instruments, and having loaden five Wagons with them, he sent them over the River of *Moscou*, where they were all burnt. Only the *Germans* kept theirs, nor could the Patriarch, with all his Authority, oblige the Bojar, *Boris Nikita Juanouits Romanou* to put away his Musicians. There is no Stone-Church, but hath, in the midst of four Turrets, a Tower form'd at the top much like the Knobs we set on Bedsteads, having upon it a triple Cross, by which they say they represent our Saviour, as Head of the Church, saying, that the Cross being the Badge of Christianity, it is necessary the Church of Christ should be known by it. They hold, they are prophaned by Strangers, that is to say, such as are not of their Communion; upon which account it was, that when, at the beginning of our Travels, we entred into them, they came and thrust us out, and many times they swept after us. If it chance a Dog gets in, they think it not enough to sweep the Church, but they also Incense it, and purify it with holy Water. They have also very much respect for their Church-yards, and suffer not that any should make their water in them.

Their Bells are not in steeples, but in a certain Engine, or Machine, near the Church, in the Church-yard, and are for the most part so small, that few of them are 150. or 200. pound weight. They toll them at the beginning of service, and at the Elevation of the Chalice, for the

the Bread being put in immediately after Consecration, they make but one Elevation. The Rope is not fasten'd to the Bell, but to the Clapper, so that one man may toll three or four Bells at the same time, if the Ropes be fasten'd to both his Elbows and both his hands, which, making a certain chiming, the *Muscovites* are much taken with. But this kind of chiming of the almost infinite number of Bells, which they many times toll at the same time in all their Churches, makes a very strange noise, to their ears, who are not accustomed thereto. 1636.

They think this chiming so necessary, that, without it, the divine Service would be defective. Upon which perswasion it was, that a certain *Pristaf*, who conducted the *Suedish* Ambassadors, hearing that they were desirous to do their Devotions, it being *Michaelmas*-day, told them, that he could not imagine what shift they would make to do it, since he had not, by reason of the greatness of the Journey, brought any Bells along with him.

There is no Church but hath an Image over the door; and at every corner of a Street, and upon all the Gates of the City, there are Images, before which the *Muscovites* make a halt to say their *Gospodi*. They also address the *Gospodi* to the Crosses which are upon the Churches, so that they goe through no Street, but they make a short stay to do their Devotions.

The Ecclesiastical Government consists of a Patriarch, several Metropolitans, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Arch-Deacons, Protopopes, and Priests. The Patriarch, among them, hath the same authority as the Pope has in the *Latine* Church. The Patriarch of *Constantinople* had heretofore the nomination of him. In time, he came to have only the confirmation of him; but now of late, he hath lost both. *Filaretos Nikitits*, the late Great Duke's Father, was the last that desired confirmation from the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. At present, the Patriarch of *Muscovy* is chosen by the other Prelates, who meet in the great Church within the Castle, called *Sabor*, and name two or three Prelats, of the most eminent for Learning and good Life, and present them to the great Duke, who, after some conference with the Prelats, proceeds joyntly with them, to the election; unless those that are named be all of such eminency, that they are at a loss which to make choice of, and so forc'd to it by lot which course they took at the Election of this last Patriarch. He was a Prelate of the Second Order, and hath been named, with two other Metropolitans, upon the reputation of his good life. The lot falling upon him, all those of the First Order were discontented thereat, so that they put it to the Lot a second time, in which also it fell again to him: but the ambition of the other Competitors appearing still in their countenances, the Great Duke was pleas'd to comply with them, and to put it to the Lot a third time, which fell in like manner to the same Person, upon which all acquiesc'd. His name is *Nicon*, and he had been before Metropolitan of *Roston* and *Jaroslon*, and is now about 45 years of age. He lives within the Palace, where he hath built him a house of stone. He keeps a good Table, and is a person of so pleasant a disposition, that he discovers it in those actions that require the greatest gravity. For, a handsome Gentlewoman being presented to him, for his Benediction, after she had been re-baptized, with several others of her Friends, he told her, that he was in some doubt, whether he should begin with the kiss, which is given to *Profelites* after their Baptism, or with the Benediction.

The Patriarch's authority is so great, that he in manner divides the Sovereignty with the Great Duke. He is the Supreme Judge of all Ecclesiastical Causes, and absolutely disposes of what ever concerns Religion, with such power, that, in things relating to the Political Government, he reforms what he conceives prejudicial to Christian simplicity and good manners, without giving the Great Duke any accompt of it, who, without any contestation, commands the orders made by the Patriarch to be executed. He hath under him, four Metropolitans, seven Archbishops, and one Bishop. The Metropolitans are those of.

*Novogorodskoi*, and *Welikoluskoy*, who lives at *Novogorod*.  
*Rostonfskoy*, and *Jaroslauskoy*, at *Rostof*.  
*Casanskoi*, and *Swiatstkoi*, at *Cassan*. And that of  
*Sarskoi*, and *Pondoskoy*, who lives within the Castle at *Moscon*.

The Archbishops are, those of  
*Wologdskoi*, and *Weliko Preamskey*, who lives at *Wologda*.  
*Refsanskoi*, and *Moromskoi*, at *Resan*.  
*Sudalskoi*, and *Torruskoi*, at *Susdal*.  
*Twerskoi*, and *Cassinskoi*, at *Twere*.  
*Sibirskoi*, and *Tobolskoi*, at *Toboleska*.  
*Astrachanskoi*, and *Terskoi*, at *Astrachan*.  
*Pleskouskoi*, and *Sborskoi*, at *Plescon*.

There is but one Bishop in all *Muscovy*, to wit, that of *Comenskoi*, and *Cassieskoi*, who lives at *Columna*. The Patriarch hath about him an Arch-Deacon, who is as it were his Vicar-General, and in the Castle of *Sabor*, he hath a Proto-Deacon. The other Ecclesiastical Orders are distinguish'd into *Proto-popes*, *Popes* (or *Priests*) and *Deacons*. Those who make clean  
the



1636. the Churches, and toll the Bells, are called *Panna mari*. In their Monasteries they have *Archimandrites*, *Kilari's*, and *Igumeni's*, who are their Abbots, Priors; and Guardians.

Their Prelates marry not.

The Patriarch, Metropolitans, Archbishops and Bishops are not to marry, but make a Vow of Chastity, for the time they shall continue in that Dignity, which, it seems, give them not an indelible Character, as it does elsewhere, to those that are advanced to it. They are forbidden to wear Rings on their fingers. They wear no Drawers, nor Shirts of Linnen-cloath, but of Flannen, and do not ly upon Beds.

How the Monks live.

Those that enter into any Religious Order eat no flesh, nor fresh-Fish, and drink neither Wine, Aquavitæ, nor Hydromel; but are oblig'd to content themselves with their *Quas*, though when they are out of their Monasteries, they dispence with the rigour of that Law, and eat of any thing that is given them, making use of their time so well that many times they are glad to be carried home.

The Habits of the Ecclesiasticks.

The ordinary Habit of the Patriarch, as also of the Metropolitans, Arch-bishops &c. and even of their Monks, is a kind of black Cassock, over which they have an upper-Garment of the same colour, not much different from those of the other *Muscovites*. Their Hoods, or covering of the Head, is at least an ell and a half diameter, having in the midst a round piece, as big as a Trencher, which hangs on the hinder part of the head. When they walk into the City, they have in their hands a staff forked at the end after the form of a Right angle, which serves them for a Crosier, and they call it *Pofok*.

What a vast number of Priests and Ecclesiasticks there must be about *Moscou*, may be judg'd by that of the Churches, of which not any, that ever so little exceed their ordinary Chapels, but have three or four, or more Priests belonging to them. Those who are desirous to embrace that kind of life, address themselves to the Patriarch, or first Metropolitane they can come to, who examines them, and if he finds they can make a shift to read and write, and sing in the Church, he gives them Orders; and an Attestation of their being received into the Priesthood. At their Consecration, they are habited after the manner before mentioned, and have the hair cut off on the Crown of their heads, on which is put a little Cap like a *Callotte*, which is the only Character of their Priesthood. For they never take it off, but when they cut their hair, and he, who fighting with a Priest, should make his *Callot* fall to the ground, would be severely punish'd, and oblig'd to pay him the *Bicestie*, or a certain mule't imposed upon him: whereas otherwise a man may bang or cudgel one of that profession with the same impunity as he may another, but to do it without any danger, he is only to take off his *Callot*, before he falls to work with him, and when he hath sufficiently paid him, to be so respectful to him as to put it on again.

The Priests are oblig'd to marry.

The *Protopopes* and simple Priests are obliged to marry once, but cannot the second or third time, unless they quit the Priesthood. They allege to this purpose the Text of St. Paul, 1 Tim. 3. where the Apostle sayes, that a Bishop should be the husband of one wife. Which place they understand not of Bishops, though the Text expressly mentions them, nor yet in the least imagine that the Apostle speaks of one wife in opposition to Polygamy; but infer thence, that there is a necessity that the Priest should marry, that so he may be the husband of one wife. This point of the marriage of Priests makes one of the principal differences between the *Muscovites*, with all the Greek Church, and the *Romane*, which allows not the marriage of Priests. For confirmation of their opinion, they allege, as what makes most for them, the fourth Canon of the Council, which was held at *Gangres*, in *Paphlagonia*, not long after that of *Nice*, which Anathemizes those who make any difficulty to receive the Communion from the hands of a married Priest. But the *Muscovian* Priests hold this besides, that they are oblig'd to be in the state of marriage, before they take Orders, and that they are to marry a Maid, and not a Widow, or a Woman of a scandalous life: in which punctilio they are so circumspect, that if a Priest, upon search made the the first night of his marriage, find that his Wife hath been defiled before hand, he must either be divorc'd from her or from the Priesthood. The Priest who hath given his Wife her benevolence in the night, is not to approach the Altar the next day: and as soon as a Priest is a VViddower, he is not to Administer the Sacraments any longer. He may be present at the Offices of *Fasterini* and *Vetzerini*, but is not admitted to that of *Obedni*, at which the Communion is receiv'd, and cannot give his Benediction to marriages. Those who are not willing to live in that condition, and are weary of a single life, take up some other profession, turn Merchants or Tradesmen, and marry again: and to do that, they are only to put off their Sacerdotal habit, and their *Callot*. If they are too old to marry, they retire to a Monastery, and there end their lives.

Their Monasteries.

They have a great number of *Monasteries*, both for Men and VVomen, as well in Cities, as up and down the Countrey, and they all in a manner follow the Rule of Great St. *Basil*. Indigence, Age, Infirmities, Domestick discontents, and violence fill their Convents, rather than Devotion. VVhen any embrace that kind of life of their own accord, if they are of ability, they are permitted to carry some part of their Estates along with them into the Monastery, but are obliged to leave the remainder to their Heirs. Heretofore the more superstitious sort made

over

over all they had, and the extravagance had so far prevail'd on many, that in time, the Monks would have been Masters of the best part of *Muscovy*, if a course had not been taken to prevent it. They have set hours for their service, and they say most of their prayers by Beads. Their Austerity of life is very great, in as much as they live only on Salt-fish, Honey, Milk, Cheese, Herbs, and Pulse, especially Cowcumbers, fresh and pickled, which they mince very small, and eat with a spoon in some of their *Quas*. They have this common with all the other *Muscovites*, that they can hardly write and read. Not one in ten can say the Lord's Prayer, much fewer that are acquainted with the Creed and the ten Commandments. These Monks live not so retired a life, but that they are seen in great numbers, both in Cities, and all over the Countrey, where their employment is the same with that of the Peasants, from whom they are distinguish'd only by their habit. It is also true, there are abundance of *Anchorets*, who build Chapels upon the High-ways, and live in Woods like *Hermits*, subsisting only by the Alms given them by Travellers.

They fast *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, and abstain so strictly from all kind of flesh, nay, even from Eggs and Milk, that within these few years, some of the more devout would not use any Sugar, because they know that there are whites of Eggs used in the clarifying of it. Their Fasts.

Their year consists of more fasting days than flesh days. For, besides the two days of every week, and the Eves of great Festivals, they fast in *Lent* seven weeks together, though in the first they eat Butter, Milk, and Eggs, and this week is their *Carnaval*, during which they commit incredible excesses in drinking, and withall such insolences, as the Patriarch hath not yet found any way to remedy. The next week, they eat only Honey, Herbs, and Pulse, and drink only *Quas* and Water; they bath, and cleanse themselves from the impurities they had contracted in their excessive debauches. All the rest of the *Lent* they live very temperately, and the most devout eat no fish but on Sundays. Their second *Lent* begins eight days after *Whit-suntide*, and lasts till *St. Peter's tide*. The third is from the first of *August*, to the 16th. and the fourth, from the 12th. of *November* to *Christmas*. 'Tis true, there are some abate of this great Austerity; but I never knew any *Muscovite*, who did not strictly observe abstinence during the *Lent*. But as they will not by any means be dispens'd with as to that time, so not in their greatest sickness; so can they not, on the other side, be perswaded to eat fish on Sundays and Holydays out of *Lent*, as believing that it is of Apostolical institution that they should eat flesh on Sundays, and that they are bound to observe the Rule which goes under the name of *St. Clement*, in the Tomes of the Councils printed at *Venice*, which says, that an Ecclesiastick, who fasts on Saturday or Sunday, is to be degraded, and if a lay person commit the same fault, he is to be excommunicated. The same Rule which enjoyns them to abstain from flesh in *Lent*, forbids them also meddling with their Wives during that time, upon special penalties.

Those who are come to years of discretion are oblig'd to go to *Confession*, before they Communicate. There are very few but receive the Communion at *Easter*, and they prepare themselves for it by extraordinary mortifications, for eight days together, during which they eat nothing but a hard kind of bread, and drink only Water and *Quas*, which is so sower, that it causes gripings in the belly, and brings them in a manner to death's door. They make their *Confession* standing, in the midst of the Church, and before an Image, on which they have their eyes fastned, as long as the *Confession* lasts, making a very particular recital of all their sins, and at every sin expressing their remorse, and promising amendment. The Priest, with the absolution, gives them a certain penance to do, which consists for the most part in pronouncing several times the *Gospody Pomilui*, or in making a certain number of Reverences before the Saints, abstaining from Women for a certain time, standing at the Church door: or, if the sins be very hainous, he enjoyns them to make use of a Holy-water, which they Consecrate upon *Twelfth-day*, and is kept by the Priests all the year long for that purpose, and not to be had of them for nothing. They make accompt that that water hath the vertue to cleanse them of their sins, and to restore them into the state of Grace. Their Confession.

They receive the Communion, ordinarily, upon *Easter-Eve*; at least they think it must be done upon a fasting-day, and this they so strictly observe, that if one should Communicate on the Sunday, yet is he not to eat any flesh that day. They Communicate in both kinds, and mix water with the Wine. The bread they put into the Wine, taking out a morsel, together with some of the Wine, with a spoon. The bread is leavened, and must have been made up and baked by a Priest's Widow: which they think to be so Essential to the Sacrament, that one of the principal causes of the Schism between the *Greek* and *Latine* Church, is, that the latter makes use of unleavened bread contrary to the express institution of our Saviour, who, to abolish the Ceremony of the *Jews*, who made use of unleavened bread, was pleased to take ordinary bread. This Communion bread is about twice as big, and somewhat thicker than a Crown piece, and hath in the middle the figure of the Crucifix. After the Priest hath Consecrated it, he takes off that figure with an instrument made much after the fashion of a Lancer, and puts it

1636. up into a wooden box, which hangs above the Altar, that the Rats and Mice may not come at it. When the Communion is to be Administred to a sick person, they take a little out of the said box, upon which they pour three drops of Claret-wine, and put it into the Chalice, mingling sometimes a little water, and so they give it the sick person with a spoon. But if, through weakness or otherwise, he be not able to get down the bread, they give him only a little Wine consecrated. In the ordinary Administration of the Communion, they make use of a sort of Consecrated bread, of the same form as the other, but not bigger than a half Crown, from which they also take away the Crucifix, and break it into as many pieces as there are Communicants, cast them into Claret-wine, and put thereto a little warm water, because no doubt but the blood and water, which came out of our Saviour's side, was so. They hold *Transubstantiation*, and, at the Administring of the Sacrament, the Priest sayes these words: *This is the true body and the true blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, which hath been given for thee, and for many more, for the Remission of thy sins, which thou shalt take in remembrance of him. God bless thee.* The more devout tort sleep after they have receiv'd the Communion, that so they may not Sin that day. What remains of the bread after Consecration serves for holy-bread. They call it *Kutja*, and the Sunday following, the Priest gives a morsel of it to each of those who had Communicated the week before. There is no Child so young but they give him the Communion; but it is only when he is Sick, and then but in one kind, till he be seven years of age, and then he is Communicated as the rest; for which they give this reason, that about that age one begins to Sin mortally. No doubt, they have derived this custom from what was done in the third age, wherein St. *Cyprian* sayes, that they Communicated Children immediately after baptism, which custom was continued till St. *Augustine's* time. But in Procces of time the custom was changed, since that, as *Nicephorus*, the son of *Calistus*, who lived in the 14<sup>th</sup>. age, affirms, that in his time, they gave those Children, who were learning the first Rudiments of the Sciences, but only the Consecrated bread which was remaining after the Communion. In *Muscovy*, they also give the Communion to distracted persons; but they only touch their lips with the bread after it hath lain a while in the VVine.

The Priest who hath kiss'd a dead body, or been at the interment of any, can neither consecrate nor administer the Sacrament that day, for they hold him to be defiled. Nor is it lawful for him to Communicate a VVoman in Child-bed, in the same room where she was delivered: but she is obliged to get her self carried into some other place, and to be washed. Heretofore, they were wont to send the Consecrated bread into the Countrey, to those places which were destitute of a Priest; nay, they gave of it to such as intended to travel, or were going to the VVars, who made their Confessions before their departure, and were to Communicate when they had any convenience to do it, or were in any danger of death, so to make it, as it were, their last *Viaticum*. Their custom of receiving the Consecrated VVine in the Church, and carrying away the bread, to be taken at home; as also that practis'd by *Anchorettes*, who carried away both to the places of their retirement, is so antient, that St. *Cyprian*, nay, even *Tertullian* speaks of it, as a thing very ordinarily done in their times: but this kind of Communicating is now absolutely abolish'd in *Muscovy*, as well as other places. Those who have taken their Oaths in any Law business, or have committed murder, or any other hainous sin, are not to receive the Communion, but at the point of death. All that are sick to that extremity are Communicated, and at the same time receive extreme Unction, but that once done, they suffer them not to take any thing else, not ought of nourishment, unless they apparently perceive that the sick party begins to recover strength, and gives them a great assurance of the retrieval of his former health. Before the receiving of the Communion, they give those that are sick, some fair water, or *Aquavitæ*, wherein some Relicks had been put. There are those, who, in that condition, cause themselves to be shaven, put on Monks habit, and become really such; for, that once done, they are not suffer'd to take any thing for the space of eight dayes; it being their perswasion, that those who take that habit, which they call *Seraphick*, are not to be numbred among men, but are become Angels. And if, after those eight dayes abstinency, they recover their former health, they are oblig'd to perform their vow, and to go into a Monastery, because the Rasour hath pass'd upon their heads.

Their manner of buriall.

Their interments are accompany'd by abundance of Ceremonies, as indeed are all their publick actions. As soon as the sick person is departed, they send for all his Kindred and Friends, who being come into the house stand about the body, excite one another to bemoan him, as it were to heighten the Lamentations of the VVomen, and ask the deceased, why he would dye? VVhether his affairs were in a good condition? VVhether he wanted meat and drink? VVhether his VVife were not handsom and young enough? VVhether she had been unconstant to him? &c. Then they send a present of Beer, *Aquavitæ* and *Hydromel* to the Priest, that he may pray for the Soul of the deceased party. The body is well washed, and after they have put a clean shirt, or a shrowd about him, they put on his feet a pair of new shooes, of a very thin *Russia* leather, and so lay him into the Coffin with his Arms cross the breast. Their Coffins are made of the Trunk of a Tree, and are to be sold every where. It is cover'd with a Cloath,

Cloath, or haply with some Coat of the deceased, and carried to Church. If it be a rich man, and that the season of the year permit it, he is not buried so soon, but kept above ground eight or ten dayes, during which, the Priest comes to incense the Corps, and cast holy water on it every day. 1636.

The Funeral solemnity is after this manner. First there goes a Priest, carrying the Image of the Saint which had been assign'd the deceas'd at his baptism for his Patron. Next go four Virgins, of the next of Kin to the deceased, who are to go as Mourners, and who fill the air with their horrid cries and lamentations, keeping such exact time, that they both give over, and then begin all together. Then follows the body, carried by six men upon their shoulders; and if it be a Monk or Nun, some of their own Profession do them that Office. The Priests go all about the body, and incense it all the way, to keep off evil spirits, and withall sing certain Psalms. The Kindred and Friends follow the body, but without any order, having every one a VVax-Candle in his hand.

Being come to the Grave, the Coffin is uncover'd, and the Image of the deceased party's Saint is held over him, while the Priest sayes certain prayers, in which there come often these words, *Lord look upon this Soul in Righteousness*, as also some passages of their Liturgy, during which the VVidow continues her lamentations, and makes the same questions she had done before. Then the Kindred and Friends take leave of the deceased, kissing either him or the Coffin; and at last the Priest comes up to him, and puts between his fingers a piece of paper, which is a kind of Testimonial of his behaviour in this world, signed by the Patriarch, or the Metropolitane of the place, and the Confessor, who sell those papers dear or cheap, according to their abilities who buy them. This Testimonial, which is a kind of Pass for his admittance into the other VVorld, runs thus. *We, whose names are hereunto subscribed, the Patriarch, or Metropolitane, and Priest of the Citie of N. do make known and Certifie, by these presents, that the Bearer of these our Letters hath alwayes lived among us like a good Christian, professing the Greek Religion; and though he hath committed some sins, yet that he hath confessed the same, and that thereupon he hath received absolution, and taken the Communion, for the Remission of his sins: That he hath honoured God and his Saints; That he hath said his prayers, and that he hath fasted on the hours and dayes appointed by the Church, and that he hath carried himself so well towards me who am his Confessor, that I have no reason to complain of him, nor to deny him the Absolution of his sins. In witness whereof, we have given him the present Testimonial, to the end, that upon sight thereof, St. Peter may open unto him the Gate of eternal blifs.* As soon as he hath this Passport given him, the Coffin is shut up, and put into the Grave, with the face of the deceased turn'd towards the East. Those who accompany'd him thither, do their Devotions to the Images, and return to the house of the deceased, where they find Dinner ready, and where, many times, they drown their affliction, with all other sentiments of mortality, in Hydromel and Aquavitæ. Their mourning lasts 40. dayes, during which they make three Feasts for the Kindred and Friends of the deceased, to wit, the 3d. the 9th. and the 20th. day, after the burial. VVherein they imitate the modern *Greeks*, though these, instead of the 20th. take the 40th. day; upon this ground, that about that time, the heart corrupts, as the body begins to putrefie, towards the ninth, and the face is disfigured, the third.

Some build Huts over their Graves, which they cover with Mat, for the convenience of the Priest, who, morning and evening, for the space of six weeks together, is to make prayers there for the deceased. For though the *Muscovites* do not believe there is any *Purgatory*, yet they say there are two several places, to which the Souls retire, after their departure out of the body, where they expect the day of Judgement: some in a pleasant and delightful place, having the conversation of Angels; others, in a sad and dark Valley, having the society of Devils; That the Souls being yet in their way, may be diverted out of the evil way, by the Prayers of Priests and Monks, nay, that these have so great an Interest with God, as to obtain a certain ease and alleviation of their misery, for those Souls which are with the Devils, and to appease him against the day of Judgement. Such as are of ability, gives Alms dayly during the six weeks; which may indeed be ordinary among the *Muscovites*, who make no difficulty to enrich themselves any way, and believe that sin is to be expiated by Alms. VVhence it comes, that no *Muscovite* almost, but, as he goes to Church, or about his occasions, buyes bread, which he afterwards distributes among the poor, who, though very numerous, yet get so much, that being not able to consume all themselves, they dry up the rest in an Oven, and make it a kind of Bisket, which they call *Suchari*, and sell it in the Market to Travellers.

The *Muscovites* tolerate all sorts of Religions, and suffer all Nations to live among them, as *Calvinists*, *Lutherans*, *Armenians*, *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Persians*, excepting none, but *Jews* and *Roman Catholics*. There is a great number of *Protestants* all over *Muscovy*, and in the City of *Moscou* it self, there are above a thousand, who have the free exercise of their Religion. Those of the *Reform'd Religion* and the *Lutherans*, had their Churches heretofore in the quarter of *Czaargorod*; but it is about twenty years since that the *Lutherans* lost theirs, by the imprudence of their Wives: because those of Merchants would not give place to the Officers

1636. wives, who indeed for the most part were but servant-maids dress'd up a little finer than they had gone before: The contestation grew so high, that they came from words to blows, in the very Church, with so much scandal, that the Patriarch, then accidentally passing by, having understood the occasion of their falling out, commanded the Church to be demolish'd, which was immediately done. But they were permitted to build another in the quarter of *Bolsigorod*. They took away their Church from those of the *Reformed* Religion, because, not content with the wooden Chapel which had been given them within the White-wall, they would needs build there an Edifice of stone, which was in a manner finish'd, when the Patriarch, who had not given his consent for the doing of it, caused both to be pull'd down. Now, Foreigners have neither Church nor Houses within the City. For the *Germans* finding themselves expos'd to the derision of the *Muscovites*, after the Patriarch had ordered them to go in a habit distinct from that of the Inhabitants of the Country, to free themselves out of that persecution, Petition'd the *Czaar* to protect them against the outrages and affronts they dayly received. On the other side, the Priests complain'd, that strangers built on their foundations, and lessened the revenue of the livings; so that the Great Duke, to please both sides, assign'd them, without the City, near the Gate called *Pokrofski*, a place big enough to contain all the Houses of Foreigners, who immediately demolish'd those they had in the City, and in a short time made up that part of the Suburbs, which is called *Nova Inasemska Slaboda*, where the *Lutherans* have two Churches, and those of the *Reformation* two more, one for the *Dutch*, and the other for the *English*; and where they have this further satisfaction, that they converse but little with the *Muscovites*, and are out of all danger of those frequent fires, which commonly begin in the houses of those barbarous *Christians*.

The *Lutherans*, and those of the *Reformed* Religion live very quietly together, and the *Muscovites* Trade indifferently with either: but they have so great an aversion for the *Roman* Catholics, that they would never grant them a Toleration of their Religion in *Muscovy*. In the year 1627. the late King of *France* propos'd, by *Louis des Hayes*, a Treaty for the regulation of Commerce with the *French*, and at the same time for a Church, where they might have Mass said, but it was deny'd. And in the first War of *Smolensko*, they would not entertain *Catholic* Souldiers. Nay, in the Treaty they made with us, for our passage into *Persia*, it is an exprefs Article, that we should not take any *Roman* Catholics into our retinue. So that it is much to be admir'd, that they should call to the Crown *Uladislaus*, Prince of *Poland* and *Sueden*; though that Election came to nothing, for reasons, into which it is beside the subject of our Relation to enquire, as it is also into those which may be given of the Animosity of the *Muscovites* against the *Roman* Catholics, whereof the grounds are to be searched for in *Ecclesiastical History*, which hath nothing common with the Relation of our Travels, the prosecution whereof is the business of the following book.



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 - FROM THE  
**D U K E of H O L S T E I N**  
 I N T O  
**M U S C O V Y, T A R T A R Y,**  
 and **P E R S I A.**

---

The Fourth Book.

---



Leaving *Moscou*, we went, by Land, as far as the Monastery of *Simana*, where we embark'd, after we had taken leave of our Friends, who had accompany'd us thither, under the conduct of a *Pristaf*, named *Rodiwon Matseowits*, who had order to provide for the Ambassadors as far as *Astrachan*. We had hardly quitted the shore, ere the Governor of the Prince, *Boris Fuanouits Morosou* came in sight with his Trumpets, and intreated us to come ashore, and favour him so far as to sup with him that night. But the Ambassadors, earnest to be on their Voyage, excused themselves, and sent him, by way of Present, a silver Bowl. He receiv'd it in a little Boat which came along by the side of ours, and expres'd how kindly he took it, by the flourishes of his Trumpets. But at last, not able to contain any longer, he came into our Boat, where he staid all night drinking with the Gentlemen, at his parting from whom the next morning, he could hardly forbear tears.

1636.  
 JUNE,

Our *Muscovian* Mariners, whom the Aquavita they had taken had made more lively and lusty than ordinary, took such pains in the mean time, being always eight a-rowing, that the next morning at Sun-rising, we were got as far as a pleasant Country house, called *Duoreninon*, seated on the left side of the River, 80 *Werstes*, which make 16 *German* leagues, from *Simana*. At night, we got 40 *werstes*, or 8 *German* leagues, from *Duoreninon*, to a Village called *Mortschuck*; so that in 24 hours, we made so many *German* leagues.

The next day, *July 2.* about noon, near the Village and Monastery of *Porzenis*, we met with several great Boats, loaden with Honey, Salt, and Salt-fish, coming, mozt of them, from *Astrachan*, bound for *Moscou*.

At night, we were come before the City of *Columna*. It lies on the right side of the River *Columna*. *Mosca*, 180 *werstes*, or 36 *German* leagues from *Moscou*, though by Land there is but 18. which may be travell'd in a short time, especially in the Winter, upon the snow. The City is of a considerable bigness, and looks very delightful on the out-side, by reason of its Towers and stone-walls, which are not ordinary in *Muscovy*. Nay it is indeed of that accompt, that the Great Duke hath his *Weywode* there, which is not seen but in the chief Cities of Provinces. We sent him our Pass-port, by the *Pristaf*, and immediately the wooden Bridge was full of people; and whereas the covering of our Boat was too high to pass under the Bridge, they in a  
 trice

1636. trice took off one of the Arches, to make us way. We said in the fore-going Book, that there is but one Bishop in all *Muscovy*, and that his Residence is in this City of *Columnna*.

Three *werstes* above the City, near the Convent of *Kolutin Serge Monastir*, founded by one *Sergius*, a Saint among them, whom we have spoken of elsewhere, and who is buried at the Monastery of *Troitza*, the *Mosca* falls into the River *Occa*, which is incomparably much more delightful, and broader than the other. It comes from-wards the South, and hath on both sides it a noble Country, well peopled, and very fruitful. Both shores are well furnish'd with Oaks, which is a kind of rarity in those parts. Being got ashore, we had a Sermon under a great Tree, which sufficiently shaded the whole Assembly.

Presently after Dinner we embark'd, and left, about half a league on the left hand, a great Island in the midst of the River. Afterwards, we pass'd by several Villages, namely those of *Scelsa* and *Moroso*, which are bigger than any of the rest, and both upon the River side, on the right hand.

*Perefla*. The 4. about noon, we got to the City of *Perefla* seated upon the River side, upon the right hand, 22. leagues and a half from *Columnna*, at 54. degrees, 42. minutes, elevation. This hath also its particular *Weywode*.

*Rhesan*. The 5. we left on our right hand the Town of *Rhesan*. It was heretofore a gallant City, and had given its name to the whole Province, but the *Crim-Tartars* destroy'd it, with the whole Dutchy, in the year 1568. The Great Duke, considering the fertility of the Country, which reaches from the River *Occa*, as far as the Trench made against the irruption of the *Tartars*, got together, such of the Inhabitants as the invasion of the *Barbarians* had dispers'd, and having caus'd Materials to be brought to a place eight leagues from it, he order'd the building of a City there, which, to this day, is call'd *Perefla Rhesanski*, because there went thither many of the Inhabitants of *Perefla*, which stands at an equal distance from *Moscou* North-wards, with this South-wards. The Town of *Rhesan* still keeps the honour of having the Residence of the Archbishop: but we are to correct their error, who affirm, that the Province of *Rhesan* lies West-ward from *Moscou*, since they themselves confess it is between the Rivers of *Don* and *Occa*, which are not towards the West from *Moscou*, but towards the East: so that *Rhesan* must be placed in the Map, South-ward from the City of *Moscou*.

The same day, we pass'd in sight of several Monasteries, and Villages; as that of *Seloy*, near *Rhesan*, on the left hand; and 7. *werstes* thence, *Kystrus*, as also, on the other side, & 3. *werstes* thence, the Monastery of *Oblozizza*; and 2. *werstes* thence, *Lippono-Issado*; at 2. thence, *Muratou*; at 1. thence, *Kallionino*; and 2. thence, *Schilko*. Near the first Village we found a Carcass floating on the water, which, in all likelihood, the *Cosaques* had cast into the River many dayes before, in as much as it was so Sun-burnt, that it was become black. In the afternoon, we got four leagues.

The 6. we made two, as far as the Monastery of *Tericho*, on the left hand; thence two more, to *Tinersko Slowoda*, on the right hand; and afterwards 8. *werstes*, to *Swintzus*; and thence 2. *werstes*, to *Kopanowo*, where we found another dead Carcass: But the *Cosaques*, and the fugitive Slaves, who retire into those parts, do there commit so many Villanies, that the *Muscovites*, to whom those accidents are ordinary, thought it nothing strange.

*Cassinogorod*. July 7. betimes in the morning, we left on the right hand, an Island, call'd *Dobrinin Ostrow*, 30. *werstes*, or 6. leagues from the last Village; and afterwards *Seloy Rubets*, at 7. *werstes* thence; and, at 7. more thence, on the same side, *Kurman*. About 6. *werstes* thence, we had on the left hand, the River *Gusreca*, and several other Villages, and on the right hand *Molcowa*, at 8. *werstes*, *Gabiloska*, at two, and *Babino*, at three. Thence we made three *werstes*, and came at night to *Cassinogorod*. This City lies on the right side of the River *Occa*, in the Principality of *Cassinou* in *Tartary*, and there it was we first met with any *Mahometans*. Not far from the City, in an old stone Castle, which had sometime been a Fort, lived a young Prince of that County, whose name was *Res Ketzi*, with his Mother and Grand-father, who some years before had put himself into the protection of the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. We were told, that the Great Duke, would have press'd him to receive Baptism, upon some hopes given him that he should have married his Daughter, but the young Prince, who was but 12. years of age, sent him word, that being not come to years, so as to make choice of any Religion, he could not take a resolution of that importance. The Ambassadors sent two Gentlemen of their retinue to give him a visit, and presented him with a pound of *Tobacco*, and a bottle of *Aquavitæ*. He took it very kindly, and made it his excuse, that he could not entertain the Ambassadors at his house, lest the neighbouring *Weywodes* should conceive any jealousy at his entertaining of Strangers, without their permission. He therefore only sent some of his Servants to us, whom our Interpreter could hardly make a shift to understand, they being all *Tartars*. He sent us a present of two sheep, a Barrel of *Hydromel*, another of *Beer*, and a third of *Aquavitæ*, with some pieces of *Ice*, *Cream* and *fresh Butter*, which the Prince's mother had her self taken the pains to beat.

The night following, and the next day, being the 9. we saw, as we pass'd several Villages, Monasteries and Taverns, most of them very pleasantly seated, amidst the woods; among others, on

on the right hand *Potsink Tatarsko*, three *werstes* from *Cassinogorod*, and at seven *werstes* thence, *Seloj Petriowo*, Then a Tavern, or *Caback*, at eight *werstes*, and *Brooth*, at five *werstes* one from another, upon the left hand: and then on the right hand, the River of *Moksche*, at eight *werstes*; then on the left hand, another Tavern; at two *werstes* thence, *Sateowa*; at 13 *werstes*, the Monastery of *Adrianou Pustino*; at 13 more *Jekatma*. This last is a great Village, containing about 300 houses, and belongs to the Bojar, *Fædor Juanovits Sheremetou*. And thence we got 20 *werstes* to the Forest of *Rushonor*.

The 9. we got ten *werstes*, to the Church of *Woskressenia*, commonly called *Woskressenski-mehl*, upon the left hand; and thence five *werstes*, to a great Village named *Lechi*, belonging to *Knez Boris Michaelovits Lycou*, on the same side; and thence about ten *werstes*, to *Pretziste Resenskon*, on the right hand; and at last to the City of *Moruma*, on the left hand.

Before we got to the City, we discover'd on the other side of the River a company of *Crim Tartars*, who presently got into the woods, whence they discharg'd their Fowling pieces at us, which we answer'd with Muskets, and so forc'd them to keep off. They were seen afterwards below the City, whence we imagin'd, they would have set upon us the night following; whereupon we lay under the Isle of *Zuchtsko Ostron*, and set a strong Guard; but we heard no more of them.

The City of *Moruma*, is the chiefest of the *Tartars* of *Mordwa*, and is inhabited by *Muscovites* and *Tartars*, but subject to the Great Duke. We sent our Interpreter to the Market to buy some provisions necessary, for the continuation of our Voyage.

The 10. we passed by the Town of *Prewospalo*, belonging to *Knez Juan Borissowits Circaski* one of the Great Dukes Privy Council, and left, on both hands, several little Villages, and the River of *Morsna Reka*, on the right hand; and at eight *werstes* thence that of *Clesna*, which comes from *Wladimer*. All along from that place, the shore on the right hand rises by little and little, to such an extraordinary height, that looking on it from the water, it seems to be one continued mountain, for above a hundred *German* leagues along the River *Volga*. Inasmuch, that even in that season, as also in the greatest heat of Summer, those parts are not without Ice and Snow, though all elsewhere, the Country is plain, fertile and fit for Tillage, reaching above a hundred leagues towards the South-west, and on the other side, it lies very low, barren, and moorish.

July 11. having pass'd by the pleasant Villages of *Isbuilets*, *Troitska*, *Slowoda*, the Monastery of *Dudina*, and *Nosimki*, we got at night before the great and Noble City of *Nise*, or *Nisenovogorod*, where we found the ship, called the *Frederick*, which we had ordered to be built, by our Captain *Michael Cordes*, whereof we spoke in the beginning of our Relation. It was not quite finish'd, by reason the *Muscovian* Carpenters, whom the Captain had employ'd about her, had not answer'd his expectation; yet was it so far on, that the Ambassadors lodg'd in it, and so forbore going into the City. It was built of Deal, being 120 foot long, and 40 broad, having three Masts, and so flat-bottom'd, that it took but seven foot water. It had many Chambers and Closets, for the convenience of the Ambassadors, the Officers and Gentlemen of their Retinue, and some Iron and Brass Guns, a great number of Granadoes and other Fire-arms. And as our design was to make use of it chiefly upon the *Volga*, which is full of Banks and quick-sands, it was so built, as that if there were no wind, they might use Oars; and to that end, it had twelve seats, two Oars to every seat. We had caused to be made a double Shallop, for the conveniency of unlading the Ship in those places where it might want water, as also to carry the Anchors, Cables, Sails, and other things necessary for so great a Voyage, and to discover those Banks and Sands in the *Caspian* Sea, which might hinder or retard its passage.

We stayd almost three weeks before the City of *Nisenovogorod*, for the finishing of the Ship; which time we spent in visiting our Friends in the City, where the chiefest *Dutch* Merchants entertain'd us at several great Feasts, as also in reciprocally treating them in our Tent, which we had pitch'd by the River side.

Our stay there gave me the convenience to observe the elevation of that place, which I found at the place where the River *Occa* falls into the *Volga*, to be at 56 degrees, 28 minutes, and that the Needle of the Compass declined there above nine degrees, towards the West. The Great Duke *Basili* ordered it to be built at the conflux or meeting of those two Noble Rivers, and gave it the name of *Nisenovogorod*, upon occasion of the Inhabitants of the great City of *Novogorod*, whom he caused to be translated thither. This indeed is not so great as the other, yet hath its Towers and Walls of stone. From *Moscon* to *Nise* are accounted 500 *werstes*, or 100 *German* leagues by Land; but by water, it is above 150. The Suburbs are much bigger than the City, and are above half a league about. The Inhabitants are *Tartars*, *Muscovites*, and *Hollanders*, of whom there are so many as make a *Protestant* Church of about 100. persons. *John Bernarts*, our Factor, was the chiefest man among them, the rest being, for the most



1636. most part, Military Officers, Merchants, and Victuallers, or Sutlers. The City is Governed by a *Weywode*, who, at our passage that way, was *Basili Petrouits*, under the Great Duke. Provisions were so cheap there, that we bought a Pullet for a penny, a quarter of Eggs for as much, and a Mutton, for 12. 15. or, at most, for 18. pence.

July 24. The Ambassadors sent Monsieur *Mandelslo* and my self, accompany'd by our *Muscovian* Interpreter and the *Pristaf*, to the *Weywode*, to thank him for his civilities towards our people, during the stay they had made in the City, while the Ship was a building, which was almost a year, and to make him a Present of a Jewel worth a hundred Crowns. His reception of us discover'd how magnificently he liv'd, and what a noble house he kept. For as soon as notice was brought him that we were come near the house, he sent two very handfom compleat persons to meet us at the Gate. They conducted us through a very long Gallery, and at the entrance into the Palace it self, we met with two comely old men, richly clad, who brought us to the *Weywode's* Chamber, who had on a Garment of Brocade, and was accompany'd by a great number of persons of Quality. The Room was hung with *Turkie* Tapistry, and had in it a great Cup-board of Plate. He receiv'd us with much civility, and having accepted the Present, and answer'd our Complement, he desir'd us to take our part of a Collation, during which, his Discourse was excellent good, and such as we thought the more extraordinary, in that the *Muscovites*, for the most part, contribute very little to any thing of Conversation. Among other things he asked us whether we did not fear meeting with the *Cosaques*, who in all likelihood would set upon us ere we got off the *Wolga*, and told us, they were a barbarous and inhumane people, and more cruel than Lions, shewing us at the same time a Picture, wherein was represented *Sampson's* engagement with one of those Creatures. We made him answer, that we look'd on that Piece as a good omen, in as much as if the *Cosaques* were stout as Lions, we should behave our selves, on the other-side, like *Sampsons*. The *Weywode* reply'd, that he had that good opinion of us, nay believ'd, that the repute our Nation had gain'd, by the services it had done his *Czaarick* Majesty, would frighten the *Cosaques*, and hinder them from attempting ought against us.

The River *Wolga* is four thousand six hundred Geometrical feet wide near *Nise*, at the meeting of the two Rivers; and whereas its waters encrease in the months of *May* and *June*, by reason of the Sun's having melted the Snow, and thaw'd the Rivers which fall into it, the Boatmen who go from *Moscon* to *Astrachan*, do commonly take that time, when there is water enough to pass over the Banks of Sand, nay indeed the little Islands which are very frequent in that River. This consideration, and the example of their misfortune, whose Boats we had seen cast away, and half rotten upon the Sands, made us resolve upon our departure thence with the soonest, before the waters, which visibly decreas'd, were fallen too low, and so we appointed it should be the 30th. of *July*.

*The Wolga.* The *Wolga*, whereof we gave a short account in the precedent book, is, in my opinion, one of the noblest and greatest Rivers in the World, its course being of a vast extent, from its source to the place where it falls into the *Caspian* Sea, below *Astrachan*. Whence it came that I took a delight to observe all the particularities thereof, from League to League, and from *Werste* to *Werste*, with all possible exactness, and with the assistance of a *Dutch* Master's-mate, named *Cornelius Nicholas*, one of the most able I ever came acquainted with in that Science, as also of some *Muscovian* Pilots, I have drawn a very exact Map of it, which I had made the World a promise of some years since, but now part with it, so well done, that I hope the Judicious Reader will be satisfy'd therewith.

Having bought Provisions for our Voyage as far as *Astrachan*, we left *Nise* the day before named, having only a side wind. Mr. *Balthasar Moucheron*, Commissary, or Agent from his Highness of *Holstein* about the Great Duke, the *Weywode* of *Nise's* Secretary, the Pastor of the *Lutherane* Church there, and our Factor, *John Bernarts*, would needs accompany us some *Werstes*, to see the beginning of that long Voyage: but we had hardly got two *Werstes*, ere we were a ground near the Monastery of *Petfora*, and forc'd to cast Anchor, while the men were getting off the ship, which took them up four hours.

July 31. Having made about a *Werste*, the Ship touch'd against a Sand-bank, but was soon got off, and we had continu'd our course, if the contrary wind, together with a Tempest, had not oblig'd us to cast Anchor. This interval we spent in our Devotions, to give God thanks for his miraculous deliverance of us the year before, when we were wrack'd upon the *Baltick* Sea. Having entertain'd our friends with a Dinner and Musick, they took leave of us, and return'd that night to *Nise*.

AUG. August 1. The Ambassadors order'd what Guard should be kept all along the *Wolga*. Those who are able to bear Arms, both Soldiers and Servants, were divided into three Companies, under the Command of the 2. Ambassadors, and the Steward of the Embassy. The Ambassadors had each his Captain Lieutenant, Mr. *Crusius*, the Master of the Horse, and *Brugman*, the Secretary of the Embassy, who went to Guard every day alternately, set Sentinels at the fore-Castle and the Stern, and had their Court of Guard at the main Mast. The same day we made

use of our Oars, the wind being against us; but we had hardly made 500 Paces, ere the ship struck again upon the Sand. Most of our Gentlemen went ashore, and had good fowling; for the High-Country between *Nise* and *Cassan* being well furnish'd with Wood and Pastures, was also well supply'd with fowl. 1636.

The 2. The wind being somewhat lay'd, we weigh'd Anchor, for the prosecution of our Voyage: but ere we had gotten a quarter of a League, we met again with Sand-banks near the Isle of *Tletinski*, and soon after others, near the Isle of *Subsimski*, where we saw a great Boat which had not long before been cast away thereabouts. These unfortunate accidents, our being nine hours getting off this last Bank, together with the ignorance of our Pilot, who acknowledg'd he had not made that Voyage in eight years before, much abated their courage, who, considering that in four days they had made but two Leagues, and that there were 550. to make, ere they came to the *Caspian* Sea, began to doubt they should never go through that Voyage.

But the 3d. We advanc'd a little better, and pass'd by the Villages of *Stolbiza* and *Stoba*, which lye three leagues from *Nise*. We saw afterwards, on the right hand, in a bottom between two Mountains, the Village of *Welikofrat*, that of *Tsimonski*, upon a Hill, and the Isle of *Diploi* at twenty *Werstes*, or four leagues from *Nise*. Near this Village we met with a great Vessel that had 200 men in it. It came from *Astrachan*, and was loaden with salt fish. They cannot be without such a great number of Mariners, by reason that, instead of Laveering or Rowing, when the wind is against them, they cast Anchor a quarter of a League before them, and all those men pull the Cable to which it is fasten'd, and so they advance by little and little, with much expence of time and pains, making but two Leagues a day at most, by reason of the greatness of those Boats, which are of 800. 900. or 1000. Tuns burthen. In the afternoon we left several Villages on the right hand, as *Beswodna*, *Kasnitza*, where I found the elevation to be 56 d. 21 m. *Kubotka*, *Tzetschina*, *Targuits*, and *Furkin*, where we pass'd between two Islands at 21 foot water. This last Village is ten Leagues from *Nise*. At night, the wind being more fair for us, we made use of our Sayls. The next day, the wind still good, we pass'd by several little Villages, leaving on the right hand the Towns of *Masa* and *Cremonski*, near which we lay at Anchor, the fourth all night, because, the River being shallow thereabouts, we avoided running upon the Sand-banks in the dark.

The 5th. Betimes in the morning, we got before a little Village, called *Pannino*, whence the Peasants brought us Pullets and other Provisions to sell, very cheap. Then we pass'd between two Isles, one called *Spassabelka*, and at night we came in sight of the City of *Basiligorod*, where we stay'd that night, by reason of the Sands. There we receiv'd by a Messenger, who had been sent exprefs from *Moscou*, Letters from *Germany*, dated in *May*. The City of *Basiligorod* is not Wall'd, and its Houses, even the publick edifices being but of Wood, we may say, it is properly but a Village. It is situated at the foot of a Mountain, upon the right shore of the River *Volga*, at 55 degrees and 51 m. elevation, at the falling in of the little River *Sura*, which was heretofore a common Frontier between the *Tartars* of *Casan* and the *Muscovites*. The Great Duke *Basili* built it, to prevent the incursions of *Tartars*, and fortify'd it; but now that the *Muscovites* have extended their Territories much farther, they think it unnecessary to keep any Garrison there.

The 6th. We had much ado to pass the Sands, which we met with every foot, so that it was afternoon ere we came up to the City, which we saluted with a volley of our great Guns. That honour we did all the Cities upon the same River.

The *Tartars* we spoke of are called *Ceremisses*, and their Country reaches beyond *Casan*, on both sides of the River *Volga*. They have no Houses, but only wretched Huts, and live upon Honey, and the wild-fowl they take in the Woods, and Milk, which their Pastures furnish them with. 'Tis a Nation absolutely barbarous, treacherous, and cruel, much given to forcery and robbery. Those who live on the right side of the *Volga* are called *Nagorni*, or Mountaineers, from the word *na*, which, in the *Muscovian* Language, signifies, upon, and *Gor*, a Mountain: and those on the left *Lugovi* or *Lugowizene*, that is to say, Meadows, because of the abundance of Hay which those parts afford, insomuch that the *Nagorni* are supply'd thence. *Guagnin* says, they are partly *Mahumetans*, partly *Heathens*; but this I am certain of, that about *Casan* they are all *Heathens*; not knowing what either Circumcision or Baptism means. All the Ceremony they have when they are to give a Child a name, consists in appointing some day six moneths after, on which they give it the name of that person whom they first meet.

Most of them believe there is a God, who is immortal, author of all the good that happens to men, and that he ought to be adored. But this is all they know of him; For they do not believe the immortality of the Soul, nor consequently the Resurrection of the dead: but that men and beasts have the same beginning, and come to the same end. I met with one of the *Ceremisses* at a house where I lodg'd at *Casan*. He was aged about 45 years, and wanted not ingenuity, but understanding that I was discoursing with my Host about some points of Religion, and that I spoke of the Resurrection of the Dead, he laugh'd at the perswasion,

1636. and said to me, Those who are dead are really dead, and will never return again, no more than my Horses and Cows, which are long since rotten. I asked him whether he knew who Created this World, and made Heaven and Earth? his answer was, *Tzortfneit*, The Devil may happily know. They do not believe there is any Hell, yet are perswaded there are Devils, and evil Spirits, which afflict and torment people in this life; and therefore they endeavour to appease them, and to gain their favour by Sacrifices.

Forty Leagues from *Casan* there is a place called *Nemda*, amidst the Fens, where these *Tartars* go Pilgrimages and do their Devotions; and they believe that those who go thither empty-handed, and carry no Present to the Devil, shall languish and pine away of some long and incurable disease. A particular point of their faith, is, that the Devil hath his principal residence in the Torrent of *Schockschem*, ten *Werstes* from *Nunda*; and whereas that little rivulet, which is but four foot deep, is never frozen (occasion'd by the violence of its course between two Mountains) they think it is not without some mystery, and they have so great a veneration for it, as to be perswaded, they cannot come near it, without danger of their lives, though the *Muscovites* cross it daily without any.

In their Sacrifices to God, they kill a Horse, an Ox, or a Sheep, roasting the flesh, and take a cut thereof in a Dish, and holding in the other hand another Dish full of Hydromel, or some other liquor; they cast both into a fire, which they make before the skin of the Creature that is sacrificed, which skin they hang upon a Pole laid a-cross between two Trees. They intreat that skin to present their Prayers to God, or sometimes they make their address immediately to God, and pray him to augment the number of their Cattel, or grant them some other conveniences of this life, which are the only object of all their Devotions. They adore also the Sun and Moon, as Authors of all the Noble Productions of the Earth; nay they are so fondly superstitious, as to have a veneration for what ever presents it self to them in the night in their Dreams, and to adore it the next day, as a Horse, a Cow, Fire, Water, &c. I told the *Tartar* I spoke of before, that it was madness, to worship those Creatures, whose lives are at our disposal; He reply'd, that it was better to adore things Animate, than the Gods of Wood and Colours which the *Muscovites* have hanging on their Walls. They have neither Churches, nor Priests, nor Books, and the Language of the *Ceremisses* is peculiar to them, having in a manner nothing common with that of the other *Tartars*, nor yet with the *Turkish*; though those who are subject to the *Czaar*, and so oblig'd to converse with the *Muscovites*, make use also of their Language.

They perform all Religious Ceremonies and Sacrifices near some Torrent, where they meet together, especially when upon the death of any of their friends, who hath left any Wealth behind him, they make good Cheer with the best Horse he had, which they put to death with the Master.

Polygamy is so ordinary among them, that there are few but have four or five Wives, whereof they take two or three into the same house, and make no great difficulty to marry two or three Sisters at the same time. Their Women and young Maids are all clad in a coarse white Cloath, wherein they so wrap up themselves, that there is nothing to be seen but their Faces. Those that are betroathed have a particular dress for their Heads, which hath a point like a Horn, which seems to come out of the Head, about half an ell in length: At the end of that Horn, there is a Tassel of silk, of diverse colours, at which hangs a little Bell. The Men wear a long Coat or Garment of coarse Linnen Cloath, under which they wear Breeches. They all shave their Heads, only those young Men that are not married, leave on the Head a long tress of Hair, which some tye up into a knot upon the Head, others suffer to hang down the Back: which particularity we had the opportunity to take better notice of at our return at *Casan*. When they saw us upon the River in a Dress so different from theirs, they were affrighted, so as that some fled, others had the confidence to stay on the Rivers side, but not one would venture to come into the Ship. Being come at night to the River of *Welluka*, near the Monastery of *Junka*, one of these *Tartars* had the courage to bring us a Sturgeon to sell, for which, at first, he asked a Crown, but afterwards let it go for xv d.

August 7. we came before the City of *Kusmademiansky*, 40. *werstes* from *Basiligorod*, seated at the foot of a mountain on the right hand. We saw, in those parts, whole Forests of Elms, the Bark whereof they sell all over the Country to make Sledges of. The Trees are many times of such compass, that the body of them being cut cylinder-wise, they make great Fats, Barrels, and Coffins thereof, all of one piece, which they sell at the adjacent Towns.

We cast Anchor three *werstes* thence near the Island of *Krius*, where we did our Devotions, and Celebrated the Lords Supper. The Peasants thereabouts, brought aboard the Ship several provisions to sell. About a league thence a tempest overtook us, and forc'd us to cast Anchor and to stay there all night.

The 8. the wind fair, we got, about noon, near the Island of *Turich*; but in the afternoon, the same wind forc'd our Ship, being under all the Sail she could make, upon a Sand-bank, near the Island of *Mastof*, with such violence, that it was thought the Masts would have broken; and

and this prov'd such a check to us, that it cost us four hours toil and trouble to get off. We perceiv'd on the right hand a great number of *Tartars*, some a-foot, some on horse-back, coming from Hay-making. We came at night before the City of *Sabakzar*, 40. *werstes* from *Kusmademianski*, and upon the same side of the River. The buildings of this City are of Wood, as are those of all the rest, but the situation of this is, beyond comparifon, more pleasant than that of any other City of *Tartary*. The Inhabitants perceiving our Ship at some distance, knew not at first what to think of her; whence it came that the *Weywode* sent some Musketers in a Boat, as far as the Island of *Makrits*, three *werstes* from the City, to discover what we were. The Boat thinking it not safe to venture too near us, took a compass, at a great distance about our Ship, and so returned to the City. But they no sooner understood our quality by our Pass-port, and withall the occasion of our Voyage, but there came above 300. persons to the River side to see us pass by.

1636.  
The City of  
Sabakzar

The 9. we pass'd by the Island of *Cofin*, leaving it on the left hand, 12. *werstes* from *Sabakzar*. Afterwards on the same hand a Village, named *Sundir*, and thence we came to a little City called *Kockschaga*, on the left side of the *Wolga*, 25. *werstes* from *Sabakzar*. The River is so shallow thereabouts, that there was hardly water enough for our Ship, which put us to much trouble, both that day and the next.

The 11. the current having forc'd the Ship upon the shore, where we were constrain'd to stay for several hours, *M. Mandelfo* and my self went a shore, to divert our selves and see what Fruits we could find in the Woods. Which had like to have occasion'd us a great misfortune, for the wind turning fair, at our return to the River side, all were gone, the Ship it self not in sight, though we made all the hast we could to overtake it. At last we saw a Boat coming towards us, which we thought at first might belong to the *Cosaques*; but soon after we perceiv'd they were some of our own, sent to bring us aboard. The contrary wind had stay'd the Ship at a turning of the River, and the tempest still increasing, we were forc'd to cast anchor, and to lie there all night.

The 12. we spent in getting beyond the turning by the help of an Anchor which we order'd to be cast at some distance before us, but with this misfortune, that having fasten'd in a Tree that was in the bottom, the Cable broke ere it could be had up again. The River is very full of those Trees, which it brings down with it when it overflows; and these accidents happen so frequently, that the bottom of the River is so lay'd with Anchors, that the *Muscovites* say, there are as many as would purchase a Kingdom.

The 13. before noon, we saw, as we pass'd, two *Cabaques*, or Taverns, and a Village named *Wefoska*, on the right hand, and came afterwards before the City of *Suiatski*. It is seated on the ascent of a hill, on the left hand, having a Castle and some Churches built of stone: but all the other buildings, as also the Towers and Rampiers of the City, are of wood. We cast Anchor there, by reason of a Sand-bank which we were to pass by. The people in the meantime came in multitudes to the River side to see us, and by reason that a little sandy Hill hindred their having a full sight of us, many came in Boats to the Ship side, others swam over to the Hill. Having pass'd by certain white Mountains, whereof some were of Chalk, others of Sand, we came at night before the City of *Casan*, 20. *werstes* from *Suiatski*. We there found the *Cavan* of *Persia* and *Circassia*, and with it a *Coptzi* or *Persian* Merchant, who had been sent Ambassador to *Moscou*. There was in this place also a *Tartarian* Prince, of *Terkz*, whose name was *Mussal*, who had succeeded his Brother in the Principality, and had then been doing homage to the *Czaar*, at *Moscou*, which he had left some dayes before us.

The City of  
Suiatski.

The City of  
Casan.  
A Tartar  
Prince.

The City of *Casan* is seated in a plain, 7. *werstes* from the *Wolga*, upon the River *Casanka*, which gives it the name, as it does to the whole Province. I found the elevation there to be 55. degrees, 38. minutes. It is of a considerable bigness, but all its Houses, as also the Towers and Rampiers, are of wood. Only the Castle and its Fortifications are of stone, being well mounted with Canon, and having a strong Garrison in it. The River is instead of a Ditch to it, and makes it a very considerable fortress. The Castle hath its *Weywode*, and the City, its Governour, who commands and administers Justice to the Inhabitants, who are *Muscovites* and *Tartars*: But in the Castle they are all *Muscovites*, and the *Tartars* are prohibited entring into it upon pain of death.

The Province of *Casan* lies on the left side of the River of *Wolga*, reaching Northwards as far as *Siberia*, and Eastward, as far as the *Tartars* of *Nagaja*. It was heretofore subject to the *Prince* of *Cham* of *Tartary*, and so populous, that it could send 60000. men into the Field. The conquest of it cost the *Muscovite* much blood, and the story of its reduction is so remarkable, that I think fit here to make a short digression to give an accompt thereof.

*Basili Juanouits*, Father to the Tyrant *Juan Basilouits*, having obtain'd a famous Victory over these *Tartars*, made Chief over them one named *Scheale*, a *Tartar* by birth, but one so ill shap'd as to his Person, that his Subjects, who soon conceiv'd an aversion for him, joyning with the *Tartars* of *Chrim*, who are *Mahumetans*, as they also are, made an insurrection, surpriz'd him, and ejected him. This success gave the *Chrim-Tartars*, who had got a considerable

Reduc'd by  
the Muscovites.

1636. Army together, the courage to enter *Muscovy*, under the conduct of two Brethren, *Mendligeri*, and *Sapperi*, who forc'd the *Muscovite*, with certain Troops which he had made a shift to get together, and were encamped upon the River *Occa*, to retreat to *Novogorod*.

The Tartars Masters of the City of Moscou. The consequence of this was the besieging, taking and plundering of the City of *Moscou*; nay they reduc'd the Castle to that extremity, that the *Muscovites* were forc'd to sue for a Peace. The *Tartars* were willing to hearken to an accommodation, and having got very considerable Presents from those who kept the Castle, who maintain'd it with more courage than success, they made a Peace, whereof this was one Article, That the Great Duke and all his Subjects, should ever after be Tributaries to them. *Basili* was loath to submit to such dishonourable Terms, but forc'd to comply with necessity, he accepted them, and confirmed the agreement by his Letters Patents.

The Great Duke Tributary to the Tartar. *Mendligeri*, to make it appear he was Sovereign Lord of *Moscou*, caused a Statue of his to be erected in the heart of the City, and would needs oblige the Great Duke, to express his subjection, to smite the ground with his head, before that Statue, as often as he paid Tribute to the *Tartars*. After this Victory the Brethren parted; *Sapperi* establish'd the Seat of his Government at *Casan* and *Mendligeri*, as being the Elder-Brother, his, at the City of *Chrim*. But the later delirous to add to his former conquest that of the City of *Resan*, resolv'd to lay siege to the Castle thereof, and to that end, he sent word to the *Weywode*, *John Kowar*, who commanded it, that it was madness in him to think to maintain the place, and that he should make

The fidelity of the Weywode of Resan. no difficulty to deliver it up, since the Great Duke was become his Subject. The *Weywode* sent him answer, that it was a thing so extraordinary, that he could not believe it, unless he sent him such assurances thereof, as should put him out of all doubt. *Mendligeri* imagining there could not any thing be more convictive in that case than the Letters Patents, sent them to him by certain Officers, just as he had receiv'd them from the Great Duke. But the *Weywode*, not a little glad to have the Original of those Letters in his hands, sends *Mendligeri* word, that he would keep them as safely as he would do the place he was in, which he resolv'd to maintain to the last drop of blood. There was in the Castle an *Italian* Canoneer named *John Jordan*, well known in those parts upon the account of his Wife, who would needs have her Husband express his affection to her by beating her with a Bull's pizzle. This man did the *Weywode* very great services, and kill'd so many *Tartars*, that *Mendligeri* perceiving one day, that a Cannon-bullet had taken off a piece of his Garment, was frighted, and proffered to raise the Siege, upon condition they would return the Great Duke's Letters. But the *Weywode* would hearken to no such thing, and having oblig'd *Mendligeri* to retreat, he sent the Letters to his Prince's Court, where they were received with the general joy of all the people, who immediately thereupon pull'd down, and broke to pieces the Statue of *Mendligeri*. Nay the Great Duke himself took such courage from that Action, that having rais'd an Army of 25000 men, he proclaim'd open War against *Sapperi*, Prince of *Casan*, sending him word, that he, by surprising and assaulting him without declaring any War, had proceeded like a Murderer and a Robber; but that himself, as Sovereign Lord and Conservator of all the *Russes*, proceeded therein as a person of Honour should do, and sent him word, that his Army was upon the march, in order to the besieging of *Casan*. This Siege caus'd the loss of much blood on both sides, but prov'd unfortunate to the *Muscovites*, who were at last forc'd to raise it. Thus ended the War between the Great Duke *Basili Ivanovits* and the *Tartars*.

Casan besieged by John Basilovits. His Son, *John Basilovits*, to shew the World how much he resent'd the affront, which the *Muscovites* had receiv'd before *Casan*, began his Reign with the Siege of that place. Having batter'd it for the space of two months together, fearing that *Mendligeri* would come in with his *Crim-Tartars* to the relief of his Brother, and exasperated at the refusal which the besieged had made, to accept of very honourable conditions, he commanded all the Walls to be undermined, and a general assault to be given. The Mines wrought their effect, and took off great numbers of the *Tartars*, the Assault was given, and the place carry'd by storm, on the 9 of July 1552. The *Tartars* perceiving the enemies were gotten into the place, took this resolution after they had made a vigorous resistance in two several places within the City, where they fortify'd themselves, and seeing their chiefest Commanders kill'd or wounded, they went out at one of the Gates, made their way through the *Muscovites*, and got on the other side of the River *Casanska*. Ever since, the City and Province of *Casan* hath continued under the *Muscovite*, who repair'd the breaches, renew'd the Fortifications, and reduc'd the Castle to the condition it is now in, having four Bastions, of stone, many Towers, and a good Ditch.

And takes it by storm. He who had the command of this place, when we pass'd that way, was Brother to the *Weywode* of *Nise*. The Ambassadors sent him, as a Present, by their Chamberlain, *M. Uchterits*, a very Noble Ruby. *M. Mandelsso* and I, conceiving our Ship would have lain there at Anchor all that day and the next, went ashore, as well to take the situation of the City, as to buy certain provisions. We could meet with nothing but Fruits, among others, particularly Melons, full as big as our Pompions, and Salt-fish, but such as stunk so that we were forc'd to stop our Noses, to shun the infection. As we came out of the City, we met with divers *Tartars*,

Melons of extraordinary bigness.

*Tartars*, who told us that our Ship was gone; which intelligence oblig'd us to take a *VVagon*, and afterwards, to make use of the *Pristaf's* Boat to bring us aboard, which, in the evening we found at Anchor, two leagues below *Casan*, where they intended to lye all that night. 1636.

The course of the River *Volga* from *Nisenovogorod* to *Casan*, is East-ward, and South-East-ward; but from *Casan* to *Astrachan*, and the *Caspian* Sea, it goes from North to South. The Country is very good, and fertile, but in a manner desolate, by reason of the *Cosaques*, and hath but few Villages. The Course of Volga.

Aug. 15. We continu'd our course, with the current of the water, which being very strong in that place by reason of the narrowness of the River, brought us that day as far as the Village of *Klitsfscha*, 26. *werstes* from *Casan*, lying amidst several Sand-banks, which we had much ado to pass through. Some part of that day, as also of the next, we spent in recovering our Anchors, whereof the Cables were broken; we at last made a shift to get up the great one, and left the little one behind, as being loath to lose any more time. Thence, we pass'd by a Tavern called *Kabak Tenkofski*, 30. *werstes* from *Casan*, where we met with great Sand-banks; and about half a League beyond it, another Bank, near a Tavern called *Keshofska*, which we had much difficulty to pass.

The 17. We pass'd over a great Bank, which had given the name to the Tavern we had pass'd by the day before. Thence we came to a place, where the shore on one side was very high, and some part of it fallen into the River about a moneth before, and by its fall had overwhelm'd a Boat full of people, who were going that way to gather Cherries, whereof there is abundance in those parts. The new Pilot, whom we had taken up at *Casan*, told us, that coming from *Astrachan*, he had met several of those Carkasses floating down the River, towards the *Caspian* Sea. Hereabouts, near the shore, on the right hand, we met with great quantities of Ice, which we put into our drinks, to make them drink the cooler. Ice in Aug. gust.

In the evening we came to a place where the great River of *Kama* falls into the *Volga*. It comes from North-East, out of the Province of *Permie*, and falls into the *Volga*, on our left hand, 60. *werstes* from *Casan*. The water of it is blackish, and it is much about the same breadth as that of *Weser* in *Germany*. At the mouth of it there are two Islands, whereof the greater is called *Sokol*; and upon the Continent, over against it, a handsom Village called *Paganzina*, and three *werstes* thence, another, named *Corotai*, whence we got seven *werstes* further, as far as a Village named *Kirieska*, where we stay'd all night. The River Kama.

The 18. The wind was so fair for us, that we made all the Sail we could, and got, by noon, to the place where the River *Zerdick* falls into the *Volga*, which is also on the left hand. It is indeed but a branch of the River *Kama*, making a kind of an Island, and having another mouth thirty *werstes* from the former. We discover'd at the same time on our right hand, upon a little ascent, the City of *Tetus*, distant from *Casan* 120. *werstes*, having its buildings, as well publick as private, disorderly scatter'd up and down. From this place to the *Caspian* Sea, there is no Village at all. The City of Tetus.

In the afternoon, near an Island called *Proleikarsa*, we met with the *Weywode* of *Terk*. This City is seated upon the *Caspian* Sea near *Astrachan*, and the *Weywode*, upon the expiration of his three years Government, was then returning to *Moscou*, to make way for his Successor. He was very well attended, having a Convoy of eight Boats with Musketers in them. At first, we knew not who they were, so that we kept them at a distance, by threatening to fire at them if they came nearer. They told us there were three thousand *Cosaques*, who expected us at the passage, some upon the River, some on the *Caspian* Sea; that they had seen not far thence, upon the River-side, 70. horse, which the *Tartars* had drawn off to make a discovery of us, and that they would be sure to set upon us; thinking with these stories to frighten us. We gave them one great shot, and kept on our course, having the wind so fair, as that it carried us 70. *werstes* that day. In the mean time, we left on our left hand the River *Utka*, which rises near the City of *Bulgara*, 25. *werstes* from *Tetus*. We thought fit, the night following, to make tryal what our people could do, in case we should be set upon, so that the Ambassadors conceived it would not be amiss to have a false Alarm given, ordering the Sentinels to cry out, and to discharge, and thereupon the Drums to beat, and the Musket and great Guns to be shot off. Our men did their parts very well, and kept their stations, expressing much resolution. We did the like in our return from *Persia*. The River of Utka.

The 19. We came to the Island of *Staritzo*, which is 15. *werstes* long. There I found the Elevation to be 54. d. 31. m. Behind that Island, on the right hand, we found a great number of round stones, much after the form of Oranges or Citrons, which, being broken in the midst, represented a Star of divers colours, whereof some had the resemblance of polish'd Gold or Silver, others were brown or yellow. We took up a good quantity of them, to serve us for bullets for our Murthering-Pieces. Thence we came to a very pleasant place, where might have been seen heretofore a City of *Tartary*, called *Uneroskora*. There, had been buried one of their Saints, for which Monument those that live thereabouts have still a great Devotion. From this place

1636. place to the City of *Tetus* are accompted 65 *werstes*. We saw on the River-side, under certain Trees, two men on horse-back, who immediately got out of the way, which occasion'd us to send one to stand Sentinel in the Scuttle of the main Mast; but they appear'd no more.

The 20. There came several Fisher-men of *Tetus* aboard us, and brought us 55 large breams, which they had taken thereabouts, and sold them us for fifty pence. They have a particular way of fishing. They fasten to the end of a long cord, a pretty big stone, which falls to the bottom, and at the other end of the said cord several great pieces of Wood which swim upon the water. All along this cord are fasten'd many little cords, each whereof hath a hook baited with a certain kind of fish which is not of the least, but such as the others greedily feed upon. The fish they take by this invention is ten or twelve foot long, the meat of it white, firm, and very delicate. In our return from *Persia*, there was one brought to the Boat where I was with the Ambassador *Crusius*, which was so big, though there was nothing else eaten, by reason every one liked it so well, yet was all the company satisfied, and there was as much left as fill'd a barrel, wherein it was pickled up.

When the *Muscovites* travel about their own occasions, they make use of another invention. They fasten a hook to the end of a Cord, and tie the Cord about a piece of board of about the breadth of a man's hand, plain'd very smooth, and tinn'd over; and drag it after the Boat, so as that the current of the water causing it ever and anon to turn up towards the Sun, makes it shine like the scales of a fish: by which means drawing the greater sort of fish after it, they take more than they can spend while they are on the water. So that the *Muscovites*, making no other provision, for their journeys, but of bread twice bak'd or dried in the Oven, find it no hard matter to subsist any where; not to mention, that their continual abstinences, and their Fasts having accusom'd them to be content with little, and to care little for flesh, they make a shift to live upon any thing they can meet withall; nay, in case of necessity, upon the liquor which Nature furnishes them with.

At this place we let go the Boat which had carried our Provisions from *Nise*, which being empty we had no further use for: but we thought fit to set it a fire, lest it might have fallen into the hands of the *Cosaques*, who would have made use of it against us. About noon, we pass'd by the Island of *Botenska*, which is three *werstes* in length, and is only divided by a small Channel, from a kind of Cape, or Promontory, called *Polibno*. The contrary wind forc'd us to Anchor behind the Island, near the River *Beitma*, which, as they say, is also a branch of the great River *Kama*.

The 21. We left, on the right hand, two very pleasant places; which are reported to have been heretofore great Cities, destroy'd by *Tamberlane*, whereof one was called *Simberska-gora*.

The 22. With some little difficulty, we pass'd over three Sand Banks, whereof one is above, the other, below the place whence may be seen the Mountain *Arbenchim*, which was on our right hand. It derives its name from a City, whereof the ruins are yet to be seen.

There may be seen from the River a great stone about 20 foot in length, and as many in breadth, lying between two little Hills, having engraven on it the words following, *Budesch zime dobro tobæ budet*; that is to say, *If thou raise me, thou shalt be well rewarded*. We were told, that not long before, a great *Muscovian* Boat being forc'd by contrary winds to make some stay there, fifty Passengers went ashore, to raise the stone; but when they had with much ado turned it, they only found engraven on the other side these words, *Tsto isches netsebo poloschen*; that is to say, *In vain dost thou look for what thou hadst not put there*. On the right hand, we had the view of a spacious and very delightful Champain Country, the ground very rich, with a high grafs on it; but it was not inhabited, and there could be seen only the ruins of Cities and Villages, which had been heretofore destroy'd by *Tamberlane*.

The 23. The contrary wind forc'd us to Anchor near the River *Adrobe*, where I found the Elevation to be 53 degr. 48 minutes. In the afternoon, we thought to advance a little by laverage, but we hardly got half a league further.

The 24. The contrary wind, still continuing at the same height, forc'd us twice against the shore, and very much hindred the prosecution of our Voyage. For some dayes following we had the same inconvenience, by reason of the Sand-banks, and the inconstancy of the wind, which rise about nine in the morning, and about five at night there was not the least breath stirring, by that means adding to the affliction which otherwise lay heavy enough on us. For, besides that the indisposition of most of our people made that undelightful voyage the more tedious to them, continual watching, and the insupportable trouble we were every foot put to, reduc'd them to a very sad condition. Those who had been in action all night, though it was not their profession to bear Arms, were, in the day time, forc'd to row. Smoak'd and Salt-meats afforded little nourishment, and the discontents arising orherwise upon the frowardness of one of the Ambassadors, in a manner took away the little courage we had left to encounter with the great inconveniences of that long voyage.

The 25. We saw on the right hand, a Mountain out of which the *Muscovites* get Salt, which they prepare in certain Huts, built for that purpose at the foot of the Mountain, then expose it to the Sun, and send it along the *Volga* for *Moscou*. Opposite to this Mountain is the Island of *Kostowata*. The River hereabouts is very broad, by reason of the lowness of the shores on both sides. Not far hence there is another Mountain, at the foot whereof is the River *Ussa*, which though it there falls into the *Volga*, yet is united again to it, sixty *werstes* below *Samara*. There are on both sides of the River pleasant Pastures; but not far thence there being thick Woods with a high Mountain adjoining, whence Robbers discover at a great distance what Passengers there are coming, it is very dangerous travelling that way. The *Cosaques* make their advantages thereof, and not a year before our passage that way, they took a great Vessel loaden, belonging to one of the richest Merchants of *Nise*. Near this River we had sixty foot water, as also near the Mountain *Diwisagora*, which word signifies, the Maids Mountain, and the *Muscovites* say it derives its name from certain Maids that had sometime been kept there by a Shee-Dwarf. We left it on the right hand. It is very high and steepy towards the River, whence it may be seen divided into several Hills, pleasant to the eye by reason of the diversity of the colours, some being red, some blew, some yellow, &c. and representing, at a great distance, the ruins of some great and magnificent structure. Upon every Hill or Bank is a row of Pine-Trees, so regularly planted, that a man might doubt whether it were not Artificial, were it not that the Mountain is inaccessible of all sides. At the foot of this Mountain there rises another, which reaches along the River, for eight Leagues together. The Valley between those two Mountains, is called *Jabla-new-quas*, that is to say, Apple-drink, from the great number of Apple-Trees there, which bear Apples fit only for Cider.

1636.

The River Ussa.

The same day we receiv'd Letters from *Moscou* by an express Messenger, who brought us also Letters from *Nise*, by which we understood, that among our Mariners, there were four *Cosaques*, who came into our retinue, purposely to betray us into the hands of their Camerades. This notice, though we were carefull enough to look after our people before, added to our care, and made us more vigilant.

In the evening, after Sun-set, we perceiv'd two great fires at the entrance of a Wood on the right hand, which putting us into a fear they might be the *Cosaques* who lay in wait for us, there were five or six Musketers sent to discover what they where: but ours having shot off three Muskets, the other answer'd them with the like number, and discover'd themselves to be *Strelits*, who had been ordered to Guard a *Persian* Caravan, and were then returning to their Garrisons. The Ambassador *Brugman*, impatient to hear what accompt our men would bring, and thinking they stay'd very long, call'd after them as loud as he could, but the contrary wind hindred them from hearing him; and in that suspence he would have had some of the great Guns discharg'd at those fires; but the Ambassador *Crasius* oppos'd it, and told him, that their quality obliging them to stand onely upon the defensive part, he would not by any means consent thereto.

In the night, between the 26. and 27. our Sentinels perceiv'd in a little Boat, two men, who, thinking to go along by our ship-side, were stay'd, and forc'd to come aboard us. They said they were fisher-men, and that the *Muscovites*, whom they called their brethren, suffered them to go along with their Boats by night as well as by day: but, in regard we were told, the *Cosaques* took this course, and were wont to come near Vessels, to cut their Cables, we examin'd them apart, and finding their answers different, one saying there were 500. *Cosaques* waiting for us, in an Isle near *Soratof*, the other denying it, they were kept all night, and the next morning we sent them by our *Pristaf* to the *Weywode* of *Samara*.

The 27. We saw, on the left hand, in a spacious plain, not far from the River side, a Hill of Sand like a Down. The *Muscovites* call it *Sariol Kurgan*, and affirm, that a certain *Tartarian* Emperour, named *Momaon*, who had a design to enter *Muscovy*, together with seven Kings of the same Nation, dy'd in that place, and that his Soldiers, instead of burying him, fill'd their Head-pieces and Bucklers with Sand, and so cover'd the body that it became a Mountain.

About a League from the said Hill, and on the same side, begins the Mountain of *Soccobei*, which reaches along the River-side, as far as *Samara*, which is distant from that place 15. *werstes*. It is very high, in a manner all Rock, cover'd with Trees, unless it be on the top, where it is all bare. The *Muscovites* take much notice of this place, because it is very dangerous passing thereabouts. We came near it about noon, but the contrary wind oblig'd us to cast Anchor. While we stay'd there we saw coming from the shore two great red Snakes, which got by the Cables into the ship. As soon as the *Muscovites* perceiv'd them, they intreated us not to kill them, but to give them somewhat to eat, as being a sort of innocent beasts, sent by *St. Nicholas*, to bring us a fair wind, and to comfort us in our affliction.

The superstitious of the Muscovites.

The 28. We weigh'd betimes in the morning, and came before day near the City of *Samara*, which is 350. *werstes* from *Casan*. It lies on the left hand, two *werstes* from the River side. It is, as to form, almost square, all its buildings of Wood, unless it be some Churches, and two

or



1636. or three Monasteries. The River of *Samar*, whence it hath the name, by a little Bank, which is called *Sin-Samar*, falls into the *Wolga*, three *werstes* below the City, but is not absolutely united thereto till after 30 *werstes* lower.

We intended to make some stay near the City, in expectation to hear, by our *Pristaf*, what our Prisoners had depos'd; but the wind came so fair for us, that we thought better not to let slip the opportunity we then had to make the greatest days journey of any since the beginning of our Voyage. Accordingly, we got at night, to the Mountain of the *Cosaques*, which is 115 *werstes* from *Samara*, and so the prognostication of the *Muscovian* Mariners, by the Snakes, proved true. From the City of *Samara*, to the place where the river *Samar* falls into the *Wolga*, there is all along one continued mountain. Near the same place, but on the other side of the River, the River *Ascula* falls into it, so that the falling in of all these waters together, does so swell the *Wolga*, that in this place it is near two leagues broad. Afterwards, on the right hand may be seen the mountain called *Pestcherski*, which is in a manner all one Rock, having very little upon it, and reaching near 40 *werstes* along the river side.

The Mountain of the Cosaques.

About 100 *werstes* from *Samara*, in the midst of the river, is the Island of *Barach*, and ten *werstes* lower that of *Lopatin*, which is five *werstes* in length, and lies opposite to the river *Lifran*, which there falls into the *Wolga*, on the right hand. Afterwards, we pass'd by many little Isles, and came very late at night to the mountain of the *Cosaques*. It is all bare and without wood. The *Cosaques* who live upon the River *Don*, and had their retreating places in this mountain, whence they at a great distance discovered the Boats that were coming down, and there appointed parties to carry on their Robberies, have given it the name. But ever since the *Weywode* of *Samara* surpriz'd there a great party of *Cosaques*, whereof there were five or six hundred kill'd upon the place, they have forborn assembling there in so great numbers, and appear only in small parties. All these mountains do sometimes reach a great way into the Country, and sometimes they do but in a manner border the river, to which they serve instead of a bank. We lay at Anchor all night, at the place where this mountain begins, and the next day, 29. we pass'd it, and, in our way, the river *Pantzina*, which falls into the *Wolga*, on the right hand, and having sail'd that day 45 *werstes*, we cast Anchor at night near the Isle of *Sagerinsko*, where we staid all night. Some Fisher-men, who came aboard, gave us intelligence that they had seen thereabouts 40 *Cosaques*, who had made their appearance on the river side. Here we told our people, that our Beer beginning to grow low, they must content themselves for the future with water, into which they might put a little Vinegar, and so make *Oxycras* of it.


Aug. 30. we came betimes in the morning to the mouth of the river *Zagra*, which falls into the *Wolga* on the right hand, near the Isle of *Zagerinsko*, to which it gives the name. Forty *werstes* thence, we pass'd by the Isle of *Sosnou*, where news was brought us, that we should meet with the 500 *Cosaques*, of whom one of the Fisher-men of *Samara* had given us an alarm; whereupon all took Arms, and the Guns were made ready, but we saw not any body.

Towards noon, we came over against the mountain of *Tichy*, which comes out so far on the right hand, that at a great distance, it seems to dam up the river, which nevertheless is so shallow thereabouts, that some affirmed, the *Cosaques* forded it. Not far off there is a Bank of Sand, called *Owetzabrot*, and several little Isles, full of copses and bushes, which the *Cosaques* know how to make their advantages of, in the carrying on their enterprises. There we met with two Fishermen, who told us, that some eight days before, the *Cosaques* had taken a great Boat from them, and had told them that within a small time, they expected to come into those parts a great German ship. In the evening, we called to two other Fisher-men, who coming aboard, we asked them what they knew concerning the *Cosaques*. The more aged was at first cautious and would say nothing, but perceiving, the other, who was much younger, had not used the same reserv'dness, he confirm'd what his Camerader had said, and assur'd us, that he had seen 40 *Cosaques* retreating into the Wood, which we discover'd from our Ship, and that they had six Boats, which they had brought ashore, to be made use of against us. They both intreated us, to make our best advantage, of that discovery, which would cost them their lives, if the *Cosaques* came to know as much, and to carry them away as Prisoners, and set them ashore some *werstes* thence. Which we accordingly did, but we doubled our Guards, and kept them under a Guard all that night, in regard we had no reason to be more confident of them, than of the *Cosaques* themselves. The next morning at the Break of day, we dismiss'd them. That day we sail'd 60 *werstes*.

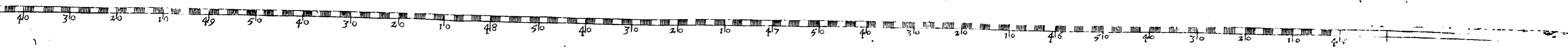
The last of *August*, we had so good a wind that we got 120. *werstes* between Sun and Sun. The Isle of *Ossino*, ten *werstes* distant from *Saratof*, was the first thing we saw that day. The Sand-bank which near that place reaches a great way into the River, put us to some difficulty to pass it. The Ship struck several times against it, yet at last pass'd it without any stop. Twenty *werstes* thence there is another Isle called *Schismamago*, and then that of *Koltof*, which is 50 *werstes* from *Saratof*, where we found sometimes 16. sometimes 20. sometimes 30. sometimes



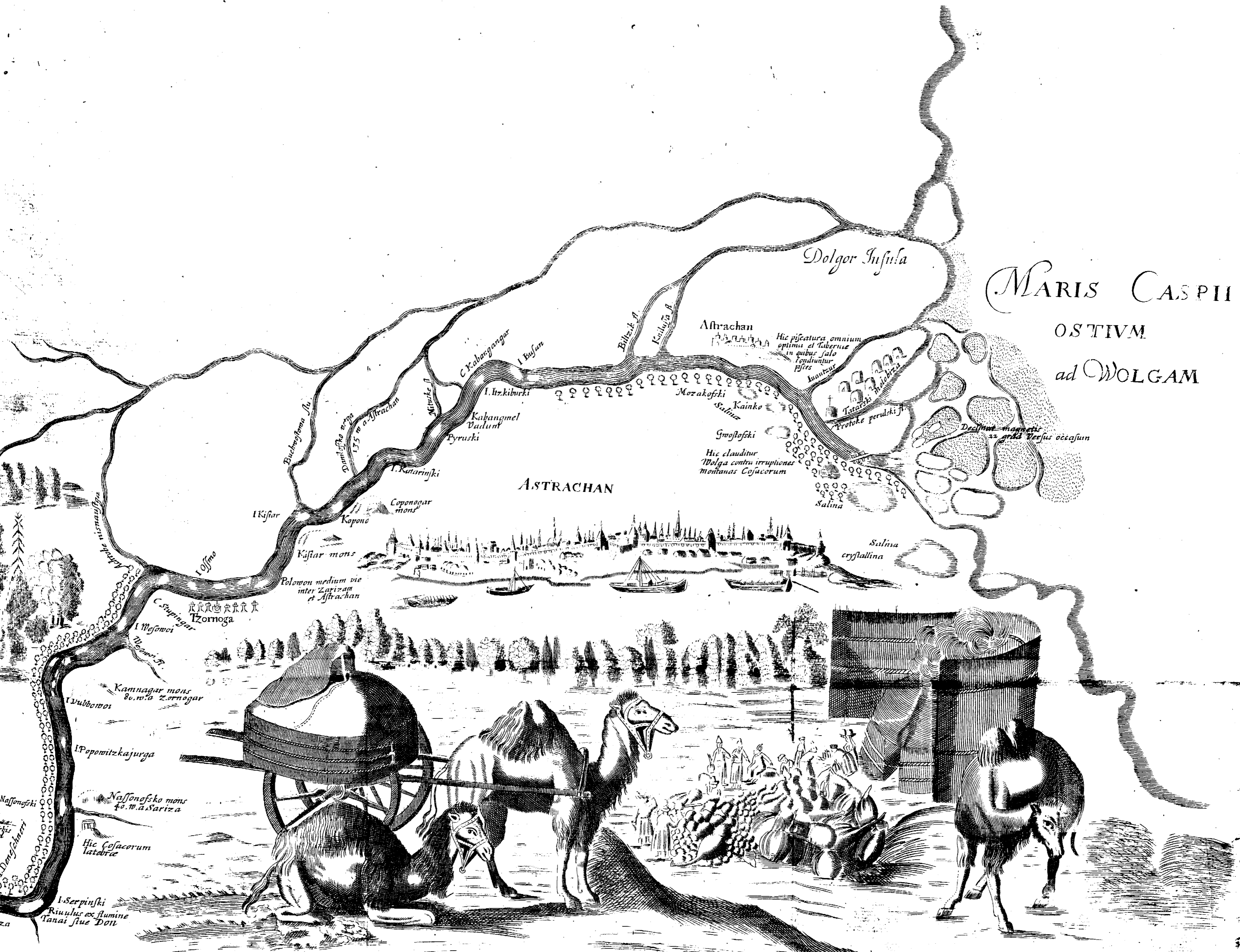
CERE

  
 D.D.D.D.  
 EDOARDO MALINSEIL de Mergam in C<sup>m</sup> Hamorran  
 et  
 EDOARDO MALINSELL de Muddlescom in C<sup>m</sup> Carmarthen  
 Baronettis Accuratam hanc Nobilit<sup>is</sup> totius Europæ Fluminis  
**WOLGÆ**, olim **RHA** dictæ  
 Desineationem,  
 D.D.D. I. D.  
 The Course of the Great River  
**WOLGÆ**  
 by A. Olearius  
 John Chantry sculp.





MARIS CASPII  
OSTIUM  
ad WOLGAM



Dolgor Insula

Astrachan

Hic piscatura omnium  
optimis et liberius  
in quibus salo  
continentur  
piscis

Mozakofski  
Kainko  
Groslofski

Salina  
Protoko perulski  
Salina

Hic clauditur  
Wolga contra irruptiones  
montanas Cosacorum

ASTRACHAN

Salina  
crystallina

Dezimat magnetis  
ex grana Terebinthi occasum

Buehngoma flu.

C. Kabangorogor

Kabangmel  
Vadunt  
Pyruski

I. Kifur

Kifur mons

Polowon medium viae  
inter Zarizam  
et Astrachan

IZornoga

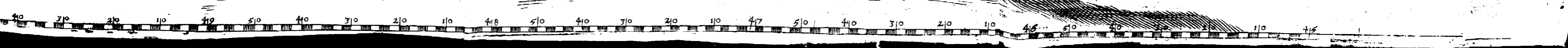
Kamnagar mons  
20. m. a Zarizam

I. Papomitzkajurga

Nassonofsko mons  
40. m. a Sariza

Hic Cosacorum  
latebrae

I. Serpiuski  
Riuulus ex flumine  
Tanai sive Don



times 40. foot water. Between these two Isles we met with two great Boats, having each of them 1636. 400. Mariners aboard it, one belong'd to the Patriarch, and was loaden with Provisions; the other, which was loaden with *Cavayar*, which is a past of the Spawn or Eggs of Sturgeon salted, as we have said elsewhere, belong'd to the Great Duke. They gave us several Volleys of small shot, and we answer'd their civility with a great Gun. Near the Isle of *Koltof*, we met with four other Boats, coming from *Astrachan*, loaden with Salt and Salt-fish, upon the account of *Gregori Mikitof*, one of the richest Merchants of *Moscon*. The Boat-men told us that they had seen, near *Astrachan*, in several Boats, about 200. *Cosaques*, who had suffer'd them to pass, without saying any thing to them. Not far from this Isle may be seen on the right hand, the mountain of *Smiowa*, which is above 40. *werstes* in length. The word *Smiowa* signifies a Serpent, and they have given the Mountain that name, because it sometimes winds it self a great way into the Country, sometimes, it only borders the River. The *Muscovites* would have it so called from a Serpent, or Dragon, which having done abundance of mischief thereabouts, was kill'd by some great Heroe, and cut into three pieces, which were immediately metamorphos'd into so many stones, and are shewn to this day, to such as pass that way. From this Mountain, all along the plain may be seen many Isles, which they call *Sarok-ostrowe*, that is to say, the Forty Isles.

Sept. 1. betimes in the morning, we met with three great Boats, between 5. and 600. run a SEPTEMB. 1636. piece, which yet took up but 12. foot of water. They tow'd after them a great many little Boats, in order to the unloading of the great ones, where the River is not deep enough. The biggest of them carried Provisions for the Monastery of *Troitza*, whereof we have spoken elsewhere. The Salute was the same with what we had made to those we had met before. About nine in the morning, we pass'd in sight of the City of *Saratof*. It is seated at 52. deg. 12. min. The City of Saratof. elevation, in a great plain four *werstes* from the River, and upon a branch which the *Wolga* makes on that side. All the Inhabitants are *Muscovian* Musketiers, under the command of a *Weywode*, sent thither by the Great Duke, for the preservation of the Country, against the *Tartars*, called *Kalmuches*, who are possess'd of a vast Country, reaching from those parts as far as the *Caspian* Sea, and to the River *Faika*. These *Tartars* make frequent incursions as far as the River *Wolga*, and are not so inconsiderable, but that they many times proclaim open War against the Great Duke. From *Samara* to *Saratof*, are 350. *werstes*.

The second, having a fair wind, we pass'd in sight of the Isles of *Kriusna* and *Sapunofka*, which are at a small distance one from the other, and came to the Mountain of *Achmats Kigori*, which ends at an Isle of the same name, 50. *werstes* from *Saratof*. This Mountain affords a very pleasant Prospect, in as much as the top of it is clad with a perfectly-excellent verdure, the ascent checquer'd with a soil or mold of several different colours, and the skirt of it is a very great bank, so even, that it seems to have been done by hand. Twenty *werstes* from the Isle of *Achmatsko* we saw that of *Soloroi*, and afterwards the Mountain of *Sallottogori*, or the Golden Mountain. The *Muscovites* told us, that name was given it, for this reason, that heretofore the *Tartars* had thereabouts surpriz'd a *Muscovian* Fleet, so richly loaden, that they divided Gold and Silver by the Bushel. We were no sooner past by this Mountain, but we came in sight of another, called *Milobe*, that is to say, Chalk. It reaches along the River 40. *werstes*, having the top as even as if it had been done by a Level, and makes an insensible descent down to the River, at the foot whereof are many Trees planted checquer-wise. After this, we came to another Mountain on which we bestow'd the name of the Mountain of Pillars, for as much as the rains having wash'd away the earth in several places, they look'd at a distance, like so many Pillars, out of order, of several colours, Blew, Red, Yellow, and Green. Here we met with another great Boat, the Pilot whereof sent us word, that he had seen near *Astrachan* about 70. *Cosaques*, who had suffered them to pass without saying ought to them; but withall, that some four dayes before ten of those Rogues had trapann'd him out of 500. Crowns, not by setting on the Boat, where they should have met with resistance, since they could have made their party good against a much greater number of Enemies; but they had taken that Boat and the Anchor, which the *Muscovites* make use of when they go against the stream of the River (as we have express'd elsewhere) and kept both till the fore-said sum was sent them. In the evening, as soon as we had cast Anchor, we saw coming towards us ten *Cosaques*, who went into a Boat, and cross'd to the other side of the River. The Ambassador *Brugman* immediately commanded eight Musketiers, taken, some out of our retinue, some from among the Soldiery, to follow the *Cosaques*, to find out what their design was, and to endeavour to bring them aboard. But the *Cosaques* had time enough to get ashore, and retreat into the wood, whether they also carried their Boat; so that it was far night ere our people return'd. Our Steward was much troubled thereat, and represent'd to *Brugman*, how dangerous it was, to command our people at such unseasonable hours, and that in a place where they could not be reliev'd; but the other was so much incens'd at these remonstrances, that he gave the Steward very unworthy language.

Sept. 3. we saw on the left hand the River of *Ruslana*, and opposite thereto on the right hand, the

1636. the mountain of *Urakus Karul*, which is 150 *werstes* from *Sarasof*. They say that a *Tartarian* Prince, named *Urak*, who giving Battel to the *Cosaques* in that place, was there kill'd and buried, gave it the name. Thence we came to the mountain *Kamaschinka*, and to the river of the same name. It rises out of the torrent of *Iloba*, which falls into the *Don*, which falls into the *Euxine* Sea, and divides *Asia* and *Europe*. The *Cosaques* cross this river in little Boats, and make their incursions as far as upon the *Wolga*; so that this is the most dangerous place of any. We saw along the River-side, upon the right hand several wooden Crosses, set there to signify the Sepulchres of a great number of *Muscovites*, who had been kill'd there by the *Cosaques*.

Having pass'd this place, we perceived the *Caravan* of *Persia* and *Tartary*; it consisted of sixteen great Boats, and six little ones. As soon as they saw us, the Mariners gave over rowing, and went only as the stream carried them, to the end we might overtake them; which oblig'd us to make all the Sail we could, and to do what else lay in our power, till we got up to them. We soon express'd our joy, by the noise of our Trumpets, and saluted the *Caravan* with four great Pieces; they answer'd with all their small shot, which oblig'd us to give them another Volley.

The principal persons of this *Caravan*, who could not have all met till they came to *Samara*, were, a *Tartarian* Prince, named *Massal*, the *Cuptzi*, or the King of *Persia's* Merchant, whom we spake of before, a *Muscovian* *Postlanick*, named *Alexei Savinowits Romantzikon*, sent by the Great Duke to the King of *Persia*, an Ambassador from the *Crim-Tartars*, a Merchant, or Factor from the Chancellor of *Persia*, and two Merchants of the Province of *Kilan* in *Persia*.

Immediately after these first general expressions of joy, we saw coming towards us a *Muscovian* Officer, attended by a considerable number of Musketeers, who came to give us a Volley, and inquire after our health, from the Prince of *Tartary*. As they came up to our Ship, the *Strelits* discharg'd their Muskets, and then only the Officer came aboard, and made his complement. As soon as he left us the Ambassadors sent to the said Prince, the *Sieur Uchterius*, who was accompany'd by *Thomas de Melleville*, and our *Muscovian* Interpreter; and commanded the Secretary of the Embassy, who took along with him the *Persian* Interpreter, to go at the same time and complement the *Cuptzi*, who had in the interim sent one of his retinue to do the like to the Ambassadors.

The Secretary coming to the Lar-board-side of the *Cuptzi's* Vessel, would have got up into it there, but his servants, acquainting him that the Masters Wife having her lodgings on that side, it would not be so fit for him, so that he was forc'd to order the Boat to go about the Ship, and to get in the other side. As we got in there stood several Servants, very handsome persons, who took us by the arms to help us up, and conducted us to the *Cuptzi's* Chamber. We found him sitting in a Couch, which was rais'd two foot high, and cover'd with a piece of the best kind of *Persian* Tapestry. He had under him a coarse piece of *Turkey* Tapestry, setting cross-leg'd, according to the custome of his Countrey, resting his back on a Crimson Satin cushion.

The King  
of Persia's  
Cuptzi.

He received us with much civility, putting his hands to his breast, and making a low inclination of the head, which are the ordinary Ceremonies, wherewith they receive those Persons, whom they would do the greatest honour. He intreated us to sit down by him, which out of compliance we did, but not without much trouble to us, as being not accustomed to continue any long time in that posture. He very handsomely receiv'd our complement, and answer'd it with so much of obligation and kindness, that we could not but be much taken with his civility. He told us among other things, that he was extremely desirous to see his own Country, and his own House, but the satisfaction it would be to him to see either of them, would not be comparable to that which he had conceiv'd at the first sight of our Ship. He added, that as soon as we were come into *Persia*, we should find the roughness and barbarism of the Nation, among whom we then were, chang'd into an obliging civility, to pleasant conversation, and into a manner of life absolutely inviting, and that attended with a freedom, which should be common to us with all the Inhabitants of the Country. That, he hoped, at his arrival at the Court, it would not be hard for him, with the assistance of his Friends there, to obtain the charge of *Mehemander*, or Conductor, for our Embassy, since he had the happiness of our acquaintance by the way: That then he would oblige us upon all occasions, and in the mean time intreated us to dispose of his person, and whatever was in the Ship, as we pleased. He treated us with a Collation, which was serv'd in, in Plate Vermilion-gilt, and consisted only in Fruits, Grapes, and Pistachoes, dry'd and pickled. The only drink we had, was an excellent kind of *Muscovian* *Aquavitæ*, wherein he first drunk the health of the two Ambassadors together, and afterwards that of each of them by himself, which happened at the same time that his own was drunk in our ship, which we knew to be so by the joint Volley of both the great Guns, and the small shot. Taking our leave of him, he told us as a great Secret, that he had some news to tell the Ambassadors; which was, that he had it from a very good hand, that the King of Po-

land

land had sent an Ambassador to *Schach Sefi*, that he had taken his way by *Constantinople* and *Bagdet*; that he was then upon his return to *Astrachan*, and that he had order, in his way, to see the Great Duke; but that the *Weywode* would not permit him to pass, till he had first heard from the Court. That this was all he knew of it, and that the Ambassadors might guess at the rest as also what may have been the occasion of his Voyage and Negotiation. 1636.

The other eminent Persons of the Caravan sent also to complement us, and to make proffer of their services, intreating us to keep them company, and assuring us of their assistance if need were. After a general Volley of all the Caravan, we parted, and kept on our course. At night we had a great Tempest, with two extraordinary Thunder-claps, and some flashes of Lightning; but the weather soon became fair again, and we had a great calm.

Sept. 4. being Sunday, just as our Minister was beginning his Sermon, came aboard us several Tartars, whom *Mussal* the Tartarian Prince of *Circassia* sent to tell us, that, his disposition would not suffer him to give the Ambassadors a personal visit, but as soon as his health would permit him to take the air, it should be the first thing he did. The equipage of those who came along with the Person employ'd in this Message may very well deserve a little remark from us. As to his Person, he was somewhat of the tallest, his complexion of an Olive-colour, his hair long, greasie, and black as Jet, and his beard of the same colour and fashion. He had upon his upper Garment, some black-Sheep-skin, the woolly side out, a Callot, or close Cap, on his head, and his countenance such as a Painter might well take for an original, if he were to represent the Devil. His retinue were in no better order, having about them only Coats, or Garments of some very coarse Cloath, brown or black. We entertain'd them with certain Goblets of Aquavitæ, and sent them sufficiently drunk to their Ship.

About noon we came to the River of *Bolloclea*, in the mid-way between *Kamuschin-ka*, and *Zariza*, 90 werstes distant from either of them. Having sail'd sixteen werstes further, we came to a very high hill of sand, called *Sreblne*, near which we stay'd all night.

Sept. 5. we had hardly weigh'd Anchor, but the current forc'd us upon a sand-bank, where we found but five foot and a half water. While we were busied about getting off the Ship, the Caravan got before us, and made towards *Zariza*, with a design to take in there some other Muskettiers for its convoy to *Astrachan*. About noon, we got to a place whence we might have gone in less than a days time as far as the River *Don*, called by *Ptolomey* and other Antient Geographers *Tanais*, which advances in that place as far as within seven leagues of the *Volga*, taking its course towards the East. A little lower, near *Achrobska Urskä*, the *Volga* divides it self into two branches, whereof one, which takes into the Country on the left hand, goes a course contrary to that of the great River, taking towards East-North-East; but about one werste thence, it re-assumes its former course, and returns towards the South-East, so to fall into the *Caspian* Sea. In this place I found the Elevation to be 48 degrees, 51 minutes. The first Branch of Volga.

Five werstes from the River, and seven from *Zariza*, may yet be seen the ruins of a City, which they say was built by *Tamberlane*. It was called *Zaarefgorod*, that is to say, the Royal City; its Palace and Walls were of Brick, which they still carry thence to build Walls, Churches and Monasteries at *Astrachan*; even at the time of our passage that way; they were loading several great Boats with Brick, bound for the place aforesaid.

In this place, we saw a Fisher-man, who coming close by our Ship-side, took a *Bieluga*, or white-fish, which was above eight foot long, and above four foot broad. It was somewhat like a Sturgeon, but much whiter, and had a wider mouth. They kill it much after the same manner as Oxen are kill'd among us, by first stunning it with a knock with a mallet. They sold it us for fifty pence.

Sept. 6. We overtook the Caravan, at *Zariza*, where most of the Passengers were landed, and lodg'd in Tents, upon the River-side, expecting the Convoy, which was to be sent from the adjacent Towns: but the wind being still fair for us, we kept on our course. The City of *Zariza* is distant from *Soratof* 350 werstes, and lies on the right side of the River, at the bottom of a Hill, fortify'd with five Bastions, and as many wooden Towers. It hath no other Inhabitants than about 400 *Sreblits* or Muskettiers, who serve against the incursions of the Tartars and *Cosaques*, and are oblig'd to Convoy the Boats which go up, and come down the River. There I found the elevation to be 49 d. and 42. m. The City of Zariza.

From the City of *Zariza* to *Astrachan*, and the *Caspian* Sea, there is only wast grounds and heaths, and so barren a soyl, that being not able to bring forth any kind of Corn, all that Country, even the City of *Astrachan* it self, is forc'd to send for Wheat to *Casan*, whence there comes such abundance, that it is cheaper at *Astrachan* than it is at *Moscou*.

Below *Zariza* lies the Isle of *Zerpinske*. It is twelve werstes in length, and the Souldiers of the Garrison of *Zariza*, send their Cattel thither to graze. The *Cosaques* of those parts, having observ'd that the Wives and Daughters of those Soldiers crossed over to the Island without any Guard, went thither one day after them, surpriz'd, ravish'd, and sent them back to their

1366, husbands, without doing them any other mischief. Behind this Isle, there falls into the *Wolga* a little River, which rises out of the *Don*, but it hath hardly water enough for little Boats, which I conceive may be the reason, why Geographers represent it not in their Maps; there being only *Isaac Massa*, who hath put it into his, and calls it *Kamows*. The heats were thereabouts so great in the month of *September*, as that of the Dog-dayes is not more insupportable in *Germany*; yet the *Muscovites* affirm'd, they were but ordinary.

Sept. 7. The weather chang'd, and a Tempest following, we could not advance much. Having sayl'd ten *werstes*, we saw, on the right hand, a Gibet erected upon a high reddish Hill. It was the first we had seen in those parts, and we were told it was set up by the *Weywode* of the next City, for the execution of the *Cosaques*, he should take within his Government, and that he gave them no other quarter, but that their Camerades suffered not the bodies to hang there above five or six dayes.

The same day an humour took the Ambassador *Brugman*, to cause all the Servants belonging to the Embassy to come before him, to whom he said, that he had reason to believe, that there were many among them, who express'd little kindness and respect towards him, and, if occasion serv'd, would do him all the ill Offices lay in their power, and consequently that his desire was, that the Musicians, the Guards, and the Lacqueyes, should take their Oaths to be faithful to him. Answer was made him, that his distrust was ill-grounded; that they saw not any reason why they should be oblig'd to a thing so extraordinary, and that they were so far from having any ill design against him, that, on the contrary, they were all ready to lay down their lives to do him any service; but that they intreated him, for his part, to spare them as much as might be, and to treat them more mildly than he had done: which he promised to do, but it was one of those promises that are either kept or broken.

The same day we met with a great Boat, the Master whereof sent some Mariners aboard us, to desire us to pity their sad condition, and to relieve them with a little bread, in the extremity they were in, having not eaten ought for the space of four dayes. They told us it was three weeks since they came from *Astrachan*, and that they had been robb'd in their way by thirty *Cosaques*, who had taken away all their Provisions. We gave them a sack full of pieces of bread, for which they gave us thanks, with their ordinary Ceremonies, bowing their heads down to the ground.

Forty *werstes* from *Zariza*, lies the Isle of *Nassonofska*, and opposite thereto, on the right hand, a great flat Mountain of the same name. Between the Isle and the Mountain there is a kind of a Grott, where the *Cosaques* had, some years before, kill'd a great number of *Muscovites*, who had lay'n there in ambush, to surprize the others. In the evening, a certain Fisherman brought us a kind of fish which we had never seen before. The *Muscovites* called it *Tziberika*, and it was above five foot long, with a long and broad snout like the Bill of a wild Drake, and the body full of black and white spots, like the Dogs of *Poland*, but much more regular, unless it were about the belly, where it was all white. It had an excellent good taste, and was at least as pleasant as that of Salmon. He sold us also another kind of fish much resembling a Sturgeon, but much less, and incomparably more delicate, whereof there are abundance in the *Wolga*.

The 8. The *Caravan*, which we had left at *Zariza*, came up to us near a Cape, called *Powowitska Furga*, upon this account that the son of a *Muscovian* Pope or Priest, who had sometime headed the *Cosaques* and *Bandits*, was wont to make his retreat, and appoint his rendezvous at that place. They count from *Zariza* to that place 70. *werstes*, and thence to the Mountain of *Kannagar*, which lay on our right hand, 40. *werstes*. The River thereabouts is full of Isles and Sand-banks, by which the *Caravan* was no less incommodated than we were, though their Vessels were much less than ours. Twenty *werstes* lower there is a very high Island, four *werstes* in length, called *Wesowi*, near a River of the same name, which falls into the *Wolga* on the right hand. Thirty *werstes* lower, the wind forc'd us into a corner, where the River of *Wolodinerski Urfga* falls into the *Wolga*. But in regard we were loath to let slip the opportunity of making a great dayes journey, which the fairness of that wind put us in hope we might do, we with much difficulty made a shift to get out, and afterwards pass'd by the Country of *Stupin*, thirty *werstes* from the City of *Tzornogar*, which was the first we were to come at the next day. Ten *werstes* lower, the *Wolga* puts out a second branch on the left hand, called *Achtobenisna Urfga*, which joyns its waters to those of *Achtobaska*, whereof we spoke before. Thence we sayl'd five *werstes* further, where the whole fleet cast Anchor, near the Isle of *Ossina*, which is seven *werstes* from *Tzornogar*. So that, that day we got 135. *werstes*, or 27. *German* Leagues, that is, at the least as far as it is from *Paris* to *Sannur*.

From this Countrey quite down to *Astrachan*, on both sides of the River, there grows abundance of Liquorice, having a stalk as big as ones arm, and about some four foot high. The seed of it is much like a vitch, and lies in cods upon the top of the stalk. The Champain part of *Media* is cover'd therewith, especially towards the River *Araxes*; but the juyce of it is much sweeter, and the root much bigger than that which grows in *Europe*.

The second  
branch of  
the *Wolga*.



Sept. 9. There rose a wind, which soon grew into a Tempest, and brought us about noon before the little City of *Tzornogar*, where we stay'd. It was but some nine years before, that the Great Duke had given order for the building of this City, which lies 200. *werstes* from *Zariza*, some half a League lower than it is now: but the great floods having wash'd away the earth along the shore, in such great quantities, that the course of the River seem'd to be thereby diverted, and that it would be ill coming ashore there, they translated the City to the place where it is now. It is seated upon a high shore, on the right side of the River, and is fortify'd with eight wooden Towers, and a Rampier with thick planks, having no other Inhabitants than three or four hundred Souldiers, who are kept there to secure the Countrey against the incursions of the *Cosaques* and *Kalmuckes Tartars*. There is at each corner of the City, which is square, a particular place for the Sentinels to stand, erected upon four great poles, whence they have a full prospect into a spacious plain as far as they can see, without the least interposition of any wood, or other eminency.

1636.  
The City of  
Tzornogar

What oblig'd the Great Duke to order the building of this City, was, the mischiefs done thereabouts by the *Cosaques*, but particularly, the defeat of a *Caravan*, of 1500. *Muscovites*: who were there surpriz'd some ten years before. It had a very strong Convoy, but the River being extremely swift in that place, and the Convoy being gone before, the *Cosaques*, who had suffered the Soldiers to pass by, came out of their Ambushes, set upon the *Caravan*, kill'd seven or eight hundred men, and took away all before the Convoy could come up, the violence of the current not suffering it to get up the River time enough to relieve them. Between that place and the *Astrachan*, there are no Trees to be seen on the River-side.

The 10. We left *Tzornogar*, but the wind turning against us, we could hardly get ten *werstes* that day. About noon, some fisher-men brought us a noble Carp, which weigh'd at least thirty pounds, with eight other fish, of those they call *Sandates*, the fairest we had seen in all our Voyage. We would have paid for them, but they refus'd our money, and told us, that they fish'd there for certain Merchants of *Moscou*, who having farm'd the fishing of that place from the Great Duke, would be sure to have them severely punish'd, if ever it should come to their knowledge, that they had sold any fish. We soon found their design was to be paid in *Aquavitæ*, accordingly a quart was ordered to be given them, wherewith they seem'd to be very well satisfy'd.

Sept. 11. The wind and weather fair, we got 120. *werstes*, but without any accident worth noting, save that about noon, we pass'd by the Mountain of *Polowon*, so called, because half-way between *Astrachan* and *Zariza*, 250. *werstes*, distant from each of them. We pass'd over the night near the Isle of *Kyffar*, where the Ambassador *Brugman*, who was upon the Guard, hearing that the Sentinel had discovered a great Boat, which the current of the River brought somewhat near our Vessel, and that upon calling to them, no body answer'd, commanded fifteen Muskets to be shot off, and at the same time, a great Gun to be fired. All took the Alarm; but hardly was every man got to his station, ere they might perceive coming to the ship-side a small boat, guided by only one man, who gave us this account of himself, that his boat was loaden with Salt, and that his seven Camerades, being acquainted with some of the *Caravan*, had been so treated by them with *Aquavitæ*, that being all dead asleep, he had been forc'd to let the boat go with the stream. Our Pilot knew the man, as being an Inhabitant of *Nise*, whereupon we gave him some Gobelets of *Aquavitæ*, and sent him back to his boat. The next day, he came to acknowledge our kindness to him, by a present of certain Sturgeons.

The night following, the wind continuing fair, we thought fit to improve the opportunity, and so set sail by three in the morning. Sept. 12. We soon came, upon the left hand, to a third branch of the *Wolga*, called *Buch wostowa*, which falls into the two precedent. Thence we came to the Isle of *Coppono*, from which the name *Coponogar* is deriv'd to the Countrey, which is opposite thereto, on the right side of the River. From this place, there are 150. *werstes* to *Astrachan*. Twenty *werstes* lower, the *Wolga* makes a fourth branch, on the left hand, called *Danilofska Visga*, which mingles not with any of the other three, but disembogues it self by a particular Chanel into the *Caspian Sea*. Fifteen *werstes* thence lies, in the midst of the River, the Isle of *Katarinski*, which is little, but very pleasant, by reason of the Wood, and other plants that grow on it. Not far from it, we saw upon a Sand-bank the Carkass of a Boat, which had been cast away there and was half rotten. Being seen at some distance, a man might take it for a Fort, built there by the *Cosaques*, nay there were those who imagined they had seen some of them, which occasion'd a command to be given that some shot should be made into the Wood; but it was done with so much Precipitation, that one of the Muskets, breaking in the hands of our Cook, the splinters took off the Thumb of his left hand, and hurt him in the forehead and breast. We stay'd the next night, near the Isle of *Piruski*, 80. *werstes* from *Astrachan*, after we had sail'd a hundred that day.

The third  
branch of  
the Wolga.  
The fourth  
branch of  
the Wolga.

Sept. 13. while we were, after morning prayer, reading some Chapters out of the Bible; and among others the *xiii* of *Numbers*, where *Moses* speaks of the fertility of the Land of *Canaan*, and the excellency of its Fruits, especially of the Grapes, brought thence by the Spies,

there

1636. there came two Boats from *Astrachan*, which brought us some Fruits to sell. We were surpriz'd thereat, that, for my part, I am in doubt whether that of the Holy Land could be better; so delicious were the Melons and Peaches, and the Kernels of the Grapes were as big as Nuts.

*A fifth Branch of the Wolga.* This day betimes in the morning, we came in sight of another Branch of the *Wolga*, called *Mizka*, which at some distance from the River, is divided into two other Branches; whereof the one is united to the *Danilofski Utsga*, which we spoke of before, and the other falls again into the main river, at some *werstes* thence. We were told, that was the most dangerous place of all the river, by reason those Robbers had their rendezvous and retreating places thereabouts. For indeed, we saw, between two Isles, a great number of *Cosagues*, at whom the Ambassador *Brugman* caus'd a great Gun to be fired. Five *werstes* lower, and 70 from *Astrachan*, we came to the last sand-bank, which is called *Kabangameel*. Five *werstes* thence, to the Promontory of *Kabangengar*; and five lower, to the Isle of *Itziburki*, where we stay'd that night, 50 *werstes* from *Astrachan*.

We saw in those parts, as also afterwards near *Astrachan*, and upon the *Caspian Sea*, a kind of wild Geese, or rather Cormorants, which the *Muscovites* call *Babbes*, which in a manner cover'd the river side; but of them more at large, when we come to the description of the City, and of the Country of *Nagaia*.

The 14. We were stay'd by a contrary wind, and a tempest coming from the South-East; so that we could hardly advance two *werstes*, ere we were forc'd to cast Anchor, and to continue there till the next day. We lay at 80 foot water. The *Tartarian* Prince sent us a Present of Beer, Hydromel and Aquavitæ, with notice, that if we liked it, we might have more.

*A sixth Branch of the Wolga.* *The seventh Branch of the Wolga.* *The Ambassadors come to Astrachan.* Sept. 15. the wind changing, we set sail by four in the morning, taking our course Southward, and betimes in the morning, came before the Isle of *Busan*, 25 *werstes* from *Astrachan*; and afterwards to a sixth Branch of the River *Wolga*, called *Baltzick*, within 15 *werstes* of the City. The plain, which reaches from that place to *Astrachan*, gave us the sight of the City by 8 in the morning. Three *werstes* lower, and 12 from the City, there is a seventh Branch of the *Wolga*, called *Knilusse*, which makes the Isle of *Dilgoi*, within which *Astrachan* is seated, and having compass'd the Isle, it falls into the *Caspian Sea*, by many several chanel, or *ostiaes*. We came to *Astrachan* about noon, and whereas the City lies on the other side of the River, which, in that place, divides *Europe* and *Asia*, we may say, that, as we departed out of that part of the World, which we may in some manner call our Country, we made our first step into the other. We made some stay before the City, in the midst of the River, and saluted it with a Volley both of all our great Guns, and small shot, whereat the Inhabitants, who were come in great numbers to the river-side, were the more surpriz'd, by reason they were not accustomed to hear Thunders of that kind.

*A description of the City of Astrachan.* It will not be amiss in this place, by a short digression, to give an account of the situation of *Astrachan*, of the qualities of the Country, and the life of the Inhabitants. The Antient Geographers, as *Ptolomy*, *Strabo*, and others, who follow them, had no knowledge of these *Tartars*, no more than their neighbours, and have not made any mention of them, but only under a general name of *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*, though they should indeed have been distinguish'd into so many different Nations, suitable to the diversity there is in their Names, their Language, and manner of Life; in all which they have nothing common one with the other. *Matthias de Michou*, a Physician, and Canon of *Cracovia*, who liv'd at the beginning of the last age, says that those, who confound the *Tartars* with those Nations, which the Antients called *Getae*, *Scythæ*, and *Sarmatæ*, are much mistaken, in as much as the *Tartars* have not been known, but since the thirteenth Age. For in *May 1211*. there appear'd a Comet, which, having its tail towards the West, and menacing the *Don* and *Russia*, presag'd the invasion which the *Tartars* made into those parts the year following. They were certain *Indian* Lords, who having kill'd their King, *David*, got away, first, towards the *Euxine Sea*, near the *Palus Meotides*, where lived the antient *Getae*, whence they afterwards advanc'd towards the *Don*, and thence to the river *Wolga*, where they live to this day. The same Author distinguishes them into four species; to wit, the *Zavolhenses*, (whom he also calls *Czahadai*) *Precopenses*, *Cosanenses*, and *Nohacenses*, and says, they are the *Tartars*, who live along the river *Wolga*, (which he calls *Volha*) those of *Precop*, those of *Casan*, and those of *Nagaia*, who are those of whom we are to treat of at present. *Alexander Guagnin*, of *Verona*, divides them into eight Colonies, and gives them other names; but it is our design to entertain the Reader only with what we have seen, and to discover that part of *Tartaria* through which we travel'd. We say then, that they call *Nagaia*, that part of *Tartary*, which lies between the rivers of *Wolga*, and *Faika*, as far as the *Caspian Sea*, whereof *Astrachan* is the principal City. It is reported that a *Tartar*-King, named *Astra-chan* built it, and gave it his own name: So that the Baron of *Herberstein* is very much mistaken, when he says, in his Relation of *Muscovy*, that it is some days journey distant from the River, whereas it is seated on the river-side, and in the Isle of *Dolgoi*, made there by two branches of the said River.

After several very exact observations, I found the Elevation of the Pole there, to be 26 degrees,

grees, 22. minutes, and the Climat so hot, that in the Months of *September* and *October*, the heats were still as great as they are in *Germany* in the height of Summer, especially when the wind blew from-wards the *Wolga*, East, or North-East. 'Tis true, the South-wind was there somewhat colder, and brought with it the inconveniences, nay indeed the scent, of the neighbouring Sea, wherewith it infected the whole Air. At our return that way, our stay there happened to be in *June*, *July* and *August*, and yet the heats were not absolutely insupportable, in regard they were moderated by the coolness, which the South-wind continually brought along with it. But what is to be most admir'd, is, that, in this hot Climat, the Winter, which lasts but two months, is so exceeding cold, that the River is frozen up, and bears Sledges. Which is contrary to what other Authors say of it, yet the Reader may take it for most certain.

The Island of *Dolgoi* is sandy and barren, infomuch, that some Gardens, and Lands cultivated by the Inhabitants of *Astrachan*, excepted, it produces nothing at all, no more than does the Continent, on the right hand; but on the left, towards the river *Faika*, there are very good pastures. On this side the *Wolga*, West-ward, lies a long Heath of above 70. *German* leagues, reaching as far as the *Euxin* Sea, and towards the South, another, of above 80. leagues, along the *Caspian* Sea: as we found at our return from *Persia*, when it was our chance to measure it, by eleven very tedious dayes journeys. Yet are not these Deserts so barren, but they produce more Salt, than the marshes in *France* and *Spain* do. The Inhabitants of those parts call them *Mozakofski*, *Kainkowa*, and *Gwostofski*, which are ten, fifteen, and thirty *wersstes* from *Astrachan*, and have salt veins, which the Sun bakes and causes to swim upon the face of the water about a finger thick, much like Rock-Christal, and in such abundance, that, paying an Impost of a half-penny upon every *Poude*, that is, forty pound weight, a man may have as much as he pleases. It smells like that of *France*, and the *Muscovites* drive a great Trade with it, bringing it to the side of the *Wolga*, where they put it up in great heaps, till they have the convenience of transporting it elsewhere. *Petrcius*, in his *History of Muscovy*, sayes, that within two leagues of *Astrachan*, there are two mountains, which he calls *Busin*, which afford such abundance of Rock-salt, that, if thirty thousand men were perpetually at work about it, they would not be able to exhaust the pits. But I could learn nothing of those imaginary Mountains. Certain indeed it is, that the salt-veins we speak of, are inexhaustible, and that as soon as you have taken off one crust or face of it, there comes up another. The same *Petrcius* is also much mistaken, when he sayes, that *Media*, *Persia* and *Armenia*, are supply'd with Salt from these Mountains, whereas these Countries have Salt marshes of their own, as also *Muscovy* hath, as we shall see in the sequel of this Relation.

From *Astrachan* to the *Caspian* Sea, are twelve leagues, and thereabouts, the river does so abound with fish, that we bought twelve large Carps for two pence, and two hundred young Sturgeons, which are very delicate there, for half a Crown. It produces also Lobsters, or Sea-crevices, which multiply in a manner to infinity, by reason the *Muscovites* and *Tartars* eat not of them. The Isles which are in the river afford habitations for all manner of Fowl, especially an infinite number of wild Geese and Ducks, which the *Tartars* take with Falcons and Hawks; and are very expert in the ordering of those Birds for that kind of sport. They are also excellently well skill'd in the hunting of the wild Bore; but in regard their Religion permits them not to eat of it, they sell them for a small matter to the *Muscovites*.

As to the Fruits of those parts, it is certain, that, both in goodness and beauty, they yield not to those of *Persia*, especially Apples, Quinces, Nuts, Peaches, and Melons, but above all, that kind of Melons, or rather Citruls, which the *Muscovites* call *Arpus*, the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Karpus*, because they are extremely cooling, and the *Persians*, *Hinduanes*, because they had the first seeds of them from the *Indies*. This Fruit is excellently good, and very pleasant to the tast, as also to the eye, having the rind of a lively-green colour, the meat of a pale Carnation, and the seed black. The *Tartars*, who brought them to the City in Carts, sold them two or three a penny.

It is not many years since that they have had Grapes among them, the Inhabitants of *Astrachan* being oblig'd for these to the Merchants of *Persia*, who brought the first sets thither, which an old Monk of a Convent that is in the Suburbs planted in his Garden. The Great Duke hearing that it had taken with good success, and having tasted the Grape, sent order to the Monk, in the year 1613. to improve his stock, which he did, and that with such increase, that at the time of our being there, there was no house almost, but had its Arbours and Walks set about with Vines, to the so great advantage of the Planters, that the Master of the house where I lodg'd told me, the Vines he had about his house had yielded him a hundred Crowns the year before. These Grapes, with some other Fruits, were either sent to the Great Duke, or sold to the neighbouring *Weywodes*: but some years since, they have planted a Vine there, which hath yielded in one year above 60. Pipes of excellent Wine.

The Monk I spoke of was living at our being there, and was a hundred and five years of age. He was a *German*, born in *Austria*, and had been carried away prisoner very young by some *Turkish* Soldiers, who had sold him into *Muscovy*, where he had chang'd his Religion, and became

1636. became a Monk. He was at that time Superior of the Monastery, and still remembered some *German* words, but very few. He was a very good natur'd Man, and shew'd how much he was taken with our conversation, by the frequent visits he made us: but as soon as he had taken off two or three Dishes of *Aquavitæ*, he was subject to the ordinary weakneses of those of his age, threw away his staff, and fell a dancing, though not with over much confidence.

Its Inhabitants.

Heretofore, all *Nagaia* was inhabited by *Tartars*, who had their particular King, and held a very fair correspondency with their Neighbours of *Casan* and *Crim*, with whom they also ran the same fortune after their defeat. For the Great Duke, *John Basilouits*, having reduc'd under his Jurisdiction the *Tartars* of *Casan*, in the year 1552. two years after, set upon those of *Nagaia*, and took the City of *Astrachan* by assault, Aug. 1. 1554. He forc'd thence all the *Tartars*, and, having peopled the City with *Muscovites*, he compassed it with a stone wall, and added some other Fortifications: but it was the Great Duke *Michael Fæderouits*, that made it larger than it was, by adding thereto that part, which is called *Strelitzagorod*, so called from the *Muscovian* Muskettiers, who are quartered therein. The City is eight thousand Geometrical feet about; and that side towards the River, which, in that place, is two thousand, two hundred and sixteen foot broad, affords a pleasant Prospect, by reason of the great number of Turrets and Steeples of stone, which look very delightfully at a distance, but within, it is not answerable thereto, the Houses being all of Wood, and not well built. Some told us, that there were in the City above 500 great Pieces of brass, and among others, many Mortar-pieces. The Garrison consisted of nine *Pricasses*, or Regiments, in each of which were 500 Muskettiers, under the command of two *Weywodes*, one *Diak*, and several Captains, and other Officers, who have an eye upon the *Tartars*, whom they have reason to be distrustful of.

This City being seated upon the Frontiers of two of the most considerable parts of the world, it may well be, that not only the *Tartars* of *Chrim*, *Precep*, *Bugar*, and *Nagaia*, and the *Muscovites*, but also the *Persians* and *Armenians* (who are Christians) nay the *Indians* trade thither; and these last have a particular market-place there for themselves. All which improves the Commerce of the City, so that the Customs, which there are very low, amount to above 25000 Crowns a year.

The Inhabitants of the Country, who are the *Tartars* of *Crim* and *Nagaia*, are not permitted to live within the City, but are thrust into a place without the City, which is hedg'd and palizadoed, or forc'd to live in Huts, which they set up and down, in the open Fields, because they are not suffer'd to build Cities, nor to fortify their Towns nor Villages with walls. Their Huts are made either with Bull-rushes or Canes, being about twelve foot diameter, round, and towards the top, like the Coops wherein Chickens are kept in *Europe*. In the midst of that place, which serves them for a Roof, there is a hole, through which goes out a stick, having at the end a piece of coarse Cloath, which they turn to the Wind, to facilitate the going out of the Smoak, and which they draw in, when the Turf, or Cow-dung, which they burn, is reduc'd to a live-Coal or Ashes. When the weather is very cold, they put over the Hut a covering of coarse Cloath, whereby they so keep in the heat, that they pass over whole days without stirring out, with their Wives and Children, not feeling any inconvenience. They have no fixt habitation in the Summer-time, but stay in those places where they find the best Pasture for their Cattel. When that begins to fail, they put their Huts into Carts; and their Wives, Children, and Goods upon Camels, Oxen, and Horses, and so they ramble up and down the Country, whence it comes that the *Muscovites* call them *Polouiski*, *Vagabonds*.

At the beginning of Winter they all come near and about *Astrachan*, and lodge themselves in several crews or troops, which lye not at so great a distance but that they can relieve one another against the *Malmukes Tartars*, otherwise called the *Tartars* of *Buchar*, their common and irreconcilable enemies, who make their incursions up and down the Country, from *Astrachan* and the *Caspian* Sea, as far as *Soratof*. The *Tartars* who live near the river *Faika* are their tormentors on the other side, disturbing their quiet by continual Alarms, when the river is frozen. Whence it comes, that the *Muscovites*, to prevent their being ruin'd by the incursions of those people, furnish them with Arms, out of the Great Duke's Magazine, whether they are oblig'd to return them, as soon as the River and the ways are thaw'd: for they are not permitted to have any, either defensive or offensive Arms in the Summer.

'Tis true, they do not pay the Great Duke any Taxes or impositions, but are oblig'd to serve him against his Enemies, which they do the more gladly, and without any compulsion, out of the hope of booty, as do also those of *Dagueßan*, whom we shall speak of hereafter.

These *Tartars* have Princes of their own, as also Commanders in time of War, and particular Judges of their own Nation: but lest they should do any thing contrary to their allegiance to the Great Duke, there are always some of their *Myrses*, or Princes, kept as Hostages in the Castle of *Astrachan*.

The *Tartars* of *Nagania* and *Chrim*, are for the most part of little stature, and fat, having large faces and little eyes, and being of an Olive-colour. The men have ordinarily as many wrinkles in their faces as old Women, little beard, and the head all shaven. 1636.

All they have about them is a *Casaque*, or Garment of a coarse grey Cloath, upon which those of *Nagania* wear for the most part a loose Mantle of black Sheep-kin, with a Cap of the same stuff, the Wool-side outward. The Women, who are not unhandfom, are commonly clad in white linnen Cloath, and have about their heads a Coif of the same stuff, folded, and round, like those pors which some make use of in the Wars, having in the middle a hole, fit to put a plume of feathers in. Upon this Coif, and on both sides, there hang a great many *Copecs*, or *Muscovian* Pence.

They many times vow their first-born, or some one of their other Children, to God, or some *Imam*, or Saint. And that these *Nazarites* may be distinguish'd from others, if it be a Girl, she wears a Ring with a Ruby, a Turqueze stone, or Coral in the Nostril; If a Boy, he wears it in his right ear. The *Persians* have the same custom; but of that more at large hereafter. Children go stark naked, and are all big-belly'd.

The *Tartars* live upon what their Cattel, their hunting and fishing supplies them with. Their Cattel are large and fair, as that of *Poland*. Their sheep, as also those of *Persia*, have great tayls, which are all fat, weighing 20. or 30. pounds, the ears hanging down as our Spaniels, flat-nosed. Their Horses are little and mishapen, but strong and hardy. They have some Camels, but they have most of them two bunches on their backs, which they call *Buggur*, those which have but one, and by them called *Towe*, are very scarce among them.

Their ordinary food is fish dry'd in the Sun, which serves them instead of bread. They have also certain Cakes made of Meal, Rice, and Millet, fry'd in Oyl or Honey. They eat Camels and Horse-flesh, and drink water and milk. Mares milk they much esteem; with this they treated our Ambassadors, when we gave them a Visit, taking it out of a nasty Leather-bag, to present it to us. Their food.

They are for the most part *Mahumetans*, of the *Turkish* Sect, hating that of the *Persians*. Some have made profession of the *Muscovian* Religion, and have been baptiz'd. They receiv'd us civilly, at least as far as that Nation is capable of civility. One of their Princes would have given the Ambassadors the divertisement of Hawking, but the *Weywode* would not permit it. Their Reli-  
gion.

The time we stay'd at *Astrachan* was spent in providing all things necessary for the prosecution of our Voyage. The *Persians* of the *Caravanne*, and the *Tartarian* Prince sent often some of their people to complement us; they also made us Presents, and came in person to Visit us. For, we had hardly cast Anchor before *Astrachan*, and made known our arrival by the discharging of the great Guns, but the *Cuptzi*, and the other *Persian* Merchants, who were there but a little before us, sent us a noble Present of all sorts of fruit, *Arpus's*, Melons, Apples, Apricocks, Peaches, and Grapes, with this excuse, that being, as we were, strangers in the Country, they could make us no better Presents, but when we were come to *Persia*, they would be absolutely at our disposal. The Ambassadors having answer'd this civility, sent them, as also to the *Tartarian* Prince, some of all sorts of distill'd waters, and sweet meats.

The next day after our arrival, we were Visited by many *Persian* Merchants, who were desirous to see our ship. Not one among them but brought some Present of fruit according to the custom of their Country, which permits them not to come empty-handed before persons of quality. They treated us with much kindness and familiarity, which the more delightfully surpriz'd us, in that we had but then parted from a Nation famous for its incivility and barbarism. And whereas thence forward we were to converse and negotiate with *Persians*, we thought it not amiss to allow them the liberty to do what they pleas'd in our ship, and were extremely pleas'd to see them get all so heartily and so kindly drunk, that some, as they parted, fell into the water; nay one of their Merchants, an aged man, falling fast asleep upon the Deck, stay'd there all night. This good man was so kind in his Wine, that taking a glass of *French*-wine from one of the Ambassadors who had drunk to him, and perceiving they made him this complement, that, after the excellent Wines of his own Country, he could not taste those of ours, he made answer, that, though it were poyson, yet coming from the Ambassadors hand, he would take it off. A custom  
of Persia  
to make  
Presents to  
persons of  
quality.

The 17. The *Persian* *Cuptzi* sent us a Present of two sacks of Rice, the grain whereof was very white and very big, and a Vessel of preserv'd Garlick, which was very pleasant to the taste. How the *Persians* preserve it shall be said hereafter. Many of the *Cuptzi's* Domesticks came also to see us, and brought along with them some Mariners, who were astonish'd at the bigness of our ship, and said all, that it would not be fit for the *Caspian* Sea, whereof the high, and in a manner contiguous Waves, would overwhelm it, and there was a necessity of taking down the Masts. They all affirm'd, that the *Culsum* (so they call the *Caspian* Sea) had never born so great a ship; which yet they only said in comparison of their own, which are only little Barks, The Cuptz  
zi's Pre-  
sent.

1366, made like our bathing-tubs in *Europe*, so to take up but two or three foot water, having neither Hatches nor Pump, insomuch that they are forc'd to cast out the Water with shovels. They have but one great sayl, no more than the *Muscovites*, and know not what it is to sayl with a side-wind; so that when a Tempest overtakes them, they are forc'd either to go with the wind or cast Anchor: but commonly they go within Pistol-shot of the shore.

The *Persians* having left us, the Ambassadors sent to the Chief *Weywode*, whose name was *Fædor Vasilovits*, a Present, which was a large drinking Cup Vermilion-gilt, intreating his advice for the continuation of their Voyage, and to know whether we should prosecute it by Sea or by Land. The *Weywode* desir'd a days time or two to consider of it, and to take the advice of persons skill'd in Sea-affairs: but we stay'd not for his answer, and resolv'd, for several reasons, to continue our Voyage by Sea.

Sept. 19. The *Tartar-Prince* having sent us word that he would give us a Visit aboard our Ship, we sent our shallop to Land, to bring him aboard. He brought with him another *Tartar-Prince*, and a retinue of about 40 persons, besides those who belong'd to *Alexei Saouovits*, the Great Duke's *Poslanick*. He was habited after the *Muscovian* fashion, his Vestment embroider'd with Gold and Pearls, and his person and deportment was suitable to the greatness of his birth: for he had a very good countenance, a very clear complexion, and black hair, being about 28 years of age, of an excellent good humour, and eloquent. He was receiv'd into the ship with the noise of our Trumpets, and the firing of three great Pieces, and conducted to the Ambassadors Chamber, through the Guards and Soldiers in their Arms.

After some two hours discourse, during which he was entertain'd with Musick, he desir'd to see the ship. He was shew'd it all, and at last brought into the Hall, where he found a Collation ready, but he would not sit down, and took leave of the Ambassadors, to return to the City. At his departure, he had the same honour done him as at his entrance.

Sept. 20. The Ambassadors sent to the Lord *Naurus*, the King of *Persia's* *Cuptzi*, to entreat him to honour them with a Visit in their ship, which he promis'd to do. The next day he came, accompany'd by another rich Merchant, named *Noureddin Mahomet*, and the *Priest*, which the *Weywode* had sent to conduct him. His reception was like that of the *Tartar-Prince*. After the Collation, at which pass'd several good discourses, our Musick playing all the time, they entreated us to give theirs leave to come in, which consisted of Hawboyes and Timbrels. Their Timbrels were made of earth, and were not much unlike our Butter-pots, making a very strange noise, though their playing on them was very regular and well carried on. The Collation had put them into so good an humour, that in their return we could hear their Musick, nay a good while after they were got into the City.

The *Weywodes* Presents.

The 22. The *Weywode* sent his Presents to the Ambassadors, which consisted in twenty Fliches of Bacon, twelve large Fishes that had been hung up in the smoak, a Barrel of *Cavaçar*, a Tun of Beer, and another of *Hydromel*. About noon, there came aboard us two of the *Polish* Ambassadors Servants, whom the *Cuptzi* had spoken of, to complement the Ambassadors in their Master's name, and on the behalf of the Ambassador, sent from the King of *Persia* to the King of *Poland*, bringing along with them a bottle of *Scherab*, or *Persian* Wine. The *Polish* Ambassador was a *Jacobin* Friar, named *John de Lucca*; and the *Persian*, an *Armenian* Archbishop, named *Augustinus Basecius*. The persons sent to us were two *Capuchins*, one an *Italian*, the other a *French*-man. They told us they had been five moneths at *Astrachan*, and complain'd much of the ill treatment they had receiv'd there, in that they were detain'd as Prisoners, and not permitted to go any farther.

The same day, the Ambassadors acquainted the *Weywode* with their desire to Visit the *Tartar-Prince*, entreating him, to that end, to accommodate them with horses for themselves, and some of their retinue; which he very civilly did, sending the next day, by his Gentleman of the horse, to the River-side, the number of horses we desired.

The Ambassadors visit the *Tartar-Prince*

Being come to a Lodging prepar'd for us without the City, and having acquainted the *Tartar-Prince* with our arrival, we walk'd towards his Lodging, where he expected us. The Prince having notice of it, met them in the Court, where he receiv'd the Ambassadors very civilly, and conducted them to a Chamber richly hung. There were with them the *Poslanick*, *Alexei*, and a *Tartar* Ambassador of *Chrim*. The Collation was Magnificent, and of the noblest fruits in the Countrey, in great plenty. Our drink was Wine, Beer, *Hydromel*, and *Aquavita*, of all enough: the Trumpets, which the *Weywode* had lent him, sounding in the mean time, and other Musick playing. When he drunk the Great Duke's and his Highness our Master's health, he stood, and presented the Cup with his own hand, to all the retinue, even to the Pages. *Alexei* in the mean time told us Miracles of the birth and noble endowments of *Mussal*, endeavouring to perswade us, that he was not to be ranked among the other *Myrses*, or Princes of *Tartary*, but that he was to be consider'd as a very great Prince, and Nephew to *Knez Juan Borissouits Circaski*, being his brother's son, one of the greatest Lords of the great Duke's Court. He told us, that, when he did homage, the *Czaar* had done him very particular favours, and made him considerable Presents: that he had a Brother at Court, a great Favorite:

that

that his Sister was to marry the King of *Persia*, and that he might serve us in both Kingdoms. 1636.

This Entertainment took us up several hours, after which the Ambassadors would have gone to see the Habitations of the *Tartars*, without the City; but the *Muscovites* very barbarously shut the Gates against them, which oblig'd us to return to the ship. The incivility of the Muscovites.

The 24. The *Postanick*, *Alexei*, gave the Ambassadors a Visit, upon his own accompt. He was kindly receiv'd, and after he had been Magnificently treated at Dinner, we sent him back to his Lodging, attended by twelve persons of our retinue, who had each of them a Sable skin. This *Muscovite*, who might be about 50. years of age, was an ingenious man, and had a great inclination to Learning, contrary to the ordinary humour of those of his Nation. He had learnt some few Latine words, and was a Lover of the Mathematicks, whence it came that he Courted our Conversation, in order to the advancement of his studies. He was so sedulous, that in the space of five moneths, that we were in company together, both in *Persia* and by the way, he made such a Progress therein, that he could exprefs himself well enough to be understood in *Latine*. 'Tis true, 'twas not with the Congruity requisite, but what he had was very extraordinary in a *Muscovite*. He learnt also the use of the Astrolabe, as well to take the height of the Sun, and find out the time of the day, as to make use of it in Geometry. He had one made by our Clock maker; and as soon as he came to any City or Village, he went out into the Street, to take the Elevation of the Pole, which the *Muscovites*, not accusom'd to see their Country-men employ'd in those exercises, thought very strange.

The 25. The *Cuptzi* sent to invite the Ambassadors to a feast the next day, and desir'd them to send him the name and titles of his Highness, our Master, as also the names and qualities of the Ambassadors, that he ought send them by an exprefs to the *Chan*, or Governour of *Schamachie* in *Media*, that when we came to the Frontiers of *Persia*, we might find all things ready for the prosecution of our Voyage. The Cuptzi's Feasts.

The 26. He sent seven Hories to the River-side for the Ambassadors and their retinue, but they made use only of two, and, causing the rest to be led, they ordered the Gentlemen and Officers to walk afoot, according to the custom in *Germany*. He had prepar'd the Feast in a great house, which, to that end, he had borrow'd of the *Weywode*, and over against it, he had hir'd another Lodging, where he had erected a Theater cover'd with *Persian* Tapistry; for the *Timbrels* and *Hawboyes*, who continu'd their Musick from our arrival to our departure.

The house where the Feast was kept, was all cover'd with *Turkish* and *Persian* Tapistry. The *Cuptzi* met the Ambassadors in the Court, receiv'd them with great civility, and conducted them through two Chambers hung all about, into a third, which was hung with Gold and Silver Brocade.

In all the Chambers, there were Tables and Seats cover'd with the best *Persian* Tapistry, which the *Cuptzi* had done purposely for our convenience, knowing we were not yet accusom'd to the mode of *Persia*, where they sit upon the ground to eat. The Tables were loaden with all sorts of Fruits and Preserves, as Grapes, Apples, Melons, Peaches, Apricocks, Almonds, Raisins of the Sun, whereof some were little and without stones, Kernels of Nuts, Pistachoes, and several *Indian* fruits, preserv'd in Sugar and Honey, and over them were large pieces of Satin or Taffata.

We were hardly set, ere came in the two Ambassadors of *Persia* and *Poland*, who had upon their ordinary Habits, the Vestiments which the King of *Persia* had presented them with, and the *Jacobin* Frier had a Golden Cross upon his breast as well as the *Armenian* Bishop. They took their places next the Ambassadors, and being well skill'd in the *Latine*, *Spanish*, *Italian*, and *French* Languages, their discourses were accordingly without any trouble, and full of diversion.

'Tis the custome of *Persia* to begin their Feasts with Fruits and Preserves. We spent two hours in eating only those, and drinking Beer, Hydromel and Aquavitæ. Then was brought up the meat in great Silver Dishes. They were full of Rice of divers colours, and, upon that, several sorts of Meat boil'd and roasted, as Beef, Mutton, tame Fowl, wild Ducks, Fish and other things, all very well ordered, and very delicate.

The *Persians* use no knives at Table, but the Cooks send up the meat ready cut into little bits; so that it was no trouble to us to accustome our selves to their manner of eating. Rice serves them instead of bread. They take a mouthfull of it, with the two fore-fingers, and the thumb, and so put it into their mouths. Every Table had a Carver, whom they call *Suffretzi*, who takes the meat brought up in the great Dishes, to put it into lesser ones, which he fills with three or four sorts of meat, so as that every Dish may serve two, or, at most, three persons. There was but little drunk till towards the end of the repast, and then the Cups went about roundly, and the Dinner was concluded with a Vessel of Porcelane, full of a hot blackish kind of drink, which they call *Kahawa*, whereof we shall have occasion to say more hereafter.

The *Persians* exprefs'd their civility towards us so highly, both in word and deed, at this Feast, that we could not have desir'd more in our own Country. Having taken leave both of

1636. our Entertainer, the Ambassadors of *Persia* and *Poland*, and the rest of the Company, which was done with much honour and civility on all sides, we drew off with the noise of the *Timbrels* and *Hawboyes*, which founded a retreat, after a very pleasant manner. Two of the most considerable of the Company brought us to the City Gate, where they renew'd their civilities, and acknowledg'd the honour the Ambassadors had done them, and re-assur'd us of their friendship and services. As the Ambassadors went into the *Shallop*, some of the *Ship Guns* were fired, which had also been done when they went out of it to go to the Feast.

The 27. the Ambassadors, with some few persons about them, took a walk, and having gone about the City, they went a league farther to see the habitations of the *Tartars*. We found by the way, that, in those parts, *Oxen* and *Horses* tread out the *Corn*, whereas in other places it is thrash'd; whereby we explain'd that *Law*, which forbids muzzling the *Oxe* that treadeth out the *Corn*. No *Hut* but had its *Hawk* or *Falcon*; in our return we met with one of their *Princes* coming from his sport, having his *Hawk* on his fist, and a *Sheep-skin* on his back, as all the rest had. He exprest his trouble that he had not been at home to entertain the Ambassadors.

The *Tartars* much given to *Hawking*.

The same day went thence the *Postanick Alexei Sawinonits*, continuing his *Voyage* to *Persia* by the *Caspian Sea*.

The Treatment of another *Persian Merchant*.

The 28. The Ambassadors were treated with the same magnificence and ceremonies by the other *Persian Merchant*, namely, *Noureddin Mahumed*, save that the *Stage*, or *Theater*, for the *Muscovians*, was erected in the *Court*, opposite to the *Table*, but more richly adorn'd than that of the *Cuptzi*. He had also invited the *Religious Men* before spoken of, certain *Indians*, and two *Muscovites*, who came from the *Weywode*, and understood the *Language*. The Ambassador *Brugman*, being engag'd in discourse with them, broke out into very injurious expressions against the *Turks*, who, though enemies to the *Persians*, yet were not then in any hostility against the *Muscovites*: whereupon the former fearing it might reflect on them, as being the *Masters* of the *Entertainment*, entreated the Ambassador not to engage into any further discourse concerning publick Affairs, but to be merry, and to assure himself, that the expressions they then made us of their affection, were but slight earnest of the friendship we were to expect from them after our arrival into *Persia*.

*Brugmans* enprudence.

The 29. we were visited by the *Myrsa*, or *Tartar-Prince*, whom we had met two days before returning from his sport. He made us a present of some wild *Geese*, which he had taken, and invited us to go along with him a-Hawking the next day, which we had accepted, but the *Weywode* would not permit it, as we said before.

Another *Tartar-Prince* visits the Ambassadors. The *Weywodes* Present.

*Septemb.* the last, the *Weywode* sent us a Present of some of the *Country Preserves*; to wit, *Ginger-bread*, and the *Juyce* of *Goosberries* reduc'd to a *Paste*, whereof some was dispos'd into the form of *great Cheeses*, some *flat*, and some in *Rolls*. It was, in taste, somewhat sharp and *picquant*, and not unpleasent. The *Muscovites* put of this kind of *paste* into most of their *lawces*.

OCTOB. *October* the first, the *Secretary* of the *Embassy*, with two other *Officers* of the *retinue*, were ordered to go to the *Weywode* about some business. He receiv'd me with much civility, made me set down by him, and gave me a very favourable audience. But before he answer'd the *Propositions* we had made to him, he made great complaint of the unhandsome treatment, which *Rodivon*, our *Pristaf*, whom the *Great Duke* had order'd to conduct us as far as *Astrachan*, had received from the Ambassador *Brugman*. He had given him very uncivil language, and had call'd him *Bledinsin*, *Sabak*, &c. never considering that he was employ'd by the *Great Duke*. He told us further, that, to his knowledge, the *Pristaf* was a person of honour, and prudent in the management of his charge: but that it was a great indiscretion in the Ambassador to treat him after that rate, though *Rodivon* had not done his duty, and that he should rather have made his complaints of him to his *Czaarick Majesty*, or at least to those who represent the *Prince's Person* at *Astrachan*, of whom he might have expected satisfaction: That he could not believe the *Duke of Holstein* would take it well, no more than the *Great Duke*, that any publick Officer of his *Country* should be treated in that manner: That he was oblig'd by the concernment of his charge to make those remonstrances to us, but, that there was not, on the other side, any reason the whole *retinue* should suffer for his mis-carriage, and that that should not hinder him from giving us a speedy dispatch; as indeed he immediately did.

Provisions for the continuation of the Voyage.

The *dayes* following were spent in carrying aboard the *Provisions* which we had bought, for the prosecution of our *Voyage*. Our own people had bak'd *Bread* and *Bisket*, and had brew'd a certain quantity of *Beer*. We had bought of the *Tartars* twenty fat *Oxen*, at between eight and fourteen *Crowns* a piece, as also several *Barrels* of *Salt-fish*, intending to go to *Sea* with the first opportunity. And in regard we knew not what kind of sayling it was on the *Caspian Sea*, and that it was represented to us as very dangerous, by reason of the shallowness of the *Volga* thereabouts, for several leagues together, besides our *Muscovian Pilot*, we hired certain *Tartars* of the *Country*, who promis'd to go before us in a *Boat*, and to bring our ship into the main *Sea*.



Accordingly, Oct. 10. we left *Astrachan*, about noon, having very fair weather, taking our course towards South, and South-west. But we had not got a league, ere a contrary wind rising forc'd us to the shore, and kept us there all that day, and the next. We there receiv'd the visit of a certain *Myrsa*, or *Tartar-Prince*, a very handsome graceful person, and one of the most considerable in those parts, who presented us with a Mutton, and a Barrel of Milk. 1636.  
The Ambassadors leave Astrachan.

We observ'd that near *Astrachan*, and for the most part all along the River *Volga*, the Earth produc'd Simples in great abundance, and of incredible bigness. The Herb, which the Latins call *Esula*, grew there as high as a Man, and the Root of *Angelica* was as big as a Man's arm. Simples of extraordinary bigness.

The Tempest being over, the 12. we set forward, but could get but a league that day. We got not much more the 13. and were forc'd to cast Anchor near a little round Mountain, on our left hand, 15. *werstes* from *Astrachan*.

The *Muscovites* call this mountain *Tomanogor*. We gave it the name of the *Snake Mountain*, by reason of the abundance of Serpents we met with there. It was full of Caper-trees, and had abundance of the Herb called *Semper-vivum*, of several kinds, as Sea-house-leek, Prick-madame, &c. The Plain, which is at the foot of this Hill, affords one of the most delightful Prospects of the World, and that for several leagues together. At night, we saw in a Boat the *Strelits* who had convoy'd the *Postanick*, as far as *Terkie*. They told us there was no danger in our way, and that they had come it in 24. hours. Snakes

The 14. the wind North-north-east, we continu'd our Voyage, and came in the afternoon over against a Chapel called *Zuantzuk*, 30. *werstes* from *Astrachan*. Hereabouts is the best fishing in the Country; The *Tartars* call it *Utschu*, and it belongs to the Convent of *Troitza*, or of the Trinity, at *Astrachan*. The River *Volga* is, in this place, divided into several Channels, making so many liles, which are covered all over with Bushes, Canes, and Ozier, as is also the Coast of the *Caspian Sea*, as far as the River *Koisu*. There is, among the rest, one Isle named *Perul*, 15. *werstes* from *Utschu*, in which we saw a house built of wood, of a considerable height: having on the roof of it a long pole with a Sheep's skull at the top of it, and we were told it was the Sepulchre of a *Tartarian Saint*, near which the Inhabitants, as also some among the *Persians*, when they either take a Voyage, or are safely return'd home, sacrifice a Sheep, part whereof serves for the Sacrifice, the rest for a Feast after the Sacrifice. Having ended their Prayers and Devotions, the Sheep's head is put on the top of the pole, where it is left, till it be either reliev'd by another, or fall off of it self. The *Muscovites* call this place *Tataské Molobitza*, that is to say, The Sacrifice of the *Tartars*. Behind this Isle, on the left hand, there were, upon a high, but very smooth ascent, a great number of Hutts.

At night we came to another Fishing-place, 15. *werstes* from the Sea, where the River is shut in with a Palizadoe, and kept by a hundred *Muscovian* Musketeers, who keep a guard there against the *Cosaque* Pirates. In this place we saw a great number of Dog-fishes, or Sea-hounds, as also of that kind of Fowl which *Pliny* calls *Onocratalus*, whose Beaks are long, round, and flat at the extremity, as a Spoon beaten out. Putting its Beak into the water, it makes a noise not much unlike that of an *Als*, whence it hath the name: but particularly we took notice of a kind of Geese, or rather Cormorants, whereof we made mention before. The *Muscovites* call them *Babbes*, the *Persians*, *Kuthum*, and the *Moores* of *Guiny*, *Bombu*. As to their feet, leggs, neck, and colour, they are like other Geese, but they are bigger in body than Swans. Their Bills are above a foot and a half long, and two fingers broad, and forked at the end. Under their Bills, they have a great bag of shrivell'd skin, which they can dilate so, as that it is able to contain near three Gallons of liquor, and they make use of it as a reservatory for the fish they take, till such time as they can swallow them down. For their throats are so wide, that people are not only oblig'd to shut them, when they make use of these Birds in fishing, as they often do, but also, if we believe *Franciscus Sanctius*, it was discover'd, that one of these Birds, which was taken upon its having overcharg'd the said bag, had swallow'd down a Moor-child upon the Coasts of *Africk*. The *Persians* are very expert in dressing the skins of them, and making Tabours thereof, or covering therewith some other Musical Instruments. The Ambassador *Crusius* kill'd one of them upon the *Caspian Sea* side, which was above two ells and a half between the extremities of the Wings, and above seven foot from the head to the feet. *Franciscus Fernandez*, in his *History of the living-Creatures and Plants of Mexico*, sayes, that, in those parts, there are some that have teeth within their Bills; but we are not to go out of *Africa* into *America*.

We saw hereabouts another kind of Bird, much after the form of wild Ducks, save that they are somewhat bigger, and black as Crows, and have longer necks, and the end of their bills forked. The *Muscovites* call them *Baclan*, and they are seen only in the night time; their quills are harder and bigger than those of Crows, and very fit for designers.

The 15. we came to the mouth of the River *Volga*, and the entrance into the *Caspian Sea*, which is 12. leagues from *Astrachan*, and full of small Islands, covered with Reeds & Canes till a man comes six leagues within the Sea. Some attribute to the *Volga* as many mouths as there are

1636. are Islands thereabouts; but they are mistaken, for those Islands are to be accounted rather made by the Sea, than the River.

The bottome is all muddy, having but between four, or four foot and a half water, which put us to inexpressible trouble, and took up our time so, as that we hardly got four leagues in seven dayes. Our worst dayes were the 18. and 19. of *October*. The 18. we were got on a Bank, at five foot water, and having spent as many hours in getting off, we found indeed six foot water, but soon discover'd that it was only a pit, which of all lides, had Banks, at four and four foot and a half water.

Having, with no less trouble, got again to the Bank where we had five foot water, the wind being turn'd to the North-west, the water fell so sensibly, that we had but three foot, the Ship being as it were fasten'd in the mud. We unloaded part of our Provisions into the *Tartarian* Boat that went before us, and set all our people on work, to get off; but though they took incredible pains, so as that they had not the leasure either to eat or drink, yet could they do no good, so that all could be done was patiently to expect the return of the water, which we could not hope for but with the change of the wind. This was no small affliction to those, who consider'd that we were there at the mercy of the *Cosaques*, who might easily have taken us prisoners, and forc'd us to ransom our selves. With all these misfortunes there happen'd to be such a thick mist, that we could not see from one end of the Ship to the other, and occasion'd a great oversight in us, by firing a great Gun, according to the order of the Ambassador *Brugman*, at a *Muscovian* Boat that pals'd somewhat near our Ship: Those who were in the Boat return'd us their curses, and told us, that they might as freely pass that way, as we, who were Strangers, and went by the Great Duke's permission, whom we were oblig'd to acknowledge for Sovereign of that Sea, and their Prince; that since we were so much given to shooting, we might keep our powder to be us'd against the *Cosaques*, who not far thence expected us. This reproach caus'd two other Boats to fare the better, and our selves also, for, instead of injurious speeches, they sent us some of the fruits of *Circassia*, to wit, an excellent kind of Pears, Nuts, and Medlars.

*Oct.* 21. at night, we first perceiv'd that the water was risen to five foot, which begat in us a hope, that we might put off to Sea. The Tempest, which rose the 22. with a South-south-east-wind, brought it up to nine foot; but it was so violent, that not daring to make use of our Sails, we were forc'd to continue still at Anchor, and expect fairer weather, which came not till five dayes after.

The 23. in the morning, the sky being clear, I observ'd the Sun at its rising, and found, that, in respect of the Compass, it rose 22. degrees more towards the South than it should, by which means we discover'd, that, in that place, the needle declin'd 22. degrees from the North, towards the West.

The 27. the Tempest being over, we return'd all our things into the Ship, and dismiss'd our Boat, and, having hoised Sail, got into the Sea; but we hardly made a league, ere we were again in the mud, and oblig'd to send for the Boat. But perceiving we had water enough, the 28. and seeing thirteen Sail behind us coming out of the *Volga*, whom we conceiv'd to be the *Caravan*, we order'd the Boat to be sent back: It was the *Tartar-Prince*, two Merchants of *Persia*, and five hundred *Muscovian* Musketers, with their Colonel, who were going to relieve the Garrison of *Terkj*: but what put us most to a loss, was, that, finding the *Muscovian* Pilot, whom we had taken up at *Astrachan*, absolutely ignorant in the business of Navigation; and the Maps, by which we intended to direct our course, absolutely false, we knew not what resolution to take.

We resolv'd at last to address our selves to the Officer that commanded the 500. Musketers, and to send to him in the evening, while all the ships lay at Anchor, to entreat his assistance and advice in that conjuncture, and to desire him to give us an able man that might be our Pilot on the *Caspian* Sea. He came aboard us, and having drunk sufficiently, he made us the greatest protestations of friendship in the World, and told us, that the trouble it was to him to see us in those difficulties had bereft him of his sleep; that his joy to find us in good health was so much the more extraordinary, and that he would not fail to send the *Weynode* notice of it by an exprefs Messenger; that all under his Command were at our service, and that as soon as he were got aboard, he would send us a Pilot we might confide in. But the merry Companion was no sooner got to his own ship, but he set sayl, and left us in the lurch. I think, what troubled him was, that we had not made him some present according to the custom of the Countrey; but he regarded so little the slur he had put upon the Ambassadors, that he had the impudence to come and Visit them in their ship, in the company of several other *Tartarian* Lords, after our arrival at *Terkj*, and made no other answer to the reproaches he receiv'd upon that occasion, than, *ja wi nouat*, a great business indeed to be talk'd of.

A Muscovian Slurr.

The civility of a Persian Pilot.

Finding our selves thus abus'd, we sent to the Master of the *Persian* ship, to entreat his assistance. He, though Master of the ship, and owner of all the goods in it, came aboard us, to proffer us his service as a Pilot, with more kindness and civility than we could have expected from a

*Christian*,

*Christian*, and, having recommended his own ship to his servants, stay'd with us. He was a very understanding man, and was not only acquainted with the Navigation of those parts, but also with the Compass, much beyond what the *Persians* ordinarily are vers'd in, who do not willingly venture very far into the Sea, but for the most part keep in sight of Land. So that finding the wind serv'd, he caus'd the Anchor to be weigh'd, about eleven at night, taking his course towards the South, with an East wind. We observ'd it was the same day that we left *Travemunde* the year before, and accordingly we had the same success in this second Voyage. We had all that night but ten foot water; but towards day, we had eighteen. The Countrey on our right hand, which is called *Suchator*, had four Hills, which made a great Promontory, reaching a great way into the Sea; and from that Cape to *Astrachan* are counted 100 *werstes*, and to *Terki* 200. but on both sides they are very short ones.

1636.

An ominous day.

The 29. The weather fair, we kept on our course, in the morning Southward, and with a South-East wind, and in the afternoon, South-west-ward, having about twenty foot water, and finding the bottom gravelly, and full of little shells. We could discover no Land that day, and the night following, we cast Anchor. Here the Needle declin'd twenty degrees, from North to West.

*Octob.* 30. We set sayl at the break of day, and soon after Sun-rising, we discover'd the Countrey of *Circassia*, which lies all along the Sea-Coast from the South-West, to North-East, compassing it about, much after the form of a Crescent, and making a spacious Bay.

It was our design, to get beyond the point of the Gulf, but the wind coming to South-East, had almost forc'd us into it, which oblig'd us to cast Anchor about noon, at the entrance of the Gulf, at three fathom and a half water, finding at the bottom a kind of fat earth, about six Leagues from *Terki*. We discover'd in the Bay, about 20. or twenty five Boats, and upon the first sight thereof, it run into our imagination, that they were the *Cosaques*; but we were soon undeceiv'd, and found them to be *Tartarian* Fisher-men, belonging to *Terki*, and were then coming to bring us fish to sell. For those we bought of them, we gave them fifteen pence a piece, but they were very great ones, and we found in their bellies a great number of Crabs and Lobsters, among which there were some alive.

The remainder of the day we spent in giving Almighty God solemn thanks, for all his mercifull deliverances of us, particularly that which happen'd on the very same day the year before, when we were in so great danger, amidst the Rocks and Shelves of *Oeland*. Our *Persian* Pilot went that day to his own ship, which was at some distance behind us, to give his men Order what they should do, leaving us somewhat of an opinion, that he would lie v us such another triek as the *Muscovite* had done before: but he afterwards made it appear, that those of his Nation are not only made up of Compliments, for he return'd very betimes the next morning, having sent his Boat before us, to serve us for a Guide.

The last day of *October*, we had, in the morning, a thick Mist, with a great Calm. The Sun having dispell'd the one about noon, and the wind being come to the North, we endeavour'd to get out of the Gulf, and with much ado, by laversing, got the point, near which we stayd at Anchor till after midnight, and came very betimes in the morning, on the first of *November*, before the City of *Terki*. We cast Anchor about a quarter of a League from the City, because we could not come any nearer, by reason of the shallowness of the water. The night before, the *Cosaques* had a design to set upon us, but happily mis'd us in the dark, and met with the little Fleet which brought the *Tartar*-Prince; but the noise of the *Strelits* or *Muscovian* Muskettiers having discover'd to them that they were mistaken, and imagining they should find a vigorous resistance, they drew back, but made it appear they were the *Germans* that they look'd for.

NOVEMBER

Intelligence coming, in the morning, to the City, of this attempt of the *Cosaques*, rais'd a very hot Alarm there, in regard it was known that *Mussal* their Prince was coming, and that he might be in some danger. The Inhabitants were confirm'd in that opinion, when they heard the going off of our great Guns, a noise they are not accustomed to in those parts; insomuch that they began to get together, and look on us as Enemies; but they were put out of all fear by the arrival of their Prince, who having given us a Volley as he pass'd by, and invited us to honour him with a Visit at his Mother's, satisfy'd the Inhabitants, that there was no danger either to him or them.

The City of *Terki* lies somewhat above half a League from the Sea, upon the little River *Ti-Terki demenski*, which issues out of the great River *Bustro*, and facilitates the correspondence there is between the Sea and the City, to which there is no other way to come by reason of the Fens, which encompass it on all sides, for a quarter of a League about. It is seated in a spacious plain, which is of such extent, that the extremities thereof cannot be discover'd by the eye; whence may be corrected the error of the Map, drawn by *Nicholas Fanson Piscator*, alias *Vischer*, though in all other things the best and most exact of any I could ever meet with, who places the City of *Terki* upon a Mountain, but, by a mistake, confounding the City of *Tarku* in the Province.

1636. vince of *Dagesthan*, with that of *Terki* in *Circassia*. The Elevation of the Pole, is, here, at 43. degrees, 23 minutes. It is distant from *Astrachan* sixty Leagues by Sea, and seventy by Land, and is the last place under the Jurisdiction of the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. It is in length 2000. foot; and in breadth 800. all built of Wood, even the Towers and Rampiers, yet very well furnish'd with great Guns, among which there were then two battering Pieces, plac'd upon Carriages, before the Governours house.

The Garrison of Terki.

The Great Duke hath lately caus'd it to be fortify'd after the modern way of Fortification, with Rampiers and Bastions of earth, by a *Dutch* Engineer named *Cornelius Nicholas*, who went Masters-mate along with us into *Persia*. The ordinary Garrison consists of two thousand men, 1500. whereof are under the Command of a *Weywode*, or Colonel, and divided into three *Princesses* or Regiments, each of 500. men. The Prince is assign'd the other 500. for his Guard, and they are maintain'd upon the Great Duke's charge, but oblig'd to joyn with the others in case of necessity. The *Tartars* of *Circassia* have their habitations on this side the River. We shall speak of their Religion and manner of life hereafter, as having had more leisure at our return, to make a more particular observation thereof.

The Captains Present to the Ambassadors.

The next day after our arrival, the *Cupizi* and the other *Persian* Merchants sent a Present to the Ambassadors, which consisted of excellent Fruits, in great abundance, as also to ask them, whether they were resolv'd to prosecute their Voyage by Sea, or would travel by Land, with this by way of Invitation, that if they would go by Land, there was an opportunity to do it with all imaginable convenience, in as much as, within three dayes, there was expected at *Terki* a *Muscovian* Ambassador, who was upon his return from *Persia*, and would bring with him to the Frontiers, two hundred Camels, and a great number of Mules, which might carry our baggage. To this, it was added, that, by this convenience, we might pass safely through the Country of the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*, and avoid falling into the hands of their *Schemkal*, or Captain, who was one of the greatest Robbers in the World; and that we might be the further assur'd there was no danger, they proffer'd us their company in our Travels. This proposal was so well receiv'd by the Ambassadors, that they immediately sent to the *Weywode* to desire his permission to take their advantage of this opportunity, and dispatch'd *Rustan*, our *Persian* Interpreter, to the Frontiers of *Dagesthan*, six Leagues from *Terki*, to take order for the prosecution of our Voyage by Land; but being come thither, he found the Camels, and all the other beasts fit for carriage, were return'd into *Persia*.

The *Weywode* had at first absolutely deny'd us the Liberty of passage; but as soon as he heard there was no convenience of taking that way, he sent an Officer to tell us, that, though he had receiv'd no express order from the Great Duke to permit any such thing, yet he would not stick to grant us passage, and assist us in order thereto what lay in his power.

A mutiny in the ship.

The night following, the Mariners, belonging to our ship, fell into a mutiny, against *Michael Cordes*, our Captain, and the noise was so great, that many of them were put into Irons. The next day, an enquiry was made into the disorder that had been committed in the night, and *Anthony Manson*, a Sayl-maker, being found the most guilty of any, he was condemn'd to remain a Prisoner at *Terki*, till our return out of *Persia*. The *Weywode* sent for him, by two of his Officers, at the entreaty of the Ambassadors. One of those Officers had a Coat of Mail under his Casaque, and a tin Gantelet; the other, who by his quality was a *Knez*, had a Garment of Crimson Velvet.

An Eunuch belonging to the King of Persia visits the Ambassador.

Nov. 4. Our Musick play'd in the morning betimes, it being the birth day of the Ambassador *Brugman*; which ended, the great Guns were discharg'd. The same morning, the *Tartar* Prince's Mother sent one to complement the Ambassadors, and to give them thanks for their respects and civilities towards her son in his Voyage, entreating them to honour her with a Visit at her house, and to come and receive her Benediction. In the afternoon, we were Visited aboard, by a *Persian* Lord, who had a retinue of many servants. He was an Eunuch, and the King of *Persia* had sent him express, to bring along with him the *Tartar* Prince's sister, to whom he was to be married. He made extraordinary proffers of friendship to the Ambassadors, and was so well pleas'd with our drink, that he grew perfectly drunk, in so much that he knew not which way to get out of the ship. They that came along with him were so edify'd by his example, that one of them was so loaden, that we were forc'd to let him down by a rope into the Shallop.

Their Presents to the Weywode.

The 5. The Ambassador sent *M. Mandeflo*, the Pastor and Secretary of the Embassy, accompany'd by our *Tartarian* and *Persian* Interpreters, to the *Weywode*, to Present him a large Vermilion-guilt-cup, and the two Chancellors or Secretaries each of them with a Ruby. They were also ordered to go and wait upon the *Tartar*-Prince's Mother, and to complement her upon the safe return of her Son. We were very kindly receiv'd in all places, and treated with Collations of Fruit, Beer, Hydromel, Aquavitæ, and Wine. The *Weywode* entertain'd us with the same magnificence as that of *Nisenovogorod*, and falling into discourse of the nature and manner of life of the *Persians*, he told us, that they would, no doubt, be extremely liberal of their good words and fair promises, but that it requires a strong faith

faith to believe one half of them, in as much as their performance would not be consonant thereto. 1636.

Prince *Mussal* receiv'd us in Person, with very intimate demonstrations of affection, at the entrance of the Court, and conducted us into a high and spacious Hall, whereof the Walls were of earth, and so built, that a man might see on all sides, at an equal distance, a certain number of Neeches vaulted, in which there were either rich beds, with coverlets of silk or cotton, or there were layd up in them several pieces of *Persian* Tapestry, and coverlets; wrought or embroider'd with gold and silk, of divers several colours, with great chests covered with the same. Their mes- sage to the Tartar-Prince.

All along the wall, just under the ceiling, there hung two rows of dishes, of wood and earth, of diverse colours; and the pillars, which underpropp'd the structure, were hung all about with excellent Cymitars, Quivers, and Arrows. The Princess sat in a chair, having about her a black loose Gown lin'd with Sables, and made after the fashion of a morning-coat.

The Princess's name was *Bika*, and she was of a very noble stature, and had a good countenance, and might be about 45 years of age. She wore, at her neck behind; an Ox-bladder, blown to the utmost, which was wound about towards her hair, with a rich Scarf embroider'd with Gold and Silk, and had about her neck another Scarf, the two ends whereof hung down over her shoulders. Behind the Chair stood a Lady, who had also a Bladder at her neck, and we were told afterwards that it was the Badge of Widdowhood. On her right hand stood her three Sons, the two younger whereof were no better in Cloaths than the most inconsiderable persons in the Country. Behind them, stood certain Servants, on whose fore-heads and faces (which they had torn with their nails) might still be seen the marks of their mourning for the death of the elder brother, who had been executed at *Moscou*. On the left hand stood, all in a file, several *Tartars*, who were all very aged Persons, and represented the Council and Officers of the Court. The Princess, having answer'd our Complement, ordered Seats to be brought, and a little Table furnish'd with Fruits for the Collation, at which our drink was Hydromel and Aquavitæ. We would have had the Princes to have sat down with us, but they would not by any means do it, alledging, that it was not the Custome of the Country, and that the respect they ought their Mother permitted not their sitting down in her presence. The recep- tion of the Emvoys from the Ambassa- dors by the Tartar-Princes.

The Collation being ended, and the Princess and others of the Company having handled and taken particular notice of our Cloaths all over, the Princess her self presented to each of us, a large Cup, full of a sort of Aquavitæ extracted out of a Millet, which we found as strong as Spirit of Wine. The three Princes Presented us also with each of them a Cup, and intreated us not to take it ill, if they did the same honour to our Servants. In the mean time there was opened, behind the Princess, a Chamber-door, at the entrance whereof were to be seen several Ladies, and amongst the rest the Princess's Daughter, who was betroathed to the *Sophy* of *Persia*. The curio- sity of the Tartar- Ladies.

She might be about sixteen years of age, and was very handsome, the clearness of her complexion having so much the greater lustre, by reason of the extraordinary blackness of her hair. These Ladies seem'd to be no less desirous to see our Cloaths, than those who were in the Hall, thrusting one another towards the door, which they immediately shut upon the least sign made to them by the Princess: but they opened it again soon after, to take a further view of us. They call'd one of our servants to them, to take the more particular notice of his Cloaths, the fashion whereof they very much admir'd, as also that of his Sword, which they desir'd him to draw, that they might see the blade of it. But the *Persian* Envoy, who every day visited the Princess, coming into the Room while they were so employ'd, the Chamber door was immediately shut upon them, and we took leave of the Princess and the Princes her Sons, and went to view the City. We there met with several Women, handsome, young, and well made, having on them a kind of smocks or frocks of diverse colours, who made no difficulty ever and anon to stay us, till they had taken particular notice of our Cloaths.

Nov. 6. The *Cuptzi* sent us a Letter from the Governour of *Derbent*, in answer to that which he had writ to him from *Astrachan*, the 25 of *Sept.* before. The contents of it was, to express his joy at our arrival, and to order the *Cuptzi* not to come away without us, but to bring us along with him by Sea.

The 7. Our Interpreter *Ruskan* return'd from the frontiers of *Dagesthan*, with this news; that those, who had conducted the *Muscovian* Ambassador to the frontiers, were return'd into *Persia* before his coming thither; and that they thought it not enough to carry away the Camels and all the other Beasts fit for carriage, but they had also taken along with them the pieces of Timber and Fagots, without which it was impossible to get over those places where the Road was bad: upon which intelligence it was immediately resolv'd, that we should continue our Voyage by Sea.

The 8. The Princess sent the Ambassadors a present of two Sheep, fifty Pullets, and several other Provisions. The high Chancellor of *Muscovy* sent us a Sheep, a barrel of Beer, and another

1636. another of Hydromel. In the afternoon, the Prince *Mussal* came to give us a visit, to bid us adieu. There came along with him a *Myrsa* of *Dagesthan*, a Brother of the Prince of *Turku's*, who made us believe, he was come expreis to conduct the Ambassadors as far as the place of his Brother's residence. He was no better clad than the other *Tartars*, having, over his old cloaths, a Cloak, of a sort of very coarse Cloath, but as to his countenance and behaviour, he express'd a fierceness beyond any of them, not dissembling the trouble it was to him, that we discover'd a greater respect for *Mussal* than for him, and refusing to stand at the drinking of the Great Duke's health. And when *Mussal* intreated him to consider the place he was in, he confidently made answer, that he knew not whether the Country he was then in, were the Great Duke's or his own, and began to pick a quarrel with him, reproaching him, that, with all his gay Cloaths, he was but a slave to the *Muscovite*, whereas himself, though but in raggs, was nevertheless an absolute Prince, that acknowledg'd no other superiour than God: insomuch that at last, not able to govern his passion, he absolutely refus'd to drink the *Czaar's* health in any posture, and went his wayes. Some of his servants stole from our Minister, a silver Spoon and a Knife, and cut off one of the sleeves of my Doublet; but they were forc'd to leave it behind them, it being engag'd under some other Cloaths.

The *Tar-*  
*tars en-*  
*clin'd to*  
*vbest.*

Prince *Mussal* staid with the Ambassadors, and begg'd of them the pardon of the Mariner whom we had sent Prisoner to *Terki*. The Ambassadors very freely satisfy'd his desire therein, and so sent late that night, the Secretary of the Embassy and another Gentleman, to the *Weywode*, to entreat him to return the Prisoner into our hands, and to desire justice of him against the *Muscovian* Pilot, who had run away from us two dayes before. A good while after night a Lacquey was sent after us, to press our immediate return to the Ship, which was then ready to set sayl, to make all the advantage they could of the Wind, which for some hours had blown very fair. We had dispatch'd all our business, when the Lacquey came to us; but notwithstanding all the expedition we could use, we found the Ship under sayl, but it was not long ere the Wind, turning to the direct contrary point, forc'd us to continue in the same place.

The Am-  
bassadors  
leave *Ter-*  
*ki.*

The *Wey-*  
*wode's*  
*Present.*

The *Weywode* in the mean time sent us his Present, which consisted of a hundred pieces of hung Beef, four tuns of Beer, a puncheon of French Wine, a tun of Hydromel, a puncheon of Vinegar, two Sheep, four great Cakes of Ginger-bread, and several Loafs of other bread. There was bestow'd among those that brought the Present, about 20. Crowns, and good store of *Aquavitæ*, insomuch that they went their way very well satisfy'd.

Nov. 10. the Wind coming to South-west, we set sayl at the break of day, intending to take the course of the City of *Derbent*, which is the nearest of any of that frontier. About noon, we discover'd a Bark, which at first, took its course so as if it would have pass'd on the right hand of us, then made as if she would come up streight to us, and not knowing well what resolution to take, they ever and anon made more or less sayl; whereby perceiving that those who were in it, were afraid of us, the Ambassador *Brugman* gave order that the Ship should make streight towards the Bark, put the Soldiers in their stations, and commanded a certain number of great Guns to be fir'd at randome, the more to frighten them. The poor people immediately struck sayl, and came near us. They were *Persians*, Fruit-Merchants, and the Bark was then loaden with Apples, Pears, Quinces, Nuts, and other Fruits. The Master of it, who was Brother to our Pilot, seeing him among a sort of people such as he had never seen before, and believing he was their Prisoner, began with horrid Cries and Lamentations to bewail his Brother's misfortune, as also his own, which he expected to fall into, though he cry'd several times to him, *Korchma duschman lardekul, Fear not, they are friends, among whom I am with my own consent.* But the other would hear of no perswasion to the contrary, imagining, that they forc'd him to speak to that purpose, and could not recover himself out of the fear he was in, till his Brother had acquainted him with the occasion which had brought him to our Ship. Then was it that he took the courage to come himself into our Ship, with a present of all sorts of Autumn-fruits, whereof he also sold good store, so cheap, that a quarter of a hundred of very great Apples came not to a penny. He was treated with *Aquavitæ*, after which he return'd to his Bark very well satisfied.

An Island  
in the Cal-  
pian Sea.

Much about this time, we came near an Isle which the *Muscovites* call *Tzetland*, and the *Persians*, *Tzenzeni*, eight Leagues from *Terki*, on the left hand. There we cast Anchor, at three fathom and a half water, and staid there four and twenty hours, according to the custom of the *Persians*. We had lying before us a Treatise written by *George Dictander*, (who had Travell'd into *Pesia* in the year 1602. with an Ambassador sent thither by the Emperour *Rodolph II.*) who, speaking of this Isle, sayes, that, being the only man left alive at his return, and staid in that place by the cold, he had been forc'd to kill the Horses which the *Sophy* had bestow'd on him, after he had consum'd all the other Provisions. Having at our coming thither, four or five hours of day-light remaining, the Ambassadors thought it not amifs to go into the Island, to see whether what they observ'd there, were consonant to what the other had written thereof: But all we could meet with worth our Observation was, only three great poles fasten'd together,

together, and set up at one of the points of the Island, beset all about with Roots and Boughs, <sup>1636.</sup> to serve for a direction to the Mariners, and two great Ditches, wherein some time before fire had been made. This, in all probability was done by the *Cosagues*, who make their frequent retreats into that Island. It lies at forty three degrees, five minutes elevation, and reaches in length from North-east to South-east, about three *German Leagues*. The soil is for the most part sandy and barren, and towards the extremities, either cover'd with shells, or fenny; and it is the only Island that is to be seen, as we goe to *Kilan*, West-ward of the ordinary course.

From this Island, there may be seen in the Continent, towards the South-west, such high Mountains, that we took them at first for Clouds. Our people called them the Mountains of *Circassia*; but the *Muscovites*, nay the Inhabitants of *Circassia* themselves, call it the Mountain *Salatto*, and it is properly that Mountain which the Antients call *Caucasus*, in the Province of *Colchis*, which is the same that at this day is called *Mengrelia*; and is so famous in Antiquity, for the fabulous expedition of *Jason* for the Golden fleece. Its height, which indeed is extraordinary, in as much as it seems to extend it self to the Stars, hath furnish'd the Poets with that fancy, that it was from this Mountain *Prometheus* stole fire from the Sun, to communicate it to men. *Quintus Curtius* affirms, that it crosses all *Asia*. Certain indeed it is, that the Mountains of *Ararat* and *Taurus* are so near, and do so as it were cloze with it, that it seems to be but one continu'd Mountain, extending it self all through *Asia*, from *Mengrelia*, as far as the *Indies*. From the *Caspian Sea*, towards the *Euxine Sea*, and *Asia* the lesser, it is near fifty Leagues in breadth. But let us see what *Quintus Curtius* says of it, in the seventh Book of his History, where he gives us this account of it. *They reach*, saith he, *from thence, towards Mount Caucasus. which divides Asia into two parts, and leaves the Cilician Sea on the one side, and on the other, the Caspian Sea, the River Araxes, and the Deserts of Scythia. Mount Taurus, which is to be ranked in the second place for its height, is joyned to Caucasus, and, beginning in Cappadocia, crosses Cilicia, and reaches as far as Armenia. It is as it were a continu'd concatenation of Mountains, out of which arise almost all the Rivers of Asia, some whereof fall into the Red-sea, and others, into the Hyrcanian, or that of Pontus. The Army pass'd the Caucasus in seventeen days, and came in sight of the Rock, which is ten Stadia in compasse, and about four in height, where Prometheus was chained, if we may credit the Poets.*

Mount  
Caucasus,  
Mengrelia.

Mount *Ararat*, upon which *Noah's Ark* rested after the deluge, and which the *Armenians* <sup>Mount</sup> call *Messina*, the *Persians*, *Agri*, and the *Arabians* *Subeilahn*, is without comparison much <sup>Ararat</sup> higher than the *Caucasus*, and is indeed but a great black Rock, without any Verdure, and cover'd with Snow on the top, as well in Summer as Winter, by means whereof it is discover'd fifteen Leagues into the *Caspian Sea*. The *Armenians*, and the *Persians* themselves, are of opinion, that there are still upon the said Mountain some remainders of the Ark, but that time hath so hardned them, that they seem absolutely petrify'd. At *Schamachy* in *Media*, we were shewn a Cross of a black and hard Wood, which the Inhabitants affirmed to have been made of the Wood of the Ark: and upon that account it was look'd upon as a most precious Relick, and, as such, was wrapp'd in Crimson Taffata. The Mountain is now inaccessible, by reason of the precipices whereby it is encompass'd of all sides.

*Imaniculi Sulthan*, whom the Sophy sent Ambassador to the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master; and whose Territories lye in those parts, in the Country of *Karabah* told us many very remarkable particulars of it. These high Mountains are a great direction to those who have no Compass to sail by in the *Caspian Sea*; in as much as changing their form according to the several prospects they afford, the Pilots by that means easily discover whereabouts they are.

The 11. we continu'd our Voyage presently after Sun-rising, taking our course along the Isle Southward. At the extremity of the Isle, there is a kind of Streight, near a Cape or Promontory which comes out of the Continent into the Sea, much about the same place, where, on the Isle side, a great Sand-bank advances it self toward the Land, and so makes but a narrow passage. Which oblig'd us to cast Anchor, that we might have the more convenience of Sounding, so to avoid the flats or shallows, which make Navigation very dangerous thereabouts. We found, at first, but two fathom water, but soon after we were at six or seven fathom; insomuch that the Wind becoming more favourable, we took our course South-South-west, directly towards *Derbent*, along the shore, and in sight of it. After mid-night, the Wind being not so much for us as before, we were forc'd to laver it all the remainder of the Night; but we advanc'd little or nothing; insomuch that a Tempest rising thereupon, we at last resolv'd to cast Anchor, which we did, at twelve fathom water. We lay at Anchor all the 12th. till 9. at night, and then the Wind coming to the North, we set sail with a favourable Wind, taking our course to the South-South-east.

About 11. the same night, we found between 20 and thirty fathom water, and an hour after, no bottom, so that the wind being turn'd again to an absolute Tempest, we conceiv'd, that it <sup>A Tempest.</sup> would

1636. would be dangerous for us to bear much fail upon a Sea we were not acquainted with, and that in the Night time, Whereupon having furl'd them up, we let the Ship go directly before the wind, by which means we got two Leagues in less than an hour. We had, besides our double Shallop, two other Boats, one whereof, which we had bought of the *Muscovites*, was only for their convenience who founded the depth of the Water, and the other serv'd for the unloading of our Ship, which drew both of them after her. There were two Sea-men appointed for the guiding of the Shallop, which, having in it only certain small Pieces, Bullets, Chains, Cables, Pitch, and other things necessary for Navigation, was made so shallow, that being ever and anon fill'd with water, the Sea-men, finding themselves no longer able to guide it, came aboard the Ship, and fasten'd the Shallop to the stern. The other Boats were soon over-whelm'd with water and lost. The Shallop held out a while, but at length follow'd the others, and this prov'd the beginning of our wrack upon the *Caspian Sea*. Our Ship, which was built only of Firr, and had been much endammag'd by the Sand-banks of the *Volga*, bow'd under the high and violent waves of that Sea, as if it had been a Snake, and open'd in so many places, that we were forc'd to be alwayes at the Pump, and continually employ'd in emptying the water that came in of all sides. Our *Persian* Pilot had not the least share of the common fear and distraction we were all in, and no doubt wish'd himself in his own Ship, or nearer Land; in regard that had we been cast away there, we had all inevitably perish'd.

Nov. 13. at the break of day, we perceiv'd, that we had still kept in sight of Land, and we particularly discovered the Mountain of *Derbent*, which, as we conceived, could not be above ten Leagues distant from us. The Tempest abating a little of its Violence, we hois'd the mizen Sail, and afterwards the main Sail, with a resolution to run the Ship strait a-ground. But having, the Night before, taken our course too high, and the wind continuing still from the North-west, we were forc'd to comply with it, and, to our no small regret, pass beyond the City of *Derbent*, along the *Persian* Coast, which, in that place, reaches from North to South, but so as that we could not find any Road or Haven, where we might save our selves; for as much as there being only Rocks at the bottom for the space of six Leagues from the Land into the Sea, it is impossible to make the Anchor take any hold. At last, about four, in the afternoon, we cast Anchor, at four fathom water, before the Village of *Niasabeth*, which our Authors call *Nisavay*, the bottom muddy; but we thought not our selves more safe at Anchor, than when we were tofs'd up and down in the main Sea. The waves were so violent by reason of the extraordinary roughness of the Sea, that it was not long ere they broke the hindges of the Rudder, which oblig'd us to take it quite off, and to fasten it with a Cable behind the Ship, lest bearing against the Castle it should have broke it all to pieces; the Water coming still into the Ship so fast, that we were forc'd to spend the remainder of that day, and all the night following, in emptying it.

The Tempest abated a little of its violence the next morning, being the the 14. of *November*, and invited us to think of some course for the disembarking of our selves, but we had neither Boat nor Shallop to help us to Land, and though we had caus'd several Volleyes of great and small shot to be discharg'd, to oblige the Inhabitants of the Countrey to come in to our relief, yet could we not perceive any body; but we had hardly made a shift to clap a certain number of deal Boards together like a flat-bottom'd Boat, ere we saw coming towards us two Boats, which the *Kaucha*, or Judge of the Village, had sent to our relief in that extremity.

They brought us a present, of two baggs of Apples, with a very obliging Complement, protesting that they were no less glad at our arrival, than we might be at theirs. Which done, they exhorted the Ambassadors to get out of the Ship as soon as they could possibly, taking along with them what they accompted of greatest Value, and not to be over-confident of the calm, which, no doubt, would not last many hours. The Ambassadors took their advice, and having put into the Boats what they thought most considerable, they ordered some part of their retinue to go in also, and certain Soldiers with their Officers; leaving in the ship the *Sieur Uchterits*, their Steward, and the Secretary of the Embassy, with an intent to send for them as soon as they were landed themselves.

The *Kaucha* was on Horse-back at the Sea-side, and perceiving that the Boats could not come near enough, by reason of the shallowness of the water, he alighted, and sent the Ambassadors his Horse for their more convenient Landing. And thus it was that the Ambassadors first set foot in *Persia*. But as soon as they were got a-shore, the Tempest grew more violent than it had been before, insomuch that it was impossible for them to send back the Boats: which put us that were left aboard to the utmost hazard of Shipwrack and Life. The Ship, being now in a manner quite unloaden, was tofs'd up and down like a Ball by the Waves, the Sea raising her, one while, up to the Clouds, another swallowing her up in its abysses. There was constantly above a foot water upon the Deck, so that we were not able to stay upon it; and at last the Ship opening above, just in the middle, we began to fear the absolute dissolution of her. We observ'd also by the Trees that were upon the Sea-side, that the Anchor was loose, and that

The Ambassadors disembark with part of their retinue.



the wind had carry'd us above a quarter of a League from the place where he had disembarked the Ambassadors, whereupon we cast two others, both which were lost about 11. the same night, as also our Rudder. The biggest Anchor held still, but the Vessel drew so much water, that the Pump being of no further use, we were forc'd to empty her with Kettles. About midnight the wind came to the East, and broke off our main and mizen Masts, and over-turn'd them into the Sea, the Ship shaking in that interim with so much violence, that the edges of her were ever and anon even with the water. The Sea-men intreated the Secretary, to give them leave to cut the Ropes that still held her, to see if that would deliver us out of the extremity we were in; which he made no difficulty to grant them. We had not eaten ought in three dayes, and watching, with continual labour, had brought us so low, that having lost all courage, together with the hope of ever saving our Lives, all our thoughts were taken up with the disposal of our selves for Death. Our Carpenter was the only person who had the courage to go under Decks, and to take so large a dose of Aquavitæ, that being come up on the Deck, he fell down dead at our feet. Nor indeed could we have imagin'd him to be otherwise, if the Exhalations of the Aquavitæ, that ascended from his stomach, had not discover'd the nature of his indisposition. The Sea-men remitted nothing of their labour all this time, and exhorted the rest to be of good courage, putting us in hope, that, within some few hours, either the weather would change, or the Ambassadors would not fail to relieve us, as indeed they were both of them earnest to do all lay in their power for our preservation. Nay the Ambassador *Brugman* would, with his Sword drawn, have forc'd some of our people to come in the two Boats to look after us, but he could by no means prevail with them, to hazard themselves.

1636.

Perceiving the day slipp'd away without any hope of relief, and fearing the Tempest might grow more violent the night following, I took the Master's-mate aside, and was desirous to know of him; whether, the Tempest continuing in the height it was then at, it would not be our best course to run the Ship a-ground to save the men. His answer was, that he believ'd the Ship could not make any great resistance; and that it were not amiss I took the advice of the other Officers, and propose it to the Captain and the Master, who both confess'd, that the ship was in so ill a plight, that they were confident the Ambassador *Brugman* himself would have commanded her to be run a-ground, had he been among them: and yet they were withall of opinion, that, continuing their labour for some hours longer, it was not impossible but the Vessel might be saved. But they discover'd by their discourse their main fear to be, that, when there were no ship, they would be look'd on as useles persons, and that there might be some dispute about their wages for the rest of the Voyage. Hence it came that they were unwilling the ship should be run a-ground. But the *Sieur Uchterits* and the Secretary, overcome with the importunities of the rest of the company to have that course taken, in so great an extremity, the Captain and Masters-mate at last gave their consent, provided a promise were made them in Writing, that the Ambassadors should not call them to an accompt for their so doing: which was accordingly done, and the Secretary drew up an Act to that purpose, which was signed by all. But the Captain and Master beginning to make new difficulties, after they had gotten a discharge, as aforesaid, all our people would have mutini'd, and cry'd out, that if they delay'd the running of the ship a-ground any longer, they should answer before the Tribunal of God, to give an accompt for what should happen thereupon. The Captain would have excus'd himself, alleging, that though the ship were run a-ground, as was desired, yet were it impossible for him to save all our people: but answer was made him, that they were resolv'd to run the hazard of it, and he was so earnestly press'd thereto, that he consented, after he had obliged the *Sieur Uchterits* and the Secretary of the Embassy to give the first stroak upon the Cable: which when they had done, the Sea-men soon made an end, and having struck the only sayl we had left us, we made strait to land, and run the ship a-ground, about thirty peaches distant from the place where the Ambassadors and all our friends expected us, with no less trouble for us, than we had for our selves. Nay some of them, to make a greater expression of their affection, came a good way into the water, and carry'd us ashore.

A strange resolution in the utmost hazard.

The Ship runs a-ground.

It prov'd no great trouble to us to justify the resolution we had taken of running the Ship a-ground, in regard that, as to that particular, the Ambassador *Brugman* himself prevented us, and told us he had been long before resolv'd to send the Captain orders to do it, but that he could not meet with any person that would undertake the execution thereof.

As concerning the *Caspian Sea*, it hath not in all places the same name, but it is changed, either according to the diversity of the Inhabitants that live about it, or the Provinces that border upon it. It was called antiently the Sea of *Chosar*, from the Name of the eldest Son of *Thogarma*, who was the Son of *Gomer*, and Grand-child of *Japhet*, third Son to *Noah*. *Nubius's Geography* calls it the Sea of *Travissthan*. The *Moors* call this Sea, as they do also the Gulf of *Arabia*, *Bobar Corsuin*; and the *Persians* call it *Kulsum*, which name they also give the *Red Sea*. The *Greek* and *Latine* Authors call it the *Hyrcanian Sea*, as also *Mare Caspium* and *Caspianum*. The *Persians* call it by another name, the Sea of *Baku*, from the City of *Bakuje*, in the Province of *Schirman*; and the *Muscovites* name it *Gualenskoi-more*. But a man must be very cautious

A description of the Caspian Sea.

1366. tious how he credits what is affirmed by *Dionysius Afer*, *Pomponius Mela*, *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and those who follow them, as *Strabo*, *Martianus Capella*, *St. Basil the Great*, *Macrobius*, and others, that it is only a *Sinus*, or Gulf of the great Sea of the *Indies*, or of the *Tartarian Sea*, or that it hath some communication which the *Euxine Sea*, and *Paulus Meotides* by the River *Tanais*; in as much as it is most certain, that it hath not any communication at all with the other Seas, but it is of all sides so encompass'd with Land, that it may be more justly called the *Mediterranean*, than that which is known only by that name. *Herodotus* and *Aristotle* are much more worthy credit, when they affirm, that the *Caspian Sea* is a particular Sea by it self, having no communication with any other: and this is no more than what the Inhabitants of *Kilan*, who live upon that Sea on the East-side, have so strongly confirmed us in, that we lay it down as a thing no longer to be disputed.

Is a sea by  
it self.

But what on the other side is much to be wondred at, is, that though so great a number of Rivers incessantly pay the tribute of their waters into it, yet can it not be said what becomes thereof. We at first could hardly be induc'd to believe what was told us concerning all those Rivers; but when, at our return out of *Persia*, between *Rescht* and *Schamachy*, which was twenty days journey, we took notice, that we had cross'd above fourscore great and small Rivers, we made no difficulty then to acquiesce in the Relations we had before received thereof. The most considerable of those we saw, are, the *Volga*, *Araxis*, or *Aras*, which is joyned to the *Cyrus*, which is now called *Kur*, the *Kisilosein*, the *Bustrow*, the *Aksai*, and the *Koisu*. Towards the North are the Rivers of *Faika* and *Fems*; and towards the South and East, the *Nios*, the *Oxus*, and the *Orxentes*, which *Q. Curtius* calls, *Tanais*.

And notwithstanding this vast Contribution of waters, this Sea is not perceiv'd to be any way increas'd thereby, nor can it be said, by what passages all these Rivers are convey'd thence. Some are of opinion, that they are, by subterranean Channells return'd into the Ocean. The *Persians* told us, that near *Ferebath*, between the Provinces of *Tauristan*, and *Mesendan*, there is a Gulf, where all those waters are lost, as in a bottomless place, and convey'd away under the neighbouring Mountains. But in regard a man must consequently to this assertion, imagine that Gulf to be as big as the whole Sea, to swallow down the waters of so many Rivers, I cannot be easily perswaded to side with the maintainers of that opinion. On the contrary, I think it may be probably held, that there may be alleged, for the *Caspian Sea*, the same reasons as are urged for Ocean's not overflowing the Earth, though an infinite number of Rivers fall into it: To wit, that, besides the Mists, which are very frequent there, and consequently consume a great part thereof, the rest is return'd by secret Channells, to the sources of the Fountains and Rivers, according to the wise-mans saying, that *all the Rivers come out of the Sea, and return thither again*, whether it be that the weight of the Sea-water, which is not all within its Centre, forces that which is lowest into the clefts of the earth, as far as the sources, and that this is done with such violence, that at its breaking out of the earth, it spouts higher than the Sea it self; or that there are in the earth certain veins, which, drawing the water to them, distribute it to the Fountains and Rivers. The first-ratiocination is *Julius Scaliger's*, in his 46. *Exercitation*, where he says, that he does not believe, the Argument which is deduc'd from the difference of the qualities of waters can destroy the force of his, in regard we find by experience, that the water, passing through the earth, is cleansed from its filth, and leaves its Salt at the bottom, from which it is divided, much after the same manner as if it were distill'd through an Alembick. Which is evidently seen by this, that the greater distance there is between the Sea and the Fountains, the sweeter their waters are. It is also acknowledg'd, that there is no Mountain higher than the Sea, which making but one part of the roundness of the Terrestrial Globe, the swellings and eminencies, which are upon the earth are not higher than the Sea. Which I affirm to be so much the more certain, upon this accompt, that, being, in my return from *Persia*, between *Schamachie* and *Derbent*, at the Village of *Soray*, I had the curiosity to go up into one of the adjacent Mountains, where I took the Horizon with my Astrolabe, and having put my *Dioptra* into it, I turn'd myself towards the Sea, which was two Leagues distant thence, and could easily discern it.

The length  
& breadth  
of the Cas-  
pian Sea.

The Authors who have written of the *Caspian Sea*, affirm, that, it is, in length fifteen dayes journey, and in breadth, eight; which may fall out somewhat right, if it be in a great calm, and that those who are to pass it, make use only of their Arms and Oars, and have no advantage of wind. Whereupon I propose it as a particular observation, that, contrary to the common opinion of all Geographers, as well antient as modern, the length of the *Caspian Sea* reaches not from East to West, as it is set down in all Maps, even in those that have been publish'd since the former impression of this Relation, where I condemn'd that errour, but that it is to be taken from South to North, and that, on the contrary, it is its breadth which reaches from West to East. And this I know, not only by the most exact observation I made thereof, but also by a curious inquiry of the situation of all the Maritime Provinces, according to the Catalogue or Register, of Longitudes and Latitudes, which I had from the *Persians*, as also consonantly to the Astronomical fragments of the Learned *M. John Graves*. For it is certain, that the true length

of the *Caspian* Sea, is from the mouth of the River *Volga*, below *Astrachan*, to *Ferabath*, in the Province of *Mesenderan*, reaching eight degrees of the *Æquator*, which make 120 *German* Leagues; and that its breadth, from the Province of *Chuarefm*, named by others *Karragan*, to the Mountains of *Circassia*, or to *Schirwan*, is six degrees, which make but 90 *German* leagues. According to this accompt thereof are to be corrected all the Geographical Maps, though the opinion we introduce be new, and directly contrary to that which hath been receiv'd for so many ages. 1636.

Nor are we to give any more credit to what *Q. Curtius* affirms, when he says, that the water of the *Caspian* Sea is fresher than that of the Ocean, unless he be conceiv'd to speak only of the coast of *Hyrcania*, which is now called *Kilan*, where indeed the water is neither salt nor fresh, but brackish (as it is in several places of *Holland*) by reason of the mixture of the waters of divers Rivers, which fall into the said Sea on that side. For, in the Sea it self, the water is as salt as any other that ever I could taste of. *Polybius* and *Arrian* affirm the same thing of the *Euxine* Sea; and *Ovid* confirms it by this Distick.

*Copia tot laticum, quas auget, adulteret undas,  
Nec patitur vires aquor habere suas.*

It is besides our design to engage into any discussion of *Scaliger's* position, who says in his 53 *Exercitation*, that the water of all Seas is sweet, or fresh, at the bottom, nor yet to examine the Reasons alleged by him for that opinion, as falling nor under the subject of our Relation. But this we shall presume to affirm, that the *Caspian* Sea was not much known to the *Greeks*, in the time of *Alexander*, since *Arrian* says, in the seventh Book of his History, that that great Conquerour issu'd out his commands, that Timber should be fell'd in the neighbouring Mountains, for the building of a Fleet, which he intended to employ in the discovery of that Sea. It is certain also, that *Q. Curtius* speaks not of it otherwise than according to the knowledge which some had thereof, in a time when that of the *Romans* had not pass'd the *Euphrates*. no more than their Arms. For though *Pliny* says, lib. 6. ch. 17. of his *Natural History*, that *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*, the Successors of *Alexander*, made a discovery of that Sea by *Parroclus*, their Admiral, yet he is withall forc'd to acknowledge, that there were many other things to be discovered; as it was also our intention, to make use, to that purpose, of our Ship and Shallop during the abroad we should make at the Court of *Persia*, if our misfortune in being cast away upon this Sea had not defeated us of our expectations. Certain it is, that this Sea does neither Ebb nor Flow, nay that indeed it is not capable of either; forasmuch as it hath no communication or correspondence with the other, which, in that particular, follows the motion of the Moon. Neither Ebbs nor Flows.

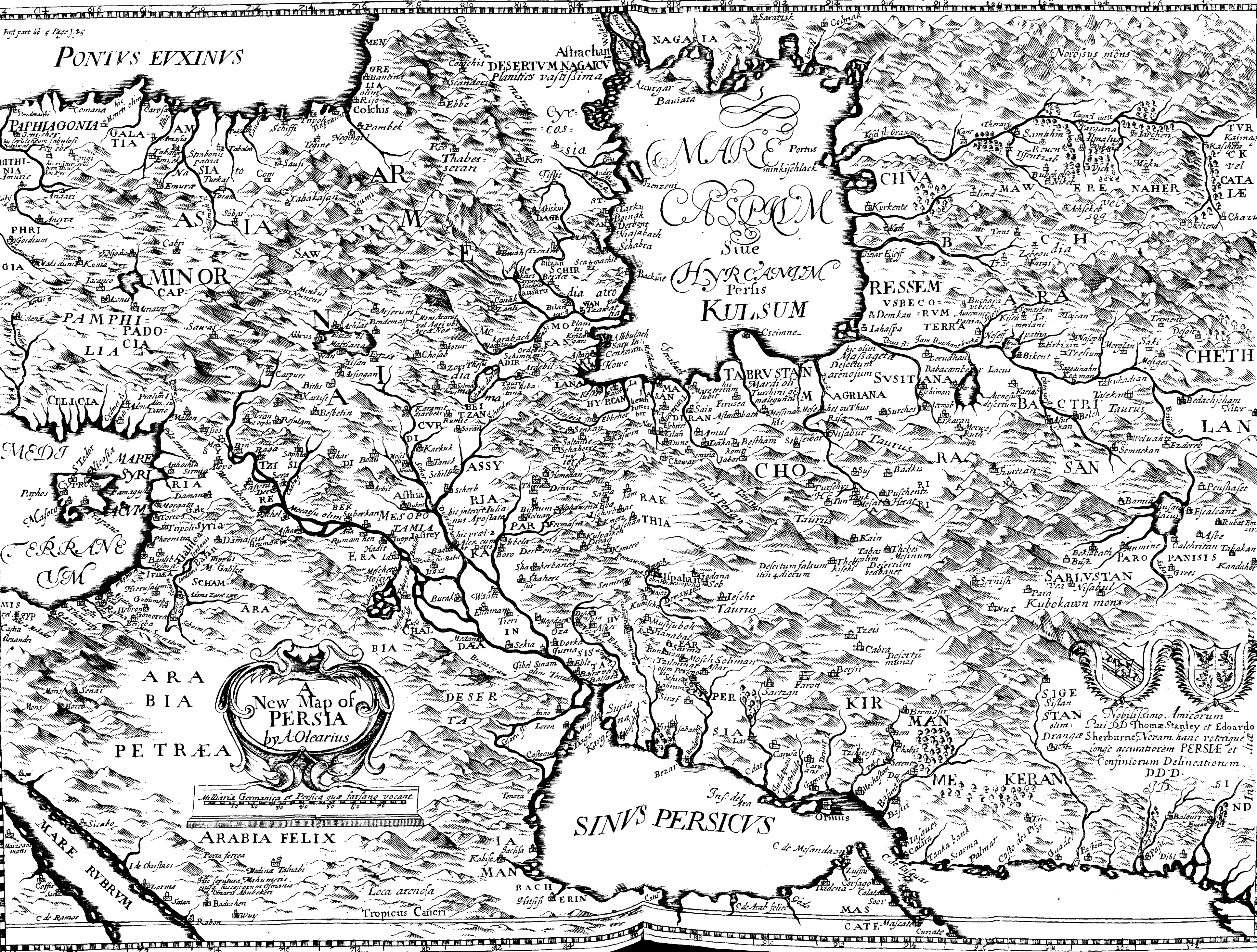
The *Persians*, *Tartars*, and *Muscovites* seldom venture upon this Sea but in the Summer-time, and then dare they not hazard themselves far into it; for sailing only in wretched small Barks, or Boats, they keep as near as they can to the shore, and never are out of sight of Land. It hath in a manner no safe Havens or Harbours. The best it hath, is the same we spoke of before, near *Terki*, between the Isle of *Tzenzeni* and the Continent; at which place the *Persians* are wont to cast Anchor, and stay for a night. The havens of *Baku*, *Lenkeran* and *Ferabath* are none of the worst, nor are they on the other side the safest; and the best Haven of all this Sea, is on the side of the grand *Tartary*, and near the City of *Minkischlak*, which may be found in the Itinerary of *Anthony Jenkinson*, under the name of *Manguslave*, but misnamed.

But, how ere it be Haven'd, we may confidently affirm this, that we have been long enough upon the *Caspian* Sea and its Coasts, to undeceive those who are apt to believe, what is deliver'd by *Petreyus* in his History of *Muscovy*, to wit, that the water of it is as black as Ink, and that it is full of Islands, which are well stored with Inhabitants, and have in them a great number of Cities and Villages; both which we affirm to be absolutely false. For the water of it is of the same Colour, as that of all other Seas; and though we discover'd but some part of the *Caspian* Sea, yet having made particular enquiry as to this particular, all the *Persians*, *Tartars* and *Muscovites* I ever discoursed with concerning it, unanimously assur'd me, that in all that Sea there is but one Island, wherein there is, I will not say either City or Village, but so much as a House, unless it be in that of *Ensil*, near *Ferabath*, where the pastures being very good, such as keep Cattel, have made certain Huts, not so much for their settled Habitations, as to prevent the injuries of the Weather at certain times.

I also enquired of the Inhabitants of *Kilan*, whether the *Caspian* Sea bred such an infinite number of great Serpents, as *Q. Curtius* would make us believe: but they all assur'd me they had never seen any, and that it was a thing they never had heard spoken of before, no more than they had of a certain great round Fish without a Head, whereof *Ambrosius Contarinus* speaks in the relation of his Travels, which Father *Bizzarus* hath Printed together with his History of *Persia*. He says, that this Fish is an ell and a half Diameter, and that there is a certain Liquor drawn

1636. drawn out of it, which the *Persians* use in their Lamps, and to grease the Camels, But the *Persians* told me, that they stood not in need of any such Oyl to burn, since that near the City of *Baky*, under the Mountain of *Barmach*, there are inexhaustible sources of a certain Liquor, which they call *Nesla*, and make use of in their Lamps. And of this there is daily such great quantities taken up, that it is transported all over the Kingdome.

Certain indeed it is, that there may be seen in those parts a certain kind of Fish, which they call *Naka*, that is, *Glutton*; which hath a very short Nose, and the Head as it were within the Belly, having a round Tail, and being seven or eight foot in breadth, and not much less in length. It fastens it self with the Tail to Fisher-mens Boats, and, if they be not very carefull, over-turns them. The *Persians* told us also, that the white Fishes, of which we have spoken heretofore, do the same, and that thence it comes, though the weather be ever so calm, the Fisher-men never venture far into the Sea. This is the only Creature, which may in some measure make good what *Pomponius Mela* sayes in his Geography, to wit, that the *Caspian Sea* breeds so great a number of monstrous Fishes, which he calls *Bellua*, wild Beasts, that that is one of the main Reasons, why it is not Navigable. This fish delights much in the Liver and Flesh of Beef and Mutton, whence it is that the Inhabitants of *Kilan*, especially those who live towards the Mountain of *Sahabelan*, as being the most hindred in their Fishing, make baits thereof, wherewith they cover strong and sharp Hooks fasten'd to Great Cords, with which they draw them to Land. Nor are we to credit what the same *Bizarrus* and *Contarinus* affirm, when they say, that there is no other fish in the *Caspian Sea*; for, on the contrary, it is extremely well stor'd with fish, and there are in it abundance of *Salmons* and *Sturgeons*, as also a kind of *Herrings*; nay there are in it some fish, which in other places are numbred among the fresh-water-fish, and are had only in ponds; as for instance *Breams*, which they call *Chascham*, and *Barbels*, which they call *Schwit*: but the latter are tough and insipid, if they exceed two foot in length. There is also a kind of *Trouts*, which they call *Suggabt*. These are not eaten fresh, but salted and hung up in the smoke, and their way of dressing them, is, to lay them on the hearth, with a clean linnen Cloath about them, and then to cover them with hot ashes, till such time as they are ready: being thus ordered, they make a very pleasant and delicious dish. There are no Pikes nor Eels in all *Persia*, insomuch that those *Persians*, whom the King sent along with us into *Germany*, when they saw us eat Eeles, conceived a horrour thereat, as taking them for Snakes. The King of *Persia* farms out the fishing of the *Caspian Sea*, towards the mouths of Rivers, which brings him in very considerable sums of Money, many times more than the Farmers make thereof, for instance, the City of *Kesker*, where a Farmer named *Schemsi* paid eight thousand Crowns for the farming of five Rivers, which that year had yielded but six thousand. Their fishing is only from *September* to *April*, and during that time, there is a Palisadœ or kind of Hedge made in the Sea at the mouth of the River, to hinder the fishing of those that have no right to fish, within that enclosure; but all the year besides it is indifferently permitted to all, and in the Sea it self, at all times.



PONTVS EVXINVS

MARE CASPIVM

HYRCANVM KULSUM

New Map of PERSIA by A. Olearius

Milliaria Germanica et Persica quae farsang vocant.

SINVS PERSICVS

Nobilissimo Amicorum Parii DD Thomae Stanley et Edoardo Drangae Sherburne Noram. hanc vltimae longe accuratiorẽ PERSIÆ et Confiniorum Delineationem DDD.

ARABIA FELIX

CATE MALCATA





THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
**D U K E** of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, T A R T A R Y,**  
 and **P E R S I A.**

The Fifth Book.



The Countrey where we Landed, or rather where the wrack cast us ashore, is called *Muskur*, and makes part of the Province of *Schirwan*, or the Ancient *Media*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Sulthan*, or Governour of *Derbent*, and comprehends, from the City of *Derbent* to the Province of *Kilan*, about two hundred Villages. But before we come to give an accompt of what we have seen in *Persia*, it is requisite in this place, that we give a general description of that Country and its Provinces, upon this consideration, that there is not any Author that hath hitherto undertaken this work, but hath confounded the Antient names of Cities and Rivers with the Modern, and speaks thereof almost in the same terms, as the *Greek* and *Latin* Histories, which treat of the antient *Persia*. The Map of this Country, which was some few years since publish'd at *Paris*, is, no doubt, the most exact of any that have yet come to light: but if any man will be at the pains, to confront the Names it gives the Cities and Provinces of *Persia*, with those which are in this Map of ours, he will easily find the difference there is between the one and the other.

As to the name of *Persia*, *Herodotus*, in the seventh Book of his History, sayes, that the Ambassador, whom *Xerxes*, King of *Persia*, sent to the *Greeks*, would have them believe, that he deriv'd his original from *Perfes* the Son of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*. *Ammianus Marcellinus* affirms, that the *Persians* are originally *Scythians*; and, if we credit *Pliny*, the *Scythians* call them *Chorsari*. The Holy Scripture calls them *Elamites*, and they give themselves the name of *Schai*, thereby to be distinguish'd from the *Turks*, who, upon the same accompt, give themselves that of *Sunni*. And as the same *Turks* have an affectation to call themselves *Mussulmans*, so the *Persians* are much pleas'd, when they are called *Kisilbachs*, that is to say, *Red-heads*. But of the Etymology of that word, we shall give an accompt hereafter, when we come to treat of the habits of the *Persians*.

It is most certain, that *Parthia* and *Persia* were heretofore two distinct Kingdomes, and that the name of *Persia* hath not been common to both, till they became both subject to the same King, and were inhabited by the same people. Upon the same Consideration it is, that we now comprehend under the name of *Persia*, not only the Kingdom of *Persia* it self, but also all the

1366. other Provinces which have been annexed thereto, either by Conquest or otherwise, and are now under the Jurisdiction of that Monarch. Hence it is, that when we speak of *Persia*, our meaning is, to comprehend, under that name, all that Country, which reaches from North to South-west, from the *Caspian*-sea, to the Gulf of *Persia*, and from East to West, from the River *Euphrates*, which the *Turks* call *Morasu*, to the City of *Candabar*, upon the frontiers of the *Indies*. By assigning it the *Caspian*-sea for its frontier, our meaning is to comprehend therein near the one half of that sea, along the Mountains of *Armenia*, reaching West-ward as far as the River of *Ruth-Cane Kurkahn*, by the Antients called *Oxus*, which divides the *Persians* from the *Usbeques*, who are the same that are called the *Tartars* of *Buchar*, and are for the most part Tributaries to the King of *Persia*.

Whence is to be observed by the way the error of *Bottero*, who, in his *Politia Regia* says, that the extent of *Persia* from North to South is eighteen degrees. Wherein he is so much the more mistaken, by how much it is certain, that, from the first City of *Persia* from the *Caspian* Sea, to its utmost frontiers towards the *Persian* Gulf, there are hardly twelve degrees. For, let a man but cast his Eye, not only on the Map, which we here give of it, but also on that of *M. Sampson*, and particularly on that of the Learned *Mr. John Graves*, not long since publish'd by him in *England*, and he will find, that the City of *Hazum*, which the Inhabitants of the Country call *Kesht*, within two small Leagues of the *Caspian* Sea, lies at thirty seven degrees, and that the City of *Ormus*, upon the *Persian* Gulf, is but at twenty five, which make but twelve in all. We acknowledge that it contains above twenty degrees in length, from the *Euphrates* to the *Indies*: but we are to consider withall, that one degree of Longitude under the thirty seventh degree of Latitude, under which *Persia* lies; consists but of fifty minutes at the most.

The principal Provinces of the modern *Persia* are those of *Erak*, *Fars*, *Schirwan*, *Adirbeizan*, *Kilan*, *Thabristan*, *Mesenderan*, *Iran* or *Karabag*, *Cherasan*, *Sablustan*, *Sitzestan*, *Kirman*, *Chusistan*, and *Tzifire*, or *Diarbeck*.

The Province of Erak.

The name of *Erak*, or *Hierak*, is common to two several Provinces, to wit, that whereof the City of *Babylon* or *Bagdat* is the Metropolis, which is commonly called *Erakain*, and without all question is the antient *Assyria*. But it is not of this Province that we have any account to give in this place. Our Province of *Erak*, which is also called *Erak-atzem*, to distinguish it from *Erakain*, lies in the midst of all *Persia*, next to the Province of *Fars*, and is the antient *Parthia*. The *Archontology*, Printed not many years since at *Frankfort*, gives it the name of *Charassen*, but it confounds this Province with that of *Chuaresm*, which lies upon the *Caspian* Sea, on the East-side, and is inhabited by the *Tartars* called the *Usbeques*. The chief Cities of the Province of *Erak* besides that of *Ispahan*, which is the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, are *Caswin Solthanie*, *Senkan*, *Sawa*, *Kom*, *Kaschan*, *Rhey*, *Schaherisur*, *Ebbeher*, *Hemedan*, *Darkasin*, *Theberan*, and *Kulpajan*, at which last place, the best Bows in *Persia* are made.

The Province of Fars.

The Province of *Fars*, which *De Laet*, in his description of the State of *Persia*, calls *Farc*, or *Parc*, but unadvisedly, is properly the antient *Persia*, whereof *Persopolis* was the chief City. *Alexander* the Great caused it to be set on fire, out of a fond Compliance for a common Prostitute, with whom he had over-drunk himself. It is reported, that the ruins of that City became the foundation of that of *Schiras* upon the River *Bendemir*, which *Q. Curtius* calls *Araxis*. Its principal Cities, besides that of *Schiras*, whereof there will be an account given in the following Travels of *Mr. Mandelslo* into the *Indies*, are *Kasirus*, *Bunizan*, *Firusabath*, and *Astar*: whereto may be added the City of *Labor*, with the little Province which derives its name from it.

The Province of Scirvan.

The Province of *Scirvan* is known in the Maps under the name of *Servan*, and is no doubt that which the Antients called *Media Acropatia*, though *Jenkinson*, in his Itinerary, affirms, that it is the antient *Hyrcania*. It is indeed the most Northerly part of the antient *Media*, which *Herodotus* and *Strabo* deliver to be Mountainous and Cold. Whereof we had a sufficient experience in our Travels, after our departure from *Schamachie*, as will be seen in its due place. *Schamachie* is the Metropolis of the Province, wherein there are besides, *Bakuse* seated at the foot of a Mountain upon the *Caspian*-sea, which from its name is called the sea of *Baku*: That of *Derbent*, which is one of the Passages which the Antients called *Pyla Cassia*. This is that which *Alexander* the Great caused to be built, and called *Alexandria*, upon which account it is that the Inhabitants do often call it *Schacher Funan*, that is, the City of the Greeks: That of *Schabran*, in the Country of *Muskur*, near the place where the wrack cast us ashore. The City of *Eres*, or *Aras*, is destroyed; but there may be seen the remainders of what it hath been heretofore, upon the River *Arras*, which is now called *Arisbar*.

The Province of Iran.

The Province of *Iran*, which the Inhabitants of the Country commonly and for the most part called *Karabag*, is seated between the two famous Rivers of *Araxes* and *Cyrus*, which are now called *Aras* and *Kur*, and comprehends some part of the two Provinces of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, which the *Persians* call *Armenich* and *Guriz*. It is one of the noblest and richest

Provinces of all *Persia*, and in this particularly, that it produces more Silk than any other. It is sub-divided into several other lesser Provinces, to wit, those of *Kappan*, *Tzulfa*, *Scabus*, *Sifian*, *Keschtas*, *Sarsebil*, *Ervan* or *Iruan*, *Kergbulag*, *Agustawa*, *zoeran*, *Scorgel*, *Sajcinat*, *Intze*, *Thabak-melek*, *Thumanis*, *Alget*, and *Tzilder*. The principal Cities, Forts, and Towns of it are *Berde*, *Bilagan*, *Skemkur*, *Kentze*, *Berkuschat*, *Nachiscuan*, *Ordebad*, *Bajesied*, *Maku*, *Magasburt*, *Tiflis* and *Tzilder*. This great Province might very well deserve a larger account to be given of it; but in regard it borders upon the *Turk*, and that I have been so fortunate, as to meet with a very accurate Map of this Country, together with a particular relation of what ever is most observable therein, we shall endeavour to find else-where some occasion to speak of a thing, which to treat of in this place would make too great a Digression.

*Adirbeitzan*, which the *Europeans* are wont to name *Aderbajon*, or *Adarbigian*, is the more Southerly part of the Antient *Media*, to wit, that part which the Antients call *Media Major*. And so farasmuch as it is acknowledg'd that the Province of *Kurdestan* is that which the Antients call'd *Assyria*, we may in some measure be satisfy'd with what *Nubius's* Geography says, to wit, that it is the more Northerly part of *Assyria*, since they have their Frontiers common, and in a manner confounded. It is divided from the Province of *Schiruan*, by the Deserts of *Mokan*, and from that of *Karabag*, by the River *Aras*, and it hath, on the East, the Province of *Kilan*. *Adirbeitzan* is also sub-divided into many other little Provinces, as *Erschee*, *Meschkin*, *Kermeruth*, *Serab*, *Chalchal*, *Tharumar*, *Suldus*, *Utzan*, &c. Its principal Cities are *Ardebil* and *Tauris*. The former is famous for the Birth of *Schich Sefi*, Author of the Sect of the *Perses*, who liv'd and dy'd in that City, where his Tomb is yet to be seen, as also those of several other Kings of *Persia*, of whom we shall have occasion to speak hereafter. The City of *Tauris* or *Tabris*, which is thought to be that of *Gabris* according to *Ptolomey*; and which *Ortelius* affirms to be the antient *Ecbatana*, heretofore the most considerable place in all the East, and the ordinary residence of the Kings of *Persia*, is seated at the foot of the Mountain *Orontes*, eight dayes journey from the *Caspian* Sea, and is one of the richest and most populous Cities of *Persia*. The rest are *Merrague*, *Salmas*, *Choi*, *Miane*, *Karniarug*, *Thesu*, *Thel*, and *Tzeuster*. *Tzors* and *Urumi* are two places excellently well fortify'd, and in the latter is to be seen the Sepulchre of *Burla*, the Wife of King *Casan*, which if it bears any proportion to the stature of that Woman, she must needs have been a Giantess, and of an extraordinary height, since the Tomb is above forty foot long.

The Province of *Kilan* derives its name from the people that inhabit it, who are called *Kilek*. It is the antient *Hircania*. For its situation absolutely agrees with that which is given it by *Quintus Curtius*, and that it is encompass'd, after the manner of a Crescent, with a Mountain cover'd with Trees. It is water'd by many little Rivers. It comprehends several other Provinces, among which, some number that of *Thabristan* or *Mesanderan*, which is the same with that, whose Inhabitants, in the time of *Alexander* the Great, were called *Mardi*. The rest are *Kisilagass*, *Deschtenuend*, *Maranku*, *Maschican*, *Lengerkunan*, *Astara*, *Buladi*, *Schigkeran*, *Nokeran*, *Kilikeraa*, *Houe*, *Lemur*, *Disjekeran*, *Lissar*, *Tzeulandan*, *Rihk*, *Kesker*, *Rescht*, *Lahetzan*, and *Astarabath*, containing forty six Cities, and a very great number of Villages. The principal Cities are, *Astrabath*, Metropolis of the Province of the same name; and *Mesanderan*, where may be had the fairest Turquoises in the Kingdome. In *Mesanderan* are *Anul*, *Funkabun*, *Nei*, *Saron*, *Nourketzour*, and the noble and pleasant City of *Ferabath*. It was heretofore called *Tahona*, but *Schach Abas* was so pleas'd with it, that many times he pass'd over the Winter therein, and gave it the name it now hath, from the word *Ferab*, which signifies pleasant or delightful. Indeed the whole Country is such, so that they who affirm that fruits hardly ripen in it by reason of its coldness, injure it very much; unless it be that they speak of its Mountains, which indeed are not habitable: but the plains are very populous, and very fertile, and so pleasant, that the *Persians* say it is the Garden of the Kingdome, as *Touraine* is, of *France*. Whence the *Hakim*, or Poet, *Fardausi* had reason to say,

*Tschu Mesanderan, Tschu Kulkende Sar ?*  
*Nikerem we nesert, henis che besar ?*

That is, What is *Mesanderan*? Is it not a place set with Roses? neither too Hot, nor too Cold, but a perpetual Spring? *Lahetzan* is famous for its Silk, which it hath better than any other place; and its principal Cities are *Lenkeru*, *Kutsesbar*, and *Amelekende*. In the Province of *Rescht*, besides the Metropolis of the same name, are the Cities of *Kisma*, *Fumen*, *Tullum*, *Scheft*, *Dilum*, and *Massula*. This last is built upon a Mountain, by reason of an Iron-mine, by which the Inhabitants, who are most Smiths, maintain themselves. There are also in those parts abundance of Wall-nut Trees, whereof are made most of the Wooden dishes that are all over *Persia*. In *Kesker* are the Cities of *Kesker*, *Scabherruth*, *Kurab*, *Enseli*, *Dulab*, *Schal*; and towards the North, *Ruesseru*, *Miunscaker*, *Senguerasara*, *Houe*, *Chosckkaderene*, *Henkelan*, and *Kisilagass*. There is no entrance into the Province of *Kilan*, but by the four passages, whereof we shall speak hereafter, in the last Book of the Travels of the Ambassadors, as also of the



1636. Caspian gates, the insolence of the people who live between *Mesandaran* and *Kesker*, and the History of *Karib Schach*.

The Province of Chorasan.

*Chorasan*, or the ancient *Bactriana*, hath on the West, *Mesandaran*, and comprehends also several other lesser Provinces, whereof the chiefest is that of *Heri*, the Metropolis whereof is *Herat*. This Province is one of the greatest, and most fertile of any in *Persia*, and that which drives on the greatest Trade of any. The City of *Mesched*, which, in the Catalogue or Register of their Cities, may be found under the name of *Thus*, is no doubt the most considerable of any. It is encompass'd with a noble Wall, set out with many sumptuous Structures, and among others with two, or if we may believe *Texeira*, three hundred Towers, distant one from the other about a Musquet shot. In this City is to be seen the Sepulchre of *Iman Risa*, one of the twelve Saints of *Persia*, of the Family of *Aly*, which, as to its Structure, Revenue, and Wealth, is equal to that of *Ardebil*, and all things are performed there with the same Ceremonies. The same Devotions are also done there as at the Tomb of *Schich Sefi*. In the Country about *Mesched*, near the City of *Nisabur*, there is a Mountain, where are found such Excellent Turquezes, that the King permits them not to be sold to any but himself. *Herath* is the second City of the Province, and there, is made the best *Persian* Tapistry. The *Indians* Trade thither, and it is a place they must necessarily pass through, who go from *Candahar* to *Ispahan*. There it was that the Horses of the Great *Mogul's* Ambassador were stay'd, whereof we shall say more hereafter. *Thun*, *Thabeskileki*, and *Thabes-Messinan*, are very considerable Cities, as well upon the account of their greatness, as of the several Manufactures of Silk that are made there, and wherewith they drive a vast Trade. All the other Cities, as *Sebsenar*, *Turschis*, *Kain*, *Pnschentz*, *Badkis*, *Meru*, *Meruerud*, *Tzurtzan*, *Fariab*, *Asurkan*, *Belch*, *Barnian*, *Semkan*, *Thalecan*, and *Sus*, are also very populous, and eminent for Merchandise, and in these parts is found the best Manna in the World.

The Province of Sablufthan

The Province of *Sablufthan* lies more towards the East, *Q. Curtius* calls the Inhabitants of it *Paropamisadae*, from the neighbouring Mountain, called *Paropamisus*, which is a branch of Mount *Taurus*, and it is all Wooddy. The people living in it, is, at this day, as simple and barbarous as they were in the time of *Alexander*. It is upon this Mountain that *Goropius Becanus* would have *Noah's* Ark rest, after the deluge, contrary to the opinion of most of the Fathers, who, for the most part, agree, that it reitd upon Mount *Ararat* in *Armenia*. The Cities of this Province are *Bekfabath*, *Meimine*, *Asbe*, *Bust*, and *Sarenu*.

Sirzistan.

The Province of *Sirzistan*, by others called *Sigestan*, *Sagestan*, and *Siston*, lies Southward from the Province of *Sablufthan*, and is the Habitation of the people, who were heretofore called *Drange*. It is encompass'd of all sides by a high Mountain; and it is the Country of the Grand *Rustam*, who is known not only in their Histories, but is also the only celebrated *Heros* of all their Romances. The principal Cities of this Province, are *Sistan*, *Chaluk*, *Ketz*, &c.

Kirman.

The Province of *Kirman* is also one of the greatest of the Kingdome of *Persia*. It lies between those of *Fars* and *Sigestan*, and reaches as far as the Sea, and the Island of *Ormuz*. The Country is somewhat un-even, and Mountainous, but the Valleys of it are very fertile and delightful, abounding in Fruit, and every where cover'd, and as it were strew'd with Flowers, especially *Roses*, whereof this Province produces such great quantity, that a considerable part of its Revenue is rais'd out of the water made of them. The Inhabitants call it *Gulap*, whence it may be well imagin'd that the Word *Julip* comes, and they drive a great Trade with it, especially at *Ispahan*. Those who Trade most in it, are the *Lurs*, who are a sort of people by themselves, distinguish'd from the other *Persians* by what they wear about their Heads, which is a kind of Coiffure, that is longer and narrower than the ordinary *Turbants*, and there is fasten'd to it a tuft or tassell, which hangs down over the Back. There is also in this Province a Drugg very soverain against the Worms, which is called *Daru Kirman*, as well upon account of the Province, as also hence, that the Word *Kirman* signifies a Worm. And concerning this, there is a story of one of their Kings, who being in the fields on Horse-back, heard himself call'd by his own name. He look'd back, as if he had heard the voice behind him, and seeing only a dead man's skull half rotten upon the ground, and doubting the voice proceeded thence, he asked, who it was. The skull answer'd, that that was all was left of what he had sometime been; that he had worn a Crown as well as himself, and had Conquer'd several great Provinces, but that desirous to add, to his other Conquests, that of *Kirman*, he had been overcome and eaten; exhorting him to reflect on what he had seen, and to make his advantage of that Philosophy. The Province is barren enough towards the North, having on that side abundance of heathy grounds; but towards the Sea-side it is very fertile. Its principal Cities are *Birsir*, *Bermasir*, *Bem*, *Chabis*, *Tziresht*, *Kamron*, and *Ormuz*, *Kamron* is a Sea-port, whence it is many times called *Bender*, or *Bender Kamron*. *Ormuz*, by the *Persians* called *Hormous*, is an Island, three Leagues distant from the Continent: but of these two places, the Reader will have a further account in the first Book of *Mandelslo's* Travels into the *Indies*. There is comprehended also

under

under the Province of *Kirman*, that of *Mekeran*, wherein are the Cities of *Firh*, *Kitz*, and *Chalack*. 1366.

*Chusistan* is the same which was heretofore called *Susiana*, and in the time of the Hebrews *Elam*. It lies between the Province of *Fars* and the River *Dissel*, and its Metropolis was *Susa*, famous for the Vision which the Prophet *Daniel* had there, concerning the determination of the *Persian* Monarchy, and the beginning of the *Grecian*. It is now called *Desu*. It was also in these parts that the palace of *Susa* stood, upon the River *Ulai*, where King *Ahasuerus*, King over twenty seven Provinces, made his great Feast. Its chief Cities are *Ahawas*, *Ramchormus*, *Scabur*, *Askar*, and *Arhan*. The heats in these parts are so great, especially towards the South-part of the Mountain, that, in the Summer time, the Inhabitants are forc'd to forsake the Cities, and retire themselves into the Mountain.

*Tzifire* is found in the Catalogue of the Provinces of *Persia*, and it is the antient *Mesopotamia*. Now it is commonly called *Diarbek*, and lies between the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, which the Turks call *Digel*. This Province hath been often taken and retaken by them from the *Persians*; so that it is not alwayes under the *Schach's* Jurisdiction, but then only when he is Master of *Bagdat*, or *Babylon*, and *Mosul*, which some affirm to have been the antient *Ninive*. 'Tis true, *Bagdat* is not properly in the Province of *Diarbek*, but in that of *Eracain*, as are also the Cities of *Wafith*, *Besre*, *Rusa*, and *Medain*.

As to the City of *Bagdat*, there is nothing so certain, as that it was built, out of the ruins of the antient *Babylon*, but not in the same place, in as much as *Babylon* stood upon the *Euphrates*, which ran through it, as is expressly affirmed by *Strabo*; whereas *Bagdat* is seated upon the *Tigris*, which joyns with the *Euphrates*, a League below the City. The *Persians* are of opinion, that the Inhabitants of *Babylon* had heretofore their Summer-Houses and Gardens at the place where now *Bagdat* stands, insonmuch that after the destruction of the City, they found it no great difficulty to remove their habitations thither. And indeed, the word *Bag*, which signifies a *Garden*, and *Bagdat*, a place full of *Gardens*, does in some measure confirm their opinion.

To resume our former discourse, the Country where we were cast a-shore, is very pleasant, it was all over green at the time of our arrival, and the Birds, which were not yet sensible of the Cold, ordinary in our parts, continued their Chirping and Singing till near the middle of *December*. The soil there is very good, bringing forth *Rice*, *Wheat*, and *Barley*, in great abundance. They make no *Hay*, because their Cattle are out Winter and Summer; but if they make any, it is only for the convenience of Travellers. Their Vines were scatter'd up and down, Planted without any care or order, all along the Hedges the Vines being fasten'd to the Trees, so as that they spread up to the extremities of the Boughs, from which the small branches hung down three or four Ells in length. All the Province of *Kilan* is full of them, and at our return, we saw very fair and very large ones, at *Astora*. The Country affords good store of Wild-fowl, especially *Pheasants*, as also of *Hares*, the Hunting whereof found us good sport during the aboad we were forc'd to make there. There is also in these parts a certain kind of Foxes, which they call *Shakal*, about the bigness of those of *Europe*, (of which kind there are also abundance, and the Inhabitants call them *Tulki*) but instead of Furr or Hair, they are cover'd with Wool, and have white bellies, Ears all black, and less Tails than those of our parts. We heard them in the night time running in Herds about the Village, and were not a little troubled at their Cries, which was a drawling and doleful noise, without any intermission.

The Inhabitants make use of Buffles or wild Oxen, more than they do of Horses, but instead of loading them upon their Backs, they make them draw Wood, or any other things of great weight. Their ordinary sustenance is Feny-greek, wherewith they sow whole Fields, as we do with Vetches and Lentills, and they cut it while it is yet green, Herb and Seed together, and so give it those Creatures to eat. The Milk, I mean that of the Females, is so fat, that it makes a Cream two fingers thick, of which they make excellent Butter. They never make any Cheese of Cow's-milk, but only of sheeps.

The Village of *Niasabath* is at 41 deg. 15 min. Elevation, and hath not above 15 or 16 poor Houses, which lye scatter'd up and down, all built of Clay, and absolutely square, having flat Roofs, and cover'd with Turfs, so as that a man might walk upon them without either danger or inconvenience. And indeed it is ordinary among the *Persians*, to erect Tents upon them, to eat, and in the summer-time, to lye on them all night, that they may the more participate of the coolness of the Air. Here it was that I first understood what the Gospel says of the Paralytick, who was let down through the Roof of the House; and the Counsel our Saviour gave those who were upon the House-top, not to come down into the House; for this is their way of building all over the East. We were at first lodg'd in the Houses, which were very handsome within, and the floors of the Chambers for the most part cover'd with Tapistry, and the Masters of the Houses receiv'd and treated us the first day very well. But the Village being but small, not able to find Lodging for all our retinue, and our aboad being likely to be too long there for us

1636. to lye upon the charges of the Inhabitants, we got Tents pitch'd near the Lodgings of the Ambassadors, where we continu'd till the Court of *Persia* took order for our departure thence. We had no Bread; our Beer was lost with the ship, and the Village had no spring of fresh water; so that we were forc'd to look after our Mouldy scraps, and to content our selves with the troubled water of a small Torreat, which pass'd near the Village, while our ship furnish'd us with firing for the Kitchen and the Chambers.

Nov. 19. *Schachewerdi*, Governour of *Derbent* sent to complement us, upon the occasion of our arrival there, two Persons, very well clad, one whereof was Brother to the *Kaucha* of *Niasabath*. They deliver'd the Ambassadors the *Sulthan's* Letter, which came with a Present of two Horses, as many Oxen, twelve sheep, twenty Pullets, three great Pitchers of Wine, one Pitcher of Water, two Paniers of Apples, and three sacks of Wheat-flower.

But the Ambassadors coming to understand, that the *Sulthan's* Letter made mention only of one Horse, they would not receive the other, though the *Persians* earnestly protested, that the mistake came only hence, that the *Sulthan* imagining there had been but one Ambassador, had accordingly sent but one Horse, and that they, coming afterwards to hear there were two, had bought another horse, out of an assurance that it was the *Sulthan's* intention to have done so. But notwithstanding all their allegations and instances, the Ambassador *Brugman* would by no means accept of the horse, for no other reason, doubtless, than this, that his was not so good as his Colleague's. The *Persians* were not a little troubled thereat, and look'd on it as an affront done the *Sulthan*, who resent'd it so highly since, that he did us all the ill-Offices lay in his power, being also further troubled in this respect, that, contrary to the custom of *Persia* and *Muscovy*, upon the Ambassador *Brugman's* untowardness, his People had been sent away without Presents.

Brugmans  
incivility.

The 22. the Ambassadors sent *Francis Meurier*, one of our Retinue, with our *Persian* Interpreter, to the *Chan* or Governour general of the Province of *Schiruan*, whose ordinary residence is at *Scamachie*, to acquaint him with our arrival, and to entreat him to supply us with all things necessary for the continuation of our journey. The Governour, who had heard of it by some other means had immediately sent a *Mehemander* to us (so they call in *Persia* those who among the *Muscovites* are called *Pristafs*, whose charge it is to conduct the Ambassadors through the Country, and to see them furnish'd with Provisions and Carriage) but our people had mist him by the way.

This *Mehemander* came to our Quarters the 29. of *November*. He was most sumptuously Cloathed, and excellently well mounted, on a very gallant horse, the Harness whereof was cover'd with Gold, and beset with Turquezes. He acquitted himself very handsomly both in his address and complement, with promises of all the civilities and services it was in his power to do us, as long as we should be under his conduct, which was as far as *Scamachie*. Having answer'd his Compliment, we invited him, and those who came along with him, to taste of our fruits, and of all sorts of Aquavitæ, wherewith we were well stor'd. We also caused our great Guns to be discharg'd, and we entertain'd them with our Musick, wherewith they seem'd to be much taken. As soon as the *Mehemander* was return'd to his Lodging, he sent us a Present of five sheep, three Pitchers of Wine, and some Pomegranates.

Nov. the last, came back *Francis Meurier* with the Interpreter, bringing this account, that the *Chan* being not at *Scamachie*, at their coming thither, they had been oblig'd to follow him into the Country, where they had found him encamp'd under Tents, with a Retinue of about four hundred persons: That he had receiv'd them kindly, and had assur'd them, that he had already sent a *Mehemandar*, whose care it should be to see the Ambassadors supply'd with all things necessary for the continuation of their journey; that he had told them further, that he heard the Ambassadors had a Retinue of about three hundred men, but they should be all welcome, though they were twice the number: That it was a great while since we first heard of this Embassy, and that he was very desirous to see us. To which account the Interpreter added only this, that the Governour had particularly desir'd to be inform'd by him, of the quality and humours of the Ambassadors, as also of that of the persons whereof our Retinue consisted, and our manner of life.

The Governours re-  
sentment.) The first ill Office the *Sulthan* of *Derbent* did us, was, in denying us a sufficient number of horses and other cattel for the carriage of our selves and our Baggage. Which prov'd so considerable a rub in our way, that our *Mehemander* was forc'd to return to *Scamachie*, where he spent above a moneth in getting together such a number of cattel as might carry us and all we had: during all which time we were forc'd to continue still in the Village of *Niasabath*.

The Cupr-  
zi comes to  
Niasabath) During that time was dis-embarqu'd, much about the same place, the *Cuprzi* or *Persian* Merchant, of whom we have spok'n before, after he had run the same hazard upon the *Caspian* Sea as we had so narrowly escaped.

Nov. 24. came in thither a small Boat with five persons in it, who were all left of fifty, who had been cast away with the ship, which was bound for *Kilan*, the thirteenth before; so that those



those poor people had been ten dayes together struggling with the wind and waves ere they could get Land.

The joy we might well conceive at our being in *Persia*, after so troublesome a Voyage, wherein we had run through so many dangers, was much abated by the inconveniences which the untowardness and humourfomness of one of the Chiefest in the Company run us into: but I shall spare the Reader the dissatisfaction of finding any thing in this relation but what is divertive. The better to overcome the affliction it put us all into, we, who were of *Misnie*, entred intred into a little society among our selves, and taking our advantage of the fair weather we had the first of *December*, we went all together in a Company about a quarter of a League from the Village, where we found out a little place, whereof the Rivulet maketh almost a Peninsula, so pleasant and inviting, that the fairest Meadows in *Europe* afford not any thing so delightful in the best Season of the year. The water came almost round about that little parcel of ground, and the Pomegranate-Trees, which had joynd their verdure with that of the Vines, invited us to rest our selves under their shade, and to divert our selves with the memory of our dear Countrey: to which divertisement our Phylician, Dr. *Graman*, contributed very much, by the good cheer he made us of Gamons of Bacon, Neats Tongues, and two or three sorts of Sack and Aquavita, whereof he had still good store left. This was our divertisement for several dayes.

*Decemb. 9.* The Ambassadors were visited by the same *Tartar* Prince of *Tarku*, who had given us a Visit at *Terkij*. He was accompany'd by his brother, and attended by a Retinue of about twenty persons. After his Visit, he went to the next Village to look for Lodging, there being none to be had in ours, and sent us the next day, as a Present, an Ox, some Sheep, and two great Paniers of Apples. That which the Ambassadors sent in return thereto, consisted in certain Ells of Cloath and Satin, a Vessel of Aquavita, and a Roll of Tobacco. And whereas he had expres'd, that they would do him a great kindness to give him a little Gun-powder, to be reveng'd for the incursions which *Sulthan Mahomet* had made into his Territories, the Ambassadors sent him a Barrel that weigh'd 80. pounds.

The Tartar Prince of Dagestan visits the Ambassadors.

The return of our *Mehemandar*, who came back the same day, made us the more joyfull, in that he assur'd us, that within 15. dayes, there should be brought us out of *Scamachie* and *Derbent* such a number of Wagons, Camels, and Horses, as that nothing should retard our journey any longer.

According to this promise, the 12. there came in some Horses and Camels, but we heard of no more afterwards. The *Mehemandar* excused himself upon the Snow that had fallen the night before, and said, that the *Persians* were not wont to travel in the cold, and that the Camels whose hoofs are not so flat as those of other Creatures, would not have been able to go by reason of the slipperiness of the way. Whereto he added, that it had hapned, that whole Caravans had perissh'd, through cold, in the Mountains, for want of Wood and Lodging, which are very scarce upon that Road, though there be but twenty Leagues, or *Farsangs*, from *Niasabath* to *Scamachie*. True it is indeed, that for some nights we had Snow, but the Sun melted it as soon as he appear'd over the Horizon. But how ere it happen'd, we were forc'd to stay there ten dayes longer; which made us imagine that what was done was out of design, purposely to defer our departure thence, till they should receive the Orders which they expected from the *Sophy* concerning our subsistence; for till then we had been upon our own charge.

During our stay at *Niasabath*, the Ambassador *Brugman* would needs cut some certain beams, which the *Sophy* had, with vast charge, brought to the Sea-side, to be employ'd in the building of his ships, and cause Carriages to be made thereof for our Artillery, not regarding the remonstrances of the *Persians*, who told him, that if he made use of those beams, the *Sophy* could not build his ships that year. The Ambassador went on in his intended design, and told those of our Retinue, who would have dissuaded him from it, that it was the humour of that Nation, not to do any thing till they are forc'd to it, and that the only way was to domineer over them. But the *Persians* had afterwards the advantage to laugh at us, when they furnish'd us with so few horses, that being not able to draw our Artillery, we were forc'd to leave our Carriages behind, and to load our Guns upon Camels.

Brugman's indiscretion.

*Decemb. 21.* there came to us two *Mehemandars*, one from *Scamachie*, the other from *Derbent*, bringing along with them about forty Camels, thirty Waggons drawn by wild Oxen, and eighty Horses, which being loaden with the Baggage, went before, with some of our servants. But when the Ambassadors themselves were to go, and that what belong'd to their Chambers and the Kitchin was to be pack'd up, there were but sixty Horses left for all the rest of the Retinue, which was 94. persons. The *Mehemandar* swore by the head of his King (which is the greatest Oath among the *Persians*) that he could not possibly find any more, telling us, that while we were within the Government of the *Sulthan* of *Derbent*, whom, without any occasion, we must needs disoblige, we were not to hope any better treatment, but that as soon as we were come within the Government of *Scamachie*, we should not want any thing requisite for the prosecution of our journey, if in the mean time we could pluck up a good heart, and set our selves once in the way.

1636. Hence it came, that upon the 22. of *December* we were forc'd to depart, some on Horſe-back, ſome behind them, and the reſt, to wit, the Lacqueys, the Guards, and the Soldiers, a-foot. Our way lay South-ward along the *Caspian* Sea, and we croſs'd that day four ſmall Rivers. The firſt place we Lodg'd at was the Village of *Mordon*, within the Government of *Scamachy*, ſomewhat above four Leagues from *Niaſabath*. The houſes there were all round, and built up of Ozier and Canes, as thoſe of the *Tartars*. The Inhabitants call them *Ottak*. The nights were cold enough, and there was no Wood in the Village, ſo that we ſpent our time there uneaſily enough, eſpecially thoſe, who had wetted themſelves by going through the water a-foot.

The Ambassadors leave Niaſabath.

Padars. a people.

The word *Mordon* ſignifies a Fen, and the Village derives its name from the Fenny places which lye about it, wherein there are many Springs, which ſend forth their water with ſuch violence, that there is no cold ſo great as to congeal them. Whence it comes, that there are abundance of Swans there, even in the Winter, whoſe down is gather'd for the *Sophy's* Beds and Pillows. This Village is inhabited by a certain people whom they call *Padars*, who have their particular language, though with ſome relation to the *Turkiſh* and *Persian*. Their Religion is the *Mahumetane*, inclining to the *Turkiſh*, but accompany'd beſides with infinite Superſtitions. Among others they have this, that they leave their meat after it is dreſſed, to grow almoſt cold before they eat it, and if it happen that any one, ignorant of their cuſtoms, ſhould blow or breath upon it, they caſt it away as impure.

The Ambaſſador *Brugman* ſent for the *Kaucha* or Bayly of *Niaſabath*, and complain'd to him of the ill Offices done us by the *Sulthan* of *Derbent*, in not allowing the Carriage neceſſary for the proſecution of our Voyage; inſomuch that he was oblig'd to ſee ſome part of his Retinue, whom he lov'd as his own eyes, go a-foot, and likely to miſcarry by the way, of which proceeding he ſhould give the *Sophy* a full accompt as ſoon as he came to Court. The *Kaucha* made answer, that it muſt needs be, the *Sulthan* knew not we had ſo much Baggage; but ſaid withall, that he could not imagine what pleaſure we took in carrying along with us Sails, braſs Guns, and Carriages, which could only put us to trouble, and retard our journey, and that if the Ambaſſador did put up his complaints, the *Sulthan* for his part would eaſily find out wayes to juſtifie himſelf. The next day, our *Mehemandar* brought us twenty horſes more, ſo that having leſſen'd our Baggage by certain Cheſts and uſeleſs Veſſels, which were ordered to be broken, we made a ſhift to ſet all our people on Horſe-back. We travell'd that day three leagues, and came at night to the Village of *Tachouſi*, which lies in a bottom, and hath very handſome Houſes.

They lodge in a Caravanſera.

The 24. we got three Leagues further, and came to the high Mountain of *Barmach*, at the foot whereof we took up our quarters, in a great Court, which was all open, and had only the four bare Walls. The *Persians* call thoſe places *Caravanſeras*, and they are as the *Ventas* in *Spain*, and ſerve for Inns upon the High-way, in the deſerts of *Persia*. They are within a dayes Journey one of another, for the greater convenience of Travellers, who are oblig'd to bring along with them Proviſions and Forrage for Horſe and Man, for you find in them, at the beſt, but Chambers and Halls, and thoſe not furniſh'd with any thing, and have only a Roof to keep you dry.

The Waggoners and Mule-drivers of *Derbent* made a ſhew as if they would have return'd, and have left us there, to ſtay till other conveniences of Riding and Carriage were brought us from *Schamachie*: but finding, on the other ſide, that the Ambaſſadors had ordered the Drums to be beaten to bring their people together, and that command was iſſued out that all ſhould march a-foot, and abandon the Baggage, to be made good at their perils who refus'd to ſupply them with neceſſary carriages, they chang'd their reſolution, and ſtaid.

The *Caravanſera* was a very antient ſtructure, all built with large Free-ſtones, being forty two paces ſquare. Over the Gate, there were two Chambers, where we found certain Inſcriptions and *Hebrew* Letters, and ſome Characters, which none in the company could either read or comprehend.

The 25. being *Chriſtmas* day, we did our Devotions in the great Stable which was appointed for the Camels; which done, ſome of our retinue had the curioſity to go and take a view of the Mountain, induc'd thereto by the maraculous relations which the *Persians* had made us thereof by the way.

The Mountain of Barmach.

This Mountain lies within a quarter of a League of the *Caspian* Sea, and, by reaſon of its extraordinary height, is ſeen at a very great diſtance. It is in a manner round, having on the very top of it a great Rock ſtreight up, and very ſteepy of all ſides, from which it hath the name of *Barmach*, that is, *finger*: becauſe it looks like a finger ſtretch'd out above the other adjacent Mountains. We underſtood ſince, that there is a path, which will commodiouſly enough bring one to the top of it, but we knew it not then, ſo that we ran great hazard of our Lives in getting up by dreadful precipices.

It was ſo cold upon the Mountain, that the Graſs, which was high enough there, was all cover'd with a white froſt as with Sugar-candy, whereas at the foot of the Mountain, near the

CARA-

*Caravanfera*, the weather was fair and mild. Upon the edge of the Mountain, and at the foot of the Rock, there is a plain of about fifty perches square, which hath in the midt of it, a very fair Well, built about with stone, and about that Well may be seen the ruins of a very thick Wall, flank'd at the corners with certain Towers and Bulwarks, wherewith that structure had sometime been fortify'd, as also with two good deep ditches built about with Free-stone, which satisfy'd us they were the ruins of an impregnable Fortrefs. Towards the Northern part of the Mountain, we met with other ruins, which could be no other than the remainders of another Fort. They facilitated our access to an ascent, which was cut in the Rocks, and conducted us almost up to the Top, where we saw a Vault, and the remainder of a third Structure, which had sometimes serv'd for a Dungeon, or place of retreat, after the loss of the two other Forts. 1636.

I imagine that this may have been one of those Fortifications, which the Antients called *Porta Caspia*, or *Ferrea*, whereof there is a description in the Greek and Latin Histories. The *Persians* are of opinion, that these structures were built by *Iscander*, so they call *Alexander the Great*, and that they were demolish'd by *Tamberlane*. We rested our selves upon the Rock, where we sung *Te Deum*, and renew'd among our selves the friendship, which we had before mutually promis'd each other by most unfeigned protestations: and having gather'd certain Figs off the Trees, which grew out of the clefts of the Rock, we got down again with less trouble and danger, by the ordinary path. *Ruins of Fortresses.*

The 26. we left *Barmach*, having very fair weather, the Sun casting at that time a greater heat than it does with us in *May*. The Waggon, with the Baggage, took the way of the plain towards *Bakuje*, and the Ambassadors, with those of the retinue, who were on Horseback, took that of the Mountain. We Travell'd that day five leagues, and came at night to a Village named *Chanega*, within the Mountains. There, we met with abundance of excellent Fruits, and good store of Honey; but the water thereabouts was troubled, corrupted, and stunk.

The next day, *Decemb. 27.* we got five Leagues further, to a Village named *Pyrmaras*, three Leagues from *Scamachie*. This place is very famous, by reason of one of their Saints named *Seid-Ibrahim*, whose Sepulchre is to be seen there. The *Persians* affirm it to be very ancient, and so great a Veneration had for it, that *Tamberlane*, who had no religious respect for any thing, would not meddle with that Sepulchre, though he destroy'd all else that lay in his way. This structure hath its Walls, and its two Courts, as a Castle. Our Ambassadors sent the *Mehemandar* to the Guardian of the place, to entreat him, that they might be permitted to enter; but all they could obtain, was only to see the first Court, which was full of square stones, which were set up-an-end, to distinguish the Graves of private Persons. *The Sepulchre of a Persian Saint.*

I had a great desire to get a little nearer, and, if it were possible, to see the Saint's Sepulchre. Whereupon, I return'd thither in the Evening, and set down in my Table-Book the Inscriptions, which I found Grav'd here and there upon the Walls. The *Persians*, who imagin'd what I did was in honour of their Saint, suffer'd me to proceed in what I was about. I made my advantage of that liberty to slip in at the Gate of the second Court, where I found many other Inscriptions. I bestow'd about half an hour in Copying them out, and perceiving they took no further notice of me, I ventur'd so far as to open the Door which goes into the structure it self, which being made fast only with a wooden pin, it was no hard matter for me to open it, and to get in. It consisted of many arched apartments, which had no light, but what came in by certain little Windows, which put me into a little fright. In the first apartment, there was, just opposite to the door, a Tomb about two foot high, having as many steps to get up to it, and it was encompass'd with a Balcony, or rather an Iron-grate. *The Sepulchre described.*

On the left hand, there was a door which led into a great and very lightsome Gallery, the walls whereof were whitened, and the floor cover'd with rich Carpets. On the right hand, there were, in another apartment, which was Vaulted, eight high Tombs: and it was through this last Vault, that people pass'd into a third, in which was the Sepulchre of *Seid-Ibrahim*. The Tomb was two foot above ground, and was cover'd with a Carpet of yellow Damask. At the head and feet, as also on both sides, there were several Wax Candles and Lanthorns, upon great brass Candlesticks, and from the Roof of the Vault there hung certain Lamps. As I came out of this place, I met with our Minister, who express'd so great a desire to go into it, that I ventur'd once more to go in along with him; and he went in thither a second time along with our Physician.

About two Musket shot from the Village, on the East-side, there is to be seen, in a Rock, the Sepulchre of another Saint, which is very sumptuously built. The *Persians* call the Saint who is interr'd in that place *Tiribabba*, and they affirm he was Master to *Seid-Ibrahim*, who had so great an Affection, and so particular a Reverence for him, that he made it his request to God, that he would vouchsafe, that, after his Death, he might be seen in the same posture as he was wont to put himself into, when he did his Devotions in his Life time; and that accordingly he is to be seen at this day clad in a grey Garment kneeling, which was his ordinary gesture when

1636. when he said his Prayers, while he lived. Which a man need make no great difficulty to believe; if there may be any credit given to what is affirmed by *Camerarius*, in his *Historical Meditations*, after *Varro*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to wit, that the Bodies of the *Persians* are not corrupted, and that they are only dry'd up: I am of opinion, that this is to be understood only of such Bodies as are not interr'd, but expos'd to the Air, nay it is further requisite they should be Bodies brought very low either by age or sickness: for full Bodies are subject to corruption, in *Persia* as well as other places

These two places are very famous by reason of the Pilgrimages upon which the *Persians* resort thither, especially about the time that *Tiribabba* hath a new Garment bestow'd on him, and that the old one is torn to pieces, to be distributed among the Pilgrims. The Inhabitants of the Country relate strange things of the Miracles of these Saints: but in regard they can be no other than Fables, or the effects of Sorcery, and that the *Persians* are very apt to believe any stories, and are very much inclin'd to Sorcery, I thought it more discretion to wave the relation of their impertinences.

Upon the door of this Sepulchre, there was this Inscription in *Arabick* Letters, *Alla mufethi hil ebnad*, that is to say, *O God, open this door*. There are cut within the Rock several Chambers, Neeches, and Holes, in which the Pilgrims are lodg'd and do their Devotions; nay there are some so high, that they must have Ladders of 12. or 15. foot long to get up to them.

There were three of us ventur'd to get up to the top of the Rock by dreadful precipices, helping one the other as we got up. There we found four spacious Chambers, and, within, several Neeches cut in the Rock, to serve for Beds. But what we thought most strange was, that we found in that Vault, upon the very top of the Mountain, Muscle-shels, and in some places such abundance of them, as would induce a man to imagine, that the Rock was made up of sand and shels. In our return from *Persia*, we observ'd all along the *Caspian* Sea, several of these Shelly Mountains. whereof we shall give a further account hereafter.

Shels in mountains far from the Sea.

The Inhabitants of this Village of *Pymaraas* never drink any Wine, out of a fear, as they say themselves, that, breaking the Laws of *Mahomet* and the Directions of the *Alchoran*, the Holiness of the place might be thereby prophan'd. At the entrance of the Village, near the Sepulchre of *Seid-Ibrahim* there is a great Vault, or Cestern of 52. foot in length and twenty in breadth, compass'd with a wall of Free-stone, which in the Winter time they fill with Water, Snow and Ice, to be us'd in the great heats and drought of Summer, as well for themselves as their Cattel.

The 29. the *Chan* sent us word, that we might send our Harbinger to *Schamachie*, to take up Lodgings for us, and that we might follow him in the afternoon. But after we had loaded part of our Baggage, and just as we were going to take Horse, the *Chan* sent an express Messenger to us, to intreat us to continue that night at *Pymaraas*. And that we might be assur'd, this was not done out of any design upon us, he sent us several refreshment, and among other things, four great Pitchers, and two Leathern baggs full of Wine, good store of Pomegranates, Apples, Pears, Quinces and Chest-nuts, and to each of the Ambassadors an excellent Horse saddled and bridled. We could not then imagine what might occasion this delay; but it was told us afterward, that the *Minatzim*, or Astrologer, belonging to the *Chan*, had perswaded him, that that day was not a fortunate day to receive strangers in.

The superstition of the Persians.

The reception of the Ambassadors at Schamachie.

The next day, Dec. 30. we left *Pymaraas*, about eight in the Morning, taking our way straight to *Schamachie*, into which we made a very noble entrance. Within two leagues of the City, we met with one afoot, who came to tell us, from the *Chan*, that we were welcom, and that he would come out of the City in person to receive us. This man march'd on still in the front of our Cavalcade. Within a league of the City, we met with about thirty Gentlemen on horse-back, very well mounted, who came only to take a view of us, and immediately return'd, in full speed, to the City. After this, we met, near a certain Village, with about a hundred men on horse-back, who open'd, to make us way to pass through them.

About two Musket-shot thence we met with another Troop of Cavaliers, among whom there were twelve that had a particular Coiffure about their heads, having their Turbants pointed upwards like the Spire of a Steeple, which they call *Takia*; and we were told it was by Privilege that they were so dress'd, it being to signifie that they were of the posterity and kined of their Prophet *Aaly*. These saluted us with a low inclination of the head, and bid us welcome, by saluting us with their *Choskeldi*, in the *Turkish* Language, which they would rather speak than the *Persian*.

Having kept company with these about half a League, we perceiv'd on our right hand a body of about 500. men; and whereas we were told, that the *Chan* and his *Calenter*, or Lieutenant, were there in person, it was taken into consideration, whether we should keep on in the High-way, or turn aside and make towards them. The Ambassador *Brugman* would have had us keep on in the High-way, which led streight to the City, alleging that it was the *Chan's* duty, who receiv'd us, and who ought to be his own Master of the Ceremonies, to come to us. But

our

our *Mehomandar*, and others of the Company assuring us, that the High-way was very deep and dirty, and that the fields were more fit for the reception of the Ambassadors, and the Complements and Ceremonies occasion'd thereby, they prevail'd with us, so that we went straight towards the *Chan*, who stay'd for us upon a little Hill, and advanc'd towards the Ambassadors, as soon as he perceiv'd them coming up. He had on his right hand six men, very proper persons, Arm'd with gilt Bows and Arrows; on his left, as many of his Guard, with their Muskets, and after him came a very great number of Gentlemen on Horse-back, very well mounted, and clad in Garments of *Brocado*, and Mantles and Caps embroider'd with Gold and Silver. Being come up to us, he would needs do our Nation the greatest honour imaginable, which was by taking the Ambassadors one after the other by the hand, contrary to the custom of the *Persians*. The first Complements over, he commanded Wine to be pour'd into a silver Vessel, drunk to the Ambassadors, and oblig'd each of them to pledge him twice.

1636.  
The Chan  
of Schuna-  
che meets  
the Am-  
bassadors.

The *Calenter*, and *Muscovian Postanick*, *Alexei Saminouts*, who were about the *Chan*, bid us also heartily welcom, and took us by the hand.

As we march'd along, we had before us our loud Musick, which consisted in Hawboyes, Timbrels, Cornets, and Tabours, but particularly in a kind of Instrument, called *Kerrenai*. These are made somewhat like our Hawboyes, save that they are of Brass, being above eight foot in length, and at the extremity, above two foot Diameter. There were four of these Instruments, and those who play'd on them made a halt ever and anon, and stood in a Circle as our Trumpeters, holding up the end of their *Kerrenai* to the sky, and making a noise, which hath not only nothing of harmony in it. but is more like a dreadful howling than any thing of Musick. There were also common Hawboyes, which they call *Surnatzi*, and earthen Timbrels, made like our Butter-pots. Having march'd on a little way in this Company, the *Chan* ordered all to make a second halt, that the Ambassadors might drink, causing in the mean time, a certain Buffoon, or Jester, one of those whom they call *Tazusch*, to make wry-faces, and shew a thousand postures. He also used Castagnets, and sung very pleasant songs.

Within a quarter of a League of the City, there was a body or battalion of above two thousand foot, most *Armenians*. This battalion consisted of five Regiments, distinguish'd one from the other by so many Colours, which were fasten'd to the top of a great and long Pole, so as that it was as much as a man could do to carry one of them. They had their particular musick, consisting of Pipes and other Instruments, one whereof was very remarkable, and consisted of two brass Basins, which they struck one against the other. All these people bid us also very welcome, and expres'd their joy at our arrival, some by clapping their hands, others by turning their Caps about their heads, or flinging them up into the air. There the Governour commanded a third halt to be made, that the Ambassadors might drink once more. Coming near the City-Gate, we were entertain'd with another band of musick, consisting of Timbrells, Hawboyes, Trumpets, and other Instruments, which joyning with those of our Company made such a noyse as would have drown'd Thunder it self.

The *Chan* invited the Ambassadors with the chiefest of their Retinue to Supper, and made them cross the Court on horse-back, till they came to the Lodgings into which they were to go; but the Gentlemen, and the rest of the Retinue were oblig'd to alight at the outer Gate. The floors of all the Chambers were cover'd with very rich Tapistry. The *Persians* took off their shoes before they went into the Chambers; which put us to so much the greater trouble, in that being all, in riding-boots, we durst not venture to go in, till some of the *Chans* Domesticks took some of the more forward by the hand and brought them in; without putting us to the trouble of pulling off our Boots.

We pass'd through three very fair Chambers, and were brought into a spacious Hall very sumptuously furnish'd, and hung with excellent pieces of Painting, representing those parts which are not commonly seen naked. In the midst of the Hall, there was a Fountain, the cast of the water representing the form of a Glas. They had set, to cool, all about the Fountain, several silver Flaggons, and Bottles of Wine; and there were several Tables cover'd with all sorts of Conserves, The Governour knowing we were not accustomed to sit down after the *Persian* way, had caused seats to be made, and the more to oblige the Ambassadors, he sat down, after our way of sitting, opposite to the Fountain, causing the Ambassadors to sit down on his right hand, and on his left, but upon the ground, the *Calenter* or Lieutenant, the *Mi-narjchim* or Astrologer, his Physician, and several other persons of Quality. The Gentlemen and Officers belonging to the Ambassadors sat down on the floor, the other side of the Hall.

Allows  
them seats,  
contrary to  
the custom.

The *Musicians* stood before the *Chan*. At the entrance of the Hall there were several young men, very handsome persons, having on Garments of *Brocado*, with their Bows and Arrows in the posture of shooting. All that were in the Hall, whether sitting or standing, had their backs to the Wall, and their faces towards the *Chan* and the company, so as that not one had his back turn'd to another, according to the ordinary custom, which they observe in all their Assemblies.



1636. There were brought to the Company several little Tables cover'd with Fruits and Conserves, to be serv'd to two at a time, while two Pages went round the Hall to fill Wine, it being all they had to do, unless it were, when they had ended one round, to begin another. After every one had eaten some few Conserves, they were taken away, and the like Tables were cover'd with a very fine Cotton-cloath of several colours, to serve the Meat upon. About an hour after, the Meat was taken away, and Conserves were served up again, and after that began the Preparatives for Supper. The little Tables were taken away, that the whole Hall might be cover'd, upon the Tapistry, with great pieces of Linnen, which were to serve for a kind of Table-cloath. The Butler having done his duty, the Carver comes in with a great Wooden Dish full of a certain thin bak'd Pait. The *Persians* call it *Fucha*, and every piece is above three foot in length, and as many in breadth. He cast one of them to every one of the Company, to serve instead of a Napkin. That done, the Meat was brought in, in great Pewter Dishes, which were set in the midst of the Hall, where the *Suffretzi*, or Carver, kneeling down, cut it into pieces, and dispos'd it into little Dishes, whereof every one had one brought him.

The services of the Feast.

A strange sort of Napkins.

All the Guests had every one standing by them a *Tulsdan*, or Pot to spet in, made as our Chamber-pots, save that the mouth is narrower; and they make use of them instead of a Basin to spet in, as also to put in the bones, parings, and cores of fruits, and other superfluities, which might injure the Tapistry or the floor.

We had Musick, while we were at Meal. The Musick consisted of Lutes and Viols, very poorly plaid on; as also of Tabours and Voices, which made a wretched kind of Harmony. The two Pages who had fill'd the Wine at the Collation, danc'd to the sound of all these Instruments: so that they seem'd as if they would give us a taste of the delights of the Terrestrial Paradise, after the hardship we had suffer'd since our coming from *Moscon*. The Governour's Palace lyeth upon the ascent of a little Hill, whence might be discover'd all the houses about the City; and he had commanded all the Inhabitants to set a row of Lamps in their windows, which represented to our eyes above twenty thousand Stars, enough to dispel the greatest darkness of the night, and added much to the divertisement, which they endeavour'd to give all our senses, while the Musick of the Hawboyes and Timbrels made all the Rampiers of the City to resound again.

The Chan an excellent Marksman.

One of the company kills himself with drinking Aquavitæ.

The Governour, desirous to let the Ambassadors see how expert he was in shooting, bid them observe one of the Lamps that stood near them, to see whether he struck it out with the first Musket-shot: which he did twice together, without missing any one time. This Feast having lasted till it was somewhat late in the night, and that we began to think it a little cold, the Governour carry'd us into another Room with a fire in it, where he call'd for Conserves, Wine, and Aquavitæ, which the *Persians* were so greedy of, that one of them, a person of quality, who never had drunk any before, and would needs do it out of compliance to us, took so much of it, that the next day he was found dead in his bed.

After this treatment, which lasted till midnight, the *Chan* permitted us to withdraw, and assign'd us Lodging among the *Armenians*, because they were *Christians*; but in regard our Hosts had had no notice of our coming, and that our Baggage was not yet arriv'd, we found neither Beds, nor Benches, nor Tables, so that after so good a Supper, we had a very ill night of it.

The last day of *December*, the *Chan* sent the Ambassadors several refreshments, Wine, wild Fowl, and other Provisions. The *Calenter* or Lieutenant ordered to be allow'd us for our daily Provision, seventeen Sheep, twenty Pullers, a hundred Eggs, a certain quantity of Salt, and Bread, fifty quarts of Wine, and twenty burthens of Wood. This was very punctually observ'd for the four or five first dayes; but the *Mehemander* being oblig'd to get in these Provisions out of the neighbouring Villages, which he could not so procure but that it was sometimes three or four dayes ere we could get our allowance, the *Chan* sent us word, that it were more for our convenience to send to the Market for our Provisions, and that we might be assur'd, that what we laid out should be reimburs'd at our departure thence. To that purpose, he caus'd it to be Proclaim'd by sound of Trumper, that all Provisions should be sold to the *Frenqui* (for so they call the *Germans*, as well as the *French*, *Italians*, and *Spaniards*) at a reasonable rate.

We continu'd three full moneths at *Scannachie*, expecting orders from the Court for our expence, and the prosecution of our journey. The Governour and *Calenter* endeavour'd what they could, in the mean time, to make this long stay of ours there the less tedious by the continual entertainments they made us, as also by the divertisements of Hunting, and the Visits they often gave the Ambassadors, together with the frequent Presents they sent them of Wine, wild-fowl, and fruits.

M. D. C. XXXVII.

We began this year with the Ceremonies of the *Persian* Gentleman's Enterrment, who had kill'd

kill'd himself by his excessive drinking of Aquavita, at the first Entertainment, which the Governour had given us, the day of our arrival. We shall have occasion hereafter to speak of the Ceremonies of their Enterrments, and therefore shall give no further account of it here, than that ordinarily the Bodies are carried into the *Metzid*, *Mosquey* or Church, whence they are afterwards transported to *Babylon*, *Kusa*, or *Netschef*, to be interr'd near their Prophet *Aaly*, or near some other of their *Imans*, or Saints. 1637.

January 2. the Governour and the *Calenter* visited the Ambassadors, and brought along with them, Conserves and Wine, for the Collation. The *Chan's* design was, to hear our Musick, whereof he had heard much talk; and accordingly, he was so taken therewith, that he importun'd the Ambassadors to go and sup with him at the Castle, and to bring their Musick along with them. It consisted of a Violin, a Base-Viol, a Bandore, and a Voice. The Ambassadors would at first have put him off, but his instances were such, that they could not possibly do it; insomuch that we pass'd away the remainder of that day, in the same Divertisements as he had entertain'd us with the first day of our arrival. Only there was this extraordinary, that the Governour ordered to be brought out of the Stable some of his best Horses, to the number of twenty seven, among which there were three, which the *Sophy* had sent him, not long before, as so many assurances of his favour. He caus'd one of the Gentlemen belonging to his Chamber to mount them all, and to take several turns thereon about the Hall, though the floor were cover'd with very rich Tapistry.

Jan. 5. the *Chan* sent the Ambassadors word, that if they were desirous to be present, the next day, at the Ceremonies performed by the *Armenians* at the Consecration of their Holy-water, at which he should himself be in person, he would order a particular place to be kept for them. The *Armenians* call this feast *Chatscha Schuran*, that is the Baptism of the Cross.

The Ceremonies are performed without the City, near a Bridge called *Puli Amberi*. The *Armenians* celebrate this Feast, as do also the *Muscovites* and some other *Christians*, upon the sixth of January, which is the day of the *Epiphany*, or appearance of the Star to the Kings or Wise-men. They began it with a Mass, which was said betimes in the morning before day. After Mass there was a Sermon preach'd, the former being said in a manner with the same Ceremonies as the *Roman-Catholicks* do it in *Europe*. The Ambassadors, whose Lodgings were near the Chapel of the *Armenians*, made no difficulty to be present at both Mass and Sermon, and after the latter, they were Complemented by the Bishop who had Preach'd it, and who came purposely for that Exercise, from the place of his ordinary residence. *The Armenians bless the Water on Twelfth-day.*

He gave them to understand by an Interpreter, how glad he was to see their Devotions honour'd by the Presence of Persons of that quality, since it could be no small comfort to them, to see in their Churches *European* Christians, who had never come into them before. Whereto he added, that their Excellencies the Ambassadors knew not who he was, but that he should find a time to acquaint them therewith: from which Discourse of his we infer'd, that he was some Missionary of the *Pope's*, sent into these parts, to endeavour the Re-union of the *Greek* Church with the *Roman*. *The Ambassadors assist at their Service.*

He further intreated the Ambassadors, to use their Mediation to the Governour, that they might be permitted to carry on the building of a Monastery, which the *Armenians* had begun; which they promised to do.

About noon the *Armenians*, by order from the Governour, brought us fifteen Horses, upon which we rode to the River, which is about half a League from the City. Those poor people, who were come to the City from all the adjacent Villages, went out of it in Procession, with abundance of Images, Crosses and Banners, guarded to the River-side by a strong party of Soldiers, which the Governour had assign'd them, for their Protection against the injuries and affronts of the *Mussulmans*, or *Mahumetans*, who make it their sport to abuse them. The Governour had caus'd a Tent to be pitch'd over against the place, where the Consecration was to be performed, very richly hung with Tapistry, and had ordered a sumptuous Collation to be made ready in it. There were on his left hand the *Muscovian* *Poslanick*, and a great number of Gentlemen, and the right he had kept void for the Ambassadors, and some of their retinue. After he had receiv'd us, and made us sit down, he commanded the *Armenians* to begin their Ceremonies. As soon as they begun Reading, at the River-side, four men, stark naked, leap'd into the water, and swum up and down for a certain time, to open the water, which was a little frozen over. One of our Spaniels, which was wont to go into the water, leap'd in after them: which found the *Persians* excellent sport, who look upon a Dog as so unclean a kind of Creature, that they would not willingly one should touch them; insomuch that they laugh'd to see the Ceremonies of the *Armenians* prophan'd by our Water-Dog; though indeed they look on all those poor people do as so much mummery. Only the Governour himself makes his advantage thereof, inasmuch as the pains he takes to be present thereat, and consequently to protect those of that Profession, brings him in yearly a Present of a thousand Crowns from their Churches. *The Ceremonies of the Armenians in consecrating the Water.*

After

1637. After the Bishop had read for an hour or better, and the Assembly given over singing and playing on the Timbrels, he pour'd a little Consecrated Oyl into the Water, into which he afterwards dipp'd a little Cross beset with abundance of Precious Stones, and at last, holding his Crosier over the Water, he gave it his Benediction.

After that Ceremony, all the *Armenians* took of it, some to drink, others to wash their faces withall. There were some among them cast themselves into it, but most took only so much of it as to sprinkle their faces therewith. Some of the Governours Domesticks made it their sport to dash the Priests and the Women, nay some were so uncivil with them, that the *Chan* himself was asham'd of it, and oblig'd to command them to forbear their rudenesses: though he himself made his Jester and others of his Servants Dance, purposely to abuse the *Armenians*, who Danced about their Bishop. The Governours Phylician, who was an *Arabian* born, and a person of no Religion, had the Impudence to ask the Ambassadors, what they thought of *Jesus Christ*, and whether they believ'd him to be the Son of God. Answer was made him, that they believ'd him to be the True God, but that it was uncivilly done of the Phylician to laugh at their Religion, and that they were not come thither to dispute it with him.

All the Ceremonies being over, they fell very seriously a-drinking, and the Governour took his Liquor so liberally, that being well nigh Drunk, he left the Company, and got on Horse-back, without taking leave of any one. All the rest of the *Persians* follow'd him; which we were so much the more surpriz'd at, inasmuch as, not acquainted with their custom, we could not imagine what should be the reason of his going away: Being got on Horse-back, in order to our return for the City, we met with the Governour, who staid for the Ambassadors not far from the Tent. We understood afterwards, and indeed found it by exprience, that the *Persians* think it not much, to rise from Table, and go their ways, without making Excuse or Complement to those by whom they were entertain'd, who for their parts take the same privilege to do the like with those whom they had invited, when they find themselves in such a condition as that they are not able to keep them company any longer. Of this we had many instances, during our aboad in *Persia*, and that sometimes, at the *Schach's* own Table.

January 9. the *Armenian* Bishop gave the Ambassadors a Visir. He came to their Lodgings with the Cross and Banner, having many Priests marching before him, who were all in their Pontifical Robes, with Wax-Candles in their hands. As they came into the Court, they fell a singing and playing on their Timbrels, Hawboies, and little Bells, and brought us a present of two Pitchers of Wine, and a dish of Apples, in the midst whereof they had planted a Wax-Candle lighted. They were above three hours in discourse with the Ambassadors, concerning the business of their Religion, and when they took leave of them, they re-iterated the intreaty they had made to them before, of employing their intercession to the Governour, for the building of their Church.

The Calenter's Feast. Jan. 10. The *Calenter*, or King's Lieutenant, entertain'd the Ambassadors and all their retinue at a very great Feast: but before we sat down, he would needs give us the satisfaction to see his Palace, which was incomparably both better built and furnish'd than the Governour's. The Hall, where we were to Dine, was all arched and set out with a certain Plaister-work done in Leaves and Branches, which argu'd much the Ingenuity of the Inventor. The Hall looked into a very spacious and very fair Garden; the situation whereof, we thought so much the more advantageous, in that the Hall being high, and the Garden very low, it might be all seen out of the Windows thereof. On one side of the Hall there was a Gallery, out of which issu'd a Fountain, which casting its water at first very high, charm'd us with a low, but delightful noise, which the water thereof made by falling into another lower Basin opposite to a Chamber under the Hall, and thence into a third which was in the midst of the Garden. The Governour, who was also at this entertainment, with the chiefest of his Courtiers, had brought thither along with him the Marshal of the *Sophy's* Court, who was then newly come from *Ispahan*. The Feast lasted till night, which being somewhat dark the *Persians* brought us to our Quarters with Torches: though they themselves were so well furnish'd, as to stand in need of conductors, at least as much as we did.

The Ambassadors Presents to the Chan. The 18. of *January*, the Ambassadors sent the Steward of their Household, the Secretary of the Embassy, and the Controller, to the *Chan*, to make him the ordinary Present, which was, ten Ells of Scarlet, five Ells of blew Satin, a Barrel of Aquavitæ, a Chest, or Cellar, in which they sent him two dozen Bottles of all sorts of Spirits of Wine, and two pair of Knives, the havis whereof were of Amber. This Present put him into so good an Humour, that we thought it a seasonable time, to present to him the Petition of the *Armenians*, concerning the Building of their Church.

The Governour permits the Armenians to build a Church. In answer to which, he told us, that although, ever since the establishment of the *Mahumetan* Religion in *Persia*, the *Christians* never were permitted to build a Church at *Schannachie*, and that accordingly, it never had been his intention to suffer the *Armenians* to build any; yet such was the respect he had for the Intercession of the Ambassadors in their behalf, that they might

might assure themselves, he would no longer oppose it: and that they might have no occasion to doubt his reality herein, he would needs have the Orders for that purpose dispatch'd in their presence. 1637.

The *Armenians* were so over-joy'd thereat, that, not thinking it enough to give the Ambassadors their humblest thanks, they promised so to order things, that their intended Structure should acquaint posterity with their Names, and the Good Offices they had done them upon that occasion.

Jan. 20. came back the Courier, or Expres, whom the *Chan* had sent to *Ispahan*, even before we left *Niasabath*; upon which the Ambassadors sent to him, to desire him to communicate to them the Orders of the Court, concerning the prosecution of their Journey. Answer was made us, that he had not receiv'd any new Orders at all, and that, if we desired it, we might hear the Letter read, which he thereupon gave his Physician to read. The Physician, a person the fittest in the World to represent a Fool in a play, after he had kiss'd the Letter, put it to his forehead, and at last read it. The Contents of it, at least what he read, was to this effect; That the Expres from the *Sulthan* of *Derbent* being come to the Court, before him whom the *Chan* of *Schamachie* had sent, all the account he had brought, was, that there was arriv'd at *Derbent* an Envoy, or *Postanick*, from the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, who had reported, that, within a few days, there would come into those parts certain Ambassadors from one of the Princes of *Germany*: That the *Schach*, who had receiv'd no other account of their arrival, thought it enough to order the Governour of *Derbent* to receive them, to entertain them kindly, during the stay they should make there, and to supply them with all things for the continuation of their journey, as far as *Schamachie*, and that when they were come thither, the *Chan* of *Schamachie* should send an Expres to give an account thereof to the Court, from which he should immediately receive orders what to do, as well in respect of the maintenance of the Ambassadors, as their departure thence. The *Chan* demanded of us a Catalogue of the names and qualities of all of our Retinue; nay, he would have had it express'd in the said Catalogue, what Professions they were of, and that we should not fail setting down, that we had among us a Physician, a Chyrurgeon, a Painter, and Musicians; which we would not do; but thought it sufficient, to give them, in writing, only the names of our people, and the Offices, and employments they were in, upon the account of the Embassy. We had a great suspicion that the said Letter came not from the Court, and that there was somewhat more or less in it, and the more to be assur'd of it, we got the Courier to come the next day to our quarters. The Wine we gave him, and the small Presents which were secretly made him, unlock'd the man's breast, and drew out the whole secret. He told us, upon promise of secrecy, that the Governours Brother, having been, not long before executed, and that misfortune having, in some measure, engag'd the whole Family in the disgrace of the deceas'd, there was not any man durst undertake the delivery of his Letter to the *Sophy*, as being ignorant what the contents thereof might be: but that after a moneths delay, one of the Kings Chamberlains having ventured to lay it at his Majesties feet, the *Sofi* would make no answer at all thereto, but ordered another to write to him, and sent him word, that there was no answer to be made to his Letter, by reason of the orders sent to the *Sulthan* of *Derbent*, which were contain'd in the Letter, whereof we had heard the reading. That it was not thought fit to add any thing thereto, but an express command to the Governour, to see cut to pieces in his presence all those *Persians* that durst affront or injure the *Germans*, during the stay they should make in his Government. So that we were forc'd to stay there, in expectation of what orders the *Sophy* should send, upon the Dispatches, which the *Chan* was then sending to the Court by an Expres. The Schach's orders for the Ambassadors.

Jan. 25. the Governour accompany'd by the *Postanick*, and a great number of Courtiers; gave the Ambassadors a Vilit; but in regard their *Lent* was already begun he would not participate of our Collation, and so having heard our Musick, he return'd to his own Palace.

Jan. 28. the *Muscovian Postanick* went for *Ispahan*, not well satisfy'd with the treatment he had receiv'd from the Governour and *Calenter*. All the revenge he could take was upon the *Meheandar*, who had been assign'd to Conduct him, taking any occasion to affront and abuse him. Some of our Retinue accompany'd him a League out of the City, where they took leave of him. The Muscovian Envoy leaves Schamachie.

February the fifth, walking abroad with some of our company, we went into a great house near the Market-place, which they call *Basar*. It was a very noble Structure, having many Galleries and Chambers, like a College. Meeting up and down with several persons, some antient, some young, some walking, some sitting, with books in their hands, we had the curiosity to enquire what place it was, and found that it was a School or College, which they called *Mandresa*, of which kind there are very many all over *Persia*. FEBRU. A College for the instruction of Youth.

While we were viewing the Structure, one of their *Maderis*, or Regents, who read publick Lectures, intreated us to come near him, and perceiving that I had caus'd to be graven upon a Cane

1637. Cane I walk'd with all these words in Arabick, *Bismi alla, rahman rachim*, that is, *in the name of the merciful God who sheweth mercy* ( a sentence which the *Persians* put at the beginning of their writings ) he desired me to bestow it on him, upon a promise that he would give me a better the next day : but finding I made some difficulty to part with it, he cut out the word *alla*, which in their Language is the proper name of God, and put what he had cut off in a piece of clean paper, very gently and carefully, and told me, the name of God ought not to be written upon a walking stick, which was many times thrust into the dirt.

The next day I went again to the same College, whether I had caus'd to be brought along with me a very fair Celestial Globe, but, by mistake, I went to another School, where nevertheless they receiv'd me very kindly. The Professors and Regents, as also the Students, very much wondred to see me come with so noble a Globe, and to understand thereby, that Astrology and the Mathematicks were better taught among us than in *Persia*, where they are not yet acquainted with the invention of Globes, and make use only of the Astrolabe, for the instruction of their Students. They took much delight in viewing my Globe, and they nam'd to me in the *Arabian* Language all the Signs of the Zodiack, nay, gave me to understand further, that they knew all the names, and all the significations of most of the other Stars.

A School  
for Children.

Another day, I went into a *Metzid*, or Church, in that part of the Town where we were quarter'd, to see, how they instructed their Children. They were all sate against the Wall, excepting only the *Molla*, or Master of the School, who, with some other aged persons, sate in the midst of the Hall. As soon as they saw me coming in, they invited me to sit down by them. The *Molla*, who had an *Alchoran* in his hand, very fairly written, suffered me to turn it over awhile, which when I had done, he took it back from me, kiss'd it, at the beginning, and would have given it me to kiss also : but I only kiss'd another book I had in my hand, and told him, that, knowing well what book I had my self, I made no difficulty to kiss it, but not understanding what was contained in his book, I should not be too forward to honour it so much. He laugh'd and told me I had done very well. There was among them an *Arabian* named *Chalil*, who was a *Minatun*, or Astrologer, born at *Hetsa*, near *Mecca*, aged about 65. years. He understood Astrology, and read *Euclid* to some of his Disciples. I presently knew the book by the figures in it, and made him some demonstrations, as well as I could express my self in the *Persian* Language : whereat the good old man was so much pleas'd, that desirous, on his part, to shew me what he could do, he took out of his bosom a little brass Astrolabe, and ask'd me, whether I had ever seen the like, or understood the use of it. Whereto having answer'd him, that I understood it very well, and that I had one at my Lodging, he seem'd to be very desirous to see it, which oblig'd me to go home to fetch it, and to bring along with me the Globe, which they wondred very much to see, especially when they understood that I had made it my self. The honest *Arabian* desir'd me to shew him, how I could set down the Degrees so exactly, in regard they have no Instruments wherewith to make their Circles and Degrees. I shew'd him the invention of it, and how in a short time, and with little trouble he might attain thereto, for which discovery, he acknowledg'd himself very much oblig'd to me, inasmuch that ever after, he let slip no occasion, whereby he might assure me of his friendship, expressing it as well by his frequent visits, coming one day with abundance of excellent fruit, and dishes of meat ready dress'd purposely to Dine with me at his own charges, as by his earnest proffers of all the service that lay in his power. He gave me the Longitudes and Latitudes of the chiefest Cities and places of all *Asia*, which I compared with the observations I had my self made thereof, and found them very exact.

The *Molla*, or Master of the *Metzid*, was called *Mahab Aaly*, and was a very young, but mighty good natur'd man, and of an excellent humour, one who did all that lay in his power to serve me, doing me the greatest kindnesses he could upon all occasions, especially in my study of the *Arabian* Tongue. He brought me also acquainted with a certain friend of his, named *Imanculi*, who was an *Ohnbafchi*, or Captain of a Troop of Horse. These two came to see me every day alternately, as well to teach me their Language as to learn mine. Which they did with very great improvement dayly, especially *Imanculi*, who no doubt had in a short time arriv'd to the perfection of it, had it not been for the envy or jealousy of some of our own, which prov'd so great, as to make it suspected, that those poor people had some design to change their Religion : so that they were forc'd to keep out of the way, and for the most part to make their visits in the night. Inasmuch that one day, to wit, *Febr. 11.* being gone to the *Metzid*, to take a Lesson in the Language, there came thither a *Persian* servant, to tell the *Molla*, from the Governour, that he much wondred; how he durst suffer those Christians to come into their Temple, that they had nothing to do there, and that it was his best course to dismiss them. The *Molla* was, at first, a little startled thereat, but upon second thoughts, considering with himself, that the *Persians* are never forbidden the company or conversation of *Christians*, he doubted this was some trick put upon him ; and having taken the servant aside, he understood from him, that it was not the *Chan*, but our Interpreter who had sent him, to hinder my study of the

the Language. The next day, we had such another Message sent us ; but we knew before both the Author and occasion of it, and therefore made no accompt thereof. Some time after, there hapning some difference between the Ambassador *Brugman*, and our Interpreter, he acknowledg'd, that it was by order from his Excellency, that he had sent the said servant, to hinder my learning of the Language. Upon the same accompt was it that the said Ambassador ordered me to reduce *Persia* and *Turkie* into one Map, that so I might be taken off the study of the Language, at least as long as I should be employ'd about that tedious and troublesome piece of work. 1637.

Febr. 7. the Ambassadors were visited by a Monk, a *Roman Catholick*, named *Ambrosio dos Anios*, born at *Lisbon* in *Portugal*. The accompt he gave of himself, was, that he came from *Tiflis* in *Georgia*, which lies about ten dayes journey from *Scamachie*, where he was Prior of a Monastery of the Order of *St. Augustin*, and that he had undertaken that journey out of no other design, than upon the news he had heard, that a Potent Prince of *Germany* had sent a solemn Embassy into *Persia*, and that he could not imagine, it should be upon any accompt so much as the advancement of *Christian Religion* in those parts : That he had been the more willing to be at the trouble of that journey, out of the hope he had, that their Excellencies the Ambassadors, would not take it ill that he had taken the freedom to wait on them ; not only to congratulate their happy arrival in *Persia*, but also to serve them in any thing lay in his power: That he had been seven and twenty years in the Kingdom, and that during so long a Tract of time, he had not been so negligent in inquiring into the affairs of the Countrey, and the humour of the Nation, as that he might not be in some measure serviceable to them in their Negotiation.

We knew not, upon the first proposal, what to imagine of the intentions of this Religious Man, and therefore we thought fit to stand as it were upon our Guard, till that after ten dayes conversation with him, we really found him sincere in all his proceedings, infomuch that we made no difficulty to trust him absolutely in all things. Besides the *Portuguez*, which was his Mother-Tongue, and the *Latine*, in which he entertain'd the Ambassadors, he understood also the *Georgian*, the *Turkish*, and the *Persian* Languages, for the attaining of which last, he gave me many excellent directions.

About this time, many of our people were troubled with burning Feavers, which was a consequence of their abundant drinking of Wine, after the much Water they had been forc'd to drink before. The Vine of *Persia* is very good, but strong, and our people drunk so freely of it, that the Ambassadors were forc'd to forbid the use thereof by a very strict order. There were two and twenty of them kept their Beds at the same time, but by Gods mercy, and through the extraordinary care of the Physician, not one dyed.

The same day, which is, according to the accompt of the *Persians*, the 21. day of *Ramesan*, they celebrated their *Auschur*, or solemn Feast, in memory of *Haly*, their great Saint and Patron. The Ceremonies and Devotions were performed in a House built for that purpose, without the City. The Governour, his *Calenter*, and the other chief Officers, were in a Gallery of the said House, and opposite to the Gallery, there was an open Chair, about eight foot high, which was plac'd under a piece of Linnen Cloath which had been pitch'd there, for the convenience of the *Chatib*, that is, their Prelate, who sat in the said Chair, clad in a blew Garment, which is the Mourning-Colour of that Country. He spent above two hours in reading in a Book, which they call *Machtelnama*, containing the Life and Actions of *Haly*, singing with a loud and dolefull, yet clear and intelligible Voice, and that without any intermission, unless it were when he came to some remarkable Passage, or some Moral Sentence, whereof he only said the first Word, leaving the rest to be sung out by the other Priests, whereof there stood a great number about the Chair. One of those Priests cry'd out at the end of every passage, *Luanet Chudai ber kuschendi Aaly bad*, that is, *Gods Curse be on him who kill'd Haly* : whereto the whole Assembly answer'd, *bisch bad kem bad*, that is, *rather more than less*. When he comes to the passage where *Haly* said to his Children, ( there are some believe he was well skill'd in Judiciary Astrology, and that he fore-saw his own Death ) that he should not live long, and that it would not be long ere he were kill'd by one of his Domesticks, discovering it should be *Abdurraman ibni Meltzem*, upon which the Children, with tears in their eyes, intreat him, to be carefull of his Person, and rather to prevent *Abdurraman*, then suffer them, upon his Death, to become Orphans, destitute of all Comfort, and expos'd to the discretion of their Enemies ; when the *Chatib*, I say, comes to this place, you shall see the *Persians* weep and sob most bitterly ; as they do also when the *Chatib* represents how *Haly* was kill'd in their *Metzid*, as he was at Prayers, and the desolate condition his Children were in upon his Death. When the *Chatib* hath given over Reading, the *Chan* sends him a Garment of Silk, which he immediately puts on, and then there were conducted, in Procession, three Camels carrying Coffins, cover'd with black Cloath, to represent those of *Haly*, and his two Sons, *Hassan* and *Hossein*. After that follow'd two Chests cover'd with blew Cloath, in which were the Books and spiritual Treatises written by *Haly*. Then came two excellent Horses, having at the Pommel of

1637. the Saddles, and upon the Saddles, several Bows, Arrows, Turbants, and Flaggs. After them march'd one man alone, carrying upon the top of a long pole a kind of Tower or Steeple, in which there were thrust four Cimeters, but they were cover'd with so many Ribbons, and other Toyes, that they could hardly be perceived: and at last many men carrying on their Heads little Boxes cover'd with Feathers, and Flowers of several colours, in which the *Alchoran* lay open.

These last Danc'd and Leap'd, in cadence to a certain dolefull Musick, of Hawboyes, Timbrels, Flageolets and Tabors. On the other side, many young Boyes Danc'd and Sung together, clapping one another upon the shoulders, and crying *Heder, Heder*, which is the name of *Haly*, *Hassan*, *Hoffein*; and with these Ceremonies they took their way towards the City. Upon this day the Death of *Haly* is celebrated all over *Persia*: but *Mahomet*, their great Prophet, hath no particular Festival.

The 14. of *February*, was the new Moon, at which ends the Lent of the *Persians*, which began the 16. of *January*, which according to their accompt is the first of *Ramesan*; but in regard it was the eve of their Sabbath, which is Friday, their Ecclesiasticks thought fit to continue the Fast till that day. The next day after the Feast, the *Chan* made a great Entertainment for all the *Grandees* of his Court, to which he invited also the Ambassadors with their retinue, and treated them very Magnificently.

The Ambassadors treated by the Chan.

An order from the Court for their departure.

The 27. came back the Courier, whom the *Chan* had dispatch'd thence ever since the 21. with exprefs orders for our departure, with the first convenience, for *Ispahan*. This good news put some of us into an humour to go a Hunting. The Governour lent us his excuses, that, some business of importance intervening, he could not go along with us; however, he sent us his Huntsmen, his Hounds, and his Hawks; as also a Leopard, which, being Excellently well taught, started with as much swiftness as a Grey-hound, and gave us all the satisfaction Hunting could afford. He discover'd no Hare which he took not, and came on at the least call, with more command than any Setting Dog, leaping up behind the person who had the ordering of him. The *Chan* had in the mean time caus'd a sumptuous Collation to be made ready for us in his own Garden, without the City; but the person he had sent to invite us to pass that way, mist the Company, and overtook us not till we were coming into the City; so that it being too great a trouble for us to go then back again, he sent to our quarters some part of the Meat which had been prepared for our Entertainment.

MARCH

The first of *March*, which according to their Almanack, called by them *Taguim*, is the fourteenth of *Schenal*, the *Persians* celebrated another Feast, which they call *Chummehater*, in memory of the day, on which *Haly* took possession of the Estate of his Cousin and Father-in-law *Mahomet*. The *Chan* treated us again this day very Magnificently, near the River under a Tent, where, during the time of the Entertainment, he gave us the Divertisements of several sorts of Dances, and among others that of a Youth of about twenty years of age, who Danc'd to the Musick of two little Cimbals, which he himself play'd on excellently well; as also that of a *Moor*, or black *Arabian*, who leap'd and danc'd between the Porcelane Dishes, wherein the Meat had been brought up, with such exactness, that he broke not one. Nay, as it should seem, all the people were willing to contribute to our Divertisement, by the publick Acclamations which fill'd every street: And the *Chan* himself would needs give us another tryal of his skill at the Bow. He told us that heretofore he had cut a Hair with his Arrow, at a considerable distance, and that he would try, whether he could do as much at the age he was of then, which was forty five years. Having therefore fasten'd to a Horse's hair one of those Rings, which the *Persians* make use of to bend their Bows, and commonly wear them upon their Thumbs, and having caus'd the Boy that held it to stand at the distance of above six paces, he cut it twice one after another with his Arrow. He also, with a Fire-lock, shot an Apple, which he had caus'd to be cast into the Air.

In our return to the City, after an Entertainment which had lasted six hours, all the Officers took occasion, in a spacious plain, to give us a Tryal of the swiftness of their Horses. I must needs confess it is extraordinary, and that there is no English Horse comes near them: but it is certain withall, that this is all they teach them. They also gave us the Divertisement of their Engagements or Horse-back, and their manner of Skirmishing with their enemies, and shew'd us an incredible and miraculous Activity, not only in casting their Switches, which, in that Exercise, they made use of instead of Javelins, Riding with full speed upon those whom they pursu'd, but also in catching them in their hands when they were cast at them, and immediately Darting them at the pursuers. Of all those engag'd in that Exercise, the *Chan's* Master of the Horse behav'd himself the best, and had bestow'd on him by way of recompence, one of the best Horses out of his Master's Stable.

The third of *March*, the *Persians* celebrated another Feast, which they call *Tzar Schembesur*, that is, the fourth sad Sabbath, and it is the next *Wednesday* before the Vernal Equinox, by which they begin their year; of which they are perswaded, that this *Wednesday* is the most unfortunate day. And this, they say, they know not only by Tradition, but also by Experience, which

Another Festival.

which hath discover'd to them, that there never happen'd any thing but misfortune to them that day. Thence it comes, that they do not any business that day, they keep their Shops shut, Swear not, nor make any Debauches; but above all things, take they an especial care, not to pay away any Money that day, out of a fear, they should be oblig'd not to do any thing else all the year after. There are some who spend the whole day in telling what Money they have in their Houses: others go, without speaking a word by the way, to the River, for some water, wherewith they sprinkle their Houses and Household-stuff, thinking by that means to divert the misfortune which might befall them. If they meet with any one of their acquaintance, as they return home-wards, they cast some water into his face with their hands, or haply, pour the whole Pitcher full upon him: but this is a kindness they do only to their best friends, out of a persuasion, that those who are so served, and have their Cloaths all wet, cannot fail being happy all the year after. Young people that are not Married, find also their Divertisement at this solemnity, which is, to walk up and down the Streets, or along the River side, playing upon certain Timbrels of bak'd Earth, which they carry under their arms. Others carry great Staves in their hands, and go up to their knees in the River, to dash those who come to fetch water, either by casting it at them with their hands, or taking hold of them, to wet them, or to rub their faces with the borders of their wet Garments, or haply they break the pitchers with their Staves. These last are look'd upon as ill-presaging Birds, so that those who can keep out of their clutches, think they have avoided many misfortunes that should have happened to them that year. Upon which account it is, that there are some, who to avoid meeting with them, go and fetch in their water before day: but all these fopperies are done only in the morning, for as soon as it is afternoon, they go a walking, and bestow the time in any of their other ordinary Exercises. The Author of the Preface before the *High-Dutch* Translation of the *Kalusthan*, says, that this Festival is Dedicated to Saint *John Baptist*, and that it is in Commemoration of his Baptism, that the *Persians* do all those Ceremonies. True it is indeed, that the *Persians* have a certain Veneration for that Saint, and that they go, to this day, upon Pilgrimage to his Sepulchre at *Damas*, and it may be, that was the intention of him who instituted this Feast; but now, there is no track to be seen of any such thing.

*March* the tenth, that is, the 20. according to our stile, (for the Author means in all places the old) they celebrated the first day of their year, which they call *Nauras*, with great solemnity. For though they commonly count their years from the *Hegira*, or the day of *Ma-homet's* flight, from *Meca* to *Medina*, which is their *Epoche*, and co-incident with the 16 of *July*, according to our Almanacks; yet so it is, that, their year, consisting only of twelve Lunar moneths, and consequently being eleven days shorter than ours, they take a certain day for the beginning of their year, which is that, on which the Sun enters *Aries*, at the Vernal Equinox, in what quarter of the Moon soever it happens; but of this we shall give a further account elsewhere.

The Ambassadors sent some of us to the Castle to complement the *Chan* upon the beginning of the new year, and to wish him a good one. We found him at Table, having near him the *Minatzim*, or Astrologer, who rose up ever and anon, and taking his Astrolabe, went to observe the Sun, and at the very moment that the Sun came to the *Equator*, he publish'd the new year, the beginning whereof was celebrated by the firing of some great Guns, both from the Castle and the City-Walls, and at the same time, there might be heard a Musick of all sorts of instruments. Opposite to the *Chan* sat one of their Orators, whom they call *Kasfechuan*, who made an Oration, intermixt with more Faces and Gestures than any Player can shew on the Stage, speaking only of the Victories obtained by the Kings of *Persia* over the *Turks*, the *Usbeques*, and other enemies of that Nation. The remainder of the day was merrily spent in Eating and Drinking, whereof we, who were sent upon the Complement, participated sufficiently, for the *Chan* would needs oblige us to sit down at Table with him. The Festival lasted till the next day, and then the *Chan* made a great Entertainment for the Ambassadors, whereto he invited also the Monk I spoke of before.

*March* 20. the *Chan* and the *Calenter* came to see the Ambassadors. They were both gotten sufficiently Drunk, and the occasion of their Visit was this, that the *Chan* being to take a Journey (as he would make us believe) and not likely to return before our departure thence, he came to tell us, that he thought it unhandsome to go without taking leave of the Ambassadors. He brought along with him his *Hakim*, or Physician, who had also some smattering in Astrology, as most of that Profession have. His *Hakim* told him, after he had observ'd the Sky a while, that the Stars signify'd it was an unfortunate hour to go into the Lodgings of the Ambassadors, and upon that Prediction, they sat down in the Court and fell a-drinking. The *Chan* having taken notice of one of the Ambassador *Crusius's* Pages, a beautiful and well-timbred Lad, he desir'd him to come near him; which when he had, addressing his speech to the Physician, he ask'd him, whether he did not think him a fine Boy, and wou'd he had been his his own Son. The Physician, having taken another view of the Heavens, though the Air were not very clear, and that it was not near night, made answer, that if, after he had earnestly



1637. view'd the Boy, and by that means Imprinted an Idea of him in his imagination, he went and lay with a Woman, he would certainly get as handsome a Boy as that was. This the *Chan* and his Company believ'd as an Oracle; infomuch, that having for some time well considered the Page, he got on Horse-back and departed.

There was at *Schamachie* a *Persian* slave, named *Faruch*, who being a *Muscovite* by Birth, had been stollen and sold into *Persia*, where he had been circumcis'd, while he was yet very young. He delighted much to be among us, because there were in our retinue some persons who could talk with him in his own Language: infomuch that being, by his often coming to our quarters, grown familiar with some, he came one day to tell us, that we should have a care of our *Persian* Interpreter, whose name was *George Rustan*; for, to his knowledge, he had written to some of his Friends at *Ispahan*, to this effect; That, though he had liv'd a long time among *Christians*, yet were they not to infer thence, that he had abjur'd the *Mahumetane* Religion; but that he should ere long be with them, to give them further assurances of the contrary. *Rustan* was a *Persian* born, and had, not many years before, travell'd into *England*, where he had been Baptiz'd. Some years after, he went into *Muscovy*, where we found him, in the *English* Residents retinue, who was his God-father; and coming to hear that we were to go into *Persia*, he made so many friends, and was so importunate with the Resident, that at last, we gave him leave to go along with us as an Interpreter. Yet was he not receiv'd into our retinue, till he had oblig'd himself by a Writing under his hand, to come back with us, and by many solemn protestations assured us, that his going along with us was out of no other design, than to look after and receive what was due to him of his Patrimony, that he might have somewhat to Trade withal as a Merchant at his return. Accordingly, we were no sooner come to *Ardebil*, but we found the truth of what we had been told by *Faruch*: for, *Rustan*, as soon as he was got to a place, where he might expiate his pretended sin, and declare himself with safety, he went to the Sepulchre of their great Saint, *Schich-Seff*, where he did his Devotions as a right *Mahumetane*: which that he had done, he got a formal Certificate. We secur'd him at *Ispahan*, but he made his escape, and got into the Sanctuary, which they call *Alla-Capi*. That done, he cast himself at the feet of the King, and the *Seter*, or Chief of their Sect, express'd his repentance in tears, begg'd Pardon, put himself under the Kings protection, and remain'd in *Persia*.

Our Persian Interpreter proves a Keneegade.

March the 22. Father *Ambrosio* took leave of us, being to return to his Monastery at *Tiflis*.

March 24. the *Chan* sent away the New-years gifts, which the Governours are wont to send the King at the beginning of the year, and which were at this time so much the greater, by how much the disgrace and death of his Brother impos'd upon him a necessity of Courting the Kings favour. The Present consisted in a certain number of excellent Horses, richly Harnes'd, several Camels loaden with *Russia* Leather, several rich Stuffs, and thirty bags full of Swan's down: but what augmented the value of this rich Present, was a great number of handsome Boys and Girls, whom he sent along with it. The *Chan* went himself out of the City, with an intention, as was given out, to conduct the Present two or three leagues: but he returned not, leaving, by that means, upon the *Calenter*, the trouble of providing all things for the prosecution of our Journey. Immediately after the *Chan*'s departure, there was sent to our quarters the sum of sixty *Tumains*, which amount to about a thousand Crowns, by way of re-embursement for the charges we had been at during our stay at *Schamachie*.

The Ambassadors re-embursed their expence.

But, in regard it amounted not to one half of what we might expect, according to the allowance which was assign'd us at our arrival, the Ambassador *Brugman*, sending us to the *Calenter* about other business, charged us to ask him by the way, whether it were upon any order from the King, or out of the Governours kindness towards us, that the said sum had been sent us, and to let him know, that though it was not the intention of the Ambassadors to receive any money, yet since the *Calenter* had sent it under his own Seal, they would carry it so seal'd to *Ispahan*: That they could not forbear complaining of the injury had been done them in keeping them there so long, contrary to the orders they had received from Court, to take the speediest course they could for their departure.

The *Calenter* made answer, that it lay not upon him to maintain the Ambassadors, and to furnish them with money: That it was not to him their Master had sent them, but to the King, and that it was accordingly by his Majesty's appointment, that he had sent the foresaid sum: That he could not hinder them from making their complaints, but that they should advantage themselves nothing thereby: That, for the clearing of himself, he would produce their acquittance at the Court, and that the *Chan* and himself had supply'd them out of their own, till the Kings Order was brought them: That he was much troubled at the inconveniences which the Ambassadors had been put to, during the long stay they had made in that City, but that it was not their fault, since it had been impossible, in so short a time, to get Horses and Wagons enough, for so many people, and so much Baggage, inreating us, ere we went away, to honour him so far as to Dine with him once more, which we did.

March

March the 27. there were brought us sixty Wagons for the Baggage, and for the conveyance of some of the Retinue who were sick, or not able to ride, and a hundred and twenty Saddle-Nags. We sent away our Steward with all the Baggage that night. 1637.

But ere we take our leave quite of a place where we had sojourn'd so long, it will not be amiss to give here a short account of the City of *Scamachie*. Father *Bizarrus*, in his *History of Persia*, and *Joseph Barbaro*, in his *Travels*, call it sometimes *Summachia*, sometimes *Sumachia*, or *Samachia*, and the *Spaniards* write it *Xamachi*. Some Geographers place it in their Maps below *Derbent*, others place it above, and there are also some who put it in twice, for fear of failing. Its true name, according to the pronunciation of the *Persians*, is *Scamachie*, and it lies forty *German Leagues*, or six great dayes journey from *Derbent*: it being suppos'd a man takes the Mountain way, which is very much about. For if a man go a-foot, or on horseback along the *Caspian Sea*, by the City of *Bakseje*, and the Mountain *Labatz*, where the King hath a place for the receipt of customs upon foreign Commodities, he may easily travel it in two dayes. The Camels ordinarily take the latter way, and perform their journey in four or five, and at most in six or seven dayes, according to the burthen they carry. *Scamachie* is the chief City of that noble Province, which the antients called *Media Atropatia*, or *Media Minor*, and which is now called *Schiruan*; which is the more to be observ'd, in respect of their mistake, who place this City in *Hyrkania*. It lies at thirty four degrees, forty minutes longitude, and at forty degrees, fifty minutes latitude, in a valley between two Mountains, which hide it so, as that it is hardly seen till a man comes to the very Gate. The *Persians* affirm, it was built by *Schiruan Schach*, and that it was heretofore much larger than it is now, since there were in it five thousand houses. It was destroy'd by the *Turks* in the time of King *Abas*, who perceiving the Emperour of the *Turks* took in only the strongest places, thereby to secure his Conquests, and minded not open places, and considering withall, that so many strong and fortify'd places were rather a burthen than an advantage to him, and being in the midst of his Kingdom were hard to keep, ordered the pulling down of the Walls on the South-side of the City, where they were strongest. He took the same course with the Cities of *Tauris*, *Nachtzuan*, *Kentza*, &c.

This South-part of *Scamachie* makes as it were a City by it self, as being divided from the North-part, which is still compass'd with a strong Wall, by a little plain, which serves for a common Market-place to both. The *Persians* affirm, that the Grand Seigneur having taken the City of *Scamachie*, took the stones from all the Sepulchres, and therewith repair'd the Walls of it. The North-side of the City lies at the foot of a little Mountain, and is somewhat, but not much bigger than the other, containing but about nine hundred houses. It hath but a poor Wall about it, which being but low, and having but a wretched Ditch, hinders not but that a man may come into the City at any time. The City hath five Gates; its streets are narrow, and the houses low, and most built of Mortar and Earth. There are very few of Brick, or Free-stone. The Inhabitants are partly *Armenians*, partly *Georgians*: who have each their particular Language, so as that they would not understand one another, if they did not make use of the *Turkish*, which is common to both, not only in *Schiruan*, but also all over *Persia*. Their greatest Commerce lies in Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, whereof there are such quantities made, that Women, nay, very Children make a shift to get their living there, by spinning and preparing the Silk and Cotton for the work-men. Most of their shops are in the South-part of the City, where there is also a *Basar*, or Market-place, into which about many streets, which are all covered, for the convenience of the Merchants. Not far from this Market-place, there are two Store-houses, containing many Chambers and Galleries, for the entertainment of foreign Merchants, who sell by whole-sale, and for the disposal of their Merchandises. One is called *Schach Caravansera*, and is the place appointed for the *Muscovites*, who bring thither Tin, *Russia* Leather, Copper, Furrs, and other Commodities. The other, which is called *Losgi Caravansera*, was built for the *Tartars* of *Circassia*, who do not bring their Commodities thither, but lead them, they being only Horses, Women, young Lads, and handsome Maids, wherewith they Trade among themselves in their own Countrey, where they steal them upon the Frontiers of *Muscovy*. The *Jews*, who have also some part of this latter Store-house assign'd them, upon this account, that the *Muscovites* will not admit them into their Company, bring thither, from *Tabesserahn*, the best Woollen Tapistry in the whole Countrey, whereof there is brought into *Europe* but the refuse. Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, nay, Gold and Silver Brocades, as also Bows, Arrows, and Cymitars, are sold there at a very reasonable rate.

Its streets  
and houses;  
Its Inhabitants,  
their  
Language,  
&c.

In our return from *Persia*, the *Muscovian* Envoy *Alexei Savinouis* would needs go into the Storehouse belonging to the *Tartars*, & being a person of a pleasant humour, he fell a cheapning of a Boy, about fifteen or sixteen years of age, who was handsome enough, and ask'd the *Tartar* what price he set him at, who made answer, he should have him for a hundred Crowns. *Alexei*, who had no mind to buy, proffer'd him two and thirty; but the *Tartar* laugh'd at him, and giving the Boy a clap upon the buttocks, told the *Muscovite*, that that very part of him was worth more.

There

1637. There are also in the City three *Hamams*, that is, Baths, or publick Stoves, the use whereof is as ordinary in *Persia* as *Muscovy*. There are two which are common to both men and women, but with this distinction, that the women go in only in the day-time, and the men in the night. The third which they call *Hamam Schach* is only for the men. Hard by this third Bath there are two great Trees, for which the *Persians* have a great Veneration, as having been planted by one of their Saints, named *Schich-Marith*, who is interr'd not far thence, in a *Metzid*, or Church, where there are greater Devotions done than in other *Metzids* about the City, wherein there are six in all. The Revenue of this Bath is spent in Luminaries, Cloaths, and other things necessary about the holy Sepulchre.

The Chan's charge. The *Chan*, or Governour of the City of *Scamachie*, hath also the command of the whole Province, joyntly with the *Calenter*, or King's Lieutenant. The Governour is entrusted with the Administration of Justice, as also the disposal of things Civil and Military, upon which last accompt, he is oblig'd to maintain a thousand men, out of the Revenue of his Government, and to be in a readines to march, upon the first order he receives to that purpose. The Kings Lieutenant hath the oversight of his Revenue, and disposes of the Crown-Lands, but is not oblig'd to go to the Wars: on the contrary he is left in the Province, whereof he hath the sole command during the absence of the other. The *Chan's* name was *Arab*, and he kept a very noble Court, though he were a person of very low extraction, son to a Peasant of the Village of *Seerab*, between *Tauris* and *Ardebil*: but the lowness of his extraction was recompens'd in the great endowments he was Master of. The *Persians* are very indifferent as to a man's birth, provided he be otherwise a person of courage and worth, and *Arab* had much of both, and had acquir'd so great reputation by his valour, that *Schach-Sefi* made him Controller of his Ordinance, when he besieg'd *Ernan*, which the *Turks* had taken from the *Persians*. He discharg'd that trust so well, and in all other things answer'd the opinion the King had conceived of him, that he bestow'd on him then the Government of *Scamachie*, which became vacant by the death of *Ter-ruch-Chan*, who was kill'd in the siege we spoke of before. *Arab* took no small pleasure in shewing us the wounds he had receiv'd in that War, and in telling us how many *Turks* heads he had brought to his King, who sent him continually upon parties and forlorns, against the Army, which was coming to relieve that place.

The Governour and his Lieutenant had both very gracefull and bold aspects, and with that all the requisite qualities in Commanders, save that they were both so addicted to Wine, that they were seldom met fasting: but the Governour had still this advantage over his Lieutenant, that he was more apt to be overcome by it than the other.

I may boldly and truly say, that, in all this City, I found not the least track of Antiquity. For, though I took abundance of pains to find out that great Tower, whereof *John Cartwright* an *English* Gentleman, speaks, in the relation of his *Travels into Persia*, where he sayes it is built of Flint and Free-stone, and that they have thrust many dead mens skulls between the stones, yet could I not find any such thing, or learn any news of it. 'Tis true, I found two mens heads cut in the stone, at one certain place of the City-wall, but no body could tell me what they Represented. It is also true, that, not far from the City, there are to be seen the ruins of a Castle, which had some time been fortify'd, as the same Author sayes elsewhere. For it is certain, that there are the remainders of a very strong place within half a League of the City, and that towards the North-side, upon a very high, and very steepy Mountain, which is called *Kale Kulestan*.

I had the curiosity to go up to the top of the said Mountain, and found nothing whole, but a very noble great Cellar, and near it one of the deepest Wells that ever I saw, both compass'd with the best free-stone that ever was put in any work. We were told that that Province had heretofore had its particular Kings, and that *Schirvan Scach* had built that Castle, upon the accompt of one of his *Chasses*, or Concubines, who gave it the name, and that it was *Alexander the Great* that destroy'd that noble Structure, which none ever after offer'd to repair. I am of opinion, that the Castle derived its name from the neighbouring Valley, in as much as, having running through it a Brook, which makes it one of the most delightful places in the World, and that being in the Spring cover'd with an infinite number of Tulips, which nature her self is pleas'd to produce there, it is not to be much admir'd, that they call'd the place *Kale Kulestan*, that is, the Fort, or Castle of *Roses*, since the *Persians* give the name of *Kulestan*, or *Valley of Roses* to all those places, where they would have it expres'd, that there is an extraordinary pleasantness. So that there is no necessity of seeking the Etyymology of that name in Fables, or in things which might have hapned before the time of *Alexander the Great*, whereof the *Persians* have had nothing transmitted to them.

Sepulchres of Saints. Near *Kulestan*, between the Fort and the City of *Scamachie*, there are also two Chapels, upon a Mountain, which is higher than that we spoke of last. In the greater of the two, which is built in the form of a *Parallelogram*, there is a very high Sepulchre to be seen, and all about it several pieces of Cloath and Rags of all sorts of colours, with Rods of Iron, whose ends are like the tops of Arrows, and they are fastned or ty'd to the Sepulchre with a silk string. In the other,

other, there were two Sepulchres, adorn'd much after the same manner with the former. These are the Tombs of some of their Saints, near which they often do their Devotions. 1637.

From this last Chapel there is a descent into a spacious Vault, where is to be seen the Sepulchre of one of their Kings Daughters, named *Amelek Kanna*, of whom they relate, that she had so great an aversion against marriage, that her Father desirous she should match with a Tartar-Prince, she kill'd her self, to prevent it. The same *Carrwright* says, that the young maids of those parts go once a year to the Sepulchre of this Princess, to bewail her death. It is possible, that, in his time, some such thing might be done; but let it be taken for certain, that that custom is now absolutely abolish'd, and that it is not Devotion, but the Heat, which obliges the Inhabitants, in the height of Summer, to retire to this Mountain, as also to *Kulestan*, for the greater coolness of the air: and that it is out of such a consideration, that they do their Devotions near these Saints more frequently in that season, than at any other time of the year. Trades-men, and persons of mean condition, stay there only in the day time, and at night return to the City; but the *Chan*, the *Calenter*, and persons of quality have their Tents pitch'd there, and remove not thence during the three hottest Moneths of the year. During which time they also drive their Cattel towards the Mountain of *Elbours*, where they find not only a more temperate air, but also as good Meadow-ground as any in all *Persia*. That Mountain is part of Mount *Caucasus*, and it is of such height, that though it be at a very great distance from thence, inasmuch as it lies on one side of *Tabristhan*, towards *Georgia*, yet may it be discover'd from *Kale Kuteshan*, and the other neighbouring Mountains of *Scamachie*. It was upon this Mountain of *Elbours*, as it is reported, that the *Persians* kept and antiently Worshiped their perpetual Fire: but now there is not the least track to be seen of it, neither there, nor near *Jesch*, though *Texeira*, and those who follow him, would have us believe the contrary. True indeed it is, that there are, to this day, in the *Indies*, certain Religious men, who have a Veneration for the Fire, and keep it in with the same care that the *Persians* did heretofore; as we shall take occasion to shew in the subsequent Travels of *Mandelslo* into those parts. But it is time we return to the pursuance of our Journey.

The Baggage being sent away the 27. of *March* in the Evening, the Ambassadors follow'd the next day, and were upon their way two hours before day. The Ambassador *Brugman*, who was dissatisfy'd with the Treatment we had receiv'd at *Scamachie*, would not permit the *Calenter* should have the honour to conduct us, but gave order we should dislodge and depart without any noise, and that all should go, while it was yet Night, afoot out of the Gates, where we took Horse. Having Travell'd about two Leagues, we found a *Scotch-man* of our retinue, whose name was *Alexander Chambers*, dead in the Waggon, though, at the Loading of the Baggage, he seem'd to be so well, as that it was conceiv'd he might have gone through the Journey, which occasion'd us to make a Halt, to dispose of the Body into the ground. We buried him at the bottom of a little Hill, cover'd all over with Hyacinths, on the left hand, near the High-way.

Having got half a League further, we came to the Sepulchre of another Saint, named *Pyr Mardechan*, in the Country of *Fakerlu*, where we were forc'd to take up our Quarters in the open Air, and without Tents, making a shift in that manner to pass over one of the sharpest Nights we had in all our Journey, by reason of the Storm, which came attended by Lightning, Thunder, Wind, Rain, Snow and Frost; the Ambassador *Brugman* being desirous to outvie the Thonder, with our Artillery, which he caus'd to be several times discharg'd. The next day, the same Ambassador having observ'd, that several pieces of Canon were left behind, because there were not Camels enough to bring them away, and that the Horses were too weak to draw them, would needs fall out with the *Mehemander*, and was so transported with Passion, that he came to Railing, and Sperting when he nam'd the *Chan* and the *Calenter*, and said that the *Chan* had not been so good as his Word, and had ly'd in all he said, but that he should resent it, and that he would either have his Life, or the other should have his.

Some were of opinion, that he would stay there till the pieces we had left at *Scamachie* were brought up: but, upon the Remonstrances of some others, that the place was too incommodious; that we had nothing over our Heads; that we should want both Wood and Provisions, and that the sick Persons would not be able to endure the Cold, it was resolv'd we should go on, which we did, and came, after two Leagues travel to a *Caravansera*, called *Tachtsi*, and having gone two Leagues further, we were got to the top of the Mountain of *Scamachie*.

Upon the top of the said Mountain there is a fair Plain, and an even and fertile ground, though in Winter, and at the beginning of the Spring, Rain, Snow and hard Weather are no strangers there, and bring the same inconveniences along with them, as they do in some parts of *Europe*. But as soon as we were come to the brow or descent of the Mountain, we saw a clear Sky, a chearful Sun, and discover'd a Country wholly cover'd with Verdure, in a spacious Plain, which reaching above ten Leagues, without any excrefcency so much as to the heights

1637. height of two foot, represented to us, as it were in a Map, the Course and Conjunction of those two Rivers, *Araxos* and *Cyrus*, which the Writings of Antient Historians and Geographers have so highly celebrated. This descent was above half a league, but easie, and not very steepy; so that those who went fore-most, looking behind them, saw the last of our company descending as it were out of the Clouds. We took up our Lodging that night in certain *Ottacks*, or Huts, which the *Tartarian* Shepherds had set up there near their Flocks.

Nomades. *Mar.* 30. we got four leagues, along the Plain, as far as the Village of *Kafilu*. We met, in our way, with a company of Sheep-herds and Cow-herds, who march'd with their Houses and all their Household-stuff, their Wives and Children, all as it were shuffled together in Wagons, or pack'd up upon Horses, Cows, Asses, and other Creatures, not ordinarily us'd in carriage, after a very odd manner, and such as represented a very Fantastick kind of Transmigration.

Ever after that day, we had nothing but fair weather, a Sky clear, and without any cloudiness, save that when we travell'd over the Mountains, we might, in the Morning, see the Heavens a little over-cast; but as soon as the Sun appear'd, all was dispell'd.

*March* the last, we travell'd two leagues, along the River side, to a Village named *Tzawat*, upon the right side of the *Kur*, or the River, which the Antients called *Cyrus*, all the Houses whereof were built of Reeds and Canes, and cover'd with Earth. About a quarter of a league above this Village, is the Conflux, or meeting of this River with that of *Araxes*, which is now called *Aras*, at thirty nine degrees, fifty four minutes Elevation; the *Cyrus* coming from West-north-west, and the *Aras* from South-west. These Rivers after they are met together are about four hundred paces in breadth. Their water is black and deep, and the brink on both sides pretty high. All along the River side, and all the Meadow grounds of the Province of *Mokan*, were cover'd with Liquorice, the stalk whereof is many times as big as a man's arm, and the juyce, beyond all comparifon, sweeter and more pleasant than that of *Europe*.

APRIL. The River *Kur* serves for a common Frontier to the two Provinces of *Schiruan* and *Mokan*, and there is a Bridge of Boats over it, near *Tzawat*. We pass'd over it the second of *April*, and found, on the other side of the River, another *Mehemandar*, whom the *Chan* or Governour of *Ardebil* had sent to meet us, and to conduct us in the pursuance of our Journey, as far as the chief City of his Government. He had brought along with him, for the carriage of us and the Baggage, forty Camels, and three hundred Horses: in regard, the way we were then to come into being very bad, by reason of the continued Mountains and Valleys, we could not have made any use of our Waggons. He supply'd us with Provisions in abundance, allowing us, every day, ten Sheep, thirty *Batmans* of Wine, and Rice, Butter Eggs, Almonds, Raisins, Apples, and all sorts of Fruits as much as we pleas'd. On Sunday, after Sermon, we departed, taking our way along the River *Aras*, for above a League. We lodg'd that night within half a League of the River, at the entrance of a great Heath in Hutts, which the *Mehemandar* had purposely ordered to be provided, for our convenience.

*April* the third, we pass'd over the Heath, which reaches about four *Farsangs*, or *Persian* Leagues, and we were lodg'd again that night in Hutts, as we had been the night before. We had seen all that day in great Herds, a kind of Deer, which the *Turks* call *Tzeiran*, and the *Persians*, *Ahu*, which have some resemblance to our Harts, save that they are rather Red than Fawn, and their Horns have no Brow-anchors, but are smooth, and lye backward like those of wild Goats. They are very swift, and there are not any of that kind, as we were told, but what are in the Province of *Mokan*, and about *Schamachie*, *Karrabach*, and *Merrage*.

*April* 4. we were forc'd to leave the way of the Heath, though much the nearer, and to take another, which brought us, by a great compass of above six Leagues, to a Torrent called *Balharu*, out of this consideration, that if we had travell'd along the Heath, we should have want'd water, both for our selves and our Horses. We found in that place abundance of Tortoises, which had made their Nests along the side of the Torrent, and in the Sand of the little Hills thereabouts, but all expos'd to the Mid-day Sun, so to give the greater heat to their Eggs, which cannot be hatch'd but in the Hot, or rather burning Sand. Perceiving some men on the other side of the Torrent, some of our people had the curiosity to cross it, to observe their manner of Life: Their Children were stark Naked, and Aged persons had nothing about them but a shirt or smock of Cotton. The poor people entertain'd us very kindly, and brought us some Milk. They thought that the King of *Persia* had sent for us, to serve him in his Wars against the *Turk*, out of which persuasion, they pray'd for our good success, that God would make their and our Enemy fly before us, as far as *Stampol*, that is, *Constantinople*.

*April* the 5. we overcame the Heath of *Mokan*, and came to the Mountain and Country of *Betzirwan*, after we had twelve several times cross'd one little River, which lay so many times in our way. We got that day five leagues, and lodg'd at night in a Village called *Schechmurat*. Most of the Houses were built at the foot of the Mountain, and some within the Mountain, and were cover'd with Reeds: but we found not any Body in the Village, for those who went along with

with the *Chan* of *Schamachie's* Present, for *Ispahan*, had made the Country people believe, as they pass'd that way, that we were a sort of Barbarous people, who thought it not enough to take and ransack all, but did also abuse and beat such as entertain'd us: upon which account of us, they were all gone to hide themselves in the Rocks of the neighbouring Mountain. There were some of our company, who got up a very high Mountain to see what Simples they could find there, and to take a view of the adjacent Country: but they found not any there, and the other nearer Mountains, which were higher than that we were upon, absolutely deprived us of the sight of the *Champaign*.

1637.

They met not with any thing remarkable there, save that upon the very top of the Mountain, there was a pleasant Spring, near which we saw coming out of the clefts of the Rock a kind of Crabb, which some among us, who had never seen any before, took for some venomous Creature. The Author is of opinion, that it is a Sea-fish; but he is mistaken, for it is properly no other animal than that which in *Latin* is called *Cancer*, is found in Rivers, and is of a different species from the common Sea-crabb, which is called *Acastus*. We sat down by the Spring-side, and, in what Liquor nature had furnish'd the place with, drunk to our Friends in *Germany*.

*April 6.* We could not possibly get above two Leagues, over Mountains and Rocks, where we saw a great number of Fig-trees, which the Earth produc'd there without any Cultivation. We came at night to a ruin'd Village, called *Tisle*; but ere we had quite taken up our Quarters and unloaded the Baggage, word was brought us, that it was the Plague, which, the Autumn before, had consumed all the Inhabitants of that place; whereupon we immediately left it. The Ambassadors caus'd a Tent to be pitch'd in the fields, but all the rest of the retinue had, at first, no other covering over their Heads than the Sky, till the *Mehemandar* had sent for some *Tartarian* Huts, which were brought late in the night loaded upon Oxen. These kind of Huts are made of several pieces of Wood, which are fasten'd together at the ends, so as they may be taken a-sunder, or set together in a short time. The *Sieur Uchterits*, who had stay'd a while in the Village, to see the Baggage loaden and convey'd thence, coming to the Ambassadors Tent, was so rail'd at by the Ambassador *Brugman*, who reproach'd him that he came from an Infect-ed House, to bring the Plague among them, that he fell into a Fever.

Tartarian Huts.

There were some in the Company, who finding the weather somewhat close and cold, went and lock'd themselves up in a house, where they made a good fire, and spent the time merrily with the Wine they had kept the day before, diverting themselves, and linging to drive away Melancholy, and to forget the froward humour of the Ambassador *Brugman*, which they were as much afraid of as the unwholsome air. The *Indians* had begun the building of a *Caravansera* in that place, for the convenience of Commerce, which was grown to a considerable height, but the Plague had hindred them from finishing it.

The 7. we had a very sad dayes journey of it, being forc'd, in a continual trot, to travel above ten leagues, without ever baiting, in the cold, the wind, and the snow, which not onely disheartned our people, many whereof fell sick, but lay so heavy upon the Camels, that divers of them fell down under their burthens. There is in these parts abundance of *Aesynhium*, or Wormwood, and we were told, that the Herb of it is so venomous, that if Horses or any other Creature eat thereof, they die immediately, upon which account it was, that we durst not unbit that day. About noon, we came in sight of a *Caravansera*, called *Aggis*, the structure whereof is of the noblest kind we had seen. Not far from it, we met a *Persian*, who was excellently well mounted, and attended by two servants, who told us, that the King had sent him to be our *Mehemandar*, to take order for our subsistence, and to Conduct us with the soonest to the Court. We lodg'd that night in a Village called *Tzanlu*, at the foot of a Mountain, where we found excellent Gardens, and abundance of fruit-trees, but no Wood for firing, in-somuch that we were forc'd to make use of Cow-dung, Horse-dung, and Camels-dung. We sent away that day our Forrager, to take up Quarters for us at *Ardebil*.

Ill weather.

A veno-mous Herb!

The King sends another Conductor to meet the Ambassadors.

The 8. having broke our fast, we got on Horse-back, and after we had travell'd three leagues along the Mountain of *Tzizetlu*, we came to the River *Karafu*, which rises out of the Mountain of *Bakru*, in the Countrey of *Kilan*. We cross'd it near the Village of *Samajan*, over a very fair stone bridge, containing six noble Arches, which were in all thirty eight fathom in length. About half a league thence, we came to the end of that day's journey, to a Village called *Thabedar*, two litle leagues from *Ardebil*, where we stay'd that night. The next day, being Easter-day, we saw how the Inhabitants dawb the Walls of their Houses with Dung, that the Sun may the sooner dry it, and make it combustible: but we were also in this place terribly persecuted with Fleas and Lice, and other nasty Vermine, wherewith we were in a manner cover'd.

The 9. we Celebrated our Easter, beginning the Festival with the firing of our great Guns, and small shot, which we ordered to be discharged thrice. That done, we had a Sermon, and did our Devotions.

About noon we were visited by our new *Mehemandar*, whose name was *Netzesbee*; he

A a

was

1637. was a person of an excellent good humour. He came to Complement us upon occasion of the Festival, and brought us a Present of five fishes dry'd in the Sun, a dish, full of Bread, Pomegranates, Apples, and a sort of Pears I had never seen before, fashion'd like a Citron, and full of a very pleasant juyce, and having a sweet scent, pickled Cowcubers, preserv'd Garlick, and *Schiras-wine*, which is the most esteem'd of any that grows in *Persia*.

April 10. being *Easter-Monday*: we made our entrance into *Ardebil*, for the most part with the same Ceremonies, but with greater Pomp and Magnificence, than we had done at *Scamachie*. About noon, we met with a party of Horse, which having saluted, and taken a view of us, immediately returned towards the City.

The entrance of the Ambassadors into Ardebil.

Near the Village of *Kelheran*, ( which is so noble a place, that viewing, at a distance, its Steeples, or Towers, whereof there are a very great number, and they make a very great shew, in regard they are built of stones of several colours, we took it for the City it self, though they are distant one from the other above half a league ) we met with, in the head of a body of Horse, the *Calenter of Ardebil*, whose name was *Taleb Chan*, an aged, and very spare man. Having saluted the Ambassadors, he rid on one side of them. Having pass'd by the Village, we saw in a spacious Plain, abundance of horse and foot, who opened to make us way. Some paces thence, we saw crossing the fields towards us at the head of a Brigade of above a thousand Horse, the Governour of *Ardebil*, whose name was *Kelbele Chan*. He was a low man, but of a good aspect and pleasant humour. After the Compliments reciprocally past between him and the Ambassadors, he rode in between them. Before our Troop, there march'd two youths clad in Sheepskins of several colours, upon their clean skirts, and carrying each of them upon the top of a long and very slender pole, an Orange. The poles, we were told, were made of a Date-tree.

These youths read and sung, out of a Book, certain Verses made in honour of *Mahomet*; *Aly*, and *Schach-Sefi*. They were Sons or Disciples to a certain *Abdalla*, of whom we shall speak hereafter. After them came others, who were cloathed in white, and had a wonderful Art in imitating the Notes and singing of Nightingales and other birds. On both sides march'd the Timbrels and Hawboies; in some places there were people dancing and singing at the same time, and at others were some dancing after another manner. Some cast their caps up into the air, and caught them again with cries and exclamations of joy. There were some danc'd with little Garlands about their heads, much like those we had seen at *Scamachie*, when they celebrated there, the death of *Aly*. Near the City stood the Guards, in two files, having their Bows and Arrows in their hands, Coats of Mail about their bodies, and their heads cover'd with little Caps like Calottes, which they call *Aratskin*, in which they had plac'd abundance of Feathers, the ends whereof, some thrust through their Caps, into the skin. Many of them were naked down to the waste, and though they had the flesh of their Arms and Breasts pierced with Daggers or Ponyards, yet did they not seem sensible of any pain thereat; whence we inferr'd there might be something of Charm in it, and that they were Sorcerers, there being abundance that deserve that name in *Persia*. There was also a Company of *Indians*, who as we pass'd by, saluted us, after their way, with a low inclination of the head, putting their hands to their breasts. When we were come somewhat near the City, there was so great a confluence of people, that we could not get a hundred paces forward without making a halt; inso-much that they were forc'd to drive them away with Cudgels and Bulls-pizzels, so to make them give way. And within the City, all the Windows, Houses-tops, Steeples, and Trees, were full of those, who came from all parts to see our passage through it.

The Governour gives them a Collation.

The Governour brought us, through a spacious Garden, into a fair Summer-house, to which there were ten stairs to get up, and treated us with a sumptuous Collation, in a very stately Gallery; honouring all those who came up with the Ambassadors so far as to present, to every one of them with his own hands, a Vessel full of Wine, while all the rest of the Retinue were treated below, in a Tent, which had been purposely pitch'd there to that end. The Collation was accompany'd with the best Musick the Country could afford, as also with a Dance performed by their *Ochtzi*, or Archers, who dancing, in cadence, with their Bows in their hands, represented a kind of Ball, which their exactness of the observance of time made more delightful & divertive, than had been the singing of those two youths, the sons of *Abdalla*, who with their Oranges in their hands, very seriously celebrated the praises of their Prophet. After the Collation and Divertisement, the Ambassadors were conducted to very spacious Lodgings, which had been taken up for them in one of the noblest parts of the City, which Lodgings had sometime belong'd to *Sara Chutza*, high Chancellor of *Persia*. The rest of the Retinue were Lodg'd not far from them, in the neighbourhood, where they were well accommodated, by those into whose houses they were receiv'd.

The Chan's Horse described.

This Summer-houfe, being one of the noblest Structures I ever saw, deserves I should give in this place a more particular description of it. *Sulfagar Chan*, the Predecessor of *Kelbele Chan*, in the Government of *Ardebil*, a Person of infinite wealth, had built it, according to a modell he had brought out of *Turkey*. The figure of it was Octagonal, and it was three Stories, so rais'd,

rais'd, that Art had not left any thing to be desir'd. Every story had its Fountains, which cast their water higher than any part of the House. The Walls were built of a sort of Glittering stones, of all Colours, Blew, Green, Red, and of all sorts of Figures, and all the Floors were cover'd with the richest Tapistry the Country could afford. All about the House there was a spacious Gallery, all built with Marble, and adorn'd with Painting, representing Flowers and Leaves. At one of the corners of that Gallery, there was a little Couch or Chair of State, four foot square, cover'd with Embroider'd Tapistry, having in the midst a Quilt wrought with Gold and Silk, to signify, that the King, passing one day through *Ardebil*, had rested himself there; which made the place so Venerable, that, to the end none should come near it, it was encompass'd with an Iron rail. The said *Sulfagar Chan* had built also another House of Pleasure or Summer-house, in a great Garden, near a stone-Bridge, without the City; but at the time of our Travels that way, it lay desolate, as indeed it had been ever since the Death of *Sulfagar*, who had been Executed, upon the instigation of *Kartzogor*, General of the *Persian Army*. The other House, which was within the City, had been bestow'd by the King upon *Kelbele Chan*, to be enjoy'd by him during his Life.

The next day after our arrival, which was *April 11.* there was brought the Ambassadors from *Schich-Sefi's* Kitchin, the *Thaberick*; which is a certain quantity of Meat, sent in for three meals, to such great Lords, and other Persons of quality, as come into that City; according to a pious Institution, which hath been observ'd about the Body of *Schich-Sefi*, Author and Founder of the Religion of the *Persians*, as also near that of the late King, whose Sepulchres are at *Ardebil*. Our *Thaberick* was brought us in 32 great Dishes or Batins full of Rice, of all sorts of Colours, upon which the Meat was laid, which consisted of Boyl'd, Roast, Omelets, and Pastry, according to their way of Dressing. Those who were appointed to bring us this Dinner, carry'd the Dishes upon their Heads, and set them down upon a Cloath, which was laid upon the ground.

We were not over-pleas'd with this Entertainment, by reason, not only of the trouble it was to us to sit down according to the *Persian way*, but also because we were forbidden to drink any Wine at this Feast of the *Thaberick*. However, we ordered our great Guns to be discharg'd at it, as also our Trumpets to sound, and would have made a small Present to those who had brought it; but they desir'd to be excus'd, telling us, that the Devotion of the place permitted them not to receive any Presents.

The next day, there was such order taken for the Provisions of the Kitchin, that we had all the reason in the world to be satisfy'd therewith. We were allow'd every day sixteen Sheep, two hundred Eggs, four *Barmans* (which come to 26 pounds) of Butter, thirteen pound of Raisins of the Sun, six pound and a half of Almonds, a hundred *Barmans* of Wine, two *Barmans* of Sirrup, Meal, Honey, and Poultry in abundance, besides the extraordinary Presents, which were ever and anon brought us from the *Chan*; infomuch, that our expence, during our stay at *Ardebil*, amounted to,

In Bread,	1960. <i>Barmans.</i>
In Wine,	6250. <i>Barmans.</i>
Eggs,	9300.
Sheep,	477.
Lambs,	472.

*April. the 12.* we receiv'd the first visit from the Governour, who, with much kindness, came to make the proffers of his services to the Ambassadors, whereof we afterwards found the real effects, when occasion required. The same day, he sent away an Express to Court, to give notice there of our arrival, and to receive orders for the prosecution of our Journey, which yet came not till two moneths after.

*April. 21.* an *Armenian* Bishop came to see the Ambassadors. He was but lately come thither from the City of *Eruan*, was a Person discours'd very handsomely, and told us many particulars concerning the state of the *Christian Churches* in *Asia*. Among other things, he told us, that there was near *Eruan* a Monastery wherein there were above four hundred Religious men, and that there were in the Mountains, between *Aras* and *Kur*, above a thousand Villages inhabited by *Christians*, and that there were, besides all these, near *Caswin* and *Tauris* above two thousand Families, which made up in all above five hundred Churches. Whereto he added, that the *Turks* had, not long before, carried away above fifteen hundred *Christians*, and very highly commended the King of *Persia*, for his care in preserving their Privileges, and not burthening them with Taxes, as the *Turk* does, intreating us to recommend their concernments to the King, when we should come to Court.

*April. 25.* which, according to the *Arabians*, is the 10. day of the moneth *Silhotza*, was the great *Bairam*, or the Festival which they call *Kurban*, that is, *Sacrifice*, in commemoration of the Sacrifice, which *Abraham* would have made of his son *Ismael*, according to the command



1637. of God: for so they understand the History of the Sacrifice of *Abraham*. All their Ceremony consists in killing, before day, a Sheep, or Lamb, in the street, at their own Doors, which being cut into pieces, they distribute them among the poor, who come to those Doors in great numbers. They do not reserve so much as the skin; which they do, as they affirm, according to the example of *Abraham*, who reserv'd nothing of the Ram, which he sacrific'd instead of his Son.

*The Pilgrimages of the Persians and Turks.* It is about this time, that the *Persians* go to do their Devotions at *Meca*, as well as the *Turks*. They say that *Noah*, when he went into the Ark, took along with him seventy two Persons, and for that reason, it is requisite the Pilgrims of *Meca* should amount to the number of seventy two thousand; and that number ought to be so exactly observ'd, that if there be either more or less, they must not be receiv'd there, as such, that year. But above all things, it is their main care, that that great number be compleat; for otherwise, as they affirm, the Angels would be oblig'd to come in, to make up what were wanting, and it were a wont of respect to those Spirits to put them to that trouble. The men put on a particular Coiffure for this Voyage, which is a kind of Turbant of white Wool; in regard their Law forbids them to wear it of any Colour, or of silk at that time. They call this kind of Turbant *Ehharan*, and they cover their Heads therewith, only as they go; so as that one part of it falling down on one side of the Head, passes under the Chin; and is fasten'd on the other side.

*Particulars of the Pilgrimage to Meca.* They commonly take their way through the City of *Jerusalem*, where they do their first Devotions. Thence they pass through *Medina*, where they continue them, at the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, which they kiss with a profound Veneration, and then they conclude them at *Meca*, or Mount *Arafat*. From *Medina* to *Meca*, they are cover'd only with a shirt, nay some go naked down to the waste. In this posture, they march continually, and after a very particular fashion. For they are oblig'd to go, after the rate of a trotting Horse, or rather that of a Camel galloping; and that with such earnestness, that they hardly take the leisure to eat and drink, or yet to sleep: and all, out of an imagination, that the Sweat caus'd by that Violent Motion, and forc'd out of their Bodies, carries away with it all their Sins, and cleanseth them of all their filthiness. The Women, who might not be able to bear the inconveniences of such a march, have the privilege to swath up their Breasts with a Skarf, which hath a particular name, and they call it *Scamachtze*.

The tenth day of the month of *Silhatza*, is that of their great Devotion. That day, all the Pilgrims go to Mount *Arafat*, which, they say, is the place where the Patriarch *Abraham* should have sacrific'd his Son, and there they spend the whole night in Prayers. Towards the dawning of the day, they come down, and go to the City of *Meca*, where their *Hetzas*, or High-Priest, makes a Procession, conducting through the chief streets a Camel, which is appointed for the Sacrifice. The Hair of this Camel is a very precious Relick among them; whence it comes, that the Pilgrims throng, to get as near as they can to the Beast, and to snatch off some of his Hair, which they fasten to their arms, as a very sacred thing. The *Hetzas*, after he hath walk'd the Beast sufficiently, leads him to the *Meydan*, that is, the great Market-place, and puts him into the hands of the Bailly, or Judge of the City, whom they call *Daroga*, who, attended by some other Officers, kills him with an Axe, giving him many blows in the Head, Neck, and Breast.

As soon as the Camel is dead, all the Pilgrims endeavour to get a piece of him, and throng with such earnestness and so confusedly, with Knives in their hands, that these Devotions are never concluded, but there are many Pilgrims kill'd and hurt, who are afterwards allow'd a place in their Martyrologies. After all these Ceremonies, they go in Procession about the *Mosquey*, they kiss a Stone, which was left after the finishing of the Structure, and they take of the Water, which passes through a Golden Chanel over the *Mosquey*, and carry it away as a Relick, with a little piece of a certain Blackish Wood, of which tooth-picks are commonly made. When the Pilgrims are return'd from their Pilgrimage they are called *Hatzi*, and they are as it were *Nazarites*, dedicated to God, in as much as it is unlawful for them to drink Wine ever after.

From this Pilgrimage, and the Sacrifice perform'd at *Meca*, we shall take occasion to insert here, what the *Persians* and *Turks* relate of that of *Abraham*, as *Mahomet* hath dress'd up the story, falsifying the truth of it in all its circumstances. They say in the first place, that *Abraham* was the son of *Azar*, who was Graver to *Nimroth*, King of *Egypt*, and that he married *Sara*, who was so beautiful a Woman, that the King having cast his eye on her, *Abraham* grew jealous, and carried her away into *Arabia*; but finding that she bore no Children, he there bought a Slave, named *Hagar*, whom he carnally knew, and, by her, had *Ismael*. *Hagar* being near her time, and not able any longer to endure the ill treatment she receiv'd from *Sara*, resolv'd to run away. *Abraham* coming to hear of her discontent, and fearing she might make away the Child, especially if she came to be deliver'd without the assistance of some other Women, follow'd her, and found her already deliver'd of a Son, who, dancing with his little feet upon the ground, had made way for a Spring to break forth. But the water of the Spring came forth

forth in such abundance, as also with such violence, that *Hagar* could make no use of it to quench her thirst, which was then very great. *Abraham* coming to the place, commanded the Spring to glide more gently, and to suffer that water might be drawn out of it to drink, and having thereupon stay'd the course of it with a little Bank of Sand, he took of it, to make *Hagar* and her child drink. The said Spring is, to this day, called *Semsem*, from *Abraham's* making use of that word to stay it. After this *Sara* pray'd to God with such earnestness, that he gave her her son *Isaac*. 1637.

Some time after *Ismael's* birth, the Angel *Gabriel* appear'd to *Abraham*, and told him, that God commanded him to build a house upon the River, which *Ismael* had given the rise to: in answer whereto, *Abraham* representing, that it was impossible for him to build any great structure in the midst of a Desert, where there was nothing but Sand; the Angel reply'd, that he should not be troubled at that, and that God would provide. Accordingly, *Abraham* was no sooner come to the place appointed him by the Angel, but Mount *Arafat* forc'd out of its quarries a great number of stones, which roll'd down from the top of the Mountain, to the side of the little River, where he built a house, which hath since been converted to a *Mosquey*, and is the same where the Pilgrims of *Meca* do their Devotions. The Structure being finish'd, there happened to be one single stone remaining, which began to speak, and to complain that it had been so unfortunate, as not to be employ'd in that Edifice. But *Abraham* told it, that it should so much the rather be comforted, in as much as it should one day be in greater Veneration than all the rest put together, and that all the faithfull who came to that place should kiss it. This is the stone we spoke of before. These people say, it was heretofore all white, and that the reason of its being now black, is, that it hath been constantly kiss'd through so many ages.

Some years after, the same Angel *Gabriel* appeared again to *Abraham*, who was grown a very rich and powerful man, and told him, that God intended to make the highest tryal that could be of his affection and gratitude, and that he would have him, in acknowledgement of so many favours, to sacrifice his son to him. *Abraham* immediately consented, and being return'd home, bid *Hagar* call up her son, and put on his best Cloaths, that he might be the better look'd on at the Wedding, to which he intended to carry him. They departed the next day betimes in the morning, and took their way towards Mount *Arafat*, *Abraham* carrying along with him a good sharp knife, and some Cords. But as soon as they were gone, *Sceithan*, that is to say, the Devil, represented himself to *Hagar*, in the shape of a man, reproach'd her with the easiness, wherewith she had consented, that her son *Ismael* should go from her, and told her, that what *Abraham* had related to her concerning the Wedding, to which he was to bring him, was pure forgery, and that he was carrying him streight to the Shambles. *Hagar* ask'd him why *Abraham* would use her so, since he had alwayes express'd a great tenderness to her son. The Devil made answer, that God had commanded it should be so; whereto *Hagar* reply'd, that since it was God's good pleasure to make that disposal of him, it was but fit she should comply therewith. Whereupon the Devil pressing harder upon her, and treating her as an unnatural Mother, endeavouring by those aggravations to bring her into rebellion against God, she pelted him away with stones. The Devil's endeavour proving unsuccessfull that way, and too weak to overcome the obstinacy of a woman, he apply'd himself to *Abraham*, reviv'd in him the tenderesses and affection of a Father, represented to him the horror of the murder he was going to commit, and remonstrated to him the little likelyhood there was, that God should be the Author of so barbarous and abominable an action. But *Abraham*, who was acquainted with the subtilty and artifices of that wicked spirit, sent him away, and to be the sooner rid of him, cast also a stone at him. The last attempt the Devil had to make, was, to represent to *Ismael* the horror of death, and the unnatural procedure of his Father: but he found the same treatment from him, as he had from the other two, and had a good stone flung at his head. The Father and Son being come to the top of the Mountain, *Abraham* said to his Son *Ismael*; My Son, I cannot imagine thou knowest the occasion of our journey, and the reason why I have brought thee to this place. It is only this, that God hath commanded me to sacrifice thee: whereto *Ismael* made answer, that since it was God's pleasure it should be so, his will be done, only let me entreat thee, Father, to grant me three things. The first is, that thou have a care to bind me so fast, that the pains of death may not engage me to attempt any thing against thee. The second is, that thou whet thy knife very well, and, after thou hast thrust it into my throat, that thou hold it very fast, and shut thy eyes, out of a fear the cruelty of the action dishearten thee from going through with it, and so leave me to languish a long time. And the third, that, when thou art returned home, thou remember my duty to my Mother.

*Abraham*, having promis'd to observe all these things, and whetted his knife, binds his son, directs the knife to his Throat, and, shutting his eyes, holds it as fast as he could: but finding, when he opened his eyes again, that the knife had made no entrance, he is extremely troubled, and tries the edge of it upon a stone, which he cuts in two. He was so astonish'd thereat, that he address'd himself to the Knife, and asked it, why, having so good an edge as to cut a stone, it could not as well cut his Sons Throat. The knife made answer, that God would not have it

1637. so. Whereupon the Angel *Gabriel* took *Abraham* by the hand, and said to him; Hold a little; God would only make tryal of thy faith, Unbind thy Son, and sacrifice this Hee-Goat; and immediately there came into the place a Hee-Goat, which *Abraham* offered to God, for a burnt-offering.

They affirm, that the three stones, which *Hagar*, *Abraham* and *Ishmael* cast at the Devil, are yet to be seen, near the High-way, between *Medina* and *Meca*, and that there are made there of two great heaps of stones, by the means of the Pilgrims, who bring every one three stones, to be cast at the Devil, at the same place where these heaps are, to the end he may not distract them in their Devotions.

Prayers for  
the dead.

We saw also the same day above five hundred Women, who were going before day to the Church-yard to weep over the Graves of their Husbands, and others of their Kinred. There were some who had somewhat to eat at the same time; others had some passages of the *Alchoran* read to them; and those of any quality had Tents pitch'd there, for their reception, that they might not be expos'd to the sight of all that pass'd by.

This kind of Devotion for the Dead is commonly performed in the time of their *Orut*, or *Lent*.

The Ambassadors were again that day treated out of *Schich-Sefi's* Kitchen. The meat was brought in, in six great Copper Vessels tinn'd over, which they call *Lenkeri*, and the Conserves, in nine great Vessels of Porcelain.

The Chan  
treats the  
Ambassa-  
dors.

The next day, the *Chan* treated them very Magnificently, at a Dinner he had provided in one of his Summer-houfes.

Acquaints  
them with  
the violent  
death of the  
Grand-  
Signior.

The 27. in the evening, the Governour communicated to the Ambassadors the good news he had received from *Chan Rustan*, General of the King of *Persia's* Army, who had writ to him, that the *Janizaries*, in a mutiny at *Constantinople*, had kill'd the Grand Signior, and imprison'd the most eminent Ministers of his Court. The *Persians* express'd their joy thereat, by the fire-works which the Governour order'd to be made, as also by the Musick, which echoed all over the City. The Ambassadors did the like on their part, with their great Guns, causing them to be fired six times over, and ordering the Trumpets to found, and the Drums to beat, while from the roof of their Lodgings they could see all the fires about the City.

The Governour was so well pleas'd to see that the Ambassadors concern'd themselves so much in the publick joy, that he sent them two flaggons of *Schiras* Wine, with a Glas-Vessel, full of Sugar-candy'd.

M A Y.

May the first, we Celebrated the Birth-day of the Ambassador *Crusius*, which was concluded at night with a Magnificent Supper, to which we had invited our *Mehemander Netzefbek*.

The Chan-  
cellor of  
*Persia's*  
son visits  
the Ambaf-  
sadors.

The 4. the Ambassadors receiv'd a visit from the son of *Saru-Taggi*, Chancellor of *Persia*, who was come purposely from *Ispahan*, accompany'd by some persons of quality, to see the Ambassadors. We entertain'd him with our Musick, which he seem'd to be much taken with, and treated him with a sumptuous Collation, during which, the great Guns were discharg'd, as often as there was any great health drunk.

A particu-  
lar Festival  
of the Per-  
sians.

May 14. the *Persians* began to Celebrate a mournful Festival, which they call *Aschur*, which signifies *ten*, in regard it lasts ten days, and begins with the Moon of the moneth *Maheram*. Of all the forts and Sects of *Mabumetans*, the *Persians* only Celebrate this Feast, in memory of *Hossein*, the youngest son of *Haly*, whom they account one of their greatest Saints. The Legends relate of him, that he was kill'd in the War he was engag'd in, against the *Calif Fesied*. He was at first (according to their story of him) troubled with an extraordinary thirst, in regard they had depriv'd him of all water. Afterwards, he had seventy two wounds, which he receiv'd by Arrows, and at last, *Senan ben anessi* run him through the body with a sword, and *Schemr Sultzansen* kill'd him out-right. That this Feast lasts ten dayes, proceeds hence; that *Hossein* having left *Medina* to go to *Kusa*, was, for ten days together, pursu'd by his Enemies, who treated him as we related before. During all that time, the *Persians* go in mourning, express much affliction, suffer not the Raour to come near their heads, though, at other times they make use of it every day, live very soberly, drink no Wine, and content themselves with Water. The whole City of *Ardebil* was taken up in these Ceremonies and extravagant Devotions. In the day time, the Children and young Lads assembled themselves in great companies up and down the streets, carrying in their hands great Banners, at the extremities whereof there were Snakes of Pastboard winding to and fro, much like *Mercury's* Caduceus. The *Persians* call them *Eschder*. They went to the Doors of their *Metzits*, or *Mosqueys*, and cry'd one after another *ja Hossein, ja Hossein*, that is, *O Hossein*. In the evening, especially the three last days of the Festival, after Sun-set, men did also meet in several places, under Tents, with abundance of Torches and Lanthorns, having at the tops of their Poles Orenge, as the Children of *Abdalla*, singing, and crying out as loud as they were able, their *ja Hossein*, and that with such violence, that it chang'd the colour of their countenances. Having sung thus about an hour, they return'd to the City, and went in Procession with their Banners and Torches,

A strange  
kind of  
Devotion.

through

through the principal streets. The tenth day concluded the Devotions of the Festival. In the morning there was an Oration made in honour of *Hossein*, with the same Ceremonies in a manner, as we had seen at the Festival of *Aly* at *Scamachie*. These Ceremonies were performed in the Court of the *Mesjar* of *Schich-Sefi*, where, near the Chancery, they had planted a Banner, which, as it is reported, was made by the daughter of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet*, who caus'd the Iron-work of it to be made of a horse-shoe, which had belong'd to one of the horses of *Abas*, Uncle to *Mahomet* by the Father side, which *Schich Sedredin*, the son of *Schich-Sefi*, had brought from *Medina* to *Ardebil*. They say, that this Banner shakes of it self, as often as they pronounce the name of *Hossein*, during the Sermon which is made in honour of him, and that when the Priest makes a recital of the particulars of his death, how he was wounded with seventy two Arrows, and how he fell down from his horse, it may be seen shaken by a secret agitation, but withall so violent, that, the staff breaking, it falls to the ground. I must confess, I saw no such thing, but the *Persians* affirm it so positively, that they think it should not be any way doubted.

1637.

A false miracle.

May 24. about noon, the Governour sent the Ambassadors notice, that they concluded the Festival that night, and that if they would be present at the Ceremonies which were to be performed, they should be very welcome, and he would take it for a great honour done him: but it must be with this condition, that, complying with the Law of the *Mussulmans*, they were not to expect any Wine at the Collation he intended to treat them withall.

In the cloze of the evening, the Ambassadors went to the Governour's Palace, who met them at the street door. And whereas the Ceremony was to be done in the Court, they were intreated to take their places on the left hand, where they had prepared Seats, cover'd with Tapistry, for them, and their Retinue, who would have been much troubled, to sit as the *Persians* do. There were set before them, upon a Cloath, wherewith they had cover'd the ground, several Vessels of Porcelain, with Sugar'd and Perfum'd waters, and, near the Table, brass Candlesticks, four foot high, with great Wax Candles in them, as also Lamps, fill'd with rags dipt in Suet and Naphte. The Governour took up his place at the entrance of the Court, on the right side of the Gate, and sat upon the ground. Our people had standing before them great Wooden Candlesticks, or Branches, holding each of them twenty or thirty Wax-Candles. There were fasten'd to the Walls thousands of Lamps, of Plaister, all fill'd with Suet and Naphte, which cast so great a light, that the house seem'd to be all on fire. They had drawn cross the Court certain Cords wherewith hung Paper-Lanterns, which gave not so full, but, without comparison, a more pleasant light, than that of the Lamps and Cresset-lights. The Inhabitants of *Ardebil* are distinguish'd into five quarters, or professions, who meet each by it self, and intreat some of their Poets, whereof there are a very great number in *Persia*, to write them some Verses, in commendation of *Aly* and *Hossein*, and making choice of those among them who sing best, they go and give the Governour a Serenade, who receives kindly, and bestows a Present of water sweetned with Sugar, on that band, which is most excellent, either as to its invention or Musick.

The last Ceremonies of the Festival.

Persian Poets.

These Musicians being come into the Court drew up in five bands, in so many several places, and presented themselves one after another before the Governour, but, for the space of two hours, they may be rather said to cry out and roar, than to sing: after which they all came by order from the Governour, to make a Complement to the Ambassadors, and wish'd them a happy journey, and good success in their Negotiation at the Court.

In the mean time, there were dancing at one place in the Court seven youths, all naked, excepting only those parts which modesty would not have seen by all. They called that kind of people *Tzatzaky*, and their bodies, from head to foot, were rubb'd over with Suet and Naphte, infomuch that their black skins being more shining than jet, they might very well be compar'd to so many little Devils. They had in their hands little stones, which they knock'd one against the other, and sometimes they smote their breast with them, to express their sorrow for the death of *Hossein*. These *Tzatzaky* are poor boys, who disguise themselves in that manner, to get some small matter by it, which is, that they are permitted, during the time of the Feast, to beg Alms for *Hossain's* sake. At night, they do not lodge at their Homes, but ly in the ashes which are brought out of *Schich-Sefi's* Kitchin. Some, instead of Suet, rub themselves with Vermilion, that they may make a more lively representation of the blood of *Hossein*: but, at this time, there were not any such. After these Ceremonies, the Governour entertain'd the Ambassadors with noble fire-works; which most of the *Persians* took very ill at his hands, and thought it not over religiously done of him, to give such Divertisements to the *Christians* during the time of their *Aschur*, which ought to represent only things conducing to sadness and affliction.

These fire-works consisted of several very excellent and ingenious inventions, as of little Castles, Towers, Squibs, Crackers, &c. The Castle, to which they first set fire, was three foot square, the Walls of Paper, of all sorts of Colours. They lighted first several small Wax-Candles about the moat of it, which discover'd the figures painted on the Paper. There came

Fire-works

ONE

1637. out of it Squibs and Crackers for an hour and a half, or better, before the Castle it self took fire. Then they set fire to another invention, which they call *Derbende*. It was a kind of Saucidge, about six Inches thick, and three foot long, casting, at first, at both ends, a shower of fire, and afterwards several Squibs and little Serpents, which falling among the people, set their Cotton Garments on fire; while they fir'd several sorts of Crackers, which in the air, were turn'd to Stars and other figures. They set fire also to several boxes; but what we most admir'd was a great kind of fire-work, which was fasten'd to the ground with great Iron Chains, and cast out fire at the mouth, with so dreadfull noise, that we were afraid it would have burst at last, and scatter its fiery entrails among the company. This fire-work they call *Kumbara*.

There were some, who carry'd Paper-Lanthorns upon long Poles, which were also fill'd with squibs and crackers: but what diverted us most of all, was; that, out of those Lanthorns, there came a piece of Linnen, which, being folded together, and ty'd up in knots, had, in each of those knots, several squibs, crackers and serpents, which having much ado to get out, made an admirable shew, by the windings which the fire made through all the folds of that piece of cloath. Others carried in their aprons, a certain compolition, into which some that pass'd by let fire fall, as it were negligently, whereupon, he who carried it shaking his apron, there came out a great number of Stars, which burnt a long time upon the ground.

In these Fire-works, the *Persians* make use of white *Naphte*, which is a kind of *Petroleum*: but in regard this Drugg is seldome found in *Europe*, there may be used, to the same effect, the spirit of *Turpentine* rectify'd. We saw also, at a great distance, in the air, certain flames, which vanish'd as soon in a manner as they appear'd. I conceive these flames proceeded from a certain Drugg, which the *Muscovites* call *Plaun*, which is a yellow powder made of a certain herb, commonly found upon the ground, in the Forests that are planted with Pines and Birch, and is properly called in Latin, *Acanthus*, in French, *Branche ursine*, in English, *Bears-foot*, or *Bears-britch*. Every stalk of this herb hath on it two Buttons, which are ripe in *August*, and then the *Muscovites* are very carefull to gather them, dry them in an Oven, beat them, and keep the powder which comes from them in Ox-bladders, to be sold by the pound. It is us'd also in Medicine, as being a drier, and is administr'd with good success in Wounds, and the Itch. But the *Muscovites* use it for the most part in their Divertisements, putting it into a Tin-box made like a Pyramid, into which they thrust that end of a Torch which is not lighted, and by that means make the powder come out, which being very small, immediately fastens on the flame, and is lighted, and disappears almost at the same time; so that continually thrusting in the Torch, a man makes ever and anon a new flame, which is very lively, and makes the nobler shew, in that it is not accompany'd with any smoke. This powder will not take fire, if it be not stirr'd after the foresaid manner: for if it be cast upon burning coals, or if a lighted candle be thrust into it, it would not take fire.

These Fire-works entertain'd us so long, that it was after mid-night ere we came to our Quarters, where we found not any thing colder than the Hearth; for out of a presumption, that the Governour would have treated us at Supper, there had been nothing provided at home.

The enter-  
ment of  
Hossein  
reprresented

The next day, very betimes in the Morning, before the Sun was to be seen over the Horizon, the *Persians* made a Procession, which was to represent the interment of *Hossein*. In this Procession there were carried a great many *Eshders* and Banners, and there were led several excellent Horses and Camels, cover'd with blew Cloath, in which were to be seen many Arrows quilted, as if they had been purposely shot into it, representing those which the Enemies had shot at *Hossein*. Upon these Horses rid so many Boyes, who had before them empty Coffins, upon which they had cast a little Straw, or Hay, and they represented the great affliction of the Children of *Hossein*. Upon some of those Horses, they had set fair Turbants, Cimitars, Bows, and Quivers, full of Arrows.

A bloody  
devotion.

As soon as the Sun was up, there might be seen in the base-Court, a very great number of men, who let themselves Blood in the arms, in so great quantity, that a man would have thought there had been many Oxen kill'd there. The young Lads slash'd and cut themselves above the Elbow, and clapping the Wounds with their hands, they made the Blood spurt out all over the Arm, and about the Body, and in that condition they ran up and down the City. This was done in remembrance of the effusion of the innocent Blood of *Hossein*; out of a persuasion, that, by this action, they expiated some part of their sins; which persuasion is the stronger, in as much as they are prepossess'd with an opinion, that those, who dye during this Festival, are infallibly saved. They speak also with the same assurance of their Salvation, who dye during the Festival of *Aly*, and in their Lent.

Ardebil  
described.

As concerning the City of *Ardebil*, which the *Turks* call *Ardevil*, and may be found in Maps under the name of *Ardonil*, it lies in the Province of *Adirbeitzan*, by the antients called *Media Major*, the chief Cities whereof are *Ardebil*, *Tabris*, or *Tauris*, *Merrague*, *Narschan*, *Miane*, *Urumi*, *Choi*, *Salmas*, &c. *Ardebil* is one of the most antient and most celebrated Cities

ties of all the Kingdome, not only by reason of the residence which several Kings of *Persia* made there, but also particularly upon this accompt, that *Schich Sefi*, Author of their Sect, liv'd and dy'd there. Some are of opinion, that it may be conjectur'd, from the History of *Quintus Curtius*, that it is the City which he calls *Arbela*. In this Citie are to be seen the Tombs and Monuments of the Kings of *Persia*; and it is a place of so great Traffick, that it may be justly numbred among the most considerable of all the East. The *Turkish* Language is much more common among the Inhabitants, than the *Persian*. I found the elevation of the Pole there, to be at thirty eight degrees, five minutes, and the longitude to be 82. degrees, 30. minutes. 1637.

It is seated in the midst of a great Plain which is above three Leagues about, and compass'd of all sides by a high Mountain like an Amphitheatre, the highest part whereof, called *Sabelhan*, which lies West-ward from the City, is alwayes cover'd with Snow. Towards the South-South-West, lies that Mountain of the Province of *Kiban*, which is called *Bakru*. It is from these Mountains it proceeds, that the Air there is sometimes extremely hot sometimes extremely cold; insomuch that even in *August*, they begin to be sensible of the inconveniences of Autumn, as also to be troubled with those Epidemical Diseases, which reign there every year, and commonly carry away a great number of persons. Nor was our Quarters free from them. For besides the great number of servants who fell sick, the Ambassador *Brugman* and our Physician lay in of a Feaver, but especially the latter, who was reduc'd to that lowness, that there was no hope of Life. In the greatest heat of the day, and exactly at noon, there rose a kind of a Whirle-wind, which fill'd the whole City with dust; but it lasted not above an hour. The rest of the day and night is calm, which gave occasion to the *Persian* Proverb, *Saba Ardebil, Nimrus Kardebil*, that is, *In the morning Ardebil, at noon, full of dust.*

Yet is it not the cold quality of the Climate, but its Situation that hinders the earth there to produce Wine, Melons, Citrons, Orenge, and Pomegranates, which are to be had in almost all the other Provinces of *Persia*. Apples, Pears, and Peaches thrive very well there. Which is to be understood of the City it self, and the Plain, in which it is seated: for the Air is incomparably more hot and more temperate at the foot of the Mountain; whence it comes, that, thereabouts, you have all sorts of Fruits, and the Trees, which, in *April*, do but begin to bud about *Ardebil*, were very forward at the Village of *Alaru*, at the foot of the Mountain *Bakru*. This particular of fruits only excepted, the soil thereabouts is very good, as well for arable Lands as Pastures: insomuch that the Plain, which is not very great, is able to maintain the Inhabitants of above sixty Villages, all which may be seen from the City. Besides all which, the Revenue which is rais'd for the King, from the *Arabian* and *Turkish* Shepherds, is very considerable, by reason of the Liberty allow'd them to feed their Cattel thereabouts, and to Trade therewith in those parts, after they have purchas'd the *Schach's* Protection, or embrac'd the Religion of the *Persians*. Some of the Clerks belonging to the Farmers of the Revenue assured me, that within fifteen dayes before, there had pass'd over the City-Bridge above a hundred thousand sheep, and for every sheep, they pay four *Kasbeki*, or two pence *sterl*, for their pasturage, and as much when the owner sells them. This last duty is called *Tzauanbeki*; and the other *Abschur Elefchur*, or the duty of Water and Herbage, which the *Turks* call in one word *Othbasch*. *The air not so warm as elsewhere.*

The City is somewhat, but very little, bigger than that of *Scamachie*, but hath no Walls. No House but hath its Garden, so that, seen at a distance, it seems rather a Forest, than a City. Yet are there no other Trees about it than Fruit-Trees, inasmuch as the Country producing no Wood fit for Building, nor indeed any for Firing, the Inhabitants are oblig'd to supply themselves, out of the Province of *Kilan*, which is six good dayes Journey distant from it. Within a League of the City, South-ward, lies a Village named *Scamasbu*, out of which rises a little River called *Balachlu*. Before it comes into the City, it divides it self into two branches, one whereof divides the City, and the other compasses it; and is joynd again to the other, and so fall together into the River *Karafu*. It is so apt to over-flow in the moneth of *April*, when the Snow upon the Mountains begins to dissolve, that if the Inhabitants of the Plain had not the industry to divert it by Trenches, which they make on that side which is towards the City, it would drown them all. *The fertility of its soil.*

Of such an inundation, there happened an Example in the time of *Schach Abas*, when the violence of the water having broken the Dikes, over-threw in a moment a great number of Houses; in regard, the Walls, being built only of Mortar and Bricks bak'd in the Sun, there is not any able to stand out against the least inundation: so that the River carried away their Householdstuff, nay many Children in their Cradles; as it had also near happened at the time of our being there, upon the 12. of *April*, when there were a thousand men at work day and night in making Channels, and in turning the River by means of a Trench, which was made in the plain upon the River side, which over-flow'd all the adjacent fields. The City besides a great number of narrow strees, hath five very fair and broad ones, named *Derwana*, *Tabar*, *Niardower*, *Kumbalan*, and *Kasirkuste*: in all which they have been at the pains of planting *Its Streets;*

1637. both sides with Elms and Linden-Trees, to have some shade against the excessive heats of the Climate.

Its Market-place.

The Sepulchre of Schich-Sefi a Sanctuary.

The Market-place, or *Maydan*, is large and noble, as being above three hundred paces in length, and a hundred and fifty in breadth, and having, on all sides, Shops so orderly dispos'd that no Merchandise, no Profession but hath its particular quarter. On the right hand as you come into it, you find, behind the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*, and the last Kings of *Persia*, a *Metzid* or *Mosquey*, in which lies interred *Iman Sade*, or one of the Children of their twelve Saints. Malefactors and Criminals may retire thither for a certain time, and thence easily get to the Monument of *Schich-Sefi*, which is their great Sanctuary. As you come out of the Market-place, you come to a place which they call *Basar*, where the first thing you meet with is a great square arched Building, called *Kaiserie*, where are sold all the precious Commodities of the Country, as Gold and Silver *Brocades*, and all sorts of precious stones, and silk stuffs. As you come out thence, you enter, by three Gates, into so many streets, cover'd over head, all beset with Shops, where are sold all sorts of Commodities. There are also in these streets, several *Caravanseras* or Store-houses, built for the convenience of foreign Merchants, as *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Indians*, &c. We saw there also two *Chineses*, who had brought thither, to be sold, Porcelane, and several things of *Lacque*.

Its Metzids or Mosqueys.

There are also in the City a very great number of publick Baths, and *Metzids*, the chiefest whereof is that which they call, *Metzid Adine*, which is seated upon a little Hill, as it were in the midst of the City, and hath a very fair Steeple. There, the greatest Devotions are done, on holy-days, and particularly on *Friday*, from which it derives the name. At the entrance of the *Metzid*, or Church, there is a Fountain, which the late *Saru Chotze*, otherwise called *Mahomet Rifa*, Chancellor of *Persia*; brought to that place, by a Chancel under ground, from the very source, which is in a Mountain above a League distant from the City, South-west-ward.

The Sumptuous Monuments of *Schich-Sefi*, and the last Kings of *Persia*, are near the *Meidan*. The *Persians* call that place, *Mesar*, and *Kebe-Chan*, Governour of the City did us the favour to let us into them, upon *Whitsun-Monday*. He sent us word before hand, that, since we were so desirous to see the holy Sepulchre, we must be oblig'd to abstain from *Vine* that day, and that our Supper should be brought us out of *Schich-Sefi's* Kitchen.

The Ambassadors visit Schich-Sefi's Sepulchre.

The Ambassadors went thither immediately after Dinner, attended by all their Retinue, and their Guards. The Gate, at which we entred, to get into the first Court, is a very large one, and above it there was a great silver Chain, reaching from one side to the other, at which there hung such another perpendicular in the middle. It is a Present, which *Agga-Chan*, Governour of *Merrague*, had, out of Devotion, made to the holy Sepulchre. This first Court is very spacious. and pav'd all over with broad stones, having on both sides great Vaults, where there are many Shops, and backwards a very fair publick Garden, open to all.

Lay down their Arms at the entrance.

The Governour, having receiv'd us in the Base-Court, brought us to another Gate, over which there was also a Silver-Chain like the former, and it was an expression of the Devotion of *Mahomed-Chan*, Governour of *Kentza*. At the entrance of this Gate, they demanded our Arms, it being not lawful to carry any, of any kind whatsoever, to the place where the Sepulchre is; infomuch that if a *Persian* were found but with a knife about him, it would cost him his life. The threshold of this Gate, as also of all the following Gates, was of white Marble, and round, and notice was given us not to set our foot upon it, but to step-over it, the right foot foremost, out of this reflection, that having been kiss'd by so many Millions of Millions of persons, it were, as they said, very irrational that our feet should prophane it. Thence we enter'd into another Court, which was at least as long as the first, but much narrower, and pav'd after the same manner, having vaults and shops on both sides as the other. On the right hand, there came out of the Wall, by a brass-Cock, a fair Fountain (the water whereof was brought a League distance thence) that they might drink, who retir'd thither out of Devotion. At the end of this Court, on the right hand, we were shew'd a very fair and spacious Vault arched above, pav'd without, with green and blew stones, and within, hung with Tapistry. In the midst of this Vault, there were two fair brass Candlesticks with lights in them. All along the Walls sat several Priests, cloath'd in white, who sung as loud as ever they were able, expressing a great humility, and an extraordinary Devotion, by a continual moving from one side to the other; which motion was performed by them all at the same time, and with the same shaking, and that with so much exactness, that a man would have thought they had been all fasten'd to the same Cord, and that they had been all drawn at the same time. This place is called *Thschillachane*, in regard *Schich-Sefi* retired thither every year, to fast, eating only, for 40 days together, but one Almond a day, at least if we may believe the Relations of the *Persians*. Thence, we pass'd through a third Gate, over which there hung also a Silver-Chain, bestow'd on the place, by *Alli-Chan*, Governour of *Kappan*, in another

Schich-Sefi's Fast of forty days.

ther Court which was less than the two precedent, and pav'd all over with little square-stones of several colours. We entred into the place where the Sepulchre was, by a Gate which was built like a great Tower, the Clappers whereof were all cover'd with plates of silver, and adorn'd with several Rings of the same Metal, which Gate brought us into a great Structure. The pavement before the Gate was cover'd with Tapistry, to expresse the holiness of the place; and we were told, that, for the said reason, it was expected, we should put off our shoes. 1637.

The Ambassadors, at first, made some difficulty to render that respect, to a place, for which they could not have any Veneration, but perceiving, that if they did it not, they would not have been permitted to go in, they at last resolv'd to comply with the custom. The *Persians*, to let them know, they did not any thing, that might abate ought of their Dignity, told them, that *Schach-Abas* himself, when he came to see the Sepulchre, many times, put off his shoes when he was come within half a League of the City, and came so far bare-foot; but that they could not expect that Devotion from us. We pass'd thence into a very fair spacious Gallery, hung, and cover'd with Tapistry: and afterwards, we entred by another Gate, cover'd with plates of Gold, into another Sumptuous Structure which was Arch'd all about. *Schach-Abas*, being upon the point of his departure, into the War he was then engag'd in against the *Usbeques Tartars*, made a vow, and promis'd, to bestow a Golden Gate on the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*, at *Ardebil*, and another upon *Iman Rifa's* at *Chorasan*, if his Armies had the success he expected: which vow he very religiously performed, immediately upon his return, having had all the advantages over his Enemies that his own heart could have wish'd. This Vault was about four fathom square, and was enlightned by a great number of Gold and Silver Lamps; among which there were some, above three foot Diameter. On both sides sat twelve *Hafifahns*, or Priests, having before them, upon Desks, great books of Parchment, wherein were written, in Capital *Arabian* Characters, certain Chapters of the *Alchoran*, which they sung, much after the same manner, as our Monks do their Vespers, but with the same motion as we had observ'd at the *Tschillachane*. Having gone through that Vault, we came to another apartment, which was divided from it only by a Silver Rail, though rais'd higher by three silver steps, to get up into it. The Governour, and our Interpreter *Rustan*, having kiss'd those steps, he went into it with the Ambassadors, who took along with them four persons of their Retinue. This apartment was much more richly adorn'd than any of the rest, and there was at one end of it another place rais'd a foot from the ground, the Rails whereof were of massy Gold. It is behind that Rail or Partition, that the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi* is to be seen, built of white Marble, and not of Gold, as some have written. It was cover'd with Crimfon Velvet, and rais'd three foot from the ground, being about nine foot in length, and four in breadth. From the Roof, there hung certain Lamps of Gold and Silver, and on both sides, two huge Candlesticks of massy Gold, in which there were set great Wax Candles, lighted in the night time.

The Door of that Golden Rail was lock'd, and though the Ambassadors were very importunate to have it opened, yet could they not prevail, the *Persians* telling them, that the Laicks, Laicks not permitted to approach even to the King himself, were not permitted to come within that place. In the same apartment, where we then were, was to be seen, on the left hand, in a particular Vault, the Sepulchre of *Schach Ismael*, the first of that name; as also that of *Scach-Sefi's* Wife, and those of some other Queens of *Persia*: but we were permitted to see no more of them, than we could discover at the meeting of the Curtains, which were drawn at the entrance of it: and from what we could judge thereof, there was nothing remarkable. There came all along after us a grave old man, who, with a perfuming-pot in his hand, purify'd the places, through which we had pass'd. the Sepulchre.

Having taken notice of all that was to be seen in that place, we were conducted through the same Gallery, towards the right hand, into another spacious apartment, which was Arch'd all about and Gilt; where we could not but admire the manner of its building, which being near as large as a fair Church, was nevertheless sustain'd by the strength of the Roof, and without Pillars. This Hall is called *Tzenetsera*, and serves for a Library. The books were lay'd in Drawers, shuffled one upon another, without any order, but otherwise well enough kept. A miraculous Vault. They were all Manuscripts, some, upon Parchment, others upon Paper, most in *Arabick*, and some in the *Persian* and *Turkish* Languages, but all excellently painted, richly bound, and cover'd with Plates of Gold and Silver, carv'd, and branch'd. The books of History were enrich'd with several representations in colours. In the Neeches of the Vault, there were above three or four hundred Vessels of Porcelane; some, so large, as that they contain'd above 40. quarts or Liqueur. These only are used at the entertainments, which are brought from the Sepulchre, to the King and other great Lords, who pass that way: for the holiness of that place permits not that they should make use of any Gold or Silver. Nay, it is reported of *Schich-Sefi*, that he, out of an excessive humility, made use onely of Wooden Dishes. The Library.

Thence we were brought to the Kitchen, the Door whereof was also cover'd with Plates of Silver, The Kitchen.



1637. Silver, and all things within it were so handsomly ordered, that it was not a little to be admir'd. The great Cauldrons were all set in a row, and seal'd within the Wall, along which pass'd a Pipe, which, by divers Cocks, supply'd all the Kitchin with water.

The Charity  
of the  
place.

The Cooks of all degrees had every one his place, according to their functions and employments. This Kitchin maintains every day above a thousand persons, accompting those belonging to the house, and the poor, among whom they distribute thrice a day, Pottage, Rice, and Meat; to wit, in the morning at six, at ten, and, in the after-noon at three. The two morning-meals are upon the accompt of *Schich-Sefi*, who, to that end, lay'd a foundation of fifty Crowns per diem; and the third is an Alms bestow'd there, by order from the King of *Persia*. Besides these, there are so many Alms distributed there upon the accompt of private persons, that there is not only enough to maintain the poor, but there is much over and above, which is sold to those who are asham'd to beg. At the time of these meals or distributions, they found two Timbrels, which, as they say, were brought from *Medina*, with the Banner of *Fatima*, by *Schach Sedredin*.

Sepulchres  
of the  
Kings of  
*Persia*.

Going out of the Kitchin, we entred into a very fair Garden, where we saw the Sepulchres of *Sulthan Aider*, *Schach-Tamas*, and several other Kings of *Persia*, which were in the open air, and without any thing over them, but a smooth stone. The principal Lords, whose Sepulchres are to be seen in this *Mejschaich*, are,

1. *Schich-Sefi*, the son of *Seid-Tzeibrail*.
2. *Schich-Sedredin*, the son of *Sefi*.
3. *Schich-Tzinid*, the son of *Sedredin*, whom some *European* Authors, erroneously call *Guined*.
4. *Sulthan Aider*, the son of *Tzinid*, who was fled alive by the *Turks*.
5. *Schich Aider*, the son of *Sulthan Aider*.
6. *Schach-Ismael*, the son of *Schich Aider*.
7. *Schach Tamas*, the son of *Schach-Ismael*.
8. *Schach-Ismael*, the second of that name, the son of *Schach-Tamas*.
9. *Schach-Mahomet Choddabende*, son of *Schach-Ismael*.
10. *Ismael Myrfa*, brother of *Choddabende*.
11. *Hemfa Myrfa*, {
12. *Schach Abas*, } sons of *Choddabende*.

A Fable.

*Schich-Sedredin* ordered his Sepulchre to be built, after the death of his Father, by an Architect, whom he had brought along with him from *Medina*, and according to a Model which he drew of it himself by Miracle (for the *Persians* affirm, that both he and his Father wrought many) which was, that having commanded the Architect to shut his eyes, he ravish'd him into an extasie, during which, he gave him a sight of the Model, according to which he would have that Structure built, and according to which it was afterwards done. *Schich-Tzinid*, adding thereto the great Court, and several Houses, augmented it so as that now it seems a very noble and spacious Castle, whither there comes every day so great a number of persons, to Discourse, or Walk, that there are few Princes Courts where there are more seen. The foundations of several Kings, its vast Revenues, and the Presents which are daily made thereto, do so augment the Wealth of it, that some conceive, its Treasure amounts to many Millions of Gold, and that, in case of necessity, this *Mesar* might raise and maintain a very powerfull Army, and that it would furnish more ready Money than the King could himself. Besides the Farms and Dairies which depend on it, it hath within the City of *Ardebil* two hundred Houses, nine publick Baths, eight *Caravanseras*, or Store-houses, that great Vault, which is called the *Kaiserie*, all the *Meydan*, with its Vaults and Shops, a hundred other Shops in the *Basar*, and the Market-places, where Cattel, Wheat, Salt, and Oyl are sold. The *Astafnischin*, or Reqraters and Hucksters, and those who sell Commodities in open Market, having neither Shops, nor Stalls, pay certain duties thereto. It is possess'd, about *Ardebil*, of thirty three Towns or Villages, and in the Province of *Serab*, of five Villages. In the City of *Tauris*, it hath sixty Houses, and a hundred Shops, and two Villages without the City; several *Caravanseras* and Baths, in the City of *Casuan*, as also in the Province of *Kilan* and *Astara*. The duties of *Abfchur* and *Elefchur*, in the Province of *Mokan* belong to it, and one moyety of those of *Chalchat*, *Kermeruth*, and *Hafchteruth*, not accounting what the *Tartars* and *Indians*, who make profession of the *Persian* Religion send thither, nor the Presents, which are brought from all parts, in consequence of the Vows, which they are wont to make, in great Journeys, in their Sickness, nay indeed in any business of Importance, which they very Religiously perform. Besides all these, there are so many Gifts, Donations and Legacies made to it, that there passes not a day, but a man shall see going thither Horses, Asses, Camels, Sheep, Money, and other things. All these things are receiv'd by two Persons, who are oblig'd by an Oath to be faithful to that sacred place, and they are called *Nessurtzchan*, from the word *Nesur*, which signifies

signifies a Vow, and they have an allowance out of the revenue of a fair Village, which is within half a League of the City, called *Sultanabath*; which was granted by *Schich Ismael*, to that purpose. These Commissaries are every day in an apartment on the left hand. as a man goes into the *Metzid Tzillachane*, and are set on both sides of a Chest or Box, cover'd with crimson Velvet, into which they put the Money that is brought them, as they do also that which arises by the sale of those Horses, Camels and Asses, which are bestow'd on the Sepulchre: for the Oxen and Sheep are kill'd, and distributed among the poor. They give those who bring them a small Present, which is a handful of Anniseed; and they are given to understand thereby, that their Souls shall enjoy serenity and blisse in the other World.

1637.  
Commissaries for the reception of the profits.

They also give the Pilgrims who come thither to do their Devotions, a Certificate of their being there, and of the Prayers they said there: which serves not only for a Testimony of the profession of their Religion, but also for a protection against several disgraces and misfortunes, nay, which is more, for the saving of their Lives. Accordingly, our Interpreter *Rustan*, having resolv'd to leave us, and fearing what might follow upon the complaint which the Ambassadors should make to the King of him, took three authentick Copies of such a Certificate, whereof two were found among his Cloaths, after his departure, and presented, at our return, by the Ambassador *Crusius*, to his Highness of *Holstein*, in whose Library, they are still to be seen.

The *Persians* call these Certificates *Sijaretname*, and they are given, not only here, at the Sepulchre of *Schich Sefi*, but also at *Meschet*, at that of *Iman Risa*, and these latter are as efficacious, and have the same authority as the former. Now that it may be understood how Certificates are able to save the Lives, either of a Malefactor, or a person fallen into disgrace at the Court, I shall here allege an example of it. Not long before the time of our Travels into those parts, it happened, that *Tzirra-Chan*, who was a person of quality, and one so highly in favour with *Schich-Sefi*, that he concluded a Marriage between him and one of the Ladies of his *Seraglio*, coming one day somewhat late to Dinner, the King ask'd him the reason of it, and said to him, smiling, that it must needs be the careles of his new Married Wife, kept him away so long. He had the boldness to make answer, that his Majesty had not mis'd the mark much, that indeed he had been dallying with a Woman, but that it had been with the Wife of *Agasi-Beg*, who was then in the room, and discharg'd the Office of Steward, when *Tzirra-Chan* told the story. The King was so startled at that insolence, that, blushing, out of vexation and shame together, he knew not how to lift up his eyes, to look on either of them: which *Tzerra-Chan* observing, and inferring thence, that he had said too much, rose from Table and went to his own House. As soon as the King had taken notice of his departure, he call'd *Agasi*, and said to him, *Thou hast seen, Agasi, after what manner Tzirra, not thinking it enough to have dishonour'd thy House, must needs make ostentation of his lewdness, and reproach thee with thy infamy, and have the confidence to do it in my presence: Go thy ways, and bring me his head.* *Agasi* obey'd, and went his way; but about some two hours after, the King much wondring to find that *Agasi* was not return'd, sends after him, to know what was become of him. The King had this account brought him, that *Tzirra* and *Agasi* had been found, like very good friends, making merry, and drinking together. Whereupon, the King not able to forbear laughing, cries out, *ja Kurrumfak, O the poor Cuckold*: but immediately after, reflecting on their procedure, and imagining, that it was a joynt design between them to put the affront upon him, and that they laugh'd at him in their sleeves; he Commanded *Aliculi-Chan*, Brother to *Rustan*, *Chan* of *Tauris*, *Divanbeg*, or Judge of the Province, to go and fetch both their heads. In the mean time, *Agasi* coming to himself, and considering that the King never jest-ed in things of that nature, and that he might well come to repent his neglect in executing his Commission, took leave of the company and withdrew; but *Tzirra*, confident of the King's favour, and presuming on the familiarity there had been between them, was so imprudent as to stay, as it were expecting the effects of his Prince's indignation, and had his Head cut off. *Agasi*, making his advantage of *Tzirra's* death, went in the mean time to the Sepulchre of *Iman Risa*, whence he brought one of those Certificates, wherewith, some moneths after, he presented himself before the King; who, perceiving him coming at a distance, could not forbear laughing, and said to him, *I commend thee for thy wit, my honest kind hearted Cuckold, go thy ways, I pardon thee for Iman Risa's sake; come, kiss my foot.* Thus did this *Sijaretname* or Certificate, save *Agasi Bek's* his life, who was afterwards entertain'd again into the *Schach's* service, not indeed in the quality of Steward, but only as a Gentleman belonging to his Chamber.

The confidence of a Favourite.

Insolence punished.

Yet is it not to be thought, but that these Secretaries, of whom such Certificates are obtained, are guilty of frauds and connivances in the disposal of them, by delivering them signed and sealed, with blanks to put in the names of such as may have occasion for them; as may be seen by the Copy which is in his Highness's Library at *Gottorp*. Of *Schich-Sefi*, his Life and Miracles, we shall give an account hereafter, when we come to treat of the Religion of the *Persians*.

1637. In the same Village of *Kelheran*, about a League and a half from *Ardebil*, there is another sumptuous sepulchre, built in honour of *Seid-Tzebrail*, the Father of *Schich-Sefi*. He was a poor Peasant, who not able to pretend to any thing particular, which might distinguish him from the other Inhabitants of the place, had also his Burial common with them. But *Sedredin*, finding the reputation of his Father's Sanctity so well establish'd, that it was become in a manner Hereditary in his Person, would needs have it return backwards to his Grand-father, and to that end, caus'd his Relicks to be uncover'd, and honour'd them with a Sepulchre, at the place where it is now to be seen. Some affirm, that in the same Tomb are kept the bones of *Seid-Sala*, and *Seid Knbedin*, Father and Grandfather of *Tzebrail*: but others would have all the honour done to *Seid Tzebrail* alone. And it is possible they may be all mistaken, it being very hard, that, after so many years, their bones and ashes could be distinguish'd from those of so many others.

The Tomb described.

The Tomb it self stood in the midst of a large Garden, and was built absolutely round, rais'd ten steps from the ground, adorn'd all about with glafs of all sorts of colours, which are preserv'd by Iron-grates, and had in the midst of its Roof, a great round Tower, built of blew and green Stones. Those of our retinue, who were desirous to go into it, were forc'd to leave their shoes and Boots at the door, as also their Swords and their Canes. The building within was of admirable Architecture. The Roof, which was Azure Gilt, was joyn'd by bowing-Pillars, through which the light came in. The floor was cover'd with the richest kind of Tapistry, and the Walls, which were open of all sides, had in them other little Partitions, or Vaults, where they taught Children to read and sing the *Alchoran*, so to enable them in time to become *Hafsans*, or Guardians of that Holy Sepulchre. We found here and there, upon little seats, Books lying open, in order to the singing of their Service, after the same manner as we had seen at the sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*. The Tomb was about a man's height, and an Ell and a half in breadth, of Joyners work, all the Junctures being done over with little plates of Copper, and all cover'd with a piece of green Velvet. Over the Tomb hung four Lamps, whereof two were of Gold, the other two of Silver, which two *Tziragts Chihan*, or snuffers, were oblig'd to light at the cloze of the Evening, and to keep in all Night. Over against the Tomb, there was a little Chapel, kept for the Sepulchre of several other persons of the same Family of *Schich-Sefi*.

The Governour of Ardebil administers an Oath to the religious men belonging to the Sepulchre.

From the sanctity of the place, it proceeds, that the *Chan* of *Ardebil*, administers an Oath to the Religious men of the place, for their fidelity thereto, as well as their allegiance to the King, as being oblig'd jointly to serve that Holy-sepulchre and the King; whence it may be infer'd, he hath a certain spiritual Jurisdiction as well as the temporal. As a privilege whereof, as also upon the accompt of the situation of his City, which is no Frontier, and consequently not subject to the invasion of the *Turk*, the Governour is freed of the charge of maintaining that number of soldiers, which the other Governours are oblig'd to raise and keep, out of the Revenue of their Governments.

His Retinue was very well ordered, not exceeding fifty persons, to whom his own Temperate Life serv'd for an Example. He treated us three several times, but was guilty of no excess, and seem'd to be very temperate in all things, save that he took abundance of Tobacco, sucking it through a Pipe of Cane which was put into a glafs of Water, according to the *Persian* mode, and drunk very much *Cahwa*, or *Coffee*, to moderate the insurrections of the Cod-piece.

Medicinal Waters.

What is most remarkable about *Ardebil*, is the sources of Medicinal waters, whereof there is a great number, and of several sorts, whether in order to Health or Divertisement, to which the *Chan* or Governour, proffer'd to bring us, and would have done it, had not the Ambassadors indisposition, who was then sick, prevented him.

What we can say of them upon the relations of the *Persians*, is, that, at the foot of the Mountain *Sebelan*, there is a source called *Serdebe*, over which *Sulfakar-Chan*, whom we mention'd before, built a spacious Vaulted apartment. Its water which is almost luke-warm, and as clear as it is possible water can be, makes a very pleasant Bath.

Sulphureous Sources.

Three Leagues thence, on the right side of the same Mountain, there is another source, the waters whereof are so Sulphureous and so corrupt, that they infect all the circumambient air. It is excellent good for the Itch, upon which accompt it is called *Abcotur*, a word which in the *Persian* Language signifies that disease.

Sources of hot water.

Out of the same Mountain, but from another part of it, there arise three other Springs of hot or boyling water, called *Meul*, *Daudan*, and *Randan*. The first rises out of a little Hill, between two sources of cold water. *Daudan* hath also not far from it a cold Spring, the water whereof is us'd to allay the contrary qualities, by the mixture of their waters, which are brought by several Conduits into the publick Baths. *Daudan* is admirable for the several effects it produces, being sometimes very wholesome, sometimes of no use at all. To know when it may be us'd with success, they travethis observation, that there may be seen in the water Serpents, which have on their heads other little white Serpents, set round about them like a Crown. When

Serpents discover the wholesomeness of the water.

there

there are none of these to be seen in it, the water hath no vertue, so that it is to no purpose to bath in it. 1637.

About half a League from the City, upon the right side of the High-way, there is a Pond, or rather a standing Pool, called *Schercol*, which is cover'd all over with great pieces of Salt-Peter and Salt, as with a crust of Ice, whither such as are troubled with the Itch, go and bath themselves.

Having staid two full moneths at *Ardebil*, the first of *June*, came thither a *Mehemander* named *Abasculi-Beg*, with orders from the King for our immediate departure thence, he being charg'd to bring us within six weeks to the Court, where he said the Ambassadors were with much impatience expected. But being himself an antient man, and consequently not fit to be over-earnest in travelling, he left with us his son, whose care it was to conduct us to *Ispahan*. These new orders oblig'd *Netzesbeg*, who had been our *Mehemander* from *Scamachie*, to take leave of us. We requited, in some measure, his civilities towards us, with a Present of four pair of Sables, five Ells of dark grey Cloath, four Ells of green Satin, the like quantity of blew Satin of *Genua*, and four bottles of *Aquavitæ*. JUNE! The King sends the Ambassadors another Conductor.

*Abasculi* did all that lay in his power to hasten our departure, and was so earnest to find us all necessary conveniences, that he caus'd the Horses and Camels to be brought to the very Doors of our Lodgings, the more to oblige us to send away the Baggage. But the Ambassador *Brugman*, who was resolv'd to have the brass-pieces, which he had kept till then, brought away along with us, would needs, in defiance of all perswasion to the contrary, have carriages made for them. Which to satisfie him in, the *Mehemander* was forc'd to make use of certain Trees, which were an Ornament to the City, after many remonstrances, of the impossibility which he told us we should meet with by the way, to draw Artillery after us. So that we found our selves insensibly engag'd to make a longer stay there than we expected; for, though they us'd all possible diligence to make the said Carriages, yet was our journey put off for eight dayes longer.

At last, all things being ready, there was sent to the *Chan* three pair of the best kind of Sables, whereof the *Persians* make very great account, a striking-Clock, a Chest, or Cellar, containing twelve bottles of *Ros Solis*, and two pictures, done by our own Painter, representing a Person of quality and a Lady, dress'd after the *French* mode. He sent back to the Ambassadors, each of them an excellent Horse, with their Bridles and Saddles, set out with Silver-plates, two pieces of Satin, one red, the other blew, one piece of Gold and Silver Brocado, one piece of Cotton-stuff, with flowers of silk, and a piece of Cushion Canvas, with flowers of gold and silver.

*June 10.* the *Mehemander* brought a hundred and sixty Horses, and twelve Camels, as well for the Baggage, as the six pieces of Artillery. The next day, we sent away both, and on the 12. followed our selves. The Ambassador *Brugman*, who was yet weak, though recover'd of his Fever, was carried in a Horse-Litter, and went away about five in the morning, attended by thirty persons of our Retinue. Most of the Inhabitants, who had no notice of our departure, and had never seen any Litter before, finding it cover'd with Cloath, and compass'd by men on Horse-back, imagin'd we were going to celebrate some Festival in the Country, and that the Litter carried the mysteries of our Religion. The Ambassador *Crusius* went away about eight, with the rest of the Retinue. *Kelbele-Chan* was gone before to a Garden, without the City, expecting the Ambassadors, that he might take leave of them, it being not their custom, no more than it is in some other places, to conduct Strangers at their departure, with the same Ceremonies as they had receiv'd them, withall, it being, according to their perswasion, an incivility, to bring such as they had before kindly entertain'd, out of their Lodgings. Accordingly, after we had travell'd about a League, we met him in the fields, and with him a *Sulthan* of *Tabris*, who being Marshal in the *Persian* Army, had about him a considerable number of people, who were all cover'd with Tygres and Lynx's skins, and by their countenances discover'd the quality of their Master. The Governour carried the Ambassador *Crusius* into the *Ottaks*, or Huts of the *Tartarian* shepherds, not much out of the High-way, whither he had brought abundance of cold Meat, Fruits and Conserves. They leave Ardebil.

Having taken leave of him, we prosecuted our journey, over a high and craggy Mountain, till we came to the Village of *Busum*, which lies in a bottom, four Leagues from *Ardebil*. There we over-took our Baggage and our Artillery; but the Wheels of the Carriages were so spent, that the Ambassador *Brugman* was, with much ado, perswaded, that it were more convenient to leave the six greater Pieces there, upon the promise made by the *Mehemander*, that he would get an order from the King to the Governour of *Ardebil*, to have them sent after us, and to that end, he took the bore and size of them. We took along with us the two little brass Pieces, weighing each of them 300. weight, and four murthering Pieces. The Chan takes leave of the Ambassadors.

*June* the 13. we continu'd our journey, through very bad way, and over Mountains with such dreadfull precipices, that not thinking it safe to trust the Beasts with the Litter, wherein the Ambassador *Brugman* lay, we had it carried by men. In the Vallies, we found many great Villages

1637. Villages and Huts, and excellent Meadows, all cover'd with fair Cattel. Having travell'd five Leagues, or better that day, we came at night to a Village called *Sengoa*, where we found a *Melik*, or Receiver general of the whole Province of *Chalcal*, which begins at that Village, and reaches as far as the River *Kislofein*. His name was *Bairdur*, and he had succeeded his Father in that employment, who had been so much in favour with *Schach-Abas*, that with one of the VWomen of his *Seraglio*, whom he married, he gave him two or three great Lordships.

The Province of Chalcal.

The corruption of the Persian Officers:

The 14. our way lay still over high Mountains, yet in our way, we pass'd through three Villages, where our *Mehemandar* fail'd not, according to his custom, to take up Hories, pretending they were for us, that the Countrey people might be oblig'd to redeem them. Having travell'd four *farsangs*, or leagues, we came into a very pleasant Valley, where we lodg'd near a delightfull Spring. And whereas we had some occasion to stay there till the next day at noon, I had the leasure to observe the height of the Sun there, and found, that we were at thirty seven degrees, and twenty minutes of the Line. In this place, we saw green Grass-Hoppers, which were above three Inches in length, and one and a half in compass.

Grass-hoppers.

The 15. presently after Dinner, we set forward on our journey, and the Ambassador *Brugman* finding himself a little more hearty, got on Horse-back with the rest. Before we got to the dreadful Mountain *Taurus*, which the *Persians* call *Perdelis*, we came to a bottom, which presented it self to our view like an Abyfs. We were two hours in getting down to it, and above three in getting out of it, though between the points of the Mountains, there seem'd not to be half a League distance. It is a most dangerous passage for Travellers, who are oblig'd to come in strong parties, for fear of falling into the hands of Robbers, who discover, at a distance, the number of passengers, and accordingly judge whether they can engage them, or must let them alone.

Kislofein.

There runs through the bottom the River *Kislofein*, which falls into it through Rocks and Precipices, with an inconceivable swiftness, and a noise that stuns the passengers. The waters of it are whitish; whence it comes that in the Province of *Kilan*, where it falls into the *Caspian* Sea, it is, in *Talisman*, called *Isferuth*. *Schach-Tamas* built a very fair Bridge over it, of Brick, containing nine Arches. The way was planted on both sides with wild Almond-Trees, Cypress, and *Sena*-Trees. Having cross'd the River, we came to the Ascent, which was very steepy, though it went still winding till it came to the top of the Mountain, and it was so hard to get up, that to advance ought, we were many times forc'd to step up as if we got up a pair of stairs: having in the mean time on our left hand, Precipices and Abysses so dreadful to look on, that the Mule of a *Muscovian* Ambassador falling down there, was never after seen or heard of: infomuch that thinking it not safe to ride it up, we alighted, and led our Horses.

By that time we were got to the top of the Mountain it was night, and that so dark, that we lost our way, in the absence of our *Mehemandar*, who had stay'd behind in some Villages in the bottom. We were gotten into very dangerous wayes, and went still a-foot, though the trouble we had been at, (which had put us all into a sweat) weariness, and the cold, which beat into our faces, might well have prevail'd with us to make use of our Horses. We were three whole hours, ere we overcame the darkness of the night, and all other imaginable inconveniences; but at last about midnight, we got to the Village of *Keintze*, four Leagues from our last Lodging. We stay'd there all the next day, as well in expectation of our *Mehemandar*, and to give our Horses a little rest, as to refresh our selves, after the precedent day's weariness, with the Divertisement, which Wine, our Musick, and the noise of our Artillery could afford us. We intended to give our *Mehemandar* a sharp reprehension, and reproach him with his negligence; but he soon stopp'd our mouths, telling us, that he could not but acknowledge himself oblig'd by his charge, to wait on the Ambassadors, and that he should not have neglected their service; but that he had not the heart to hear the injurious, and blasphemous expressions, which fell every foot from the Ambassador *Brugman*, which yet should not hinder him from taking order, that we should be plentifully supply'd with Provisions; wherein, to give him his due, he failed not, and contributed much to the good Cheer we made that day.

The Mehemandars complaint.

The 17. we left *Keintze*, after the mid-day's great heat was a little over: but our *Mehemandar*, instead of Conducting us along the High-way, made us turn on the right hand, and Lodg'd us in a Village, called *Hatzimir*, seated in a bottom, which was, of all sides, encompass'd with Rocks. The *Melik*, or Receiver of the place, treated us with certain Basins of fruit, Apricocks and Grapes, which were not fully ripe, and a sack of Wine, wherewith we made a Collation, which serv'd us for a Supper: for our Cook, presuming we should have kept the High-way, was gone before us with all the Provisions.

June 18. we got on Horse-back after Sermon, and Dinner, marching after the rate of a full trot, between two very steepy Hills, and we came about midnight to the Village of *Kamahl*, which is two leagues or better out of the High-way, and six from our last Lodging, and we were

were Lodg'd in several houses, scatter'd up and down, upon three hills. They had taken up for the Ambassadors a great unfurnish'd house, at the entrance of the Village; but finding there was no convenience at all for them, they refus'd to Lodge there; and having left two of their Guard upon the Avenues of the Village, to give an account of them to the rest of the Retinue, they took up other Lodgings, and we after their example, though the Country-people, who were surpriz'd at our unexpected arrival, and could not so soon get their Wives and Daughters out of the way, deny'd us entrance, and put us to the necessity of taking up Quarters by force, half-dead as we were with cold, and spent with hard travelling. But we were hardly laid down, hoping to rest our selves the remainder of that night, when our Trumpet sounding to horse, made us get out of our Beds, to see what the matter should be. Being come to the Trumpetter, he brought us to the Ambassadors Lodgings, where we understood that twenty *Persians* of the same Village, all hors'd, had set upon, abus'd, and dis-arm'd the Guard which the Ambassadors had left upon the Avenues of the Village, and that they had kill'd them, if our Steward, with the *Muscovian* Interpreter, who, by reason of his sickness, had not been able to follow us, had not come up to their relief, and made the *Persians* draw back, fearing there might be others coming after them. There was a Lieutenant with twenty Musketers commanded out, to clear the High-ways all about, and all the Retinue were Lodg'd as near as could be to the Ambassadors.

1637.  
The Persians set upon the Ambassadors Guard.

The 19. we continu'd in the same place, where we caus'd Tents to be pitch'd. Here our Secretary fell sick of a burning Feaver.

The next day, being the 20. we departed thence about two in the morning, and march'd all the Fore-noon, which was extremely hot, through a vast Plain, where we saw only barren and hearhy grounds. About noon we came to the little City of *Senkan*, six Leagues from *Casmahl*. The City is not enclos'd with a Wall, but is otherwise sufficiently well built. Within half a League of the City, we receiv'd from the Governour of *Sulthanie*, who was then in the City, a Present of certain Dishes of Apr cocks and Cowcubers, which were a great refreshment to us, in that excessive heat and sultriness of weather.

The City of Senkan.

At the extremity of the Suburbs we were met by thirty persons on Horse-back, well mounted, who receiv'd us in the name of the Governour of *Sulthanie*, whose name was *Sewinduc Sulthan*. Among these Gentlemen there was one, who, though he had neither hands nor feet, yet made a shift to guide his horse, with as much skill as any of the rest. He was son to one of the principal Inhabitants of the City, who had been heretofore much in favour with *Schach-Abas*, the Grand-father of *Schach-Sefi*, for his Poems, and other excellent Productions of his Understanding; upon the accompt whereof, he was so well respected at Court; that the King not only granted him the life of his son, who for some Crimes had deserv'd death, but would also continue him in his favour, contrary to the custom of the Country, according to which all the relations of a Malefactor, or unfortunate person, participate of his disgrace or misfortune. The young man had been guilty of strange debauches and extravagances, even to the Ravishing of Maids and Women in their houses, so often reiterated, that they became at last insupportable; so that the *Schach* ordered him, to have his hands and feet cut off, and caus'd the stumps of his arms and legs to be thrust into boyling Butter, to stop the blood. He had wooden hands, crooked at the extremities, wherewith he made a shift to hold his Bridle.

A Horse-man had neither hands nor feet.

The City of *Senkan* was heretofore of a considerable bigness, and famous for its Trading, before *Tamberlane* destroy'd it: but what reduc'd it to the condition it is in now, is the *Turk*, who hath taken and plunder'd it several times. Yet are there some very handsome houses in it, and those well furnish'd, in which we were entertain'd with much civility, and our sick people extremely well accommodated. The *Sulthan* came to visit the Ambassadors immediately after their arrival, and made his excuses that he had not met them; which was upon this score, that having been wounded in the shoulder at the siege of *Eruan*, and the wound being lately opened, he could not have waited on us in person. We sent to him our Physician and Chyrurgeon, who dress'd him; which he look'd on as so great a kindness, that he thought it not requital enough to send us a Present of several excellent Fruits, but he also doubled the ordinary allowance of our Provisions.

Senkari destroyed by Tamberlane.

All about this City, there are only Barren and Sandy grounds, which bring forth only Briars of about the height of a mans hand.

About half a League from it, there may be seen a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, which they call *Peydar Peijamber*, and reaches from North to South, towards *Kurdesthan*, where they may be seen, as they affirm, the Sepulchre of one of the most antient Prophets, from whom the Mountain derives its name. At the foot of this Mountain there is a very pleasant Valley, which is checquer'd up and down with a great number of Villages.

A branch of Mount Taurus.

June 21. having stay'd till the great Heat were over, we left *Senkan* after Sun-set, taking our way, by Moon-light, through a Plain of six Leagues, at the end whereof we came, with the Sun-rising, to *Sulthanie*. It had been so calm and cold in the Night, that we had hardly

Sulthanie. the

1637. the use of our Limbs, so that we had much ado to alight. This sudden change, from extreme cold, to the excessive heats of the next day, occasion'd the falling sick of fifteen persons of our retinue at the same time, all of a violent burning Feaver, the fits whereof were very frequent, accompany'd with a benum'dness of all the Members: but that misfortune hindred not but that they were set on horse-back, and though to avoid the heats of the day, we afterwards travel'd only by night, yet were they so far from over-mastering their former weariness, that they were brought lower and lower. Two of our Guards took occasion to fall out at this place, and fought a Duel, wherein one of the two, who was a Scotch-man, named *Thomas Craig*, was run into the Lights, near the Heart, of which VVound he lay long sick, but at last was Cur'd.

Its situa-  
tion.

Built by  
Choda-  
bende.

As to the City of *Sulthanie*, it lies at eighty four degrees, five minutes Longitude, and at thirty six degrees, thirty minutes Latitude, in a spacious Plain, which is not, as *Mr. Carwright* writes, encompass'd of all sides with a great Mountain; but it hath indeed on both sides, especially on the right hand, the Mountain of *Keidar*. It makes a great shew at a distance, by reason of some very sumptuous structures, and a great number of steeples, and great Pillars, which dazle the eye on the out-side; but within it is in a manner desolate, and when a man comes near it, he finds the Walls almost even with the ground. It was heretofore one of the greatest, and noblest Cities of all *Persia*, being above halt a League in length, as may be yet seen by the marks upon the way of *Hamedan*, half a League or better from the City, in a gate which hath belonging to it, and a Tower, which some affirm was heretofore part of the City Walls. *Sulthan Mabomet Chodabende*, having joyn'd to his other Territories some part of the *Indus*, as also of the *Usbeques*, and *Turky*, built it out of the ruins of the ancient City of *Tigranocerta*, and made it the seat of his Empire, from whom it derives the name of *Sulthania*: inasmuch as heretofore, the Kings of *Persia* were not called *Schachs*, as they are now, but they assum'd the quality of *Sulthan*, as the *Grand Seigneur* does. *Chotza Reschid*, King of *Persia*, whom *Jos. Barbarus* calls *Giansan*, destroy'd some part of the City of *Sulthania*, upon a Rebellion of the Inhabitants, and what he had left, *Tamberlane* made an end of. We saw there the ruins of a very fair Castle, which had serv'd the King for a Palace, and the City for a Cittadel, there being yet standing some part of its Walls, all built of square pieces of free-stone, and adorn'd with a great number of quadrangular Towers. The noblest buildings in it, or *Emerat*, is the *Metzid* or *Mosquey*, where is to be seen the Sepulchre of *Mahumed Chudabende*. It hath three gates, very much higher than those of *St. Marks* at *Venice*, and are not of Brass or Copper, as *Bizarrus* relates, but of Steel, polish'd, and wrought *Damask-wife*.

A likely  
story.

The greatest of the three gates, which is over against the *Meydan*, or Market-place, would not open, as they affirm, even though twenty of the strongest men could be chosen should endeavour all they could to thrust it open, if they do not pronounce these words, *Beask Aly Bukhscha*, that is, *be opened for Aly's sake*, and then the Gate turns to and fro upon its hinges, with so much ease, that, no Child but may open it. The whole roof which grows narrower and narrower up towards the top, is built with white and blew stones, which, in several places, have very fair Characters, and excellent Figures done upon them. One part of the structure was divided from the other by a brass Grate or Rail, for the Sepulchre of *Mahomet Chudabende*, making a kind of Quire, where we saw several old *Arabick* Books, above half an Ell square, having Letters as long as a man's finger, and black and golden Lines alternately. I made a shift to get some of the Leaves, which I still very carefully keep in the Prince's Library. It is some part of the Paraphrase upon the *Alchoran*, which they call, *Serats Elkulub*, or *Candle of the Heart*, and begins with a Fable, the relation whereof the Reader may haply think worth his reading. He says then, that God banish'd the Devils, and had shut Heaven Gate upon them, yet had they still a desire to know what the Angels did, and what they said of the good or ill fortunes of men, that they might give them notice thereof, by the means of Fortune-tellers and Sorcerers. To dive into these secrets, they thought the only way was to get up on one anothers shoulders, till such time as the last could put his Ear to Heaven-Gate. God perceiving their temerarious attempt, darted on the head of the foremost of them a Star, which is called in *Arabick* *Schihab*, which striking through all the Devils immediately reduc'd them to ashes: But that this judgement hinders not, but that sometimes the Devils make use of the same means, to endeavour to dive into the secrets of Paradise, though they are often punish'd for it. Thence is it, that when the *Persians* see one of those Meteors, which to our sight appear as Stars, and seem to fall down to the earth, they rejoyce thereat, and pronounce these words.

A Paraphrase of  
the Alchoran.

The Super-  
stition of  
the Persi-  
ans.

*Chodanike dascht mata es schitan,  
Heme busuchtend we ma Chalus sehudim.*

That is to say, *God of his goodness keep us from the Devil; they shall all be reduc'd to ashes, and we shall be delivered from them.*

The

The Sepulchre of *Sulthan Mahomed Chodabende* is to be seen through a grate of admirable workmanship, at the end of the Temple, on that side where the *Meherab* or Altar, stands. 1637.  
This grate is certainly one of the noblest things that are to be seen all over *Persia*, being made of *Indian Steel*, polish'd and wrought *Damask-wise*, the Barrs being about the bigness of a mans arm, and so neatly wrought that the Junctures are hardly discernable. Nay some affirm it is all of a piece, and that there were seven years spent in the doing of it, at the end whereof *Chodabende* had it transported from the *Indies*, together with the Gates of the *Mosquey*, to the place where they are now to be seen.

There were in the same *Emerat*, twenty brass Guns and a Mortar-piece, and among the rest, Artillery.  
four pieces of Battery, the others Culverings, all set upon carriages with four wheels. The Mortar-piece was mark'd with a spread Eagle, above which were these two Letters A. and Z. and under it an A. The Balls were of Marble. The Tower was built in the form of an Octogone, and compass'd about with a great Gallery, which had eight little Towers, up to which there was an ascent by eight low steps. At the entrance of the *Mosquey* there was a square Fountain, into which the water was brought from a Spring rising out of the Mountain *Keider*. There is also belonging to it a very fair Garden, and a Summer-house.

There is in the same City another fair *Mosquey*, founded by *Schach Ismael*, the first of that name. The entrance into it is through a very fair and large Gate, over which there is a round Tower: and the first thing offers it self to your view is a noble Pyramid, somewhat decay'd at the top, having about it eight fair Pillars of Marble. Then is it that you come into the *Mosquey* it self, which is very high and well arched, having a great number of Pillars which up-hold the Roof, with pleasant Galleries, and in the midst a rich Pulpit. This also hath a fair Garden belonging to it, in the midst whereof there is a Tower, whose point ends in a Pyramid.

These structures do in some measure oblige us to credit what *Paulus Jovius* sayes, in the 14. Tamberlane had a respect for the Mosqueys.  
Book of his History; as also what *F. Perodin* confirms, in the Life of *Tamberlane*, to wit, that that barbarous Commander, who over-ran all that lay in his way like a Torrent, yet express'd a certain respect for those things, which were, though out of superstition, accounted sacred.

Near this *Mosquey* there is also to be seen another great Gate, of free-stone, between two Pillars, twenty fathom high, which seems to be antique, and had been built at the Ceremonies of some Triumph; but it begins now to decay.

The City hath about six thousand Inhabitants, who wondred very much to hear us relate, that some of those who have published their Travels into *Persia*, would make the World believe, that the cold weather forc'd them in the Winter time to forsake the City, and change their Habitations. For, it is so far from being true, that there are many places in *Persia*, where the cold obliges the Inhabitants to change their Habitations, that, on the contrary, it is an effect ordinarily caus'd there by the Heat.

True indeed it is, that there are some places in that Kingdome, where the cold is very inconvenient, by reason of the scarcity of firing, as for instance, near *Ernan*, at a place called *Deraleskes*, as being seated between two Mountains, and especially at the Village of *Arpa*. But it is not so great as to oblige the Inhabitants to change their Habitations: for they only quit their upper Rooms, and retire into Cellars, built very deep under ground, not only to serve them for a place of retirement in the Winter time, against the cold, but also in Summer, against the heat.

June 25. we left *Sulthanie*, after we had staid there three dayes, which were spent up and down the Country, in getting us fresh Horses and Camels. The sick persons, who by reason of their weakness, were not able to ride on Horse-back, were dispos'd into such Chests, as the Women make use of when they travel. The Womens travel in great Chests  
The *Persians* call them *Kerzawhea*, and they are put on Camels backs, like Carriers packs. The Phylician and my self were set upon the same Camel, whereby we were put to two great inconveniences, one proceeding from the violent Motion caus'd by the going of that great Beast, which at every step, gave us a furious jolt; and the other, from the insupportable stink of the Camels, whereof there being but one Boy to guide eight or ten, they were ty'd one to another, and went all in a file, insomuch that the infectious smell of all that went before, came full into our Noses.

We departed two hours before Sun-rising, and travell'd that day six Leagues, through a very fertile Country, all arable and pasture Lands, leaving, on the left hand, the little Mountains called *Tzikitziki*, where the King of *Persia's* best Race-Horses and Mares for breed are kept. About noon we took up our Lodging at the Village of *Chorandah*, which lies on the side of a little River, having so many Trees and Gardens about it, that it is not without reason that name is given it, which signifies, a place of Pleasure.

The 26. we departed thence in the night, and travell'd five Leagues or better, over Mountains and Valleys.

The 27. we departed at mid-night, and, having travell'd five Leagues, we were got, by Sun-rising,



1637. rising, near the City of *Casuin*, or *Cashan*; but that the *Daruga*, who had the Command of it, might have the leisure to set his affairs in order for our entrance, our *Mehemander* carried us to a Village where we staid above two hours till such time as the *Daruga* came to receive us. This entrance was not accompany'd with the same Ceremonies as we had seen in other places, in regard the Governour, having not the dignity of *Chan*, could not express the same Magnificence. Yet was it handsom enough, in as much as the *Daruga* came attended by five or six hundred men, horse and foot. There came also to meet us an *Indian* Prince, accompany'd by some Gentlemen on horse-back of his own Countrey, and follow'd by a great number of Lacqueys and Pages. He came in a kind of Chariot, having one other person with him in it. The Chariot was drawn by two white Oxen, which had very short necks, and a bunch between the two shoulders, but they were as swift and manageable as our horses. The Chariot was cover'd above, and lay'd over two Wheels, which instead of an Axletree, turn'd upon a piece of Iron, made so crook'd at the middle, that it bore the weight of the whole Chariot. The Charioteer sat before, and guided the Oxen, fasten'd to a Beam, which was made fast to the Horns, with a Cord drawn through their Nostrils.

Being come within 500. paces of the City, we met with fifteen young Ladies, excellently well mounted, very richly clad in Cloath of Gold and Silver, &c. having Neck-laces of great Pearls about their necks, Pendants in their ears, and abundance of other Jewels. Their faces were to be seen, contrary to the custom of honest Women in *Persia*. Accordingly, we soon found, as well by their confident carriage, as the account given us of them, that they were some of the Eminent Curtezans about the City, who came to entertain us with the Divertisement of their Musick. They march'd before us, and sung, to the sound of certain Hawboyes, and Bag-pipes, that went before them, making a very extravagant kind of Harmony. And that we might be sure to see the City, we were carried quite through it, and Lodg'd on the other side thereof.

As we pass'd through the *Meydan*, we saw several persons playing on Timbrels, and Hawboyes, who, joinning with the other Musicians, accompany'd us to our Quarters. The people came also thither in great numbers, some of them having it put into their heads, that there were in the *Ketzawehas*, some great Beauties, whom we carried as Presents to the King: but when they saw sick persons with great beards coming out of them, they hung down their heads, and made all the haste they could away.

*The situation of Caswin.*  
*As the ancient Arfacia.*  
*Hath above 100000. Inhabitants.*  
*Its Language.*  
I found this City, conformably to the Calculation of the *Persians* and *Arabians*, at 85. degrees Longitude, and at 36. degrees, 15. minutes Latitude. It is one of the principal Cities of the Province of *Erak*, which is the antient *Parthia*, wherein is comprehended as well *Sulthania*, as all the other Cities, from this place as far as *Ispahan*. It was antiently called *Arfacia*, and it is seated in a great sandy Plain, having, within half a dayes journey of it, Westward, the great Mountain of *Elwend*, which reaches towards the South-west, as far as *Bagdat* or *Babylon*. The City is a *farfang*, or good *German* league in compass, but hath neither Walls, nor any Garrison kept in it, by reason it lies at so great a distance from the Frontiers. Yet hath it, with these disadvantages, above a hundred thousand Inhabitants, whereof, if there were occasion for them, a good part might be put into Arms. Their Language is the *Persian*, but somewhat different from the common Dialect, whence it comes that it is not so intelligible to the other *Persians*, being much after the rate that the *German* Language is to the *Hollanders*. The houses are all of Brick bak'd in the Sun, according to the *Persian* way, having not any Ornament without, but within, they are very well furnish'd, as to Vaults, Waincoats, Paintings, and other Household-stuff.

The Streets are not pav'd, whence it comes, that, upon the least wind, the City is fill'd with dust. It hath no other water than what is brought by aqueducts from the Mountain of *Elwend*, into Cesterns, wherein it is preserv'd. No house almost but hath a particular place for the keeping of Ice and Snow, for the Summer. We were forc'd to get into these, to avoid the excessive heat.

*The antient residence of the Kings of Persia.*  
Heretofore, the Kings of *Persia* had their ordinary residence at this place, at least, ever after *Schach Tamas* transferr'd the Seat of the Empire from *Tauris* to this City. Some attribute that translation to *Schach-Ismael*, though the continual Wars he was engag'd in, suffered him not to stay long in any one place. But it is not question'd but that he built the noble Palace which stands near the *Maidan*, which hath belonging to it a fair Garden, adorn'd as well without as within, with Guilding, Painting, and such other embellishments as are in use among the *Persians*.

*Its Palace.*  
There was another Garden opposite to this Palace, which was above half a league in compass, and had several little Structures within it. This was one of the most pleasant Gardens that I ever saw, not only by reason of the great number of all sorts of Trees, as Apples, Pears, Peaches, Apricocks, Pomegranates, Almonds, and other Fruit-trees, but also by reason of the fair walks of Cypress, and the Trees called *Tzinnar*, which gave us a very pleasant Prospect.

This City hath two great Market-places. *Cartwright* names the bigger of the two *Armaidan*, and says, that, in the *Persian* Language, it signifies a *Horse-market*. I could never find, that in any part of *Persia*, there was a Market, purposely for the buying and selling of Horses: whereupon, considering with my self that the *Persians*, who call, by the general name of *Maidan*, all those Markets, where all things are indifferently sold, I imagine, that Author's mistake proceeded hence, that, being ignorant of the *Arabick*, he read *Armaidan*, for *Almaidan*, *al*, being the Article, without which the *Persians* and *Arabians* never pronounce the word *Maidan*. The greater of these *Maidans*, or Market-places, is somewhat longer, but not so broad as that of *Ardebil*, and hath, on the South-side, several great places, built by some of the *Chans* and *Persian* Lords. The most magnificent amongst them are those of *Allawerdi-Chan*, Governour of *Schiras*; that of *Aliculi-Chan*, President of Justice; that of *Mahomet-Chan*, *Chan*, or Governour of *Kentze*; and that of *Sehich-Ahmed-Chan*, who was great Provoost in the reign of *Schach-Abas*. The other Market-place is called *Senke-Maidan*, and is towards the West part of the City. In both the Market-places, as also in the *Bazars*, or Shops and Store-houses, which are in the cover'd streets, there may be seen a great number of Merchants, and abundance of Commodities, which are to be bought there at a very reasonable rate.

I my self bought *Turqueses* there, which they call *Firuse*, and are found in great quantities near *Nisabur*, and *Firusky*, of about the bigness of a Pea, nay, some as big as little Beans, for two shillings, or two and six pence at the most. Rubies and Granates were also very cheap there.

In the Evening, after the shops are shut, there is, on the East-side, another kind of Commodity expos'd to sale, to wit, a considerable number of the *Cahbeha*, or common Traders, who there prostitute themselves to any that will take them up. They all sit in a row, having their faces cover'd with a Veil, and behind them there stands a Bawd, whom they call *Delal*, who hath by her a bed, and a quilted coverlet, and holds in her hand a Candle unlighted, which, when any Customer comes, she presently lights, that he may look the Wench in the face, and order her to follow him, whom he likes best among them.

On the East-side of the City lies the Church-yard, where there is to be seen, in a fair *Mosquey*, the Sepulchre of *Schahesade Houssein*, one of the sons of *Houssein*, at which the Oaths taken in Law-sutes are administr'd; a custom which is also observed in all other parts of *Persia*, at the places where there are any Sepulchres of Saints, or those of any of their kinred. Whence it comes, that the *Persians*, when they make some difficulty of crediting what is said to them, immediately ask, *Schah Sade Houssein, pile Mussef*; that is, *dar'st thou affirm that upon the Saints Sepulchre, or upon the Alchoran?* Besides this *Mosquey* or *Metzit*, there are about fifty more, the chiefest whereof is that which they call *Tzame Metzid*, where they assemble on *Fridays* to say their prayers.

There are also in the City of *Caswin* many *Caravanserases*, for the convenience of foreign Merchants, and a great number of publick Baths. There is one behind the Garden belonging to the King's Palace, which they call *Haman Charabe*. It is now half destroy'd, and there is a story told of it, which I conceive pleasant enough to deserve insertion into this Relation. They say, that there lived heretofore at *Caswin* a very famous Physician, named *Lokman*, a black *Arabian*, who had acquired so great reputation, not only by the Books he had written in Medicine, but also by many other excellent productions of his understanding, that the Inhabitants have still a very great Veneration for his memory. Nay it is to be found in their *Kulusshan*, that they gave him the surname of *Wise*, when in the 2. Book, ch. 16. they say, *Lokman hakimra kufstendi Edebeski amuchti? Kust, es biedbahn. Herstze ischan kerdend, men pertis Kerdem*. That is, *that the wise Lokman, being asked one day by what means he had attain'd so great Learning and Knowledge, he made answer, it was by means of the ignorant and uncivil, for he had always done what was contrary to what he had seen them do*. This *Lokman* having attain'd a great age, and being upon his death-bed, sent for his Son, and told him, that he would leave him an inestimable Treasure, and having commanded to be brought him three Glasses, full of certain Medicinal waters, he said they had the vertue to raise up a Dead man to Life, if they were apply'd before the body began to corrupt. That, casting upon the Deceas'd the water which was in the first Glas, the Soul would return into the Body, that, upon the pouring of the second, the Body would stand upright; and that upon the third, the Person would be absolutely alive, and should do all things as before; that however he had very seldom made use of this Experiment, out of a fear of committing a sin, by undertaking to intermeddle with that which is reserv'd to God alone; and that out of the same Consideration, he exhorted him to be very careful how he made use of it, as being a secret rather to be admir'd, than put often to experience. With these exhortations *Lokman* dying, his Son was very mindful of the advice he had given him, and pretending the same tenderness of Conscience as his Father had express'd before him, he reserv'd the Glasses till he might have occasion to make tryal of them upon himself. Accordingly being at the point of Death, he commanded a man that waited on him,

1637. him, to make use of those Glasses, as his Father had taught him. The man having caus'd his Master's Body to be brought into the Bath we spoke of before, poured upon it the two first Glasses, which wrought the effect, which *Lokyman* had promised they should; insomuch that the Master sitting up, and impatient to return to Life, cries out, *bris, bris*, that is to say, *pour, pour*; at which words the fellow was so frightned, that he let the third Glas fall down to the ground; so that the unfortunate *Lokyman Sade* was forc'd to lye down again, and take the Journey which all other Mortals do. The *Persians* confidently affirm, that, near this ruinous Bath, that Voice of *bris, bris*, is still many times heard. They relate several other stories of this *Lokyman*, but I shall forbear any account of them, thinking it enough to have produced one, to shew the vanity of all the rest.

Rifa a  
false Pro-  
phet.

Some years since, in the time of King *Abas*, a certain man named *Rifa*, began to take up- on him the quality of *Schich*, or Prophet, and to broach a new Doctrine, imagining he might in time, acquire the same credit and authority, as had before rais'd *Schich-Sefi* to so great reputation. The humour of the *Persians*, who are extremely addicted to novelty, brought after him, in a short time, above thirty thousand men, who, cajoll'd by the apparent sanctity of this new Prophet, were become followers of him. *Schach-Abas*, fearing this novelty might disturb the quiet of his Country, sent for *Rifa*, making him believe, that he was desirous to be instructed in the particulars of his Doctrine: but when he was come, the King commanded him to confirm it by miracles, which *Rifa* not able to do, he put him to death as an Impostor.

The History  
of the In-  
dian Prince

It will not be amiss here to give some accompt how the *Indian Prince* came to live at *Caswin*, when we came into those parts. The great *Mogul*, who liv'd in the time of *Schach-Abas*, left, at his Death, two Sons: The elder, who succeeded the Father, soon after died, leaving behind him only that *Myrsa Polagi*, whom we found at *Caswin*, who was but very young when his Father died. *Choram*, youngest Son of that *Mogul*, and Uncle to young *Polagi*, took his advantage of that Conjunction, to usurp the Crown, and accordingly he was King of *Indosthan* at the time of our Travels into *Persia*. The cruelty of *Choram's* reign, and the mild nature and inclinations of *Polagi*, who in the mean time was arriv'd to a considerable age, drew upon him the affections of the People, and the hatred of his Uncle. In so much, that *Choram*, perceiving that it was the design of the *Indians* to bring his Nephew into the Throne, would prevent them, by dispatching *Polagi* out of the way, who having notice of his Uncles wicked intentions against him, retires into *Persia*, and puts himself under the *Schach's* Protection. All the time before, his Residence had been at *Ispahan*, where the King allow'd him a pension of 12000 Crowns *per an.* but he was oblig'd then to retire to *Caswin*, by reason of a solemn Embassy, which the *Mogul* sent to the King of *Persia*, purposely to demand him; though that during the space of three years that the said Ambassador had been there, he had not prevail'd to have him delivered up.

The Kings of *Persia* live in perpetual jealousy of the *Indians*, with whom they never have any assured peace, by reason of the Frontiers of *Candahar*, which finds Exercise for both sides, as those of *Babylon* do on the *Turks* side: insomuch that the *Persians* take their advantage of any occasion, to foment the discontents of the *Grandees*, as they do any other distractions tending to Civil War. Whence it comes, that they never deny their Protection to the *Indian Princes*, who are willing to retire into *Persia*, to oblige by that means the *Mogul* to assist them against the *Turks*, and to continue the Commerce, which the *Persians* have with the *Indians*, from which *Persia* derives so great advantages, that the obstruction thereof would be an infinite loss to it. There are several instances of these Protections under *Schach-Ismael*, and *Schach-Tamas*. Under the reign of the latter it happened, that *Selim*, who, as eldest of the House, had succeeded his Father, died soon after, leaving only one Son, very young, named *Humajun*. *Tzelaledin Ekber*, younger Brother to the Deceas'd, who slighting the infancy of his Nephew, takes possession of the Scepter, and the more to assure himself thereof, he had a design to murder the right heir of the Crown. *Humajun* had notice of it, and got to *Persia*. *Tzelaledin* hearing of it, sent to demand him, with this message to the King of *Persia*, that if he sent him not back, he would come and fetch him away with all the forces of his Kingdom. *Schach-Tamas*, who was then engag'd in an open War against the *Turks*, not thinking it prudence to disoblige so powerful an Enemy, caus'd *Humajun* to be hidden, and that he might not make a false Oath, when he was to give an answer to the Embassy of *Tzelaledin*, he put him into a Cage, and caus'd that to be hung in a Tree, while he was to give Audience to the Ambassador, to whom he protested, that, *Humajun nist der chakimen*; *Humajun is not upon my Lands*, and dismiss'd the Ambassador with that answer. But having, afterwards, made a Peace with the *Turks*, he sent *Humajun* with a powerful Army, commanded by *Mehediculi Sulthan*, against *Tzelaledin*, who was so startled to find himself set upon by so strong an Enemy, that he was forc'd to run away. *Humajun* desirous to requite the services of *Mehediculi*, bestow'd on him Lordships and great wealth in the Province of *Kulkende*, where he settled himself, with the consent of *Schach-Tamas*, and where his Posterity still live in much credit and authority.

Schach-  
Tamas's  
evasjon.

The Ambassadors sent some of the retinue to visit the Prince *Polagi*, who receiv'd them, sitting on a cushion of Velvet, near a Fountain, about the border of whose Balin there was cast pieces of Tapistry, the ground-work Gold and Silver, and he had about him a great number of Servants and Domesticks. He took this for so great a civility and kindness from the Ambassadors, that he thought it not enough to express how sensible he was thereof in words, but would needs treat those that had been sent to him with a Collation of Wine and Fruits, and told them, that being not in a condition to entertain them, as he wish'd, out of his own Estate, he was forc'd to borrow of the Kings favours to make them that treatment. The Ambassadors intended to have given him a personal visit, but the *Persians* would by no means permit it, alleging it was against the custom of the Country; where Ambassadors are not permitted to make any Visits before they have had audience of the King.

1637.  
The Ambassadors send to visit the Indian Prince.

July 2. the *Daruga* invited the Ambassadors to a Divertisement, which he had appointed to be made on purpose for them. It was to be seen in the great *Maidan*, or Market-place, where he had caused Tents to be pitch'd, to keep off the heat of the Sun, and some part of it to be sprinkled with water, to avoid the inconvenience of the dust. Having dispos'd the people into a ring all about the place, and seated the Ambassadors on high seats, there came in, first, certain persons who were excellent at Vaulting and shewing feats of Activity. After them came in three pair of Wrestlers, most naked, having nothing cover'd about them, but what nature would have to be so. Only two among them had Leathern drawers on, done over with Oyl, who discover'd a miraculous activity and strength of Body. After these had shewn all could be expected from persons of their quality, there were brought in two Rams, which run very furiously one at the other; as also two Birds, somewhat bigger than Parrots, which fought with great animosity. After these, there came in, with the noise of Timbrels, eight Wolves of extraordinary bigness, fasten'd to long Ropes, which they let out five or six times one after another among the people, but drew them back ere they did any hurt. And at last came in a man cover'd with a thick Mattress, who went boldly to one of the Wolves, took him up by the Body, and carried him away.

JULY  
The Governour gives the Ambassadors a Divertisement.

The Prince *Polagi* would have given us the Divertisement of his Elephant, which he sent for to be brought thither; but he being then at *Grafs*, it was so long ere they could bring him, that the Ambassadors, who were already weary of a Divertisement, which had lasted but too long, and found themselves prejudic'd by the heat, went home to their Quarters. Some dayes afterwards, we had a sight of that Elephant, at the Prince's Lodgings, and we were not a little astonish'd at his monstrous bulk, which exceeded the height of any two men, as being indeed without comparison much bigger than any of those we afterwards saw at *Ispahan*, where there was a great number of them. His legs were bigger than any man about the waste, and his ears came down along his head, half an ell in length, or better. He could do many tricks, and was govern'd by a little Boy, who by touching him in the fore-head with a little pole-axe, very sharp at the point, guided him, and made him lye down and rise up as he pleas'd. Whence may be corrected the Errour of the ancients, who were of opinion, that the Elephant could not lye down, as having no joynts in his Legs, and that that natural defect was the occasion of his taking, when coming to rest himself against Trees half sawn asunder, his weight forc'd them down, and that falling with them, he was not able to rise again. Those, who have written of the affairs of the *Indies*, have given an account of the manner how they are taken, and therefore we shall forbear troubling the Reader with it here.

Elephants;  
An error of the Ancients.

The City of *Caswin* hath, towards the South-South-west, the Mountain of *Elwend*, which is a branch of Mount *Taurus*, and the most considerable Mountain of any in *Persia*, for its vast and noble quarries, out of which white Marble is gotten, whereof there is such abundance, that there is enough to supply the whole Kingdome. The *Persians* relate a pleasant story of a thing, which, were it true, would be very remarkable; but admitting it is not, we shall nevertheless insert it here, as we have it from them, upon occasion of this Mountain.

The Mountain of Elwend.

They say then, that, heretofore, a certain King of *Persia* named *Subak Maran*, who was much pleas'd in taking journeys up and down, would needs once find out some means to have made in the open fields, some *Fauchas*, which is a kind of baked paste, used by the *Persians* instead of Napkins. The Devil, desirous to make his advantage of this irregular desire of the Kings, presented himself to him in the shape of a man, made him an Oven, which a Camel might easily carry, and desir'd of him no other reward, than that he might kiss the King's shoulder. There was no difficulty made to grant him a thing of so little consequence; but the Devil, instead of kissing the King's shoulder, apply'd his teeth thereto, takes away a piece of it, and immediately vanishes. Out of the wound, there came two Serpents, which were perpetually biting at the head and ears of that miserable Prince, to get out his brains; and though they were often cut off, yet there immediately started up others in their room. The Devil, who had done all the mischief, having disguis'd himself like a *Hakim*, or Physician, went and made proffer of his service at the Court, and prescrib'd a remedy, which was as bad, if not worse, than the evil it self. He said, that since those Serpents were so desirous to feed on the brains of a man,

A pleasant story.

1637. a man, and that, as it should seem, it was their only sustenance, the best course were, every day, to kill two men, and to feed them with their brains. One of the chiefest Grandees about the Court, moved with compassion, to see daily so much innocent Blood spilt, and considering, that by the means of so many murthers, the number of the King's Subjects would be infinitely diminish'd, ordered that there should be two men brought to the Stake, as they were wont before, but that only one should be kill'd, and that with the mans brains, those of a Sheep, then also new kill'd, should be mixt, and that that should be the allowance of the Serpents. Which project took so successfully, that the said Lord perceiving, that the Serpents were not sensible thereof, he, at last, caus'd the two men to be convey'd out of the way, and made use only of sheeps brain. Among those who had most contributed to the nourishment of these Beasts, a Black-Smith, named *Churdek*, was one, by which means almost all his Children had been upon that accompt destroy'd; so that, of seventy six Sons, that he had had, only two were left. Growing desperate upon so great a loss, he represented to the other Inhabitants of the City, that it was impossible for them to endure that Tyranny long; that there was no likelihood nature should have brought them all into the world, to be sacrific'd to the appetite of one particular man; that it were better to rid themselves of the Tyrant, and in regard the State could not be without a Governour, that it was his advice, they should bring in *Kechosrow ben Fridun*, who had been put out by *Subak*, and was then Living, in the Deserts of the Mountain of *Elwend*. This Counsell was approv'd by the people, who desirous to have it put in Execution by the person who had given it, entrusted the Black-Smith with the management of that great enterprize, who, having fasten'd his Leathern apron to an Iron hook, led on the rest of the Malecontents, and seiz'd the Person of *Subak*. They went afterwards to the Mountain of *Elwend*, where they found *Kechosrow* among the wild Beasts, and restor'd him to his Throne. The first request that *Kechosrow* made to the people was, that *Subak* might not be put to death; which was granted, but they carried him to the Mountain of *Demawend*, which reaches from that of *Elwend*, towards *Teberan*, where they made him go into a Cave, and hung him up by the feet. They say, he is there Living to this day, and that the place of his punishment is known by a sulphureous stink that comes out of it. Whereto they add, that when a stone is cast into the Cave, there comes out a voice, which sayes *Tzira miseni mera?* that is, *Why dost thou sling stones at me?* They say also, that *Kechosrow* so regulated his expences, during the whole time of his Reign, that he gather'd vast Treasures together, and that he put it up in the Mountain *Bakru* in the Province of *Kilan*, hiding it so safely, by the means of a *Thelesmat* or *Talisman*, that, till there happen a Conjunction of the same Stars, it will never be discover'd. They say the place is known, but that when any come near it, there arise certain winds, which not only blow out the lights, but also overturn the men who bring them.

But the truth of all this story, is, that there are many Sulphureous Mines in those Mountains, and that the winds, which reign there, are very natural, and ordinary, as well there as in several other Provinces of *Persia*; as we had observ'd before at *Ardebil*. Nor is it unlikely that there may be a mystical sense of this relation, and that the *Persians*, who are much addicted to teach their Morality under Fables, would, by this fabulous History, condemn those Princes, who, to satisfy their irregular passions, are apt to hear flatterers, who being ever guilty of wicked intentions, never give any good advice, and, to prevent the inconveniences arising thereby, apply remedies that are much more dangerous than the evil it self, and such as not only are destructive to the people, but also putting them into despair, animate them into rebellion against their Princes, who are, by that means, brought to great misfortunes.

*The Ambassadors leave Caswin.* July 13. we left *Caswin*; the sick persons and the Baggage were sent away in the evening, the Ambassadors follow'd the same night. The next day, the 14. having travell'd through a Plain of three Leagues, we came to the Village of *Membre*, whereof all the Houses were cover'd like Vaults, so that looking on it at a distance, the whole Village seem'd to consist of so many Ovens. The Ambassador *Crusius*, the principal person of the Embassy, began, at this place, to complain of some indisposition: insomuch that, not being able any longer to ride on Horse-back, he was for some dayes following carried in a Litter. Our Minister was grown so weak, that, not able to endure the jolting of the Horse, he alighted ever and anon, and lay upon the ground, thinking by that means to get some ease. Monsieur *Mandeflo* was the only person, who had no touch of any sickness all along our Travels; whence it came, that he had the more convenience of observing all the particulars thereof; which he hath done with so much exactness, that his Notes might make a considerable Volume.

We travell'd that night seven Leagues, and were got the next day, being the 15. very betimes in the morning, to a fair Village, named *Araseng*. We found there, in a Garden which was seated on the right side of a Torrent, good store of Pomegranates and Almonds, which were a great refreshment to us. In the evening, we prosecuted our travels, and got six Leagues further, over a very smooth Mountain, and Lodg'd the 16. in the morning, at a *Caravanfera*, named *Choskernu*. It was all built of Free-stone, and had several Vaults and Chambers, dispos'd all about a spacious Court, in the midst whereof there was a Well, compass'd by an Iron-rail. Upon the

the Walls of several Rooms, were to be seen the names and devises of several persons of most Nations, who, it seems, had been desirous to leave there behind them some marks of their passage that way. We departed thence about four in the afternoon, and travell'd, that night, nine leagues. 1637.

The 17, we came betimes in the morning, in sight of *Saba*, but in regard the Sun was not yet up, we made a halt at some distance from the City, to give them time to come out and receive us.

The *Persians* put this City at 85 degrees Longitude, and 35 Latitude; but I found it at 34 degrees, 56 minutes. It is seated in a spacious Plain, within sight of the Mountain of *Elwend*, which may be discover'd thence, by reason of its height, which reaches in a manner to the Clouds. The ruins of the City of *Rhei* are under the same parallel with that of *Saba*, from which it is a good days journey distant, towards the East. The ground thereabouts is of a reddish colour, and brings forth neither grafs nor fruit. The situa-  
tion of  
Saba.

The cause of that barrenness they attribute to the Malediction, which was pronounc'd against it, upon the account of *Omar Saad*, who was one of the principal Military Commanders, in the time of *Hossein*. This *Omar*, who had, at first, profess'd friendship to *Hossein*, prov'd the only person who would serye *Jesid Pefer* against him; upon this score, that *Hossein*, being of the blood of *Mahomet*, and having acquir'd a great reputation of Sanctity, not one Captain of *Medina* would take up Arms against him, but only this *Omar*, who engag'd in a war against him, upon promise, that there should be bestow'd on him the City of *Rhei*, with the Territories belonging thereto, which, long before, he had been very desirous of. But the death of *Hossein*, who was kill'd in that VVar, brought upon the Countrey, the Curse, which, according to their saying, is still visible there, in the colour and barrenness of the ground.

The City of *Saba* is of no great bigness, though it be numbred among those, which make a fair shew on the out-side, by reason of its Towers, and other publick structures. The Walls of it are but of earth, and its houses in a manner all destroy'd: but it hath, in requital, very fair Gardens, and rare and excellent Fruits, especially Pomegranates, and Almonds. Near the City, at the foot of the Mountain, there grows abundance of Cotton and Rice, which are the greatest Commodities they have to Trade in. We stay'd there only that one day, and departed thence in the evening, travelling the night following six Leagues or better, so that, the 18. by Sun-rising, we were got to a *Caravansera*, called *Schach Ferabath*. The heat was so excessive that day, that though we were all in our Drawers, yet could we not possibly avoid the inconveniences thereof. Excellent  
fruits at  
Saba.

We ordered our Tents to be pitch'd abroad, so to have the advantage of the coolness, and the wind, which came from the adjoining Mountain; but, about noon, the Sun so heated the Wind it self, that the hot blasts which come out of an Oven could not be hotter; insomuch that we were forc'd to retire into the *Caravansera*, where the heat was somewhat more moderate. Nay, the ground it self, which, in those parts, is only Sand and Heath, was so hot, that a man could not go five or six steps, without burning his feet. About this time, both the Ambassadors were very sick: but their indisposition giving them alternately a little ease, the weaker of the two made use of the Litter, and the other rode on Horse-back. Excessive  
heats.

The 19. we travell'd five Leagues, and got in the morning before the City of *Kom*. The *Daruga* receiv'd us within five or six hundred paces of the City, accompany'd by fifty Gentle-men on Horse-back, and certain Tumblers, among whom there were some, who went upon Stilts before the Ambassador *Brugman*, whose chance it was that day to be alone on Horse-back, and shew'd a thousand tricks of activity, all the way to the Ambassadors Lodgings. As we pass'd through the Market-place, we found a great number of Timbrels, Hawboyes and Fifes, which made a kind of Musick after their way, and their Inhabitants had water'd the streets, which being not pay'd no more than those of *Caswin* and several other Cities of *Persia*, the dust had otherwise troubled and annoy'd us very much. The City of  
Kom.

The *Persians* place this City at 85 degrees, 40 minutes Longitude, and at 34 degrees, 45 minutes Latitude; but after I had made a more exact observation thereof, I found on the 20. of July, precisely at noon, that the Sun was 74 degrees, 8 minutes above the Horizon, and that the Declination, taken upon the same Meridian, was 18 degrees, 35 minutes; so that the elevation of the Pole, could be but 34 degrees, 17 minutes. Its situa-  
tion.

The City of *Kom* is very antient. *Ptolomy* calls it *Guriana*, and heretofore it was of a great extent, as may be seen by the ruins of its Walls, and other buildings, which are a great way without its present compass. Ptolo-  
my's Gu-  
riana.

It lies in a Plain, on the right hand of the Mountain of *Elwend*, which is discover'd at a great distance by the whiteness of its Sand, and by the extraordinary height of its points. In this Mountain, there rises, from two several Springs, a little River, which making but one Channel at the entrance of the City, runs through some part of it, and is one of the chiefest conveniences belonging thereto: but about three years before our Travels that way, the little River,

1637. over-flowing by reason of the Snow, which the precedent heat of the Spring had melted, broke down and carried away above a thousand Houses.

*Its fruits.* There are in the Gardens, whereof there is a great number, as well within as without the City, all sorts of excellent fruits; among others, a kind of Melons, which they call *Scammame*, much about the bigness of an Orange. There are upon the rind spots of several colours, and they have an admirable scent: but they are more luscious in taste than the other Melons, which in sweetness exceed all those I ever eat any where else.

*Melons.* There are also some of these Melons at *Ardebil*, where, by reason of their scent, they commonly carry them in their hands; but they told us, that they were brought from the Village of *Alaru*, where there grows abundance of them. The learned *Golinus*, Professor of the Oriental Languages in the University of *Leyden*, gives a large account of them in his *Arabick Lexicon*, pag. 1309. There is also in the same place a kind of Cowcubers of extraordinary largeness, being above two foot long, and as thick as a mans Arm, which they call *Chunchiar* that is, crooked Cowcubers, as having the form of a bended Arm.

*Its Traffick.* These the *Persians* pickle with Vinegar, without any Salt, but the taste of them is not very pleasant, especially to those that are not accustomed thereto. The ground about these parts is very fit for Tillage, and produces all sorts of Grain, as also Cotton in abundance: but the principal Trading of the Inhabitants consists in earthen Pots, and Sword-blades. Those blades which are made in this City are accounted the best in the whole Country, and are sold sometimes at twenty Crowns a piece. The Steel, of which they are made, comes from the City of *Niris*, within four days journey of *Ispahan*, where there are found in the Mountain of *Demawend* very rich Mines of Iron and Steel. The Pots also made in the City of *Kom*, are very much esteem'd, especially the Steans, or great Pitchers; as well by reason of the excellency of the workmanship, as for this reason, that it is conceiv'd, they will keep water fresh and sweet, even in the greatest heats of Summer.

*The Inhabitants inclin'd to theft.* The Inhabitants of this City are somewhat light-finger'd, and apt to find any thing lies in their way. We had hardly alighted, but our Pistols were taken away, and what was not lock'd up immediately vanish'd. In this City some of our people began to be troubled with bloody fluxes, occasion'd by their excessive eating of Melons and other sorts of fruits, and drinking water after fruit, and in the greatest heats.

*They leave Kom.* July 21. we left *Kom*, an hour after Sun-set, and travell'd that night five Leagues. The next, the 22. We stay'd in a great Village, called *Kasf-mabath*, where all the Houses of one whole street were built so as that they made altogether but one continued Vault, or kind of Cloister.

The 23. we got seven Leagues, to the Village of *Sensfen*, where we found abundance of Provisions and fruits, which the *Mehemander* had appointed to be brought thither from *Katschan*, a place five Leagues distant thence. In this Village died one of our Interpreters for the *Persian* Language, whose name was *Gregory*. He was by birth a *Muscovite*, but had been Circumcised; upon which score, we left the body to those of his own Religion, to be buried after their manner.

*Come to Katschan.* The 23. in the evening we departed thence, and the night following, we lost a *Muscovian* servant, who dy'd of the bloody Flux by the way. We kept the Body to have it buried at *Katschan*, with that of another *Muscovian* Servant, who died two hours after the former. We got thither the 24. but so betimes in the morning, that we were forc'd to stay above two hours, before the *Daruga* could come to meet us, in order to our reception. He was accompany'd by fifty Gentlemen on Horse back, and had appointed to be led several excellent Horses cover'd with Lynxes skins; nor was the ordinary Musick of the Countrey wanting. At the entrance of the City, he shew'd us two *Indian* Oxen, very black, and of great height and bulk, which had Bells about their necks, and Plumes of Feathers in their heads, and at their Cruppers. This *Daruga* had some time been a Foot-man to *Schach-Sefi*, when being very young, they were forc'd to hide him from his Grand-father *Schach-Abbas*; and *Schach-Sefi* having no money to live upon, sold the Foot-man for fifteen *Tumains*, which amount to seventy five French Pistols. But coming afterwards to the Crown, he caus'd him immediately to be redeem'd, and, with the quality of *Sulthan*, bestow'd on him the Government of *Katschan*.

*The Daruga's advancement.* The *Persians* put this City of *Katschan* at 84 degrees longitude, and at thirty four distant from the Line. After an exact Observation of three days, I found that it is distant from it thirty three degrees and 51 minutes, that is, nine minutes less. The City is of a great length, reaching from East to West, above half a *German* League. Its Walls and Bastions are of a kind of Potters clay, and it lies in a great Plain, the ground of which is good enough for Tillage, and there may be discover'd from it, on the right hand Mount *Taurus*, which the *Persians* call *Ehwend*. As you come to the City, you pass through a place appointed for tilting and running at the Ring, which hath on both sides several Pillars, and in the midst, a high Pole for shooting at the wooden Parrat. On the left hand of that place or Carriere, you leave the

King's Garden, wherein there is one Summer-house, standing in the midst of it, and another near it upon the High-way. We were told that the former hath a thousand Doors belonging to it, comprehending in that number the Windows, through which they pass into the Galleries and Balconies. It is to be observ'd withall, that there is no Door but hath its Counter-door, in regard the Wall being above two foot thick, there is a Door on each side of it: so that the number is not so great, as it seems to be at first. In this House, the King is Lodg'd, when he comes to *Katschan*. 1637.  
A House with a 1000. Doors.

The City, is no doubt, one of the most populous and most eminent for Trading of any in *Persia*, and the best Built of any we were yet come to, whether in regard of its private Houses, or its Palaces and *Caravansera's*: but the *Basar* and *Maidan*, and the other publick structures, which have all their Store-houses, Galleries, and Rooms for the Merchants, as well such as live within the Kingdom, as Foreiners, are the noblest I met with in all my Travells into those parts. There is, in this City, at all times, a great number of forein Merchants, and above all, *Indians*, who are assigned there a particular place for their Habitation and Traffick; as are also all the other Merchants. Tradefmen, especially such as make Silk-stuffs, and Weavers of Gold and Silver Brocades, work in open places, where all the World may see them.

The Valleys are very fruitfull in Wheat, Wine and Fruits, which grow in such abundance there, that I find no difficulty to acknowledge, what *Cartwright* sayes of these parts, to wit, that the poorest, and most indigent of the Inhabitants, have not only what is requisite for their subsistence, but also somewhat of delicacy, and that what they most stand in need of is fresh water. For there is not any to be had without digging very deep into the Earth, and what there was so got we thought very distastfull to the Palat, and so corrupt, that had there not been an extraordinary necessity, we should have been much troubled to swallow it. I must withall confesse, that I could not observe that excellent order and commendable policy, which *Cartwright* sayes he had seen there in the Institution of Youth, nor that they are more carefull there than in other places, to accustom it timely to pains-taking, so to avoid idleness, and the inconveniences consequent thereto. True it is, that the great number of Children, which are ordinarily to be found there in Families, which by reason of Polygamy are very numerous, obliges the Parents to be the more carefull for their subsistence; but the *Persians*, for the most part are so little inclin'd to pains-taking, that, commonly, you shall either see them walking in the *Maidan*, or discoursing in the Shops, while they leave most of their work to be done by their slaves. Which happens hence, that being themselves very temperate, and content with little, and on the other side, Provisions being very cheap, they conceive they ought not to take much pains for what is superfluous, and those things whereof there is no great necessity. So that there are even in these parts idle Persons, and Beggars, as well as in other places.

What the same *Cartwright* sayes concerning the Scorpions, and other venomous Creatures, is very true. For of these, there are, about *Katschan*, more than at any other place of *Persia*, and such as are so dangerous, that they have occasion'd that Malediction, *Akrab-Kaschan be destet sener: may the Scorpion of Kaschan pinch thee by the hand*. We found some of them in our Lodging, as black as cole, about the length and compass of a man's finger, and we were told, that these were the most dangerous of any sort of them. Venomous Creatures.

They are somewhat like our Crabs or Crevisses, save that their Bodies are shorter, they go faster, and they have their tails alwayes sticking up. Whence it comes that the Inhabitants never lay their Mattresses, or Beds, upon the ground, as they do in other places; but they set them upon a kind of Trevels, or Frames, which they call *Tzarpay*. They affirm also, that these Beasts have a certain respect for strangers, and that to prevent their stinging, they are only to pronounce these words, *Men karibem*, I am a stranger. But for my part, I am of opinion, that strangers, who stand more in fear of them than the Inhabitants, are only the more oblig'd to themselves for the care they have of their own safety; though I never could hear, that those who are stung by them dye of it. For they have a present and easie remedy against this kind of poison, by applying a piece of Copper to the place affected; for which Cure they ordinarily make use of that Money, which they call *Pul*, and thence it comes, that they carry some of it alwayes about them; and having left that piece, for the space of 24. hours upon the part stung, they take it off, and put on the Wound a Plaister made of Honey and V-neger. A remedy against Scorpions.

It was my misfortune to be the only man of all our retinue that had occasion to make trial how venomous this Creature is. For lying down upon my Bed at *Scamachie*, in our return from *Ispahan*, a Scorpion stung me in the throat, where it made immediately a swelling about the length of my finger, which was attended with insupportable pain. As good fortune would have it, our Physician, who lay in the same Chamber, immediately apply'd thereto the Oyl of Scorpion, gave me some Treacle, and put me into a sweat: which deliver'd me from the greatest of my pains at the end of three hours, but I had still some pain for the two dayes following, but by intervals, and it was as if I had been prick'd with a Needle: nay indeed for many years afterwards



1637. afterwards I have been troubled with the same pains at certain times, especially in *Autumn*, much about the Sun's entrance into *Scorpio*.

Another  
venomous  
insect.

Its venom,  
and the  
effect of it.

The remedy.

There is also in these parts another sort of insect of a making much like a Spider, about two inches in compass, and mark'd with several spots. This insect is commonly found lodg'd in stony places, under a kind of Herb, which the *Persians* call *Tremne*, and the *Turks*, *Fauchschan*, which is like Worm-wood, or *Absynthium*, but the leaves are much larger, and the smell much stronger. The *Persians* call this insect *Enkurek*; and it is that animal which, in Latin, is called *Stellio*, and a kind of insect, which the *Italians* and *Spaniards* call *Tarantola*. This Creature, instead of stinging or biting, lets fall its venom like a drop of water, which immediately causes insufferable pain in the part where it fastens, and suddenly making its way to the Stomack, sends up Vapours into the Head, and these put all the Members of the sick party into such a profound sleep, that it is impossible to awake him, save by this only remedy, which is, to crush one of these Creatures upon the wound; out of which all the venom is by that means drawn out.

Sheep eat  
these in-  
sects.

The Fable  
of Schutza  
Adin.

But if there cannot any of the same Creature be found; there is another remedy may be used. The sick person is laid upon his back, that he may swallow down as much Milk as may be. Then he is put upon a thing made like a bier, which, by cords fasten'd to the four corners, is hung up to a beam, and having turn'd the bier about, till the cords are all twist'd, they let it go of a sudden, that the cords coming to untwist by a violent Motion, may make his head turn, and force out of his stomach all the Milk he had swallow'd. It comes from him all Greenish, as is also the cruds which come forth at his yard, but with great violence and extreme pain. This remedy does in some measure Cure the sick person; yet so as that it hinders not, but that, at certain times, especially at the same season of the year, he must expect to feel much pain. This Creature is to be found only in the Country, so that those who live in Cities fear it not, there being none there, unless they are, through negligence, brought in the stubble, wherewith they cover their Houses. But what's most to be admir'd in this animal, is, that the Sheep seek after it, and feed on it.

The Inhabitants of *Kaschan* relate, that *Omar ben Alchitabi*, the third Successor of *Mahomet*, being very desirous, one day, to go and see his Mill at *Medina*, the Miller, whose name was *Schutza Adin*, intreated him to bless his Labour, and his Mill, by putting both his hands under one of the Mill-stones which was rais'd up; which *Omar* having done, the Miller let it fall and set the Mill a going, by which means having crush'd his hands to pieces, he afterwards kill'd him. Whereupon going to *Aly*, who by that Death was to succeed in the Empire, he desir'd a reward for the Murther he had committed. *Aly* gave him a Letter directed to the *Casi* of *Kaschan*, ordering the *Casi* to give him his Daughter in Marriage. The Miller, though well satisfy'd with the recompence, yet thought it too much to take so great a Journey a-foot; so that *Aly*, to make a further acknowledgement of the service he had done him, lent him his Horse *Duldul*, which carried him in one night from *Medina* to *Kaschan*, which places are above two hundred Leagues distant, and immediately vanish'd. The Miller Married the *Casi's* Daughter, but died soon after, and was buried without the City, at a place where now there are several banks of Sand, which the story sayes, were brought thither by the Wind, since the Millar's Death; lest the Friends and Kinred of *Omar* should take him up to be burnt. *Molla Hassan Kaschi*, who hath left this story in Writing, hath made a Proverb of it, which, with several other spiritual adages, he hath inserted into the *Kullusthan*, where he sayes, *Men besamen, ohn schabernsia, Kickscheb duldulsch es Medine Ascabani bekaschan aured*: that is, *I serve the King of Kings, whose (Horse) Duldul, in one night, carried the Miller from Medina to Kaschan*. *Tzurzei Elmakin*, or *George Elmacini*, another *Arabian* Historian sayes, lib. 1. ch. 3. of his *History*, that *Omar* was kill'd, as he was saying his Prayers, by *Abululu*, the servant of *Mukir*, who hated him for his Tyranny.

Hassan  
Kaschi an  
Arabian  
Author.

Elmacini  
another  
Arabian  
Author.

The Am-  
bassadors  
leave Caf-  
chan.

The heats were indeed excessive at *Kaschan*; however, that the sick persons might not be put too hard to it, we continued there for some dayes, and departed not thence till the 26. of *July*, as soon as the Moon was up, which was then at the full. That Night we travell'd six Leagues and came the next morning to *Caravanserai*, called *Chotza Kassim*: but in regard it was very narrow, and withall very nasty, we lodg'd our selves in a Garden not far from it, in the shade of abundance of *Cypress* Trees and *Pomegranate*-Trees, upon the side of a pleasant Rivulet, which, making a gentle murmuring noise, contributed much to the repose, which, after the precedent night's Travel, was but necessary to us. In the Evening, we continu'd our Journey, and travell'd that night six Leagues or better, through *Deserts* and *Barren* grounds, and came, the 28. about four in the morning, to a little City, called by the Inhabitants of the Country *Natens*, and by *Contarini*, in his Travels, *Nethas*. We took up our lodging in a *Caravanserai*, within the City, which is handsome enough, furnish'd with several Springs of fresh water, and well stor'd with all sorts of Fruits. As you come into the City, you leave on the right hand two very high and picked Mountains, one whereof hath on the top of it a great Tower, built by *Schach Abbas*, in memory of the advantage, which one of his Falcons had in that place

Come to  
Natens.

over

over an Eagle, which he set upon, overcame, and kill'd, after a very sharp engagement. All of our Retinue being either sick or overcome with weariness, only Monsieur *Mandello* had the curiosity to get up the said Mountain with his two servants, and to take a view of that structure. He found it built of Brick, and that towards the foundation it was in an Octogonal form, being about eight paces Diameter; but that as it went higher and higher, it by degrees lost that form and bigness, and that above, near the top, it had so many windows, that the light came in of all sides. The greatest Miracle of all is, how they could carry so many materials up to so high a place, to get to which, that Gentleman had spent above three hours, and at least as much to get down again, with great pains and hazard.

The 29. we got four Leagues further, passing over a great Mountain, and lodg'd in a *Cavanfera*, called *Dombi*, whither some of the Inhabitants of *Ispahan* came to visit us, as they said from the Chancellor. There came thither also certain *Dutch* Merchants, cloath'd in *Persian* habits; but they made no discovery of themselves.

The night between the last of *July* and the first of *August*, we travell'd four leagues further, and came the next day to a Village called *Kuk*. We were lodg'd in the house of the *Kaucha*, or Judge of the place, where we continu'd all that day, and the night following.

*August* 2. we departed thence two hours before day, the Moon shining bright, and got but two leagues further, to one of the Kings houses, where we took up our quarters in a very fair Garden, which was our last nights Lodging in our passage to the City of *Ispahan*. For, very betimes the next morning being the third of *August*, horses were sent us, to make our entrance into the Metropolis of the Kingdom. Within a quarter of a League of the City, we found one of the principal Officers of the Court, named *Isachan-beg*, in the head of 200 horse, and some paces thence, two great *Armenian* Lords, named *Sefaras-beg*, and *Elias-beg*, who conducted the Ambassadors to their Lodgings. The dust, which the horse, and the people who came to meet us, had rais'd, was so thick, that we were got to the Gates, before we imagin'd we could have seen the City. Not only the streets and windows were full of people, who out of curiosity were come to see our entrance into the City, but also the tops of the houses were covered with them.

We were conducted through several streets, through the *Maidan*, and before the Kings Palace, to that part of the Suburbs which is called *Tzulifa*, where we were lodg'd in the Quarter of the chiefest of the *Armenian* Merchants, who are *Christians*, and have their habitations there. We had hardly alighted, ere there were brought us from the King's Kitchen the ordinary Presents of Provilions, for our welcome thither. They laid upon the floor of the Ambassadors Room a fine silk Cloath, on which were set one and thirty Dishes of Silver, fill'd with several sorts of Conserves, dry and liquid, and raw fruits, as Melons, Citrons, Quinces, Pears, and some others, not known in *Europe*. Some time after, that Cloath was taken away, that another might be laid in the room of it; and upon this was set Rice of all sorts of colours, and all sorts of Meat, boyl'd and roasted, to wit, Mutton, tame Fowl, Fish, Eggs, and Pyes, in above fifty Dishes of the same metal, besides the Saller-dishes, great Porrengers, and other lesser Vessels. Presently after Dinner, the Commissary or Factor for the *Dutch* Commerce, whose name was *Nicholas Jacobs Overschle*, who was afterwards Governour of *Zeilan*, for the *East-India* Company, came to visit the Ambassadors, who being then looking upon the unloading of the Baggage (though that should have been the employment of their Steward or some other Officer) would have wav'd the visit upon that pretence. But the *Dutchman* would not be put off his visit, wherein he ingenuously acknowledg'd, that he had received Orders from his Superiours to oppose our Negotiation; but that nevertheless, as to what concern'd the Ambassadors themselves, he should do them all the civilities they could expect from him. He seem'd desirous to drink, and we had the Compliance to give him his load ere he went away.

The joy we conceiv'd at our having, at last, arriv'd to a place, where we hoped to put a period to our Negotiation, was soon disturbed by a most unhappy accident, and the Divertisements intend'd us, were within a few days after our coming thither, changed into a bloody Contestation with the *Indians*, occasion'd by the insolence of one of the Domesticks belonging to the *Mogul's* Ambassador, who was Lodg'd not far from our Quarters, with a Retinue of three hundred persons, most of them *Usbeques*. One of their Domesticks standing by, and looking on our people unloading and putting up the Baggage, our *Mehemanders* servant, named *Willichan*, said to him jesting, that it would speak more good nature in him, to come and help them, than to stand as he did with his Arms a-crofs; whereto the other making answer somewhat too snappishly, as he conceiv'd, the *Persian* struck him over the pate with his Cane. The *Indian* incens'd at the affront, ran to some of his Camerades, who were lying hard by under the shade of a Tree, and made his complaints to them of the injury he had receiv'd; upon which they all got up, and fell upon *Willichan*, whom they wounded in the head with stones.

1637. Our Domesticks perceiving this tumult, brought our Steward notice of it, who taking along with him five or six Soldiers, and some others of our servants, charg'd the *Indians* ( whose number was augmented to near thirty ) so home, that they mortally wounded one, and pursu'd the rest to their Quarters: but what most troubled the *Indians*, was, that, in this engagement, they had lost a Sword and a Poniard, whereto a little Purse was fasten'd, in which there was some small money, which our People brought home as a sign of their Victory. The *Industhans*, at that time, thought it enough to threaten how highly they should resent that affront, and that they should take occasion to revenge their Camerade. Nor indeed were they unmindful of their threats; for the Ambassadors having resolv'd to change their Lodgings, by reason of the great inconvenience it was to them, that their Domesticks were scatter'd up and down the Suburbs, and quarter'd at a great distance from them, and having appointed the seventh of *August* for their removal, the *Indians* took their advantage of that occasion, to be satisfy'd for the affront they imagin'd they had received.

We had sent before a Lacquey belonging to our Steward, and some of our Seamen with part of the Baggage, to be, by them, conducted to the Lodgings we had taken up, which were within the City, a quarter of a League or better distant from the former. Certain *Indians* who were lying under Tents to keep their Master's Horses, which were then feeding between the City and Suburbs, knew him, as having seen him in the former engagement, set upon him, and, though he gallantly defended himself with his Sword and Pistol, at last kill'd him with their Arrows; which done, they cut off his head, to's'd it up and down in the Air, and bound his body to his Horse-tayl; which dragg'd it to a certain place, where the Dogs devour'd it. The news brought us of this Murther was enough to assure us, that the *Industhans* would not think that revenge enough, but that they were resolv'd to set upon us with all their forces. Whereupon the Ambassadors sent out Orders, that all of their Retinue should stand upon their Guard, and come with all expedition to their Lodgings. But, before this Order could be put in Execution, the *Indians* had already possess'd themselves of all the Avenues of their Quarters, which they had in a manner block'd up: in so much that none could get in, without running the hazard of being kill'd. However, reflecting on the imminent and inevitable danger it was to lie scatter'd up and down in several quarters, most of the Domesticks thought it their safest course, though with some danger, to make their way to the House where the Ambassadors were, which was in the corner of a narrow street. Most of them escap'd the fury of the *Indians*, but some were mortally wounded, and I my self came very near it, for I was no sooner got within the door, but an Arrow came grazing through my hair, and was shot into one of the Posts. All their Arrows were made of Canes, having a sharp and cutting piece of Iron at the end, and so light, that the least strength sent them away with incredible swiftness, and they pierc'd where they lighted, as dangerously as a Bullet from a Fire-lock. Which is the more to be observ'd, in opposition to that passage of *Quintus Curtius*, where he sayes in the eighth book of his History, *Binum cubitorum sunt sagitta ( Indis ) quas emittunt majore nisu quam effectu; quippe telum, cujus in levitate vis omnis est, inhabili pondere oneratur.* But besides these Arms, they had also Muskets, and Arquebuses, according to the *Persian* way, which are of a very small bore, wherewith they shot very exactly.

Our Lieutenants did all that could be expected from persons of courage and conduct, setting their Soldiers in Order at the Door of the Ambassadors Lodgings, and causing several Volleys of Musket-shot to be discharg'd at the *Indians*. But the *Indians* made their advantage of a Wall, which serv'd them for a Parapet; and they had made several holes in it, that they might shoot with less danger to themselves, and more annoyance to us. On the contrary, our people, instead of following their example ( whom some would have accounted *Barbarians*, but who will not be found such ) and making their advantage of the Chests, and the Baggage, which were in the street, had no other Parapet, than their own Breasts, which were expos'd to all their Volleys. One of our Canoneers, as he was going to level a small Piece at the *Indians*, was kill'd.

Sergeant *Morryboy*, a *Scotchman*, seeing the Canoneer fall at his feet, took up his Musket, and set himself in a posture of revenging his Camerades death. He was so fortunate as to kill five or six *Indians*, but at last an Arrow takes him just in the breast, which, not at all troubled at, he pluck'd it out, and, having charg'd his Musket once more, kill'd another man, and then fell down dead upon the place,

The *Armenians* living thereabouts, who were Spectators of this engagement, could help us no otherwise than with their tears, whereby they express'd the affliction it was to them to see the death of so many poor *Christians*. At last, the number of the *Indians* increasing still, the Muskets play'd so fast, that the Ambassadors were forc'd to command their people to come into the house, and, remaining in the Court, to keep the *Indians* from getting into the house. But they making their advantage of our retreat, fell upon the Baggage, and ransack'd it, and not content with that, they forc'd their way into the next house to us, and because the Master of it would have kept them from coming in, they cut off one of his hands, and afterwards kill'd him.

him. By which means getting up to the top of it, they could look into our Court, and so forc'd our people to abandon it. Some of ours got up to the top of our house, and making their advantage of the Paraper, no *Indian* appear'd but they shot at him, and no shot but did execution. M. *Mandello*, who had an excellent faculty in the handling of Fire-arms, kill'd the Leader of the *Indian* party with a Pistol-shot. His death made them all fury, insomuch that they got out of the place where they were, with a design to force our Gates: which resolution of theirs oblig'd the Ambassadors to think of some retreat, and to break down the Walls of the adjoining houses, where the *Armenians*, who lived in them, joyfully receiv'd us, and brought us Ladders to get down into a fair Garden. We all got down into it, but the pleasantness of the place, took us no more than a delicious Dish of Meat would do a Malefactor, that were going to his execution, in regard we expected death there every moment.

While we were thus out of all hope of escape, one of the Marshals of the Court came to us from the King, to bring us news of a Peace. He was come some time before, with the same orders, but the heat of the engagement had hindred us, as well as the *Indians* from hearing what message he brought: for, the Inhabitants of *Ispahan*, perceiving the noise increased, and fearing a greater disorder, which might be of dangerous consequence among a people who had never seen any thing of that nature, the King sent thither a hundred Souldiers well arm'd, in the Head of a good number of the Inhabitants, but as soon as the *Indians* perceiv'd that Body coming towards them, they dispers'd themselves. We were told, that the King hearing of the Murther, which was the Prologue to all this Tragedy, and withall that the *Indian* Ambassador had Conniv'd thereat, had Commanded his Head to be brought him; but that the Chancellor had moderated that fally of his Passion, by representing to him, that both the Ambassadors were Strangers, and his Guests, and that it belong'd to their Masters, and not to him, to punish them.

This peace brought us also the liberty to go into the Streets, where we found our Chests broke open, and all the Baggage plunder'd, unless it were certain Sawcidges, Neats-Tongues, and Gammons of Bacon, which the *Indians*, as being *Mahumetanes*, had thrown by. Our loss upon this occasion amounted to above four thousand Crowns. The King demanded a particular of it, and would have defray'd us; but that kindness of his had not its effect, for reasons but too well known to all the the Retinue.

In the fore-said engagement, which lasted above four hours, we lost five men, and had ten wounded. The *Indians*, according to the Informations we receiv'd from the *Persians*, lost therein about four and twenty men, and had many more hurt: but the *Indian* Ambassador had, some few dayes after, orders sent him to be gone. This was the most unhappy accident we met with in all our Travells: for, after we had escap'd all the dangers, which we might well have fallen into by the way, and the injuries might have been done us by the most Cruel and Barbarous people, through whose Territories we pass'd, this sad accident happen'd to us in the chief City of the Kingdome, where we thought to find rest after all the hardships we had endured.

As to this *Indian* Ambassador, he was a *Myrsa*, or *Indian* Prince, and had been sent to the Court of *Persia*, by *Choramfcha*, King of the *Indies*, whom they call the *Great Mogul*, and not, as he is commonly called, *Mogor*. He had a very noble Retinue, and was ordinarily carried in a Litter, according to the *Indian* making, more fit to lye down in, than to sit, which was carried by several Slaves, it being hang'd at a great Iron-barr made crooked in the middle. The King of *Persia*, who knew on what occasion he was sent Ambassador to him, made him stay three whole years, before he gave him audience, ordering him in the mean time to be magnificently treated, insomuch that some few dayes before our arrival, the King had sent him, besides many before, a Present of three thousand *Tumains*, which amount to fifty thousand Crowns; the Ambassador himself, it seems, defraying the expence of his House-keeping.

The Ambassador, on the othe other side, demean'd himself suitably to this magnificence; for he spent the three first dayes after his audience in bestowing the Presents he had brought along with him. Those he made the first day, were in the name of the *Great Mogul*: those made the second, in the name of the Prince his Son; what he did, the third, was upon his own accompt. We were credibly inform'd, that the Presents made by him amounted to above a hundred thousand Crowns. His business was, to intreat the King of *Persia*, to put into his hands the *Myrsa Polagi*, Prince of the Blood, and Nephew to the *Mogul*, who had been forc'd to retire into *Persia* to save his Life, which he was in danger to lose, as he had done his Kingdome. The King excus'd himself, and generously made answer, that it were a breach of the Laws of Hospitality, to deliver up a Prince, who, out of an assurance of his friendship, had taken refuge in his Kingdome; that he was oblig'd in honour to treat him as a Friend, and a Guest, and to give him entertainment as long as he should think fit to stay in his Countrey.

This was all the Answer the Ambassador could get, in relation to the Embassy; but that might be assur'd, they had no great kindness for himself in particular, secret orders were sent

1637.

The Indian  
Leader  
kill'd.The King  
interposes  
his  
Austere-  
rity.The Indian  
Ambassa-  
dor dis-  
miss'd.His abode  
at IspahanHis pre-  
sents.The occasi-  
on of the  
Embassy.

He departs.

1637. to *Hassan-Chan* Governour of *Herath*, which is the most considerable of any place towards the Frontiers of the *Indies*, that he should stop, in their passage, four or five hundred Horses, which the Ambassador had bought, and sent away by small parties, that, at his coming, he might find them ready upon the Frontiers: for the *Indian* Horses are small and ill-shap'd, whence it comes, that the *Indians* are so desirous to have some of the *Persian* breed. The Ambassador storm'd, alleg'd his quality, and urg'd it as an affront done his Master in his person, and, that the King of *Persia*, who knew he had bought them, and had permitted him to do so, was, no doubt, willing he should take them along with him. But *Hassan-Chan* made answer, that he was King in his own Province, that if he did ought prejudicial to the King's service, his Life should answer for it, and that he would not suffer any Horses to go out of the Country, it being to be fear'd they might afterwards be brought to serve in the Warrs against his Majesty, to whom he was to give a strict accompt of all his actions. So that the Ambassador was forc'd to leave the Horses behind him, and to sell them at such rates as the *Persians* would give him for them. As for the *Indians* in general, they are good Natur'd, Civil, Friendly, and their Conversation not unpleasant, provided they be not injur'd; but so apt to resent any thing of affront, that they are never satisfy'd without their Blood, by whom they are offended, We know it otherwise than by hear-say.

The next day after this unhappy engagement, to wit, the 8. of *August*, we chang'd our Lodgings, and, to prevent any disorder that might happen, especially upon the accompt of the *Indians*, the King caus'd prohibitions to be made, that not only any of the Ambassadors Retinue, but also, of the other *Indians*, nay even the Merchants of that Nation, whereof there are above twelve thousand in *Ispahan*, should, upon pain of Death, be seen in the streets, till we were gotten within the City. And that we might be the more secure, we found attending near our Lodgings, some of the Guard, who went along with us to our new Quarters, which we were permitted to fortifie at the weakest places, against any attempt might be made by the *Indians*, who might easily and with advantage have assaulted us in our Quarters, by reason it was of a vast extent, they having openly threaten'd to do it.

The Ambassadors change their quarters.

The Structure comprehended four great Courts, through two whereof there ran a Rivulet twenty five foot in breadth, planted on both sides with that delightfull Tree called *Tzinnar*, which made two very pleasant walks. The same Rivulet ran through some of the Halls and Galleries, and went under ground, under the main part of the Lodging; which was design'd for the appartment of the Ambassadors. There was in the midst of it, and below, a spacious Hall, built eight square, with a fair Fountain, and at every side of the Octagone a Door, which led into several Chambers. The first Story had the same appartments, but this over and above, that the Windows serv'd for Doors, some whereof led into Galleries and Balconies that look'd into the Garden, some towards the Hall; so that a man might, out of any Chamber, see what was done in the Hall. In the midst of the Hall, there was a Fountain, the Basin whereof was of Freestone.

The King treats them still.

During our aboad at *Ispahan*, we weré supply'd with all things upon the King's accompt, being allow'd, every day, sixteen Sheep, a hundred of all sorts of tame Fowl, two hundred Eggs, and a hundred *Barmans* of Wine, with Fruit and spice in such abundance, that we might have made very good Cheer, had it not been for their ill management thereof, who had the disposal of them, and who squander'd away the Provisions, not only by Connivence, but also by the exprefs order of one of the Ambassadors, I mean him of *Hamborough*, who sent them to the *Armenians*, and, many times, to common prostitutes. Whence it came, that some times our people made but one meal a day, nay some dayes, the servants and others had no cloath laid at all.

They go into Muscovian habits

*Aug.* 10. the Ambassadors sent some of the Retinue to *Alexis Savinonits*, Ambassador from the Duke of *Muscovy*, to treat with him concerning their common affairs; and in regard the *Persians* were not well pleas'd to see us in our own Cloaths, we put our selves into the *Muscovian* fashion, as coming somewhat nearer their mode. About this time, dyed some of our people, who had been Wounded, in the Engagement with the *Indians*, and, among others, one of our Guard, who had been hurt in the knee, with a poisoned Arrow. Our *Harbinger* died also the same day, but it was of a Bloody-flux, which took him after he had been sufficiently shaken by a *Tertian* Ague, and dispatch'd him in a few dayes. VVe buried them both in the Church-yard of the *Armenians*, in that part of the Suburbs, which is called *Tzulfa*.

Their first audience.

*August* the 16. the Ambassadors had their first audience of the King, who sent them word, that they should also have the honour to dine with him, and to that end, sent them forty gallant Hories out of his own Stables, the Saddles and Harnesses whereof were adorn'd with great plates of Gold.

The Presents made in the Prince's name.

The Ambassadors made use only of two, and also ordered the Gentlemen and the principal Officers to ride on Horse-back, but the rest went a-foot, in the following order.

First, march'd three men on Horse-back, two whereof were in compleat arms, having Flowers

Flowers, and other Workmanship of Gold. The third was arm'd only as a Horse-man, with Back, Breast, and Pot, yet all very rich.

After him march'd forty Persons, having every one a Case of Pistols, the best that could be had in the Low Countries, with their Holsters, the laps whereof were Embroider'd.

Next, four men, carrying two rich Cymitars, the sheaths whereof were of yellow garnish'd with Gold, in very rich Cases.

Next, two men, with Walking staves, done about with Amber, which the Persians esteem above Gold, in very rich Cases.

Four men, carrying so many great Candlesticks of Amber.

Two others, carrying a Cabinet of white and yellow Amber.

Four others, carrying a Cabinet of Ebony, garnish'd with Silver, having within it, in Golden Boxes, several Druggs, Essences and Magisteries, and the coverings thereof beset with fine stones, which signify'd what Magistry there was in every Box.

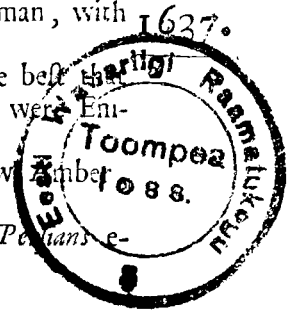
And whereas it is the custom of the Country, that Ambassadors are oblig'd to make some Presents from themselves, and upon their own accompt, the Ambassador *Crusius* sent in an Arquebuss, the stock whereof was of Ebony, which cock'd it self by letting down the Cock; A vessel of Rock Chrystal, done about with Gold, and beset with Rubies and Turqueses; a Cabinet of Amber, and a small striking Clock. The Ambassador *Brugman* presented the King with a gilt brass Candlestick, that had thirty branches, having a striking Watch within the body of it; a pair of gilt Pistols, in very rich Holsters; a very fair Hour-glass; a Watch in a Topaze case; a Bracelet of Diamonds and Rubies; and, a Writing, whereby were presented the two pieces of Canon, which we had left at *Ardebil*.

Every one had his place assign'd him, to the end that all things might be presented to the King with the observance of some Order; but the Persians never observe it in any Ceremony: infomuch, that they were no sooner got into the street, but they were all in disorder, and march'd with such confusion, that the Ambassadors Retinue could not make the Procession they expected.

First, there should have march'd three Sergeants with Halberds, in the Head of fifteen Musketers. After them the Marshal, or Steward, alone, in the Head of the Gentlemen, who march'd three a breast. Then, three Trumpeters, with silver Trumpers, and after them march'd the Guards, four a-breast, immediately before the Ambassadors, who had on both sides eight Halberteers, and behind them the two Interpreters. The eight Pages follow'd, on horse-back, in very rich Liveries, and after them the rest of our people, marching three a-breast, and eight deep.

The Ambassadors being come in this order, attended by a great number of *Kisibachs*, and *Persian* Gentlemen on Horse-back, whom the King had sent to them, through the *Maidan*, to the Gates of the Palace-Royal, they were there received by *Jesaul Senhobet*, who is as it were the Introduc'tor, or Master of the Ceremonies. He commanded those who carried the Presents to make way for the Ambassadors, whom he conducted into a Hall, where the *Divanbeki*, or Judges, are wont to meet, for the Administration of Justice, and intreated them to rest themselves, till he had acquainted the King with their arrival. About half an hour after, several great Lords came to give the Ambassadors notice, that the King expected them. We were brought through a spacious Court, which was of greater length than breadth, and in which there was on both sides, about six paces distance from one Wall, another lower Wall, built close to a row of *Tzinnar-Trees*; and all along that lower Wall, stood the Musketers, and the other Guards, in a file on both sides.

The Guards were distinguish'd from the Musketers, by the Coiffure they wore about their heads, which was pointed, and set out with plumes of Feathers, of several Colours. They call this kind of Courts or Walks, *Cheywan*, and they afford a very delightful prospect. At the end of this Court, there was a great Hall, having light coming in of all sides, which was the place design'd for our audience. It is called *Diwan Chane*, as being the place, where the King administers Justice in Person: there being a great difference between the Custom of Persia, and that of *Muscovy*; where the Great Duke hath a particular Hall, wherein he gives audience to Ambassadors; whereas the King of Persia does it in those places where he accidentally is, either about other business, or for his Divertisement. Near the said Hall, and under those Trees, between the two Walls, there were to be seen fifty excellent Horses, with their covering-Cloaths of Brocado, or Embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and among those some *Arabian* Horses, ready to be back'd, with their Saddles and Harness, cover'd all over with plates of Gold, and beset with abundance of precious stones. All the Horses stood in the open Air, fasten'd by one of the hinder feet to a stake struck in the ground, and they were most of them of an *Isabella* Colour, about the Belly and Legs. There stood hard by Pails of Vermilion on Gilt, for the watering of them. Not far thence, there were two great Cisterns four foot square, for the cooling of Wine.



The Ambassadors Presents;

The Persians observe no Order in their Ceremonies.

The reception of the Ambassadors.

The Hall for audience.

Silver Pails to water horses.

1637. This Hall was rais'd three steps from the ground, and was eight fathom broad, and twelve in length. There was at the entrance into it a Partition, like an *Alcove*, with Curtains drawn before it, of red Cotton, which were taken up and let down with silk strings. When they were drawn up, they rested upon the Chapters of certain wooden Pillars, made Cylinder-wise, Embellish'd with Branch-work, Painted, and Gilt, as were also the Walls. On the left hand, as you came in, there were some pieces of Painting, done in *Europe*, and representing certain Histories. The floor was cover'd all over with Tapistry, whereof the ground-work was of Gold and Silver, and in the midst of the Hall, there was a Fountain, and in the Basin of it abundance of Flowers, Citrons, Orenge, Apples, and other Fruits, which swam upon the water. About the sides of the Basin, there were a great number of Gold and Silver Flaggons, and Bottles, which either had Garlands or Flowers about them, or posies in their Mouths.

The King's  
age.

The King sat upon the ground, having a satin Cushion under him, behind the Fountain, with his back to the Wall. He was about seven and twenty years of Age, handsome Bodied, having a gracefull Aspect, and of a clear and smooth Complexion, somewhat Hawk-Nos'd, as most of the *Persians* are, and he had a little black Hair upon the upper lip. There was nothing extraordinary in his Habit, save that his Cloaths were of Brocade, and that, at his Coiffure, there was a Plume of Heron-Feathers, fasten'd with a bracelet of Diamonds. He had also upon his *Kurdi*, that is, a kind of Coat without Sleeves, which the *Persians* wear upon their Garments, two Sable Skins hanging at the Neck: but for ought we saw afterwards, other *Persian* Lords wore the like. The Cymitar he had by his side glitter'd with Gold and Precious Stones; and behind him, upon the ground, there lay a Bow and Arrows.

On his right hand there stood twenty Pages, who were, most of them, as we were told, the sons of *Chans*, and *Sulthans*, Governours of Provinces, among whom there were some *Eunuchs*.

They were all very handsome, as to their Persons, but it seems, they had made choice of the handsomest among them, to hold the Fan, wherewith he incessantly gave the King air. These Fans are made of a certain Sea-Creature, which they call *Maheri kutas*, and it is like a Horsetail. Near the Pages stood the *Meheter*, or Groom of the Chamber, who hath the oversight of them. Before the King stood *Elschick agasi baschi*, or the Lord Chamberlain of the Household, having in his hand a Staff cover'd all over with Gold, as was also the great Button or Apple at the top of it. Within four paces of the King, and on his left hand, sat the Chancellor whom they call *Ethemad Dowlet*, and about him, the *Chans*, and great Lords of the Privy Counsell. At the entrance of the Hall, on the left hand, sat the Ambassadors of an *Arabian* Prince, who had been sent to desire the King's Protection against the Turk; and the *Poslanick* of *Muscovy*, *Alexei Savomonits*; and somewhat lower were placed the King's Mulick.

The Am-  
bassadors  
brought in  
to audience

The Ambassadors were receiv'd at the entrance of the Hall, by the Prince *Tzani-Chan*, *Kurtzi Baschi*, of whom we spoke before, and by *Aliculi-bek*, *Divanbeki*, who took them under the Arms, one after the other, and brought them to the King. These Conductors, as they led the Ambassadors along, laid such fast hold on their hands, that they had not the use of them themselves.

This Ceremony is very necessary, and must now be look'd on as a particular honour done the Ambassadors, though it be said, and that very probably, that with the same labour, they secure the Prince's Life, against the attempts there might be made against it. But I would not have any to credit what some affirm, to wit, that this Ceremony hath not been observ'd in *Persia* but since the Reign of *Schach-Abas*, and that it was occasion'd by the design which some *Turkish* Ambassadors had to kill him. For this custom is also observ'd in the *Grand Signor's* Court, as well as in *Persia*; nay it is my opinion, that it is for the same reason, that the King does not give his Hand, but his Knee to strangers to kiss, to his own Subjects thinking it enough to prevent his foot.

The Ambassadors, as they came near the King, made a low Reverence, which he civilly answered with a little Inclination of the Head, and a smiling and obliging Countenance. They were immediately led away, and intreated to sit down, on low Seats, which had been plac'd near the Lords of the Council. The same honour was done to fifteen of the Retinue, but they were forc'd to sit down a little more on the left hand, and upon the ground. The Pages, and the rest of the Retinue, were conducted into the Court, where they were seated, near thirteen Women-Dancers, who were very handsome Women, and very richly Cloath'd, and sat upon Tapistry, whereof the ground-work was Gold and Silver.

Some of our people were perswaded they were the ordinary Dancing-women belonging to the Court, and gave that account of them in the Relations they have made of their Travells; but it is certain, they were some of the handsomest Curtezans of the City, who, besides the Tribute they yearly pay the King, are oblig'd to come to Court, to divert the Prince, when ever he sends for them. We were told, that a man might have had his choice of them for a *Tumain*.

The Ambassadors having rested themselves a little, the King sent the Lord Chamberlain to them, to know the Prince's name, by whom they were sent, and the occasion of their Embassy. Which message oblig'd them to rise up, and to go near the King, with their Interpreter, to deliver their Credentials, which they accompany'd with a Complement, which was so much the shorter, in regard the *Persians*, who are no Lovers of long Speeches, would have those that approach their King to do it with respect, and to express that respect by a Discourse of few words. The Chancellor receiv'd the Credentials, and after the Ambassadors were seated again, the *Wakae nuis*, or Secretary of the Chamber, came and told them, that the *Schach* would order their Credential Letters to be Translated; that as soon as it were done, his Majesty would give them a second audience, for their affairs, and that in the mean time, he desir'd them to Divert themselves as much as might be. This done, the Presents were brought in, which were carried, close by the King, into an appartment design'd for the Treasury, on one side of the Hall, at the entrance of the Palace.

1637.

While the Presents were carried in, the Cloath was laid, that is, all the floor of the Hall was cover'd with one piece of Cotton Cloath, on which were set all sorts of Fruits and Conserve, all in great Balins of Gold, whereof there was so great a number, that there was hardly place left for three hundred great Flaggons of the same Metal, which were dispers'd here and there, only for Ostentation sake: so that which way soever a man look'd, there was nothing to be seen but Gold. All the Plate was plain and smooth, save only the Flaggon and Cup out of which the King himself drunk, which two pieces the *Persians* call *Surbahi*, and *Piali*, which were beset with Rubies and Turqueses. With these conserve, we had excellent *Schiras-wine*, and they gave us the Divertisement of a fellow that shew'd tricks of Legerdemain, who did beyond any thing I ever saw of that kind before. About an hour after, the Conserve were taken away, that the Meat might be brought in. The floor was laid with another Cloath, which was of a Gold Brocado, and there came in ten men loaden with Meat in great Vessels of Gold, made like the Milk-pails in *France*, which some carried upon their Heads, some upon a kind of Barrows, which were also cover'd with plates of Gold.

GoldPlate

Schiras-wine

The *Suffretzi*, that is, the Carver, having plac'd the Meat, sat down in the midst of the Table, or floor of the Hall, took the Meat out of those Vessels, and dispos'd it into Dishes, and sent them, first to the King, then to the Ambassadors, and afterwards to the Lords, and the rest of the Company. They understand not what it is to entertain with several Courses, but set down all upon the Table at once, and think they treat their Guests very well. All the Dishes were fill'd with Rice of all sorts of Colours, and the Carver put the Meat upon the Rice, to wit, Mutton, boyl'd and roasted, tame and wild Fowl, Omelets, Pies, Spinage, Sowr-cruds, &c. insomuch, that many times, there was five or six sorts of Meat in the same Dish. This is done by design, and for their own convenience; in regard, that, not sitting at a Table opposite one to another, but all of a side, as the *Monks* do, and consequently one man being not able to reach to several Dishes, they are served several sorts of Meat in the same Dish.

TheCarver

Their manner of sitting at meat.

But as we imitated the *Monks* in our manner of sitting, so were we as silent as they are at Meals: for there was not a word spoken all the time we were at Meat; unless it were that the King himself whisper'd twice or thrice to the Chancellor. But there was not that silence observ'd at two or three other Entertainments we had at the Court afterwards: for then, the King was pleas'd to fall into some discourse with the Ambassadors, concerning the affairs of *Europe*, and particularly concerning the Warrs of *Germany*.

Silence at meals.

We had also, while we were at Dinner, the Divertisement of their Musick, and the Activity of those *Curtizans*. The Musick consisted of Lutes, Violins, Flageolets, Hawboies, and Timbrels, which he who play'd upon the Timbrel, accompany'd with a wretched inharmonious Voice, which disorder'd the little Consort there was in their pretended Consort. The Dancing of the Women was more regular, and though it was not consonant to the Musick, nor the way of Dancing among the *Europeans*, yet was it not undelightfull, but had its cadences and exactness as well as ours.

Musick

While we were at Dinner, there lay hid, in a Door which was cover'd by the Hangings, over against the place where the Ambassadors sat, a *Persian*, who understood the *Portuguez* and *Italian*, to observe their Demeanour, as also what discourse they might have with their Interpreter, that he might give an account of what they said concerning the fashions and manners of that Court. The relation he gave in to the King of what the Ambassador *Brugman* had said of the Pictures, and the Entertainments, and the manner of Life of the *Persians*, prov'd to his disadvantage and Prejudice. Our Interpreter was a *Portuguez*, an *Augustine* Frier, about forty years of age. His name was Father *Joseph*, of the *Rosary*, a good natur'd man, obliging, and complaisant, and a person that understood himself very well; inasmuch, as, having liv'd four and twenty years in *Persia*, he was excellently well skill'd in the Language, and throughly acquainted with the humour and customs of that Nation. In his discourse with the Ambassador *Crusius*, he made use of the Latin Tongue, and spoke *Portuguez* to the Ambassador *Brugman*.



1637. They sat at Dinner about an hour and a half, and then the Cloath being taken away, there was warm water brought to wash their hands. Which done, the Lord Chamberlain cry'd aloud, *Suffre Hakine, Scahe douletine, Kasiler Kuwetine, alla dielum*; that is, *Make us thankful for this repast, prosper the King's affairs, give his Soldiers and Servants courage; this we pray thee, O God*: whereto all the rest answer their *Alla, Alla*. Grace being thus said, they rose up, and went out of the room one after another, without speaking a word, according to the custom of the Country. Our *Mehemander* came also to tell us that we might withdraw when we pleas'd; as we immediately did, making a low Reverence to the King.

After this first audience, we were permitted to receive the Visits of all other Nations, who have any Commerce at *Ispahan*, as the *French, Spaniards, Italians, English and Dutch*. They came often to see us, and contributed much to our Divertisement, during the abroad we made in that City, The *English* were the first that gave us a Visit. Their Factor, whose name was *Francis Honeywood*, came to our Quarters the 18 of *August*, accompany'd by a considerable number of Merchants, who, to expresse the affection they bore us, had all put themselves into the *German* fashion, though otherwise they went according to the mode of their own Country. The Factor was an excellent good natur'd man, and excessively civil. He immediately made prof-fers of his service to us, and afterwards made them good upon all occasions, and kept us company most part of that day.

The 22. The King sent the Ambassadors a Present of Fruits, as Melons, Apples, Pears, Grapes, Quinces, and others, and, along with it, thirty great Flaggons of most excellent *Schiras-Wine*.

The first  
private  
Audience.

The 24. the Ambassadors had their first private audience, concerning their Negotiation, at which was the King himself in Person, attended by the Chancellor, and a great number of the Lords of the Council. This conference was not had in the *Divan-Chane*, but in another apartment, into which we were brought, through a spacious Gallery, and afterwards through a fair Garden, where those of our Retinue found their Divertisement, while the Ambassadors, with their Interpreter, were employ'd about their affairs. The King had the patience to stay there two hours and better, and as we came out thence, Dinner was going in, whereto all the Company was invited, all being placed, and treated in the same manner as we had been before.

Celebrate  
the Festival  
of St. Au-  
gustine.

Aug. the 28. the *Augustine* Friars came to intreat the Ambassadors to honour them with their Presence the next day, at the Celebration of the Festival of their Patron *St. Augustine*. They desired the same favour of the *Muscovian Poslanick, Alexei Savinouis*, as also of an *Armenian Bishop*, and the *English Merchants*, who, though of a different Religion, and that in *Europe* they would have made some difficulty to be present at the Ceremonies of the *Roman-Catholic* Church, live like Brethren and true Christians, among their common Enemies.

There were in the Monastery in all, but six *Spanish Monks*, and yet they had built a very vast Structure, with a very fair Church belonging to it, which had two Steeples, but somewhat low, a stately Cloister, several Cells, and a large Garden.

Dine in  
the Mona-  
stery.

The Ambassadors went thither on Horseback, in regard that, though the Monastery were within the City, yet was it above a League from our quarters; and the Religious men, who receiv'd them at the entrance of the Monastery, conducted them straight to the Church, which was adorn'd with abundance of Pictures, and Gilt in several places. They presently began Mass; during which we had pretty good Musick, for one of their Monks had some skill upon the Organ, and our Musicians had brought thither their Lutes and Violins. After Mass, we were carried into the Garden, near a Fountain, and under the shade of a Tree, the branches whereof were so full of Leaves, and so woven one within another, that they compass'd the Fountain, and in several places reaching down to the ground, they made convenient seats. The Clock striking twelve, we were brought into a fair Hall, where we were seated at three several Tables, which were plac'd all along the Walls, after the same manner as may be seen in the Monasteries of Religious men in *Europe*.

The Tables were cover'd with all sorts of Fruits, in dishes of Porcelane, and the Cloath was all strew'd with Flowers. Every one had his dish of Meat by himself, plenty of all things, and all very well dress'd, yet not without some respect to frugality. After Dinner, which lasted not so long as we had been at the entertainments of the *Persians*, or those we were invited to by some forein Merchants, we return'd into the Garden, where we pass'd away the remainder of the day, under the shade of the same Tree.

SEPT.

With the beginning of *September*, we began to be sensible of a change of the weather. The great heats were so much abated, that the Nights began to be tedious and troublesome, especially to those who had not been carefull to provide themselves good Coverlets.

Two Arme-  
nian Lords  
visit the  
Ambassa-  
dors.

About this time *Seferas-beg*, Governour of *Armenia*, accompany'd by his two Brothers, came to see the Ambassadors, with a design to make acquaintance, and contract Friendship with

with them. They were all three persons of an excellent good disposition, free in their Conversation and Civil, which gain'd so much upon the nature of the Ambassador *Brugman*, who lov'd people of that Kidney, and was himself of a free Humour, that he presented the two Elder, each of them, with a handsome Fowling-piece, and the younger with a Case of Pistols. They took those Presents so kindly, that, to express their gratitude, they resolv'd to make an Entertainment for the Ambassadors, for which they appointed the 18 of *September*, and entreated them to bring all their Retinue along with them. They sent us Horses to bring us, and some of the *Armenian* Merchants to accompany us.

We brought along with us two *Portuguez* Monks, the Prior of the *Augustines*, and our ordinary Interpreter. *Seferas-beg* receiv'd the Ambassadors at the entrance of the Church, in the Suburbs called *Tzulfa*, where he had the service said by the Patriarch of the place, who had about him a Cope of Cloath of Silver, with flowers of Gold, beset with great Pearls, and a Mitre of the same Stuff, cover'd all over with round Pearls. The Body of the Church was adorn'd with several large Pictures, the floor was cover'd with the Tapistry of the Country, and they had placed benches all along the walls for our more convenient sitting. They had also a kind of wretched Musick. Having done our Devotions, we got on horse-back again to goe to the place where the entertainment was prepared for us. *Seferas-beg*, having receiv'd the Ambassadors with much respect, and done his civilities to the chiefest of the Retinue, conducted them, through a spacious arch'd Gallery, into a great Garden, at the end whereof we found an open hall, according to the fashion of the Country, where we were intreated to sit down on the ground. The Cloath, which was of Gold and Silver Brocado, was cover'd with all sorts of Fruits and Conserves, and we drank of a certain prepar'd water, much like *Ros Solis*, but incomparably more delicate, and more precious. Having taken away the Fruits, they laid an *Indian* Cotton cloath, and the Meat was brought up, in silver Dishes. It was excellently well dress'd, according to the *Persian* way of dressing, with this difference only, that at this entertainment there was brought in Pork, and some other sorts of flesh, for which the *Persians* have an aversion. We had hardly eaten so much as allay'd our first hunger, ere we were forc'd to rise from the Table, to be conducted through a very noble apartment, into another hall, which look'd into the Garden. It was arch'd all about, and there were on the Walls certain Pictures representing the Women of most Nations in the World, dress'd according to the mode of their several Countries. The floor was cover'd with rich Tapistry, on which were laid Cushions of flower'd Satin, the ground-work thereof Gold and Silver. In the midst of the hall, there was a Fountain, the Basin whereof was of white Marble; the water was cover'd with Flowers; and it was beset all about with Flaggons, and Bottles of Wine.

We were invited to sit down, and to eat of the Fruit and Conserves, which were brought in, during which we had the Divertisement of Musick and Dancing. And as a further honour to us, the Patriarch was sent for, who came in immediately, having about him a Cassock of water'd Chamlet of a Violet Colour, and attended by two Priests clad in black, with Caps on their Heads. He was no ill Company: but the second of the two Brethren, whose name was *Elias-beg*, made the best sport of any in the company. For, to heighten the Divertisement of the Ambassadors, he would needs play on the *Tamera*, which is an Instrument used by the *Persians* instead of the Lute: and then he call'd for seven Porcelane Cups, full of water, and striking them with two little sticks, he accorded them with the Lute. While we were hearkning to this Musick, *Seferas-beg* told us, that he would give us a kind of Musick, which should be as delightful as the other; and thereupon rising up, he ordered to be brought him, by two Pages, in two great wooden Dishes, several Chrystal Glasses, which he distributed among the Company, to whom he began the King of *Persia's* health. The whole day was spent in these divertisements, till that the Ambassadors perceiving night approach, took leave of their Hosts; but these, pretending to conduct us out of the house, brought us to the other side of the Garden, into a Gallery, where we found the Cloath laid, and cover'd with all sorts of Meat, Flesh, Fish, Pies, Fruits and Conserves, for the Collation. We sat down again, but it was only out of compliance, for it is not to be imagin'd we could have eaten ought. Nor indeed can I believe, that he by whom we were entertain'd had any other design therein than to shew his Magnificence, and the Gallantry and Freedom of his Nature, especially in his Conversion of the darkest Night to bright Day. The Hall was all full of Lamps, which hung by a string fasten'd to the Roof, there being so great a number of them, and those so near one the other, that their Lights were so confounded, as that they made but one. There was also in the Garden, a great number of Torches and Candles, which wrought the same effect there.

Having, with much ado and many Compliments, taken our leave, we could not by any means put off the second Brother out of a humour had taken him to accompany us to our Lodgings, where he made a shift to get perfectly drunk, with *Aquavita* and *Ros Solis*. And thus we concluded that day, which I confess was one of the most pleasant we had had in all our Travels, having been better treated, than we had been by the King himself.

The

1637.

The second  
private  
Audience.

The 19. The Ambassadors had their second private audience, which the King gave them in another apartment, at the end of a Garden, and which lasted not above half an hour; in regard the Council took time to consider of the Memorials they receiv'd in writing from them. It is ordinary to stay and Dine at the Court after the Conferences; therefore I shall forbear repeating the Circumstances, unless something in particular oblige me thereto: as it happen'd this day, in that the King having heard that the Ambassadors had Musicians in their Retinue, he sent them word, that he would gladly hear their Musick. It consisted of a base Viol, a Tenor, and a Violin, which play'd about half an hour, till the King sent us word, that that Musick was not ill, but that he thought that of the Country as good as it.

The Am-  
bassadors  
treated by  
the English.

The 25. of September, the English made an entertainment for the Ambassadors and all their Retinue, which, in Magnificence, surpass'd all the rest. Their House or Lodge, was in the *Basar*, near the *Maidan*. The Structure was of great extent, divided into several apartments, and had a very fair Garden. We were at first brought into a Gallery, where we found Fruits and Conserves laid upon the floor, which was cover'd with Tapistry, according to the custom of the Country; and having done there, we pass'd into a great Hall, where we found the Table furnish'd and serv'd after the English fashion.

Indian  
Dancing-  
Women.Handsome  
and well  
shap'd.

They forgot not to drink the healths of most of the Kings and Princes of Europe, and we had the Divertisement of Musick upon the Virginals. After Dinner, we were brought into an open Hall, which look'd into the Garden, where we found a Collation of Conserves, with the best Wine the Countrey could afford, And whereas we had often seen the Dancing-women of the Country, they sent for some Indian Women of the same profession. There were brought six young Women, whereof some had their Husbands with them, who also either Danc'd or Play'd upon Violins; some came in alone. They were all somewhat of an Olive-colour, but had excellent good Features, a delicate smooth Skin, and very handsome Bodies. They had about their Necks much Gold and Pearls, and in their Ears Pendants of Gold or Silver, glittering with Jewels and Spangles.

Their habit

Some of them had Bracelets of Pearl, others of Silver, but they had all Rings on their Fingers, and among the rest, they had upon the Thumb, upon which, in the place where the Stone should be, there was a piece of Steel, about the bigness of a Crown-piece of Silver, and so well polish'd, that it serv'd them for a Looking-glass. They were Cloath'd after a particular manner, having on a kind of Stuff, which was so thin, that there was not any part of the Body but might be seen by the Company, save only what was hidden by the Drawers which they wore under their Petticoats. Some wore Caps on their Heads, others had them dress'd in Tiffany, and some had silk Scarfs, wrought with Gold and Silver, which crossing their shoulders reach'd down to the ground. Some were bare-foot, others were shod after a very strange manner. They had above the instep of the foot a string ty'd, with little Bells fasten'd thereto, whereby they discover'd the exactness of their Cadence, and sometimes corrected the Musick it self; as they did also by the *Tzarpanes*, or *Castagnetts*, which they had in their hands, in the managing whereof they were very expert. Their Musick consisted of Timbrels, according to the Indian way of Playing on them, Tabors, and Pipes.

The Indian Timbrels are two foot long, but broader in the middle than at the extremities, much after the fashion of our Barrels. They hang them about their Necks, and play on them with their fingers. The postures of these Indian Women in their Dancing are admirable. Their hands and feet are alwayes in action, as is also their whole Body: and many times, they address themselves to some particular person of the Company, either by an inclination of the Body, or to get the little Present they expect, which they very handsomely beg, either by stretching out their hands, yet so as that it seems to be done without any affectation, but as a necessary consequence of the Dance. They are much more pleasant in their Conversation than the Women of the Countrey. All these Dancing-women are common prostitutes, and very free to shew all their postures for money, nay to do beyond what might be expected from them. It was far-night ere we got away, which oblig'd the English to bring us home to our Lodgings.

The French Merchants made also an entertainment for the principal persons of our Retinue, and treated them, with some of the English Merchants, at a *Caravansera*, very handsomely.

OCTOB.  
The Am-  
bassadors  
make a  
feast.

The first of October, the Ambassadors made a great Feast, whereto were invited the Muscovian Ambassador, the Governour of Armenia, and his two Brothers, the chiefest of the English and French Merchants, the Spanish Monks of the order of St. Augustine, and some Italian Carmelites. They treated them after the German way, with three several Courses, each consisting of forty Dishes. The Musick consisted of Violins, Trumpets, and Timbrels, which made a goodly Noise, as did also our Cannon, when any Prince's health was drunk.

The Prince of Armenia, was taken, above all things, with certain services of Paste and Sugar, according to the German fashion, which were brought to the Table, rather to divert the Eye, than to sharpen the Appetite: and thought them so good, that having spoken of them at Court,

Court, the King would needs see some. Whence it came that the Ambassadors ordered some of them to be made by our Cook; as also some Florentines, and other pieces of Pastry of that kind, which he took very kindly, and presented them to some Ladies about the Court, who thought them excellent good Meat. 1637.

In the afternoon they had the Divertisement of seeing some run at the Ring, at which M. *Running Mandelslo* got the prize, which was a great Silver Goblet, and the Ambassador *Brugman* did at a King. the best next him, and got a drinking Cup Vermilion gilt. Every time any one put into the Ring, one of the Brass pieces was fired.

The next day the Prior of the *Augustines* came to the Secretary of the Embassy, to complain *The scandalous Life* to him of the debauch'd Lives of some of our Retinue, nay one of the chiefest among us, naming *of one of the Am-* particularly the Ambassador *Brugman*, and discover'd that there were some among us, who, *bassadors.* after the example of the *Armenians*, had married Women of the Country. He told him, that they had conceived a great joy and comfort, at the first news of our Embassy's coming thither, out of a hope, that our Lives would be an example to the *Christians* of the Country, who living among *Mahumetans*, were apt to fall into their vices and filthiness; but that, to his great regret, he found the contrary: entreating the Secretary, to speak of it to those in whose power it was to take some course therein, so to prevent the scandal which was given to others, the injury done to the name of *Christ*, and the infamy which must fall on the Prince, from whom the Embassy was sent. The Secretary went, with a resolution to give the Ambassador *Brugman* an account of these Remonstrances of the Priors, and to intreat him that some course might be taken, that the Domesticks might reform their Lives; but it was his misfortune, that coming into the Ambassador's Chamber, he found him in the company of an *Armenian* Woman, named *Tulla*. But the Ambassador *Brugman* imagining the Secretary's design had been to surprize him, was so incens'd thereat, that having sworn he would resent that affront, the Secretary, who had experience of his Revengefull and Irreconcilable disposition, retir'd to the Monastery of the *Augustines*, with an intention absolutely to quit his Relation to the Embassy, and to accept of the proffer which the *Carmelites* made him, to give him directions how to go for *Babylon*, and so by *Aleppo* into *Italy*, and thence into *Germany*. But the Ambassador coming to hear of the course he intended to take, sent him word, that if he did prosecute it, he would have him kill'd where-ever he were met: which he might the more easily have effected, in that the *Caravans* having their appointed places for Lodging, he might have found out a *Persian*, who, for a small matter, would have murther'd him. This apprehension, and the advice of some friends oblig'd the Secretary to intreat the Prior of the *Augustines*, to intercede for him, and to make his peace with *Brugman*; whereupon he return'd to the Ambassadors quarters, after he had staid thirteen dayes in the *Monastery*.

About this time, I went to the Suburbs of *Tzulfa*, with an intention to visit some *Armenian* *Ceremonies* Merchants, with whom I had had occasion to make acquaintance at the entertainments which *of Marriage* had been made us. Coming near their Church, I saw going thither one that was to be Married. *age among* whom I had the curiosity to follow, purposely to see the Ceremonies of the Marriage. *the Armen-* In the front of the Procession march'd their ordinary Musick, consisting of Timbrels, and Tabors, and after them went a Youth of about twelve or fifteen years of age, who had a wax Candle in his hand. The Bride-groom, who immediately follow'd the youth, was on Horse-back, clad in flower'd Satin, of several colours, and had on both sides of him two Men, handsome Persons, and very richly Cloath'd, as were also the other four who follow'd them, in two ranks. After them were carried two dishes of Meat, two pitchers of Wine, and so many dishes of Apples. The Bride-groom being come to the Church, sat down with those who were come along with him, and call'd for the Meat and Fruit to be brought and set before him; but did not eat of either. Those who had accompany'd him fell to it, but eat not much, and the rest was sav'd for the Priest, who was to bless the Marriage, save only the Wine, which was all drunk off. The Bride-groom having taken notice of me, rose up, and taking, on his right hand, a young Lad, and, on the left, one of those Men, who had accompany'd him thither, came straight to me, saluted me, pour'd out himself of the Wine into an earthen Cup, and intreated me to drink, but he himself would not taste of it. In the mean time, the Bride came into the Church, having, on the right hand a young Maid, and, on the left, a Married Woman; all three with their faces cover'd with a thin Lawn. The Priest, having brought them near the Altar, read several Prayers, and blest the Marriage, by holding a wooden Cross over the Married couple, who in the mean time gave one another their hands, and joyn'd their heads together, yet so, as that the Bride's head touch the Bride-groom's breast, to whom, by that action, she acknowledg'd her self bound to submit, mutually promising fidelity and loyalty one to the other, under the Cross, that is, in misfortunes and afflictions. That done, the Priest gave them the Communion, delivering to each of them a piece of the *Consecrated Hoast* steep'd in Wine.

I say, of the *Hoast*, inasmuch as the bread of the *Eucharist* is not here leavened as in *Muscovy*, and other places, in the *Greek* Church, but is made of a paste without Leaven, about the bigness and thicknes of a Crown piece of Silver. While the Communion was administred, they

1637. they sung, and play'd on certain great Cymbals, which the *Armenians* call *Hambarzon*. They never communicate without that kind of Mnlick, which they believe to be so much the more necessary, in that they say our Saviour, when he was to feed four thousand men with seven Loaves, went first up into the Mountain, where he offered his Prayers in Sacrifice to God, and that while he pray'd, two Angels came down from Heaven; and play'd upon that kind of Cymbals. After the Communion, they cast Rose-water upon the new-Married couple, and all the company, and ty'd a Scarf about the Bride's right hand, by which the Bridegroom draws her after him to the Church door, where all the company get on Horse-back, to goe to the place where there is a Feast prepared for them. For the three first nights after the Marriage, the Married couple touch not one another.

The Exp-  
rism of the  
Armeni-  
aus.

Coming out of this Church, I pass'd by another, where hearing a great noise, I went into it. The noise was made by striking with a great stick upon a deal board that was hung up, which the *Armenians* are forc'd to make use of instead of Bells, the *Persians*, it seems, not permitting them to make use of any. I found that this Ceremony was perform'd in order to the Christning of a Child. There were in the Church, only the Priest and his Clark, an aged Woman who had brought the Child thither: and stood in a corner of the Church, and a young man, about eighteen years of age, who presented the Child to be Baptiz'd. After the Priest had said certain Prayers, and made several Questions to the God-father, this latter carry'd the Child to the Woman, who unswath'd it, and then the Priest, Clark and the God-father went into the Sacristy, where the Font stood within the Wall, being made like a little Trough, half an ell in length, and a quarter in breadth. The Priest, having consecrated the Water, and put into it some consecrated Oyl, put the Child, naked, into the Font, and Baptiz'd him, in the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, pouring water three several times upon his Head. Then he poured water all over the Body, and made the sign of the Cross in his Forehead, with consecrated Oyl. The *Armenians* Christen not their Children, till they are full eight days old, unless they be weak; for in that case, they do it before, out of a belief, that the children, who dye without Baptism, are damned; whence it also comes, that they bury them not in the Church-yard, no more than they do those aged persons, who have not communicated once within a year.

The Tragi-  
cal History  
of a Clock-  
maker.

The 3. of *October*, there was put into Prison a German Clock-maker, a menial Servant of the King of *Persia's*. His name was *John Rodolph Stadler*, born at *Zurich* in *Switzerland*. He was aged about 38 years, and had Married the sister of that *Tulla*; whom we spoke of before. He had been five years in the King's service, and growing weary of being so long among Infidels, he was desirous to take the opportunity of our Embassy to return into his own Country. He had, to that end, desired his Majesties leave, to depart the Kingdom, and the King, who had an affection for him, had promis'd him a Present of four hundred Crowns, to oblige him to stay two years longer in *Persia*: but that was so far from prevailing with him, that, on the contrary, he continu'd his importunities for his departure, and, to that end, got the Ambassadors to intercede for him. In the mean time, a House-breaker coming one night into his house, out of a hope to find there the four hundred Crowns, the Clock-maker, who perceiv'd him, fell upon him, got him down, and having hurt him in several places, thrust him out of Doors. Afterwards, upon second thoughts, repenting himself, that he had suffered him to escape so, he took a Pistol, run after him, and kill'd him. The friends of the Deceas'd went immediately to the Ecclesiastical Judge, and made complaints of the Murther, committed by a Stranger and an Infidel, upon one of the Faithful, demanded Justice of him, and desir'd, that the Murtherer might be put into their hands, in order to his Execution. The Clock-maker who little thought he should be troubled for the death of a Robber, got on horse-back the next day to go to the Court; but he was taken in the street, and immediately put into the *Palenk*, which is a wooden Instrument, which comes about the Arms and the Neck, and very cruelly handled. The Ambassadors us'd much solicitation on his behalf, but the animosity of the Relations, and the authority of the Spiritual Judge, whom they call *Musfi*, carried it against him, so that he was condemn'd to dye; with this Proviso nevertheless, that if he would be circumcis'd, and embrace the Religion of the *Mussulmans*, it should be in the King's power to pardon him.

Most of the Lords, who had a great respect for him upon the account of his Profession, where-in he was Excellent, press'd him very much to change his Religion, at least in outward shew, and for a time, promising him those advantages which he could not expect in *Germany*. He was two several times conducted to the place of execution, in the *Maidan*, before the Palace-Gate, that he might see the horror of death before his eyes, out of an imagination, that would oblige him to renounce: but he equally slighted both promises and threats, his constancy could not be shaken, and he wav'd all they said to him, with so resolute a courage, that it is not to be doubted but it was supernatural, and that his death was a kind of Martyrdom. He told them, that the King's favour should never make him lose that which *Jesus Christ* had done him, by redeeming him from eternal death, by his blood: That being entertain'd into the

King's

King's service, his Majesty might dispose of his body, but that he would render up his Soul to him by whom it was created, that he might be therein glorify'd both in this World and the next. The *Augustin* Monks, and the *Carmelites*, endeavour'd all they could, to oblige him to make profession of the *Roman Catholick* Religion; but he continu'd firm to his former resolution, and would die in the *Reform'd* Religion, which he profess'd, and wherein he was perfectly well instructed. 1637.

At last, the *Persians*, finding it impossible to overcome his courage, either by fair or foul means, left him to the Relations of the deceas'd, who had the execution of him. He among them who went out to give him the first blow with the Cimitar, miss'd him, and wounded his next neighbour the Leg; the second struck into the *Palenk*, which they had left about his neck; the third struck him upon the neck, and finore down that Martyr of *Christ*, who afterwards receiv'd three other blows, ere he expir'd; the first in the head, and the other two, in the face. *Is executed*

The Ambassador *Brugman*, who, as I said before, had a great kindness for this *German's* sister-in-law, was so enrag'd at this execution, that being at a loss of all judgement, and not knowing what to do for madness, he would needs divert himself by running at the Ring, in the presence of two or three Gentlemen, and the Canonier, cauling, in the mean time, the great Guns to be fired above a hundred times. The body lay all that day expos'd to the sight of those that pass'd by, in the place where the execution had been done; till that in the evening, the Ambassador *Brugman*, with the King's permission, caus'd it to be brought to our Lodgings, with an intention to have it buried the next day. But the King having appointed that day to go a-hunting, and invited the Ambassadors to that Divertisement; it was put off; so that the Ceremonies of the enterment could not be performed till the 22. The *Muscovian* Ambassador, the Governour of *Armenia* and his brothers, most of the *Armenians*, and those of the Sect of *Nessera*, of which the Widdow of the deceas'd made profession (and whereof we shall discourse hereafter, as also of the other *European* Christians) honour'd his Funeral with their presence. *His enterment.*

The Hunting, we spoke of before, began the 17. The night before, the *Mehemandar* came to acquaint the Ambassadors, that his Majesty had, for their sakes, appointed a Hunting, that should last several dayes, and that it was his pleasure, they should have notice of it, that they might be ready against the next morning. It was imagin'd this was done out of design, that the Ambassadors might not be in person at the interment of the Clock-maker, but that hinder'd not the Ambassador *Brugman* from giving order that the body should be kept till his return. *The King takes the Ambassadors along with him a-hunting*

The 17. betimes in the morning, there were Horses brought for the Persons, and Camels for the Baggage. The Ambassadors got on Horse-back, with Father *Joseph*, and about thirty persons of their Retinue. The *Mehemandar* conducted them into a spacious Plain, whither the King came soon after, attended by above three hundred Lords, all excellently well mounted, and sumptuously cloath'd. The King himself was in a Vestment of Silver Brocado, with a Turbant adorn'd with most noble Heron's Feathers, and having led after him four Horses, whereof the Saddles, Harness, and covering Cloaths were beset with Gold and precious Stones. The King at his coming up very civilly saluted the Ambassadors, and ordered them to march near him on his left hand.

The other *Chans* and great Lords march'd after the King, with so little observance of order, that many times the Servants were shuffled in among their Masters. There was, among the rest, in the King's Retinue, an Astrologer, who alwayes kept very close to him, and ever and anon observ'd the position of the Heavens, that he might prognosticate what good or ill fortune should happen. These are believ'd as Oracles. We rode up and down that day above three Leagues, the King taking occasion often to change his Horse and upper Garments, which he did every day while the Hunting lasted. The morning was spent in Hawking, the Hawks were let out at Hens, Cranes, Drakes, nay sometimes at Crows, which they either met with by chance, or were set purposely upon. About noon, we came to an *Armenian* Village, where we found a great number of Tents of divers colours, pitch'd after an odd kind of way; which yet made a very pleasant Prospect. After the King had been brought by his Grandees into his Tent, they came for the Ambassadors, who with some of their Gentlemen and Officers Dined with him. There was nothing extraordinary; Fruits and Conserves were brought in first, and afterwards the Meat, upon a kind of Bier, or Barrow, which was cover'd all over with plates of Gold, and it was serv'd in Dishes of the same metal. *An Astrologer.*

In the after-noon, the *Mehemandar* carried the Ambassadors to be Lodg'd in another Village, about a quarter of a League from the place where the King had his Tents. The Inhabitants of those Villages are *Armenians*, and they are call'd *Defach*, and *Werende*, from the Countrey, where they liv'd before, near *Iruan*, whence they were heretofore translated by *Schach-Abas*, to the end, that, living near *Isphahan*, they might be employ'd about the Vines. When they understood we were *Christians*, they entertain'd us much more kindly, and made us several

1637. Presents of Fruits and Wine. *Seferas-beg*, and some other Lords gave the Ambassadors a Visit, to be merry, and participate of a Collation with them. They brought along with them two of those fallow Deer, which the *Persians* call *Ahu's* and some Hens, which we sent to *Ispahan*. The King coming to hear that the *Mechemandar* had Lodg'd us in another Village, was very much displeas'd at it, and commanded that we should be brought the same night, to be Quarter'd in the next house to that where he was Lodg'd himself; which was accordingly done, and our Supper was brought us out of the Kings Kitchin, in Dishes of Gold.

Crane-hunting.

The 18. betimes in the morning, the King sent the Ambassadors word, that he would go with very few persons about him, a Crane-Hunting, intreating them that they would bring along with them only their Interpreter, out of this respect, that the Cranes might not be frighten'd, by the great number of people, and that the pleasure of the Hunting might not be disturb'd by too much noise. The Ambassadors took only Father *Joseph* along with them: but the sport was no sooner begun with the day, ere they sent for all the *Kerinue*. They had made a great secret way under-ground, at the end whereof there was a field. about which they had scatter'd some Wheat. The Cranes came thither in great numbers, and there were above fourscore taken. The King took some of their feathers, to put into his *Mendil*, or *Turbann*, and gave two to each of the Ambassadors, who put them into their Hats. That done, they rode up and down the fields, and spent the time in Hawking, till that drawing towards noon, the King went to take his repast in the same house, where he had Dined the day before, and was in a very good humour. They had sent for his *Musick* thither.

Drake, and Wild-goose-hunting.

At night, he sent to entreat the Ambassadors to come only with six-persons along with them, to the hunting of the Drake and Wild-Goose, at a place, half a League from the Village. They all alighted within two hundred paces of the place where they expected the sport, and went into a great Hut built of Earth, near which they had hidden the Nets upon the side of a small Brook, where there is abundance of fresh-water Fowl. The King caus'd us to sit down all about the walls of the Hut, and oblig'd us to help him off with some Bottles of excellent Wine, which was all the Divertisement we had that day. For, not so much as one Bird appearing, we return'd to our quarters, where the King sent us cold Mutton, boyl'd and roasted, fowr Sheeps milk, which they account a great delicacy, Cheese, and several Vessels full of Citrons, and other Fruits, raw and preserv'd.

Leopards.

The next day was our greatest day for sport, the King having ordered to be brought to the field, a great number of Hawks, and three Leopards taught to hunt: but very few Dogs. Having spent some time in beating the bushes up and down, and found nothing, the King carried us into a great Park, which was above two Leagues about. The *Persians* call it *Hazartzirib*, that is, a place where a thousand bushels of Wheat may be sown. It was compass'd with a very high Wall, and divided into three Partitions. In the first were kept Harts, Wild-Goats, Deer, Hares, and Foxes. In the second were kept that kind of Deer, which they call *Ahu's*; and in the third, Wild Asses, which they call *Kouhrban*. The King first commanded the Leopards to be let in among the *Ahu's*, and they took each of them one, Thence we went to the wild Asses, and the King seeing one of them at a stand, spoke to the Ambassador *Brugman* to fire his Pistol at it, and perceiving that he miss'd it, he took an Arrow, and though he Rid in full speed, shot it directly into the breast of the Beast. Another he took just in the Fore-head, and afterwards he wounded others in several places. He never fail'd, though he alwayes shot Riding in full speed. He was as well skill'd at his Sword as at his Bow; for perceiving one of the wild Asses could hardly go, he alights, and going directly to the Beast, gave it a blow with his Sword over the Back, with which single blow he cleft it down to the Belly. He struck another with his Cymitar over the Neck, with so much strength and slight, that there wanted not an inch of his having cut it clear off. One of the *Chans* took the King's Sword, wip'd it clean, and put it into the Scabbard. Then we all went to another small Partition, that was in the middle of the Park.

At the entrance of this enclosed place, the King commanded one of the two Huntsmen who carried his Fowling-piece after him, to shoot at a wild Ass, which had before been wounded with an Arrow. The antienter man of the two thinking it a disparagement to him, that the command was directed to the younger, would needs prevent him, shot at the Beast, and miss'd. The company laugh'd at him, which put him into such madness, that suffering the King to go on, he returns to his Camerade, drew his Sword upon him, and cut off the Thumb of his right hand. The wounded party makes his complaints to the King, who immediately commanded the others head to be brought him: but upon the Mediation of several of the *Grandees*, his punishment was changed, and he had only his Ears cut off. The Executioner, I know not upon what inducement, cut off but some part of the Ear; which the Grand-Master, *Morth-saculi-Chan* perceiving, and thinking the man had foul play done him to have ought of his Ears left, alighted, took out his own knife, and cut off what the Executioner had left; to the great astonishment of all us, who were not accustomed to see Persons of that quality turn common Executioners.

A Persian Lord turns Executioner.

Within

Within the enclosed place I spoke of, there was a little building much after the fashion of a Theatre, into which the King brought us, to a Collation of Fruits and Conserve. That done, there were driven into the place thirty two wild Asses, at which the King discharg'd some shots with the Fowling-pieces, and shot some Arrows, and afterwards permitted the Ambassadors, and the other Lords to shoot at them. 1637

It was pretty sport to see those Asses run, having sometimes ten or more Arrows shot into their Bodies, wherewith they incommodated and wounded the others when they got in among them, so that they fell a biting one another, and running one at another after a strange manner. Having knock'd down all those that were wounded, there were let in thirty wild Asses more, which they also kill'd and laid them all in a row before the King, to be sent to *Ispahan*, to the Court Kitchin. The *Persians* so highly esteem the flesh of these wild Asses, that they have brought it into a Proverb in their *Kulusthan*. Wild-Asses-  
flesh much  
esteem'd in  
Persia.

This kind of Hunting being over, Dinner was brought in at the same place. Here it was that the Ambassador *Brugman* was pleas'd, upon his own account, to present the King of *Persia*, with his Highness the Duke of *Holstein's* Picture, in a Box all beset with Diamonds, as also with a very fair Steel Looking-Glass, polish'd on both sides, and embellish'd with several Figures, grav'd by that famous Artist, *John Dresde*, and done after an Excellent way, whereof he himself had been the Inventor. Presents  
from one  
of the Am-  
bassadors  
to the King

After Dinner, we retir'd into some houses thereabouts, to take our Mid-dayes repose. The King sent us thither ten *Ahues*, and a very fair Stagg, the horns whereof had twelve brow-anklers: but ere we were well laid down, word was brought us, that the King was got on Horse-back, in order to some further sport. We immediately follow'd, and found him a Hawking. He soon gave over that sport, and taking along with him nine persons of his own Retinue, and six of ours, he went into a spacious low Walk, at the end whereof there was a place for the keeping of wild-Ducks: but in stead of hunting, he must needs fall a Drinking, and was so dispos'd to mirth, that the noise we made, kept the Ducks and Geese from coming near the place. The King did Monsieur *Mandelslo* the favour, to permit him to present him with a Glass of Wine, and after he had drunk, and that *Mandelslo* had kiss'd his knee, he presented him with an Apple, which is an expression of so particular a kindness, that the whole Court began to look on him, from that time, as a Person very much in the King's favour.

The *Kerek jerak*, or ordinary Steward of his Majesties Household, whose name was *Mahumed Aly-beg*, who had fill'd the King his drink during this Debauch, and had not forgot to take off his own, was grown so drunk, that, sitting at the entrance of the Walk, he made such a noise, that the King sent one to bid him get thence, and perceiving no intreaties would prevail with him, he commanded him to be dragg'd thence, and set on horse-back.

*Aly-beg* could not hinder their dragging of him thence, but they were not able to set him on horse-back, nay he abus'd and struck those that should have done it. The King goes out of the Gallery, and would have perswaded him to get on horse-back, but he was no better treated than the rest, so that laying his hand on his Sword, he made as if he would have cut off his head. The fright which that put the Steward into, made him cry out so loud, that the whole company concern'd themselves in the fear he was in.

He was very much in his Prince's favour, but knew him to be a person not to be jeasted withall, and he had so many sad examples of it before his Eyes, that the terrors of Death did, in a moment, disperse the Vapours, which had unsetled his Brain, and bestow'd wings on those Feet, which the Wine had made unable to go. He immediately got on horse-back, and rid away as fast as his horse could carry him, and so made a shift to escape that time. The king who was got into a pleasant humour, only Laugh'd at it; he came very merrily in to us; but withdrew soon after, and we went and were lodg'd in our own quarters.

The 20. there was no hunting at all. We dined with the king, who was that day serv'd by a hundred young Men, very handsome Persons, and richly Clad, who alwayes stood before him. Many of our Retinue would rather have kept those Gentlemen company, and waited, than have been among the Guests, by reason of the trouble it was to them to sit according to the manner of the Country. This entertainment was made in a pleasant Summer-house that stood in the midst of a Garden, upon the water-side. In the afternoon, we went to another Village, about a League and a half from the City, and, in our way, took a white Heron.

The 21. the king sent betimes in the Morning to invite us to go a Pidgeon-hunting. We were carried up to the top of a great Tower, within which there were above a thousand Nests. We were plac'd all without, having in our hands little sticks forked at the ends. The king commanded our Trumpets to sound a charge, and immediately there were driven out of the Tower or Pidgeon-house, great numbers of Pidgeons, which were most of them kill'd by the king and those of his Company. This was the end of that kind of hunting, after which we took our way towards the City: but ere we got into it, the king carried us into one of his Gardens, called *Tzarbach*, which is no doubt the fairest of any we have seen in *Persia*, where we had another Manificent treatment. As soon as we were got to our Lodgings, there were brought us, Pidgeon-  
Hunting.



1637. from the King, twelve wild Drakes, and as many Pidgeons; but they were provided, it seems, only for the Ambassador *Brugman* and his Ladies.

Sometimes afterwards it was publish'd by the *Tzartzi* or publick Crier, all over the City, that all should keep within their houses, and that none should presume to come into the street; the King being to goe that way abroad, to give the Court Ladies the Divertisement of Hunting.

The custom of the Country is, that the King's Wives and Concubines should not go abroad, unless it be in certain Chests or Cabinets, which are covered all over, and carried by Camels. All which notwithstanding, they permit not, that, while they are passing by, there should be any one in the Streets, or that any men should come within Musket-shot of the field where they are, upon pain of present Death. The King goes before, and the Ladies follow about half an hour after, accompany'd by their Women, and a great number of Eunuchs. When they are come into the field, they get on Horse-back, carry Hawks on their fists, and use their Bows and Arrows as well as the men.

Only the King and the Eunuchs stay among the Women; all the rest of the men are about half a League from them, and when the sport is begun, no man is to come within two Leagues of them, unless the King send for him by an Eunuch. The Lords of the Court in the mean time hunt some other way. The King return'd from this Hunting, *Nov. 26.* so Drunk, as were also most of his Lords, that they could hardly sit their horses. They made a halt at the said house called *Tzarbach*, and had engag'd themselves into that Debauch, upon a great Bridge which is at the entrance of the Park, where the great Lords had danc'd in his Presence, and found him such excellent sport, that those who did best, had great Presents bestow'd on them. It was observ'd to be his particular Humour, that he was very liberal in his Debauches, and many times gave away so much, that the next day he repented him of it.

The King liberal in his Debauches.

Some eight days after this great Hunting-match we had an example of his Liberality in that kind. For, one day, being desirous to drink in the after-noon, and most of the company having left him, there being with him only the *Eahstemad* dowlet, and some Eunuchs, he caus'd a great Cup to be fill'd, which he ordered to be presented to the Chancellor, with a command, that he should drink his health. The Chancellor, who was not given to those Excesses, would have excus'd himself, but the King drew out his Sword, set it by the Cup, and bid him take his choice, either Drink, or Dye.

The Chancellor finding he had the Woolf by the Ears, and not knowing how to avoid drinking, takes the Cup in his hand, and was going to drink; but perceiving the King a little turn'd about, he rises and gets away. The King was extremely incens'd thereat, and sent for him, but upon answer brought, that he was not to be found, he gave the Cup to an *Achra* or Eunuch. He would also have excus'd himself, pretending he had not Drunk any Wine for a good while before, and that if he took off that Cup, it would infallibly be the Death of him; but the King was not satisfy'd with those excuses, and taking up his Sword would have kill'd him, if a *Mehater*, or Gentleman belonging to his Chamber had not prevented him, yet did he not do it so clearly, but that he himself was hurt in the Leg, and the Eunuch in the hand. The King, who would have his will, finding all had left him, address'd himself to one of his Pages, the Son of *Alymerdan-Chan*, Governour of *Candabar*, who was a very handfom young Lad, and ask'd him, whether he had the courage to venture at the drinking off of that Cup. The young Lad made answer, that he knew not what he might be able to do, and that he would do his endeavour, whereupon kneeling down before the King, he took several draughts of it. At last, thinking it too great a task to go through, and finding himself animated by the Wine, and the King's obliging expressions, who still egg'd him on to Drink, he rises, cast his arms about the King's neck, kisses him, and says, *Pat scha humse alla, taala menum itzun d' Jfchock jafsch wer sun*; that is, *I pray God grant the King a long and happy Life*: and the Prince was so much taken with the action, that he sent to the Treasury for a Sword, whereof the Handle, Scabard, and Belt, were beset with precious stones, and presented him with it; and bestow'd on another Page, who had help'd off with some of the Wine, another very rich Sword, and a great Golden Cup. But the next day, he was so cast down, and so Melancholy, that Kiding abroad into the Country, he was not able to hold his Bridle. They put him into a better humour, by getting from the Pages the best Sword and the Golden cup, giving them some *Tumans* in ready Money.

The Chancellor treats the Ambassadors. A Hall set all about with Looking-Glasses

The 19. of *November*, the *Eahstemad* Dowlet, or Chancellor, made a great Feast for the Ambassadors, in a most fair Hall, which as soon as a man came to the entrance of it, wonderfully charm'd the Eye. For in the midst of the *Vestibulum*, there was a great Fountain, out of which came several spouts of water. The Hall it self had on the upper part of it, towards the Roof, several Pourtraictures of Women, cloath'd in several Modes, all done after some *European* Copies; and under them the Walls were set all about with Looking-Glasses, to the number of above two hundred, of all sizes. So that when a man stood in the midst of the Hall, he might see himself of all sides.

We were told, that in the King's Palace, in the apartment of his Wives, there is also a Hall, <sup>1637.</sup> done all about with Looking-Glasses, but far greater and much fairer than this. The entertainment which the Chancellor made us was very Magnificent, all the meat being serv'd in silver Dishes. We had the Divertisement of the King's Musick and Dancing-women all the time we were at Dinner, during which they behav'd not themselves with the same respect and reserv'dness as they had done in the King's presence, when we din'd at Court, but shew'd tricks much beyond any thing they had done before, one whereof I observ'd, which I think almost Miraculous. One of these Women having plac'd in the midst of the Hall a Vessel of Porcelane two foot high, and taken several turns about it, took it up between her Leggs, with such slight, that not any one of us perceiv'd it, and kept on the Dance with the same ease, and with the same slight return'd it to the same place, not making one wrong step all the time.

These Women are call'd *Kachbeha's*, and they are employ'd not only in this Divertisement, <sup>The Persian</sup> but in any other that may be expected from Women. Those who entertain their Friends, what <sup>treat mens</sup> quality soever they be of, will not have them want any Diversion they can desire; and the <sup>have all</sup> *Persians*, who are great Lovers of Women, will not omit at their treatments that sport which they <sup>Diversions</sup> most delight in. Whence it comes, that there is no great Feast made in *Persia*, at which these Dancing-women are not brought in, as a necessary part of it. The Master of the Entertainment proffers them to his Guests, and he who hath a mind to any one of them, rises from the Table, goes into a private room with her whom he most fancies, and having done his work, comes to his place again, and the Woman goes to the Dance, without any shame on the one side, or notice taken of it on the other. Those who make some difficulty to venture themselves with such common Ware, refuse the Master's kindness with a Complement, and thank him for the honour he does them. There is but one City in all *Persia*, to wit, that of *Ardebil*, where this custom is not suffered; which is done upon the account of the Sanctity of the place, which is so great, that *Schach-Abas* thought himself oblig'd to banish thence all the publick VVomen.

Dinner being ended, the Musick and the Dancers withdrew, and the Ambassadors with the Chancellor, made some Progress in their Negotiation, and in the mean time we were carried a walking into the Garden, where they treated us with Fruit and Conserves.

As to this *Eabtemad dowllet*; his name was *Tagge*, and he was about sixty years of age, ha- <sup>The Chan-</sup>ving one eye black, the other blew, a fall face; but yellowish or inclining to an Olive, and ve- <sup>cellors</sup>ry high colour'd; whence it came, that he was ordinarily called *Saru Tagge*. He wore no <sup>name, age,</sup> beard, as being an Eunuch; and upon that occasion we shall here give a short account of him <sup>and for-</sup> and his fortunes, which we think may deserve insertion in this place, though there are various <sup>tune.</sup> relations thereof.

Some affirm, that *Saru Tagge*, being yet very young, and his employment being to Copy out Writings in the City of *Keintze*, he fell in love with a young Boy, and not prevailing with him to consent to his brutality, he forc'd him. The Boy's Father made his complaints to *Schach-Abas*, then King of *Persia*, who commanded that *Saru Tagge* should have his *Syk*, (so they call the privy parts) with all its dependences, cut off. Others relate, that *Schach-Abas* condemn'd him to die, and that *Tagge* coming to hear of it, cut off, himself, those parts with a Rasour, sent them to the King, with this request, that having himself punish'd the Members which had offended, his Majesty would be pleas'd to let his head alone, which had done no more harm, and might, one time or other, be serviceable to him; and that the King astonish'd at the strange resolution of the man, conceiv'd an affection for him, and finding him an understanding person, made him Secretary in his Court of Chancery. *Schach-Sefi* having with his own hands kill'd *Taleb-Chan*, this man's Predecessor, sent *Tagge* the Golden Ink-horn, which is the Badge of the Dignity of Chancellor.

The 21. following, the Chancellor invited the Ambassadors to a second entertainment, by <sup>A second</sup> express order from the King, that they might make some further progress in their Affairs. They <sup>conference</sup> had a very long conference together, after which we were treated at dinner, but not with the <sup>with the</sup> same Magnificence as the time before. <sup>Chancellor's</sup>

The 29. the two Brothers, *Seferas*, and *Elias-beg*, came to visit the Ambassadors, who would needs have them stay Dinner, *Elias-beg* endeavour'd all he could to be merry himself, and to make others so, but we easily found it was done with some violence, and that his heart answer'd not his outward demeanour. The reason of it we understood from his elder brother, who told us, that the King had a great kindness for them, and did them very great favours; but that it was a dangerous thing to jeast with him, and that he had a very sad assurance of it in his brother, who being much respected at the Court, for the freedom of his humour, and his divertive conversation, the King told him one day, that he wanted not any thing, save that he was not of the *Mussulman's* Religion, and that he could not do him a greater pleasure, than to suffer Circumcision. Whereto *Elias-beg*, reply'd smiling, that that might happen one time or other, intreating his Majesty not to speak any further of serious affairs, but to prosecute his Divertisements. There was no more said to him of it for a good while, but upon occasion of the <sup>Clock-</sup> <sup>makers</sup>

1637. *makers* constancy, the king sent him word, that he should remember the promise he had made to be Circumcis'd. He would have excus'd himself, pretending what he had spoken was in jeast; but those whom the king had sent to him, would not be shuffled off with that answer, too's him, and Circumcis'd him by force. *Elias-beg* confirm'd what his elder brother had told us; but with this protestation, that he was nevertheless a *Christian* in his Soul, and that he would die in the profession he had ever made of that Religion.

DECEM. December the second, *Abasculi Beg*, our *Mehemandar*, came, and brought us the Presents from the king; to wit, to each of the Ambassadors a Horse, with the Saddles cover'd all over with plates of Gold, and the Bridles having great buckles of the same Metal: Two Garments, according to the *Persian* wearing, together with the *Mendils* and *Mianbends*, that is, the Turbant and Girdle, of Gold Brocado, according to the mode of the Countrey. Moreover, to be divided between them both, two hundred and five pieces of fifteen sorts of silk stuffs, Satin, Damask, *Darai*, Taffata, Cotton, &c. and two hundred *Tumains* in money, which amont to just three thousand, three hundred and seventy *Piastrs*, or a thousand French Pistols, towards the expences of their travel in their return. The five principal persons of the Retinue had each of them a Satin Vestment, and another of Taffata, with Flowers of Gold and Silk. The other Gentlemen had each of them one of Taby, with Flowers of Gold; but the rest of the Retinue had not any thing sent them. The Ambassador *Brugman* seiz'd the money, bestow'd some of it among those of our Company, who stood in need thereof, to buy things necessary for their journey, and distributed the rest among some of his *Armenian* friends.

The next day, Decemb. 3. the King sent to invite the Ambassadors to D'ne with him once more, which was to be the last Treatment we were to have at Court. The *Mehemandar* told them, it was the custom, that they should have, upon their own cloaths, the best of those Garments, which the King had sent them. The Ambassadors, at first, made some difficulty to have that compliance; but when they were told it was a custom observ'd by all Ambassadors, and that no doubt the King would take it very ill at their hands, if they presented themselves before him, without the marks of his Liberality, they at last resolv'd to do it, and, after their example, all the rest of the Retinue. We Dined in the Hall of the *Divan Chane*, and all things were performed with the same Ceremonies as at the first time. Only this happened more than ordinary, that, while the fruits were yet upon the Table, the Chancellor ordered to pass before the King, the Present, which he is wont to make every year once, and sometimes twice, for reasons whereof we shall give some account hereafter. This Present consisted in twelve excellent Horses, very richly cover'd, forty nine Camels loaden with *Turkie* Tapistry, and other fine stuffs of Wool, fifteen Mules, a thousand *Tumains*, or fifty thousand Livers in money, forty pieces of Gold and Silver Brocado, and several other stuffs and Commodities, whereof there was such abundance, that it took up an hour and a half ere all were pass'd by, to be dispos'd into the Treasury: in as much as for every *Tumain*, there was a several person, who carried it in his hand, in a silken Purse of several colours.

After Dinner, the *Kurtzibachi*, or Lord high Chamberlain, came and conducted the Ambassadors to the King, of whom they took their leave. The King delivered them himself the Answer he made to the Letters they had brought him, with recommendations to his Highness our Master, and promis'd that he would send to Visit him by an exprefs Embassy. The Ambassadors answer'd the Complement, and thank'd the King for the honour he had done them, and the noble Treatments they had received from him, during the stay they had made in his kingdom; and return'd to their lodgings, observing the same order in their going from the Court as had been done at their going thither.

Decemb. 4. the *Poslanick*, or *Muscovian* Ambassador, *Alexei Savinowits* went to see the Chancellor, who dismiss'd him in the Kings name, that he might return in our Company. The dayes following, those Lords, who had receiv'd any Presents from our Ambassadors, sent theirs to them.

Decemb. 5. *Chosru Sultban* sent the Ambassadors two Horses. The next day, *Tzanichan*, the *Kurtzibaschi*, sent his Present to the Ambassadors; but in regard he had done it, by the *Persian* fugitive, *Rustan*, who had so basely left the Ambassadors, to change his Religion, they would not accept of it, and sent him word, that they much wondred, that, it being, as they conceiv'd, his design to do them an honour, and to oblige them by the Present he made them, he would send it by a person, for whom they must needs have an aversion, and one they could not endure to see. Three dayes after, he sent them, by another Man, two Horses, a Mule, and eighteen pieces of Stuff, which they accepted, and gave the person who brought the Present, five Pistols.

The 10. the Chamberlain sent them two Horses ; the Chancellor , two Horses , a Mule , and forty five pieces of stuffs , among which there were several , whereof the ground-work was Gold. 1637.

The same day , the *Mehemander* came to give us notice , that the King intended within eight days to goe for *Kaschan* , and that if we could be ready against that time , we might make our advantage of the convenience , as far as that City. Which oblig'd us to put all things in readines for our journey ; and the 12. we made an entertainment , in order to our departure , whereto were invited the same persons who had been at the first , save that the acquaintances , which the Ambassador *Brugman* had made in the Suburbs of *Tzulfa* , occasion'd his invitation of several *Armenians* to this , who had not been at the former.

In the afternoon , there was running at the Ring , at which Divertisement was present also the *Portuguez* Agent , who manag'd the Viceroy's affairs at the Court , and a rich *Jew* , who drove a great trade between the *Indies* and *Constantinople*. The Walls, Windows, and tops of the neighbouring houses were full of *Persians* and *Armenians* , who came thither to see that Divertisement.

The noise of the Trumpets and Tymbrels continu'd all the time , as did also that of our Artillery , which the Ambassador *Brugman* ordered to be discharg'd at all the healths that were drunk , and that so often , that Father *Joseph* , our Interpreter , who knew that they might hear every shot at the Kings Palace , fearing his Majesty should take it ill , was forc'd to represent to him the Tyrannical humour of that Prince , and the danger , whereto he expos'd not only his own person , after the Ambassadors were departed , but also all that belong'd to the Embassy. He told him , that it was no extraordinary thing to see that Prince exercise his cruelties upon all sorts of persons , without any regard of their Quality or Character , and intreated him to command that there should be no more shooting. But all these Remonstrances prevail'd nothing with the Ambassador , who ordered the Trumpets to sound , and the Guns to be fir'd as much as at any time before. We understood since , that the King was so incens'd against the said Ambassador , as well for this action , as another , whereof I shall presently give an account , that he was upon the point of ordering him to be cut in pieces , and it may be all of us with him , if the prudence and moderation of the Chancellor had not prevail'd with him to forbear , by representing to him , that the Prince his Master , who , no doubt approv'd not the insolences of that Ambassador , would be sure to punish them , as soon as he were advertised thereof.

But what most incens'd the King was this following adventure. *Lion Bernoldi* , who had the Quality of a Gentleman , in the Retinue of the Ambassadors , was put into Irons by order of the Ambassador *Brugman* ; upon this account , that being born at *Antwerp* , whence he retir'd into *Holland* , there were some jealousies conceiv'd of him , upon the frequent Visits he made to the *Dutch* Agent , from whom he receiv'd many little kindnesses. However , that the Agent might not take ought amiss , and the more to smother the jealousie had of him , it was given out that he had rob'd the Ambassadors. He found means to make his escape , and cast himself into the Sanctuary of the *Persians* , which they call *Alla-Capi* , which is part of the King's Palace. The Ambassadors sent to intreat the King to return their Domestick into their hands ; but answer was brought , that if what he was charg'd to have stolen were found about him , it should be restor'd , but that as to his person , it was not in his power to force him out of the Sanctuary , though he had committed some Crime against his Royal Dignity. The Ambassador *Brugman* was so transported with passion at this answer , that he said aloud , that he would have him , and would kill him , though he took refuge and were found within the King's arms. Nay , not content to betray this sally of his passion , he suborn'd an *Armenian* , who was to persuade *Bernoldi* , to get out of the Sanctuary in the night , and to hide himself some where else , while he sent above twenty persons a-foot and on horse-back , Arm'd with Fire-locks , and Muskets with match lighted , to the Palace-Gate , with exprefs Order to kill him , if he came out , or to get him thence by force. His Colleague endeavour'd all he could to prevent that violence , and the Kings Guard oppos'd it ; but the insolence of the party he had sent out upon this design , who did more than they were commanded to do , was so great , that , making head against the Guard , who would have thrust them back , the King awak'd at the noise , and , desirous to prevent further disorder , commanded that Gate , through which there was an entrance into the Sanctuary , to be shut , which was more than had been seen in the memory of Man ; it being the design of the Foundation , that those unfortunate persons who are forc'd thither , should find their way in at any hour. One of the Gentlemen of the retinue takes Sanctuary

The King was so incens'd at these proceedings , that as soon as he got up the next morning , he told the Lords of his Council , that being not safe , even within his own Palace , by reason of the *Germans* , who would not suffer him to take his rest in the night , there was a necessity , either he or they should leave the City. Brugman's insolence,

1637. The same Ambassador engag'd himself in another unhandfom buſiness, which was of so much the more dangerous consequence, that all the *Christians* of the Suburbs were concern'd in it. The *King* commands every year, a search to be made among the *Armenians*, for all the handfom Maids, and makes choice of those whom he likes best. Our Interpreter for the *Armenian* Language, whose name was *Seran*, a person of a leud life, addressing himself to the Ambassador *Brugman*, told him, that, in that search, he was like to lose a Daughter, a beautiful Lads, whom he tenderly lov'd, and desir'd his advice and protection in that case. *Brugman* advis'd him to oppose the Searchers, and to call to his assistance the Domesticks of the Embassy, and assur'd him, they should be ready to relieve him. This proceedure of his, and several other imprudent actions, had, at last, forc'd the *King* to a more severe resolution against the said Ambassador, nay, haply against the whole Company, if the Chancellor had not moderated his passion.

---

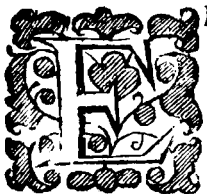
---

THE



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
 DUKE of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, T A R T A R Y,**  
 and **P E R S I A.**

The Sixth Book.



RE we leave the City of *Ispahan*, which is now the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of *Persia*, it will not be amiss, I gave the Reader an account of what I found therein, worthy my Observation, during our abroad there, for the space of five moneths, and to give here such a Description thereof, as he must expect to be so much the more full and particular, inasmuch as there is not any Author, who hath hitherto written of it, hath done it with exactness enough, to satisfie, even, a mean Curiosity. 1637!

They say, that the City of *Ispahan* is the same which was heretofore called *Hecatonopolis*, and that before *Tamberlane's* time, it was known by the name of *Sipahan*, as well by reason of the number of its Inhabitants, which was so great as that, out of it, a considerable Army might be rais'd, as in regard that, in that place, the Armies had their Rendezvous; from the antient *Persian* and *Usbeque* word, *Sipe*, whereof *Sipahan* is the plural, and signifies the same thing as *Lesker*, that is to say, an Army: from which is derived the word *Sipes-alar*, a term the *Persians* do yet sometimes make use of, to signifie a chief Commander, or General of an Army. *Tamberlane* was the first, who, by transporting the two first Letters of that name, call'd it *Ispahan*. *Ahmed ben Arebscha*, who hath written the Life and Actions of *Tamberlane*, calls this City in all places, *Isbahān*, writing the word with a *b*, and the Modern *Persians* always write it *Isfahan*, with an *f*, from an *Arabian* word, which signifies Rank or Batallion, though they pronounce it indifferently, sometimes *Isfahan*, sometimes *Ispahan*. *Jos. Barbaro* alwayes calls it *Spahan*; and *Ambr. Contarini*, who was sent Ambassador from the Republick of *Venice*, to *Ussum Cassan*, King of *Persia*, in the year 1473. calls it *Spaa*, *Spaam*, and *Aspacham*. But as we said before, its right name is *Ispahan*.

This City lies in the Province of *Erak*, or *Hierack*, which is the antient *Parthia*, in a spacious Plain, having on all sides, at about three or four Leagues distance, a high Mountain, which compasses it like an Amphitheatre, at thirty two degrees, twenty six minutes Latitude, and eighty six degrees, forty minutes, Longitude; and I have observ'd, that the Needle declined there seventeen degrees from the North towards the West. It hath, toward the South and South-west side, the Mountain of *Demawend*; and on the North-east side, towards the Province

1637. vince of *Mefanderan*, the Mountain of *Jelak-Perjan*. The Author of the French Book, intituled *Les États & Empires*, puts it in the Province of *Chuareffen*: but he is mistaken, for *Chuareffen* is a Province of the *Usbeques Tartars*. at 43. degrees Latitude, and lies at a great distance from that of *Erak*.

Its great-  
ness.

If you take in all its Suburbs, it will be found that it is above eight *German* Leagues in compass, in so much that it is as much as a man can do to go about it in one day. The City hath twelve Gates, whereof there are but nine open; above eighteen thousand Houses, and about five hundred thousand Inhabitants. The Walls of it are of Earth, low and weak, being, below, two fathoms, and above, but a foot thick, and its Bastions are of Brick, but so poorly flanked, that they do not any way fortifie the City, no more than does the *Ditch*, which is so ruin'd, that both Summer and Winter, a man may pass over it dry-foot. *F. Bizarro*, and some others affirm, that the walls are of Chalk; but I could find no such thing, unless it were that in the Castle, which hath its walls distinct from those of the City, there are some places, which look as if they were whitened, or done over with Chalk or Lime.

The River  
Senderut.

The River *Senderut*, which rises out of the adjacent Mountain of *Demawend*, runs by its walls on the South and South-west side, on which side is the Suburbs of *Tzulfa*. Before it comes into the City, it is divided into two branches, one whereof falls into the Park, called *Hafarszerib*, where the King keeps all sorts of Deer, and from the other, there is drawn a current of water, which passes, by Channels under ground, into the Garden of *Tzarbagh*. This River supplies the whole City with water, there being hardly a house into which it comes not by Pipes, or so near, as that it is no great trouble to them to fill their Cisterns of it, which they call *Haws* and *Burke*; though besides this convenience of the River, they have Wells, the water whereof is as good as that of the River. *Allawerdi-Chan*, sometime Governour of *Schiras*, built, at his own charge, the fair Stone-Bridge, which is between the Garden of *Tzarbagh*, and the City, upon this River, which is as broad in that place as the *Thames* is at *London*.

*Schach-Abas* had a design to bring into the River of *Senderut* that of *Abkuren* which rises on the other side of the same Mountain of *Demawend*; and whereas, to bring these two Rivers into the same Chanel, there was a necessity of cutting the Mountain, he employ'd, for the space of fourteen years together, above a thousand Pioners at that work. And though they met with extraordinary difficulties, not only in that they had to do with pure Rock, which in some places was above two hundred foot deep; but also in regard, the Mountain being cover'd with Snow for near nine Months of the year, they had but three to work in, yet had he the work constantly carried on with such earnestness, that all the *Chans* and Great Lords sending their Work-men thereto, upon their own charges, there was in a manner no doubt made of the success of that great enterprize, since there remain'd to do but the space of two hundred paces, when *Schach-Abas* died, leaving the Consummation of that imperfect work to his Successor, who hath as yet done nothing therein.

If *Aaly*, the Patron and great Saint of the *Persians*, had liv'd in that time, he might have done *Schach-Abas* a very great kindness, by opening that Rock at one blow with his Sword, and so made way for the River, as he sometime did, according to the Relations of the *Persians*, in the Province of *Karabach*, where he made a passage for the River *Aras*, through the Mountain, which he opened with his Sword, and which, upon that occasion, is, to this day, called *Aaly deressi*, that is, the streights of *Aaly*.

Ispahan  
destroy'd by  
Tamber-  
lane.

The City of *Ispahan* was twice destroy'd by *Tamberlane*; once, when he took it from the King of *Persia*; and the other, when the said City would have revolted from him, and become Subject to its lawfull Prince. *Jof. Barbaro*, who Travell'd into *Persia* in the year 1471. says, that about twenty years before, *Chotza*, whom he calls *Giausfa*, King of *Persia*, desirous to punish this City for its Rebellion, commanded his Soldiers not to come thence, unless they brought with them the Heads of some of the Inhabitants of *Ispahan*; and that the Soldiers, who met not every day with Men, cut off Womens heads, shav'd them, and so brought them to *Chotza*, and that by this means the City was so depopulated, that there were not people enough left to fill the sixth part of it. It began to recover it self under *Schach-Ismael III*. but indeed, it was *Schach-Abas*, by translating the seat of his Empire from *Caswin* to this City, brought it to the height it is now in, not only by adorning it with many fair, both publick and private Structures, but also by peopling it with a great number of Families, which he brought along with him out of several other Provinces of the kingdom.

But what contributes most to the greatness of this City is the *Metschids*, or their *Mosquees*, the Market-places, the *Basar*, the publick Baths, and the Palaces of Great Lords that have some relation to the Court; but especially the fair Gardens, whereof there is so great a number, that there are many Houses have two or three, and hardly any, but hath at least one.

His Gar-  
dens.

The expences the *Persians* are at in their Gardens, is that wherein they make greatest ostentation of their Wealth. Not that they much mind the furnishing of them with delightful Flowers,

Flowers, as we do in *Europe*; but these they slight as an excessive Liberality of Nature, by whom their common fields are strew'd with an infinite number of Tulips and other Flowers; but they are rather desirous to have their Gardens full of all sorts of Fruit-Trees, and especially to dispose them into pleasant Walks, of a kind of Plane or Poplar, a Tree not known in *Europe*, which the *Persians* call *Tzinnar*. These Trees grow up to the height of the Pine, and have very broad Leaves, not much unlike those of the Vine. Their fruit hath some resemblance to the Chestnut, while the outer coat is about it; but there is no Kernel within it, so that it is not to be eaten. The wood thereof is very brown, and full of Veins, and the *Persians* use it in Doors, and shutters for Windows, which, being rubb'd with Oyl, look incomparably better than any thing made of Wall-nut Tree, nay indeed than the Root, of it, which is now so much esteem'd.

All things in their Gardens are very delightful, but, above all, their Fountains. The Basins or Receptacles of them are very large, and most of Marble, or Free-stone. There are belonging to them many Chansels, of the same stone, which convey the water from one Basin to another, and serve to water the Garden. Persons of Quality, nay indeed many rich Merchants, build, in their Gardens, Summer-houses, or a kind of Gallery or Hall, which is enclos'd with a row of Pillars, whereto they add, at the four corners of the main Structure, so many with-drawing-rooms, or Pavilions, where they take the air, according to the wind then reigning. And this they take so much delight in, that, many times, these Summer-houses, are hand-somer built, and better furnish'd, than those wherein they ordinarily live. 'Tis true, their Great-mens Houses and Palaces are very Magnificent within; but there is not any thing so ugly without, in regard most of their Houses are built only of Earth, or Brick, bak'd in the Sun.

Their houses are in a manner square, and most have four stories, accounting the ground-room for one, They call the Cellar, and such places, belonging to a house, as are under ground, *Sirfemin*, the ground-rooms of the house, *Chane*, the first story *Kuschok*; the second, *Tzauffe*; and the third, *Kesser*; and they call the open Halls *Eiwan*. Their Windows are commonly as big as their Doors; and in regard their buildings are not very high, the frames ordinarily reach up to the Roof. They have not yet the use of Glass, but, in Winter, they cover the frames of their Windows, which are made like Lattices, with oyl'd Paper.

There is also little Wood in *Persia*, I mean in most of its Provinces, that, not being able to keep any great fire, they make use of Stoves, but they are otherwise made than those of *Germany*. In the midst of their low rooms, they make a hole in the ground of about the compass of an ordinary Kettle, which they fill with burning Coals or Char-coal, and put over it a plank, or little low Table, cover'd with a large Carpet. Sitting, according to their custom, upon the ground, they thrust their feet under the Table, and draw the Carpet over their Body up to the breast, so as that the heat is thereby kept in. Some pass away the nights also, thus accommodated, and so they procure a very natural heat with little fire, and they imagine it to be the more wholsom, in that it troubles not the head, which in the mean time hath the benefit of a fresh and healthy air. They call this kind of Stoves *Tenuer*; and that the brain might not be offended by Vapours, which Char-coal commonly sends up into the head, they have certain Passages and Conduits under ground, through which the air draws them away. Persons of mean Quality, and such as are saving, dress their meat with these *Tenuers*, and make use of them instead of an Oven, and bake Bread and Cakes over them. There is not a house in *Ispahan*, but hath its Court, which a man must cross ere he comes into the house.

They say, that heretofore, the streets of *Ispahan* were so broad, that twenty horse might have rid a-breadth in any of them. But now, especially since the City began to be re-peopled, in the time of *Schach-Abas*, they husbanded their ground better, especially in the heart of the City, near the *Maidan* and the *Basar*; insomuch that the streets are become so narrow, that if a man meets a Mule-driver, whom they call *Charbende*, that is, a servant to look to the Asses, who many times drives twenty Mules or more before him, he must step into some shop, and stay there till they be all pass'd by. All the streets abutting upon the *Maidan* are very narrow: but the *Maidan*, or Market-place, though it hath shops all about it, is so large, that I cannot imagine there is any in *Europe* comes near it.

This Market-place is seven hundred foot long, and two hundred and fifty broad. All the houses about the *Maidan* are of equal height, and all built of Brick, having their shops vaulted: where you have, on the side towards the King's Palace, Goldsmiths, Lapidaries, and Druggists, and opposite to them, those Merchants who sell all sorts of stuffs, of Silk, Wool, and Cotton, and the Taverns where they Tiple, and sell all sorts of Provisions. All these houses are two stories high, and have all, their *Eiwans*, or open Halls. The Market-place is planted all about with a kind of Trees, called *Scimscad*, which is somewhat like Box, but they are much higher, and the branches being perpetually green, they are so cut, that the Shops are to be seen between the Trees, and make a very delightful Prospect. But it is not one of the least Ornaments of their *Maidan*, that the Rivulet which runs at the foot of these



1637. Trees, in a Chanel of Freestone, rais'd two foot from the ground all about the Market-place, falls into two great Bafons, at the two corners of it, and is thence carried by Channels under ground to other places.

Tradef-men do not work at all themselves, but have their Slaves and Apprentices, who do all the main work at their house's, while the Master's business is only to sell his Commodities, in shops appointed for that purpose, at the *Maidan*, in a great Vaulted Gallery built with Arches, or in the streets abutting upon it, where every Trade hath its particular quarter assign'd it, or haply in a street appointed for that particular Commodity, and where they permit not the selling of any other. The observance of which order, in regard the *Persians* are very neat in all they do, makes so delightful a shew, that I have not seen any thing like it. At the end of his Gallery, there are two Balconies, cover'd over head, opposite one to the other, where their Musick, which consists in Tymbrels, Hawboyes, and other kind of Instruments, which they call *Kereni*, is to be heard every night at Sun-set, as also, when the King, either going out of the City, or coming into it, passes through the *Maidan*. They have this kind of Musick in all the Cities of *Persia*, which are governed by the *Chan*, and they say *Tamberlane* first introduc'd that custom, which hath been observed ever since.

The King's Palace is upon the *Maidan*. The *Persians* call it *Dowlet-Chane*, or *Der Chane Schach*, and there lie before the Gate several great Pieces, of all sizes, but most such as require 36 or 48 pound Bullet, very roughly cast, without Carriages, and lying upon Beams, so as that no use can be made of them. *Nicholas Hem*, a *Hollander*, who travell'd into *Persia* in the years 1623. and 1624. says that these Pieces were brought thither from *Ormuz*, and that they secure the Avenues of the place; but, as I said before, it is impossible they should be discharg'd. Nay, the Palace itself hath no Fortifications, and is compass'd only by a high Wall. In the day time, there are but three or four upon the Guard, and in the night, there are fifteen at the Gate, and about thirty within the King's apartment. These last are all persons of Quality, and sons of *Chans*, of whom, some stand Centry, and the rest walk the Round, and they all lye upon the ground, in the open air. This Guard hath its *Kischikzi*, or particular Captain, who, every night, delivers the King a List of their names who are upon the Guard, that he may know whom he may confide in, and by what persons he is served.

Over the first Gate, there is a great square structure, which hath large Windows on all sides, and we were told, that, within, it was Carv'd all over and Gilt. The other principal apartments of this great Palace, are, the *Tab Chane*, which is a spacious Hall, where the King treats all the great Lords of his Court, and entertains them at Dinner, upon the day of their *Nauruz*, which is their first day of the year; the *Divan-Chane*, which is the ordinary place where all Appeals are try'd, and where the King commonly gives Audience to the Ambassadors of Foreign Princes, as we said elsewhere; which is done, partly upon this account, that, this Edifice having a great Court adjoining to it, into which it looks, the King may have the convenience of shewing the Ambassadors some of his best Horses, and his other pieces of Magnificence, as he did at our first audience. The *Haram-Chane*, which is a Hall, wherein the *Casseha*, that is the King's Concubines, who are always shut up in several apartments, have their meetings, to Dance before him, and to divert him with their Musicians, who are all Eunuchs: The *Deka*, or the place of the King's ordinary residence; where he lodges, and eats, with his lawful Wives. All these Halls have, belonging to them, several Chambers, Closets, Galleries, and other necessary apartments, fit for the lodging and divertisement of so powerful a Prince, and so great a number of Ladies, who are all with him within the same Palace; wherein there is not any considerable apartment, but hath its particular Garden.

At the entrance of the Kings Palace, and about forty paces from the outer-gate, on the right hand, there is another Gate, which opens into a spacious Garden, in the midst whereof there is a Chapel which gives a Privilege to the whole place, and makes the Sanctuary we spoke of before, called by the *Persians*, *Alla-Capi*, that is, God's Gate. All those who stand in fear of imprisonment, whether upon a civil, or criminal account, find here an assured Sanctuary and refuge, even against the King's displeasure, and may live there till they are reconcil'd to their Adversaries, if they have to do with private men, or obtain'd their pardon of the King; provided they have wherewithall to subsist. Murderers and Assassins participate of the same Privilege; but the *Persians* have so great an aversion for Theft, as accounting it a base and infamous Crime, as it really is, that they permit not Thieves, if they do come in, to stay there many days. At the time of our Travels, we found, in this Sanctuary, a *Sulthan*, who having, either through misfortune, or his own ill conduct, lost the Kings favour, and being in fear of losing his life, was got in thither with all his Family, and liv'd in Tents, which he had set up in the Garden.

Behind the Kings Palace, lies the Castle, which they call *Taberik Kale*. It serves for a Citadel, which is the signification of the word *Kale*, and it is fortify'd with a Rampier, and several Bastions of earth, which being very sharp above, *Nicholas Hem*, whom I have found in all things else the most exact of any that have written of the City of *Ispahan*, took them for Towers.

ers. The King doe's not live in it, but there is a Governour, who hath the command of it, and a strong Garrison within it, which is kept there for the security of the Treasure, the Arms and Ammunition of War, that are within it; though all the Artillery consists only in some Field-pieces. 1637.

On the other side of the *Maidan*, in a by-street, there is another Sanctuary, which is called *Tschehil Sutun*. upon occasion of the forty Beams, which under-prop the Roof of the Structure, and which all rest upon one Pillar, which stands in the middle of the *Metschid*, or *Mosquey*. Into this Sanctuary, there got a great number of the Inhabitants of *Ispahan*, when *Tamberlane* punish'd the rebellion of this City. For though he had no great sentiments of piety, yet did he discover a certain respect for the places he accounted sacred; and accordingly he spar'd all those who took refuge in the *Mosquey*, but ordered all the rest to be cut in pieces, and commanded the Walls of the Court belonging to it, to be pull'd down. But *Schach-Ismael* had them built up again, and made the place a Sanctuary.

Towards the South part of the *Maidan* stands that rich and magnificent *Mosquey*, which *Schach-Abas* began, and was almost finish'd when he died, but *Schach-Sefi* had the work carried on at the time of our being there, causing the Walls to be done over with Marble. It is dedicated to *Mehedi*, who is the twelfth *Iman*, or Saint, of the posterity of *Aaly*, for whom *Schach-Abas* had so particular a Devotion, that he was pleas'd to build several other *Mosqueys* after the same Model, though much less, at *Tauris*, and other places, in honour of the same Saint, wherein he made use of the Marble, which he had brought from *Eruan*, which is as white as Chaulk, and smother than any Looking-glass. But the Marble which was spent in the building of the great *Metschid*, at *Ispahan*, is brought from the Mountain of *Elwend*. The *Persians* would have it believ'd, that *Mehedi* is not dead, but lies hid in a Grot, near *Kufa*, and that he shall come out thence, some time before the day of Judgement, and ride *Duldul*, *Aaly's* Horse, upon whom he is to go all over the World, to convert people to the Religion of *Mahomet*. Whence this *Mosquey* is called *Metzid Mehede Sahebeseman*. Another Sanctuary

To go from the *Maidan* to this *Mosquey*, a man must pass through a great Court, pav'd with Free-stone, at the end whereof, there is, under a Tree, a fair Cistern, wherein those, who go to do their Devotions in the *Mosquey*, wash and purifie themselves. Behind this Tree, there is a pair of stairs, by which you go up to the square place, which is much less than the fore-said Court, and thence it is but a little further to the *Mosquey*. *John de Laet*, taking it from *Nicholas Hem*, affirms, that there is a pair of stairs of thirteen steps to get up to the *Mosquey*, and that those stairs are cut out of one piece of Marble; but there is no such thing. The Portal is of white Marble, and at least as high as that of the *Meschaick Choabende*, in *Sulthania*. The door is cover'd all over with plates of Silver, which are Gilt in several places.

As you pass through the Door, you enter into a great Court, round about which there is a Vaulted Gallery, and, in the middle of it, a great Cistern of Free-stone, but eight square, and full of water. Above this Gallery there is another, not so high as this, which upper Gallery hath, towards the *Hejat*, or Court, a row of Marble Pillars, which in some places are Gilt. A man must cross this Court to go into the *Mosquey*, wherein are the *Meherab* and the *Cathib*, that is, the Altar and the Pulpit, according to their way. As you come in, you pass under a Vault of extraordinary height, done over with glittering Stones, some Blew, some Gilt. It is a vast Structure, having many Neeches and Chapels, which are all upheld by Marble Pillars. But the most remarkable thing in all this *Emerat*, is, that all the Walls, as well those of the Gallery, which is in the Court, as of the *Mosquey* it self, are of Marble, about fifteen or sixteen foot high, and that there is no piece of Marble, (which is most of it white and extremely well polish'd) but is five or six foot in length and breadth, and they are so neatly put one into another, that, the Junctures being in a manner imperceptible, a man cannot but admire the Art of the Work-man, and acknowledge that the Workmanship is not to be imitated. The *Meherab*, or the Altar, is all of one piece of Marble, having on each side, a Pillar of the same stone, which is also all of one piece. Besides this *Mosquey*, which is the chiefest in all the City, and the most sumptuous of any in the whole Kingdome, there are in *Ispahan* many others, but they are much less, and there is too great a number of them, for us to undertake to give here a more particular Description thereof.

In the midst of the *Maidan* there stands a high Pole, much after the manner of those that are set up in several Cities of *Europe*, to shoot at the Parrat, but, instead of a Bird, they set on the top of it a little Melon, an *Arpus*, or an Apple, or haply a Trencher, with money upon it; and they alwayes shoot at it on Horse-back, and that Riding in full speed. The Exercises of the Grandees.

The King himself is sometimes pleas'd to make one, among the Inhabitants, when they are at that sport, or sends some of his chiefest Lords to do it; and commonly, there are very considerable summs layd. The Money which falls down with the Trencher, belongs to the King's foot-men, and he who carries away the Prize, is oblig'd to make a Feast for all the Company; nay for the King himself, if so be he hath shot among them. They play there also at a certain Game, which the *Persians* call *Kuit-skankan*, which is a kind of *Mall*, or *Cricket*; but they play

1637. at this also on Horse-back, and strike the Bowl to the end, Riding in full speed. They also often Exercise themselves at the *Tzirid*, or *Favelin*; their way we have described elsewhere. And in regard *Persia* hath the best Horses of any in the World, and that the *Persians* are very curious about them, they many times lay wagers on their swiftness, and Ride them between the two Pillars, which are at both ends of the *Maidan*. When the King is onely a Spectator of the sport, he sits in a little wooden Lodge, called *Scanescin*, which is at one end of the *Maidan*; set on four Wheels, for the more convenient removal of it from one place to another.

*Taverns.* On the other side of the *Maidan*, over against the great *Mosquey*, are the Wine-Taverns, and other Drinking-Houses, whereof we spoke before. There are several kinds of them. In the *Scire Chanes*, they sell Wine; but those who have the least tenderness for their Reputation, will not come into those places, which are infamous, and the common receptacles of a sort of people, who divert themselves there with Musick, and the Dancing of some of their common Drabbs, who having, by their obscene gestures, excited the brutalities of the Spectators, get them into some corner of the House, or draw them along into some publick places, where they permit the commission of these abominations, as freely as they do that of ordinary sins.

*Places where The is drunk.* In the *Tsal Chattai Chane*, they drink *The*, or *Tea*, which the *Persians* call *Tzai*, though the *Tzai*, or the *Cha* are properly but a kind of *The*, and *Chattai*, in as much as it is brought them from *Chattai*: we shall have occasion to speak more of it hereafter. They are only persons of good repute who Drink of this, and frequent these Houses, where, in the intervals of their drinking, they spend the time at a certain Game somewhat like our *Tick Tack*. But they commonly play at *Cheffe*, at which they are excellent, and go beyond the *Muscovites*, whom I dare affirm to be the best Gamblers at *Cheffe* of any in *Europe*. The *Persians* call this Game *Sedrentz*, that is, *Hundred-cares*, in regard those who play at it, are to apply all their thoughts thereto; and they are great Lovers of it, in as much as from the word *Schach*, whence it hath its name, they would have it believ'd, it is of their Invention. Some years since, there was publish'd in *Germany*, a great Volume, upon the Game of *Cheffe*, wherein the Author, too easily crediting *Olaus Magnus*, would have it believ'd, that the ancient *Goths* and *Swedes*, put those to play at *Cheffe* who were Surers to their Daughters, that, by their management of that Game, which hath no dependence on Fortune, they might discover the judgement and disposition of their pretended Sons in Law. But these are only Fables, as is also what is related of one *Elmaradab*, King of *Babylon*. The Government of this Prince was so Tyrannical, as the story at least would have it, that no Body thinking it safe, to represent to him the dangers, whereto his cruelties expos'd the State and his own Person, one of the Lords of his Council, named *Philometer*, invented the Game of *Cheffe*, which, instead of openly opposing the sentiments of the Tyrant, discover'd to him the duty of a Prince towards his Family and Subjects, by shewing him the removals of the several pieces, by the representation of two Kings, encamp'd one against the other, with their Queens, their Officers and Soldiers; and that this wrought a greater impression on the King, than all the other remonstrances that could have been made to him.

*Places for Tobacco and Cahwa, or Coffee.* The *Cahwa Chane* are those places, where they take *Tobacco*, and drink of a certain black water, which they call *Cahwa*: but we shall treat of both hereafter in this very Book, when we shall have occasion to speak of the *Persians* manner of Life. Their Poets and Historians are great frequenters of these places, and contribute much to the Divertisement of the Company. These are seated in a high Chair, in the midst of the Hall, whence they entertain their Auditors with Speeches, and tell them Satyrical stories, playing in the mean time with a little stick, with the same gestures, and after the same manner, as those do who shew tricks of *Legerdemain* among us.

*Barbars and Surgeons.* Near these Taverns or Drinking-Houses, are the shops of Surgeons and Barbers, between which Trades there is a great difference in *Persia*, as there is, within these few years, in *France*. The former, whom they call *Tzerrach*, only dress Wounds and Hurts; and the others, named *Dellak*, only Trim, unless they sometimes are employ'd about Circumcision. These Barbers are much taken up, for there is not a man, but is thav'd, as soon as any Hair begins to appear; but there is not, on the other side, any who carries not his Rasour about him, for fear of getting the Pox, which they are extremely afraid of, because it is very common among them, and very contagious.

*The Basar.* As you go out of the *Maidan*, on the same side, and turning on the right hand, you come to the *Basar*, or true Market-place, and, in the midst of the Market-place, the *Kaiserie*, or kind of open Cloister, where are sold all the richest Stuffs and Commodities that the Kingdome affords. Over the Gate of this Structure, there is a striking Clock, made by an *English-man* named *Festy*, in the time of *Schach-Abas*: and in regard, that then there were few Lords that had Watches, the *Persians* look'd on the Motions of that work as a thing Miraculous and Supernatural. This *English* Clock-maker had met with the same fate as *Rodolf Stadler*, and had been

been cut to pieces by the friends of a *Persian*, whom he had kill'd, and the Clock had been out of Order ever since his Death. 1637.

This Market-place consists of several Streets, cover'd over head, and is so full of Shops, and those shops so full of all sorts of Merchandizes, that there is nothing, though ever so rare in World, which is not to be had here, and at a very reasonable rate. For indeed, there is nothing dear at *Ispahan*, but Wood and Provisions, inasmuch as there is no Forrest near it, nor Meadows for the feeding of Cattel.

Of all the shops I saw at *Ispahan*, I was not pleas'd so much with any as that of a Druggist; who liv'd in the *Maidan*, on the left hand as you go to the *Metzid*, by reason of the abundance of the rarest Herbs, Seeds, Roots and Minerals it was furnish'd with. The Root *Tzina*, or *China*, which the *Persians* call *Bich Tzini*, and Rhubarb, which they call *Rawentzini*, and is brought thither from *China* and great *Tartary*, were not worth here above three *Abas's*, or a Crown the pound.

There is not any Nation in all *Asia*, nor indeed almost of *Europe*, who sends not its Merchants to *Ispahan*, whereof some sell by Whole-sale, and others by Retail, by the Pound and the Ell. There are ordinarily above twelve thousand *Indians* in the City, who have, most of them, their shops near those of the *Persians*, in the *Maidan*, and their Merchandizes, in the *Caravanseras*, where they have their Habitations, and their Store-Houses. Their Stuffs are incomparably fairer, and their Commodities of greater Value than those of *Persia*; inasmuch as besides the Musk and Amber-grease, they bring thither great quantities of Pearls and Diamonds. I observ'd, that most of these *Indosthans*, had upon the Nose, a mark of Saffron, about the breadth of a Man's finger; but I could never learn what that Mystery signify'd. They are all *Mahometans* or *Pagans*: they burn the bodies of their Deceas'd friends and kinred, and in that ceremony they use only the Wood of the *Mesch-Mesch*, or *Apricock-Tree*. But of these a particular account will be given in the Travels of *Mandelslo* into the *Indies*. Besides these *Indians*, there is, at *Ispahan*, a great number of *Tartars*, from the Provinces of *Chuaressem*, *Chattai* and *Buchar*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Italians* and *Spaniards*. Ispahan a place of great trade

The City is supply'd with Provisions out of the other Provinces of the Kingdom. Out of that of *Kirman*, there are brought, in the Winter time, fat Sheep, and, in Summer, Lambs, which are sold at *Ispahan*, at nine or ten *Abas's* a piece: for the very Skin is worth five or six, upon the account of the Furr, which is very pretious there. The Province of *Kilan* furnishes it with Rice; and those of the *Kendeman*, *Tasum*, *Ebarku*, and *Jeschi*, though they lie at a great distance, with Wheat and Barly. Wood and Charcoal are sold here, by the pound; the Wood near a half peny, and the Charcoal a peny the pound, in regard they are forc'd to bring it from *Mesanderan*, and *Feilak-Perjan*.

The ordinary Money of *Persia* is of Silver and Brass, very little of Gold. The *Abas*, the *Garem-Abas*, or half-*Abas*, which they commonly call *Chodabende*, the *Scabi* and *Bisti*, are of Silver. The former were so called from *Schach-Abas*, by whose command they were first made, being in Value about the third part of a *Rixdollar*; so that they are about 18 *d. sterl.* though they do not amount, by weight, to above 15 *d.* *Schach-Chodabende* gave his name to the half-*Abas*. The *Scabi* are worth about the fourth part of an *Abas*, and two *Bisti* and a half make a *Scabi*. *Schach-Ismael* had Coined, in his time, a kind of Money, which was called *Lari*, and it was made after the manner of a thick Latin wire, flatted in the middle, to receive the impresson of the Characters, which shew'd the value of the piece. The *Persians* call all sorts of Copper or Brass money *Pul*, but there is one particular kind thereof, which they call *Kasbeki*, whereof forty make an *Abas*. When they are to name great Sums, they account by *Tumains*, each whereof is worth fifty *Abas's*. Not that there is any piece of Money amounting to that Sum, but the term is only us'd for the convenience of accounting, as in *Muscovy*, they account by *Roubles*, and in *Flanders* by thousands of *Livers*. They will receive from Foreigners no other money than *Rixdollars* or *Spanish Ryals*, which they immediately convert into *Abas's*, and gain a fourth part by the money. The King of *Persia* farms out the Mint to private persons, who gain most by it, and share stakes with the money-changers, whom they call *Xeraffi*, who have their shops, or Offices, in the *Maidan*, and are oblig'd to bring all forein-money to the publick-Mint, which they call *Serab-chane*. The Persia an money

There is this remarkable as to the brass money, that every City hath its particular money and mark, which is changed every year, and that such money goes only in the place where it was made. So that upon their first day of the year, which begins with the Vernal Equinox, all the brass-money is cry'd down, and the mark of it is chang'd. The ordinary mark of it is a Stag, a Deer, a Goat, a Satyre, a Fish, a Serpent, or some such thing. At the time of our Travels, the *Kasbeki* were mark'd, at *Ispahan*, with a Lion, at *Scamachie*, with a Devil, at *Kaschan*, with a Cock, and in *Kilan*, with a Fish. The King of *Persia*, on the one side, makes a great advantage by this brass-money, in as much as he pays for a pound of this Metal, but an *abas*, which amounts to about eighteen pence, and he hath made of it sixty four *Kasbeki*; and Their brass money.

1637. and, on the other, he, by this means, keeps the Kingdom from being too full of uncurrent and cry'd down money.

Caravan-  
feras or  
publick  
Inns.

The great Trade of the City of *Ispahan* hath oblig'd the King to build there a great number of *Caravanferas*. These are spacious Store-houses, built four-square, and enclos'd of all sides with a high Wall, for the security of foreign Merchants, who have their lodgings in them, as also for that of the Commodities they bring thither. They are two or three stories high, and have, within, many conveniences, Courts, Chambers, Halls, and Galleries.

Among other publick Structures, we may well take notice of the two Monasteries of *Italian* and *Spanish* Monks, which are in the most Northerly quarter of the City, and about a thousand paces distant one from the other. One is the Convent of the *Augustine* Monks, whereof we have spoken before; but the other is inhabited by certain *Carmelites*, who are *Italians*, and though they were but ten in all, yet I may boldly affirm, that those of this Order have not a nobler Convent in any part of *Europe*. Their Prior's name was *F. Tinas*, and he was, at our being there, very antient, a good man, and of a free disposition, as were also the other Monks; who live among the Infidels much more orderly than they do elsewhere. We are oblig'd to acknowledge their civilities, especially those among us, who, having the advantage of the *Latine* tongue, could converse with them. We never visited them but they treated us with a Collation, and dismiss'd us extremely oblig'd to them for their kindness, as in other things, so particularly, in the instructions they gave us how we ought to behave our selves during our abroad in *Persia*. They presented M. *Hicrome Imhof*, a Senator of *Nuremberg*, and one of the chief Gentlemen belonging to the Embassy, (who is now in *Germany*, in a Court much different from that of *Schach-Sefi*) with a very fair *Italian* and *Persian* Lexicon, which he promises to publish, with the *Latine*, since by him added to the other two Languages. They did me, in particular, the favour, to afford me refuge in their Convent, to protect me against the persecutions of the Ambassador *Brugnan*, and to get my Letters convey'd into *Germany* with much safety and speed.

French  
Capucins.

At the time of our being there, they were also beginning to build a Convent for certain *French Capucins*, who had bought a place, for that end, within a quarter of a League of the Monastery of the *Augustines*. They were but three in all, who seem'd to be very good people, and had attain'd some learning. They had finish'd the Chapel, and were then upon the Dormitory, which had adjoining to it a Kitchen-Garden, and a Vineyard, with much likelihood they would not give over building with that.

The King's  
Stables.

Between this last Monastery, and that of the *Carmelites*, are the King's stables, near which there is a pretty high Tower, which is all built of Earth, and the Horns of Stags and *Ahu's*. They say, that *Schach-Tamas I.* having kill'd two thousand of those beasts at one Hunting, employ'd their Horns in that building, in memory of so remarkable a defeat, and that he therewith made that Tower which they call *Keleminar*.

His Gar-  
den.

The parts adjacent to the City, are not unsuitable to the sumptuousness of its Structures, and the greatness of so famous a Metropolis. The King's Garden, which they call *Tzarbagh*, is, no doubt one of the noblest in all the World. It is above half a League in a perfect square, and the River *Senderut*, which hath spacious Walks on both sides of it, divides it into a cross, so as that it seems to make four Gardens of it. At one of its extremities, towards the South, there is a little Mountain, divided into several Alleys, which have on both sides steep Precipices, in regard that the River, which they have brought up to the top of the Mountain, does thence continually fall down, by Channels, into Basins, which are cut within the Rock. The Channels were about three foot broad; and were cut upon every side, so as that the water falling directly down, and, with a great noise into the Basin, extremely delighted both the ear, and the eye. No Basin but the water fell into it, and upon every Alley, there was a Basin of white Marble, which forc'd the water into divers figures. All the water about the Garden fell at last into a Pond, which in the midst of it, cast up water forty foot high. This Pond, had, at the four corners of it so many large Pavilions, whereof the apartments were gilt within, and done with fueillage, there being a passage from one to another by Walks, planted with *Tzinnar-Trees*, whereof there being Millions, they made the place the most pleasant and delightfull of any in the World.

Fruit-  
Trees.

The Fruit-Trees are not to be numbred, and there are of all sorts, which *Schach-Abas*, who began this Garden, had sent for, not only out of all the Provinces of the Kingdom, but also out of *Turkie* and the *Indies*. Here you have all sorts of Apples, Pears, Almonds, Apricocks, Peaches, Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Chestnuts, Wallnuts, Filbeards, Goosberries, &c. besides a great many not known in *Europe*. We saw there a kind of Grape which they call *Hallague*, of the bigness of a mans thumb, which had no stone, but the skin and meat firm, and of an admirable taste. This Garden is kept by ten Master-Gardeners, who have each of them ten men to work under them; and there is this further convenience in it, that when the Fruits are fit to eat, they permit any that have a mind to go into it, and to eat what they please of the fruits, paying four *Kasbeki*, or two pence a piece; but they are forbidden to carry any away.

The

The Citie hath, on all sides, very large Suburbs, which they call *Abath*, whereof the fairest and most considerable is, that which is called *Tzulfa*, wherein there are twelve Churches, and above three thousand houses, equal, in point of building to the best in the Citie. The Inhabitants of this quarter are *Armenians*, *Christians*, and most of them Merchants, and rich men, whom *Schach-Abas* brought out of great *Armenia*, and planted in this place. They pay the King but two hundred *Tumains*, by way of Tribute, which amount to about a thousand *Livers*, which sum their *Daroga*, who, in our time, was called *Chofrou Sulban*, and the *Calenter*, *Seferas-beg*, are oblig'd to bring into the King's Coffers.

1637.  
The Suburbs.  
Tzulfa.

On the other side of the River *Senderut*, lies the Suburbs of *Tabrifabath*, where live those *Tabrifas* who were translated thither out of the Province of *Taurifthan*, by *Schach-Abas*; upon which bath accompt, it is sometimes called *Abasabath*.

The Suburbs of *Hafenabath* is the ordinary habitation of the *Tzurtzi*, that is to say, the *Geor-Hafeni-gians*, who are also *Christians*, and most of them Merchants, and wealthy men, as the *Armenians*, as well by reason of the Trade they drive within the Kingdom, as in all other places abroad. They delight much in making Voyages, especially to the *Indies*, and into *Europe*, in so much that most of the Merchants who come to *Venice*, *Holland*, and other places, and who are there called *Armenians*, are of this Nation. Not that the *Christians*, whether *Armenians*, *Georgians*, or others, are not permitted to live within the Citie; but their living in these remote Quarters proceeds from the desire they have to settle themselves in a place, where they might live quietly, and enjoy the freedom of their conscience. For the *Persians* do not onely suffer them to inhabit any where, since they have a particular Quarter assign'd them within the Citie of *Ispahan*, behind the *Metzit Mehed*, in a place which they call *Nessera*; but they have also an affection for them, as well upon accompt of the advantage they make by Trading with them, and the Tribute they pay, as particularly upon the score of their Vines. The *Mahumetane* Law forbids those who are subject thereto, the drinking of Wine, and consequently the cultivation of Vineyards. But the *Persians*, who are so given to Wine, that it were impossible they should forbear it, imagine they commit no great sin, in the drinking of Wine, though it be done even to excess, provided their Vineyards are dress'd by *Christians*. The *Armenians* are expert enough at all things requisite to the ordering of the Vines; but they understand nothing of the making or preserving of Wine. They are no lovers of white Wine, in so much that when it hath not stood long enough in the Vat, or is not high colour'd enough to their fancy, they put into it a little Brazil-wood, or Saffron, to heighten its colour. They do not keep it in Butts or Tuns, but either in great earthen pots, or fill therewith the whole Cellar, without using any Vessel at all.

There is yet a noble part of the Suburbs towards the West-side of the Citie, named *Kebrabath*, deriving its name from a certain people called *Kebber*, that is to say, *Infidels*, from the *Turkish* word *Kiaphir*, which signifies a *Renegat*. I know not whether I may affirm they are Originally *Persians*, since they have nothing common with them but the Language. They are distinguish'd from the other *Persians* by their beards, which they wear very big, as also by their habit, which is absolutely different from that of the others. They wear, over their *Wascos*, a *Casque*, or Coat, which falls down to half the leg, and is open onely at the neck and shoulders, where they ty it together with Ribbons. Their Women cover not their faces, as those of the other *Persians* do, and they are seen in the streets and elsewhere, contrary to the custom of those, who pretend to live civilly; yet have they a great reputation of being very chaste.

I made it my business to enquire, what Religion these *Keppers* are of, but all the accompt I could have of them, was, that they are a sort of Pagans, who have neither Circumcision, nor Baptism, nor Priests, nor Churches, nor any books of Devotion or Morality among them. Some Authors affirm, that they have a certain Veneration for the fire, as the ancient *Persians* had; but there is no such thing. They believe indeed the immortality of the Soul, and somewhat consonant to what the ancient Pagans writ, of Hell, and the *Elysian* fields. For when any one of them dies, they let a Cock out of the House of the party deceas'd, and follow him into the fields without the Citie, and if a Fox take him by the way, they make no doubt but that his Soul is sav'd: but if this experiment take not, they use another, which in their opinion is more certain and infallible; which is this. They put about the deceas'd person his best Cloaths, hang several Gold Chains and Jewels about his neck, and Rings, and whatsoever else he had of mott value of that kind, upon his fingers and in his hands, and so dress'd, he is brought to the Church-yard, where they set him standing against the Wall, and keep him up in that Posture, by putting a Fork under his Chin. If it happen, that the Crows, or any other ravenous Birds, pick out his Right Eye, he is look'd upon as a Saint, there's no doubt of his Salvation, the Corps is buried with Ceremonies, and is very gently and orderly let down into the Grave. But if the said Birds unfortunately make at the Left Eye, 't is an infallible argument of his Damnation; they conceive a horrour at him as a Reprobate, and they cast him head-long into the Grave.

There are near and about *Ispahan* fourteen hundred and sixty Villages, the Inhabitants whereof are all in a manner employ'd in the making of Stuffs and Tapistry, of Wool, Cotton, Silk, and Brocado.

Villages near Ispahan.

1637. The fields about the City lye very low, and it seems Nature was willing in that to shew an effect of her Providence, inasmuch as were it not for that convenience, the Country would not be Habitable, by reason of the excessive heats which reign there. For the convenience they derive from this situation is this, that they can make the River *Senderut* over-flow, when the Summer heats have melted the Snow on the neighbouring Mountains, and draw it all over the fields. *Johannes de Persia* saies indeed, that the River, falling again into its Chanel, leaves a slime behind it, which corrupts the Air; but he is mistaken. For it is certain, that, some Provinces only excepted, which lye upon the *Caspian* Sea, there is not any place in all *Persia*, where the Air is more healthy than at *Ispahan*.

The fields  
about it.

True indeed it is, that the heats there are very great, especially in *June* and *July*, but the Inhabitants are not much incommodated thereby. For as, in Winter they have their *Tennars*, or Stoves, against the Cold, so in Summer, they have their Vaulted apartments, and their Halls and Galleries, with Windows of all sides, that the Wind and Air may find their passage in, to moderate their great heats. And though it freezes there so little, that in a Night's time it does not make an Ice as thick as a man's finger, which thaws as soon as the Sun appears over the Horizon, yet have they a way to make the Ice above two foot thick, and to keep it, to be us'd to cool their Drinks in Summer. To do this, they make choice of a commodious place, that is cool, and towards the North, pav'd with Free-stone or Marble, but uneven, and with a little descent, upon which they pour the water, and as soon as that is congeal'd, they pour on more, and by this means, in one night, they make an Ice a foot thick, which in the day time they cover, that the Sun may not shine upon it: and so continuing this exercise for two or three nights together, they provide Ice enough to serve them all Summer. Having made as much as they desire, they break it in pieces, and put it up into Snow-Houfes, whereof there are so many at *Ispahan*, that, for two or three *Kasbekis*, a man may have as much as will suffice him all Summer.

The air of  
Persia.

The extent we have assign'd *Persia*, from the 25 degree of the *Æquator*, to the 37 Northward from the *Æquinoctial* line, discovers, that it is seated in the temperate Zone. Mount *Taurus* divides it in the middle, almost as the *Apennine* does *Italy*, thrusting forth its Branches here and there into several Provinces, where they are called by other particular names. The Provinces, which have this Mountain between them and the North, are very hot; but the others, which have it between them and the South, have a milder and more temperate Air. The Kings of *Persia* heretofore took this convenience, to change the places of their habitations, according to the Seasons, passing away the Summer at *Ecbatane*, which is now called *Tabris*, having the Mountain between it and the South-west, and by that means not so much expos'd to the great heats: and the Winter, at *Susa*, in the Province, which, from that name, is now called *Susistan*, where the Mountain not only keeps off the North-wind from annoying the Inhabitants, but also sends them heat, by the reflection of the Sun-beams at Noon, and makes the place so delightful, that it hath thence the name *Suse*, that is, Lilly. In Spring and Autumn, they liv'd at *Persopolis*, or at *Babylon*. The Modern Kings do still use the same convenience. *Schach-Abas*, liv'd, in the Winter, at *Ferabath*, in the Province of *Mesanderan*; and *Schach-Sefi*, sometimes at *Tabris*, and sometimes at *Ardebil*, or *Caswin*. The City of *Ispahan* is the most commodious of any, as well for Winter as Summer, inasmuch as being seated in a great Plain, at, in a manner, an equal distance of three Leagues from the Mountain, there is always some little Wind stirring, which cools the Air, and comes into all Rooms.

We had but too much experience of this change, and the inconveniences ensuing thereupon, and found, that the heats of the day, and the cold of the nights, of which *Jacob* made his complaint to *Laban* his Father-in-law, are there equally insupportable. For, being forc'd to Travel in the night, and that during the hottest season of the year, we felt there a cold, which depriv'd us of the use of our Limbs, and made us many times unable to get off our Horses, especially when there was an East or North-wind: whereas, on the contrary, the South-wind sent us sometimes such hot blasts as was ready to choak us.

Diseases.

From what we have now said, it may be deduc'd, that all the Provinces of *Persia* are not equally healthy, and that there are some, where Diseases are much more common than in others. Those of *Schirwan* and *Kilan* are very much subject to Feavers; but the Air of the City of *Tauris* is so good, that a man hears no talk of that Disease there. Nay, on the contrary, they say that those who are troubled therewith, may find their remedy in that place, even without taking any Physick. Epidemical Diseases, such as the Bloody-Flux, and the Plague, are not so ordinary here as in *Europe*. The Pox, which is called *Sehemet Kaschi*, that is, the Disease of *Kaschan*, in regard it is more common there than elsewhere, or that there notice was first taken of it, (as it is called in *France*, the *Neapolitan* Disease, and in *England*, and other places, the *French*, in as much as, instead of going to *Naples* for it, where the *French* were infected in the name of *Charles VIII.* they may now have it as conveniently at *Paris*) is very common at that place. 'Tis true *Kaschan* is a place excellently well seated, but the Air must be somewhat unwholsome, when they want fresh water thereabouts, and that it is here

the *Tarantulas* and the most dangerous Scorpions of all *Persia* are most rife. The Dropfie is not very rare in the Province of *Kilan*; but there are very few troubled with the Stone in any part of the Kingdom; and for the Gout, it is a Disease not yet known among them. The Inhabitants are Long liv'd, it being an ordinary thing to see persons of a hundred years of age. I knew a Judge in the Province of *Serab*, between *Mokan* and *Ardebil*, who was a hundred and thirty years of age; and the Father of *Hacwerdy*, who went along with us into *Holfstein*, was above six score. Their temperance and sobriety contributes much to the good constitution of their Body, the continuance of their Health, and length of their Lives.

As to the soil of *Persia*, the Province of *Kilan* excepted, which is very fertile, it is sandy and barren in the Plains, every where in a manner chequer'd with little red Stones, and not bringing forth ought but Thistles and Reeds, which they use for firing in their Kitchin instead of Wood, where there is not any. The Province of *Kilan* only hath nothing of this drought. But in the uneven parts of the Country, where the Mountains make several Valleys, the ground is very good. Accordingly in these places it is, that most of their Villages are seated, inasmuch as they are very Ingenious, in conveying the water, which rises out of the Mountains, by Channels of about four foot in breadth, which they use in their Gardens, and many times in till'd Lands, to those places where it seldom Rains. To give the earth that moisture which Heaven hath deny'd it, they raise up the ends of their Lands, which are about fifteen or twenty fathom square, a foot higher than any other part, into which they let in the water out of their Channels over Night, and the next Morning let it out again: so that the earth, which hath been thus moisten'd, receiving the Sun-beams almost perpendicular, brings forth all sorts of fruits in great abundance.

In the Cultivation of their grounds, they make use of Ploughs, which are so big in those places, where the soil is strong and fat, as it is in *Iruan* and *Armenia*, that many times twenty or four and twenty Buffles, or wild Oxen, are hardly able to draw them, and they require six men to drive them. The furrows are a foot deep, and two foot broad. They ordinarily sow only Rice, Wheat, and Barley. They care not for Rye, and when there chances to be any Grains of it among the Wheat, as this often degenerates into the other, they weed it out, and cast it away. Oats is a kind of Grain not known among them. They sow also Millet, Lentils, Pease and Beans. They call the Ciches, *Nagud*, and the common Pease, *Kulul*.

They sow also whole fields of *Ricinus*, or *Palma Christi*, which they call *Kuntzut*. They beat the Grain thereof, to get an Oyl out of it, which they call *Schirbach*, and it is sweet and pleasant, and very good to eat. The Peasants eat also the Grain; and mixing it with Ciches, and Currans, they make their Deserts of it.

There is in a manner no Province of *Persia* but brings forth Cotton, which they call *Pambch*, and there are whole fields cover'd therewith, especially in *Armenia*, *Iruan*, *Nachtzuan*, *Kerabash*, near *Arasbar*, in *Adirbeitzan*, and in *Chorasfan*. It grows upon a Bush, two or three foot high, having leaves like those of the Vine, but much less, and shoots forth at the extremity of its Branches a bud of about the bigness of a Nut, which, when fully ripe, opens in several places, and thrusts out the Cotton, through the clefts that are in the shell. Though there be abundance of it spent in all sorts of Stuffs made in the Country; yet do they drive a vast Trade with that which is unwrought. The Province of *Kilan* brings forth also a kind of Flax, the thread whereof is very good, and fit for Cloath.

The domestick Creatures, as well such as are us'd in carriage, as others, are Sheep, Goats, Buffles, Oxen and Cows, Camels, Horses, Mules, and Asses. The ordinary Forrage for Horses is Barley, mixt with Chaff, or Rice mixt with shredded Straw. The *Persians* water not their Horses till an hour and a half after they have eaten, contrary to the ordinary custom of the *Turks*, who water theirs immediately after they have given them their allowance. There is in *Persia* a certain kind of Herb, which they call *Genscheht*, which is sown much after the same manner as we sow *Saint-foin*, once in seven years. It grows up three foot high, and brings forth blew Flowers. It is cut twice a year, and they are only Persons of quality who give it their Horses. There is very little common Hay, unless it be in the Province of *Iruan*, and *Armenia*. In some Provinces they do not make any at all, because there is Grass enough all the year long.

Of all Cattel, they have most Sheep. Of these they have very great Flocks, and it is their most ordinary Food, though it be not of so pleasant a tast to those who are not accustomed thereto. They are much of the same bulk with those of *Europe*, and sometimes a little bigger; but short and flat-Nos'd with the Ears hanging down, as our Spaniels. They are but lean, in regard the Tails, which weigh ten, twenty, nay sometimes thirty pounds, draw all the fat out of them. The Tails have the bones and joynts, as our Sheep have, but the fat hangs to them in great gobbets like locks of Wool; which much hinders them from running or leaping. In *Kurdesthan*, near *Diarbeker*, and in *Sirie*, they have the Invention of putting the tails of these Creatures upon a kind of little Cart with two Wheels, which is fasten'd by a little stick to the Necks of them. The Sheep we saw among the *Tartars*, upon the *Caspian* Sea, are in all things



1637. like those of *Persia*; but those of the *Tartars* of *Ufbecke* and *Buchar* have a greyish long Wool, curling at the ends into little white and close Knots, like Pearls, which makes a pretty show, whence it comes that their fleece is more esteem'd than their flesh, in as much as this kind of furr is the most precious of any us'd in *Persia*, next to Sables. They are very tenderly kept, and for the most part in the shade, and when they are oblig'd to bring them abroad, they cover them as they do Horses. These Sheep have as little tails as ours.

*Goats.* The *Persians* have also great flocks of Goats, and they eat the flesh of them. Of the Suet they make Candles; and it is of their skins that they make the Leather which we call *Marroquin* or *Spanish* Leather, and is brought through *Moscovy* and *Poland* into the other Provinces of *Europe*.

*Buffles.* They have abundance of Buffles, especially towards the *Caspian-Sea*, in *Ferab*, near *Ardebil*, in *Ernan*, and *Surul*, where some Peasants have five or six hundred of them. They are kept in moist places, and they say their milk is very cooling, as is also the butter made thereof. They have also Oxen like those of *Europe*; but, in the Province of *Kilan*, they have a bunch of fat upon the neck, as those of the *Indies* have. I have been told, that the Cows will not suffer themselves to be milk'd, if their Calves be not brought before them: so that if a Calf chance to die, (for they never kill any to eat) they fill the skin with Straw, cast a little Salt upon it, and they let the Cow lick it, by which means she stands quiet to be milk'd.

*They abhor Swine.* The *Persians* have an aversion for Swine; whence it comes that the *Armenians* themselves, who live among them, seldom breed any, unless it be in those places where they live apart, as in the Suburbs of *Tzulfa*, where they have some few. They conceive they have very good reason to have an aversion for this Creature, following the example of the *Jews*, and tell, to that purpose, a ridiculous and obscene story, which they take out of the *Alchoran*, and relate; That, one day, the Apostles intreated our Saviour, to tell them, after what manner *Noah* liv'd in the Ark, during the Deluge. But our Saviour, without saying a word to them, having taken a handfull of dirt, made the figure of a man with it, cast it upon the ground, and said to it, rise up in the name of the Father. Immediately there started up an oldman, all white, whom our Saviour asked, Who art thou? He made answer, I am *Japhet*, the son of *Noah*. Our Saviour ask'd him, whether he were so white when he died; whereto he answered, that he was not, but that he became so just that moment, out of the fear he was in to appear before God, as believing he had been rais'd up to come to the last judgement. Upon that, *Jesus Christ* commanded him to acquaint the Apostles with all that had been done in the Ark. *Japhet* obey'd, and told them, among other things, that, one day, the Ark being so full of dirt at that place where the house of ease stood, that *Noah*, fearing it might take in water there, thought fit to consult God in that extremity. The Divine answer was, that he should send an Elephant to the said common house, and that of the Dung of that Creature and mans mixt together, there was immediately engendred a Swine, which fo turn'd up that heap of Ordure with his snout, that the Ark went very even. This nasty Creature having fill'd its Nostrils with filth, sneez'd very violently, by means of which sneezing, there came out a Rat, which put *Noah* into greater perplexity than before; in so much, that, to be deliver'd out of these troubles, he address'd himself once more to God, and ask'd him what he should do in that unhappy conjuncture. The answer was, that God commanded him, to strike the Lion upon the head with a Wand, and that he, being thereby put into a fury, fell a-roaring so loud, that, out of his Nostrils there came out a Cat, which immediately pursued the Rat. The *Persian* Paraphrast of the *Alchoran*, going on with his story, sayes, that *Noah*, knowing he was to continue forty years in the Ark, separated the Males from the Females, out of a fear, that the several species multiplying, the Ark would not be able to contain them, and that they might want meat. Of all Creatures, onely the Dog had the freedom allow'd him to stay with the Bitch, at the bottom of the Ark. One day the Cat having observ'd that those Creatures had the liberty to do what all the rest were deny'd, went, and made her complaints to *Noah*, who reproching them with what they had done, the Dog would not acknowledge the fact. But word was so often brought to *Noah* of the Dog's transgression, that he desired God to make known the truth of it by an infallible proof, and that afterwards the Dog desirous to line the Bitch became fasten'd to her; wherewith the Cat having acquainted *Noah*, they were taken in the fact, and found guilty of having lied before. Thence it comes, that, ever since that time, Dogs have been so fasten'd in the act of generation, and have an inveterate feud against Cats.

*Camels.* They have several sorts of Camels. Those which have two bunches they call *Bughur*, and those, which have but one, *Schuttur*. Of these last there are four kinds; that is, those, which, by way of excellence, they call *Ner*, that is to say, the Male, which is engendred of a Dromedary, or Camel, with two bunches, and a Female that hath but one, which is called *Maje*, and these are not to be cover'd by any of another kind. These are the best and most esteem'd of all the Camels, in so much that some of them are sold at a hundred Crowns a-piece. They carry nine hundred, or a thousand weight, and are in a manner indefatigable. When they are hot, they eat little, foam at the mouth, are angry, and bite; so that to prevent their doing any injury

jury to those who govern them, they have a kind of Muzzle put over their mouths, which the *Persians* call *Agrab*. The Camels, which come of these, degenerate very much, and are heavy and slow, whence the *Turks* call them *Furda Kaidem*, and they are not worth above thirty or forty Crowns. 1637.

The third kind is that which they call *Lohk*; but these are not so good as the *Bughurs*, nor do they foam at the mouth as the *Ners*, when they are hot: but when they go to rut, they put out under the Throat a red bladder, which they draw in with their breath, lift up their heads, and snort often. These are worth about sixty Crowns apiece. They are not near so strong as the others, whence it is, that when the *Persians* would speak of a stout and daring man, they say he is a *Ner*, and when they would express a poor-spirited and cowardly person, they call him a *Lohk*.

The fourth kind is, by the *Persians*, called *Schutturi baad*, and by the *Turks*, *Feldovesi*, that is, Wind-Camels. They are much less in bulk, but more active and sprightly than the others: for whereas the ordinary Camels go but a footpace, these trot and gallop as well as Horses.

The King and the *Chans* have many Teams of them, and every Team consists in seven Camels coupled together. They use them at Magnificent Ceremonies, either to meet Ambassadors, covered with covering-cloaths of red Velvet, or Pack-saddles made of the same stuff, embroider'd with Gold and Silver, with silver-bells about their necks, or to ride poste, nay, sometimes in the Wars, in which they are thus much the more serviceable, that, in a defeat, they contribute much to the saving of the Baggage. They trot so hard, that the Boy who guides them, and to that end gets up first, is glad to be ty'd to the Pannel or Saddle by the waste. When they run, they put out their heads, and open their Nostrils, and run with such violence, that it is impossible to stay them. At our entrance into *Scamachie* and *Ardebil*, we saw a great number of them, galloping sometimes before, sometimes behind us.

This is one of the greatest conveniences that Travellers meet with in *Persia*, as well for the carrying of their own persons, as the conveyance of their Baggage and Commodities, which they may, by this means, transport from one place to another, at a very easie rate, and with little trouble. One man guides a Team, or as many as are fasten'd together: and if a man thinks it not safe to travel alone, he may joyn with the *Caravans*, which go perpetually up and down the Countrey, and with these is the safest way of travelling.

The travelling of the Camels is at a certain rate, and therefore their Stages being set, they find it no great trouble to make them reach their ordinary lodgings, which are either in Villages upon the High-way, or at *Caravanferas*, expressly built for the entertainment of the *Caravans*. Some of these *Caravanferas* have persons in them, who are as it were Hosts, and sell Proviender, but in others, you have onely the bare Walls. It is no great charge to keep the Camels. Their sustenance is Thistles and Nettles and sometimes they thrust down their throats a hard Paste, made of the chaff of Barley, about three pound in weight, much after the fashion of the Loaves which the *French* Soldiers, who serve in the Low-Countreys, corruptly call *Brindeflocq*. Sometimes, they put into this Paste, Cotton-seed, which is very sweet, and as big as a great Pease. They can endure thirst for two or three dayes together; wherein nature seems to have made some Provision against the extremity men are put to for want of water, when they travel over the Desarts and Heaths of those hot and dry Countreys. They onely touch the knees of their fore-legs to make them bow to receive their burthens, and being so laid with their bellies on the ground, they suffer a man to order them as he pleases. The harmonious sound of a man's voyce, or an instrument, enlivens them; whence it comes that the *Persians* tie little bells about their knees, and a pretty big one about their necks, not onely by reason of the long trains of them that go together, it being necessary they should be heard at a great distance, to give those notice who might unadvisedly come between them, but also to divert these Creatures in their travel. The *Arabians*, to the same purpose, make use of Timbrels, when they travel through the Desarts of their Countrey, in as much as whipping or beating does not make them advance; but Musick, especially a man's voyce, animates, and inspires them with a certain courage. What most troubles the Camels, is a kind of Snail, called *Mohere*, which sometimes lies within the Thistles; if these sting them in the Nostrils, it proves mortal.

The Camels are very revengefull, and remember a long time any injury they have receiv'd: in so much, that, in *Persia*, a Camels anger is come into a Proverb, when they would speak of an irreconcilable enmity. As to this particular, there is a very memorable example of a Camel, which, being hot, and having not the Muzzle on, bit a servant who went along by him, in the Arm. The servant gave him a many blows about the neck with a Cudgel, which part is the tendrest about these Creatures. But the Camel had a cruel revenge of him, ere they came to their journey's end. For some time after, being got loose in the night, he went among the servants, who by reason of the cold lay near the Camels, that they might thrust their feet under their bellies, and having pitch'd upon the person that had beaten him, he trod on him so as that all his bones were crush'd and broken. The servant's Father demanded satisfaction, and had the Camel

1637. Camel adjudg'd him, to be dispos'd of as he pleasid. If anger proceed from Choler as its principle, a man may justly wonder whence it comes, that *Pliny* sayes, that Camels, Horses, and Asses, have no Gall. Nor could I ever find any reason why the same *Pliny* should affirm, after *Xenophon*, that Camels have an aversion for Horses. When I told the *Persians* of it, they laugh'd at me, and said, that it was not without reason Camels hated Horses; when many times the Horses may get into the stables, and have a house over their heads, whereas the Camels, which cannot get in by reason of the lowness of the Doors, are forc'd to lie abroad, and to suffer the Horses to take up their quarters. And indeed there hardly goes any *Caravan*, but a man may see Camels, Horses, and Asses put up together in the same stable, yet express not any aversion or animosity one against another.

True indeed it is, that the Females go twelve moneths, but those are extremely mis-inform'd, who believe that the Male, when he covers her, turns his hinder part to her. This mistake took its rise hence, that the Camels, when they make water, put their yards backwards between their hinder legs; but in the work of Generation they use them otherwise. The Female lies down upon her belly, and the Male covers her, after the same manner as Horses do. And though this Creature be of a great bulk, yet is not its generative member, which is at least three foot in length, any thicker than a man's little finger. This animal is seldome eaten, as being more serviceable in point of work; but when they fall under their Burthens, or in case they be stung by one of the *Moheres*, they kill them, with two thrusts into the Throat, one at the place where it joyns to the Head, the other, towards the Breast, and then they eat them.

Horses.

There are abundance of Horses in *Persia*, most of them well made. They are very handsome about the Head, Neck, Ears, Crupper, and Leggs. *Media* bred heretofore such excellent Horses, that they were all kept for the King. The Horses of those parts are at this time very good ones, and there are of an excellent breed in the Province of *Erscheck*, near *Ardebil*; but it is withall certain, that the *Arabian* Horses are incomparably better, and accordingly more esteem'd by the King, who makes them the chiefest Ornament of his Stables. Next those, they most value those of *Turkey*, though the King hath good breeding places in several Provinces of his Kingdome, especially in *Erscheck*, *Schirwan*, *Karabag*, and *Mokan*, where is the best Meadow-grounds in *Persia*. They make use of them for the most part for men's Riding, very seldome for the carriage of Commodities, and never almost in the Cart, which, all over *Persia*, hath but two Wheels. And whereas the main forces of the Kingdome consist in their Cavallry, it thence comes, that they are great lovers of Horses, and very tender in the keeping of them. Yet with all this care, do they not make use of straw for Litter, but of Horse-Dung, which they dry in the Sun, and make beds of it a foot deep, for the Horses, which could not lye more at their ease upon quilts. This Litter serves them a long time, and when it is moisten'd with stale, they put it into the Sun, dry it again, and so continue to make use of it. With their soft beds, they also cover them with a Hair-cloath, lined with a kind of soft coarse cloath. They also fasten them by the hinder feet, to a stake, that, in case they should break or slip their Haltars, they may not get away, or hurt the other horses. All the manage they bestow on them, consists only in accustoming them to start away, as Lightning, at the beginning of a Race, and they call those Horses which exceed in swiftness *Bad-pay*, that is, Windy-heel'd. If their Horses be White or Grey, they colour the Main, and the Tail, and sometimes also the Leggs, with Red or Orange; wherein the *Polanders* and *Tartars* are wont to imitate them. They do not in any thing make so great ostentation of their expence, as in what is employ'd about the harness of their Horses, which they sometimes cover with Plates of Gold or Silver, and adorn the Reins, Saddles, and covering-Cloaths, with Goldsmiths Work and Embroidery. Yet is not this custom of so late a beginning, but that there may somewhat of this kind be observ'd out of the most antient Authors of the *Greek* History.

Mules.

They have also a great number of Mules, which for the most part are used only for Riding. The King himself, and the *Chans*, ordinarily Ride upon these, and they stood us in good stead, when all other kind of Riding had been very troublesome to us, in our sickness. They yield as good a rate as Horses, so that a Mule, though none of the best, nor very handsome, is sold at least for a hundred Crowns. I was told there were some white ones, but they are very rare, and highly Valu'd; and I must confess, I never saw any.

Asses.

Asses are very common all over the East, but in *Persia* more than any where, and especially at *Ispahan*, where there is an infinite number of them, in regard they allow not Carting within the City. Those who drive them, have at the end of their Whip a great Bodkin, fasten'd with a chain, wherewith they make a noise, and are perpetually pricking of this Creature, which seems to be more cold and heavy in this Country, than any where else.

Fruits.

The heats are so great in *Persia*, and the weather so constantly fair and clear in the Summer, that it is not to be much wondred they should have such good and excellent Fruits. As for those which are spent in the Kitchin, they are there in greater abundance, but incomparably better and more savoury than in *Europe*. Among others, the Onions are so big in the Province of

*Tarum*,

*Tarum*, near *Chalcal*, that one of them will weigh three pound. The Cabbages are there cur-  
led, very tender, and of an excellent tast. 1637.

Their most precious Fruits are Melons; and as their care in the ordering of them is extra-  
ordinary, so they have every year great quantities of them. They sow them all only in good  
mold, yet are there not any but what are very excellent. There are two sorts of them, to wit,  
those which they call *Kermek*, from the work *Kerm*, which signifies hot, in regard they are  
eaten in Summer, and they come betimes, and are fully ripe in *June*. These are as yellow as  
Gold, and the sweetest of any. The other sort they call *Charbussei pass*, and they come not to  
perfect maturity till *Autumn*. These are very big, and weigh thirty, forty, or fifty pound  
weight. They are kept, not only all the Winter, but even till there are new ones to be had:  
and this is done with such industry, that, to distinguish them from the new ones,  
a man must put his finger to them and see whether the Rind gives way; and by this means they  
are never without Melons. They have a way also to keep Grapes, by wrapping them up in  
green Reeds, and hanging them up to the roof of their Chambers. There is yet a third sort of  
Melons, which they call *Scamname*, and are no bigger than Oranges; but these are wrought  
or embroider'd, having amidst the embroidery red, yellow, and green spots. They are not ve-  
ry good to eat, but the scent is very pleasant, and for that reason the *Persians* carry them in  
their hands. There is yet another sort of water-Melons, which they call *Hinduane*, in regard  
the first of them were brought out of the *Indies*, as we said elsewhere, in the description of the  
City of *Astrachan*, where we had some occasion to speak of this kind of Fruit. It is very big,  
and yet the stalks of it are so small, that the *Persian* Poets use them in their Inventions, to make  
a comparison between them and the Wall-nut Tree, which being a great and lofty Tree, yet  
brings forth but a Small Fruit: to shew, that, many times, a person of Mean Birth may do  
very noble actions, and that, on the contrary, a Great Prince may do things that are poor and  
unfuitable to his extraction.

They have also several sorts of Citrulls, or Citrul-Cowcubers, and among the rest, one, *Citrulls*,  
which they call *Kabach*, and may be found among the Herbarists, under the name of *Cucurbita*  
*Lagenaria*. They are about the bigness of a man's Head, and sometimes bigger, and have a  
long Neck. They are eaten green, and before they are come to their full Maturity: for when  
they are ripe, the Rind dries, and grows as hard as the Bark of a Tree, or boyled Leather, and  
the meat within is so consum'd, that there being nothing left but the Seed, the *Persians* use them  
instead of Flaggons, and make Drinking Cups of them.

They have yet another kind of fruit, not known in *Europe*, which they call *Padintzan*. They *Padintzan*  
are like little Melons, or rather Cowcubers. The fruit is green, save that at the end towards the  
stalk, it is somewhat of a Violet Colour. The Seed is round and long, and of a pretty bigness.  
This is not eaten raw, because it is a little bitter; but, being boyl'd, or fry'd in Butter, it is  
a delicate Dish.

The Climate of *Persia* is excellently good for the Vine. There is no Province in the whole *The Vine*,  
Kingdome which doth not bring forth excellent Grapes; but in regard the *Mahumetan* Law  
forbids them the use of Wine, they accordingly neglect the cultivation of the Vine. They say, *Why the*  
that the Prohibition made in the *Alchoran* against their drinking of Wine is grounded on a rea- *Mahume-*  
son, which they think very good, and seems to us pleasant enough to deserve a small Digression *tans drinks*  
in this Relation. They say then, that God, desirous to comfort Mankind, especially the poor, *no Wine.*  
for the injuries and affronts, which Great Lords and Wealthy Men are apt to do those who  
have any dependence on them, sent into the World two Angels, named *Haroth*, and *Maroth*,  
and forbad them particularly three things, to put any person to Death, to do any wrong, and  
to drink Wine. Now it happened, that a young and very handsome Woman liv'd in some dis-  
content with her Husband, would needs have these Angels to undertake the arbitration of the  
difference that was between them, and to gain their favour, she invited them to Dinner, and  
pres'd them to drink of her Wine, which was the best the Country could afford. The An-  
gels, at first, would have excus'd themselves, alleging the Prohibitions which God had made  
them to that purpose; but at last she prevail'd with them, and they drunk so liberally of her  
Wine, that they began to be very familiar with their fair Hostess, and to desire of her the grea-  
test kindnesse it is in a Woman's power to do a Man. The Woman was content they should have  
their desires, but made this condition before hand, that one of them should shew her the  
way by which people come down from Heaven, and the other that by which they go up into it:  
but as soon as the Angels had shown her the way, the Woman slunk away from them, and  
went stright to Heaven. God finding her Cloath'd as she was, ask'd her how she could get up  
to Heaven without Dying. She made answer, that it was by the information of the Angels,  
and for the preservation of her Honour. Which oblig'd God to Crown her Chastity with an  
extraordinary Glory; and whereas she was one of the most Beautifull Women in the World,  
it was accordingly his Pleasure, that she should have more light than any of the other Stars,  
and so he made her that Star or Planet which is called *Venus*. Afterwards having called the An-  
gels before him, he told them, that in requital of the good they had done, he was content  
they

1637. they should condemn themselves to some punishment which they thought proportionable to their Sin: whereupon they went into the Cave of *Bebil*, between *Babylon* and *Betreh*, where they were hung up by the Feet, to a great Iron Chain, in which posture they were to continue till the day of Judgment.

The *Persians*, in obedience to *Mahomet's* command, make no Wine; but in regard they are great lovers of it, they do not only permit the *Christians* to make thereof, but indeed the chief reason why they permit the *Armenians* to live among them, is, that they may buy thereof of them. They do not make it so well as it is done in *Europe*, and have not the Ingenuity to put it into Buts, but keep it in great Earthen Pitchers, each of which contains near half a Barrel, as we said elsewhere. The *Seder*, that is, the chief of the Religion of the *Persians*, to expresse his zeal, did sometimes order the Pitchers of the *Armenians* to be broken. The *Persians* are permitted to make a sirrup of sweet Wine, which they boyl, till it be reduc'd to a sixth part, and be grown as thick as Oyl. They call this Drugg *Duschab*, and when they would take of it, they dissolve it with water, and add thereto a little Vineger, all which together make a very pleasant Drink. The *Minatzim*, or Astrologer of *Scamachie*, gave me of it at a treatment he made for me at his own House. In the more Northerly Provinces of *Persia*, where the Wine is not very good, the Inhabitants dissolve the *Duschab* in the Country Wine, whereto they by that means give both the Colour and Taste of Sack.

Sometimes they boyl the *Duschab* so long, that they reduce it into a Paste, for the convenience of Travellers, who cut it with a Knife, and dissolve it in water. At *Tabris*, they make a certain Conserve of it, which they call *Helwa*, mixing therewith beaten Almonds, Flower, and peel'd Filbeards or small Nuts. They put this mixture into a long and narrow Bag, and having set it under the press, they make of it a Paste, which grows so hard, that a man must have a Hatchet to cut it. They make also a kind of Conserve of it, much like a Pudding, which they call *Zutzuch*, thrusting through the middle of it a small Cotton thread to keep the Paste together.

There are some Chymists, who maintain that by the same reason, to prevent the charges arising upon the transportation of Wine, it were possible to reduce five Tuns to one, by causing sweet Wine to be boyl'd away to the fifth part. For, as they say, there is no likelihood the Wine should lose ought of its Spirits, before it hath wrought, and is dispos'd into Vessels, and that afterwards adding thereto as much fair water, out of which the superfluous humour hath been evaporated, it might be restor'd to the same quantity, and reduc'd to the same degree of goodness it had been of before. But I am of opinion, that if this were feasible, the experiment had been long since try'd, especially in *France*, instead of turning Wine into Aquavitæ.

There are two sorts of Grapes in *Persia*, but the best and sweetest are at *Schiras*, and *Tabris*; whence they bestow on the most delicate of them the name of *Tabersch*. This Grape is long, and hath no stone, and it may be kept all Winter. Those which they call *Keseki*, are yellowish and sweet, and grow in *Tarum*, at *Tabris*, and at *Ordebath*: but of these a man must eat sparingly, for fear of a Bloody-Flux.

The small Grapes, which we call Currens, are there yellowish, and bigger than those which grow in the Isle of *Zanthe*. They call them *Kischmisch*, and the best of them grow at *Bawanat*, near *Herat*.

Besides these, there are yet several other sorts of Grapes, not known in *Europe*; among the rest, those which they call *Hallague*. The Grape it self is above an inch and a half thick, but the meat of it is hard, juyce-less, and without stones, and they are kept all the year long: as also the *Enkuri Aliderefi*, the bunch whereof is above a foot long, and the Grapes are about the bigness of a Damasin, of a dark red Colour, full of juyce and very sweet; but they will not keep. There does not grow any of these save at one place, in the Province of *Iran*, between *Ordebath* and *Choddaserin*. They derive their name from their great Prophet *Aly*, who being, one day, in Winter, at that place, desired a Vinedresser, whom he met, to give him some Grapes; whereto the other making answer, that it were impossible to satisfy his desire, in that season, *Aly* bid him go into the next Vineyard, and he should find some. He went, and according as he had said, found the fairest Grapes he had ever seen; upon which occasion, they are called *Enkuri Aly derefi*, that is, the Grapes of the little Valley of *Aly*.

There is no Fruit-Tree in *Europe*, but is to be found in *Persia*; but, besides those, they have many, not known to us; as a sort of Pears, which they call *Melletze*, which grow near the City of *Ordebath*, about the bigness, and much of the colour of Citrons. The scent of them is very sweet and pleasant, and they are very juicy, but not delightfull to the taste.

Pomegranate-Trees, Almond-Trees, and Fig-Frees grow there without any ordering or cultivation, especially in the Province of *Kilan*, where you have whole Forests of them. The wild Pomegranates, which you find almost every where, especially at *Karabag*, are sharp or sourish. They take out of them the Seed, which they call *Nardan*, wherewith they drive a great Trade, and the *Persians* make use of it in their sauces, whereto it gives a colour, and a picquant taste, having been steep'd in water, and strain'd through a cloath. Sometimes they boyl

the juyce of these Pomegranates, and keep it to give a colour co the Rice, which they serve up at their entertainments, and it gives it withall a tast which is not unpleasent. The *Persians* use sharp sawces with most of their meat, and thence it comes, that among them, you very seldom find any person troubled with the Scurvy, which is a Disease, too well known, and mortal in several Provinces of *Europe*.

I shall say nothing of those other Fruits, which we have also in *Europe*, as of their *Narintz*, or Orenge, *Limec*, Citrons, *Meschmeschi*, Apricocks, *Scafralu*, Peaches, &c. only thus much, that they are not equally good every where. The best Pomegranates grow in *Jesch*, and at *Caswin*, but the biggest, in *Karabag*. *Ispahan* is famous for its good Melons; *Caswin*, for its Peaches; *Tabris*, for its Apricocks; and the Provinces of *Kilan* and *Labetzan* for Silks.

The Trees out of which they get this rich Commodity, may, no doubt, be very well num-<sup>Silks!</sup> bred among the Fruit-Trees, not only in regard that it is true they bear Fruit, but also upon this score, that the *Persians* every where fill their Gardens with these plants. They are white and black Mulbery-Trees, which they plant so close one by another, that a man can hardly pass between the Trees, but they order them as Bushes, and suffer them not to grow above five foot and a half high, that they may easily reach to all the Branches. In the Spring, as soon as these Trees begin to shoot forth their leaves, the *Persians* begin to hatch their Silk-worms. To do this, they carry the Seed in a little bag under the arm pit, where the heat of seven or eight daies hatches them. Then they put them into a wooden dish, upon the Mulbery-leaves, which they change at least once a day, having a great care that they be not wet. At the end of five dayes, they sleep three, and then, they dispose them into Rooms, or Barns; kept very clean and prepar'd for that purpose, and in the Province of *Kilan*, they have particular Buildings for that end. Along the beams of these Buildings they nail laths, or cleft pieces, such as Hoops are made of, upon which they lay the Mulbery-branches with the leaves on, and put the Worms upon them, every day changing these branches, and at last, when they are grown pretty big, twice or thrice a day; and they so shut all ouvertures of the Barns, which are cover'd with Nets, that the very Birds cannot get in to eat them. In the mean time, and before they begin to spin, they sleep eight dayes more; but there must be a great care taken, that Women troubled with their Monethly infirmity, come not near them; inasmuch as it would kill them, and as it were smother them in their own moisture. After seven weeks life, they begin to spin, which is known as well by their satiety, in regard they then give over eating, as by the Silk which comes out at their Mouths. They suffer them to work twelve dayes at their Cods, and in the mean time they very carefully watch the place where they spin. That time expir'd, they find as many Cods, as there had been Worms, and they make choice of the biggest for the Seed. All the rest is cast into a Kettle of boyling water, into which they ever and anon put a Besom, made for that purpose, whereto the Silk sticks, and they immediately wind it up, and what remains they cast away. That which is kept for Seed they set upon a Table, out of which, about fifteen dayes after there are hatched Butter-flies, and these produce the Seed, which is kept in a temperate place till the year following. In this Commodity of Silk consists the greatest Trade of all *Persia*, nay in a manner of all the East, as it is, in effect, the Richest and most Noble of any that is driven in *Europe*.

We may put, into the number of the Fruits of this Country, the *Neste*, which is gotten out <sup>Neste</sup> of several sources, near *Baku*; as also the Salt, which is drawn out of the Salt-pits of *Nachtsuan*; Salt; but this is fairer, and as clear as Chrystal in *Kulb*, *Vrum*, *Kemre*, *Hemedan*, *Bisethun*, *Suldus*, and *Kilissin*. There are no other Pits or Mines where they work. There are indeed certain Forges, at *Masula*, and *Keintze*; but the best Iron comes from *Masula*, where it is so soft <sup>Iron</sup> and tractable, that it is malleable, and yields to the Hammer without heating. There are Gold and Silver Mines between *Serab* and *Miane*, but they cannot be wrought for want of Wood, which is so scarce thereabouts, that the advantage might be made of them would not defray the charges. Between *Pirmaras* and *Schamachie*, we saw a Mountain of *Lapis Specularis*, which, when the Sun shone upon it, look'd like a heap of Diamonds.

The *Persians* are of mean stature. *Xenophon* saies, that they were most of them bulky and fat: <sup>The stature of the Persians.</sup> and *Marcellinus*, on the contrary, affirms, that, in his time, they were spare-bodied, and dry. They are so now, but strong, and have great limbs, their faces inclining to an Olive-colour, Black-hair'd, and Hawk-nos'd. The men are shav'd once in eight dayes, contrary to the custom of the antient *Persians*, who suffered their Hair to grow, as do at present the *Seid*, that is, the kinred of *Mahomet*, who, as they say, went so. They also shave their Beards, leaving only Mustachoes. They are only a sort of Religious men, called *Pybr*, who suffer their Beards to grow upon their Chins, and about their Cheeks. These people are in great Veneration among them, upon the accompt of their apparent sanctity, which principally consists in abstinence. There are also those, who never cut their Mustachoes, which by that means cover their Mouths; and this they do in remembrance of their Prophet *Haly*, who wore them in that manner. These last are called *Suffi*; and they say *Haly* wore his Mustachoes so, for the following reason: That when *Mahomet* took that Voyage to Paradise, which the *Alchoran*

1637. speaks of, *Azoara*, 27. *Haly* follow'd him. At first they made some difficulty at the Gate to let him in, till such time as he told the Porter, that he was *Schir Chodda*, that is, God's Lion. Being got in, he saw that the Angels made *Mahomet* drink of a certain excellent Wine, whereof he was so happy as to have one Goblet presented to him, which he took off; but some drops of the Divine draught sticking on his Mustachoes, he would never afterwards suffer them to be cut.

The *Persians* have a great fancy to black hair, and they bear with the flaxen-hair'd, but not without some trouble; but for red-hair'd people, they have a strong aversion. They have so great an esteem for black hair, that when it is not fully black, they colour it so. To do that, they make use of the herb and seed of *Wesme*, which is brought from *Bagdat*, and is somewhat like that which the *Herbarists* call *Securidaca*, which they beat very small with the rinds of Pomegranates, and mix therewith Soap and Arsenick; they boyl this composition in Spring-water, and rub their Hair therewith, which they afterwards wash with a strong lye, made with unslak'd Lime. They make use also of the water, which issues out of the Vines, in the Spring-time: the Men rub their Mustachoes therewith, and Maids their Hair, which fall down over their shoulders ty'd up in several tresses; out of an opinion they all are of, that this makes them grow.

Paint their Hands and Nails. They have also a custom of Painting their Hands, and, above all, their Nails, with a Red Colour, inclining to Yellowish or Orange, much near the colour that our Tanners nails are of. There are those who also Paint their Feet. This is so necessary an ornament in their Married Women, that this kind of Paint is brought up, and distributed among those that are invited to their Wedding Dinners. They therewith Paint also the Bodies of such as dye Maids, that when they appear before the Angels Examinants, they may be found more neat and handsome. This Colour is made of the herb, which they call *Chinne*, which hath leaves like those of Liquorice, or rather those of Myrtle. It grows in the Province of *Erak*, and it is dry'd, and beaten, small as Flower, and there is put thereto a little of the juyce of sower Pomegranate, or Citron, or sometimes only fair Water; and therewith they Colour their hands. And if they would have them to be of a darker Colour, they rub them afterwards with Wall-nut leaves. This colour will not be got off in fifteen dayes, though they wash their hands several times a day.

Their Habit. Their Cloaths have no proportion to their Limbs. Their Coats and upper Garments are large and hang loose, not unlike the Garments of Women. They express a certain Effeminacy in their gate. They go as it were Jetting and Wadling, and with very little Gravity. I am of opinion, that this scurvy Habit is deriv'd from their manner of sitting, which is, as our Taylors do; whereto being accustomed from their infancy, they are not so strong in the Hamms as they would otherwise be. *Diodorus Siculus* ascribes the invention of this kind of Garments to *Semiramis*, and tells the occasion of it, as do also most of the other antient Authors. The *Coeffure* of the men, which they call *Mendils*, and the *Turks*, *Turbans* or *Turbants*, is made of Cotton cloath, or some Silk stuff, that is very fine, and of several Colours, and being about eight or nine Ells in length, comes many times about their Heads, having the folds slightly sow'd, or drawn with a Gold thread. Those of their Priests, and particularly, of the *Hafis*, is white, as are also all their Garments. There are some put to their *Mendils* a tassel of Silk, which hangs down their backs, or over their shoulders, a quarter of an Ell or better in length. The *Seid*, that is, those who pretend to be of the Posterity of *Mahomet*, and assume the title of his Successors, have their *Mendils* of green silk. Some *Persians*, even of the greatest of the Kingdome, wear furr'd Caps, the inside and outside being of *Buchar* Sheep skin, so as that the Wool hangs down from the edges the length of a man's finger, and is as soft as Silk. These Caps are esteem'd in *Persia* as the Cattors are in *Europe*, and are sold at ten or twelve Crowns a piece. They wear these about their Heads, in Summer as well as Winter, though a man might think, that, by reason of the extreme sultriness of the weather, they should be very troublesome and incommodious. This custom of keeping their Heads alwayes very hot, brings them to that tenderness, that they dare not expose them to the Cold, no not in calm weather. To this purpose I conceive I may allege what *Herodotus* sayes; to wit, that, after a fight between the *Persians* and the *Egyptians*, where there fell a great number of men on both sides, care was taken that the Bodies of both parties were dispos'd into several places, and it was found, some time after, that the Skuls of the *Persians*, were so thin and delicate, that a man might thrust his finger into them, and that, on the contrary, those of the *Egyptians* were so hard, that they could not be broken with stones. The reason he gives for it, is, that he sayes, the *Egyptians*, who were accustomed from their infancy to go bare-headed in the Sun, were by that means grown hard; whereas the *Persians*, having their Heads alwayes wrapp'd about, were very tender in their Skuls. And indeed they never uncover them, neither at their Devotions, nor when they Salute other men, no, not when they speak to their King: but when they salute any, they do it by a low inclination of the Head, and putting of their hand to their Breast.

Lib. 3. *Kisilbaschs* Many of the *Persians* wear Red Caps, whence the *Turks* take occasion, to call them, by way of derision, *Kisilbaschs*, that is to say *Red-Heads*. Most Authors, who treat of the affairs of *Persia*,

*Persia*, write this word *Cuselbas*, *Queselbach*, or *Querselbach*; but the right name is *Kisilbasch*, as being compounded of the word *Kisil*, which hath two different significations, to wit, that of *Red*, and of *Gold*, and *Basch*, which signifies a *Head*. *Paulus Jovius*, in the 13. Book of his *Histories*, and, after him, *F. Bizarro*, in the 10. Book of his *History of Persia*, affirm; that *Tefellis*, Disciple of *Harduellis*, otherwise named *Eider*, who, as they say, liv'd about the beginning of the sixteenth age, was the first who brought the *Persians* to wear Red Caps, to distinguish them from the *Turks*, at their separation from them in the business of Religion. But they are both mistaken: for the truth is, that the *Persians*, when they broke Communion with the *Turks*, and made a particular Sect of the *Mahumetane* Religion, by the advice of *Schich-Sefi*, the Author of their new Opinions, immediately held, that the first Successors of *Mahomet*, *Omar*, *Osman*, and *Ababeker*, had usurp'd the Succession, to the prejudice of *Aaly's* right, and would have this last to be accounted the Prophet, and that his twelve Successors, whom we shall name hereafter, when we come to speak of the Religion of the *Persians*, were Canoniz'd, and put into the number of their *Imans*, or Saints; that they were look'd upon as having that quality, and that their Ecclesiasticks or Religious men wore Red Caps, made with twelve foldings, in form much like the Bottles used in *Languedoc* and *Provence*, which have great and flat Bellies, and very long and narrow Necks.

This difference in matter of Religion, occasion'd a great War between the two Nations; wherein the *Turks*, making advantage of their Arms, were very cruel towards the *Persians*, but especially the Ecclesiasticks, by reason of the aversion which they had for that new Religion. And in regard their Coiffure, or what they wore about their Heads, distinguish them from the others, they left off their Caps in several places of the Kingdom, and oblig'd the rest to follow their example. This persecution lasted, till *Schach-Ismael* I. finding himself forc'd by the *Turks* to retreat into the Province of *Kilan*, and having some reason to fear, that, within a short time, he might see the whole Kingdom in the hands of the profess'd enemies of his Religion, resolv'd to meet them, and to put all to the hazard of a Bartel. To this end, he sent Persons to represent to the Provinces and the chief Cities of the Kingdom, the danger, whereto the State, their Liberties, and Religion were expos'd, if they resolv'd not to make what opposition they could in that extremity against the *Turk*, sending them word, that he would grant those who should serve him in Person, in that Conjunction of affairs, a general and perpetual Exemption, for them and their Posterity. By this means, he got together an Army of three hundred thousand fighting men, wherewith he march'd directly to *Ardebil*, as desirous to begin his Exploits by a pious Enterprize, in recovering the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi* out of the hands of the *Turks*, who were forc'd out of that City. He was no sooner become Master of it, but he confirm'd all he had promis'd touching the Exemption, and to the end those might be known who were to enjoy the benefit of it, he ordered the making of these Red Caps, which were done with Twelve foldings, in remembrance of their Twelve *Imans*. But in regard the City was not able to find Scarlet enough, for so great a number of Caps, a Shooe-maker of *Ardebil* would needs make twelve of them, of *Maroquin*, or Goats Leather, of the same Colour, which *Schach-Ismael* presented to the chief Commanders of his Army. He ordered them to be Red, to make a certain representation of the Crown of *Aaly*, whom the *Persians* give the quality of King, as well as of Prophet, as they do these Caps the name of *Tatsch*, that is to say, a Crown. Whence it comes, that the *Persians* are so far from taking it ill, that they are called *Kisilbasks*, that they think it an honour done them, though, in effect, only those of the Posterity of *Aaly*, and these exempted Persons, wear red Caps: the former having them cover'd with Linnen Cloath, or some other kind of Stuff, and the others without any thing at all about them. The Posterity of these exempted Persons do still enjoy these Privileges, and out of them is chosen the Guard for the King's Person, as being look'd upon, as the *Swizzers* are in the Courts of diverse Princes of *Europe*.

Their ordinary Habit are a kind of sleeveless Coats of Cotton, or Silk, of several Colours; which come down to the calves of their Legs. Those of Cotton have flowers printed upon the Cloath, and are quilted, as Mattresses. They draw the sides of them together, under the left arm, and gird themselves with a Skarf about two Ells in length, called *Tzarkefi*, which comes several times about the Body. The richer sort have, upon this, another rich Skarf, which they call *Schal*, made of a very fine stuff, brought by the *Indians* into *Persia*: for their Silk being much fairer, and their Colours more lively and finer, than those of *Persia*, their Stuffs are accordingly more highly esteem'd.

When the *Mollas*, or Priests come before the *Mehere*, they take off that rich Skarf, to express their Humility. The other *Persians* wear in it a Ponyard, their Knives, their Handkerchiefs, and their Money; and those, whose profession it is to write for others, carry in them their Ink-horns, a Pen-knife, and a little Whet-stone, Letters, and all that the *Muscovites* are wont to thrust into their Boots or Buskins, which serve them instead of Pockets. Persons of quality, and the King himself, wear, over this Coat, a kind of Rocket, without sleeves, which reaches but to the Waste, border'd with Sables. When they go abroad, whether a-foot,



1637. or on horse-back, they cast over these, a silk Garment of diverse Colours, or wrought with Gold flowers, which they call *Jakub Cabni*, from a King, of that name, who was the first that ever wore them in *Persia*. Their Breeches are of Cotton, made after the fashion of Drawers; accordingly they wear them under their shirts, and they reach down to their feet. Their Shirts are of Cotton Cloath, and for the most streak'd with Red. Their Stockings are of Woollen Cloath, unhandfomely cut out, without any shape, or any proportion to the Legg. They wear them very wide, and commonly, they are made of green Cloath: a colour which is abhorr'd by the *Turks*; and this is indeed one of the chiefest differences of their Religion: upon this account, that *Mahomet* having worn a green Cap, the *Persians*, the more to dishonour that Colour, put their Feet into that which their great Propher wore about his Head. Their Shooes, which they call *Kefs*, are very picked at the toe, and very low quarter'd, so as that they put them off and on, with as much ease as we do our Slippers. Which convenience they the more stand in need of, in regard they put them off in the Antichamber, as well at their own Houses, as when they visit their Friends, either upon business or otherwise. To this purpose, I remember, that one day, going to the *Chan's* of *Scamachie*, about the time that he gives audience, for the Administration of Justice, we found, in the Antichamber, more shooes than the richest Shooe-maker thereabouts had in his shop, and standing by them, one I may call the *Shooe-keeper*, who with a forked stick gave those their shooes who went out.

*The Habit of the Women.* The women wear much finer stuffs than the men do, and have not any thing to tye about the waste: but their Drawers and Smocks are made after the same fashion as the Drawers and Shirts of men. Their Stockings are ordinarily of red or green Velvet, and they have little or no Ornament about the Head, but suffer their Hair to hang down negligently, in several tresses, down the back, and about the shoulders. All the Ornament they have about their Heads consists in two or three rows of Pearls, which they do not wear about their Necks, as Women do elsewhere, but about the Head, being set over the Fore-head, and falling down along the Cheeks to be fasten'd under the Chin, so as that their Faces seem'd to be set in Pearls. Which may give a little light to that expression in the *Canticles*, *Thy Cheeks are comely with rows of Jewels*. Young maids sometimes wear Rings, with precious Stones in them, in the right Nostril, as the *Tartarian* Women do. They also wear of them on their Fingers, and about their Arms, and they have bracelets of Silver-plates. But the *Mahometan* Law allows not the men to wear Gold Rings. Whence it came, that when our Ambassadors presented *Saru Taggi*, Chancellor of *Persia*, with a very fair Diamond Ring, he had the stone taken off the Coller, and put into Silver, and so presented it to the King. The Women do not uncover their faces as they go about the City, but have over them a white Veil, which reaches down below their knees, which they open a little to see their way. The *Persians* make an embleme of it, to signifie, that, many times, in a handsome Body, a wicked Soul may be log'd, and that, under a fair appearance of good Life, a great number of enormous Vices may find shelter; as that Veil does often times, under very rich Cloaths, hide a very Ugly Woman.

*The Persians are very neat.* The *Persians* are very neat, as well in their Rooms and Furniture of them, as in their Habit, wherein they would not have so much as a spot to be seen: insomuch that those who are of ability to do it, change them as soon as they are ever so little stain'd, and others, who are not much before hand with the World, have them wash'd once a week. VVhich is very much contrary to the humour of the *Muscovites*, among whom a man seldom sees any Cloaths but what are full of Nastiness, and shine with Grease. Nay it is certain, that the Stables and other such Houses of the *Persians*, are kept much neater, than the Stoves and Lodging Chambers of the *Muscovites*.

*Ingenious.* The *Persians* are of a ready VVit and sound Judgement. They apply themselves to Studies, and are very excellent in Poesy. Their Inventions are rich, and their Fancies subtil and strong. They are so far from being any way Vain-glorious, that they slight no man, but, on the contrary, they are complaisant, and of a Taking Conversation, very civil and obliging among themselves, but especially to Strangers. The Submissions, wherewith they express themselves in their Compliments, exceed any thing they do in that kind in *France*. A *Persian*, to invite his Friend to come into his House, and profer him his service, delivers himself in these terms: *Let me intreat you to make my House noble by your presence; I sacrifice my self to your Commands; I lye prostrate at your Feet; to serve you, I wish the apple of my Eye might help to pave your way, &c.* but for the most part, these are indeed but Compliments. This puts me in mind of a *Persian*, who coming to our Physician to acquaint him with a pain he had in his side, told him, that if he could Cure him, he would give him his Head; whereupon it being represented to him, that he should not be so much troubled at the want of Health, who was so prodigal of his Life, he made answer, that he meant otherwise, but that it was their manner of speaking.

*Lies.* The *Persians* have ever had the reputation of not being over-carefull to speak the truth; and even to this day, those, who would speak it at all times, must pass, in their account, for people a little troubled with simplicity. Whence it comes, that no man thinks himself injur'd, when they say to him, *Drugh Mikui*, or, in the *Turkish* Language, *Galan Diersen*, that is, thou

thou hast told an untruth, and the word *Galantfi*, which signifies a Lyar, is accounted a drollish expreffion, though *Herodotus* faves it was a Vice the antient *Persians* hated most of any, and that they made it their main business to bring up their young men, to Ride and Shoot well, and to speak the Truth.

They are very faithfull in observing the particular friendships they contract together, and they enter into Fraternities among themselves, which last as long as they live, nay they are so exact in the improving of these, that they prefer them before all Obligations of either Blood or Birth. In *Germany*, there is no reckoning paid, but those Drunken persons who clubb to it, make some fraternity; yet is not the friendship contracted thereby, ever the greater, in regard there cannot really be any between such as are incapable of it: but in *Persia*, it is far otherwise. It is their custom to make every year a great Feast, whereat all the men between whom there is any thing of Kinred, and some other friends, meet together, and if, at that assembly there be any persons, who, out of a reciprocal and particular affection, are desirous to enter into a more close and constant friendship, they address themselves to some one of the Company, whom they take by the border of his Garment, and having told him that they make choice of him for their *Babba*, Father or God-father, which the other cannot deny, they go all three together, to their *Calif*, (there being no Family but hath its own) kifs his Hand, and crave his Benediction. To receive which, they lye down upon their Bellies, first the God-father, and afterwards the Brethren, at the *Calif*'s feet, who gives each of them three strokes with a wand upon the Back, pronouncing at the first stroke, the word *Alla*, at the second, that of *Mahomet*, and at the third that of *Haly*. That done, they kifs the wand, and with this Ceremony the Fraternity is establish'd. And this kind of alliance is so sacred, according to their opinion of it, that they affirm, there is no other sin but may be pardoned; that Sacrilege and Idolatry are not irremissible, and that a man may hope for pardon, if he hath drunk Wine, nay in case he hath abus'd an *Abdalla*; but that the privileges of this kind of Fraternity cannot be Violated, and the offence not be Punish'd. And if it happen that two of these Brethren fall out, they are to be reconcil'd at the next assembly; which is done thus. He who hath been injur'd comes to his Door who did him the injury, bowing down his Head, and, with his Arms carelessly hanging down, continues in that posture, till the other hath intreated him thrice to come into his House, and thence they go together to the assembly, where the reconciliation is perfected. The *Persians* are of a good nature, and very sensible of any kindness done them; but where they hate, they are irreconcilable. They are Couragious, and good Soldiers, going cheerfully upon any design or engagement, though never so dangerous.

They are also modest, and very reserv'd; whence it comes, they never make water standing, but squat down as Women do, and when they have done, wash themselves. It is upon this accompt, that, at Weddings, and other great assemblies, they have in some by-places, several earthen pots full of water. If they be near a Brook, or River, they will be sure to make water in it, whence the *Turks*, by derision, call them *Cber Scahei*, that is, the King's or *Aly*'s Asses, in regard Asses never go through water but they piss; on the contrary, the *Persians* call the *Turks* *Seksumi*, because they piss, like Dogs, against a Wall. Certain it is that Persons of Quality in *Turky* observe, in this particular, the custom of the *Persians*, and both Nations take a great care, when they either make water, or ease Nature otherwise, not to turn their Faces or their Backs towards the South, in regard that when they say their Prayers they look that way.

But it is also true, that this modesty is only as to the external part, and that otherwise they are more Luxurious than any other Nation in the World. For, not thinking it enough to marry several Wives, and besides, them, to have a great number of Concubines, they have a kindness left for common Whores. Accordingly, there is no City, *Ardebil* only excepted, where there are not publick places appointed for that sport, under the protection of the Magistrate. During our aboad at *Scamachie*, one of our Souldiers having had his pleasure of a Woman, got away without paying her. She made her complaints to the *Chan*, who sent to the Ambassadors, to entreat them to take same course that she might be satisfy'd, sending them word, that it was but reasonable, that the *Kabbe*, who pay the King a great Tribute, should be also paid the Salary due to them. We have given an accompt elsewhere, what use the *Persians* make of them at their great Feasts; and this custom is so antient, that *Herodotus* speaks of it, when he faves, that the Ambassadors of the *Persians* told *Amintas*, King of *Macedon*, that it was their custom, when they entertain'd their Friends to give them also the Divertisement of Women. He brought into the place where they were men in womens Cloaths, who kill'd the Ambassadors.

The King himself maintains a great number of these Women at his own charge, and makes it his Divertisement at Meals to see them Dancing and shewing all manner of postures before him: so that those who are desirous to take up that Profession, must not only be handsome, but also pleasant and active. The King takes them along with him into the Country, nay into the Army, after the example of the antient Kings of *Persia*, and particularly that of *Darius*, who

1637. as *Q. Curtius* affirms, had, in his Retinue, three hundred and sixty Concubines, all very sumptuously Cloath'd.

Sodomy  
not pu-  
nish'd in  
Persia.

*Sodomy* is no extraordinary sin among them, nor is it punish'd as a Crime. *Saru Taggi*, who was Chancellor of *Persia* at the time of our Travels, was not punish'd for his *Sodomy*, but for the Violence he had done in the Commission of it. The King himself was given to this Vice, and so far from punishing it in another, that, as we were told, in the year 1634. *Schach-Sefi* being at the siege of *Erwan*, one of the Colonels, who was got drunk at the King's quarters, would, at his return to his own, in the heat of his Wine, having forc'd a young Lad that serv'd him, and had often before refus'd to hearken to his lewd addresses. The Boy, to prevent the violence, which he now saw was unavoidable, layes hold on the Ponyard, which his Master wore at his Girdle, and therewith run him into the Heart. The next day, the King missing the Colonel, ask'd what was become of him. Some body told him, he had been kill'd by one of his Domesticks, and gave him an account how it had been done. The Boy was brought before him, who very ingenuously confess'd what had pass'd between his Master and him, and avow'd, that the horror he conceiv'd at that sin had made him take that resolution. The King was so incens'd, that he Commanded him to be cast to the Dogs, to be torn to pieces by them. The two first that were brought would not meddle with him, but afterwards they got two *English* Mastives, which upon the first setting on tore him to pieces.

Polygamy  
allowed in  
Persia.

The *Mahumetan* Law allows them to be Luxurious, not only by permitting Polygamy, but also those other carnal enjoyments, wherein the chiefest part of their Beatitude consists, even that which the *Mussulmans* of that Religion expect after this Life; it being their perswasion, that, in their celestial Paradise, they shall not only have the same lawfull Wives they had in this World, but that they shall also have as many Concubines and Servants, as they please, and enjoy all other Women, as often as they have a mind to it.

They use all imaginable inventions to stir themselves up to lust, and to this end have they, at all meetings, whether at common Tipling Houses, or elsewhere, men and women Dancers, who provoke them to brutality by their obscene postures. They use also the seed and leaves of Hemp, to revive languishing Nature, though our Naturalists assign it a cold quality, which weakens and corrupts Nature. I cannot imagine how this can add any fewel to their lustfull inclinations, unless it be that the windy humour of it be also expulsive, or that in these hot Countries, it hath other qualities, than it hath in *Europe*. To prepare this Drugg, they gather the leaves before they come to Seed, dry them in the shade, beat them to powder, which they mix with Honey, and make pills thereof, about the bigness of a Pidgeons Egg. They take two or three of them at a time, to fortifie Nature. As to the Seed, they fry it, put a little Salt thereto, and eat it by way of Desert. *Imanculi*, who was sent Ambassador from the King of *Persia* to the Duke of *Holstein*, took of it at every meal, after he had married a young Woman at *Astrachan*, he himself being seventy years of age. Persons of good repute, in *Persia*, will not eat of it, for they say, that he who makes use of this remedy commits a greater sin, than he that had ravish'd his own Mother upon *Mahomet's* Sepulchre. They call those who use it, *Bengi kidi bengi*. But when all is done, the *Persians* think they have sufficiently expiated the sin of Fornication, when, immediately after they have had their pleasure of a Woman, they either bath themselves, or wash their Bodies all over with cold water.

The House-  
keeping of  
the Persi-  
ans.

The charges the *Persians* are at in House-keeping, as to the Kitchin and the Cellar, amounts to very little, unless it be in those Families where there are many Women, who inflame the Bill very much. The Cotton-Cloath, which makes most of their Cloathing, is very cheap there. Their Houses are but poorly furnish'd, and they think they have to spare, when the floor of their Lodging Room is cover'd with Tapistry; and all the provision they make for the whole year, is only Rice. Fleth is not dear, save only at those places, where the great number of Inhabitants makes all Provisions scarce, in regard they are for the most part brought out of remote Provinces. The Garden supplies them with a Desert, and the next Brook serves them for a Cellar. They are very neat about their Rooms, and they suffer not Dogs, which out of some other respects, they hold to be unclean Creatures, or any other Animals to come into them. And whereas they have this inconvenience at meals that they use no Trenchers, they use a sort of Pots which they call *Tustahn*, about the bigness of our Chamber-pots, setting one of them between every two Persons; and into these they spet, and cast the bones, and parings of Fruits. We have said elsewhere, that they have their *Tennrs*, or Stoves to keep them warm, and to spare Wood as much as may be, nay some makes a shift to roast and boyl their meat with them.

Their House-  
hold stuff.

In the Kitchin, they have Kettles and Pots of Brass, or of Copper tinn'd over, which are commonly fasten'd to the Hearth, as also earthen pots. In many Provinces they are pretty well stor'd with Wood; but there are others, where they have only Loppings, and many times they are forc'd to warm themselves with Cow or Camels-dung, dry'd in the Sun. Their Dishes are of Copper, but so handsomely made, and so well tinn'd over, that Silver Plate cannot look better. Some have Porcelane, and the Country people are glad of earthen ware. As to their

their meat, they do not care for much, as being satisfy'd with very little. Which is contrary <sup>1637.</sup> to what *Bizarrus* relates of them, to wit, that Butchers meat is dear in *Persia*, by reason of the Gluttony of the Inhabitants, which, as he affirms, is so great, that aged persons there make four meals a day, and consequently, with much more reason, the younger sort of people. Nor does this agree neither with the account the antients give of them, who generally affirm that the *Persians* were very temperate, and contented themselves with little Meat, but they lov'd Fruits. Accordingly, during the aboard we made in *Persia*, I observ'd that one of their chiefest Vertues was Temperance, and that the *Persians* seldome eat Flesh above once a day, and that if they make another meal besides, it consists, for the most part, of Butter, Cheefe, and Fruits, though I must confels there are some who make two set meals.

There is not any thing more ordinary in *Persia* than Rice soak'd in water. They call it *Plau*, <sup>Their ordi-</sup> and eat of it at all their Meals, and serve it up in all their Dishes, especially under boild Mutton. <sup>nary food</sup> They some times put thereto a little of the juyce of Pomegranates or Cherries, and Saffron, <sup>is Rice.</sup> infomuch that commonly you have Rice of several Colours in the same Dish. They serve it up also under Capons, and broild Fish. They also eat Sorrel, Spinage, and Cabbages, white and green, but they do not much care for the red. They do not want small Birds, and they have all sorts of Fowl in abundance, Turkeys only excepted, which are so scarce in this Country, that a *Georgian* Merchant, having brought thither some of them from *Venice*, in the time of *Schach-Abas*, he sold them at a *Tumain*, that is, near five pound *sterl.* a piece. Partridges and Feasants are common, and, at those places where they are to be had, they may be bought cheap enough.

Though Rice serves them instead of Bread, yet do they make some, of several sorts, of <sup>which</sup> Wheat also. The *Komatsch* are three fingers thick, and a foot and a half in length. The *La-* <sup>serves them</sup> *wasch* are round, and about the thickness of a man's finger. The *Peasekeffche*, are half an Ell, <sup>for Bread.</sup> and they are bak'd in their Houses, over the *Tenurs*, on which they are set, and with the five fingers of the hand, they make them as many Horns, whence they have their name. The *Sengek* are made upon the pebbles, wherewith some of their Ovens are covered, so that this kind of Bread or Cakes is uneven, and full of pits. The *Fauchas* is like Wafers, and as thinn as Parchment, but in length and breadth they are half an Ell or better. The *Persians* use them instead of Napkins, to wipe their fingers, wherewith they take up the Rice, and pull their Meat to pieces, for you shall seldome see them use any Knives. When they have put the *Fauchas* to this use, they tear them into bits, put a little Rice or a Morsel of flesh into one of them, and so swallow it down, or haply eat them without any thing with them. All their Spoons, even the King's, are of Wood, made Oval-wise, at the end of a very small handle, but a foot and a half in length.

Their ordinary Drink, especially that of the meanest sort of people, is water, into which they sometimes put a little *Duschab*, and some Vinegar, For though Wine be cheap enough there, <sup>Their</sup> especially in the Provinces of *Erak*, *Aderbeizan*, and *Schiruan*, where the measure, <sup>Drink,</sup> which they call *Lullein*, and which contains near an *English* pottle, costs but six pence. Yet are there many who make a difficulty to Drink thereof, because the use of it is forbidden by their Law, especially the *Hatzi*, who are such as have gone on Pilgrimage to *Meca*, to *Mahomet's* Sepulchre, and are to forbear it all their Lives after, out of a perswasion they are of, that all their merits would be effac'd, by so enormous a sin. But such as are lovers of Wine, and the common prostitutes, who have for the most part contracted a necessary habit of sinning, Drink of it without any scruple, out of a presumption, that that sin will be pardoned them with the rest, provided they do not make the Wine themselves. Whence it comes they make no great entertainment, but they drink very freely of it. After meal, there is warm water brought in for the washing of their hands.

*Opium*, which they call *Offiouhn*, and *Teriak*, is commonly used among the *Persians*. They <sup>They take</sup> make pills of it of the bigness of a Pea, and take two or three of them at a time. Those who are <sup>Opium.</sup> accustomed thereto will take about an Ounce at a time. There are some who take of it only once in two or three daies, which makes them sleepy, and a little disturbs their brains, so as that they are as if they were a little entred in Drink. There is abundance of it made in *Persia*, especially at *Ispahan*, and it is thus ordered. The Poppy being yet green, they cleave the Head of it, out of which there comes a white Liquor, which being expos'd to the Air grows black, and their Apothecaries and Druggists trade very much in it. All over the East they use this Drugg, the *Turks* and *Indians*, as well as the *Persians*, infomuch, that *Bellon* saies, in his Observations, that if a *Turk* hath but a peny, he will spend a farthing of it in *Opium*; that he saw above fifty Camels loaden with it, going from *Natolia* into *Turquey*, *Persia*, and the *Indies*, and that a *Janizary*, who had taken a whole Ounce of it one day, took the next day two, and was never the worse for it, save that it wrought the same effect in him as Wine does in such as take too much of it, and that he stagger'd a little. It hath also this quality common with Wine, that it does infuse Courage into those who have not much; whence it comes, that the *Turks* take of it before they go upon any design. The Women do not ordinarily take any; but those who are not able to bear with their untoward and imperious Husbands, and prefer Death before the <sup>Slavery</sup>

1637. Slavery they live in, do sometimes make use of *Opium*, whereof they take a good quantity, and, drinking cold water upon it, they, by a gentle and insensible Death, depart this World.

*They take Tobacco.* There is hardly any *Persian*, what condition or quality soever he be of, but takes *Tobacco*. This they do in any place whatsoever, even in their *Mosqueyes*. There grows abundance of it near *Bagdat*, and in *Kurdesthan*, but they have not the art to Cure it as it ought to be, thinking it enough to let it dry, as they do other leaves and Medicinal herbs. There are whole shops full of it at *Ispahan*, being put up in Baggs, where it is reduc'd in a manner to powder, and is at least as small as *Sena*. They highly esteem that which is brought them out of *Europe*, and call it *Inglis Tambaku*, because the *English* are they who bring most of it thither. They are so great lovers of it, that, when I gave a piece thereof to a Master, who taught me the *Arabian* Language at *Scamachie*, he took it for an extraordinary kindness. To take it with any delight, they make use of a Glas Flaggon, an Earthen Pitcher, a *Cocos*, or *Indian* Nut-shell, or a *Kaback*, which is the rind of a certain sort of Citralls, or Cucumbers, which they fill half full of water, or little more, and sometimes put a little perfum'd Waters into it. Into this water they put a little hollow Reed, having at the end of it a Bole wherein they put the Tobacco with a little Coal, and with another Pipe, about an Ell long, which they have in their Mouths, they draw, through the water, the smoke of the Tobacco, which leaving in the water all its foot and blackness, is incomparably more pleasant this way, than as we take it. Those who have not all these conveniences are glad to take it our way; but their Pipes, which have Boles or Heads of Earth or Stone, are of Wood, and much longer than ours.

*Cahwa, or Coffee.* They Drink, with their Tobacco, a certain black water, which they call *Cahwa*, made of a Fruit brought out of *Egypt*, and which is in colour like ordinary Wheat, and in tast like *Turkish* Wheat, and is of the bigness of a little Bean. They fry, or rather burn it in an Iron pan without any Liquor, beat it to powder, and boyling it with fair water, they make this Drink thereof, which hath as it were the tast of a burnt Crust, and is not pleasant to the Palate. It hath a Cooling quality, and the *Persians* think it allays the Natural heat. Whence it comes, that they often drink of it, inasmuch as they would avoid the charge of having many Children, nay they are so far from dissembling the fear they have thereof, that some of them have come to our Physician for remedies of that kind. But he being a merry dispos'd Person, made answer, that he would rather help them to get Children, than give them ought to prevent the getting of them. I say the *Persians* are periwaded this water is able absolutely to smother all Natural heat, and to take away the power of engendring; and to this purpose they tell a story of one of their Kings, named *Sulthan Mahomet Caswin*, who Reign'd in *Persia* before *Tamerlane's* time, that he was so accustom'd to the Drinking of *Cahwa*, that he had an inconceivable aversion for Women; and that the Queen standing one day at her Chamber Window, and perceiving they had got down a Horse upon the ground, in order to the Gelding of him, ask'd some that stood by, why they treated so handsome a Creature in that manner; whereupon answer being made her, that he was too Fiery and Metalsome, and that the business of those that were about him, was, with the taking away of the excess of Metal, which Stone-Horses are guilty of, to deprive him of all generative Vertue; the Queen reply'd, that that trouble might have been spar'd, since the *Cahwa* would have wrought the same effect; and that if they would keep the Stone-Horse with that Drink, he would, in a short time, be as cold as the King her Husband.

They affirm further, that the Son of that King, whom they also, after his Father, call *Mahomet*, being come to the Crown, Commanded that great Poet, *Hakim Fardausi*, to give him a piece of his Writing, and promis'd by way of reward to give him a Ducat for every Verse. The Poet in a short time made sixty thousand, which are at this day accounted the best that ever were made in *Persia*; but the King who expected not he should have made such haste, sent him to those who had the over-sight of his Revenue, who judging this to be too great a sum for a Poet, told him he must content himself with a less recompence. Accordingly they brought it so low, that *Fardausi's* made other Verses, wherein he reproach'd the King with his avarice, and told him, the present he had made him, might be rather thought to come from a Porter than a Prince. Whereto he added, that Shooe-makers and Bakers were wont to do so, and that he could not be periwaded that the King was of Royal Extraction, but must rather be descended from some Shooe-maker or Baker.

The King was so nettled at these reproaches, that he made his Complaints thereof to his Mother, who presently imagining, that the Poet had made some Discoveries of her, ingenuously acknowledg'd to her Son, that the King, her Husband, being become impotent through his excessive Drinking of *Cahwa*, she fancied a Baker belonging to the Court, and that this Baker was his Father; That she chose rather to take that courle, than leave the Kingdom destitute of Hers; That he was now to consider, that had it not been for that Baker, he had not been at all, and that he would do well to recompence the Poet, so as that the business might take no further wind, lest the people should deprive him of a Crown which belong'd not to him. The Son made his advantage of the advice and remonstrances of his Mother, and ordered the Poet should have what he had promised him.

We said before, that the *Persians* are great frequenters of the Taverns or Tipling-Houses, which they call *Tzai Chutai Chane*, in regard there they may have *The*, or *Cha*, which the *Usbeques Tartars* bring thither from *Chattai*. It is an Herb which hath long and narrow leaves, about an inch in length, and half an inch in breadth. In order to the keeping and transportation of it, they dry it, so as that it turns to a dark grey Colour, inclining to black, and so shrivell'd up, that it seems not to be what it really is: but as soon as it is put into warm water, it spreads and reassumes its former green Colour. The *Persians* boyl it, till the water hath got a bitterish taste, and a blackish colour, and add thereto Fennel, Anniseed, or Cloves, and Sugar. But the *Indians* only put it into seething water, and have for that purpose either Brais, or Earthen pots very handsomely made, which are put to no other use. They drink it so hot, that they are not able to hold their Dishes, which are of Porcelane or Silver, in their hands: whence it comes, that they have found out a way of making them of Wood or Canes, done over with a Plate of Copper or Silver Gilt, and sometimes of Gold, so as that the heat not being able to penetrate them, they may hold them in their hands, even though the water were boyling. The *Persians*, *Indians*, *Chineses* and *Japonneses* assign thereto such extraordinary qualities, that, imagining it alone able to keep a man in constant health, they are sure to treat such as come to visit them, with this Drink, at all hours. The quality it is, by experience, found to have, is, that it is astringent, and that it consumes superfluous Humours, which incommode the Brain, and provoke Drowlines. They who have Written of the affairs of the *Indies*, as *Maffens*, *Linschooten*, *Trigault*, and others, tell Miracles of it: but this herb is now so well known in most parts of *Europe*, where many persons of quality use it with good success, that it must needs be known, what are both its good and bad qualities: which Dr. *Tulp*, a Physician of *Amsterdam*, hath very strictly examined, in the last Chapter of the fourth Book, of his *Medicinal Observations*.

1637.  
The use of  
The, or  
Tea.

The *Persians* live either on the Fruits which their Gardens bring forth, or by the advantage they make by Tilling the ground. Some live by Traffick, others by their Trades; some to the Warrs, and there are those who get their livelihood by Writing. For since Printing is not yet used amongst them, and that they stand in need of many Copies of their *Aicoran*, they have them done by a sort of people, who do not only get a livelihood thereby, but grow very rich, inasmuch as a Copy of it well written: will yield eighteen or twenty Crowns. Whence it comes, that there is no man that hath Children, but he teaches them to write, and yet there are an infinite number of men in *Persia* who live only by writing.

It is a pleasant sight, as a man passes over the *Maidan*, or through the *Basar*, to see the Tradesmen of all Professions in their Shops, where they sell what they had made at their Houses; for it is very seldome seen, that a Tradesman works in his Shop, which for the most part is at some distance from the place where he lives, and confin'd to certain parts of the Marketplace, where every Trade hath its distinct quarter, only for the selling of Commodities. The most common Professions are Weavers, Dyers, and Painters, who paint Flowers upon the Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, and sometimes even upon *Brocadee*. The ordinary length of their pieces of stuffs is not above five or six Ells, it being as much as needs for a Garment according to their fashion. The fairest Stuffs, as well for Painting, as Workmanship, are made at *Jesch* and *Kaschan*, where they represent upon Silk and Cotton, the figures of Persons, and particularly Writing, and the Characters of their Language, so exactly done, that no Painter can do things with such Life and Art. Using only what they spend themselves in Cloaths, they Trade with the rest into other parts, with great profit, as they do also with unwrought Cotton and raw Silk, whereof there are great quantities brought into *Europe*, through the *Indies*. As for the Silk, it is worth in *Persia* not above 2s. 6d. or 2s. 8d. the pound. Their ordinary weight is the *Badman*, which is not the same in all places; in as much as, at *Tabris*, it weighs but six pound; in *Kilan*, where they make use of the *Schach badman*, it is twelve; and at *Seamachie* and *Karabath*, it is sixteen pounds. It is conceived that *Persia* produces every year, one with another, ten thousand *Somms*, or twenty thousand Balls of Silk, every Ball weighing two hundred and sixteen pounds. The Province of *Kilan* it self, in good years, yields eight thousand Balls; *Schirnan*, three thousand; *Chorasan*, as many; *Mesanderan*, two thousand; *Karabath*, two thousand. In which account we do not comprehend what *Georgia*, which is richer in Silk than any other Province, produces within it self. They say, that all *Persia* does not spend above a thousand Balls of Silk, and that the rest is sold into *Turkie*, the *Indies*, *Italy*, and to the *English* and *Dutch*, who Trade at *Ormus*, and who bring thither Tinn, Copper, *English* and *Dutch* Cloath, nay some Cloaths made at *Berry* (in *France*) and *Saux*, which the *Persians*, who are not good at the ordering of *VVoolen* stuffs, do so highly esteem, that ordinary Cloath is sold there at 20. or 24. Crowns the yard.

Where the  
best Stuffs  
are made,

Persia  
yields year<sup>y</sup>  
by 20000.  
Balls of  
Silk.

The *Armenian* Merchants, who are *Christians*, are the richest of any, by reason of the pains they take in making Voyages themselves, which is more than the other *Persians* do; though both have an absolute freedome to Traffick where they please themselves, as *Foreiners* have the liberty to come into *Persia*, and put off their Commodities there, paying custom; contrary to what is observ'd in *Muscovy*, where the Subjects cannot go out of the Kingdom,

1637.

Trading  
not ob-  
structed by  
the Wars.

without the *Czaar's* express permission. There is also this particular advantage in *Persia*, as well as *Turkey*, that the *VVars* do not obstruct their Commerce, the *Caravans* and other Merchants having the same freedom to go to and fro, in the time of war, as they have in Peace, inasmuch as both those Princes are equally concern'd to improve the advantages they make thereby. The commerce of the *Persians* would be incomparably greater than it is, if they could make their benefit of that which the Sea affords them, and if Navigation were as well settled there, as it is in *Europe*.

The Wars, which the King of *Persia* is oblig'd to carry on sometimes against the *Turks*, sometimes against the *Mogul* and the *Usbeques Tartars*, make him stand in need of a great number of Souldiers. Those who are entertain'd into his Service have a settled pay at all times, as we shall have occasion to speak more fully to anon.

Having spoken of the Shops, the Cellars and the Kitchins of the *Persians*, I must not forget their Chambers, and what belongs to them; nor yet their Marriages. A *Persian*, who thinks himself able to maintain several Wives, will seldom be content with one. Polygamy is an old evil, deeply rooted in them. *Strabo* is of opinion, that they took several Wives, because they would have many Children, and to get the reward which their Kings gave those who had many Males. They are still willing enough to take the Wives, but not upon the same Motives, since they use all the means they can to hinder their getting of Children. What they do now is purely upon the account of pleasure, that their enjoyments may be heightened by the variety. To this purpose, they have a Proverb, which says, that, to have a perpetual Spring, a man must often change Wives, and use them as Almanacks, which serve but for a year. The *Alcoran* permits the *Mahumetans* to marry as many Wives as they are able to maintain. Whence it comes that rich Merchants, who are oblig'd to Travel up and down the Country, marry Wives, and keep Houses in several places, that where ever they come they may be at home. Yet do I not advise any man to believe those, who say, there is a Law in *Media*, whereby men are enjoy'd to Marry at least seven Wives; nor yet what *Niger* says in his Geography, that the Children kill their Father and Mother, when they are come to seventy years of age. These are idle stories, which have no ground in the antient History, and whereto we found nothing consonant in our time.

The incon-  
venience  
of Poly-  
gamy.

It is not our design to dilate much upon the inconveniences of Polygamy; but certain it is, that, in *Persia*, there is but little friendship among the Wives. Some love there may be between them, but it is no doubt of that kind which comes near brutality. It is impossible also that a Family, where there are so many women, can be free from jealousy, which is inevitable among those, who would all be lov'd, and absolutely depend on him, who should, but cannot, love them all equally. The *Persians* themselves, to express the inconveniences of Polygamy, say in their Proverbs, that, as two Asses are more troublesome to be driven, than a whole *Caravan*; so a Judge finds not so much difficulty in deciding the differences of a Province, as a man distracted by two Wives, who cannot live together without some jarring. We were told several examples of the great mischiefs happening in Families through Polygamy, and among the rest one, concerning *Silfahar*, Chan of *Scamachie*. He was a Person of very great Authority in the Country, and well look'd upon at the Court, where he had Married the Sister of *Schach-Chodabende*, who was Father to *Schach-Abas*. This Woman conceiving a jealousy at the affection her Husband express'd towards another young Lady whom he had Married, and imagining her quality would take away all Comparison between her and her Rival, was so highly incens'd against him, that she resolv'd to be reveng'd, and to that purpose writ to the King her Nephew, to bid him beware of her Husband, as having some design upon his Person. *Schach-Abas*, who took the least suspicions for certain proofs, immediately Commanded *Kartschichai-Chan*, Chan of *Mesched*, who was then about him at *Ardebil*, to go and bring him *Silfahar's* Head. *Kartschichai* being come to the foot of the Mountain of *Elbours*, in the Province of *Schirvan*, sent one to *Silfahar*, to desire him to come to him. *Silfahar*, not fearing any mischief from the other, who was his intimate Friend, departed upon the first summons, and coming late at Night to the place appointed him by the other, he set up his Tent near that of *Kartschichai*. The next day *Kartschichai* getting up betimes in the Morning, went to *Silfahar*, who was in Bed, and having awak'd and kindly saluted him, he desir'd him to rise and take a Walk with him, for he had some affairs of great consequence to communicate to him. But while *Silfahar* was putting on his Cloaths, *Kartschichai*, perceiving his foot was in a quiet posture, in regard he was going to his Prayers, made a sign to his Servants, who knew what they had to do, to dispatch him, and having caus'd his Head to be cut off, he brought it to Court.

It happened also, not long before our Travels into *Persia*, that one who kept a Tipling-house at *Ardebil*, whose name was *Schiritzi Aly*, being Drinking very late with one of his Friends, upon that Bridge of the City, which is called *Heider Aly*, saw coming towards him a loaden Mule, which seem'd to look after a Master, while the true owner, who was a Merchant, was gone to ease himself on the River side. *Schiritzi* had the good nature and charity to drive the

Mule

Mule to his own House, to unload it, and to turn him out again to look for his Master, who coming immediately into the City, met with his Mule in the streets, but discharg'd of his burthen. He went and made his complaints to the Governour, who bid him name the person that had robb'd him, and he would do him Justice. But the Merchant, not satisfy'd with this answer, made his Case known to the King, who presently recommended him to *Aliculi-Chan*, with express order to see the Merchants loss made good to him, to the full value he should set upon his Commodities, inasmuch as the *Chan* had not been careful to secure the High-way, and neglected to make an exact enquiry after the Thief; which order the *Chan* was forc'd to obey. *Schiritzi*, on the other side, finding his Fortune much better'd by this unexpected Wind-fall, and not thinking one Wife enough, Marries a second, which he took up out of the Brothel-house, but had no Children by her. By the former, he had a Son, who, one day coming from School, and finding in the Chamber a Melon, whereof some part had been cut, presum'd to take a piece of it, and by that means gave the young Woman occasion to strike him. The Child's Mother came into the Room, and reveng'd him, not only by fighting with her Rival, but also by the complaints she made thereof to her Husband, representing to him the insolence of that young Woman, with so much bitterness, that being no longer able to endure her Language, he gave her a good Cudgelling. The Woman exasperated at that, went to the *Chan*, and acquainted him with the Adventure of the Mule. The *Chan* immediately sent for the Taverner, and having found him guilty of the Fact, order'd him to be hang'd. And whereas the two Women had discover'd the Robbery, out of pure animosity and private resentments, rather than out of any affection they had for the Governour, or regard of publick Justice, he caus'd them to be publickly ravish'd, and banish'd them out of the City. The Taverners Son was sold, and all his Fathers Estate confiscated to the use of the Governour, who lost nothing by the bargain.

The *Persians* are not so scrupulous in their Contracts of Marriage, but that many times it happens a Man Marries his Brother's Widow; yet could I not learn, that Incests were so common there as some Authors would have it believ'd, nor that the Son meddles with his Mother, or the Brother with his Sister. Nay it cannot be found, that, before the Reign of *Cambyzes*, who fell in love with his own Sister, there was any talk of these incests in *Persia*, no more than there was in *Agypt*, before *Ptolomey's* time. Their Marriages are celebrated as followeth.

When a young Man hath a mind to Marry, and hath heard of some person he can fancy, he employs others to make enquiry into the qualities and disposition of the young Maid, inasmuch as neither he nor any of his Relations are permitted to see her, and if upon the account he receives of her by them, he finds his affections inclin'd to her, he makes a demand of her by two of his Friends, who had been his God-fathers at his Circumcision, or, for want of those, by two others of his Kinred. This first Embassy ordinarily finds no very kind reception; lest they should imagine the Father to be over-forward to be rid of his Daughter. But if on the other side, the young mans Friends find that his addresses are not taken amiss, they continue them, and proceed to Articles, and agree upon the Dower, which, in these Countries, the Friends of the Bridegroom, and not those of the Bride are to give. The Dower is to be either in Money, which the young man sends to his Mistresses, some few dayes before the Marriage, as a recompence to the Father and Mother for their Care in the Education of their Daughter; or he promises her by the contract of Marriage, a certain sum of Money, or such a quantity of Silk, or Stuffs, to be paid in Case of Divorce. These contracts are pass'd in the presence of the *Kafi*, or the *Molla* who signs them. That done, they name on both sides certain persons to be as it were Agents, who in the name of the betroathed parties, go to the *Kafi*, or Ecclesiastical Judge, if it be in the City, or, if in a Village, to the *Molla*, who is empower'd by the *Kafi* to that purpose, and who, being satisfy'd that all is done with the consents of the Kinred on both sides, as also of the parties contracted, Marries them by the said Agents, in the name of *God*, of *Mahomet*, and of *Aly*, delivering them a Certificate of the Marriage. This Ceremony is for the most part, performed in private, the *Kafi* or *Molla* taking along with him the two Agents into a private room, or haply into the fields, to some place where no people come, out of a fear that some trick might be put upon the new Married couple, or some Witch-craft used upon the Bridegroom. Whence it comes, that, when the Marriage is celebrated in publick, before the *Kafi*, as it often happens, (the *Persians*, it seems, having the superstition to do actions of this consequence according to their Observance of certain Constellations, which they think fortunate or unfortunate to them) that the Judge may not be frustrated in the execution of his Duty, they oblige all that are present, to stretch out their hands, that they may not be able to do any thing of Witchcraft under their Garments. The *Persian*, whom we brought along with us to *Holsem*, told us, that when he was Married, one of his Wife's Kinred cut a little piece of blew Galoom-lace off his Garment, wherewith he made his enchantments, which made him impotent for above two years and a half, till such time as having heard of a Sorcerer that liv'd at *Serab*, who had the secret to dissolve those Charms, he went to him about it. This pretended



1637. Sorcerer, or Magician, who was lame in both hands and feet, seeing him coming towards him, told him he knew what was the occasion of his discontent, and that he should be eas'd of it, as soon as he had taken a Nail out of a hole of a certain Wall, which he told him of, which when he had done, he could perform the duty of a Married man as well as any other.

*Strabo* affirms, that, heretofore, the *Persians* observed the Vernal Equinox as the fittest time for their Marriages; but now they are absolutely indifferent as to the Season, and a man may be Married on any day, save only in the Moneth of *Ramesan*, which is their Lent, and during the ten dayes of the *Aschur*, when the Ceremonies performed in remembrance of the interment of *Hoffein* employ their Devotions; inasmuch as during that time, they allow not of any Divertisement at all.

The Wedding day being appointed, the young man sends, the day before, to his intended Wife, Pendants, Bracelets and other Ornaments, suitably to their qualities, as also some Dishes of Meat, to entertain the Relations and Friends, who are to bring the young Woman to him: but neither of them both are present at the Dinner. In the Evening, towards Night, the Bride is conducted, on Horse-back, or upon a Mule or Camel, cover'd with a Veil of Crimson Taffata, which falls down below her Knees, accompany'd by her Kinred, and Musick, to the Bridegroom's House. As soon as they are come to the House, they carry the Bride with her Maids into one Chamber, and the Bridegroom with his Friends into another, and Supper is brought up. Which ended, she is led to the Chamber where she is to lye, where the Bridegroom comes to her, and then is it that he hath the first sight of her. The Bridegroom, who finds his Bride broken up to his hands, may lawfully cut off her Nose and Ears, and turn her away; but Persons of quality, for the most part, think it affront enough to the Bride who is no Maid, to send her and her friends immediately packing away. But if he really finds her a Maid, he sends the tokens of it, by an antient Woman, to her Friends, and then they continue their entertainments for three dayes together. After the first engagement, the Bridegroom gets up from his Wife, and goes to his Friends, among whom he spends some hours in Merriment. Persons of any Learning who come to these Entertainments, instead of Drinking, divert themselves with their Books, which, to that end, they bring along with them, and spend the time in discourses of Morality, or speculative Philosophy, which they do also at those other assemblies which they many times appoint for that purpose. Their Poets are never wanting at these Feasts, and contribute very much to the Divertisements thereof, especially the next day after the Wedding, and the day after. Among other things, there is brought in, a great wooden Dish full of Fruit, in the midst whereof there is a Tree, having on every branch Fruit and dri'd Conserves, and if any one of the Company can take ought thence, so as that the Bridegroom perceives him not, his slight is recompens'd with a Present, which the Bridegroom is oblig'd to make him: but if he be surpriz'd therein, he must make good what he should have taken, a hundred fold; They have also this custom, that if any one of the Company is not there the next day precisely at the hour appointed for Dinner, he is laid upon a Ladder set against the Wall, with his Head downwards, and Whipp'd on the soles of his Feet with a Handkercher roll'd about, till he redeems himself.

They have also Dancing; but the Men Dance by themselves, in one room, and the Women by themselves in another room, into which the Musick comes not, but stand at the Door.

The next day after the Wedding, the Bridegroom washes himself, in the Winter time, in Baths, which are very ordinary in those parts, and in the Summer, in the River, or next Brook; but the Bride baths her self in the House. In the Evening they set before every one of the Persons invited, upon a Handkercher of Flower'd Cotton-Cloath, two spoonfulls of *Chinne*, which is the Drugg, wherewith they Colour their Nails and Hands. That done, the Guests make their Presents. If they have taken a little more Wine than they can well bear, as it often happens, they take up their Lodging at the House where they Supp'd; in regard the Watch which is kept very strictly there in the Night, suffer not any to go in the Streets without a Lantern. Those who find themselves well enough to go, give the Guard somewhat to Drink, and are brought home to their Houses.

The Watch  
in the  
Night.

I shall here take occasion to say something of the excellent order observ'd in all Cities of *Persia*, for the Guard. At *Ardebil* there are forty men, who incessantly walk about the Streets, to prevent Mischiefs and Robberies, with such Vigilance and Exactness, that they are oblig'd to Indemnify those that are Robb'd. Whence it came, that, at *Isfahan*, we came many times after Midnight, from the Monastery of the *Augustines*, which was above half a League from our quarters, yet never met with any mischief by the way: nay if at any time, as it might well happen in that great City, we chanc'd to lose our way, the Guard would bring us with Torches home to our very Doors. It is reported of *Schach-Abas*, that, desirous, one day, to make rryal of the Vigilance of those people, suffer'd himself to be surpriz'd by them, and had been carried to Prison, had he not been known by one of the Company, who discovering him to the rest, they all cast themselves at his Feet, to beg his pardon. But he express'd himself well satisfi'd

tis'd with their care, and told them they had done but their duty; that he was King in the day time, but that the keeping of the Publick peace in the night depended on them. 1637.

If it happen, that, after the Marriage, the Bride be oblig'd to live at her Husband's Father's House, it is not lawfull for her to appear before him with her Face uncover'd, much more to speak to him, till such time as the Father-in-Law hath hir'd her to do it, and given her a new Garment, or a piece of Stuff to make one, to oblige her thereto. But after all this, she must not uncover her Face in his presence, nor yet her Mouth when she eats: for she hath a piece of Cloath, which they call *Jaschmann*, ty'd to her ears, so as that it hangs over her Mouth, to hinder her from being seen eating.

The *Persians* keep their Wives more in restraint than the *Italians* do, and suffer them not to go to Church, or to any great Feast, unless their Husbands go along with them. If a Woman permit her Face to be seen, all the Apologies she can make for her self shall not clear her from the suspicion conceiv'd of her Dishonesty, even though she granted that favour to one of her Husband's nearest Relations. This reserv'dness they also observe in their Houses, where they are kept up as close Prisoners. When any business obliges them to go abroad, if it be a foot, they cover themselves with a white Veil, like a winding-sheet, which reaches down to half the Legg, and if it be on Horse-back, they are dispos'd into a kind of Chests, or at least muffle up their Faces, so as that it is impossible to see them.

The Ceremonies we mention'd before are only for ordinary Marriages; but besides these, <sup>Marriage for a certain time</sup> there are two other kinds of Matrimony among the *Persians*, which are celebrated quite after another manner. For those who are oblig'd to sojourn at other places besides those where their ordinary Habitations are, yet are unwilling to take up their quarters in publick places, take Wives for a certain time, allowing them a certain Salary, either for a Moneth, or such term as they agree upon. They call this kind of Marriage *Mittebe*, and to dissolve it, there is no need of Bills of Divorce, but the time of the contract being expir'd, it is dissolv'd of it self, unless both parties are mutually content to prolong it. The third kind of Marrying is, when a man makes use of a Slave, that he hath bought, and these Slaves are for the most part *Christian* Maids, of *Georgia*, whom the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan* steal, to be afterwards sold in *Persia*. The Children which they bear, as also those Born in the Marriage called *Mittebe*, share in the Father's Estate as well as the others, who have no other advantage of them therein, than what was granted the Mother by her contract of Marriage: but they are all accounted lawfully begotten, inasmuch as, after the example of the antient *Egyptians*, they look upon the Father as the principle of Generation, and say, the Mother does only foment and feed the Child when it is once conceiv'd; and upon the same account it is, that they affirm, that the Trees which bare fruit are the Males, and that those which do not are the Females.

When the Women are in Labour, and that they find some difficulty in the delivery, <sup>The superstitious</sup> the Kinred and Nighbours run to the Schools, and make a present to the *Molla*, to oblige him to give his Scholars leave to play, or at least to pardon some one of them that hath deserv'd to be severely punish'd; imagining that by the liberty they procure for those Scholars, the Woman in Labour is eas'd, and will be the sooner deliver'd of her burthen. It is also out of the same persuasion, that, in such Emergencies, they let go their Birds, and many times purposely buy some, that they may give them their liberty upon such an occasion. They do the like for persons in the agony of Death, who seem unwilling to dye. The *Muscovites* let go Birds when they go to Confession; believing, that as they permit the Birds to fly away, so will God remove their sins far from them.

The men take an absolute liberty to see the Women when they please, but they allow not <sup>They are jealous,</sup> their Wives the freedom of seeing so much as one man, so far are they from permitting them to see any in private, so excessive is their jealousy. The offences Women commit contrary to their faith plighted to their Husbands are unpardonable, nor indeed can they be guilty of any which they will punish with greater severity, nay indeed cruelty. We were told an example of it, that had happened in the Province of *Lenkeran*, in the time of *Schach-Abas*, who coming to understand, that one of his Menial servants, who was called *Jacupzanbeg*, *Kurtzi Tirkenan*, that is to say, he whose Office it was to carry the King's Bows and Arrows, had somewhat a light Wife, sent him notice of it, with this message, that if he expected to continue at Court, and to keep in his employment, it was expected he should cleanse his House. This message, and the affliction he conceiv'd at the baseness of his Wife, and his reflection that it was known all about the Court, as also that of the hazard he was in to lose his place, put him into such a fury, <sup>Adultery cruelly punish'd.</sup> that, going immediately to his House, he cut in pieces, not only his Wife, but also her two Sons, four Daughters, and five Chamber-maids, and so cleans'd his House by the blood of twelve persons, most of them innocent, that he might not be turn'd out of his employment. The Law of the Country allows them to kill the Adulterer with the Woman, if they be taken in the fact. These accidents are not very extraordinary among them, and the Judge recompences with a new Garment the person who does an Execution of this Nature; which I conceive is instead of the Salary which he is oblig'd to pay the common Executioner.

1637.

Divorce  
lawful.

Divorce is lawfull among them, and the dissolution of the Marriage is made before the Judge; upon hearing of what both parties have to allege for themselves: for it is Lawful, not only for the Men, but also for the Women to give Bills of Divorce, shewing good causes, not only for Adultery, but also in several other Cases. Impotence, or Frigidity, rather declares the Marriage null, than dissolves it; and Adultery is punish'd among them, as we mentioned before. We were told a story of a Woman, who, desirous to part from her Husband, charg'd him with impotence. The Husband desir'd the Judge to command the Woman to scratch his Back; whereto she reply'd, *I have scratch'd thee so often, that I am weary of it, and thou wouldst never scratch me where it most itch'd.* Another complain'd of her Husband, that he would have done his work in the wrong place, whereupon the Judge ordered her to be separated from him, and the Husband to be Gelt. They Marry again after Divorce, as well Men as Women, with this difference nevertheless, that the Women are oblig'd to continue in Widow-hood three moneths and ten days, not only that it may be known, whether they are with Child, but also that they may have time to work their accommodation with their Husbands, if they have any such desire. The *Turks* following the Doctrine of *Hanife*, have, in this particular, a very brutish custom, in regard that, in *Turkey*, there may be a reconciliation made after the Divorce; but when a man hath put away his Wife three several times, or, at her putting away, says only the word *Vizkatala*, that is to say, I renounce thee thrice, he cannot take her again, unless he permit the *Molla* to name some person, who is to lye with her before hand in her Husbands presence, so as that he may be assur'd he hath done his work with her. I should not set down a thing so extravagant, had I not inform'd my self of the truth thereof from Persons of quality, either *Turks* born, or such as have liv'd several years at *Constantinople*, who have all assur'd me, that, of sixty two Sects, whereof the *Turkish* Religion consists, many have this Custom, nay what is more, that they give Money to those who do them that good office. There are some indeed who think it sufficient to put a-Bed with their Wives a young Lad, that is not able to perform the work of Matrimony, which they do only for form sake, thereby to reconfirm the Marriage.

A pleasant  
story.

To this purpose, there is a Story, that during the time there was no other Religion allow'd in *Sulthania*, but the *Turkish*, though there was a great number of persons who profess'd the *Persian* Religion; the *Sulthan*, being one day incens'd against his Wife, said to her the word *Vizkatala*, so that being oblig'd by the Law to give her a Bill of Divorce, he immediately repented of it, and not willing that another should make use of her, in order to his having of her again, he ask'd his Ecclesiasticks whether there were not any *Iman*, who could dispence with the severity of that Law. Whereto the *Mufsi*, and the other *Turkish* Priests having return'd their answer, that that Law was indispenfable, he would needs hear what a certain *Molla*, named *Hassan Kaschi* could say in the business. This man was a *Persian* Born, and had the reputation of a Jeaster, and one that made sport with things most serious, insomuch that there had been no great notice taken of his affirming, that he knew an *Iman*, who would certainly dispence with the *Sulthan*, had it not been for the passionate desire this latter had to take his Wife again, wherein he was so earnest, that he hearkned to any advice was given him to that purpose. *Hassan* came to see him; but instead of leaving his shoes behind him in the Antichamber, according to the custom of the *Persians*, he brought them in under his arm. The *Sulthan* perceiving him coming in that posture, ask'd him the reason of it, and whether he were afraid his shoes might be stollen. *Hassan* made answer, that he was not afraid of any such thing, but only that he was unwilling any other should put on his shoes, expressing thereby, that the *Sulthan* should not permit another to lye with his Wife. Whereto he added, that in the time of *Mahomet*, some body had done the *Hanife* the affront to take away his shoes. The *Turkish* Priests, who were present at this discourse, laugh'd at him, and said, that if he had no better reasons to allege, to satisfie the *Sulthan*, that he might take his Wife again, he might go his wayes, in as much as *Hanife* had not liv'd in the time of *Mahomet*, but long after. *Hassan Kaschi*, making his advantage of this answer, reply'd; If it be so, said he, that *Hanife* liv'd not in the time of *Mahomet*, nor you neither, and that in the whole *Alcoran* there is not a word to be found of this infamous Law, how can you tell whether *Mahomet* had any such intention? And how can you impose this burthen upon the people? He thereupon cited the exposition of *Saduk*, *Hanife's* Master, upon the *Alcoran*, and made it appear, that a Husband hath the power, not only to give his Wife ill words, and to threaten her, but also to beat her, yet it shall not be in her power to forsake him, for his so doing. This reason, which suited with the *Sultan's* design, pleas'd him so well, that he not only took his Wife again, but he also profess'd the *Persian* Religion, and either put to Death or Banish'd all the *Turkish* Priests.

Another  
story.

They relate another pleasant Story to the same purpose; to wit, that *Solyman*, Emperour of the *Turks*, being one day angry with his Wife, did, in the heat of his passion, pronounce the *Vizala* against her. He soon repented him of it, in regard his Wife, being one of the handsomest Women in the World, it went to his very soul to part with her; and it being not in his power to take her again, till such time as she had pass'd through another man's hands, he

be-

bethought him, the only way were to have her Bedded by a *Dervis*, of the Sect of those, whom they call *Dervis Rastkeli*, who were in so great repute for their sanctity and austerity of Life, that he had not the least fear he would meddle with her. It is to be observ'd by the way, that he, who thus lies with the *VVife*, is before solemnly Married to her, and when he hath done his work, is Divorc'd from her, otherwise it were adultery. *Soliman* then, having concluded the Marriage between his *VVife* and the *Dervis*, ordered them to go to Bed together: but they gave one the other such mutual satisfaction, and ere they came out of the Bed, were so well agreed, that the next day, they declar'd, that they had an affection one for the other, and that they would not be separated; so that, it being not in the power of the Law to force them to a Divorce, *Solyman* was forc'd to let him enjoy his *VVife*, who went along with her Husband into *Persia*, where he settled himself very well, by the means of his *VVife*, who had great *VV*ealth.

It must needs be, that, of so many *VV*omen, there are Born a great number of Children. *The Education* Accordingly there are some Fathers have 25. or 30. But the modern Education of them differs much from that of the antients; in as much as now they are not brought up by *VV*omen, and the Fathers put them not out till they come to such an age, as they did antiently, when they admitted them not to their presence till they were four years of age, according to *Strabo*, or five, according to *Herodotus*, or seven, according to *Valerius Maximus*. Nor do they now, as heretofore, exercise them in Shooting and Riding; but they are put, very young, either to *VV*ork, or to School, to learn to *VV*rite and Read; there being very few *Persians* who cannot do both. *tion of their children.*

Their *Metzid*, or *Mosqueies*, where they say their Prayers, serve them also for Schools. No City but hath as many *Metzids* as Streets, every Street being oblig'd to maintain a *Metzid*, with the *Molla* belonging to it, who is as it were the Principal of the College, and the *Calife*, who is the Regent. The *Molla* sits in the middle of the form or Glafs, and the Scholars all about him, all along the *VV*alls. As soon as they begin to know the Characters, they put them to read certian Chapters taken out of the *Alcoran*, and afterwards the whole *Alcoran*. Then they put them into the *Kullsthan*, or the Rose-Garden of *Schich Saadi*, and his *Bustan*, or Orchard, and at last into *Hafis*, who set out the *Bustan* in Rime. These last Authors, who were both of *Schiras*, which is the antient *Persepolis*, where the Language is more pure than in any other place of *Persia*, are highly esteem'd, as well for the Excellency of their Style, as the Prægnancy of their Inventions. The Children read very loud; and all at the same time, the same Text, moving themselves all with the same agitation from one side to the other, much after the manner that the *VV*ind shakes Reeds. They all write upon their knees where ever they are, or what age soever they be of, in regard they have not the use of either Stooles or Tables. They make their Paper of old rags, as we do, which for the most part are of Cotton and Silk, and that it may not be hairy or uneven, they make it smooth with a Polishing stone, or sometimes with an Oyster or Muscle shell. They make their Ink of the rinds of Pomegranates, or of Galls and Vitriol, and to make it thick, and more fit for writing, their Characters requiring a full Body, they burn Rice or Barley, beat it to powder, and make a hard paste of it, which they dissolve with Gum-water, when they go to write. The best comes from the *Indies*, which though it be not all equally good and fine, is yet very fit for their Pens, which are not made of Goose-quills, as ours in *Europe* are, in regard they would be too hard for their Paper, which, being of Silk or Cotton, is very tender, but they make them of Canes, or Reeds, and a little bigger than our Pens. They are of a dark Colour without, and they are brought for the most part from *Schiras*, or from the Gulf of *Arabia*, where there grows abundance of them. *Their Authors for reading.* *Their Writing.* *Their Ink.* *And Pens.*

The *Persians* have their particular Language, which hath much of the *Arabian*, but nothing at all of the *Turkish*. There are in it also many foreign words, as *Germane* and *Latine*, insomuch that it might be thought these Languages have the same Original, if it were not found, that it happen also in almost all the rest, yet not so as that it may be thence inferr'd that all these Nations come from the same source. To signify, Father, Mother, a Tooth, a Pen, a Rat, a Yoak. they have the same words with the *Latine*; the *ne* and *tu* are *Latin* and *Persian* words; and *du*, *no*, *de*, signify two, nine, and ten: yet is it not to be concluded thence, that the *Persians* are originally *Romans*. True it is, that the *Persians* come from the *Scythians*, as do also the  *Germans*; yet would I not affirm, that the antient *Goths* and modern *Tartars* are the same people. It must therefore be granted, that the modern Language of the *Persians* differs much from the antient, if what *Herodotus* says be true, that all their words ended in *S*, though it may be withall confess'd, that they have all a full termination, inasmuch as they have in a manner all the accent upon the last Syllable. It is easie enough to be learnt, as having but few irregular Verbs, and if it be true, that it is the same Language which was spoken antiently, the examples of *Themistocles* and *Alcibiades* make it appear, that it may be attain'd in a short time. All that is hard in it is the Guttrual pronunciation thereof. *The Persians learn the Turkish Language.*

Most of the *Persians*, with their own Language, learn also the *Turkish*, especially in those Provinces which have been long under the Jurisdiction of the *Grand Seigneur*, as *Schirvan*, *A-dirbeizan*.

1637. *dirbeitzan, Erak, Bagdat, and Eruan*, where Children are taught the *Turkish* Language, and by this means, it is so common at Court, that a man seldom hears any one speak the *Persian*; as in the *Grand Seignor's* Court, they ordinarily speak the *Sclavonian*, and in the *Mogul's*, the *Persian*. But in the Province of *Fars*, which is the antient *Persia*, and at *Schiras*, they speak only the *Persian* Language. They understand nothing of the *Hebrew, Greek, or Latin*; but instead of these Languages, wherein the *Europeans* study the Sciences, they have the *Arabian*, which is to them as the *Latin* is to us; in regard the *Alcoran*, and all its Interpreters make use of it, as do also all those who write any Books of Philosophy and Physick. So that it is not to be much admir'd, that it is so common, that indeed they cannot express their own Language, but in *Arabian* Characters.

Their Characters.

Their Universities.

'Tis true, the Sciences are not improv'd to that perfection by them as they are by the *Europeans*, yet can it not be said but that the *Persians* are much addicted to Study, and they call their Learned men *Filosufs*. To this end they have their Colleges, or Universities, which they call *Medressa*, and the Professors who teach in them, *Mederis*. Their most eminent Colleges are those of *Ispahan, Schiras, Ardebil, Mesched, Tabris, Caswin, Kom, Jeshct, and Scannachie*, which are all under the superintendency of the *Sedder*, or chief of their Religion, who is oblig'd to take care for their allowances and maintenance. This is done out of the Revenue of those Provinces which pay no Taxes to the King, as *Kochtzeb, near Eruan, Vtuatkozuk, near Karabath, Tabakmelik, between Georgia and Karabath, Agdash, and Kermeru*.

They have a particular inclination for Arithmetick, Geometry, Eloquence, Poetry, Natural and Moral Philosophy, Astronomy, Astrology, Law, and Medicine, in regard they make some advantage of the Profession of these Sciences. They have all *Aristotles* Philosophy in the *Arabian* Language, and call it *Dunja piala*, that is to say, the *Goblet of the World*; with this remark upon it, that as a man Drinking out of a great Bowl moderately, finds himself the better for it, and taking so much of it that he is Drunk therewith, he both injures his Body and disturbs the Mind; so is a man to make a temperate use of the Philosophy of *Aristotle*, and not deboyting himself, observe a Mediocrity in the Study thereof. Children are taught Arithmetick in the Schools with their Writing and Reading. In their accompts, they commonly make use of the *Indian* figures; but the more Learned use the *Arabian* Characters.

They joyn Eloquence and Poesy together, and comprehend these two Sciences under a very few precepts: which bring a man in a short time to the practick part thereof. And indeed most of their Eloquent pieces, which they embellish with abundance of Histories, and Moral Sentences, are in Verse.

Their best Authors.

For the excellency of their Language, Pregnancy of conceit, and Elegance of expressions, they read the *Kulusthan* of *Schich Saadi*, whom they prefer before all their other Authors. It is a very Eloquent piece, though in Verse, full of figures and enrich'd with History, and Maxims of Policy and Morality. Accordingly, there is not any one almost, but hath this Book; nay some have perus'd and studied it so much, that they have it by Heart, and apply the Passages, Sentences, and Comparisons thereof, in their ordinary Discourie, so pertinently, that it is no small pleasure to hear them talk. They are also great Lovers of History, and delight much in reading the Lives and Deaths of their Prophet *Aly* and his Son *Hossein*, who was kill'd in the *VVar* against *Jesed*; which pieces are written in a style truly Historical, and of a noble height. They have also several other Histories, and Chronicles, Ecclesiastical and Prophane, of the Lives and *VVars* of their Kings; and some, of the affairs of other foreign Nations: the best whereof are those of *Mirchond, Enweri, Zami, Walchi, Nussegri*, and others. The best of all their Historians is *Mirchond*, who hath written the History of *Persia*, in excellent good Language, in several great Volumes, and it is a piece so highly esteem'd, that it is worth in the Country above two hundred Crowns; and therefore I cannot think it can be had perfect in *Europe*, though I know, that *Golini*, Professor of the Oriental Languages and the Mathematicks in the University of *Leyden*, hath most of it, with several other excellent Books of that Nature. But there is not any man, I know of, that hath so much of it, and makes so great advantages thereof, as the incomparable Monsieur *Gaulmin*, Counsellor of State, and the Senior of the Masters of Requests, who though he hath the best Library in *Europe*, for Books of this Nature, yet must it be acknowledg'd, that he is so perfect a Master of all the Oriental Languages, that he needs not be oblig'd for ought he can learn out of any of these Authors.

I do not give this accompt of their Histories, that a man should give any great credit thereto, especially when they speak of their Religion and Saints. For in *Persia*, as well as elsewhere, they have their pious frauds, and think it a kind of Piety to establish and improve the errors of their Religion, by Fables and Impostures: since that even in their profane Histories, they take that freedom which is only allow'd Poets and Painters, as may be seen particularly in the History of *Alexander* the Great, which they have so disguis'd, that it hath no Consonancy to what is written of him by *Q. Curtius, Plutarch*; and *Arrianus*. But though it be not true, yet it is Divertive enough, at least to excuse, if not deserve, this little Digression.

They

They say then that *Iscander* ( so they call *Alexander* the Great ) was Born in *Funahn*, that is to say, *Greece*; that his Father's name was *Betlimus*, and that his Mother was the Daughter of King *Tzimschid*, who was the Son of *Keikobath*. They say *Tzimschid* liv'd seven hundred years; That he was the wisest of all the Kings that ever Reign'd, and that he is to be acknowledg'd the Inventor of Saddles, Horse-shoes, Bows, Painting, Tents, and Wine. That the education of *Alexander* was committed to *Aristotle*, who knew so well how to ingratiate himself with his Disciple, that being extreme unwilling to be without him, he oblig'd him to go along with him in his first Wars, wherein he made great advantages of his advice. For *Alexander* being as yet but fifteen years of age, bethought him one day to ask *Aristotle*, to whom all *Greece* belong'd, whereto being answer'd by him, that his Grand-father by the Mother-side had heretofore been Master of it, he, extremely troubled to find himself depriv'd of so great a Kingdom, resolv'd upon the Reduction and Conquest of it, and afterwards to wage a War against all the World. To that end, he went, with his Tutor, to *Stampul*, or *Constantinople*, and made proffer of his service to the King there. *Aristotle*, who was one of the most Eloquent men of his time, knew so well how to recommend the excellent endowments of *Alexander*, that the King trusted him with the conduct of an Army, wherewith he Conquer'd *Egypt*, and all the neighbouring Provinces. Afterwards, he conducted that Army against those of the *Hebbes*, who still made opposition, and making their advantage of their Elephants, rendred all *Alexander's* attempts fruitless, till *Aristotle* advis'd him to rub over with *Neste* a heap of Reeds, to set them a-fire, and to cast them among the Elephants, which were so startled at the fire, that they were put into disorder, whereupon the *Hebbes* were defeated, and forc'd to submit. Thence he went to *Sengebat*, the Inhabitants whereof have great Lips, and very long Teeth. Their King, with some of his people, got into a Tower, where *Alexander* would have besieg'd him. But *Aristotle* told him, that being Master of the City, he had cut off the Root of that Tree, and that it would not be long ere he saw him fall without any further trouble. He took his advice, and went thence to *Femen*, and Conquer'd all *Arabia*. He went afterwards to *Aleppo*, *Erserum*, *Diarbek*, going on still along the River *Tigris*, as far as *Mosel*, and thence fell down into *Georgia*, reduc'd all to his Subjection, and came at last to *Berde*, in the Province of *Iran*. In this City, there lived at that time the Widdow of a certain King, named *Melkchatun*, who hearing daily of the great wonders done by *Alexander*, employ'd several Painters, to take his Picture, as also those of all the great Men of her time; insomuch, that *Alexander* going disguiz'd, and in the quality of an Ambassador from *Alexander*, to give her a Visit, she made a shift to discover him, and invited him to Dine with her. But instead of Meat, there were brought up only great Basins full of Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, which she desir'd him to fall to and to make the best Cheer he could: whereupon *Alexander* telling her, that there was not any thing could satisfie his hunger, she represented to him, that it was for those useles trifles that he ruin'd so many Provinces and fruitfull Countries, such as were able to produce what could maintain many Millions of People, and shew'd him, how that when he had Conquer'd all the World, he must at last dye for want of Bread, if he still continu'd the courses he then took, and intreated him not to deprive her of her Kingdom. *Alexander* did as she desired; and they talk to this day of the great Wisdom of that Queen, of whom they relate among other things, that, being very Rich, she did not impose pecuniary Mulcts upon offenders, but oblig'd them to make Graves for the Burial of the Dead; and they say there are yet many of those made by her Command to be seen near *Nechtzuan*. That thence *Alexander* went to *Schiruan*, and built the City of *Derbend*, causing it to be fortify'd on the side towards *Persia*, and drawing a wall all along the Mountain as far as the black Sea, and building Towers at a League distance one from another, for Guards against the Invasion of the *Tartars*. That afterwards, he went into *Persia*, became Master of almost all the Provinces thereof, and engag'd against *Darius*, who was then, with an Army of two hundred thousand men, in the Province of *Kirman*. That *Darius* had the advantage in the three first Battels, but was defeated in the fourth, *Alexander* having drawn the Enemy's Army to a place where he had caus'd several pits to be made, which he had covered with straw, and that *Darius* was taken in one of them. Afterwards, he went into *Chorasan*, and thence into the *Indies*, where, upon the intreaty of the *Indians*, he caus'd to be made a Palizado of Iron against the *Pigmees*, which is to stand till the day of Judgment. Afterwards, he defeated the *Usbeques*, and after that, he turn'd his Arms against the *Hebbes*, who rebell'd against him. That having so many Kings in his power, he would needs be advis'd by *Aristotle*, whether it were not the safest way to put them to Death. But *Aristotle* having represented to him, that some of their Children might come to revenge that cruelty, he set them all at Liberty, except *Darius*, whom he poyson'd. After this, *Alexander* coming to understand, that, in the Mountain of *Kef*, there was a great Cave, very black and dark, wherein ran the water of Immortality, would needs take a Journey thither. But being afraid to lose his way in the Cave, and considering with himself, that he had committed a great over-sight, in leaving the more aged in Cities and fortify'd places, and keeping about his Person only young people such as were not able to advise him, he

1637. ordered to be brought to him some old Man, whose counsell he might follow in the adventure he was then upon. There were in the whole Army but two Brothers, named *Chidder* and *Elias*, who had brought their Father along with them, and this good old Man bid his sons go and tell *Alexander*, that to go through with the design he had undertaken, his only way were, to take a Mare that had a Colt at her heels, and to Ride upon her into the Cave, and leave the Colt at the entrance of it, and the Mare would infallibly bring him back again to the same place without any trouble. *Alexander* thought the advice so good, that he would not take any other person with him in that Journey but those two Brothers, leaving the rest of his Retinue at the entrance of the Cave. He advanc'd so far, that he came to a Gate, so well polish'd, that, notwithstanding the great darkness, it gave light enough to let him see there was a Bird fasten'd thereto. The Bird ask'd *Alexander* what he would have? He made answer, that he look'd for the water of Immortality. The Bird ask'd him, what was done in the World? Mischief enough, replies *Alexander*, since there is no Vice or Sin but Reigns there. Whereupon the Bird getting loose and flying away, the Gate opened, and *Alexander* saw an Angel sitting, with a Trumpet in his hand, holding it as if he were going to put it to his Mouth. *Alexander* ask'd him his name. The Angel made answer, his name was *Raphael*, and that he only staid for a command from God to blow the Trumpet, and to call the Dead to Judgment. Which having said, he ask'd *Alexander*, who he was? I am *Alexander*, repli'd he, and I seek the water of Immortality. The Angel gave him a Stone, and said to him, go thy wayes, and look for another stone of the same weight with this, and then thou shalt find Immortality. Whereupon *Alexander* asked, how long he had to live? The Angel said to him, till such time as the Heavens and the Earth which encompass thee, be turn'd to Iron, or as others say, into Gold and Silver. *Alexander* being come out of the Cave, sought a long time, and not meeting with any stone just of the same weight with the other, he put one into the Balance which he thought came very near it, and finding but very little difference, he added thereto a little Earth, which made the Scales even; it being God's Intention to shew *Alexander* thereby, that he was not to expect Immortality, till he himself were put into the Earth. At last, *Alexander* having, one day, a fall off his Horse, in the barren ground of *Knr* or *Ghur*, they laid him upon the Coat he wore over his Armour, and cover'd him with his Buckler, to keep off the heat of the Sun. Others affirm, that this Coat was Embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and that his Buckler was cover'd with Plates of the same Mettal, and that then he began to comprehend the Propiency of the Angel, and was satisfy'd the hour of his Death was at hand, that accordingly he dyed, and that his Body was carried into *Greece*.

They add to this Fable, that these two Brothers, *Chidder* and *Elias*, drunk of the water of Immortality, and that they are still living, but invisible, *Elias*, upon the earth, and *Chidder*, in the Water, wherein this latter hath so great power, that those, who are in danger of being destroy'd by water, if they earnestly pray, saying, *Ja Chidder Nebbi*, vowing a Sacrifice or Offering to him, and firmly believing, that he can relieve them, shall escape the danger, and save their Lives. Whence it comes, that, if any one perish, it is attributed to his Incredulity: but if he escape, they are of a certain persuasion, that it is by the assistance of *Chidder*, to whom those who escape Shipwreck, or any other danger upon the Sea, do every year, upon the same day, give solemn thanks, and acknowledge the protection of this Saint. These Ceremonies are performed in *February*, and those who keep the Vows they have made upon such occasions, invite their Friends to a Supper, both Men and Women, relate to them the particulars of the dangers they had been in, and how they were deliver'd out of them, by the means and assistance of *Chidder*. Then they Sup together, and make good Cheer, but drink no Wine. In the mean time, they serve up into another Room, several Dishes of Fruit and Conserves, and in the midst of the room, they set in a Wooden Dish, full of Pease-Meal, a Wax-Candle lighted, and as they go out of the room, they say, *Chidder Nebbi*, if this offering be acceptable to thee, shew it by some sign. If, the next day, they find the track of any ones having been in the room, or the print of a hand in the Meal, it is accounted a very good sign, and the Friends have another meeting, to spend that day in Merriment. Whence it comes, that the Women, who are not often admitted to these Feasts, find out ways to get into the Room, so as that they are not perceiv'd, and take away a handful of the Meal, that the Feasting may be continu'd. The *Nassara*, who are a sort of *Christians*, of *Armenia*, do also celebrate this Festival, but they drink Wine thereat, which the *Persians* do not. We were told at *Ardebil*, that one day, a Woman making her advantage of this Feast, had lock'd up her Gallant in the room where they had prepar'd the entertainment for the Prophet. She went ever and anon to see him, and perceiv'd not that a Child of hers, about four four years of age, follow'd her, who seeing a strange face, fell a crying, so loud, that the Gallant took an Apple out of the Fruits design'd for *Chidder*, and gave it the Child to make him hold his peace. But as soon as the Child had got the Apple, he runs into the Hall, where he shew'd his Father the present, which *Chidder Nebbi* had made him. The Father not knowing what to think of that Vision, and derous to see whether *Chidder* was become visible, went into the room, and there found a man in a posture that

a little startled him. But the Gallant, fearing they would have Sacrific'd him to the Prophet, made a shift to get away, and the Woman, pretending she had not seen any thing, it pass'd for a certain apparition of *Chidder*. 1637.

There's no Nation in the world more addic'ted to Poetry than the *Persians*. There you have Poets in all the Market-places, and in all Houses of good fellowship, where they entertain and make sport for such as frequent them, as the Mountebanks, and such as shew tricks of Legerdemain do in *Europe*. All bear with them, and the Great Lords think they cannot give their Friends a better entertainment, than by Diverting them, while they are at Dinner, with the recital of some Poem. The King himself, and the *Chans* have, among their other Menial Servants, their Poets, whose only business it is to find out somewhat for their Diversion by which they are maintain'd, and which they are not to communicate to any other, without the consent of their Patrons. The Poets are known from others by their Habit, which is the same with that of the Philosophers; to wit, a long white Coat, but open before, with great broad Sleeves, and they have at their Girdle a kind of a Hawking-bag, in which are their Books, Paper, and an Ink-horn, that they may give Copies of their verses to such as desire them. Their under Garment hath no Sleeves, and would be a perfect Cloak, if it had but a Cape. They wear no Stockings; their Breeches come down to their feet, like Pantaloons, and in winter, they wear such as reach but to their ankles. Instead of *Mendils* or *Turbants*, they wear a kind of Caps. Those who put off their Productions in the Market places and at Taverns, wear Scarfs of several Colours, which come about their Bodies just above the waste, and passing over the right shoulder fall down under the left arm. Most of these rake for the Subject of their Poetry the Religion of the *Turks* and their Saints, which they are pleas'd to rail at and make sport withall.

It may well be imagin'd, that, among so many Poets, there must also be some Poetasters, and that there, as well as in other places, a man must expect to find but few *Homers* and *Virgils*. Nay there are some so modest as to vent only the works of other Men, and finding in themselves such a barrenness of wit as will not produce any thing, make it their business to disperse their productions who are in repute. *Persia* hath this common with *France*, as indeed it hath many other things, that it hath hardly any Author excellent at an Epick Poem, and that some few Poets laid aside, who are in great reputation, the rest are rather to be pittied. The best, and such as may justly be accounted good Poets, are *Saadi*, *Hafis*, *Firdausi*, *Fussuli*, *Chagani*, *Ebeli*, *Schems*, *Naway*, *Scabidi*, *Ferahsed*, *Deheki*, *Nessimi*, &c. Their Poetry is suitable to the modern way, and they will keep up the Rime, though they are not very exact in observing the number of the Syllables. Nor do they think it much to use the same words to keep the Rime, as imagining it no breach of the Rules of their Profodia; as for example in the following Verses:

*Tziri, tziri, Tziragh Fani tze ?*  
*Adamira demagh fani tze ?*  
*Tziri, tziri, tziragh es teri bud,*  
*Adamira demagh cheri bud.*

Where the Poet makes a pretty allusion between the words *Teri* and *Cheri*, whereof one signifies moist, and the other, of or belonging to an Ass. The sense of the Verses, is to this effect; *Why does the Candle go out? Why does man boast and is vain-glorious? because the one wants moist Suet, and the other is troubled with Ass's fat.* They also delight much in Equivocations, and many times very handsomely begin the subsequent Verse with the word that ended the precedent, as in the following Example.

*Kalem be dest, debiran behes hasar derem*  
*Derem be dest nea Jed meker nauk Kalem.*

Their Study of the Law can be of no great extent, in regard they have but few Laws, and those they have are all taken out of the *Alcoran*, and the Commentaries upon it: which the *Kafis* and the *Divanbegs* observe, in the decision of differences. They have besides these, certain Local customs, but very few.

In Physick, or Medicine, they follow the Maxims of *Avicenna*, and their Physicians are all *Galenists*. Phlebotomy is not very ordinary among them, but they administer continual Medicines made of Herbs and Roots, and many times apply Fomentations and other outward remedies. They have nothing of Anatomy, and their practice is so gross, that, when I was at *Scamachie*, where our Physician was intreated to visit a Man, who, having drunk too much *Aquavitæ*, lay a dying, I saw a Moor-Physician, who had the sick party in hand, order a great piece of Ice to be laid on his Stomack, maintaining his procedure by this general Maxim, that a Disease is to be Cur'd by what is contrary thereto. When Women or Children are troubled with any Disease or Indisposition, they do not send for a Physician, but for the Midwife, whence



1637. it comes that Midwives have some skill in Medicine. The Books which treat thereof, have this extraordinary, that, the remedies they prescribe, are as fit for Horses as Men.

Our Physician, who had joyned to *Galen's* method certain Maxims of *Paracelsus*, and us'd Chymical remedies with very good success, grew so famous in *Persia*, that the King himself proffer'd him very considerable allowances, to engage him to continue in that Court. Nay, he grew into such repute, after he had recover'd some persons who had been given over by others, that the people began to look upon him as an extraordinary man, insomuch that they brought to him some that were lame and blind from the Birth, to recover their limbs and sight who never had had them.

*Astronomy.* It is not of late that the *Persians* have apply'd themselves to the study of Astronomy. Heretofore they who made profession thereof were called *Magi*, and now they call them *Minarzim*, and they do not busie themselves so much in observing the motions of the Heavens and Stars, and the pure contemplation of that Science, as in Prognosticating the effects which their influences may produce, and to fore-tell those things, the contingency whereof they imagine to themselves may be read in the course of the Heavens. So that it is rather Judiciary Astrology, than Astronomy that they now Study, in regard the one would bring them no advantage at all, whereas the other is the more beneficial to them in this respect, that most of the *Persians* have this superstition, that they never undertake any thing of consequence, but they first consult the *Minarzim*. To that end, the King and Great Lords have alwayes one of these about them, who perpetually observes the Heavens, and fore-tells whether the time be fortunate or unfortunate for the business they would undertake. And out of that reflection it is, that they say themselves, that Astrology, who is dependent on Astronomy, is a rich Daughter, but comes from so poor a Mother, that she is forc'd to preserve her Life, from whom she receiv'd her own. These Astrologers are never without their Astrolabe, which they carry in their Bosoms, that they may erect a Scheme at any time: but their skill is not great about Nativities, especially those of persons of mean condition; which proceeds hence, that, having no Clocks, they cannot get the precise hour, much less the minute of the Birth, which great persons have exactly observ'd, by means of the Astrolabe.

For the teaching of Astronomy they have neither Sphear nor Globe, insomuch that they were not a little astonish'd to see in my hands a thing which is so common in *Europe*. I ask'd them whether they had ever seen any such before. They told me, they had not, but said, that there was heretofore in *Persia*, a very fair Globe, which they call *Felek*, but that it was lost during the Warrs between them and the *Turks*. They haply meant that which *Sapor*, King of *Persia*, had caus'd to be made of Glasse, so large, that he could sit in the Centre of it, and observe the motions of the Stars, and must no doubt be like that of *Archimedes*, whereof *Claudian* speaks in the Epigram, which begins thus,

*Jupiter in parvo cum cerneret aethera vitro.*

Antiquity might haply admire these works, but what miracle would it be thought, if they saw the Globe which his Highness the Duke of *Holstein* hath ordered to be made in his City of *Gottorp*. It is a double Globe, made of Copper, ten foot and a half Diameter, so that within it, ten persons may sit at a Table, which, with the seats about it, hangs at one of its poles. There a man may see, by means of an Horizontal Circle within the Globe, how the Stars and the Sun it self, coming out of its Centre, moves of it self through its Ecliptick degrees, and rises and sets regularly. The motion of this Globe exactly follows that of the Heavens, and derives that motion from certain Wheels, driven by the water, which is brought out of a Mountain hard by, and let in, as it requires more or less, according to the swiftness of the Sphaers.

*The Lunar and Solar year in Persia.* The *Persians* regulate their year according to the Moon, as well as the Sun, so as that they have both Solar and Lunar years; to wit, the latter, for their Festivals, and Religious Ceremonies, which are appointed on certain dayes of the Moneth, and these Moneths beginning and ending with the Moon, make their year shorter than ours by twelve dayes. Their Solar year is of 365. dayes, and was so accounted even in the time of *Alexander* the Great, as *Q. Curtius* expressly observes in the 7. Chap. of the 3. Book of his History, where he sayes, speaking of *Darius's* Retinue, that, after the *Magi*, follow'd three hundred sixty five young Men, completing the number of the dayes of their year, which consisted of so many dayes, that is to say, twelve Moneths of thirty dayes a piece, and five dayes over and above. It begins, at that very minute that the Sun, entring into *Aries*, makes the Equinox, and brings in the first day of the Spring. That day they call *Naurus*, or *Neurus*, that is, the new day. They count the years of their age, according to the course of the Sun, so that to express how old they are, they say, they have liv'd so many *Naurus's*, that is, so many years. It is one of the principal functions of the *Minarzim*, to observe, by the Astrolabe, the happy minute, in which the Sun comes to the

the Æquator, and as soon as he declares it is, they all begin to rejoyce. Their Epoche is the *Hegira*, or flight of *Mahomet*, which falls on the 10. of *July*, in the 622. year of our Saviour. 1637.

The *Persians* had heretofore their Almanack, or *Takhuim*, which was particular to them, and every day of the Moneth had its name from some of their Kings or Heroes, as *Oromasda*, *Behemer*, *Adarpahascht*, *Scharias*, &c. as we find it in *Scaliger*, in his incomparable Treatise, *de Emendatione Temporum*, and in the Ephemerides of *Origanus*: but they are not used now, no more than the Epoche of *Fesdetzird*, or as *Scaliger* calls him, *Fesdegird*, who was the Son of *Schaberjar*, and Grand Son of *Chosroes*, who was kill'd by *Orman*, the Son of *Ophan*, a *Sarasin*, on the 16. of *June* in the 632. They had no other till the year 1079. at which time *Abu Arsalan*, King of *Chorasán*, *Mesopotamia* and *Persia*, a *Sarasin*, having brought together eight Astronomers, very Learned Men, reform'd the year of *Fesdegird*, and constituted another Epoche, which they began on the 14. day of the year, and which is called *Tzelalce*, or *Sulthancee*, or, in the *Arabian*, *Tarich*, *altzelalit*, that is, the *Era*, or *Epoche*, of *Augustus*, from the word *Tzelaf*, which signifies Majesty, or Highness. Now, they have the *Arabian* Kalender, and the names of their twelve Moneths are, *Maharem*, *Sefar*, *Rebbi Ewel*, *Rebbi Achir*, *Tzemadi Ewel*, *Tzemadi Achir*, *Retzeb*, *Scabahn*, *Schawal*, *Dsilcade*, and *Dsilhatse*. It is also to be observ'd, that the *Persians* have a way of accompting by four years, much after the same manner as the *Greeks* accompted by their *Olympiads*, and the *Romans*, by *Lustra*, which consisted of five years, and then they give the first year of their accompt, the name of the first Moneth of the year, to the four ensuing years, that of the second Moneth, and so of the rest; so that to know that they speak of a Moneth, and not of years, they add, to the names of the Moneths, the word *Mah*, which signifies a Moneth. *Abraham Ecchelenfis* gives the Etymology of it, as he does also that of the dayes of the week, in his *History of Arabia*, pag. 204. &c. They begin the week with Saturday, that the seventh day, which is the day of rest, may fall upon Friday, which to them is as the Sunday is to *Christians*, and Saturday to the *Jews*. The names of the seven dayes of the week are these, to wit, Saturday, *Scembe*, Sunday, *Fekschembe*, Monday, *Duschembe*, Tuesday, *Seschembe*, Wednesday, *Tschaschembe*, Thursday, *Denschembe*, and Friday, *Adine*, or *Tzumeh*, that is, the day of Assembly, in regard that on that day, they meet at their Assemblies to do their Devotions. They account *Tscharchembe* the most unfortunate day of all the Week.

They are extremely addicted to Astrology, and in imitation of the *Chaldeans*, of whom, doubtless, they learnt that Science, they are so superstitious, that they do not only credit all the Astrologers tell them, but also, persons of quality do no business of any consequence, undertake no journey, nay would be loath to put on a new Garment, get on Horse-back to Ride abroad, or Bath themselves, but they first consult the *Minatzim*, who is so much the more credited by them, in that many times they heighten the Vanity of their Art by a Profession, no less deceitful than the other, which is Medicine. This persuasion of theirs is grounded on the opinion they have, as well as the *Arabians*, that the Stars are governed by Intelligences, who have an absolute power over sublunary things; so that it is no hard matter to make them acquiesce in the prediction of the Astrologers. These are either Mountebanks, or Magicians; who, by their equivocal expressions circumvent those who consult them, purposely to disturb their Brains, and to put tricks upon them, as *Stephen Alexander* did upon *Heraclius*, when he fore-told him, that he should perish in the water, obliging him thereby to fill up all the Lakes and Ponds all over the Empire. After the same manner was also deceived *John Menard*, a Physician of *Ferrara*, who was told he should perish in a Ditch. He avoided them all, but that of a young Woman, whom he Married in his old age, and who visibly shortned his dayes. They attribute to every hour in the day one of the Signs of the Zodiack, to wit, to the first, *Aries*, to the second, *Taurus*, and so forward; and they believe there are in every Moneth, some unfortunate dayes, especially the 3. the 5. and the 23. and 25. of every Moon. *Abraham Ecchelenfis*, whom we cited before, relates, to this purpose, two remarkable stories, taken out of the 9. Book of the *Chronicles of Gregorius Barhebra*, where he sayes, that in the 198. year of the *Hegira*, there liv'd a Man, who, among other things, had a Ring, which made him that had it on his Finger laugh as long as it was on. He himself was the onely man who could use it as another Ring; and he had also a Pen, wherewith no body could Write, and which no body was able to guide with his hand, but he himself. Whence it came, that the *Calif*, *Alamun*, who liv'd in that time, would needs have his Nativity calculated by the famous Astrologer *Albumazar*, who found that his Ascendent was in *Taurus*, between whom and *Jupiter*, *cauda draconis* and *Venus*, there was a benevolent aspect, and that the Sun and Moon were in the same degree of the Ascendent. The other Story is of a Physician, named *Tabet Harenfis*, who feeling a man's Pulse, told him he had eaten Veal, and taken of a Broath, whereof the Milk was turn'd in the boyling, yet had not any reason to give for what he said, save that the Physician knew it by some particular instinct, and that he had receiv'd that gift from secret influence.

1637. Yet for all this prejudice they have for the influences of the Stars, they attribute much to Chance, and endeavour to discover the secrets of things by those means, especially such as are not yet come to pass, the knowledge whereof is not so easie.

'Tis true, they are for the most part Women, who address themselves to these people, who have their Shops or Stalls in the *Maidan*, near the *Dowlet Chane*, and fore-tell things by two manner of wayes. Some of them, whom they call *Remal*, have seven or eight Dice strung together upon two little pieces of Wire, and they predict according to the falling of the Dice. The others, whom they call *Falkir*, do their work with much more Ceremony. For they have before them, upon a Table, thirty or forty little pieces of board, about an inch square, very thinn and very smooth, which are mark'd with certain Characters on that side which lies downwards. Upon one of these little pieces of board, he who desires to know what is to befall him, is to lay down his Money, which the *Falkir* immediately puts up, and no doubt this is that which is most certain in the whole Mystery. That done, he turns over a Book that lies before him, about three fingers thick, the leaves whereof are Painted with all sorts of Figures, as Angels, Devils, Satyrs, Dragons and other Monsters, and he opens the Book several times, till he finds one that hath some rapport to the Characters upon the little board. Neither is that done without Muttering between his teeth certain inarticulate and not intelligible words; and this is the most infallible prediction they have among them.

The political Government of Persia.

The political Government of *Persia*, differs not much from that of the *Muscovites*. Both are Monarchical, and so Despotick, that the Prince governs with an absolute power, making his Will a Law, and, without any accompt to be given of his so doing, disposing of the Lives and Estates of his Subjects; who are so far his Slaves, that they do not so much as murmur at the Violence, wherewith the greatest Lords of the Kingdom are put to Death, without any kind of proceedings against them.

They call their Kings *Schach*, *Paschach*, and *Padischach*; words which have in a manner all the same signification, to wit, that of King, or Lord. Yet does not the Emperour of the *Turks*, when he writes to the King of *Persia*, give him the quality of *Schach*, but that of *Schich Ogli*, that is to say, Ecclesiastick, or Son, or Kinsman, of the Prophet. Those who say, the Kings of *Persia* assume the quality of *Choda*, that is God, are mistaken. For *Chodabende* is the proper name of a man, as *Theodosius*, *Theodore*, &c. and signifies, oblig'd to God, or a *Servant of God*; though it must be confess'd, that these Princes are Vain-Glorious enough to assume extravagant Titles which make them equal to the Sun and Moon, and Companions of the Stars; as *Amnianus Marcellinus* saies of *Sapor*, King of *Persia*. 'Tis true on the other side, that they are as free to give the same Titles to those Princes of *Enrope* with whom they live in good correspondence: for in the Letters which *Schach Sefi* writ to the Duke of *Holstein*, he gave him the same qualities he assum'd himself. They would not have inscriptions of Letters fill'd with the Titles of the Kingdoms and Provinces under their Jurisdiction: nay *Schach-Abas* would have no other title at the head of a Petition than that of *Schach*, and one day said to a man that had set several titles at the head of his Petition, Go thy wayes, friend, thy titles will make me neither more powerfull nor more poor; Give me that of *Schach*, since I am so, and think that enough.

The quality of Sophi.

Most Authors give the Kings of *Persia* of the last Race the quality of *Sophi*; and the Kings themselves, especially those who have any zeal for their Religion, are much pleas'd with the addition of that quality to their titles, out of the affection they bear *Schich Sefi*, or *Sefi*, the first Institutor of their Sect; as the Kings of *France* take the quality of *most Christian*; those of *Spain*, that of *most Catholick*, and those of *England*, that of *Defenders of the Faith*. Whence they say, *Ismael-Sofi*, *Eider-Sofi*: and of this a man must take notice in the reading of their History, inasmuch as if he do not, he may confound the Names of the Kings, and attribute that to one which is to be understood of another.

The Kingdom of Persia Hereditary.

The Kingdom of *Persia* is Hereditary, and may be enjoy'd, not only by the Children lawfully begotten, but also, for want of such, by natural Children, and the Sons of Concubines, who inherit the Crown as well as the others, nay they are preferr'd before the nearest of the Collateral Kinred, and the Nephews; since the Sons of Concubines and Slaves are not accounted illegitimate in *Persia*, as we have said elsewhere. For want of Sons, the Crown falls to the next of Kin by the Father's side, descended from *Sefi*, who are as it were Princes of the Blood-Royal, and are called *Schich Eluend*. They enjoy many great Privileges and Immunities, but many times, they are very poor, and have much ado to live. The Children of the Kings of *Persia* make the Houses where they are Born, Free, and they are converted into Sanctuaries; infomuch that if the Queen be delivered in any other place besides the Metropolis, the House is compass'd with a noble Wall, to be distinguish'd from others.

The arms of Persia.

If we may credit *Q. Curtius*, the antient Arms of *Persia* were the Crescent, as the Sun was that of the *Greeks*. Now, the *Turks* take the Crescent, and the *Persians*, the Sun, which they commonly put upon the back of a Lion. But upon the great Seal of the Kingdom there are only Characters, It is about the bigness of a half Crown piece, having within the Ring, *To God alone,*

alone, I Schich Sefi am a Slave with all my Heart : and in the Circumference ; *Aly*, let the World say what it please of Thee, yet will I be thy Friend. He who before thy Gate does not account himself dust and ashes, though he were an Angel, dust and ashes be upon his Head. In the Letters he sends to Christian Princes, he observes this respect, that he does not set the Seal on the same side with the Writing, but on the other side, at the very bottom. 1637.

The Ceremonies performed at the Coronation of the Kings of *Persia*, are not done at *Babylon*, as some Authors would have it believ'd, nor yet at *Kufa*, as *Minadous* affirms, but in the City of *Ispahan*. They are not so great as those done at the Inauguration of Kings in *Europe*. They set upon a Table, about half an Ell high, as many pieces of Tapistry of Gold and Silver, or Embroider'd as there have been Kings of the same Family, before him who is then to be Crowned ; so that at the Coronation of *Schach Sefi*, there were eight ; inasmuch as he was the eighth King of *Persia* of that House, accompting from *Ismael* the first. That done, the chiefest of the *Chans* present him with a Crown, which he kisses thrice, in the Name of *God*, of *Mahomet*, and of *Aaly*, and having put it to his Fore-head, he delivers it to the Grand Master of the Kingdom, whom they call *Lele*, who puts it on his Head ; and then all present make Acclamations, of *Long live the King ; God grant, that, during his Reign, one year may be multiply'd to a thousand* : they kiss his Feet, make him great Pretents, and spend the remainder of the day in Feasting and Merriment. There is no such thing among them as the taking of any Oath of Allegiance, or obliging the King to swear to the Conservation of the Privileges, or Fundamental Laws of the Kingdom, in regard their subjection is pure Slavery ; whereas among *Christians*, the condition of Kings is quite otherwise, for the obligation is reciprocal, and the Kings are not absolute Lords, but are, or ought to be, Fathers of their people. The Coronation of their Kings.

The Kingdom is of great extent. Those Provinces which lie most remote from the chief Citie, and the ordinary residence of the Kings, cannot be governed otherwise than by Governours or Lieutenants, who, in *Persia*, are called *Chans* ; the word not signifying the employment they have in the said Governments, but a quality which all great Lords assume to themselves. Of this we shall speak more at large elsewhere, and here give a short accompt of the Kings of *Persia* who have reign'd within these hundred years ; with some assurance, that the Reader will think this digression the less tedious, when he finds me positively affirming, that there is hardly any Author who hath written the History of them. We said before that the Emperour of the *Turks*, when he writes to the King of *Persia*, gives him not the quality of *Schach*, but of *Schich-Ogli*, in as much as he is not descended from the antient Family of the Kings of *Persia*, but from a later, as we shall now make it appear. Ismael's

*Hassan Padschach*, who was surnamed *Ussum Cassan*, that is to say *Grand Signor*, by reason of the great Wars he managed, and where in he was alwayes victorious, was of the Family of the *Asimbels*, and liv'd about the end of the fifteenth age. He was Governour of *Armenia Major*, and having gain'd several victories over the *Turks*, he reduc'd several Provinces by force of Arms, and among others, *Persia*, whereof he made himself King. *Ussum Cassan* had three sons, *Unger Mahomed*, *Calul*, and *Jacup*. The first was strangled by the Father's order, against whom he had taken up Arms ; and the second was poyson'd by the third ; so that *Ussum Cassan* dying, on the fifth of *January* 1485. *Jacup* succeeded him : but he enjoy'd not long the Kingdom he had got with the price of his Brother's blood ; for his own Wife poysoned him within a short time after his coming to the Crown. After his death, *Schich Eider*, son-in-law to *Ussum Cassan*, surnamed *Harduellis*, from the place of his birth, pretended to the succession ; but it was disputed against him, first by *Fulaver*, a *Persian* Lord, and afterwards by *Baylinger*, and *Rustan*. Jacup.

The *Turks*, who slighted *Schich Eider*, by reason of the meanness of his birth, (notwithstanding which *Ussum Cassan* had bestow'd on him his Daughter *Martha*, whom he had had by *Despina*, the Daughter of *Calojean*, King of *Trebisond*) and hated him, particularly upon this accompt, that he had quitted their Religion, presuming that a man, who pretended much to Devotion and Sanctity, would be unexpert, if not unfortunate in the business of Arms, declar'd a war against him, entred *Persia* with a powerfull Army, gave him battel, and defeated him, in so much that falling alive into their hands, they slead his head and pull'd down his skin over his ears. 'Tis true, there is so great discrepancy among the *Persian* Authors, concerning this story, that we have been forc'd herein to follow the common opinion ; though there are some who affirm, that *Eider* was not King, but that *Rustan*, King of *Persia* fearing he might come to be King, treated him as we said before. Nay, some affirm, that this happened in the time of *Jacup*, the son of *Ussum Cassan*. But what cannot well be deny'd of the story, is, that, about that time, the *Turks* became Masters of most of the Provinces of *Persia* ; and that *Rustan* was succeeded by *Agmar*, *Carabem*, and *Aluantes*. Ismael's

*Schich Eider*, who first chang'd the quality of *Schich*, that is, Prophet, into that of *Schach*, or King, left one son named *Ismael* : but he was so young, when his Father died, that all could be done for him, was to secure his person at the house of a certain Lord

1637. Lord of the Province of *Kilan*, a Kinsman and Friend of his Father's, named *Pyr Chalin*; who brought him up, and instructed him in the same Sect his Father had been of. *Ismael* being come to years of discretion, discover'd himself to be a person of an excellent understanding and great courage, and there were the greater hopes conceiv'd of him, out of this respect, that his Father, who was well skill'd in Astrology, had Predicted that his son should do wonders, as being the person designed for the restauration of *Persia*, by the reduction of many Provinces, and the propagation he should make of his new Religion. Accordingly, he made such advantage of the opportunity he then had, while the Emperour of the *Turks* was at *Constantinople*, little thinking what might happen towards *Persia*, that having, by the advice of *Pyr*, sent Deputies into the neighbouring Provinces and Cities, he so far satisfy'd them of the right he had to the Crown, and prevail'd with them to reflect on the interest of the State, and the preservation of Religion, that having got together an Army of twenty thousand men, with which he left *Larretzan*, in the Province of *Kilan*, the Inhabitants of the other Provinces came in so fast, that it was, of a sudden swell'd to three hundred thousand. With this Army, he marched streight to *Ardebil*, whence he forc'd away all the *Turks*, some few onely excepted, who were got into a street behind *Schich Sefi's* Sepulchre, where they Petition'd for their lives, and promised to Embrace the *Persian* Religion: and thence it comes, that the said street is, to this day, called *Urume Mabele*. It was upon this exploit that many *Persians* came to be surnamed *Kisilbaschs*, as we have shewn before.

*Ardebil* being thus reduc'd, *Ismael* went to *Tabris Scamachie*, and *Iruan*, and recover'd all the Cities and Provinces which the *Turks* had taken from his Father, and had been possess'd of ever since his death. He afterwards entred into *Turkey*, gave the Emperour battel, and defeated him. The particulars of that War may be seen in the Letter which *Henry Pemia*, who was then in *Persia*, writ to Cardinal *Sauli*; and they agree with what the *Persians* themselves write thereof. After this Victory he took *Bagdat*, *Besre*, *Kurdestan*, *Diarbek*, *Wan*, *Esserum*, *Ersingan*, *Bitlis*, *Adiltschouas*, *Alchat*, *Berdigk*, *Kars*, *Entakie*. As soon as he had secur'd the Frontiers against the attempts of the *Turks*, he turn'd his Armies Eastward, and took, from the King of the *Indies*, the Province of *Candahar*, and the next adjoining Province, the same good success, which he had had against the *Turks*, still attending him. 'Twas after this last Conquest that he went to *Caswin*, to be Crown'd. He stay'd there but just the time requisite for that Ceremony, and to refresh his Forces, with which he afterwards went into *Georgia*, Defeated the King of that Countrey, whom the Histories call *Simon Padschach*, and forc'd him to pay him, yearly, three hundred Bails of Silk, by way of Tribute. The difficulties which *Schach Ismael Sofi* met with in all these Wars, were not so small but the *Persians* grew weary of them, though the zeal of their Religion induc'd them to suffer the utmost extremities; even death it self, with resolution enough. But the consequence of these Victories, and the good success which *Ismael* had in all his designs, was, that they raised him to so high an esteem, that all the other Princes of *Asia*, nay, several Monarchs of *Europe* courted his friendship, by solemn Embassies, which gave our Writers the first acquaintance they had with the affairs of *Persia*. And whereas he made a strict Profession of the *Persian* Religion, and had a great Devotion for *Aly*, so far as to assume the quality of *Sofi*, thence it comes, that our Historians speak of him as the principal Propagator, nay, indeed, as the first Inlittutor of that Sect. He died at *Caswin*, in the forty fifth year of his age, and was buried at *Ardebil*. He had the reputation of being a great observer of Justice, but it is affirm'd of him, that he made no great difficulty to drink Wine, and eat Swines flesh; nay, that, in derision of the *Turkish* Religion, he had a Hog kept in his Court, which he named *Bajazetb*.

*Schach Ismael Sofi* left four Sons, whereof the eldest, named *Tamas*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom of *Persia*, but not in the vertues and great endowments, which had made him considerable all over the World. The three others, to wit, *Helcasi*, *Beiran*, and *Sor-Myrza*, had certain Territories assign'd them. This change was perceiv'd at the very beginning of his Government. For *Sulthan Solyman*, Emperour of the *Turks*, taking notice of the weakness of *Schach Tamas* in matter of Government, raised a powerfull Army, enters the Kingdom of *Persia*, under the Conduct of *Sulthan Murat Bascha*, and recover'd from the *Persians* all that *Schach Ismael* had taken from the *Turks*, *Bagdan* and *Wan* onely excepted. Two years after *Solyman* came in person into *Persia*, where he took *Tauris*, and besieg'd *Sulthania*, *Schach Tamas*, who was in the mean time at *Caswin*, having not so much courage as to raise the Siege. But as good fortune would have it, it happened, that during the time of the Siege, in the moneth of *March*, some few dayes before their *Nauris*, there fell so great a Rain, accompany'd by such a violent Tempest, that the Snow of the adjacent Mountains dissolving, and the water over-flowing all the Valleys, *Soliman* who was incommodated thereby; and found the water of a reddish colour, contracted haply from the ground, through which it had pass'd, was frightned thereat, raised the Siege, and departed the Kingdom. In his retreat, he destroy'd all before him, but was engag'd neer *Bitlis*, where he was absolutely defeated. *Schach Tamas* dying the 11. of *May* 1576. in the 68th. year of his age, and the 42th. of his reign

reign, left a very ill repute of himself among the *Persians*, who speak of him with some prejudice, as well in relation to his Conduct, as his Courage. They charge him, among other things, that he was very careless of doing Justice to his Subjects, and had committed the administration of the affairs of his kingdom to his Ministers, as they are ordinarily wont to do, who cannot love a people that hath no affection for them. They blame him for protecting *Hama-jum*, the Son of *Selim*, king of the *Indies*, to whom he gave Refuge and Protection, against the Persecutions of *Tzelaleden Ekbet*, his Uncle, a younger Brother of *Selim's*, who had usurp'd the Crown, and demanded him of *Schach-Tamas*, that he might be put to death. But that was a generous and just action, and is not to be produc'd among the examples that are alleged of his violence and injustice, especially with any parallel to the ensuing story.

*Lavassap*, Prince of *Armenia*, had two Sons, *Simon* and *David*, and left the former, as being the Elder, the Government of the Country. *David*, who had too much courage to be satisfied with a small Territory, found means to raise an Army, such as might frighten his Elder Brother, who, being really afraid of an insurrection, desir'd the assistance of *Schach Tamas*, who sent him four thousand Horse, ordering him who had the Conduct of them, if possible, to take *David* alive, and send him to him, nay, to Crown him, in case he should comply so far as to be Circumcised, but with this Proviso, that he should prefer *Simon*, if he would take the Crown upon the same terms. *David* being taken in the first Engagement, soon hearkened to the King of *Persia's* Proposition, and promis'd to change his Religion, and do homage for his Province, if the King would establish him in his Brother's place. *Simon* express'd a greater constancy, and would not change his Religion; whereupon he was imprison'd, in the Fortrefs of *Kahak*; and *David*, who after his Circumcision was called *Dant-Chan*, was forc'd to content himself with the Government of *Tiflis*. *Simon* remain'd some time a prisoner; but the Reputation he had of being a good Soldier, and a knowing person, brought him, first, acquainted, and afterwards very intimate with *Schach Ismael* the second, the Son of *Schach Tamas*, who promis'd to deliver him out of the Captivity, which he was to expect should have lasted as long as he liv'd, and to restore him to his Territories, if he would change his Religion. He did so, at last in outward shew, but *Ismael* dying soon after, he was little the better for his Promises. He was indeed set at liberty some time after his death; but *Chodabende*, coming to the Crown, minded not much the performance of his Brother's promises, and forc'd *Simon* to content himself with the employment he bestow'd on him in the Wars he was then engag'd in against the *Turks*.

*Schach Tamas* had by several Wives eleven Sons, and three Daughters, and among the rest, *Mahomet*, on whom upon his having shaken hands with all business, by reason of the weakness of his sight, and embracing a devout kind of life, they bestow'd the Sirname of *Chodabende*, that is (*servant of God*) *Ismael*, and *Eider*. *Tamas* had a particular kindness for *Eider*, his third Son, and it was his design to prefer him before the two Elder in the Government of the Kingdom, and to make the more sure work, he permitted him, even in his life time, to assume some part thereof. But after his death, the Lords of the Countrey sent to *Mahomet*, to desire him to accept of the Crown, which was his right by birth; and upon his refusal, they sent to *Ismael*, who was, by his Father's order a Prisoner in the Castle of *Cahak*, for having, upon his own account, made incursions into the *Turky* Dominions, though, in his Soul, he had an aversion for the *Persian* Religion, and in effect made profession of the *Turkish*. *Eider*, who was but seventeen years of age, was so impatient to get into the Throne, that he had the insolence to put the Crown on his head, and present himself, in that posture, before his Father, who was then near his death; and desirous to make his advantage of *Ismael's* absence, and *Mahomet's* refusal, made use of the interest which *Periaconcona*, his Sister, had with the Grandees, to mount the Throne. The Princess, who had declar'd for the interest of the elder Brethren, considering with her self, that in their absence, *Eider* might commit such violences as might prevent her securing of the Crown for *Ismael*, thought it not safe openly to oppose the pretensions of the younger Brother, but suffer'd him to assume the title of King, and he was acknowledg'd as such all over the Palace. But she had all the Avenues so well Guarded, that it was impossible for *Eider's* friends to carry any tidings of it to the City. So that the young Prince coming to distrust his Sister's carriage, and apprehending it might be their design to sacrifice him to his Brother's ambition, conceal'd himself among the Women, till such time as *Schamal*, a *Georgian*, his Uncle by the Mother-side, found him out, and cut off his head.

*Ismael* II. coming to the Crown, in the 43. year of his age, and reflecting on his long imprisonment, confirm'd, by his procedure, the antient Proverb, which sayes, that the reign of a Prince who returns from Exile, is ever cruel and bloody. This man began his, with the executions of all the Kinred and Frinds of *Eider*, and all those who had advis'd his Father to imprison him, pursuing those whom he could not get apprehended, even as far as the Frontiers of *Turkey*, and at his first entrance, discover'd the inclination he had to the *Turkish* Religion, which he openly profess'd. To find out how the Grandees of the Kingdom were affected towards him, a report was spread abroad of his death, but he rose up again too soon for those, who had been

1637. so imprudent as to discover their aversion to his Government. For he brought to execution all such as he conceiv'd any jealousy of, and exercis'd so great cruelty, that, his own Sister thinking not her self secure, thought it her best course to prevent her own destruction by attempting the King's. Certain it is, he dy'd a violent death, on the 24. of *November* 1577. and that *Periaconcona* was the Contriver and Instrument of it: but this was done so secretly, that it is yet not known, how *Persia* came to be rid of this Tyrant.

Mahomet  
Chodabende,

*Ismael* II. being thus remov'd out of the way, they made a shift so far to satisfie *Mahomet Chodabende*, his elder Brother, of the danger, whereto he expos'd his Person and the Country, if he suffered the Crown to come to a strange Family, that, at last, he resolv'd to accept of it, but upon condition, that, before he were oblig'd to make his entrance into *Caswin*, they should bring him the head of *Periaconcona*, who had imbrud her hands in the blood of two of his Brethren, and in whose power it was in some respects to dispose of the Kingdom. She prostituted her self to several of the Grandees about the Court, but particularly to *Emeer Chan*, whom she had raised into some hopes of enjoying the Crown. As soon as *Chodabende* came to the Government, which was in the year 1578. he seem'd not to mind any thing so much as to imitate those among his Predecessors, who had contributed most to the preservation and glory of the Kingdom of *Persia*. This is the Testimony given of him by *F. Bizarrus*; but the *Persian* Authors affirm, on the contrary, that never any Prince manag'd a Scepter with greater negligence and pusillanimity, in so much that finding himself not fit for the carrying on of any Military design, he spent all his time within the Palace, in Gaming, and diverting himself with the Ladies. That he was unfortunate in his Wars, and that the common Enemy taking advantage of his poorness of spirit and effeminacy, made incursions into *Persia*, to wit, the *Turks* on one side, and the *Usbeques Tartars*, on the other: That both these Nations possess'd themselves of several Provinces belonging to that Crown, and were not dispossest of them, as long as *Mahomet Chodabende* liv'd. *Minadous* observes, among other passages, that the *Turks* kill'd, in one battel, five thousand *Persians*, and took three thousand prisoners, whom the *Turkish* General ordered to have their heads cut off, and having heap'd them up together, he sat down upon the heap, and gave audience to a young Prince of *Georgia* who was come to give him a Visit.

Emir  
Hemse.

*Mahomed Chodabende* dy'd in the year 1585. leaving three Sons, *Emir Hemse*, *Ismael*, and *Abas*. The former, as being the eldest of the three Brethren, was Crowned King of *Persia*; but *Ismael*, troubled to see the Crown on his Brother's head, manag'd his affairs so well, and insinuated himself so much into the affections of the chiefest Lords of the Kingdom, that they

Ismael III

conspir'd the death of *Emir Hemse*. *Ismael* got him kill'd, in the eighth moneth of his reign, by a sort of people disguiz'd in Womans Cloaths, who being cover'd with Veils, according to the custom of the Countrey, came to the *Schach's* Chamber door, and told the Guards, that they were the Wives of some of the *Chans*, whom the King had sent for, and that they waited there in obedience to his commands. The Murtherers were no sooner got into the Chamber, but they fell upon the King and kill'd him. But this death was soon after reveng'd upon the Contriver of it, as we shall relate.

*Abas Myrsa*, that is to say, Prince *Abas*, *Mahomet Chodabende's* third Son, was Governour of *Herat*, and was come thence, with an intention to see *Emir Hemse*, his Brother; but hearing, in his way, of the Murther committed upon him, and having some reason to fear, that the Murtherer might be advis'd, to secure himself in the Throne, by a double fratricide, return'd back into his Government. The year following *Abas Myrsa* being advanc'd as far as *Caswin*, while the King was at *Karabach*, there happened such frequent differences between the people belonging to the two Brothers, that they heightned the reciprocal distrust they had one of another. *Abas Myrsa* had about him a Lord of great quality, named *Murschidculi Chan*, who had acquir'd so great reputation by his prudence and courage, that *Chodabende* had entrusted him with the conduct and education of that young Prince. This *Murschidculi*, knowing that *Ismael*, who had express'd but too much animosity against his Brother, would never pardon him, and that his life absolutely depended on that of his Master; and considering withall, that if he prov'd the occasion of raising that Prince, whom he had Govern'd from his youth, to the Throne, he would have a great share in the Government, resolv'd to prevent the King, who was already come into the Province of *Karabach*, purposely to march in person against his Brother. To effect this, some of the great Lords of the Court, who hoped to get into favour with *Abas Myrsa*, corrupted one of *Ismael's* Barbers, named *Chudi*, who, coming to trim him, cut his Throat. The Lords, who were present at the execution, and thought it concern'd them to justifie themselves, kill'd the Barber, cut his body into little bits, and reduc'd it to ashes. Thus dy'd *Schach Ismael* III. in the eighth moneth of his reign.

Ismael III  
kill'd.

Schach-  
Abas suc-  
ceeds.

*Abas Myrsa* had already so far gain'd the affections of the *Persians*, by his vivacity of spirit, and the moderation they had observ'd through the whole course of his life, that he ascended the Throne with the general satisfaction of all the people. But the favour of *Murschidculi Chan*, who had most contributed to his advancement, continu'd not long: for assuming to him-  
self

self the same authority over the King, which he had had before, while he was onely *Myrfa* 1637.  
 or Prince, he became troublesome and insupportable, and that in so high a degree, that, one day, the King, desirous to give his opinion upon an affair of great importance, which had been propos'd, *Murschiduli-Chan* had the insolence to tell him, before a full Council, that he was not fit to speak of affairs of that nature, they being such as were above the reach of his age and understanding. The King dissembled, for the present, his Resentment thereof, but considering, that that Authority of *Murschiduli-Chan* would eclipse his own, and expose him to the contempt of his Subjects, he resolv'd to rid his Governour out of the way. He complain'd of his Favorite's insolence to three Lords of his Council, named *Mehediculi-Chan*, *Mahomed Usadsabi*, and *Aliculi-Chan*, of whom he thought he might be most confident; but finding they demurr'd upon the business, and, being not too well assur'd what resolution the King would take, in a business, which to them was of the greatest consequence of any in the World, that they endeavour'd to dissuade him from it, he told them, it was his will, that *Murschiduli-Chan* should die by their hands, and that if they made any scruple to do it, he should find means to be obey'd, as, on the contrary, he should not be backward in requiting their services, who upon that occasion should implicitly execute his commands. This extremity forc'd them to follow the King into his Favourite's Chamber, into which he got ere *Murschiduli-Chan* was awake, so that the King, having found him lying on his back, with his mouth open, gave him the first blow over-thwart the mouth. The rest gave him each of them a stab; but *Murschiduli-Chan*, being a very stout man, had the courage to get off his bed, and put himself into such a posture, as should have given them more fear, than he had receiv'd hurt from them, and no doubt he had dispatch'd some of his murtherers, had it not been for one of his Grooms, who coming in at the noise, with a battle-axe in his hand, the King said to him; *I would have the life of Murschiduli-Chan, who is become my Enemy; Go, dispatch him, and I will make thee a Chan.* The Groom did his work as the king commanded, went streight to his Master and dispatch'd him.

The next day, the king put to death all the relations and friends of *Murschiduli-Chan*, that so he might be absolutely eas'd of all the disturbances, which their discontents might have given him; and conferr'd on the Groom the Dignity of *Chan*, with the Government of *Herat*. This Execution happened in the year 1585. which was the first of the reign of *Schach Abas*.

The first actions of *Schach-Abas* made a sufficient discovery of his abilities in order to Government, and that there was no necessity of his being any longer under the Eye and Conduct of another. All his thoughts were bent upon recovering the great Provinces, which the *Turks* and *Tartars* had usurp'd from the Crown of *Persia*, and he made an absolute resolution to declare a War against both those Nations, upon that score. Being one day at *Caswin*, he took a walk out of the Citie, and ask'd the Lords who follow'd him, whether there could be a nobler Countrey than that where they then were. There were some took the freedom to tell him, that it was indeed an excellent good Countrey, yet was it not to be compar'd with the Province of *Fars*, much less with that of *Chorasan*, especially that part of the said Province, which the *Usbeques* had taken from *Persia*, in the time of his Father's reign. Upon this discourse, he immediately resolv'd upon a War against the *Tartars*, and having rais'd a powerfull Army, he entred *Chorasan*. *Abdulla*, Prince of the *Usbeques*, met him, and, at first, with some advantage over him, in regard the Plague, which was got into *Schach Abas's* Army, and the unseasonable weather kept it from being in action. The two Armies were near six moneths in sight one of the other; but at last *Schach Abas* set upon *Abdulla*, and forc'd him to retreat to *Mesched*. *Schach Abas* continu'd three years in *Chorasan*, *Abdulla* being not in a condition to disturb him in his new Conquest, and when he attempted it; he was so unfortunate, that his Army was not onely defeated, but also he himself, with *Tilem-Chan*, his Brother, and his three Sons, who were in the Army, fell into the hands of *Schach-Abas*, who order'd them all to have their heads cut off. Afterwards *Schach-Abas* went to *Ispahan*, and found it so excellently well situated, and the Countrey about it so pleasant, that he resolv'd to make it the Metropolis of the Kingdom, beautifying it, to that end, with many Magnificent Structures, and among others, the *Allacapi*, or Sanctuary, and the Sumptuous *Mosquey Mehedi*, of which we have given an accompt already. In which Magnificence the Lords of the Court were desirous to imitate him, by building many rich and noble Palaces.

After these victories, he march'd against the *Turks*, and having understood by his Spies, that the Garrison of *Tabris* thought of nothing less than a War, he got together; with as little noise as might be, a little Army, with which he went in less than six dayes from *Ispahan* to *Tabris*, though it be ordinarily eighteen dayes journey for the Camels. Being come to the passage of *Scibli*, within four leagues of *Tabris*, where the *Turks* kept a party, rather to receive the customs upon Commodities, than to hinder the entrance of the *Persians*, he, with some Officers left the Army, and advanc'd as far as the Turn-Pike. The *Turks* imagining they were Merchants, the Secretary of the Custom-house address'd himself to *Schach-Abas*, and ask'd him for the duties. *Schach-Abas* told him, that he who carried the Purse was coming behind,



1637. and, having caus'd *Dsulfakar-Chan* to come up to him, he bid him give the other some money; but while the Secretary was telling it, he order'd one to dispatch him, made the Soldiers who kept the Post to submit, and pass'd over his Army. *Aly Bascha*, Governour of *Tabris*, having intelligence hereof, got some Troops together, at least as many as the distraction of his affairs would permit him to do, and went to meet *Abas*, but there being a great inequality between the Forces on both sides, he was overcome, and fell into the hands of the *Persians*. In the middle of the Citie, there was a Citadel, built by *Hassan Padschach*, otherwise called *Ussum Cassan*, which the *Turks* kept a moneth after, but, at last, it was taken, by intelligence, and afterwards demolish'd. Thence he went to *Nachtzuan*; but the *Turkish* Garrison quitted the place, upon the first news they receiv'd of the *Persian* Army's coming towards it, and retreated to *Iruan*. *Schach-Abas* ordered also the demolishing of the Citadel of *Nachtzuan*, called *Kischikalaban*, and went and lay before *Iruan*, which he took after a siege of nine moneths. This Conquest facilitated his reduction of all the other Cities and Neighbouring Provinces, all which were reduc'd, save onely the Fortrefs of *Orumi*, the strong and advantageous situation whereof, being on the point of a Rock, putting him out of all hope of taking it by storm. He besieg'd it eight moneths together, but finding that the *Kurdes* did him more mischief than the *Turks* themselves, though they were a free people, and had no dependence on the *Grand Seigneur*, he gain'd the affections of the chiefest among them by Presents and Promises, putting them in hope of all advantages on his side, if they would help him to take in that place, and promis'd them all the booty they should find there. The *Kurdes*, who live onely by Rapine, were willing to serve him upon those terms. But *Schach-Abas* having receiv'd that service from them, and taken the Fort by their means, sent to invite the chiefest among them to come and Dine with him. He had his Tent made with so many turnings and windings, and had those so done over with Cloaths, that they who came in saw not such as were but six paces before them. He had planted two Executioners in the way, who dispatch'd his Guests as they came into the Tent; and this course he took with them, out of an apprehension they might do the *Turks* the same services he had receiv'd from them. He made *Kaban Chan*, Governour of *Orumi* and the neighbouring Province, and marching still on, he became Master of all between the Rivers of *Cyrus* and *Araxis*, and reduc'd into his power the Citie of *Scamachie*, after a siege of seven weeks, together with the whole Province of *Schiruan*, which he left under the Command of *Dsulfakar-Chan* his Brother-in-law, The Inhabitants of *Derbent*, hearing what success *Schach-Abas* had had against the *Turks*, kill'd their *Turkish* Garrison, and submitted to the King of *Persia*. Then he entred the Province of *Kilan*, and reduc'd to obedience those people who fell off from the King's of *Persia*, in the time of *Schach-Tamas*. He ordered to be made neer *Lankeran*, where a great Fen in a manner cover'd that whole Province, and made the entrance into it very difficult, a way or Bank of Sand, and settled *Chans* in several places of the Province; to wit, *Baindure-Chan*, at *Astara*, *Mortusa Kuli-Chan*, at *Kesker*, *Heider-Chan*, at *Turkabun*, a *Visir*, at *Resehr*, *Adam Sulthan*, in *Mesanderan*, and *Hossein-Chan*, at *Astarabad*.

It was *Schach-Abas* his intention to sit still with these Conquests, but the quiet he had after them was so little, that he had hardly the time to have his Sovereignty acknowledg'd. For, being at *Ispahan*, about a year after this War, intelligence was brought him that the *Turk* was coming into *Persia*, with an Army of five hundred thousand men; whereupon he got together all the Forces he could, and appointed them their Rendezvous at *Tabris*, and ordered all the Inhabitants of the Frontiers, to retire, with their Cattel, into Cities and Wall'd Towns, to destroy all in the Fields, that the Enemy might make no advantage thereof in order to his subsistence. The *Turk* having advanc'd, and encamp'd neer *Tabris*, the King of *Persia* caus'd it to be publish'd through his Army, that such as were willing to serve as Volunteers, should list themselves apart, and that for every *Turks* head they brought him, he would pay fifty Crowns. About five thousand *Persians* list'd themselves upon that account; so that not a day pass'd, but some heads were brought in, and at his rising every morning, a good number was presented to him. Nay, one Soldier, named *Bairam Tekel* brought him one morning five together, and by that means gain'd the favour of *Schach-Abas*, who rais'd him to the Dignity of *Chan*.

At the end of three moneths *Tzakal Ogli*, who commanded the *Turkish* Army, sent a kind of Challenge to *Schach-Abas*, telling him, that if he had as much confidence in God and the Justice of his cause, as he would have the *VV*orld believe, he should not be afraid of accepting a general Engagement, which he thereby profer'd him. *Abas* was content, and having divided the ground, the Sun and the *VV*ind with his Enemy, gave him battel. It lasted all that day; and the night following, the *Turks*, who had lost many of their men, retreated. The next day word was brought to the Camp, that the *Turks* were retreated; but *Abas*, who fear'd it might be a stratageme of theirs, stood on his Guard for three dayes, keeping the Army upon continual duty, and not so much as going himself into his Tent during that time; till that the Scouts having at last brought him word, that the Enemy was effectually retreated towards the Frontiers, he advanc'd to the Mountain of *Sehend*, where he Encamped, and there it was, that *Mahumed Chan Kasak*, *Schaheruch-Chan*, *Esschar*, and *Fischan*, *Kurtzbaschi*, were

cut to pieces, for having given the king poyson, who immediately taking an Antidote, receiv'd no hurt thereby. 1637.

Two years after this War, the *Turk* made another invasion into *Persia*, with an Army of three hundred thousand men, and belieged the Fortrefs of *Iruan*, in the Province of the same name: but he was forc'd to raise the liege and to retreat. About two years after that, *Murat Bascha*, General of the *Turkish* Army, besieg'd and took *Tabris*, and kept it four moneths, within which time there happen'd five set battels between those two Nations, with little advantage to the *Persians*. And yet at last *Schach-Abas* defeated the *Turks*, and recover'd the Citie out of their hands. Being, after this expedition, return'd to *Ardebil*, he there caus'd to be kill'd *Djulfakar*, Chan of *Scamachie* in the manner we have related before, and put into his Government *Jusuf-Chan*, an *Armenian* by birth, and by condition a Slave, who had a long time serv'd him as an ordinary Foot-man.

After this, *Persia* enjoy'd a Peace of twenty years together, at the end whereof the *Turks* entred it again with a powerfull Army, under the Command of *Chalil Basscha*, with whom joyned also several parties of the *Tartars* of *Crim* and *Precop*. *Schach-Abas* sent against them *Kartzschuckai-Chan*, the most Valiant and most Fortunate of all his Captains, who wearied them out, and forc'd them to retreat, after several Engagements, or Skirmishes rather, wherein he took Prisoners two *Tartar-Princes*, *Omerfbeg*, and *Schabinkeraï-Chan*, and the *Bashaws* of *Egypt*, *Aleppo*, *Erserum*, and *Wan*. The King, instead of treating them ill, presented each of them with a Garment and an excellent Horfe, and sent them back without paying any Ransom.

Afterwards, *Schach-Abas* went into *Georgia*, where he staid nine moneths. During his aboad there, *Tameras-Chan*, the Son of *Simon* had the confidence to enter with an Army into the Province of *Seggen*, in the midst of *Georgia*, and to give battel to *Schach-Abas*; but he was forc'd to retreat with great loss. While he was in those parts, he pay'd his Army twelve Musters together, and hearing that his Soldiers spent most of their money in *Tobacco*, he forbid the use of it, with such severity, that he caus'd their Noses and Lips to be cut off, who were found to have taken of it, contrary to the Prohibitions: and having understood, that a Merchant, who knew not that the king had forbidden the use of *Tobacco*, and brought several Bags of it into the Army, in hopes to make a greater advantage thereof among the Soldiers, he order'd him to be set on a heap of Fagots, with all his *Tobacco* about him, which being set on fire, he, and his Commodity were reduc'd to smoke and ashes.

After this was it that *Schach-Abas* went into *Kilan*, where he put to death his eldest Son, as we shall relate anon. *Schach-Abas* had three lawful Wives, and four or five hundred Concubines. By his three Wives he had so many Sons, to wit, *Sefi Myrfa*, *Chodabende Myrfa*, and *Imanculi Myrfa*. He ordered the two younger to have their eyes put out with fire, and confin'd them in the Fortrefs of *Alamuth*, under a very strict Guard. The eldest Son was born of a *Christian* Slave, of *Georgia*. This Prince having cast his Eye on a very handsom young Maid of *Circassia*, whom a Merchant of *Scamachie* had presented to *Schach-Abas*, fell in Love with her, and intreated his Father to permit he should marry her. The king who dearly lov'd that Prince, by reason of the great compliyance he had for him, consented thereto, and ordered her to be brought up in the *Seraglio*, near the Mother of *Sefi Myrfa*, who had by her *Sain Myrfa*, since king of *Persia*, under the name of *Schach-Sefi*.

The Over-severe, or rather, Cruel, and Tyrannical reign of *Schach-Abas*, began to grow so odious and insupportable to the Grandees of the kingdom, that some had the confidence to cast a Note into *Sefi Myrfa's* Chamber, whereby they discover'd to him, that if he would not stand in his own way, he might immediately succeed the king his Father, and that if he would consent to the Execution of the Design they were engag'd in to that end, they would soon show him how the business was to be effected. *Sefi* conceiv'd a horrour at the Proposition, whereby he was to be a complice in his Father's death, and thereupon carried the Note to the king, accompanying his free and innocent proceeding with so many protestations of the sincerity of his intentions, and an absolute dependence on his Father's will, as might well satisfie any other mind less distrustfull than that of *Schach-Abas*. He could not forbear expressing outwardly, that he was very well satisfy'd with his Son, and commended his affection and piety: but he afterwards fell into such frights, as depriv'd him of all rest, and oblig'd him to change his Lodging twice or thrice in a night, with such disturbances, as he conceiv'd he could not be deliver'd of otherwise than by the death of his Son. According to these apprehensions, being one day at *Rescht* in the Province of *Kilan*, with the whole Court about him, a Flatterer so heighten'd the distractions of his mind, by the false Alarm he gave him of a new Conspiracy of *Sefi Myrfa's*, with several of the great Lords of the kingdom against him, that he resolv'd he should dye.

He thought, at first to employ in that Commission *Kartzschuckai-Chan*, General of the Army, or Constable of *Persia*, and would have oblig'd him to kill his Son with his own hands.

1637. This Lord, was Originally descended from an *Armenian* Family, born by Father and Mother-side of *Christians*, and had been stolen away in his youth by the *Tartars*, who had Circumcis'd and sold him to *Schach-Abas*. The freedom and sincerity of his disposition and demeanour, had gain'd him the friendship of the whole Court, and his courage had so well settled him in the king's favour, that having, by his means, had several great victories over his Enemies, he had conferr'd on him the Command of his Army, and look'd upon him with such respect, that he never call'd him by any other name than that of *Aga*, that is, the Captain.

The king would needs put him upon this important service, as considering him to be the person, who of any in his kingdom was the most oblig'd to him for his Fortune. But the grave old Man, having laid down his Sword at the kings feet, and cast himself by it, told him, that he was so infinitely oblig'd to his Majesty, that he would rather lose a thousand lives, than that he should be ever reproach'd to have imbrud his hands in the blood of any of the royal Progeny, so far was it against his Soul to commit a Crime of that nature, and by putting to death the Heir of the Crown, execute a command which the king could not impose upon him without regret, and which were no sooner put in Execution, but he would repent him of it. *Schach-Abas* was satisfy'd with this excuse, from him, and made the same Proposition to a Gentleman, named *Bebut-Beg*, whom he found not so scrupulous as *Kartzschuckai-Chan*. This man having undertaken that Commission went immediately to *Sefi Myrfa*, and having met him coming out of a Bath, riding on a Mule, and accompany'd only by a single Page, layes hold on the Bridle, staves the Mule, and sayes, Alight, *Sefi Myrfa*, it is the pleasure of the king thy Father that thou should'st die, and thereupon throws him down. The unfortunate Prince, joyning his hands together, and lifting up his eyes to Heaven, cries out. *O my God! what have I done to deserve this disgrace? Cursed be the Traytor who is the occasion thereof. But since it is the pleasure of God thus to dispose of me, Gods will and the King's be done.*

He had hardly the time to speak out those words, ere *Bebut* gave him two stabs with a *Chentze*, which is a kind of Ponyard, ordinarily worn by the *Persians* in their Girdles, wherewith he laid him dead upon the place. The body was dragg'd into a Fen not far thence, where it continu'd above four hours. In the mean time, the news of this Murther being brought into the City, the people ran in multitudes to the Palace, threatned to force the Gates, and would have the Authors thereof deliver'd up to them, in so much that the *Chans*, who were afraid, that in the fury of their first insurrection, the people would wreak their malice indifferently on all they met, forsook the king, and got away. The Queen, *Sefi Myrfa's* Mother, understanding that her Son had been kill'd by the king's express order, was so overcome with grief, that not minding the humour of the Prince she had then to do withall, who could not endure the least opposition, she ran into the king's Apartment, and not thinking it enough to reproach him with his inhumanity, and the barbarous death of an innocent Prince, and one whom he had tenderly lov'd, she flew in his face, and beat him with her fists. But the king, instead of being angry with her, was at an absolute loss, and at last made her answer with tears in his eyes; *What would you have had me to do? News was brought me that he had a design upon my life. There is now no remedy, what's done cannot be recall'd.*

On the other side, *Schach-Abas* had no sooner heard of this execution, but it repented him of having commanded it, and express'd no small regret, that he had proceeded with so much precipitation in a business of that importance. He thought it not enough to acknowledge it done by his order, but would needs continue ten dayes shut up in a place where he would not see the light of the Sun, as having all that time a Handkercher over his eyes. He liv'd a whole moneth, and eat no more than what was purely necessary to keep him from starving. He went in mourning a whole year, and all his life after he wore not any thing about him, that might, as to matter of Cloaths, distinguish him from the meanest of his Subjects. And in some sort, to eternize the memory of the Prince, he caus'd the place where he was kill'd, to be encompass'd with a high Wall, made a Sanctuary of it, and allow'd it a certain Revenue, for the entertainment of a great number of poor people. The first ten dayes of his greatest mourning being over, he went from *Rescht* to *Caswin*, where he would needs entertain the *Chans*, whom he any way suspected, and the Flatterer, who had made him jealous of the Prince, at a Dinner, but he caus'd poyson to be mixt in their Wine, and kept them so long at Table till he saw them all dead in the place.

The action of *Bebut-beg* was indeed recompens'd with the charge of *Darnga*, of *Caswin*, and some time after with that of *Chan* of *Kesker*; but he could not avoid the punishment which so base a compliance too well deserv'd. For the first journey the king made to *Caswin*, after that we spoke of before, he commanded *Bebut*, to go and cut off, with his own hands, his Son's head, and to bring it him. He was forc'd to obey, and *Schach-Abas* seeing him coming into the Room with his Son's head, ask'd him how he did. *Bebut* made answer, Alas my Liege, I think I need not tell you; I have been forc'd with my own hands to kill my only Son, whom I lov'd above any thing in the World; the grief I shall conceive thereat will bring me to my Grave. The king reply'd, *Go thy wayes, Bebut, and consider how great must have been my affliction,*

*fiction, when thou broughtst the news of my Son's death, whom I had commanded thee to put to death. But comfort thy self, my Son and thine are no more, and reflect, that thou art in this equal* 1637.  
*to the King thy master.*

Not long after this unhappy Paricide, *Bebut* ended his life after an extraordinary manner. *Assassinat*  
 For, soon after he had taken possession of the Government of *Kesker*, one of his servants, *punish'd.*  
 giving him water to wash after Dinner, according to the *Persian* custom; pour'd it on so hot  
 that it scalded his hands, which incens'd him so that he threatned to have him cut to pieces; but  
 the Slave prevented him, and considering that he who had been so barbarous as to murder his  
 Prince and his own Son, would make no great difficulty to rid the World of a servant, he  
 conspir'd with some of his Camerades, who expected no better treatment from their Master,  
 and kill'd him the night following in his drink. *Schach-Abas* was not much troubled, that that  
 hatefull object was remov'd out of his sight, and would not have prosecuted the Murderers,  
 had not the other *Chans* represented to him, that, if they were not made examples, no Lord  
 could think himself secure among his servants, after he had given them some theatning  
 language.

But *Schach-Abas's* affliction, and the regret he express'd for his Son's death, how great  
 soever they might be, took not off the just apprehensions the Widdow conceiv'd, that he had  
 a design to put to death his Grand-Child *Sain Myrja*. Whence it came, that she kept him a  
 long time conceal'd, and would not suffer him to be brought to Court, though the King, who  
 saw his two younger Sons, whose eyes he had caus'd to be put out, were excluded the Go-  
 vernment, by the Laws of the Kingdom, design'd that little Prince to succeed him. 'Tis repor-  
 ted he had a great tenderness for him, and yet left he should appear to soon, and the vivacity  
 of his spirit revive the affection which the people had express'd towards his Father, he endea-  
 vour'd to have his senses dull'd, and commanded there should be given him every day about the  
 bigness of a Pea of *Opium*, the use whereof is very common in *Persia*, as we have said elsewhere;  
 but that the Mother, instead of giving him that Drug, made him often take Treacle, and se-  
 veral other preservatives against the poyson, which she conceiv'd she had some cause to suspect  
 might be given him.

While *Schach-Abas* was in *Kilan*, *Tamaras-Chan*, taking advantage of his absence, entred  
 again with an Army into *Georgia*, and recover'd all those places, out of which he had been  
 forc'd. The King sent thither *Aliculi-Ghan*; *Mahumed-Chan*, *Kasack*, and *Mortusasuli*,  
*Chan* of *Talisch*, and several other *Chans*, who could do no good there, but brought word  
 back, that they had found the Enemy so advantageously posted, that they durst not set upon  
 him. The King punish'd their seeming prudence with death, and went the next year in person  
 into *Georgia*, protesting at his departure, that if he return'd victorious from that VVar, he  
 would sell the *Georgians*, at an *Abas*, or fifteen pence a head. Upon which occasion they say  
 it hapned, that the King being Master of the Field, and having taken a great number of Priso-  
 ners, a Souldier came to him, with two *Abases* in his hand, and desir'd him to sell him two  
 handfom young Maids, who were among the Prisoners, and that the King remembering his  
 Oath, permitted him to take his choice. It was about this time, that most of the *Georgian*  
*Christians*, who liv'd at *Ispahan* at the time of our being there, came out of their Country to  
 settle themselves in the Metropolis of the Kingdom.

Much also about the same time, was it, that *Schach-Abas* receiv'd Letters from *Bekirkeha*, who,  
 under the Grand-Seignor, commanded the Garrison of *Bagdat* or *Babylon*. This man,  
 dissatisfy'd with the Court, upon his being deny'd the Government of that place, at the *Bassa's*  
 death, under whom he had had the Lieutenancy, proffer'd *Schach-Abas* to deliver up the City  
 to him. The King hearkned to that Proposition, and immediately took his march with a good  
 Army towards those parts; but ere he got thither, *Bekirkeha's* discontent was over, so far that  
 he sent *Schach-Abas* word, that he had only Powder and Bullets at his service. He was so net-  
 led at the affront, that he protested not to return thence till he had taken the City, though it  
 should cost him his life. Accordingly, having pass'd over the Ditch, after a siege of six months,  
 and having set fire to a Mine, which work the *Persians* are very excellent at, he caus'd an as-  
 fault to be given, entred the breach, and became Master of the City, without any composition.  
*Bekirkeha* being found among the Prisoners, was sown up in a raw Ox-Hide. and in that condi-  
 tion plac'd near the High-way, where the King order'd him to be fed, till such time as the heat  
 of the Sun having made the Hide shrink together, he died a very painful death. His Son cast  
 himself at *Schach-Abas's* feet, and satisfy'd him so far of his being wholly unconcern'd in his  
 Father's proceeding, that having begg'd his Pardon, he by that submission obtain'd the Go-  
 vernment of *Schiras*, which *Schach-Abas* made no difficulty to bestow on him; in regard that  
 lying at a great distance from the Frontiers of *Turkey*, he fear'd not his proving unfaithful to  
 him.

The year following, the Emperour of the *Turks* caus'd *Bagdat* to be besieg'd, by the *Bassa*,  
*Hafis Ahmed*; but *Abas* forc'd him to raise the siege, and continu'd eight moneths together in  
 sight of the *Turkish* Army, till such time as sickness having consum'd a great number of the  
*Turks*,

1637. *Turks*, who were not so well able to endure the great heats, as the *Persians*, *Hafis* was oblig'd to retreat to *Constantinople*. At his return from this expedition, *Schach-Abas* began to build the Citie of *Ferabath*, in the Province of *Mesandran*, upon occasion of a Village, named *Tahona*, situated upon a pleasant River, which, not far thence, falls into the *Caspian Sea*.

This Victory procur'd him but two years rest. For the *Turkish* Emperour, desirous to recover *Bagdat*, sent *Chalil Bassa*, with an Army of five hundred thousand men, to reduce it. *Schach-Abas* commanded *Kartzschugai-Chan* to march to the relief of the Citie, with a small Brigade, but consisting of choice men, and he follow'd him in person, with the whole Army. He himself got into the Citie, and sent *Kartzschugai-Chan* to meet the *Turk*, whom he wearied out with perpetual skirmishes for six moneths together. At last he gave him battel, disorder'd, and defeated him, forcing him to fly as far as *Netzed*. Upon the first news of the Victory, *Schach-Abas* left the Citie, to go and meet *Kartzschugai-Chan*, and being come neer him alighted, and said to him; My dearest *Aga*, I have by thy means and conduct obtain'd so noble a Victory, that I would not have desir'd a greater of God, come, get up on my Horse, 'tis fit I should be thy Lackey. *Kartzschugai* was so surpriz'd at this discourse, that he cast himself at his feet, intreated his Majesty to look on him as his slave, and not to expose him to the derision of all the World, by doing him an honour so extraordinary, as that it was impossible he could any way deserve it. But notwithstanding all his intreaties, he was forc'd to get up, the King and the *Chans* following on foot, onely seven paces. *Schach-Abas* had many other Wars against the *Turks*; but the most signal Victory he ever got over his Enemies, was at the reduction of the Citie of *Ormuz*, which he recover'd from the *Portuguez*, six years before his death. Of that an account shall be given in the subsequent Travels of *Mandelslo*.

About the end of the year 1629. he took a journey to *Ferabath*, in the Province of *Mesandran*, which was the place he most delighted in of any in his Kingdom; but he there fell so ill, that, perceiving he should not escape, he sent for four Lords of the chiefest of his Council, to wit, *Isa-Chan*, *Kurtzibaschi*, *Seiul Chan*, *Tuschmal*, or Councillor of State, *Temerbey*, *Onwogly*, or Lord High-Steward, and *Jusuf Aga*, chief Gentleman of his Chamber, who being come to his Bed-side, he told them. That, firmly believing the sickness he was then in would be his last, it was his pleasure, that his Grand-Child, *Sain Myrsa*, should succeed him, and assume his Father's name, obliging them all solemnly to promise him, that, after his death, they would religiously execute his Last Will. The Astrologers had told *Schach-Abas*, that *Sain* should reign but eight moneths at most; but when these Lords would have spoke to him of that Prediction, the King made answer, *Let him reign as long as he can, though it were but three dayes; it will be some satisfaction to me, to be assur'd, that he shall one day have on his head the Crown which was due to the Prince his Father.*

'Twas conceiv'd, he had had some poyson given him, upon which presumption the *Hakim Jusuf*, his Physician, order'd him hot bathing for eight dayes together, and for four dayes afterward another kind of Bath, of Cows milk: but all these remedies being either ineffectual, or too weak, he seriously prepar'd himself for death, even to the appointing of the place where he would be interr'd. But that the people might not certainly know it, he commanded the Ceremonies of his Funeral should be Celebrated in three several places, at the same time, to wit, at *Ardebil*, *Mesched*, and *Babylon*; but the more general report is, that the body was carried to *Babylon*, and thence to the *Netzes*, of *Kufa*, neer the Sepulchre of *Aly*, upon this accompt, that *Schach-Abas*, going to *Kufa*, soon after the reduction of *Babylon*, and looking on the *Netzes*, said, he had never seen a more delightfull place, and that he should wish to be there interr'd after his death. What ere became of his body, certain it is that he dy'd, in the year 1629, having liv'd 63. years, and reign'd 45. He discover'd the strength of his memory and understanding, in the order he took, at his death, that it might be kept secret, till his Grand-Child were assur'd of the Succession; commanding that they should expose his body every day in the same Hall, where he was wont to administer Justice, set in a Chair of State, with his eyes open, his back turn'd to the Hangings, behind which stood *Jusuf Aga*, who ever and anon made him lift up his Arm, by means of a silk string, and answer'd those things which were proposed by *Temir-beg*, on the behalf of such as were at the other end of the Hall, and who were thereby perswaded that *Schach-Abas* was still alive. This was so well personated, that his death was conceal'd, for the space of six weeks.

The *Persians* honour the memory of *Schach-Abas*.

The *Persians* have a Veneration for the memory of this Prince, and speak of him as of the greatest King that *Persia* hath had these many ages. And indeed, take but out of his life, the examples of cruelty we have touch'd at before, it must be acknowledg'd, that, if we may not number him among the good, yet must we assign him a place among the greatest Princes, of any mentioned in the modern Histories. He was Wise and Valiant, and hath heightned the glory of *Persia* by the great Victories he obtain'd over his Enemies, extending by that means the Territories of his Kingdom of all sides, towards the *Indians*, the *Turks* and the *Tartars*. The *Augustine* Friars told us, that, he was so far from having any aversion for *Christian* Religion, that, on the contrary, he often came to their Monastery, made them Dine with him, sent for them



1<sup>st</sup> part Lib. 6<sup>th</sup> Page 267.

Schach Sefi. King of Persia  
Aged xxxvij Years 1642.

them in the night, put their Beads about his Neck, fighting, and saying, that he knew not which Religion he should embrace, and discourting very familiarly with them. He had a great fence of the miseries of the Poor, and took a particular care for their subsistence. Whence it came that it was ordinary with him, after his departure out of some Citie to return into it again *incognito*, to go to the Market, and to examine their weights, and the goodness of their Bread and other Provisions, severely punishing such as he found guilty of any Circumvention. Being one day at *Ardabil*, he ordered to be put into a red hot Oven, a certain rich Baker, who refus'd to sell Bread to the Poor, under pretence that he was oblig'd to keep it for *Abas*, and his Soldiers, who, as he said, could never be satisfy'd; and he caus'd to be fasten'd, by the back, to the hooks on which the Mear had hung, a Butcher, whose weights had been found too light. He took a pleasure in bestowing, in Alms, the money he got from publick places, as being perswaded they could not be acceptable to God, if that sacrifice were made of that money which is taken from the people. He could not endure those Judges who receiv'd money on either side, and severely punish'd such as were guilty of Concussions, and manifest injustice. For, coming to understand that a *Kasi*, or Judge of *Ispahan*, after he had taken Presents from both sides, to wit, some 70. l. *sterl.* from each, would have perswaded them to come to accommodation, he ordered him to be set on an Ass, with his face towards the tayl, which serv'd him for a Bridle, and upon his Judge's Robe caus'd to be put the Entrails of a Sheep newly kill'd, cut in several places, and in that posture he made him take several turns about the *Maydan*; having it cry'd before him, that this should be the punishment of a corrupt Judge.

While *Temir-beg*, and *Jusuf Aga*, expos'd, at *Ferabath*, the Carkase of *Schach-Abas*, Schach- as we said before *Seinel-Chan* made all the haste he could to *Ispahan*, whither he brought the *Sefi*, *Succoeds his Grand-father.* news of the King's death to the *Daruga*, *Chofrou Myrfa*, and having consulted with him about the means they should use to advance *Sain Myrfa* to the Throne, they went together to the Appartment of the Princess, his Mother, which is called *Taberick-kale*, and intreated her to put the young Prince into their hands. The Mother, who still had before her eyes the violent death of her Husband, believing it was some fiction, and that they had order from *Schach-Abas* to Murther the Prince, lock'd her self up in her Chamber, and made all passages so fast, that these two Lords being out of all hopes to perswade her, and being afraid to let slip the opportunity of executing the deceas'd Kings last Will, after they had lain three dayes at the Princess's Chamber door, sent her word, that if she would not open, they should be forc'd to break it. Upon this message she at last opened the door, and presented to them the Prince her Son; but, conceiving it was in order to his present execution, with these words; *Go child to the same place where thy Father is, here are the murderers ready to dispatch thee.* But when she saw those Lords prostrate themselves, and kissing the Prince's feet, her fright was turn'd into perfect joy. The Lords conducted the Prince to the Palace-Royal, where they set him in the *Divan-Chane*, upon a Table of stone, on which were as many Carpets, (which they call *Kalitse Abdalet*, or Carpets of Justice) as there had been Kings of *Persia* of his Family, (in as much as every King, at his first coming to the Crown, causes one to be made for him) and having sent for all the *Chans* and Lords who were about *Ispahan*, they Crown'd him, kiss'd his feet, and wishing him a long and happy Reign, setled him in the Throne of his Ancestors.

Immediately after the Ceremonies of his Coronation, he took the name of *Sefi*, according to the desire of *Schach-Abas*, and bestow'd on the *Chofrou Myrfa* the Dignity of *Chan*, with the name of *Rustam*, as desirous, by that means, to revive, in his person, the memory of the great *Heroe*, so highly Celebrated in their Histories and Romances.

It is reported that *Schach-Sefi* came into the World with his hands all bloody, and that *Schach-Abas*, his Grand-Father, hearing of it, said, that that Prince should often bath his hands in blood. Accordingly, till the time of our Embassy, his reign had been so cruel and bloody, that *Persia* had not, for many ages before, seen so many executions. For immediately upon his coming to the Crown, he follow'd the counsel of the Chancellor, Predecessor to him whom we knew, and made away *Rustan-Chan*, whom he had made Generalissimo of the Armies of *Persia*, and Governour of *Tiflis*, and several other Lords, and caus'd to be cut in pieces, or kill'd with his own hands, all his own relations, and what other persons soever he was any way distrustfull of, by that means so accustoming himself to blood, that, when he was incens'd, he spar'd none, and kill'd or order'd to be kill'd, upon trivial occasions, such as he was any way displeas'd with. I shall here produce a few examples thereof, that the Reader may, by them, as a Pattern, judge of the rest of his life.

He began his cruelties, by an onely Brother, though born of a Concubine, whose eyes he caus'd to be put out. *Chodabende*, and *Imantuli Myrfa* his Uncles, younger brethren to *Sefi Myrfa*, whom *Schach-Abas*, their Father, had confin'd in the Castle of *Alamush*, thirty Leagues from *Caswin*, after he had put out their eyes as we said before, were cast down headlong from a high Rock, for this reason, as *Sefi* said, that, having lost the benefit of their sight, they were useles in the World. Afterwards he dispatch'd *Isa-Chan*, his Uncle, after he had cut off the heads of his three Sons, upon the following occasion.

1637. *Isa-Chan* was so much in favour with *Schach-Abas*, that the King, willing to make it appear what extraordinary respect he had for him, bestow'd on him his Daughter, by whom he had the three Sons, whom *Sefi* put to death. She was a very handfom Woman, and of a pleasant conversation, insomuch that *Schach-Sefi*, her Nephew, was extremely taken with her company. This Princess, being one day with the king, took the freedom to jeast with him, and to tell him, she much wondred, that he, who was so young and vigorous, and had so many great beauties to command, could get no Children, whereas she had had three by her Husband. The king made answer, that he was young, and having, as he hoped, many years to reign, there would be time enough to get Heirs to inherit the Crown after him. But the Princess desirous to keep on the jeast, reply'd, that ground not well cultivated would hardly bring forth any thing, imprudently adding, You speak very well, my Liege, but I fear me, that after your death the *Persians* will be glad to pitch upon one of my Sons to succeed you. The king was extremely troubled at the boldness and bitterness of the jeast, but made a shift to dissemble it, and to get out of the Room, without the Princess's perceiving that he was incens'd against her.

The next day, the King commanded the three Sons of *Isa-Chan* to be brought to him; the eldest was 22. years of age, the second 15. and the third 9. and having convey'd them into a Garden, he caus'd their heads to be cut off, and at Dinner time having dispos'd the three heads into one of those cover'd Pots, in which the *Persians* bring the Rice and Meat to be set on the Table, and sending for the Mother, he order'd them to be taken out one after another, by the Nose, and said to the Princess; *See the children of a Woman who brag'd so much of her fertility; go, thou art young enough to bear more of them.* The Princess was so astonish'd at that horrid Spectacle, that she was not able to speak a word; but perceiving in the Kings eyes and countenance the eruptions of his indignation, which she imagin'd might break forth to her unavoidable death, she cast her self at his feet, kiss'd them, and said to him, *All is well, all is well; God grant the King a long and happy life.* This forc'd compliance sav'd her life. But as soon as she had left the Room, *Sefi* sent for *Isa-Chan*, and pointing with his finger to the heads of his Children, ask'd him what he thought of that pleasant Spectacle. *Isa-Chan*, who knew what humour the Prince was of, and whom he had to do withall, smother'd the tenderness of a paternal affection, and made answer, that he was so far from being displeas'd thereat, that if the King had commanded him, to bring the heads of his Sons, he would have been the Executioner himself, and that he would have no Children, if the Kings pleasure were it should be otherwise. This base and brutish flattery sav'd *Isa-Chan's* life at that time; but the King reflecting, that he could not be faithfull to him, at lest that it was impossible he should love him, after he had been so treated by him, gave order his head should be also cut off.

*Kills Seinel-Chan with his own hands.* We said before, that *Isa-Chan* was one of those who had most contributed to the advancement of *Schach-Sefi* to the Throne of his Predecessors. *Seinel-Chan* had also done much in that business; whence it came he was not to expect any better treatment than the other, from him whom he had rais'd to a condition to commit so many inhumane actions. *Schach-Sefi*, having forc'd the *Turks*, to raise the siege they had lay'd before *Bagdat* in the year 1632. encamp'd with his Army near *Hemedan*, at which place, several Lords, reflecting on the executions wherewith the King had signaliz'd the beginning of his reign, said among themselves, that since in his tender age, he could commit so many cruelties, it was likely he would in time, extirpate all the Grandees of *Persia*. *Seinel-Chan*, who was present at this discourse, went immediately to the King, and gave him an account of what had past in that conference, advising him to rid himself of those who had most credit among them, and so secure his own life. The King made him answer; *Thy advice, Seinel-Chan, is so good, that I will immediately follow it; and I will begin with thee; for thou art the person of greatest age and most authority among them, and must needs be of the conspiracy.* And I shall in that follow the example of the King, my Grand-Father, whose reign was neither safe nor happy, till he had executed him, who had the same charge of *Kurtzibachi*, which thou now enjoyest. *Seinel-Chan* reply'd, that that would be no hard matter for him to do; that, for his part, he was arriv'd to the greatest age man could attain, and that it would not trouble him much, his life should be shortned some few dayes: but that his Majesty would haply one day be troubled, that he had put to death one of his most faithfull servants, and that he should rather consider the importance of the discovery he had made to him, and the earnestness he had therein express'd to serve him. This answer delay'd the execution of what the king had resolv'd to do; so that he thereupon went to his Mother, who had follow'd him in his expedition, with the other Ladies of the *Seraglio*, according to the antient custom of *Persia*, to acquaint her with what he had heard. The next morning the Princess sent for *Seinel-Chan* to her Tent door, to hear from him all the circumstances of that Conspiracy, but as soon as the king heard that *Seinel-Chan* had spoken to his Mother, he was so incens'd thereat, that he went and kill'd him with his own hands, in the presence of the Princess.

This certainly was one of the greatest persons in the kingdom, who ought his fortune to his conduct, and the trust wherewith he had serv'd *Schach-Abas* in several affairs of great importance: whereof we shall here allege only one example.



*Schach-Abas* being to send a solemn Embassy to *Labor*, to the Great *Mogul*, about the differences there were between them for the Frontiers of *Candahar*, would needs employ in it *Seinel Chan*, as being the person, whom, of all his Ministers, he repos'd greatest confidence in; and as he took leave of him in order to his departure, he said to him: *For this employment, I have made choice of thee, Seinel, out of the assurance I have of thy fidelity, whereof I expect the utmost demonstration in this Embassy. For as this shirt sticks close to my back, so would I have thee to be so tenderly concern'd in my interests, that thou do nothing in this charge that may be prejudicial either to my reputation or my service.* *Seinel-Chan* promis'd him his utmost care, and was as good as his word. For being come to the *Mogul's* Court, he refus'd doing him reverence, according to the custom of the Countrey, by putting both hands first to the ground, and afterwards upon his head, but he entred the Room with a grave and settled gate, and only saluted the king with his *Salomalek*. The *Indian* Prince was so troubled at it, that he sent to intreat him to demean himself otherwise, and to render him the same respects, as the Ambassadors of *Persia* were wont to approach him withall. Nay, he would have prevail'd with him to do it, by the proffers he caus'd to be made him of several considerable Presents; but perceiving, that nothing would work with him, he bethought him, to make, opposite to his Throne, a Door so low, that *Seinel-Chan* could not come in at without stooping, and consequently not avoid doing him reverence. But *Seinel-Chan* found means to elude that Artifice, and entred the king's Chamber backwards, so that the first part that came within the Door was his britch. This irreverence put the *Mogul* out of all patience; so that, he not only forbore making him those Presents, which are ordinarily made Ambassadors, and in those parts are of no small value, but also forbid his people to supply him with the ordinary Provisions; which reduc'd him to such extremities, that he was forc'd to sell his Plate, and what ever there was of Gold or Silver about the Saddles and Trappings of his Horses, to subsist. The *Mogul* made his complaints to *Schach-Abas*, of this demeanour of *Seinel-Chan*, and the king pretended to be troubled at the little respect he had rendred the *Mogul*; but he made it appear, on the contrary, that he was well satisfy'd w<sup>th</sup> his behaviour towards that *Industhan* Prince. For not long after he honour'd him with the Title of *Chan*, and bestow'd on him the Government of *Hemedan, Terkisin, Kulpejan, &c.* to be enjoy'd by him during his life, but upon condition, he should be always about the Court, as having one of the chiefest places in the Council.

*Seinel-Chan* being thus kill'd, the Princess, *Schach-Sefi's* Mother; who conceiv'd a horror thereat, represented to him how much he was to blame, for treating in that manner one of his Grand-Father's most antient servants, one that had done himself so great services at his coming to the Crown; and the king seem'd to be somewhat troubled thereat. But he reflected not much on those Lectures, since that not many dayes after, the Chancellor, the Lord high Steward, nay, his own Mother found not better treatment from him; as may be seen in the following relation.

The king being, during the foresaid expedition, encamped in the Mountain of *Sehend*, within a League of *Tauris*, and the Lord High Steward, named *Ugurlu-Chan*, being one day to command the Guard about the king, at which the *Chans* are oblig'd to be personally present, when the king is in the field, it was his misfortune to go and Sup with *Tabub-Chan*, Chancellor of the kingdom, who had also invited the *Dawatter*, that is, the Secretary of the Closet, whose name was *Hassan beg*, and a certain Poet. Supper being near ended, the *Kischitzi-baschi*, that is, the Captain of the Guard, named *Mortusaculi-Chan*, came to give *Ugurlu-Chan* notice, that it was time to come to the king's Tent. But the Chancellor, unwilling to dismiss his Guests, sent away the *Kischitzi-baschi*, and told him that there was no great necessity of *Ugurlu-Chan's* being there in person, and that the king, being but a Child, would take no notice of *Ugurlu's* absence, and so he might set the Guard well enough without him.

The Captain reiterated his instances for his coming away, and press'd the high Steward to come and do his duty, and told him, that otherwise he should be oblig'd to make his complaints thereof to the king. The Chancellor, importun'd with this discourse, commanded his people to thrust *Mortusaculi-Chan* out of Doors; which they did, but so roughly, that he was hurt in the face. He went, all bloody as he was, to the king, and gave him an account of what had pass'd at the Chancellor's. The king commanded him to say nothing of it: but the next day, the Chancellor being at Dinner with the king, and sitting in his ordinary place, the king having commanded him to come near, said to him; What does he deserve, who, eating the bread, and living by the pure favour of his Master, is so far from paying the respect due to him, that he slights him? The Chancellor made him answer, he deserves death. Whereto the king reply'd, Thou hast pronounced thy own sentence; Thou art the person, who living only by my favour, and eating at my Table, hast had the insolence to treat me as a Child, in the discourse that pass'd yester-day, between thee and *Mortusaculi-Chan*. The Chancellor would have justify'd himself; but the king not giving him the time to do it, run him into the belly with his Cymitar. The Chancellor, as he fell down, only cry'd out, *Ha Padschach-Aimahn*, and the king commanded his *Rika*, who are a part of his Guard who carry Pole-Axes, and many

Puts to death his Chancellor and others.

1637, times do the work of Executioners, to cut his head into little bits. There happened to be one of the Pages, who conceiving a horror at that cruelty, turn'd aside, and would not look on it, which the king observing, said to him; since thy sight is so tender, it will be of no great use to thee, and commanded his eyes to be immediately put out.

The Execution of *Tabub-Chan* was soon follow'd by that of *Ugurlu-Chan*, who receiv'd his by the king's command, from the hands of *Aliculi-Chan*, *Divanbeg*, or President of the Council, who was sent to bring him his head. *Ugurlu* was coming out of the Bath, and going to put on his Cloaths when *Aliculi-Chan* came to him. *Ugurlu* seeing him coming in, attended by two servants, was a little startled at it, though they were very good friends, and said to him, Wo is me! dear friend, I fear thou bringst me no good news. *Aliculi-Chan* made answer, Thou art in the right, my dear Brother, the king hath commanded me to bring him thy head, the only way is to submit; whereupon he clos'd with him, cut off his head, made a hole in one of the cheeks, thrust his finger through it, and so carry'd it to the king, who looking on it, touch'd it with a little Wand, and said; *It must be confess'd thou wert a stout man, it troubles me to see thee in that condition, but it was thine own fault; 'tis pity, were it only for that goodly beard of thine.* This he said, by reason his Mustachoes were so long, that, coming about his neck, they met again at his mouth, which is accounted a great Ornament in *Persia*.

*Mortusaculi* had his charge conferr'd on him. *Hassan-beg*, who had also been at the Chancellor's Feast, receiv'd the same treatment; and the Poet, who was afterwards falsely accus'd of having put this Execution in Verse, and sung them in the *Maidan*, was conducted to that place, where they cut off his Nose, Ears, Tongue, Feet, and Hands, whereof he died some few dayes after.

Not long after this Execution, the king sent for the Sons of these Lords, and said to them; You see, I have destroy'd your Fathers, what say you of it? *Ugurlu-Chan's* Son said very resolutely, what do's a Father signifie to me? I have no other than the king. This unnatural answer restor'd him to the Estate of the deceas'd, which otherwise would have been Confiscated to the king: but the Chancellor's Son was reduc'd to great misery, and had not any thing allow'd him of all his Father had enjoy'd, for his expressing a greater Resentment of his death, than Compliance for the king.

The king, being come to *Caswin*, issued out his commands, that all the Lords and Governours of Provinces should come to Court. They all obey'd this order, save only *Alymerdan-Chan*, Governour of *Candahar*, and *Daub-Chan*, Governour of *Kentze*, who thought it enough to assure the king of their fidelity, by sending him, each of them, one of their Wives, and one of their Children, as Hostages; but the king thought not that submission sufficient; whereupon *Alymerdan-Chan* absolutely revolted, and put his person and the Fortrefs of *Candahar* under the Protection of the king of the *Indies*. *Daub-Chan*, understanding by the *Achta*, or Groom of the king's Chamber, who had been sent to him, how dangerous it were for him to come to Court, took the advice of his friends, and resolv'd to retire into *Turkey*. To effect his design, he thought good to try how his servants stood affected towards him, and having found there were fifteen among them who were unwilling to follow him, he caus'd them to be cut to pieces in his presence, writ a very sharp Letter to the king, and carried away all his Wealth along with him, to *Tamaras-Chan*, a Prince of *Georgia*, his Brother-in-law, and went thence into *Turkey*, where he still liv'd at the time of our Embassy, and was much respected by *Sultban Ibrahim*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. The king, to be reveng'd of both, sent their Wives to the houses of publick prostitution, and expos'd the Son of *Daud-Chan* to the brutality of the Grooms about the Court, and the common Executioners of the City; but *Alymerdan's* Son, by reason of his beauty, was reserv'd for the king's own use.

Sometime afterwards, the king sent orders to *Imanculi-Chan*, Governour of *Schiras*, Brother to *Daud-Chan*, to come to Court. He had notice sent him of the intention the king had to put him to death: but he made answer, that he could not be perswaded they would treat him so ill, after he had done such considerable services to the Crown: but however it might happen, he would rather lose his life, than be out of favour with his Prince, and become a Criminal by his disobedience.

According to this imprudent resolution, he came to *Caswin*, where the Court then was; but he was no sooner come, ere the king ordered his head to be taken off. *Schach-Sefi* intended to save the lives of *Imanculi's* Children, and, no doubt had done it, had it not been for the ill Office which was rendred them by a wicked Parasite, who, seeing the eldest Son of them at the king's feet, aged about 18. years, his friends it seems having advis'd him to make that submission, told his Majesty, that he was not the Son of *Imanculi*, but of *Schach-Abas*, who had bestow'd one of his Concucines in marriage on the Father, being before hand with Child by him.

That word occasion'd the death of that young Lord, and fourteen of his Brethren, who being conducted to the *Maidan*, were all beheaded near their Father's body. The Mother made a shift

shift to get away, with the sixteenth, into *Arabia*, to her own Father's, who was a Prince of those parts, and as we were told. he was living at that time, and had his Habitation at *Helbise*, three dayes journey from *Besre*, or *Balsara*. 1637.

The bodies of these executed persons remain'd three dayes in the *Maidan* in the open air, till that the King, fearing the lamentations, which the Mother of *Imanculi* made there day and night, would have rais'd the people into an insurrection, commanded them to be taken away.

The *Persians* do still bemoan the death of this *Imanculi-Chan*, out of a remembrance of his liberality. He was the Son of *Alla-Werdi-Chan*, who, upon his own charge, built the Bridge of *Isphan*, and who was as much look'd on as any Lord in *Persia*, for the noble actions he had done in the Wars.

The King's cruelty was as great towards the Ladies, as his inhumanity towards the men. For, about that time he kill'd one with his own hands, and committed several other murders. When he intended any Execution, he was ordinarily clad in Skarlet, or some red stuff, so that all trembled when he put on any thing of that colour. These unheard of cruelties frightned all that came neer him, and put some upon a resolution to shorten his dayes by poyson: but that which they gave him prov'd not strong enough, so that he escap'd the effects of it with a sickness of two moneths. As soon as he was recover'd, he caus'd and exact enquiry to be made, whereby it was discover'd, by means of a Woman belonging to the Seraglio, who had been ill-treated by her Mistress, that the poyson had been prepar'd in the apartment of the Women, and that his Aunt, *Isa-Chan's* Wife, had caus'd it to be given him. He reveng'd himself sufficiently the night following: for the Seraglio was full of dreadfull cries and lamentations, and it was found the next day, that he had caus'd a great Pit to be made in the Garden, wherein he had buried forty Women alive, whereof some were Ladies of the Seraglio, others their servants, and such as attended on them. It was also much about the same time, that a rumour was spread abroad, that his Mother dy'd of the Plague; but it is more likely she accompany'd the forty Ladies, who had been buried alive, as we said before.

He expres'd, when occasion requir'd, courage enough, and it is certain the beginning of his reign was remarkable for the great Victories he gain'd over his Enemies. He defeated *Karib-Schach* in the Province of *Kilan*. He forc'd the *Turks* to raise the siege of *Bagdat*, and took by assault the Fortrefs of *Eruan*; though, to speak impartially, the glory of these good successes be due to the Valour and Conduct of his Generals, and to fortune rather than his prudence: for he discover'd not much in any of his actions, which were for the most part temerarious, and without any dependence one of another. To prove this, we need onely instance the reduction of *Eruan*. He express'd more temerity than his actions.

The King, finding that, after a siege of four moneths, his affairs were little advanc'd, fell into that impatience and despair, that he would go in person upon the assault of the place, saying, he would rather dye in the attempt, than with infamy rise from a place, which the *Turks* had heretofore taken in three dayes. He had already put on the Cloaths of one of his Foot-men, that he might not be distinguish'd from others, and had given order for the storming of the Place, when the Lords, who durst not contradict him, intreated the Princess, his Mother, to represent to him, how impossible it was to take a place before there was a breach made, and that the danger whereto he would expose himself, would have no other effect, than his own death and ignominy, with the destruction of the whole Army. All the answer she could get to these representations, was, a good box o'th'ear, the King being still bent upon his former resolution of assaulting the Place, and to that purpose he had taken a Pole-Ax in his hand to lead them on. But the principal Lords cast themselves at his feet, and intreated him to grant them but one day more, wherein they promis'd to do all that lay in the power of men against the Place. They obtain'd their desire, order'd the Whole Army to fall on, even to the boys, and carried the Place by storm; but they lost in the action above fifty thousand men.

The good success, which till that time had attended his designs, soon chang'd, after the executions of so many great persons as he had put to death: and of this there was a remarkable instance in the loss of *Bagdat*, which the *Persians* were not able to maintein against the *Turks*, who recover'd it out of their hands, twenty six years after they had taken it from them.

The onely good action he did during his whole reign, is, that he sent back to their several Habitations those poor people whom *Schach-Abas* had taken out of *Eruan*, *Nachtzwan*, *Chaletz*, and *Georgia*, to the number of seven thousand, and had brought to *Ferabath*, where they were employ'd in great buildings, and liv'd in a miserable slavery: yet were there not above three hundred that made their advantage of this good deed of his, all the rest having perish'd through misery, and been starv'd.

He took great pleasure in drinking, and had a great kindness for such as bore him Company in that exercise: but his ordinary divertisements were Women and Hunting, not much minding matters of Government, or the administration of Justice to his Subjects. Subject to wine.

He had three lawfull Wives, one whereof was the Daughter of a Colonel; whose employment it had sometime been to drive the Mules which brought water to the King's Kitchin, and came His Wives.

1637. came to be known to *Schach-Abas*, by a service he did him one day while he was Hunting, in helping him to some fair water, the weather being extremely hot, when no other could meet with any. This service was requited by the Present the King made him of the Village of *Bilou*, neer *Nachrzuam*, where this Mule-driver had been born. This was the first step of his advancement, and what made him noted at Court, where he found means to get an Office, which is no hard matter in *Persia* for such as have money, and having some time after taken an employment in the Wars, he prov'd so fortunate therein, that he got the command of a Regiment of a thousand men. *Schach-Abas* thought his Daughter so handfom, that he made a Present of her to his Daughter-law, *Sefi-Myrfa's* Widdow, and appointed her to be brought up in order to a Marriage between her and his Son *Sain-Myrfa*, since named *Schach-Sefi*, who, at his coming to the Crown, accordingly Married her.

The second Wife was a Christian, the Daughter of *Tameras-Chan*, a Prince of *Georgia*; and this Marriage confirm'd the Peace which *Schach-Abas* made with that Prince.

The third was a *Tartar* of *Circassia*, the Daughter of *Bika*, and Sister to Prince *Mussal*, of whom we have often spoken heretofore. The Mother brought her as far as the River *Bustrou*, at the time of our Travels, and writ to *Schach-Sefi*, that she sent him her Daughter, not as a Concubine, or Slave, but as his lawfull Wife; That is was her hope he would look on her as such, and that she should find from him a kindness and affection equal to that she her self had expres'd towards the Princess, his Mother, who, though she had been her Slave and had often undress'd her even to her Stockins, had been treated, and look'd on by her, as if she had been her own Daughter; That, on the contrary, rather than her Daughter should be ill treated, she wish'd her drown'd, with all the misfortune that might happen to her, in the River *Bustrou*.

His Con- Besides these lawfull Wives, he had above three hundred Concubines; for, all the hand- cubines. somest Maids all over *Persia* were brought to him. The greatest Lords themselves Present him with the Maids they either have brought up in their own houses, or are found among their relations. Of this we had an instance in our time in the *Calenter* of *Scamachie*, who having had some ill Offices done him at the Court, recover'd the King's favour, by presenting him with his own Neece, one of the greatest beauties of the Countrey, and a sum of money sent to the Chancellor.

The *Armenians*, to prevent the searches which are often made amongst them for Maids of twelve years of age, dispose of them in Marriage, if they are handfom, before they come to that age. By reason of this great number of Concubines, it happens, that the King lies with some of them but once, and then bestows them on those Lords of the Court who are most in his favour.

His death. *Schach-Sefi* dy'd in the year MDCXLII. in the twelfth year of his reign, or, to speak more truly, his Tyranny. 'Tis conceiv'd his life was shortned by poyson, as the onely remedy they could make use of against his cruelties, which they must needs be afraid of, who had so many examples thereof perpetually before their eyes, wherein they found that neither Age nor Sex could secure any person from his inhumanities. As to his person, there was nothing of this cruelty to be read in his countenance, but on the contrary it was amiable, of a mild aspect, and his complexion so good as gave but little grounds to infer he had so barbarous a heart. He was of a mean stature, and very well shap'd as to his person, and at the time of our Embassy, he had but one Son, named *Abas*, who succeeded him in *May* the same year 1642. being then but 13. years of age: and he it is who now reigns.

Schach-Abas succeeds his Father.

The Kings of *Persia* have the Provinces and Cities of their Kingdom Govern'd by *Chans*, *Sulthans*, *Calenters*, *Darugas*, *Visirs*, and *Kauchas*, dignities and employments which are conferr'd there according to valour and virtue, and not in consideration of birth and extraction. Thence it comes that there are so many persons of such resolute courage, that they cheerfully hazard their lives, as knowing it is the onely way to get into the greatest charges of the Kingdom, which are neither hereditary nor venal in *Persia*. 'Tis true, the Children of these Lords are look'd upon, with some respect to their Fathers, and that they enjoy their Estates, but they are never advanc'd to their dignities, but purely upon the account of worth and services, from which they are inseparable. The King never makes any *Chan*, but with the title, he gives him where withall to maintain it, and that during his life, which many of them lose meerly that they might be depriv'd of their quality.

Dignities not Hereditary.

Every Province hath its *Chan*, and its *Calenter*, who have their several Habitations in the chief City. The *Chan* is as it were the Governor of the Province, and is entrusted with the administration of Justice, with the power of putting his Judgements in Execution, notwithstanding any Appeal. The *Calenter* hath the over-sight of the King's Demesn, and the Revenues of the Province, which he receives, and gives an account thereof to the Council, or, by order from the King, to the *Chan*. The *Daruga* is, in a Citie, and the *Kauchas*, in a Village, what the *Chan* is in respect of the Province. The *Daruga* do's also Execute the Function of the *Calenter* in his Jurisdiction, but with a dependence on the Governour of the Province. The King employes the *Chans* and *Sulthans* in the Embassies he sends to forein Princes, but

but they are not so chargeable to him as some conceive, in regard he finds but one half of the Presents which the Ambassador carries along with him, the Province, whereof he is Governour, being oblig'd to defray all the rest of the Charge. 1637.

Most of the *Chans* are oblig'd to maintain a certain number of Soldiers, who are to be ready to serve in the Armies, when any occasion requires: and in this is all the Revenue of the Province spent, not including what is rais'd by way of Imposition, which is carried into the Exchequer. Besides that, they also send the King certain New-years-Gifts, which are very considerable. The Provinces and Cities, which have no *Chans*, and are Governed by a *Daruga*, as part of *Georgia*, the Cities of *Caswin*, *Ispahan*, *Kascham*, *Theheran*, *Hemedan*, *Mesched*, *Kerman*, *Ormus*, &c. maintain no Soldiers, but pay Taxes to the King. The order they observe, especially in the Frontier-Provinces, for the subsistence of so great a number of Soldiers, is such, that it is no hard matter to raise a powerfull Army in a short time. And indeed this the *Schach* makes very much his advantage of against the Potent Enemies he hath about him, and by whom he is in a manner encompass'd of all sides, as the *Usbeques Tartars*, the *Turks* and *Indians*. He is never at quiet with the former, concerning the Frontiers of *Chorasfan*; with the *Mogul*, about those of *Candahar*, and with the *Turk*, about the Provinces of *Bagdat* and *Eruan*, for which they are in perpetual War, whence it comes that they often change Masters.

Their Armies consist onely of Horse; for the Infantry, which is, upon occasion, to serve *The Persian* on foot, is, in its march, mounted as our Dragoons. The ordinary Arms of the Foot are Musquets; but the Horse are Arm'd onely with Darts and Javelins. They have us'd Muskets <sup>Army consists onely of Horse.</sup> and great Guns but since the reign of *Schach-Abas*, nor do they use the latter so much in the assault as defence of places; in as much as their Armies making ordinarily great dayes marches, and with little or no Carriages, it would be troublefom to them to take great Guns along with them, as such as would much retard their Expeditions. No flight or stratagem in War but they are apt enough to make their advantage of. At the siege of *Iruan*, in the year 1633. they had the invention of casting into the place, with their Arrows, small Glass'es full of poyson, which so infected the air, that the Garrison was extremely incommodated thereby, and made incapable of handling their Arms, for the defence of the place. They call the General of the Army *Their Mir Serdar*, a Colonel of ten or twelve thousand Horse *Kurtzibaschi*, him, who commands a <sup>literary Officer</sup> thousand men, *Minbaschi*, a Captain of a hundred men, *Jusbaschi*, and a Leader up of ten <sup>ces.</sup> men, *Ohnbaschi*.

At the time of our being there, all the Military Commanders were persons of very mean extraction.

*Areb*, *Schan* of *Schiruan* was the son of a poor Countrey-man of *Serab*, and his first employment had been in the train of Artillery, wherein he made such Discoveries of his Conduct and Courage, that *Schach-Abas* bestow'd on him that Government, which is one of the most considerable in the Kingdom.

*Aga-Chan* was the Son of a Shepheard near *Merrage*. This man ordered his business so well, at the siege of *Wau*, that his services were recompens'd with the Government of his Countrey.

*Kartzschucaï-Chan*, was the Son of a *Christian*, of *Armenia*, and had been sold to *Schach-Abas*, who made him a *Chan*, and afterwards General of his Army. He acquir'd so great reputation in that employment, that the *Schach* himself would needs be his Lacquey, as we said elsewhere.

*Salma Chan*, a *Kurde* by birth, had some time been an ordinary Groom.

*Emir-Kune-Chan* was the Son of one of that kind of Shepheards, who live in Tents or Huts upon the Mountains, & grew so famous at the siege of *Eruan*, that the King entrusted him with the Government of the whole Province. What a particular kindness *Schach-Abas* had for this person, may be guess'd by the ensuing story.

The *Turks*, who lay before the Citie of *Eruan*, having rais'd the siege, *Schach-Abas* got into the place, where he spent the best part of the night in drinking with *Emir-Kune*, who grew so familiar with him, that taking the King by the Mustachoes, he kiss'd his very mouth, yet did not the King take it any way unkindly. *Emir-Kune* who remembered not what he had done in his Wine, was much astonish'd when some gave him an account of what had pass'd the next day, and so frightned thereat, that hanging his Cytimar about his Neck, he went in that posture to the King's Chamber door, according to the custom observ'd by such as know they have deserv'd death, and by that submission beg their Pardon. The King sent him word he might come in, whereto the other having made answer that he was not worthy to set his foot within the King's Chamber, having abus'd his goodness as he had, *Schach-Abas* comes out of the Room, and took off the Cymitar from about his Neck, and deliver'd it to him, as an assurance of his favour. But he strictly forbid him the drinking of any Wine ever after, in as much, as being got drunk, he knew not what he did. Some time after *Emir-Kune-Chan* having in a fight, been wounded in the Arm, and the Physicians having given it as their opinion, that

1637, that abstinence would be prejudicial to his health, the King did not only take off the prohibition he had made him, but sent him a certain number of Mules loaden with the best Wine in the Countrey.

The Persians hate Cowards.

The *Persians* hate and contemn Cowards, and the Officers who neglect their duty in the Wars are most severely punish'd. An instance hereof was seen in *Aliculi-Chan*, Governour of *Shorosan*, who having let slip the opportunity of engaging *Tameras*, Prince of *Georgia*, though he might have fought him with advantage, *Schach-Abas* caus'd him to be dress'd in Woman's Cloaths, and so sent him to the Army, where he was walk'd up and down all day among the Soldiers. The allowance of a Horse-man is three hundred Crowns *per ann.* towards the keeping of himself and his Horse; and that of a Muskettier two hundred. They have the reputation not to be over-scrupulous in the keeping of their word, as was seen in the Capitulation they granted the Garrison of *Iruan*, which was very ill observ'd.

The Schach's Revenue.

Those who speak of the Wealth of the King of *Persia*, think they speak of a vast and incredible sum, when they assign him a yearly Revenue of eight Millions of Gold, and imagine they raise the Reader into admiration, when they affirm that the Province of *Candahar* alone brings in yearly near a Million of Gold; that the Cities of *Bagdat* and *Iruan*, with the Country thereabouts, pay in a manner as much, and that it hath been found by the Register's Office of the Chancery, that the King gets out of the Suburbs of *Isfahan*, and the Villages within the Baylywick thereof, near forty thousand Crowns. But those who know, that the Province of *Normandy* it self payes yearly such a sum as amounts to almost as much as all the King of *Persia's* Revenue, will grant there is no hyperbole in what we have affirm'd. This Revenue was very much diminish'd in the time of King *Tamas*, when the *Turks* and other neighbouring Princes over-run *Persia*, so as that they were possess'd of several Provinces belonging to that Crown. Besides, there is hardly any Bridge or Passage, not only upon the Frontiers, but also all over the Kingdom, nay, in all Cities almost, but there is somewhat to be paid, without any distinction of persons, Foreiners or Natives. All Merchandises pay, and the King takes, upon every Bail of Silk, ten Crowns. There is no Horse sold, but pays xv. *d.* to the King; an Ox as much, and an Ass one half, and a Sheep, which are as thick as Ants all over the Countrey, iij. *d.* a piece. The King lets out the *Caravanseras*, which are in Cities, and are appointed for Lodgings for Foreiners and Ware-houses for Merchants, especially at *Isfahan*, where there are twenty five of them, of which not any payes less then five thousand Crowns *per ann.*

He Farms out also the Fishing of the Rivers, the Baths, and Stoves, the places of publick Prostitution, and the Springs of *Neste*. He sells also the water which comes into the Fountains, and raises only from the River of *Senderut*, at *Isfahan*, the yearly sum of sixteen thousand Crowns. All the *Armenian* Christians, whereof there is a very great number in *Persia*, pay yearly a Poll-money, of two Crowns for every head. Nay, what is more, there is not a person, those only excepted, who are maintain'd by, or have some relation to the King, but payes a Tax proportionably to what he gets, even to the very Midwife, I say nothing here of the Presents brought the king from all parts, and which fall by several Channels into the Prince's Treasury. The great Lords, though they make good the king's Revenue, yet abate nought of their own advantages, and find wayes to fleece the Countrey, so as that it is not to be admir'd there is so little wealth to be found among the people. For there is nothing so true as what a certain Emperour sometime said, that it is impossible the spleen should be swollen in any body, and that the other Members of the same body should not be wasted and become Heſtick.

'Twas also *Schach-Abas*, who ordered the melting down of seven thousand and two hundred Marks of Gold for the making of the Plate we have mentioned elsewhere, which his Successors still produce at the entertainments they make Foreiners, and consists for the most part in Dishes, Pots, Flaggons, and other Drinking-Cups.

Officers of the Court.

What we said before of the Military Officers, to wit, that they were most of them but meanly clad, is as true in those Officers who belong to the Court. For there was hardly any one, who could make ostentation of but ordinary Parentage.

Chancellor.

The *Eatamad Dowlet*, or Chancellor, who was the President of the king's Council, the Soul of affairs, the principal Minister of State, and as it were Viceroy of *Persia*, was the Son of one who got his livelihood by writing at *Mesanderan*, as we have said elsewhere. These Scriveners, as I may call them, are employ'd only in the Copying and Transcribing of Books, in regard they have not as yet, in this Countrey, the use of Printing, as we have in *Europe*. He is called *Eatamad Dowlet*, in regard he hath the oversight of the kings Revenues and Treasury. This was the most self-concern'd person of all that ever had the management of publick affairs, as a Minister of State. For there was no business done at Court, whereof he made not some advantage; and there was no charge or employment to be gotten, but the person petitioning for it must have made his agreement with the Chancellor; whose exactions were, in this particular, excessive, not only upon the account of the Presents, which, being made by him twice

every

every year to the Court, rendred the king himself in a manner a complice of his concussions, but also upon this consideration, that being an Eunuch, all the Wealth he got was at his death to fall to the king. 1637.

The *Kurtzi-baschi*, who had the command of ten thousand Horse, whom *Schach-Ismael* appointed as a standing Army, to be constantly maintain'd, named *Tzani-Chan*, was a Peasant's Son of *Schanlu*, who, in the time of *Schach-Abas*, had been a Menial servant to a Lord of the Court. These Horse, in time of Peace, retire to their own Habitation, yet are paid as duely as if they were in actual service, and meet not again till there be an Army on foot, enjoying in the mean time divers Privileges and Exemptions, which the other later kings of *Persia* have granted them. Kurtzi-baschi.

The *Meheter*, that is the Lord Chamberlain, or chief Gentleman of the Chamber, named *Meheter Schaneser*, was a *Georgian* born, of Father and Mother *Christians*. He had been carried away in his infancy, and sold to the Court of *Persia*, where they had made him an Eunuch, so that he needed not be Circumcis'd to receive the Character of the *Persian* Religion. He had been a Page, attending in his Chamber, to *Schach-Abas*, and was much in favour with *Schach-Sefi*, upon this account, that being alwayes near the king's person, in all both Publick and Private Assemblies, nay, even within the *Seraglio*, he had the king's Ear, and knew how to comply with his humour, and make his advantage of the opportunities he had to speak to him, by which means he obtain'd those favours of him, which another could not have ask'd.

The *Wakenhuis*, that is, the Secretary of State and of the King's Revenue, who having forty Clarks under him, perpetually employ'd, issues out all the orders and dispatches which are sent into the Provinces, and takes an account of all that's receiv'd towards the charge of the King's house, was called *Myrfa Masum*. He was a Peasant's Son of the Village of *Dermen*, in the Mountain of *Elwend*, near *Caswin*, where there are, among others, two Villages, to wit, *Dermen* and *Saru*, whence come the best Pen-men of any in the Kingdom, in regard there's not an Inhabitant but puts his Children to writing as soon as they are able to hold a Pen, and keep them so constantly employ'd therein, that even in the fields, and as they keep their flocks, they pass away their time in that Exercise. The Secretary of State.

*Aliculi-Chan*, who had the charge of *Diwan-beki*, that is, President of the Council for the administration of Justice, was the Son of a *Christian*, of *Georgia*. He had been taken during the War which *Schach-Abas* had in those parts, and sold at *Ispahan*, where he had serv'd as a Lacquey, which had also been the condition of his two Brothers, *Rustam-Chan*, Governour of *Tauris*, and *Isa-Chan*, *Jusbaschi*, who were made Eunuchs as he was himself. The functions of his charge consisted principally in presiding at the judgement of Criminal causes, joyntly with the *Seder* and the *Kafi*, and the other Ecclesiastical and Secular Judges, whom they call *Schebra*, and *Oef*, under the Portal of the King's Palace, at the place named *Diwan-Chane*; and to be personally present at the Executions of Malefactors. Diwan-beki.

The *Kularagasi*, that is, Captain of the *Kulam*, or Slaves, who are sold to the King, to serve in the Wars upon any order they receive to that purpose, was called *Siausbeki*, and had been one of *Schach-Abas*'s Footmen. Of these *Kulams* there are about eight thousand, and are permitted to live at their own Habitations, as the *Kurtzi* are, and have the same pay; but they enjoy not the same Privileges or Exemptions, having nothing of that kind which is not common to them with the king's other Subjects. Kularagasi.

The *Eischikagasi-baschi*, or Lord high Steward, who hath the over-sight of forty Stewards that serve under him, called *Mortusaculi-Chan*, was the Son of a heard-man, or one of those people whom the *Persians* call *Turk*, who have no settled Habitation, but remove their Tents and Huts to those places, where they think to find the best Grass for their Cattel. I said these *Eischikagasi* were a kind of Stewards, of whom there are at all times four or five at the Court, who stand at the door of the king's Apartment, and serve by half-years, under their *Baschi*, or Chief, who carries the staff they call *Dekenek*, and stands before the king when he eats in publick, on dayes of Ceremonies. He is also one of the two who take Ambassadors under the Arms, when they are brought to audience. We have already related, how *Mortusaculi-Chan* succeeded, in this charge, *Ugurlu-Chan*, whose head *Schach-Sefi* had caus'd to be cut off. *Imanuli Sulthan*, whom the king of *Persia* sent upon an Embassy to the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master, had the quality of *Eischakagasi*. Eischikagasi.

*Schah Wardi*, who was *Jesaul Scebet*, or Master of the Ceremonies, was the Governour of *Derbent*'s Son, but his Grand-father was a Peasant, of the Province of *Serab*. The *Jesaul Scebet* carries also a staff, and his principal function consists in placing strangers at the king's Table, and at publick assemblies. The Master of the Ceremonies.

The *Nafir*, or Controller of the king's house, whom they also give the quality of *Kerek je-rak*, because he executes the function of a Purveyer, whose name was *Samambek*, was the Son of one of the ordinary Inhabitants of *Kaschan*. The Controller.

The *Tuschmal*, who hath the over-sight of all the Officers belonging to the king's kitchen, was

1637. was called *Seinel-bek*, and was the Son of *Seinel-Chan*, whom the king kill'd with his own hands, in the presence of his Mother.

*Secretary of the Closet.* The *Dawatter*, that is, the Secretary of the Closet, whose name was *Ugurlu-bek*, was the Son of *Emirkune-Chan*. He had, in that charge, succeeded *Hafsan beg*, who was kill'd by the king's order, because he had been at Supper with *Talub-Chan*, as we related before. The word *Dawatter* is deriv'd from *Dawat*, which signifies an Ink-horn, in as much as the principal function of this charge consists, in carrying the Ink-horn, and presenting that part thereof where the Ink is to the king when he is to sign any thing. For the king himself carries the Seal about his Neck, and Seals or Signs himself, by pressing the Seal upon the Paper, after he had put it into the Ink.

*Master of the Horse.* *Aly-baly-bek*, who was *Myra-chur-baschi*, that is chief of the Gentlemen of the Horse, or Master of the Horse of *Persia*, was a *Senkene* by birth, and his Father was a Drover, who traded altogether in Oxen.

*Grand Faulconer.* The *Mirischikar*, or Grand Faulconer, whose name was *Chosrow Sulchan*, was a *Christian*, an *Armenian* born, one, notwithstanding his Religion, very much in the king's favour.

*Huntf-man.* *Karachan-bek*, who had the charge of *Sekbahn-baschi*, that is, Overseer of those who kept the Dogs for Hunting, or chief Huntf-man, as I may call him, was also a *den-kene*, and the son of a Shepheard.

*Jesaulkor.* The *Jesalkor* hath two functions, to wit, that of Grand-Marshal of the Lodgings, and that of Judge of the king's household. He marches before the king, as well in the Citie as in the Country, with a staff in his hand, to make way. He hath under him several other *Jesauls*, who are as it were Harbingers, and sometimes is employ'd in the securing of persons guilty of Treason, and such as are imprison'd by the king's exprefs order.

The other Officers belonging to the Court, are,

The *Suffretzi*, that is the Carver.

The *Abaar*, who serves the king with water to drink, and keeps it in a Jarr seal'd up, to prevent any body's putting of poyson into it.

The *Chazinedal*, or Overseer of the king's Revenue.

The *Ambadar*, who hath the over-light of the king's Granaries.

The *Jesaul Neder*, who keep the king's shooes, when he puts them off in the anti-chamber.

The *Mehemandar*, who conducts Ambassadors from one Province to another, till they come to Court, to their audience there, and so back to the Frontiers.

Besides these, there are yet several other Officers, not so considerable as the precedent, as,

The *Kischtiz-baschi*, Captain of the Guard.

The *Tzabeaar*, Controller of the Artillery.

The *Tzartzi*, who publishes the king's commands.

The *Tzelandar baschi*, who is as it were a Captain over the Grooms that conduct such Horses as the king would have led.

The *Kitaddar*, Library-keeper.

The *Nieamar*, Ingeneer and Architect.

The *Mustofi*, Purveyor for the House.

The *Seraidar*, Surveyer of the buildings.

The *Klita*, Captain of the Gate.

The *Scherbedar*, Overseer of the Conserves and Spices.

The *Cannati*, Confectioner.

The *Omatzdar*, Governour of the Pages.

The *Schirtzi*, Cup-bearer.

The *Eachtzi*, who keeps the Gold-plate.

The *Achtzi*, Clark of the kitchen.

The *Eemektzi*, who bakes the bread which the king himself eats.

The *Forrasch*, who makes the fire.

The *Sava*, Water-bearer.

The *Bildar*, are such as serve for Pioneers, when the king goes any journey, to make the wayes even, and steps for the safer treading of the Camels. They help also to pitch up Tents, and dig pits in the ground, whether to get water, or serve for Privies.

The *Schutir*, Foot-men.

The *Rica*, are men who carry Pole-Axes, and are alwayes about the king's person, as his Guards; but sometimes they also do the work of common Executioners.

All these Officers have their Salaries and other Allowances, which are very duely paid them, not out of the Treasury or Exchequer, but they are charg'd upon the Demesn of certain Villages, whereof they themselves have the disposal, or they are assign'd them out of some part of the Taxes, or haply on the Tribute paid by common Prostitutes.

The *Persians* seldom meet about affairs, but the Cloath is lay'd. At the two Audiences the king gave us, as well at our coming thither, as our departure thence, we Din'd with him, and



at all the conferences we had at the Chancellor's, we alwayes found a Collation of Preserves, and after that the Cloath was lay'd, and the Meat serv'd up. 1637.

When the King eats in publick, or comes into any assemblies, besides ten or twelve Lords <sup>The Ha-</sup> of the Court, he is ordinarily attended by the *Hakim*, or Physician, the *Seder*, and the *Min-* <sup>kum, Mi-</sup> *natzim*. The Physician appoints what Meats he should eat of. The *Minatzim*, or Astrolo- <sup>nazim,</sup> *ger*, acquaints him with the fortunate and unfortunate hours, and whatever he sayes is believ'd <sup>and the Se-</sup> as Oraculous: and the *Seder*, who is the chief of their Ecclesiasticks, explicates to him those <sup>der,</sup> passages of the *Alchoran*, and such points of their Divinity, where there seems to be any difficulty. The King and the *Kafi* joyn together in the naming of the *Seder*, and they make choice of him among those, whom they think best skill'd in the explication of the *Alchoran*, and the Laws which depend on it. They take his advice not onely in Ecclesiastical, but also in Civil affairs, but especially in Criminal. He is shew'd the charge and proceedings against the Criminal, and he returns his advice seal'd with his Seal. The King for the most part follows it, adding these words, *This is the advice of the Seder, which we confirm*; then he orders his own Seal to be set thereto.

Civil causes are commonly try'd before the Secular Judges whom they call *Oef*. They are a <sup>The admi-</sup> kind of Lawyers according to their way, and they have for their chief the *Diwan-beki*, who <sup>nistrations</sup> ought to be well vers'd in the Law of *Mahomet*. Their Pleading dayes are *Monday* and *Thursday*, and the place where they meet for the administration of Justice, is a spacious Arch'd Hall under the Palace-Gate, where they hear both sides, and if the Causes be of importance, they report the same to the King, and acquaint him with the opinions of the Judges, whereupon the King decides them.

It is forbidden by their Law to put out money to use. Yet they slyck not to do it; but if the <sup>Usury for-</sup> Usurers be discovered, they are look'd on as infamous persons, and not admitted into the com- <sup>biddens.</sup> pany of such as are of any quality, nay, they are also very severely punish'd. Of this we saw an example as we pass'd through *Ardebil*, where they had an odd way to take out a Man's Teeth, who, by way of interest, had taken one and a half in the hundred for a moneth's time. They lay'd him all along on the ground, and knock'd out his Teeth one after another with a little Mallet. They call this kind of Usurers *Sudebur*, that is, eaters of Interest of Usury, The *Persians* are permitted to lay out money upon Lands, Gardens, and Houses, which they enjoy while they are out of their money, and if they be not redeem'd within the time agreed upon between the parties, they are forfeited to the Mortgagee.

Their punishments are cruel, and proportionable to the irreclaimable obstinacy of that people <sup>Their pun-</sup> who are violently bent to Vice, and laugh at gentle chastisements, and moderate pains. The <sup>ishments,</sup> least Crimes are punish'd with mutilation of Members. They cut off the Nose, Ears, and sometimes the Feet and Hands of Malefactors, nay, they are put to death, by cutting off thier Heads. That defiling, which the *Larines* call *Violatio*, is not punish'd with death, but they think it enough to cut off the part which hath offended, to prove which, there needs onely the Woman's Oath, if she hath the confidence to reiterate it thrice. The two last Kings, *Schach Abas* and *Schach-Sefi*, have been rather cruel than severe in their punishments, as may be infer'd from the examples we have already produc'd thereof, nay, they have been so far such towards some Criminals, that they have caus'd them to be ty'd between two boards and sawen asunder. *Schach-Abas* had sent into *Spain* one named *Teinksbeg*, who returning from his Embassy, and having not brought home all his Retinue, and the King understanding by the Interpreter, that his ill usage of them had caus'd many of his people to run away, he took the pains himself to cut off his Nose, his Ears, and a good piece of flesh out of his Arm, and forc'd him immediately to eat them, bloody and raw as they were. *Imanculi-Chan*, who was sent Ambassador to the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master, treated his Domesticks no better. For a very trivial fault, he caus'd a Spit red hot to be apply'd to the back of one of his Retinue; and he order'd another's fingers to be knock'd with the back of an Hatchet, till all the bones were bruis'd: which oblig'd five or six of his Train to leave his service, and return into *Persia* by the way of *Italy*: for which cruelties he had no doubt been punish'd at his return, had not the Chancellor made his peace with the King.

As to the Religion of these people, I could make a long digression, to give some account of that of the ancient *Persians*, and shew how they ador'd the Sun, Moon, Venus, Fire, and other things, which they made Divinities; but it is besides my design, and therefore I shall onely say something of that of the modern, and the difference there is, between the Religion of the *Persians* and that of the *Turks*.

Both these Nations follow the Doctrine of that grand Impostor *Mahomet*, and acknowledge the same *Alcoran*; yet do's not that hinder, but they have a mortal animosity one against the <sup>The Reli-</sup> other. And whereas their enmity is chiefly grounded on the difference of their Religions, we <sup>gion of the</sup> shall here briefly shew wherein it consists. <sup>Persians,</sup>

Monsieur *Busbeque* sayes in the third Letter of his Embassy to *Turkey*, that a man may judge of the difference of these two Religions, from the conversation he had with a *Persian Visir*, nam-

1637. med *Ruffian*, who told him, that the *Persians* had a greater hatred for the *Turks*, and accounted them much more profane than the *Christians*; but he gives no other particular thereof. Others, who have written of the same subject, as *Paulus Jovius*, *Bizarrus*, *Minadous*, and a certain *English Gentleman*, named *Thomas Herbert*, have given no better an account of it; some, by reason of the little acquaintance they had therewith, and others out of negligence, having not deliver'd what they might have learn't during the abroad they made in *Persia*. I have had the curiosity to make a stricter enquiry into it, and to inform my self as well from such as I became intimately acquainted withall at *Scamachie* and *Ispahan*, by means of the *Mathematicks*, as by the reading of some Books, which I have compar'd with what I had learnt thereof my self.

*The Etymology of the word Mussulman.* The *Persians* are as free to assume the quality of *Mussulman's* as the *Turks*. This word is deriv'd from that of *Salama*, which comes from another *Hebrew* word, which signifies, *he hath deliver'd*, or *saved*. And the reason of it is, that the *Mahumetane* Religion, being to propagate it self by Arms, and the *Alcoran* ordering those to be persecuted and kill'd, who refus'd to pronounce this confession, *Fa illah illalahu, Mahumeda resul-alla*, that is, *There is no other God but one, and Mahomet the Apostle of God*, such as, by this profession, *saved* themselves from, or avoided death, were called *Mussulmans*, that is to say, the *saved* or *delivered*. But the present *Turks* explicate it otherwise, and affirm, that they who make profession of their Religion, are *Mussulmans*, that is, *sav'd* from eternal damnation. Whence it comes, that they do not call their Sons *Mussulmans*, till they are Circumcis'd.

*Circumcision.* The Circumcision of the *Persians* is not celebrated, till the Children are seven, eight, or nine years of age, and then they intoxicate such as are to be Circumcis'd, with a certain drink, to make them insensible of the pain they are to endure, in the cutting of the Prepuce; and in this they agree with the *Turks*. But the difference between their Religion and that of the *Turks*, consists.

1. In that they explicate not the *Alcoran* after the same manner.
2. That they have not the same Saints.
3. That they have not the same Miracles.
4. That they have not the same *Mosqueyes*, nor the same Ceremonies.

*The difference between the Religion of the Persians and of the Turks.* The very Principles of their Religions are contrary, in as much as *Mahomet*, having appointed by his last Will and Testament, that *Aly*, his Nephew, and Son-in-law, (for he was the Brother's Son and had Married his Daughter *Fattima*) should succeed him, as well in Temporals as Spirituals, *Ababeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*, all three Father-in-law's of *Mahomet*, who were more considerable and powerfull then *Aly*, and had contributed much to the propagation and establishment of *Mahomet's* Religion, usurped, successively one after another, the *Califate*, and Political Government of their Son-in-law, notwithstanding the opposition, which *Aly* and his friends would have made against it. 'Twas after their death, that *Aly* obtain'd the *Califate*, which yet he was not so possess'd of, but that it was pretended to, and, disputed against him, by the relations of the three last *Califs*. *Aly* did not change any thing in the *Alcoran*, and though he gave several Interpretations to the words of *Mahomet*, and explicated the sense of his Law, yet did he submit to his Authority, where it was clear, and where the Text admitted no explication, in so much that this occasion'd no change in the Religion.

*The initials of the Religion of the Persians.* But about the year 1363. there happen'd to be at *Ardebil*, a very learned man, named *Sofi*, who pretended himself deriv'd from the Family of *Aly*, and gave out, that he was, in a right line, descended from *Musai Kasim*, the Son of *Hossein*, who was the Son of *Aly*. The austerity of his life, and the outward innocency of his demeanour, manag'd by an understanding that had the knack of making the most advantageous discoveries it could of it self, brought him into great reputation, and rais'd him to the quality of *Schich*. He slighted, at least in appearance, all the pleasures and enjoyments of this World, clad himself in a Sheep-skin, and would not wear any thing about him but what was of Wool. Some affirm, that he had the name *Sofi* given him, from the word *Suff*, which signifies *Wool*, though others are of opinion, and that with greater probability, that the true Etymology of his name is deriv'd from the word *Sefid*, which signifies *pale* and *white*, in as much as it is the custom of the *Persians*, many times, to give the surname from the colour of the face, as the Chancellor of *Persia*, who liv'd at the time of our Embassy thither, was named *Saru Tagge*, from the yellowish colour of his countenance.

*Sofi* was the first who ventured publickly to teach and write, that the succession of *Mahomet*, which belong'd to *Aly*, his Nephew and Son-in-law, had been illegally usurped from him and his Posterity, by *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*: That God, who had been very much offended at that procedure, had rais'd him the said *Sofi*, and had endu'd him with all qualities necessary for the restauration of the glory of *Aly*, which had been in a manner buried for many ages. And to make it appear, that *Aly* was a man after God's heart, he reviv'd a great number

number of Miracles, which he said had been suppress'd by the malice of the *Turks*: That *Aly* had given a true explication of the *Alcoran*, which his Successor, *Tzafersaduck*, had reduc'd into writing, and that in those Commentaries there were many precepts contrary to the opinions of *Hanife*, whom the *Turks* follow, but much more rational. There is not any Nation in the World more inclin'd to change, and more addicted to Novelty, than the *Persians*. *Sofi's* new Doctrine soon found credit among them, in so much that they forsook that of the *Turks*, in whom this Schism heightned the animosity which neighbourhood and perpetual Wars about the Frontiers had already but too much blown between those two Nations. However, the *Persians* made it their business to confirm the reputation of their *Aly*, and added to their Creed, whereof we spoke before, these words *Aaly welli Alla*, so that they said, *There is but one God, Mahomet the Apostle of God, and Aly, Coadjutor or Lieutenant of God*: Nay, they presume to affirm, that though *Aly* be not really God, yet he comes very neer him. And to prefer him even before *Mahomet* himself, they add hereto, that it was God's intention to bestow the *Alcoran* on *Aly*, and that it was by mistake it fell into the hands of *Mahomet*. But as to *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*, they who at Prayer time call the people together (for the *Persians*, as well as the *Turks*, use no Bells) will be sure to Curse these three pretended Prophets, and to execrate them to the pit of Hell. They have commonly these words in their mouths, *Kiri Sekder deheni Abubeker, Omar, Osman, Hanifebad*, that is, *many Dogs Stones stop the mouths of these Prophets*, which is an abomination to the ears of the *Turks*, who, upon this account are become irreconcilable Enemies to the *Persians*, especially since *Sedredin* and *Tzinid*, (whom some name *Gutnet*) express'd so great a zeal for the establishment and advancement of their Sect, which is, in process of time, grown so strong, that their *Schichs* are become *Schachs*, that is their *Prophets* have chang'd their quality into that of *Kings*.

The *Persians* not thinking it enough to have establish'd the Sanctity, nay, in some measure the Divinity, of *Aly*, were of opinion that he had communicated some part of that quality to those of his Family, and that they might bestow the denomination of Saints upon his first Successors, of whom there were related many Miracles, whereby their memories have been celebrated, and their Sepulchres enrich'd by the Presents sent into them. He had left two Sons, *Hassan*, and *Hossein*, who left *Seinel*, *Abedin*, *Mahumed-Bagur*, *Tzafur-Saduk*, *Musai-Cajum*, *Risa*, *Mahumed-Taggi*, *Alli Naggi*, *Hossein Alkeri*, and *Mehedi*, whereof some, to wit, *Hassan*, *Seinel*, *Abedin*, *Mahumed-Bagur*, *Mahumed-Taggi*, and *Alli Naggi*, are interr'd at *Medina*; *Tzafur-Saduk*, at *Bagdat*, and *Hossein*, *Musai-Kajum*, and *Hossein Alkeri*, at *Kelbula* or *Kufa*. They affirm that *Mehedi* is not dead, but lies hid in a Cave neer *Kufa*, where he is to remain till the day of Judgement, which is to be, when his shoes, which he left at the entrance of it, and which are already turn'd half way, shall be quite turned towards the Cave, so as that at his coming out he may put his feet into them, to go and convert all the World to the Faith of the *Alcoran*.

On these twelve Saints they bestow the quality of *Imam*, or *Prelate*. To these, as also to the Institutor of their Sect *Schich-Sofi*, they address their Prayers and Devotions, and it is to the four Sepulchres of them, that they go on Pilgrimages, especially when their affairs permit them not to go to *Meca*, or *Medina*. They give the Pilgrims a Certificate or Testimonial, call'd *Sijarename*, whereby they are not only known to be true *Mussulmans*, professing the true *Persian* Religion; but there is also a further particular advantage of these Testimonials, in that they save their lives, who are in disgrace with the Kings or Governours of the Provinces where they live. We have seen instances hereof in our Interpreter, whose name was *Rustam*, who took one of them, to avoid the punishment which he might have suffered for embracing the *Christian* Religion in *England*, and another in *Tzirrachan*, who took this course to save himself, as we have related elsewhere.

The *Persians* Celebrate every year, with great Ceremonies, the memory and death of *Hassan* and *Hossein*. The *Turks* deride them for it, and on the contrary, have a great Veneration for *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*, and highly esteem *Hanife*, their chief Commentator and Paraphrast of the *Alcoran*. The *Persians* execrate the memory of the three former, and speak of the last as an Impostor, who hath made false explications of the *Alcoran*. They affirm, that *Hanife*, being a servant to *Tzafur Saduk*, was very carefull to preserve the water, wherein that Saint had wash'd his hands, which he carried into *Turkey*, rubb'd therewith the eyes of several blind people, who by that means recover'd their sight, and wrought divers other Miracles, the honour whereof belongs only to the Saints of *Persia*. They add to this, that *Schach Tamas*, after the taking of *Bagdat*, caus'd the body of *Hanife*, who had a very sumptuous Tomb there, to be taken up; and that he converted the *Masur*, or place of his Sepulture, into a Stable, and the Sepulchre into a Sink or common House of ease.

There are many Authors have Commented on the *Alcoran*; but they who have had a particular illumination for that work, and have, in their opinion, best understood the Sentiments of *Mahomet*, are *Aly* and *Tzafur-Saduk*, whom the *Persians* prefer before all the rest. The *Turks* most esteem *Hanife*; and the *Usbeques Tartars*, as also the *Indians* follow the explanation

1637. tion of *Hembili*, and *Maleki*. The *Alcoran*, in many places, is not to be understood; not only in that *Mahomet* himself seems to have affected obscurity, as not knowing himself what he would say; but also in this regard, that, many times, he alludes to stories which peradventure never happened; and whereof the Commentators certainly having no knowledge, have supply'd the defect with their own fictions, fables, and impostures, which have no likelihood of truth in them. But not to digress from the *Persians*, whom it is our particular design here to give an account of, it is a thing much to be admir'd, that these people, who are so ingenious; and so wise in their Generation, and so excellently well vers'd in the affairs of the World, could be brought to believe things so ridiculous, and the many fables, their Books of Devotion are fill'd with. As for instance, among others, that *Duldul*, (so they call *Aly's* Horse) was got of a Rock. That it was the Angel *Gabriel* who brought him the Sword, called *Dzul-fakar*, wherewith he did so many great exploits: That with the said Sword, he kill'd a Dragon that had seven heads; and cut a Devil to pieces. And that *Sulthan Mahomet Chodabende*, being one day a-hunting near *Kufa*, discover'd thereabouts a Sepulchre with this Inscription, *Under this place ly Adam, Noe, and Aly*, and that thereupon the *Sulthan* had ordered the building of the Citie of *Netzef*, where he had erected a Tomb in memory of *Aly*. But there is not any thing so ridiculously flat as the story they relate of *Aly's* drinking with the Angels in Paradise.

Miracles. And that there may be no scruple made of the supernatural, and as it were Divine power, attributed by them to the Author of their Sect, they relate a great number of Miracles wrought by him, which Miracles indeed are chargeable with some imposture among those of other persuasions, but in the Religion of the *Persians*, they are the more impertinent, in that they make their Saints do them, without any necessity. As for instance, when they affirm, that *Schich Sofi*, being yet very young, and going to see *Schich Sabadi*, who was a great Saint, and a very wise man, and liv'd in the Village of *Sabedan*, in the Province of *Kilan*, he there took particular notice of the pains the Inhabitants were at in weeding their Grounds, and moved to compassion thereat, he commanded the Weeds not to pester the Earth any longer. He was immediately obey'd. But *Schich Sabadi* observing it, said to him; I see, Son, what thou art able to do; but thou art to consider, that if thou ease these Peasants of the employment wherein they spend their time, they will be lost through idleness. *Schich-Sofi* thought this so excellent a consideration, that he presently resolv'd to serve that holy man, with whom he continu'd seven years, and learnt of *Sabadi* many noble things. It is upon this account, as they affirm, that the said Village, to this day, enjoys an absolute and perpetual privilege and exemption.

They relate also that *Tamberlane*, whom they call *Temurleng*, desirous to see *Schich-Sofi*, and to be assur'd whether his Sanctity was answerable to the great reputation he had acquir'd all over the East, resolv'd to give him a Visit, and to have an evident Demonstration of the truth of his Doctrine, he bethought himself to make a tryal of it, with a resolution to rest satisfy'd as to his Sanctity, if he behav'd himself in three things as he expected he should; to wit, 1. If he came not out to meet him: 2. If he entertain'd him with Rice, boyl'd, not in Sheep's Milk, but that of wild Goats: and 3. If the poyson he would order to be given him, should not kill him. Hereupon *Tamberlane* being come to *Schamasbu*, where *Sofi* then liv'd, went streight to his Chamber. *Sofi* saw him well enough coming, but would not go to meet him, till *Tamberlane* had set foot within his Chamber: then *Sofi* rose up, and said to him, I know well enough what respect is due to the King, but it was your pleasure I should not meet you. I humbly crave your pardon. 'Tis a tryal you were pleas'd to make of me. This Complement pass'd, he made *Tamberlane* sit down, opposite to the Door, and caus'd to come of the neighbouring Forrest a great many wild Goats, which were milked in *Tamberlane's* presence. At last *Sofi* perceiving they were going to give him poyson; call'd for a clean shirt, which he put on, and having drunk the poyson, he fell a dancing round the Room, according to the manner of the *Schichs*, and continu'd that exercise so long, till such time as having put himself into a sweat all over the body, he took off the shirt, out of which he wrung the sweat, which the poyson had made of a Green colour, and having put it into a Glass, presented it to *Tamberlane*, to satisfie him that it had done him no harm. That thereupon *Tamberlane* made no further doubt of the truth of *Sofi's* Doctrine; that he bestow'd on him several Villages near *Ardebil*, and made him a Present of a great number of *Turks*, whom he was to instruct in his Religion.

The *Turks* believe not a word of all these Miracles; but however, they have a great Veneration for the memory of *Aly*. They acknowledge he was a near Kinsman of *Mahomet's*, that he is truly an *Iman*, or Saint, and that he led a very exemplary life; and particularly that he was valiant, and a very good Horseman; and thence it comes, that, when they get on Horse-back, they say *Isa Aly*, in the name of *Aly*.

Their purifications. As the *Persians* will not admit of any of the Laws and Ordinances which *Abubekar*, *Omar*, *Osman*, and *Hanife*, affirm to be grounded on the *Alcoran*, so they also contemn all the Ecclesiastical Ceremonies of the *Turks*, and have particular ones of their own, which they believe to be as necessary, as any thing that is most essential in the business of Religion. For instance, when

when the *Persians* intend to do their Devotions, especially their Prayers, they prepare themselves by external ablution as the *Turks* do, but after an absolutely different manner. They turn up their sleeves above the Elbow, wash their hands, which they afterwards put, two several times upon the Arms, stroaking them from the Elbow down to the Wrist. Then they stroak their faces only with the right hand. The *Turks*, on the contrary, take up so much water as they can hold between their hands, and therewith rub their faces, stroaking them three several times, from the Forehead down to the Chin, and afterwards from the Chin up to the Forehead. They wash also their Noses and Mouths, by drawing in with their breath the water, which, to that end, they take up between their hands. The *Persians* stroak their Heads with a moist hand, from the Nape of the Neck to the Forehead, and afterwards the Feet up to the Ancles. But the *Turks* pour water on their Heads, and so apply their moist Hand to the Feet, which they are oblig'd to wash, before they begin these Ceremonies: but this the *Persians* do not. The *Turks* put the fore-finger into the Ear, which they afterwards rub all about with the Thumb, and then with the same fore-finger stroke their Heads from the Nape of the Neck, to the Throat. These Ceremonies are perform'd in their Houses, before they go out in order to the doing of their Devotions, in the *Mosquey*; whither the Women come not at all, out of a fear they might distract the Devotions of the men. The *Persians* have a stone, wherewith they often touch their forehead, while they are at their Prayers; or haply they lay the stone upon the ground, and touch it with their foreheads. It is made of a greyish Earth, which is to be had about *Metzef* and *Kufa*, where *Hossein* was kill'd, and interr'd, near *Aly*, and thence it is that the said stone derives all its vertue. The Figure of it is Octogonal, and it is somewhat above three inches Diameter, and contains, with the names of their twelve Saints, that of *Fattima*, their common Mother. They are made by the *Arabians*, who bring them into *Persia* to be fold.

1637.

The *Persians* being come to the *Mosquey* begin their Prayers with *Alla Ekber*. When they Pray, their Arms hang down negligently, and they have their eyes fasten'd on the ground. On the contrary, the *Turks* have both their hands upon their Breasts. The *Persians*, afterwards, put their hands upon their Ears, and turn their faces to the South, out of this regard, that *Meca* and *Medina* are towards that Quarter, in respect of the Citie of *Ardebil*, where their Sect had its first Initiation and Original. There is some probability, that, in this particular, they would imitate the primitive *Christians*, who, in their Prayers, turn'd their faces towards the East, to express, that *Christ*, their Sun of Righteousness, was risen. Whence it came that the *Christians* being charg'd in the time of *Severus* the Emperour, as if they ador'd the Sun, *Tertulian* vindicates them in his Apology, and gives an accompt of the true cause of that Ceremony.

The *Persians* having thus turn'd their faces towards the South, begin their Prayers with that of *Allhemdo lilla*. Having said that, they set their Hands on their Knees, and in that stooping posture they say the Prayer *Subhanna Rebbi*, and repeat the *Alla Ekber*. Then they kneel down, touch their foreheads with the grey stone, and repeat the foresaid Prayer of *Subhanna Rebbi*, stretching out their Arms. After all this, they make the last Prayer upon their Knees, then rise up, and turning to the left and right hand, they pronounce with a low voice, *Salom alekern*, *Salom alekern*, saluting the Angels who have assisted them, and kept the Devil from disturbing them in their Devotions. The *Turks* salute the Angels before they have quite made an end of their Prayers. The Religion of the *Persians* obliges them to say their Prayers five times a day, to wit, in the morning at Sun-rising, at noon, in the afternoon, in the evening, and as they go to bed. Their chief Prayer is the *Fatab*, and next to that, the *Allhemdo lilla*, which Translated is to this effect. *Glory be to the Lord of all Creatures, to the King of the last judgement. We honour thee; we invoke thee; assist us in our necessities; Lead us in thy wayes; bring us into the path of those to whom thou hast done good, and not into the way of those, upon whom thou hast poured out thy wrath, nor into that of such as thou suffrest to go astray. Amen.*

And whereas all the Chapters of the *Alcoran* begin with these words, *bismilla rahman rahim*, They are in the name of God, &c. the *Persians* accordingly never undertake any thing, but they pronounce the *bismilla*, and sometimes say, *benahn ohnkj namesch beres tzanehast*, that is, in his name, who is the refuge and protection of Souls, they express a great attention and devotion in their Prayers; insomuch that going sometimes into the great *Metschid Mehedi*, at *Ispahan*, at the time when they were at Prayers, I could never observe, that they so much as took notice of me; but they had their eyes either fastened on the ground, or lifted them up to Heaven, according to the subject of their Prayers. There are some among them, who pray with such violence at their own houses, that they put themselves out of breath, and many times fall down in a swoond. I remember to this effect a story of one of my Neighbours at *Scamachie*, who was so earnest in his Devotion, that having said his Prayer very loud, and pronounc'd with all his might, above fifty times the word *Hakka*, which signifies, God, he at length could not pronounce it without a great deal of difficulty, and at last his voice quite fail'd him. There are some, who, at their Prayers use a certain kind of Beads, which they call *Moher Thebisk*, consisting of three dozen, distinguish'd by so many great Beads.

Upon

1637. Upon Friday, which is their ordinary Festival, their *Chalrib*, or Preacher, gets up into the Pulpit, and reads certain Chapters of the *Alcoran*, with the explication thereof. They make no account at all of our Bible, and say it hath been falsify'd by the *Jews* and *Greeks*, and that for that reason God sent the *Alcoran*, as a Corrected Bible, or the true word of God. While I was at *Scamachie*, I shew'd the *Minatzim Chalil*, the Pentateuck in *Arabick*. He knew the book well enough, but said of it, *Chrabdur*, that is, it is a book that's corrupt and abolish'd; the *Alcoran* is much the better.

Their opinion concerning Heaven and Hell.

They have very strange and extravagant opinions concerning the Creation of the World, the first man, the stories of the Bible, the last judgement and eternal life. They affirm, among other things, that, at the beginning, God made seven Hells, & as many Paradises, but that to the foresaid number there was an eighth Paradise added, upon the following occasion. *Ath*, King of *Persia*, and Grand-father of *Nimroth*, one of the most powerfull Princes of his time, grew so vain-glorious and proud, that he would be respected as a God: and to the end there should not any thing of Magnificence be wanting, he lay'd out several Millions of Gold, in building the noblest and most Sumptuous Palace, that the Wit and Art of man could imagine, which was to serve him for a Paradise. But the King being upon his way to go and see it, and take possession thereof, there rose up such a thick Mist, which so cover'd the House and Gardens that were about it, that it seem'd to have quite vanish'd, so that it could never yet be found: and that this is the eighth Paradise, which God hath joyned to the other seven.

They dedicate their Children to Saints.

The *Persians* have also the custom of dedicating or devoting their Children to some Saint, as soon as they come out of the Mother's Womb, to which Saint they are to be as it were Slaves as long as they live. As a badge of this slavery, they make a hole in their Ears, as soon as they are born, and thence it is they have the name of *Mahumedculi*, *Imanculi*, *Aaliculi*, that is, the Slaves of *Mahomet*, *Iman*, and *Aaly*. This they ordinarily do, when they are some years married before they have Children, or when the Children thrive not well. There are also some who devote them to a Monastical life, and promise to make them *Abdallas*. And yet if the Children that have been so design'd express no inclination to a Monastical life, they may go to some holy place, and for a sum of money be dispens'd of their Father's vow.

Their Lent.

They have also a Lent or Fast, which lasts a moneth every year. They call it *Rusch*, or, with the *Turks* *Orutz*, and they begin and end it, according to the prescription of the *Alcoran*, with the Moon of the moneth *Remesan*. They observe it with somewhat more austerity than the ordinary Fasts, in as much as they neither eat nor drink between Sun-rising and Sun-set: but they have all the night to do what they please in, and they commonly spend it so well, that they never fast less than they do at that time. For having sufficiently furnish'd themselves with Meat and Wine in the night, they ly down in the morning, and sleep away part of the day. Such as are unwilling to fast, may, for money, get a dispensation.

The Kindred of Mahomet.

There is in *Persia* a sort of people whom they call *Seid*, and they are of the Posterity of *Mahomet* and *Aly*, and enjoy several particular Privileges and Exemptions. They do not shave their heads as the other *Persians* do, but onely cut their hair about the breadth of two fingers, and let the rest grow, which they tie up together in a tress. They are not permitted to marry out of their own Family, in regard the Alliances they might make elsewhere would much diminish the King's Revenue. They are clad in white, and their shooes are low and flat-foal'd. They are forbidden not onely the drinking of Wine, but also being in the place where any is Drunk; so that if they are invited to any entertainment, the other Guests must be content with *Duschab*, or onely water. The touching of a Dog renders them unclean. One untruth would forfeit all their Privileges; and whereas all the other *Persians* swear by the name of God, *Aly*, *Schich-Sofi*, and by the *Beyamber ba embia*, that is, by the Posterity of *Aaly*, these *Seid* have no other Oath than that of *Eulademen*, that is, by my birth. Those of them who live in Cities are commonly rich, in regard they are possess'd of Lands and Villages, for which they pay not the King any thing, whence it comes they are sufficiently proud and insupportable. There are some who assume the quality of *Seid*, though they go from Citie to Citie, and live by Alms. They shew their Testimonials where they come, but they are for the most part Counterfeit, and such as make use of them are accounted Impostors; and thence it is they call them *Cher-Seid*, that is, Saints-Asses. Some of these last mentioned carry, about them, some hair, in round boxes of silver, which they say was taken off *Mahomet's* head, and have the sleight to make the several hairs come streight out at a little hole, perswading the simple, that that is done by some supernatural and miraculous vertue. This hair they sell at a very dear rare, and the *Persians* make use of it in their Devotions, putting it upon their books, when they say their Prayers.

At *Kimas*, in the Province of *Kilan*, there was one of these Mountebanks, who having found out the trick of setting Cotton on fire by means of a Chrystal cut half round, and held in the Sun like a burning-gla's, would have people perswaded by that Operation, which he affirm'd to be Supernatural, that he was of the Kindred of *Mahomet*. After our return to *Holstein*, I shew'd the *Persians*, whom *Schach-Sefi* sent thither, that it was the easiest thing in the

World to get fire from the Sun, and I lighted paper in the very depth of Winter, by means of a Chryftall full of cold Water, or a piece of Ice, which I had made half round in a Pewter Dish. They were astonish'd at it, and said, that if I had done as much in *Persia*, I should have pass'd there for either a great Saint, or a Sorcerer. 1637.

There is yet another sort of Ecclesiasticks in *Persia*, who are thought to be descended from *Aly*, instead whereof the *Turks* have the *Dervis*, of whom the *Kulesthan* makes many pleasant stories. These are called *Abdalla's*, and are a kind of Monks or Friars. They are very meanly clad, with a kind of sleeve-less Coat, of several pieces, quilted like Mattresses. Some of them wear onely a hairy skin, having at the walle, instead of a Girdle, a Serpent of brass, given them by their Doctors, when they make their profession, as a mark of their Learning. It is the *Suffibafchi*, or chief of the *Suffi* who Consecrates them in the *Sufficane*, at *Ardebil*, *Ispahan*, and *Mescher*. These *Abdallas* trudge up and down the Markets and other publick places, to assemble the people, and Preach to them the Miracles of their Saints, and to curse *Abnbecker*, *Omar*, *Osman*, and *Hanife*, as also the Saints of the *Usbeques Tartars*, of whom they relate ridiculous and obscene stories, to make them abominable and despicable. This Contributes somewhat to the establishment of their Religion, and heightens in the Children the hatred they have against the *Turks*, for those are the chief Auditors of these Market-Lectures, and thence it comes, that these *Abdallas* are never seen neer the Frontiers of *Turkey*. There are some of them, who take whatever their Auditors give them, and thence it comes they are also termed *Kalanderan*; for after they have spent about half an hour in talking and telling of stories, much after the manner of our Mountebanks, they have some small money given them, whereupon they dismiss the assembly, to go and Preach in some other place. They have in their hand a Hatchet or Scepter of wood, wherewith they make their Gestures, and handle them, as those in our parts, who shew tricks of Legerdemain, do their sticks. They set out their Discourse with all sorts of Fables, and sometimes bring in such palpable lies, that some make no difficulty to interrupt them, and reproach them with their impudence. They are a lewd sort of people, addicted to all manner of vices. Tipling-houses and places of publick prostitution are their ordinary retreats, and they are for the most part Buggerers and High-waymen. That they may commit their Robberies with greater safety, they go in the night time into Caves, and, Counterfeiting the neighing of Horses, they make a discovery of what number passes by. Hence it comes, that there are few that will give them so much as Lodging, in so much that they are forc'd to take up their quarters in Chapels, built for that purpose neer the *Mosqueyes*.

I shall here relate, to this purpose, what happen'd, at the time of our Embassy, in the Village of *Lekere*, within three leagues of *Ardebil*, to one of these *Abdallas*, who address'd himself to a young Woman, desiring her to give him a night's Lodging. The Woman excus'd herself upon the absence of her Husband, and told him, that, another time, when her Husband were at home, he should not be deny'd. The *Abdalla* finding the young Woman to his mind, and seeing her go out to milk the Kine, made his advantage of the opportunity, crept into the house, and hid himself under a bed, which the *Persians*, in the Summer time, put on high Treffels, as well to prevent the inconvenience they receive from insects, as that they may make use of the floor to put their Corn upon. The Woman being return'd from milking, desir'd a young Maid of the neighbourhood to keep her company that night, and while they were at Supper, she intreated the Maid, to reach some Cakes she had lay'd upon the bed, which she did, but finding the *Abdalla* lying under it, and imagining it was with the Woman's consent and privity that he was come thither, she would stay no longer with her. The *Abdalla* perceiving the Maid was gone, comes out, salutes the young Woman, and desires her to Lodge him, and having obtain'd that, made it his further intreaty, that she would afford him part of her own bed. The poor Woman finding herself alone, made as if she consented, and told him, she would onely go into the next Room to get somewhat for his Supper: but as soon as she was got in, she lock'd the Door, and barricado'd herself in with certain Bags of Rice. The *Abdalla* finding himself chow'd, lay'd hold of a little Child, and threatned the Woman to kill it, if she would not open the Door. The Woman made answer, that her honour was dearer to her than her Child, and that her Husband, who would be the most injur'd in its miscarriage, would get more of them. Upon that the *Abdalla* kill'd the Child with a broad Knife, which these Villains are wont to carry at their Girdles, and call *Bukdan*, cut him into four quarters, and beset himself to force open the Door. To get into the Room, he made a hole under the Threshold of the Door, and thrust himself into it to get through; but ere he had quite pass'd his head and shoulders, the Woman cries out, and finding a Plough-share in the Room, gave him so many strokes over the head and neck therewith, that he dy'd of it. The Neighbours, coming in at the noise, and, immediately after the Husband, found this sad Spectacle of the *Abdalla*, and, having got open the Door, the Woman swoounded in the Room. Being come to herself, she call'd to mind, that the Rogue, finding himself hurt by the first blow she had given him, had begg'd his life, and told her that he had wherewithall to purchase it: whereupon the Hus-

1637. band took the pains to search him, and to examine his ragged Coat, which had so many pieces about it, as made a shift to Lodge eight hundred *Chequines*, whereof the Peasant made his advantage. The *Abdalla's* body was burnt.

Their In-  
terments.

The *Persians* interr their Dead, within three hours after the Soul is gone out of the body, unless it be in the night time. They wash the bodies before they are interr'd, and this Ceremony is perform'd, in the house, to persons of quality, or in a place built in the Church-yard for that purpose, which they call *Mordeschar Cane*, for the common people. I had the opportunity to see these Ceremonies at *Caswin*, in our return from *Ispahan*. 'Twas the body of a young man of about twenty years of age, whom they carried in his Cloaths, and before he was quite cold, singing all along, to the Church-yard, where they stripp'd him, and cast him into a Cestern built about with Free-stone, about sixteen foot square. The Grave-maker having wash'd the body all over, they put a clean shirt about him, wrapp'd him in a shroud of Cotton Cloath, and lay'd him on a Bier, to be carry'd to the Grave, which was not far thence. Persons of quality have this further Ceremony done them, that at their coming out of the Bath, the body is set upright, and they pour Camphir water, which they call *Kafur*, upon the head, whence it runs down all over the body, all the Overtures whereof are stopped with Cotton. Then they lay it near the Grave, and the Priest having read some passages of the *Alcoran*, raises up his head a little, which he presently lets down again, and then he is put into the Grave without any Coffin. The Graves are made very hollow, and some are vaulted, and others cover'd with boards. the body is laid down on the right-side, with the face towards the West, upon this accompt, that the *Persians*, among other things, are of a perswasion, that at the last Judgement, the Sun and Moon shall be very sad, and that the Sun coming to the West shall stand still, and that both those Planets shall become as black as Coal. That then the Angel *Gabriel* shall come and beat the Sun and Moon, and force them to return from the West to the East, and that the last judgement shall begin at the West. Then the Priest, having taken up a little earth in his hand, read another passage of the *Alcoran*, went seven paces from the Grave, then return'd to it again, and having read another passage, retir'd with all the company. After these Ceremonies, persons of quality are wont to make a Feast, the third day after the interment, but without any Wine, and if the deceas'd hath left much Wealth behind him, they make another Feast on the seventh, and another on the fortieth day, as also at the *Narvus*, at the *Kurban*, and at the *Ramesan*, being sure to distribute some Almes among the Poor.

The reason why they make the Graves so hollow, and stop up all the Overtures of the body, is, the belief they are of, that when the Priest goes seven paces from the Grave, two Angels, named *Nekir* and *Munkir*, come into it, and, if the Overtures were not stopped, might be incommodated by some uncleanness. They believe, that, during that time, the Soul returns into the body, that she raises it into a sitting posture, that it may give the Angels an account of all its Members had done in this World. Then he makes these questions to the deceas'd; *In whom hast thou believ'd?* whereto it answers, In one onely God, my Heavenly Father. *Who is thy Prophet?* Mahomet. *Who is thy Imam?* Aaly. If he answers pertinently to the questions, and can give any account of the use of his Members, there is no doubt made but he is sav'd, and that the Angels thereupon seize the soul, and absolutely separate it from the body. There are only persons of age who are subject to this examination; Children being not oblig'd to give any account of their Faith.

The *Persians*, to shew that *Abathalib*, *Aly's* Father, is infallibly sav'd, affirm that he was, before, named *Emiram*, and that he dy'd before *Mahomet*. Being buried, and the Angels having ask'd him who was his Prophet, he made answer, it was *Mahomet*; but when they ask'd him who was his Saint, he was at a loss, and knew not what to say, for he knew not then that his Son *Aly* should become so great an *Imam*. Whereupon the Angel *Gabriel* going to *Mahomet*, bid him send *Aly* to *Abathalib's* Sepulchre, and to say to him, Father I am thy *Imam*, and shall draw thee to me at the day of Judgement: and that thence it comes, they gave *Emiram* the name of *Abathalib*, that is, the seeking Father, in as much as the Father had sought, and found his *Imam*.

The interments of great Lords and persons of quality are performed with great Pomp, and the body is accompany'd by a great procession. We made mention, in the fifth book of this Relation, of a Gentleman of *Scamachie* who had drunk so much *Aquavita*, that he dy'd of it the next day. The Ceremonies of his interment were as followeth.

In the first place, in the head of the Procession, there marched six men carrying Banners, and great and long Poles, much like those we had seen at our entrance into that place, with this difference only, that those at this Funeral were wreath'd. Next marched four Horses, the first whereof carried the Bow and Arrows of the deceas'd, and the other three some part of his Cloaths. After these, one of his Menial servants, mounted on an excellent Mule, carry'd his *Mendil*, or *Turbant*. This man was follow'd by two men, carrying on their heads, certain Towers, which they call *Nachal*, adorn'd with great Plumes of Feathers, who danc'd and leap'd to the sound of the *Mutick*, which came after them, and consisted of *Tabours*, and *Copper*



per basins, which they struck one against another. Between this Musick and the Dancers, there were carried eight Dishes of Preserves, having each of them a Sugar-Cake in the midst, cover'd with blue paper, which is the colour of their Mourning, and about every Cake three Wax-Candles lighted. Next marched divers of the *Suffi*, who were distinguish'd from others by their white *Turbants*. Then follow'd two bands of Musicians, who with all their might sung the *la illa illaha*, and the *Alla Ekber*, accompanying their cries with such distorted Countenances and Postures, as *Scaramuzza* himself would be much troubled to imitate. Then follow'd three young Boyes, having their right shoulder and arm naked, and their foreheads and arms so scratch'd, that the blood trickled down to the ground. Lastly, there follow'd three men, carrying each of them a Tree, whereto they had fasten'd certain red Apples, and the Tresses of hair, which the said Gentlemans three Wives had either pluck'd or cut off their heads, as also certain pieces of red and green paper. These went immediately before the body, which was carried by eight men upon their shoulders; and upon the Bier there was a very fair Garment, lined with the precious skins of the Buchar-sheep. Behind the Corps there follow'd four men, carrying, in a very high Chair, a young Lad, who read certain passages of the *Alcoran*, and the Procession was clos'd with the Relations and Friends of the deceas'd, who went along with the body to a certain place of the Citie, where it was to remain, till such time as it should be transferr'd to *Bagdat*, to be dispos'd near their *Imams*. 1637<sup>a</sup>



THE  
**T R A V E L S**  
 OF THE  
**A M B A S S A D O R S**  
 FROM THE  
**D U K E** of **H O L S T E I N**  
 INTO  
**M U S C O V Y, T A R T A R Y,**  
 and **P E R S I A.**

The Seventh Book.

1637.



AVING given an account, in the precedent Book, of all we thought worthy our observation in the City of *Ispahan*, during the abode we made there, as also of all we could learn of the State of the Kingdome of *Persia*, and the Inhabitants thereof, and their manner of life, at least as far as was consistent with the relation of our Travells; it shall be our business in the subsequent to set down the particulars of our return, and to reconduct the Ambassadors into their Countrey.

Some of  
the Reti-  
nue take  
Sanctuary.

All things being set in order for our departure, there hapned a difficulty which occasioned no small ditraction. The King of *Persia* had commanded *Abasculi-Chan*, our *Mehemander*, to conduct us, in our return, through the Province of *KILAN*, out of this consideration, that the said Province being one of the best and most fertile of all the Kingdome, it was his pleasure we should pass through it; as well that we might be eye-witnesses of the riches of it, and give an account thereof in *Germany*, as that we might find there those conveniences, which we had not met withall in our coming thither, and which we should hardly light upon elsewhere. But in regard the Inhabitants of *Kilan* are cruel and barbarous, whereas all the other *Persians* are civil and obliging, it rais'd an apprehension in some, that the King had given those orders purposely to ruine us, and it was reported, that his Majesty, being incens'd against the Ambassador *Brugman*, who in several Occurrences had demean'd himself insolently and imprudently, intended to make those people the instruments of his revenge upon him, and all of us. And this it had been the more easie for him to do, in that he needed only to awaken the resentments of the Governours of *Derbent* and *Scamachie*, whom the Ambassador *Brugman* had indiscreetly affronted at our first passage that way. Most of our people were so prepossess'd with this apprehension, and had given so much credit to the report, which was spread up and down the Citie, to that effect, that five of our Retinue went and took up their Quarters with *Lyon Bernoldi*, in the *Alla-Capi*, or Sanctuary, to wit, the Captain of our ship, *Michel Cordes*, his Mate, one of the Pages, the Chirurgeon, who afterwards went along with *Mandelslo* into the *Indies*, and one of the Guard.

We

We left *Ispahan*, on the 21. of *December*, towards the evening. Most of the *English* Merchants accompany'd us above a League out of the Citie, to a certain place, where they gave us a Collation, at the foot of a pleasant green Hill; which done, they took leave of us, and return'd to the Citie. The same night, we travell'd three Leagues, to a Village named *Reschman*, where we continu'd all the next day, as well for some reasons, not fit to be discover'd as in expectation of the *Postanick*, or *Muscovian* Envoy, who was to take the same way, and accompany us. The *Augustine* Fathers of *Ispahan* and *F. Ambrose*, Prior of *Tiflis*, came thither also, to take their leave of us, and afterwards, *Monsieur Malon*, the most considerable person among the *French* Merchants, came also to make us his Compliments. *Monsieur Mandelflo* came also to the said place, as well to take his final leave of us, as to acquaint us, that the King of *Persia* had appointed *Imanculi Suliban*, *Eischickagasi*, or one of his Stewards, for the Embassy he intended to send to his Highness the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master; that he carried along with him a Present amounting to five and twenty thousand Crowns, and that he was taking his leave, in order to his departure from the Court, within a few dayes after.

The 23. after we had taken leave of our friends, not without the shedding of some tears, we got on horse-back, and reach'd that day to the *Caravansera* of *Dombi*, five leagues from our former lodging.

The next day, we got five leagues further, and took up our lodging at night in a *Caravansera*, called *Serdehe*.

The 25. being *Christmas*-day, we saw, neer the Village of *Kaskabath*, within two leagues of *Serdehe*, how the King was encamped there under several Tents, which being of divers colours, made a very delightfull show. The Ambassadors sent thither the *Sieur Francis Murrher*, who understood the *Turkish* language. He made the King so handsom and respectfull a Complement, that his Majesty openly express'd how much he was satisfy'd therewith. In the mean time we pass'd on, and went and lodg'd in the little Citie of *Natens*.

The 26. we travell'd on, and took up our Quarters at night in a *Caravansera*, named *Chorzakassim*.

The 27. we came to the Citie of *Kaschan*, where the difference which happen'd between the Ambassador *Brugman* and our *Mehemander*, put us to much trouble. For the *Mehemander*, thinking it a disparagement to him to be domineer'd over by the Ambassador, would have return'd to the Court, to make his complaints of the ill treatment he receiv'd from us; and had done it, had it not been for the Ambassador *Crusius*, who reconcil'd them, but it was his business for four dayes, which we spent to no other purpose at *Kaschan*. We found the weather there very fair, and hot enough, though it were in the very depth of Winter.

## M. DC. XXXVIII.

*JANUARY* the first, we Celebrated the beginning of our New year by the firing of our great Guns, which were discharg'd three times, and afterwards by a Sermon and the ordinary Prayers. In the after-noon, we got on horse-back, and reach'd that day five leagues, to the Village of *Sensen*.

The 2. we got five leagues further, and took up our Quarters at night, at *Kasmabath*.

The third, we came to the Citie of *Kom*, where we were assign'd lodgings, in very fair houses neer the *Basar*, upon the complaints we made of the losses we had receiv'd in our former passage that way, when we were quarter'd in certain old ruin'd houses, where we had many things stolen from us.

We continu'd there all the 4<sup>th</sup>. and the *Mehemander*, to show he had forgotten all former differences, treated us so well that day, that we had all the reason in the World to be assur'd thereof. The *Muscovian* Ambassador, who seem'd willing to have a little debauché, oblig'd us to pass away the night with him.

*Jan. 5.* we travell'd five leagues, to a *Caravansera*, named *Schaferabath*. But ere we were all got out of the Citie of *Kom*, we found the Sun eclips'd soon after his rising. It was not quite three degrees above the Horizon, when the Moon depriv'd us almost of all light of it, and so overshadow'd it, that, to my judgement, in the greatest obscurity, the eclipse was three parts of four.

Neer this *Caravansera*, and on our right hand, we discover'd the Mountain of *Kilissim*, which is not very high, but encompass'd of all sides with several barren and stony Hills, which produce nothing but Salt, as do's also all the neighbouring Champaign, which is all white, by reason of the Salt and Saltpeter. This Mountain, as also, those of *Nachtzuan*, *Kulb*, *Urumi*, *Kemre*, *Hemedan*, *Bisetan*, and *Suldus*, supply all *Persia* with Salt, which is digg'd out of them as out of a Quarry. The *Persians* speaking of the Mountain of *Kilissim*, have this expression, *Kim keder kelmes*, that is, those who go it up come not down; an equivocation wherein many of our people have been mistaken, in so much that they have set down in their

1638. Journals, that the said Mountain is so dangerous, that such as go up it, never come down again. Whereas the true meaning of those words is onely this, that they who go up that Mountain, come not down, that is, that as long as they are getting up they do not come down, in as much as both cannot be done at the same time. The *Persians* affirm indeed, that *Schach-Abas* one day commanded one of his Hunt-men to go up to the top of it, and that he did so, and made it appear by the fire he made there, and that he never return'd thence, and that it could never be known what became of him: but this is onely a made story.

Brugman  
hurt.

The sixth, we continu'd our journey, but ere we were well got out of our Quarters, the Ambassador *Brugman's* horse fell down under him, in a very plain way. He had not onely the right Arm put out of joynt by the fall, but his brains were also so disorder'd, that we thought he would hardly ever be his own man again. But indeed we had all a sad day's journey of it, in regard most of our horses tir'd, nay, nine falling down dead under me, I was forc'd to make use of my man's, who went afoot, and carried the Portmantle upon his head. We lodg'd that night, at *Saba*, where we stay'd all the next day, to give the Ambassador *Brugman* some rest, to recover his senses.

Come to  
Saba.

The 8. we left *Saba* betimes in the morning, and travell'd that day nine leagues, to a *Caravanfera* named *Choskera*. In our way, we lost one of the Mules, which being stray'd some distance from the rest, had been driven out of the way by some Peasants. They were pursu'd to the next Village, where the Mule was found, with some part of its burthen, in a house, among a great many Women, who had made a shift to unload the beast, but finding themselves surpriz'd, and fallen into the hands of strangers, they cry'd out as if they had been undone. The Thieves were got away, so that all could be done, was to bring away the Mule with what was left.

As soon as we were lodg'd in this *Caravanfera*, the Ambassador *Crusius* gave order for the seizing of certain Sea-men who had committed several insolences at *Saba*; but they put themselves in a posture of defence, and endeavour'd to make an insurrection in the Retinue, in so much that we were oblig'd to disarm them by force, and to put them into Irons, wherein they continu'd till our coming to *Scannachie*. In all this quarter, and till we came to the Mountain of *Kilan*, the weather was cold enough, and the Snow upon the ground was above half a foot deep.

Meet with  
an Ambaf-  
sador from  
the King  
of Poland.

Jan. 9. having travell'd about three leagues, neer an old uncover'd *Caravanfera*, named *Hetz-zib*, we met with a Lord whom the King of *Poland* sent Ambassador to the King of *Persia*. His name was *Theophilus de Schonberg*, a person, though well advanc'd in years, of a very good countenance. He was a *German* by extraction, and yet in the discourse that pass'd between him and the Ambassadors, which lasted above an hour, he spoke altogether in *Latine*: but taking leave of us, he discover'd himself to be a *German*. He told us, among other things, that the King his Master had given him a Retinue of 200. persons, but that the great Duke of *Muscovy* would not permit him to pass with so many: which had occasion'd him to stay six months at *Smolensko*, whence he had been forc'd to send back most of his people, and reduce them to the number he then had about him, which was, 25. persons.

He also deliver'd us some Letters from the *Armenian* Archbishop, whom we had met at *Astrachan*, and told us, there were arriv'd in that Citie some Provisions which had been sent us from *Nisenovogorod*.

We saw that day, on our right hand, a very fair Countrey-house; which the King had built upon the Hill call'd *Kultebe*, for the convenience of hunting. We intended to lodge the next night at the Village of *Araseng*, and to travel that day but six leagues, but the Inhabitants told the Harbinger whom the *Mehemandar* had sent thither, to take up Quarters, that they would not receive us, and that if we attempted to lodge there by force, they were able to prevent it, and make us repent our rashness, not dissembling the design they had, to cut all our Throats, if we came within the Village. They had not forgotten the affront which the *Kaucha*, or Judge of the Village, had receiv'd, at our first passage that way, from the Ambassador *Brugman*, who having desir'd water to wash his hands, and the poor man having brought him troubled water such as the Brook did afford, cast it in his face, and the pot at his head; so that we were forc'd to travel on. The Villages of *Dowlet*, *Abath*, and *Ketzisan*, taking example by that of *Araseng*, in like manner deny'd us entertainment, and forc'd us to travel on three leagues further, to the Village of *Kulluskur*, through such a bad and slippery way, that most of our Horses were several times on their Notes, nay, it was day ere some got to the Quarters.

I was lodg'd at the Parson's of the Parish, and sent several times to desire him to come in and Sup with me. But he would by no means come, and walk'd all night without Doors; grumbling that his house was profan'd, by drinking Wine in it, and eating such Meats as are forbidden by the Law of *Mahomet*.

Jan. 10. we had another ill day's journey, in regard the ground being frozen, the beasts were so tir'd, that most of our people were forc'd to march afoot. Nay some were not able

able to perform the journey, whom we were afterwards oblig'd to send for. We lodg'd that night at the Village of *Membre*. 1638.

The 11. we came to the Citie of *Caswin*, where we were forc'd to continue nine dayes, till fresh Horses and Mules could be got for the prosecution of our journey. Neer the Ambassadors lodging there was a great Tree, full of Nails and Pebble-stones, which are so many marks of the Miracles, that one of their *Pys* or *Beats*, who lies interr'd under that Tree, is wont to do at that place, in healing the Tooth-ach, Agues, and several other Diseases. Such as are troubled with the Tooth-ach touch the aking Tooth with a Nail or Pebble, which they fasten to the Tree as high as they can reach with their mouths, and hope by that means to get ease. They, whose imagination is so strong as to be ever the better by this kind of Cure, express their acknowledgement thereof by tying certain Ribbands to the boughs of the Tree; though in other respects these Miracles are not done gratis, but are very beneficial to a certain Religious man, who hath the keeping of the Tree, and makes his advantage of the Offerings and Alms made there. This profit, which is enough to maintain one man, hath encourag'd several Mountebanks and Impostors, to expose their Cheats, in dressing up Trees with these trifles, and finding Sepulchres of *Pys* where there never were any.

The 15. The *Poslanick*, or *Muscovian* Ambassador, made a great entertainment for our Ambassadors, and the chiefest of their Retinue, and treated us very Magnificently. It was in Commemoration of the birth-day of *Knez Juan Basilonits*, one of the chief Ministers of *Muscovy*, whose favour he courted.

Jan. 20. we left *Caswin*, and leaving on our left hand, towards the Northwest, the way of *Solthania* and *Ardebil*, which we had taken at our coming into *Persia*, we took that of *Kilan* directing our course Northward. We travell'd that day four leagues, for the most part over Hills, manur'd and sown, and lodg'd, at night, in the Village of *Achibaba*, at the foot of a Mountain, on our right hand.

We were told, that Village was so call'd from an antient man of that name, who liv'd in the time of *Schich-Sefi*, and obtain'd it of him, in memory of a Miracle which God had done in his person, in reviving in him and his Wite, who were each of them neer a hundred years of age, the heat of younger years, in so much that they had a Son, who had bestow'd on them the Tomb, which they shew'd us, under a great Vault.

The 21. we pass'd through a fruitfull Country but somewhat uneven, to the Village of *Tzitelly*, by some called *Kellabash*, that is, a place fit for the breeding of Cattel; so far as that the Grass, which there is excellent good, and grows very plentifully, invites the Inhabitants of *Caswin* to drive their Heards into those parts. The *Vice-Daruga* of *Caswin*, who accompany'd the Ambassadors to this place, and Supp'd with them, entertain'd them a long time, and much to their Diversion, with the relation of his life, and told them, he had been carried away in his Infancy out of *Georgia*, which was his Countrey, in the time of *Schach-Abns*, during the War he made in those parts, and that he had been transferr'd to *Caswin* with his Father and Mother, who were then alive, and still *Christians*, though, in appearance, forc'd to embrace the Religion of the *Persians*.

He told us also, that *Abasculi* made his advantage of our journey; as well as other *Mehe-mandars*, to exact Provisions and other conveniences from the places which lay in their way; but that there was not one half employ'd for the service of the Ambassadors. They made him a Present of certain Ells of Cloath and Satin.

The 22. we travell'd seven leagues, all over Mountains and Rocks, interwoven with a Brook, which thereabouts ran winding up and down, so as that we were forc'd to cross it above thirty times, ere we got to the Village of *Kurtzibaschi*, where we lodg'd that night. The next morning, we travell'd all along Mountains, which were not very high, but delighted the eye by a diversity of colours, Red, Yellow, Green, and Blue, which afforded a very pleasant prospect. But about noon, we could see nothing but Rocks, dreadfull for their height and steepness, and, in the evening, we came to the River *Senderuth*, which we cross'd by a Bridge, that joyns the two Mountains through which it runs. We discover'd from the top of the Mountain, some pleasant and fruitfull Valleys, at least if I may so call the other lower Mountains, which are till'd and cultivated, and appear'd to us from the top of the Mountain as little Hillocks. This Village belong'd heretofore to a *Kurtzibaschi*, or Colonel of a thousand Horse, who gave it his own name, and was seated in a very pleasant place: but the houses were built onely of Earth and Canes, whereto there adjoyned certain shepherds Huts, where with we made the best shift we could.

The 23. we travell'd two leagues, very good way, along a Forest of Olive-Trees, at the end whereof, we came to a place, antiently called *Fauces Hyrcania*, but by the *Persians*, in the time of *Alexander* the Great, as it is indeed to this day, *Pylas*. The passage is very narrow, and serves for a Gate to the Province of *Kilan*. At the entrance of it, joyn two swift Rivers, which fall down with a dreadfull noyse through the Rocks, under the name of the River *Isperuth*, though before their joyning together, the greater of the two had the name *Kislosein*,

1638. *losein*, and passing under a stone bridge, in order to its falling into the Province of *Kilan*, it there again divides it self, and by two several Channels, falls into the *Caspian* Sea.

*A Caravanera upon a Bridge.* This is a very fair Bridge, built on six Arches, each whereof hath a spacious Room, a Kitchen, and several other conveniences, lying even with the water. The going down into it is by a stone pair of stairs; so that this Bridge is able to find entertainment for a whole *Caravanne*.

*A Dreadful Road.* At the end of the Bridge, the road divides it self. One way leads through a delightful and even Country, into the Province of *Chalcal*, and so to *Ardebil*, the other goes streight into the Province of *Kilan*, and this last is the most dangerous and most dreadfull way of any, I think, in the World. It is cut out of a Mountain which is pure Rock, and so steepy, that they found it a hard matter to make way enough for the passage of one Horse or Camel loaden, nay, in some places they have been forc'd to supply it with Mason's work, where the Rock fell short.

On the left hand, the Rock reach'd up into the Clouds, so as that the top of it could not be seen; and on the right, there was a dreadfull Abyss, wherein the River made its passage, with a noyse, which no less stunn'd the ear, than the Precipices dazzled the eye, and made the head turn. Not one among us, nor indeed of the *Persians* themselves, durst ride it up, but were forc'd to lead their Horses by the Bridle, and that at a distance loosely, lest the beast, falling, might drag his Master after him. The Horses came very gingerly, but the Camels stumbled not at all, and were sure to set their feet in the steps, which had been purposely cut for them in the Rock. At the top of the Mountain, we came to a house, where certain duties are paid. The Receiver thereof made us a Present of several fruits, and we wondred much, considering the time of the year, to see the Hedges all over the Valleys, flourishing, and full of blossoms.

*Summer and Winter the same day.* But this very Mountain, which was so steepy, readius, and dreadfull on the one side, had so pleasant and delightfull a descent on the other, that it was no hard matter for us to forget the fright and trouble we had been in, in coming it up. It was all over clad with a resplendent verdure, and so planted with Citron-Trees, Orange-Trees, Olive-Trees, nay, Cypress-Trees, and Box, that there is not any Garden in *Europe* could more delight the eye, nor more surprize and divert the smell. The ground was in a manner cover'd with Citrons and Oranges, insomuch that some of our people, who had never seen such abundance of them, made it their sport to fling them at one another's heads. But what we were most astonish'd at, was, in one and the same day, to see Winter chang'd to Summer, and the cold, which we had been sufficiently sensible of in the morning, turn'd to a heat, which in a manner accompany'd us into *Europe*.

We lodg'd that night, at the foot of a Mountain, upon the River *Isperuth*, at the Village of *Pyle-rubar*. 'Tis true the houses were little and incommodious, and scatter'd up and down without any order; but there was not any but had its Garden, and Vineyard, its Citron-trees, Orange-trees, and Pomegranate-trees, and that in such abundance, that the Village being cover'd therewith, we could hardly see any of the houses. It was encompass'd of all sides with a very high Mountain, save only, that on the South-west side of the Valley, there was a little Plain.

*The Province of Kilan described.* It may be said of this part, as indeed of all the Province of *Kilan*, that it is a kind of terrestrial Paradise. In the fifth Book of these Travels, we gave an account of its extent, of the other Provinces whereof it consisted, and of its principal Cities; whereto we think fit to add in this place, that the Province of *Kilan* extends it self like a Crescent, all along the *Caspian* Sea, and that it is encompass'd like a Theatre, with a high Mountain, out of which arise several Rivers, which refresh the plain Country, and make it very fruitfull, but in some places, especially towards the Sea, so fenny, that the whole Province becomes by that means inaccessible. But *Schach-Abas* hath remedied that inconvenience, by a bank or cauley, which runs quite through the Country, from *Astarabath* to *Aastra*; so that now people may travel without any inconvenience, and that with any kind of Carriage, Horse, Camels, Wagons, &c.

*Its Fruits.* There is no Province of all *Persia* so fertile and so abundant with Silk, Oyl, Wine, Rice, Tobacco, Lemons, Oranges, Pomegranates, and other Fruits. The Vines there are excellent, and as big as a man at the Waste: but in regard they are commonly planted at the foot of some tree, the branches spread themselves up the tree, even to the extremities of the boughs, so that the Vintage becomes so much the more difficult. For he who is to gather the Grapes, is oblig'd to fasten to the top of the tree a rope, having at the other end a stick as if it were to swing withall, upon which he having seated himself, is drawn and swings as it were from one tree to another, and from one bough to another, to gather the bunches.

The Mountain which encompasses it and spreads its extremities to the *Caspian* Sea-side, is to cover'd with trees, that the whole Province seems to be enclos'd by a continued Forest.

The neighbouring Sea, and all the Rivers of this Province are so well stor'd with Fish, the grounds with Cattel, and the forests with all sorts of Venison and wild Fowl, that the Inhabitants have not only wherewithall to live deliciously themselves, but may communicate of their abundance to their Neighbours. Which is contrary to what *John de Laet*, writes, after *Johan-*



N 13° E to R...  
 N 25° W to Oba...  
 N 12° E to Caspian...



DD  
 GEORGIO MELBOURNE,  
 Hospicij Graiensis Armig. hanc  
 veram Provincia fertelissima Kilan,  
 Hyrtania, delineationem.

A MAP  
 of y<sup>e</sup> Province of Kilan  
 as it lies on y<sup>e</sup> Caspian Sea.

MOKAN  
 Desertum

DERAN

Drick

Subel

Deschtwend

Maranku

Kuawer

Kilekeran

Howe Lemur

Nokeryn

Schichke-ran

Buladi

Astara

Lengerkunan

Maschirchan

Elliesdala

Bular

Talichkeran

Hataz Kasitu

Salian

Kellechol

Alibaluch

Sani Inf

Deilum mons

Seitirabath

Schaherzar

Schaheruth

Schal

Caswin

Buskus mons

Bakru mons

Chalchal

Rick

Kilofor

Pelje

Tomus

Imamfate

Tulum

Kutzelbar

Turusen

J. SAN

Asterabath

Tunkabun

Iahetzan

Lenkeru

Ypurch

Pelichen

Cheriban

Pisilian

Lijjar

Tamus

Pelje

Kis ma

Fumen

Sch Romiz

Abasar

Kaker

Adino basar

Enfite

visian

Resou

Kuz

Mus

Cher

Schaheruth

Schal

Kilofor

Karabaghi

Schaherzar

Schaheruth

Schal

Caswin

Caswin

*nes de Persia*, to wit, that *Mesanderan*, which is part of the Province of *Kilan*, is so cold a Country, that the fruits thereof hardly come to their full maturity. We know by experience, that there is no Province in all *Persia*, where the air is better and more temperate than in *Mesanderan*, and that it produces the best and fairest Fruits of any place in the Kingdom. Whence it came, that *Schach Abas*, who knew it very well, preferr'd this Province before all the rest of the Kingdom, and had such a kindness for it, that, willing to make it his ordinary residence, he there built the City of *Terabath*, where he died. 1638.

The Inhabitants of this Province, especially the *Kilek*, who live between *Kesker* and *Mesanderan*, are self-conceited, hardy and apt to attempt any thing. They had heretofore their particular King, nay even to this day, the King of *Persia* is not so absolute there, as in the other Provinces of his Kingdom; as well in regard they need not much care for any Trading with their Neighbours, since they have at home whatever is necessary, as that the Countrey being in a manner inaccessible, they may easily avoid entertaining the Forces which might be quarter'd upon them. There are but four waies to come into the Province, and all very narrow: the first comes from *Chorasán*-side, by the way of *Astarabath*; the second, from *Mesanderan*, by the way of *Ferabath*; the third, by *Pyle-rubar*, and the fourth, by *Lenger Kunan*. The Kilek.

All these waies are so narrow, that they hardly afford passage for a Camel. Such as are afoot, as also horse-men, sometimes venture to get into it by the way of the Mountain; but the way there also is so intricate, that the passages being maintainable by a few people, and the *Caspian* Sea not being able to bear great ships, the Inhabitants have no enemies to fear but the *Cosaques*, who sometimes fall into the Country in the night, to surprize and rife certain Villages upon the Sea-side.

We were then told, that it was not above eight and thirty years, since *Schach-Abas* had reunited that Province to his Crown; but that alfoon as his Sovereignty was acknowledg'd there, the *Kilek*, finding that *Schach-Sefi*, his Successor, signaliz'd the initials of his Reign by the executions of the chiefest persons about the Court, revolted, took up arms, and chose a King, whom the *Persians* call *Karib-Schach*. Revolt.

This *Karib* was born in the Village of *Lechtenscha*, but descended from the antient Kings of *Labetzan*, in the Province of *Kilan*, and found credit enough in the Country to raise an Army of 140000. men. His first action was the taking of the City of *Rescht*, where he seiz'd on the King's money, as he also did in all the other Cities of the Province, whereof he had possess'd himself of all the avenues. The King of *Persia*, who was then at *Caswin*, coming to hear of this revolt by the other Governours of the Country, Commanded *Saru*, Chan of *Astara*, *Mahomed*, Chan of *Kochtum* and *Seberabath*, *Heider*, Sulthan of *Keintubesar* and *Fanchabun*, and *Adam*, Sultan of *Mesanderan*, to set upon *Karib-Schach* of all sides. To that end they divided their forces into three Bodies, and went with two of them streight towards him, intending to make use of the third, in case of necessity, as a reserve; but they found him so well posted, that they were forc'd to retreat with loss. The history of Karib-Schach.

*Karib-Schach*, instead of improving this first advantage, which might have given reputation to his Arms, grew so insolent thereupon, and withall so negligent, that he permitted his people to enlarge their quarters to the adjacent Villages, where they fell to merriment and making good cheer, while he continued with some few about him at *Kisma* and *Fumen*. The Chans who observ'd all his actions, had no sooner notice of it, but they got together again their three Bodies, which made an Army of above 400000. men, with which they set upon the forces of *Karib-Schach* in their quarters, and gave them an absolute defeat.

As to *Karib* himself, he had the time to get into a Garden, where he hid himself, behind one of those trees which produce silk, and which those of the Countrey call *Tut*; but he was there discover'd by one of the Domesticks of *Emir-Chan*, who knew him by his Cloaths. He intreated that *Thebni*, or Servant, to save his life, by furnishing him with his Cloaths, and promis'd him, in requital, a good sum of mony, besides the Present he made him in hand of a great many Jewels. The Servant made as if he consented, but alfoon as he got on *Karib's* Garment and Sword, he said to him, It is I who am now King, and thou art but a Traytor, and thereupon calling to some of his Camerades, he seiz'd upon him, and put him into the *Palenk*. *Schach-Sefi* would needs see him, and had him brought to *Caswin*, where he then was, making his entrance into it, accompany'd by five or six hundred Curtezans, who incessantly jeer'd him in his Royalty, and did him a thousand indignities and affronts.

They began his execution by a very extraordinary punishment. For *Schach-Sefi* caus'd him to be shod, hands and feet, like a Horse, and told him he did it for his ease, in regard that being accusom'd to go upon the fat and soft ground of *Kilan*, he would otherwise hardly endure the stony and rugged wayes of *Persia*. Having suffer'd him to languish in that condition three dayes, they brought him to the *Maidan*, where they set him on the top of a Pole, and kill'd him with Arrows. The King having shot the first, oblig'd all the Lords of the Court to follow his example, bidding those that lov'd him do as he had done. Upon that word, he was immediately



1638. so cover'd with Arrows, that there was no shape of a man to be seen. The body was left in that posture three dayes, expos'd to the sight of all, and then it was taken thence and interr'd.

*Saru Chan*, Governour of *Astara*, had express'd most zeal, courage, and conduct in that War, whereby he got so much into favour with *Schach-Sefi*, that the sav'd the estate and life of a rich Merchant, who was unfortunately engag'd in *Karib's* revolt. He liv'd at the Village of *Lefchtensa*, and if he did not openly declare for *Karib*, certain it is, he knew of his design, and neglected to give notice of it to the Court: so that they were going to extirpate him and his family, and to confiscate his Estate, which amounted to above a hundred thousand pounds *sterl*, to the King's use, had not *Saru-Chan's* intercession procur'd his pardon.

The Kilek  
disarm'd.

As soon as this revolt was appeas'd, the *Kilek* were dis-arm'd, and they were forbidden to buy Arms, upon so great penalties, that ever since that time they have not dar'd to have any, not so much as a *Sefir*, or Ring, wherewith the *Persians* bend their Bows, so far were they from being allow'd Fire-arms, Swords, Bows or Arrows. They are only permitted the use of a certain Instrument like a Hedg-bill, which they call *Das*, having a handle of wood four foot long, wherewith they cut wood, drefs their Vines, and do several other things. The people called *Talisch*, who live between *Kesker* and *Mesanderan*, who express'd their fidelity, and affection to the King's service, in the War against *Karib*, have, on the contrary, the privilege of using all sorts of Arms.

Their habit.

The *Kilek* wear a shorter Garment than the other *Persians*, by reason of the moisture and moorishness of the Country. They are not of so yellowish a complexion as the rest of the *Persians*, but of a much clearer, in regard the air there is much more temperate, than in other parts of the Kingdom. The Women of the *Talisch's* are the handsomest of any in *Persia*, and cover not their faces as much as the others do. Maids have their hair ty'd up in 24. or 25. tresses, which hang down over their backs and shoulders, but married Women have but ten or twelve. Their Garments are so short before, that they hide not their Smocks, and instead of shoes, they wear Sandals of wood, which they fasten with a string to the heel, and, with a button or latchet of wood, between the great toe and the next to it: but in regard the ground is very fat there upon any rain, they commonly go bare-foot as well as the men. The Caps worn by the *Kilek* are of a coarse Cloath, but those of the *Talisch* are of black Lambskin. These two people have each of them their particular Language, which differs from the *Persian*, only as to Dialect; though there be so little rapport between that of *Kilan* and that of the *Talisch*, that they have much ado to understand one the other. For example, to signify a Dog, a *Persian* will say *Sek*, a *Kilek* *Seggi*, and a *Talisch* *Spech*. There is no Province in all *Persia*, where the Women take more pains than they do in that of *Kilan*. They are commonly employ'd in spinning, and making Stuffs of Cotton, Flax, and Silk, as also in making *Duschab*, and Syrop of Wine, which they sell by jars, and tilling the ground for the sowing of Rice, about which the men and women have their several employments. For the men hold the Plow, and make the trenches to keep in the water, for the watering of the ground: The women carry the Corn to field. The men sow the ground, going backwards as they cast the seed into it: The women weed it. The men cut it, and the women bind it. The men bring it into the barn, but the women thrash and sell it. They all profess the *Turkish* Religion, and are of the Sect of *Hanife*.

The Talisch

They receiv'd us so kindly, that it was generally wish'd by us we might have made some stay there: but we were forc'd to depart thence the 24. of *January*. We went, at first, along the River side, having on our left hand a forest of Olive-trees, which gave us a pleasant shade, against the heat of the Sun, which prov'd very great that day. Within a league of *Pyle-rubar*, we saw, in the midst of the River, upon a great Rock, the ruins of a Castle, and the remainders of a Bridge, both which they said had been pull'd down by *Alexander* the Great. We afterwards pass'd over another Mountain, or rather a very high and craggy Rock, at the foot whereof we came into a very smooth way, enamell'd with green, and spread over with new springing gras, checquer'd with Violets, which extremely delighted not only the smell but also the eye. We came at night to a Village, where we saw the Sepulchre of *Iman Sade*, in a little Chapel built at the foot of a hill, which lay on our right hand. All the houses of the Village were cover'd with slats and tiles, as they are in *Europe*, by reason of the rains, which, it seems, are more frequent in those parts than any where else.

+

Come to  
Rescht.

The 25. we got five leagues, and came at night to *Rescht*. The way at first, was somewhat uneven and woody: but after a while, we found it planted with those trees which bear silk, and at last we came to a plain and smooth way, having on both sides Corn-grounds, interwoven with several deep trenches, such as those which in *Flanders* they call *Water-gangs*, into which they let in the water by Sluces, and there keep it, for the watering of their grounds, when the heat hath dry'd up the sources of the Rivers, nay indeed for the overflowing of them, when need requires. They had indeed been at the pains to make Bridges over those moats or trenches, but they were so ill kept in repair, that many of our people fell into the water. The

Inha-

Inhabitants of the Country mind only the husbandry of Rice, and they have each of them his house at the end of his piece of ground, about two or three hundred paces distant one from the other. 1638.

The City of *Rescht* is the Metropolis of all *Kilan*, and of a considerable bigness, but open of all sides like a Village, and the houses of it are so hid within the trees, that a man at his entrance into it may think, he is rather going into a Forest than a City, since there is no seeing of it, till a man be within it. It lies two leagues distant from the *Caspain Sea*, and the *Arabs*, in the Catalogue of their Cities, name it, *Husum*, and place it at 85. degrees, 10. minutes latitude. The houses of it are not so well built, nor so fair, as those of the other Cities of *Persia*, but they were all cover'd with tiles as ours, and not any but had adjoining thereto a great number of Citron-trees and Orenge-trees, which had then on them their second fruit, ripe, of that years growth. Metropolis of the Province of Kilan. low.

The *Maidan*, or Market-place, is very spacious, and full of shops, where are sold all sorts of Commodities, especially Provisions, which are very cheap there, upon which accompt it was, that our *Mehemander* treated us very magnificently during the aboad we made there, which was five daies: The City of *Rescht*, though the greatest of all the Province, hath no *Chan*, or chief Governour, but only a *Daruga*, whose name, at that time, was *Alyculi-Beg*.

Jan. 26. the Inhabitants of *Rescht* celebrated a Festival, in honour of *Aly*, with the same Ceremonies in a manner, as we had seen at *Scamachie*, on the 7. of *February*, the year before: and this Feast happen'd then in *January*, in regard the *Persians* regulate their Feasts according to the Moon. They borrow'd of us a Drum, wherewith they made a mad kind of noise in their Procession. The Preacher, who made a long relation of the Miracles of *Aly*, concluded his Sermon with these blasphemous words, That, if *Aly* were not really God, he at least came very neer the Divinity: *Aly Chodda nist, amma ne dures Choddai*. A feast in honour of Aly.

We were here shewn the Sanctuary, which *Schach-Abas* had ordered to be built, at the place, where *Sefi Myrza*, his Son, had, by his command, been kill'd by *Bebut-beg*, as we have related in the precedent Book of these Travels. Sefi Myrza's Sanctuary.

Jan. 30. we left *Rescht*, the weather rainy. We saw nothing at all that day but a Plain, which brought us not only to our lodging that night, but also to the Frontiers of the Province of *Kilan*, which is very even on that side. All the way was planted on both sides with Box, and those trees which bear silk, and cross'd by many small Rivers, whereof such as were considerable enough to have a name, are, the *Pesi-ghan*, half a league from the City of *Rescht*, then that of *Chettiban*, and somewhat less than a league thence, those of *Pischeru* and *Lissar*, all which have Bridges, rais'd very high, by reason of the frequent inundations of the Rivers, and so untoward to pass over, that they put a man into a fright: and notwithstanding all our care, yet could we not prevent the Horfe, which carried the Physicians baggage, from falling into the River, whence we had much ado to get him out, by reason of the Fens on both sides it. The last River we cross'd that day is called *Tzomus*; and they are all well stor'd with fish, in so much that the King farms out the fishing of them, which brings him in yearly very considerable sums. Having travell'd four leagues that day, we came at night to *Kisma*, neer the Town of *Fumen*, or *Pumen*, where *Karib-schach* was defeated, and taken, as we related before. Leave Rescht.

January the last, we got four leagues further, our way being planted all along with those Trees which bear silk, and whereof there was so great a number, that they made a Forest. We saw also that day great Vineyards, according to the *Persian* way.

Having travell'd about four leagues, we met with the *Calenter*, or King's Lieutenant in the Government of *Kesker*, who came to meet us, accompany'd by thirty Horfe. He had led after him a Mule, loaden with Wine, Conserves, and other refreshments, wherewith he treated the Ambassadors, and oblig'd them to make a Collation in the field.

The *Chan*, who was coming after him, accompany'd by a hundred persons of quality on Horse-back, receiv'd the Ambassadors with great civility, and conducted us to the little Citie of *Kurab*, where he invited us to his own house, and treated us with Fruit and Conserves, making it his excuse, that their Fast permitted him not to keep us company, and entertain us with flesh. The Collation ended, he had us all conducted to the Lodgings he had taken up for us, ordered certain Gentlemen to wait on the Ambassadors, and sent them a Present of four wild Boars. Come to Kurab.

The *Chan's* name was *Emir*, and he was son to a *Georgian Christian*, born at a Village neer *Eruan*. He had been Circumcis'd in his youth, and had some time been *Cup-bearer* to *Schach-Abas*, who had bestow'd that Government on him, in recompence of the service he had done him at the siege of *Eruan*, and had given the reversion of his place of *Cup-bearer* to his Son. He was an eloquent person, and obliging, and took much delight in talking of the Affairs and Wars of *Germany*, and our manner of life. He told us he could not forbear loving the *Christians*: but we were told one very extraordinary thing of him, and horrid to relate, to wit, that

1638. that having some time been in a tedious Disease, which having caus'd an universal contraction in all his Members, the Physicians had order'd him one of the most extravagant remedies that ever were heard of, which was, *ut rem haberet cum cane femina.*

Kurab  
Metropolis  
of the Pro-  
vince of  
Kelker.

This little Citie of *Kurab* lies within two leagues of the *Caspian Sea*, as that of *Rescht* do's, and is hid within its Trees. They who call it *Kesker*, give it the name of the Province, wherein it lies. In this place was born *Schach-Sefi*, who reign'd at the time of our Embassy. For his Mother was brought to bed in this Citie, upon occasion of a journey which *Schach-Abas* took into *Kilan*, wherein she follow'd him, along with *Sefi Mersa* her Husband. The house, wherein he was born, belong'd to a rich Merchant, named *Chorza Mahmud*; but in regard a Prince, Heir to the Crown, had his birth there, it was converted into a Sanctuary.

FEBRUARIA  
The Am-  
bassadors  
leave Kur-  
rab.

February the first, we left *Kurab*, about ten in the morning, having very fair weather, save that the heat was greater than we could have wish'd. *Emir-Chan* conducted us a league or better out of the Citie, where he took leave, intreating us to be carefull of his *Calenter*, who had order to accompany us through his Government. This *Calenter* was a young man, of an excellent good nature, and diverted us in our way, by shooting with the Bow, and shewing tricks with a half-pike, at which exercise he had an admirable sleight.

Having travell'd two leagues, we were got to the *Caspian Sea*-side, whence we saw the Countrey, which is all cover'd with Trees and Forests towards the North and South, spreading it self like a Crescent a great way into the Sea, on the right hand, from about *Mesanderan*, and *Ferahab*, and on the left, from about *Astara*. We travell'd about a league along the the *Caspian Sea*-side, and lodg'd at night, upon the Torrent *Nasseru*, in a house called *Ruassferu-kura*, which had but two Chambers in all; so that being streightned for room, most of our people were forc'd to ly abroad, at the sign of the *Seven-Stars*.

The 2. we travell'd six leagues or better, along the Sea coast, going North-westward. We cross'd over that day fourteen little Rivers, or rather so many great brooks, and among others, those of *Sehibern*, *Dinarsar*, *Chalessera*, *Alarus*; and *Nabarrus*. The River of *Dinarsar*, which is about the mid-way, serves for a common Frontier to the Governments of *Kesker* and *Astara*, which oblig'd the *Calenter* of *Kesker*, who had accompany'd us so far, to take leave, and recommend us to the conduct of the *Calenter* of *Astara*, who waited for us on the River side. The Canton is called *Kargaru*. The *Calenter* carried us out of the highway, and conducted us through Corn-ground to a Village named *Sengar-hafara*, where we lodg'd that night, and found, brought thither, before us, five wild boars which they had hunted, purely upon our accompt, and for our entertainment. All the Forests of those parts are well stor'd with them, in regard the *Persians*, not daring to eat them, are not much inclin'd to the hunting of them.

The 3. we departed betimes in the morning, in snowy and rainy weather, and continu'd our way along the *Caspian Sea*, drawing towards East-north-east. Our way lay so neer the Sea, that the Horses many times went into the water up to the Girts, nay some of our people fell, horse and man, into the water: so that this prov'd one of the worst dayes journey we had, especially for this, that, after we had travell'd seven large leagues, we were forc'd to lodge that night in a wretched Village, named *Hove-lemur*, where all we could get was only a house over our heads.

The 4. we were upon our way again very betimes in the morning, having receiv'd fresh horses. We travell'd four leagues along the Sea-coast, going towards the North. Then we pass'd through a Forest of two leagues, and, in that space of ground, met with two and twenty Rivers; whereof the chiefest are called *Lome*, *Konab*, and *Beskeschan*. The Bridges we were to pass over, were so bad, that many of our company fell into the water, nay there were three Peasants and four horses drown'd, and six more died by the way.

The *Chan* of *Astara*, with a troop of 200. horse, met us within half a league of the Village, where we were to take up our quarters, and accompany'd the Ambassadors to their lodgings, which he had taken up for them in houses scatter'd up and down among the trees. The name of the Village, as also of the River, which runs through it, is *Choskedehene*. The word *Choskedehene* signifies, dry-mouth, and they have given it that name, for this reason, that, the Sea is so shallow there, that the Fish cannot get into the River. The *Chan* lives at *Astara*, which place hath its name from the Province, and is an open place without any walls, as *Rescht* is, within a quarter of a league of the *Caspian Sea*. His name was *Saru-Chan*, a person furnish'd with all the qualities requisite in a Governour of a Province.

Feb. 6. which was the last day of their Lent, he made a great entertainment for the Ambassadors, whereat he discover'd not only the magnificence of his disposition, but also the excellency of his wit, by the noble discourses that pass'd between him and the Ambassadors. Among other things, he gave them all the particulars of the War, occasion'd by *Karib-Sebach's* revolt, wherein he had been in person, and had brought away his table-cloath, which, being of green Satin with Gold-flowers, was laid at this entertainment. That service, with other he had done upon several other occasions, had rais'd him so much into the King's favour, that he had

had appointed him for the Embassy into the *Indies*, whither he was to go the following Spring, 1638. to which end he had already received his dispatches. He confirm'd to us what we had been told before, of the danger we might fear from the *Cosaques*, adding thereto, that it was not two years since they had plunder'd the City of *Rescht*, and that it were not amiss we stood on our guard, and had our Arms fixt.

The Vines in these parts are so big, that they exceed a man's bulk. I have said as much before, though I believe some will hardly believe it: but besides that all who travell'd with us, are eye-witnesses of this truth, I may allege, to make good what I affirm, the Authority of *Strabo*, who saies the same thing of the Vines of *Margiana*, which is part of the Province of *Chorasán*, and adds thereto, that no flock almost but yields an ordinary pail-full of Wine; which is very certain, and yet I have some reason to doubt of what he further affirms, that the bunches there are above four foot long.

We saw neer *Astara* at the foot of the mountain of *Schindan*, the Village of *Schich-Sahadan*, which enjoys an absolute exemption, granted it, upon the accompt of the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sahadan*, *Aly's* Master,

Febr. 7. we got seven leagues further, along the Sea-side; and came, by a very steight <sup>Come to the Province of Lengerkunan.</sup> passage, into the Province of *Lengerkunan*. The only way to come into it is by a Bank, rais'd between the mountains and the fenns, besides which there is no other passage. At the end of the said bank, we came to the River *Serdane*, and afterwards to the Town of *Lenkeran*; upon the River *Warsafaruth*. This Town, as also all the adjacent Country, derives its name from the easy anchorage of shipping thereabouts, though, to speak rigorously, there is no haven in those parts, but only a kind of Bay, between two Capes, or Promontories, which reach a great way into the Sea, one on *Lenkeran*-side, which is cover'd with trees, on the other on *Kisilagats*-side, on which there is nothing but canes. But the Sea thereabout is so shallow, that little Vessels can hardly get in there; and when they are in, they ly expos'd to the violence of the East-wind.

*George Dictander* saies, in the Relation of his *Travels*, that, in the year 1603. there came to that place by Sea an Ambassador from *Rudolph II.* Emperour of *Germany*, and that he died there with most of his retinue: but the Inhabitants thereabouts, from whom I would have inform'd my self of that particular, knew nothing of it. The *Kurtzibaschi* hath the revenue of the Countrey allow'd him as part of his pay; though our *Mehemandar* and the *Persians*, for what reasons I know not, would have perswaded us, that it belong'd to the *Chan* of *Ardebil*, and depended on his Government. We were receiv'd there by a *Visir*, or Secretary, who had the over-sight of the Demesn in those parts.

We continu'd there the 8. 9. and 10. as well to refresh the Camels, which the ill and slippery waies had almost wearied off their legs, as in expectation of the rest of our retinue, who were not yet come up with the baggage, and with them fresh horses, for the better prosecution of our Journey.

The 11. we left *Lenkeran*, and travell'd five leagues on to *Kisilagats*, crossing that day four <sup>Leave Lenkeran.</sup> great Rivers, to wit, those of *Kasiende*, *Noabine*, *Tzili*, and *Buladi*, the three former over Bridges, and the last, which was very broad, in little Boats, swimming over the horses. At our coming out of the River, we were forc'd to travel with much inconvenience, for half a league or better, through the water, which the adjacent Sea had forc'd up there, and to send the Baggage by Sea, in six great Fisher-boats. The Sea-side, in those parts, is cover'd all over with Canes, as are also the Islands along the Coast, where the *Cosaques* some times lye in ambush, to surprize and set upon the ships which pass that way, as also in expectation of an opportunity to cross over to the Continent.

At our coming out of the said water, we found the Lord of that place, who was come to meet us, accompany'd by a hundred persons on horse-back.

The little City of *Kisilagats*, that is, red, or gilt wood, hath no walls, no more than any of the other Cities of those parts, and lies in a plain, half a league, or better, from the Sea, towards the North-west, upon a little River, called *Willefschi*. *Sulfabar-Chan* sold it heretofore to the *Chan* of *Ardebil*, by whom it was left to his Son, *Hossein Sultan*, who still enjoys it. The mountain of *Kilan* presented it self to our sight, towards the West-north-west, sinking by degrees into little hills, towards the Countrey of *Mokan*. At the foot of the mountain, there were several Villages, among others, those of *Buladi*, *Matzula*, *Buster*, and *Thaliskeran*, and abundance of trees, planted in a streight line, along a vast piece of Meadow-ground, where there was excellent Pasture for Cattel. I conceive this to be the place which *Strabo* speaks of, when he saies, that, towards the *Porta Caspia*, there is a fertile plain, very fit for the breeding of Horses. He adds, that it is able to keep fifty thousand breeding Mares, which number the Kings of *Persia* were wont to have kept there. But this is not true, at least there is no such thing now: though a Military Officer of the Duke of *Holstein's*, who made it his bragg, that he had travell'd into *Tartary*, though he had not been beyond *Astrachan*, being question'd concerning the truth of this breeding-place, had the confidence to affirm, that what *Strabo* had said of it, was very certain.

About

1638.

The Inhabitants of a Village extirpated.

About these parts, and in the neighbouring Mountains, are the Countries of *Kuawer*, *Maranku*, and *Deschiewend*, and the Village of *Dubil*, otherwise called *Chatifekeka*, the Inhabitants whereof were extirpated, by the exprefs command of *Schach Abas*, for the abominable lives they led. They had their meetings in the night time at some private houfes, where, after they had made good cheer, they blew out the Candles, put off their Cloaths, and went promifcuously to the work of Generation, without any refpect of age or kindred, the Father many time having to do with his own Daughter, the Son, with the Mother, and the Brother, with the Sister. *Schach Abas* coming to hear of it, ordered all the Inhabitants of the Village, to be cut to pieces, without any regard or diftinction of age or fex, and peopled it with others. I conceive, it is of the Inhabitants of these parts, that we are to understand what *Herodotus* affirms, of their going together, without any shame, and publickly, after the manner of Beasts. Over againft *Kifilagars*, and about three leagues from the Continent, there are two Iflands named *Kelechol* and *Aalybaluck*. The latter, which is three leagues, or *Farsangs* in length, hath its name upon this accompt, that *Aly* being there one day, extremely put to it for fresh water to quench his thirst, God immediately caus'd to break forth out of the ground a Spring of fresh water, which is to be feen there to this day.

A false Miracle of Aly.

Febr. 12. we travell'd on, through a plain Country, but crofs'd by feveral small Rivers, the chiefest whereof were the *Uskeru*, and the *Butaru*, and we lodg'd at night, at *Elliefau*, a Village feated at the entrance of the Heath of *Mokan*, at the foot of a hill, which is very fruitful, as is alfo the reft of the Country, on the mountain-side. It belong'd to a Military Officer, named *Beter Sulthan*, who had his ordinary refidence at a place fix leagues thence. The houfes of this Village were very wretched ones, as being built only with laths nail'd acrofs, and plaifter'd over with clay. They were inhabited by Souldiers, on whom the King beftows the revenue of his Demefn in these parts, with certain Lands which they are oblig'd to cultivate.

A barbarous action of the Ambassador Brugman.

In this Village, the Ambassador *Brugman* caus'd a *Persian* to be kill'd with cudgelling. His Groom would have gone into the firft houfe he came to, with one of the led-horfes: the *Kifilbach*, or Soldier, who was the Mafter of it, told him, that his houfe was free from quartering, and that befides, he had no convenience for the entertainment of horfes, whereupon, having a ftick in his hand, he therewith struck the horfe over the head, but very flightly. The Ambassador *Brugman*, who faw this conteftation, was fo enrag'd at the refiftance of the *Kifilbach*, that he immediately alighted, and ran in to him.

The *Kifilbach*, who faid afterwards that he knew him not, and was far from imagining, that an Ambassador would engage himfelf in fuch a bufinefs, and, as a Soldier could not brook an affront in his own houfe, flood upon the defensive, and gave the Ambassador fuch a blow over the arm with his ftick, that he was forc'd to cry out for help.

His Domesticks came in upon the noife, and gave the *Kifilbach* fuch a bearing, that he was mortally wounded, and had much ado to crawl into the next houfe, to avoid their further fury. The Ambassador, notwithstanding all this, would needs make his complaint to the *Mehemandar*, of the infolence of the *Kifilbach*; whereto the other reply'd, that he knew not what to do in the bufinefs; that he had no power over the *Kifilbachs*; that the Superiour Officer was not there, to give him fatisfaction, and, withall this, that he who had injur'd him, had receiv'd fuch a chaftifement, as he thought he could hardly ever recover, and that if he were not fatisfy'd, he might do himfelf what further fatisfaction he thought fit. *Brugman*, prefuming upon this permiffion, immediately fent to plunder the *Kifilbach's* houfe, and order'd his horfe and arms to be brought away. The next day, he got together all the retinue, and caus'd it to be publish'd by found of Drum, that all fhould get on horfe-back, in order to their departure out of the Village, and that all who fhould ftay there, after the Ambassadors were gone, might do it at their own peril.

Not one of the Company knew his defign, no, not his Colleague; but it was foon discover'd, when he himfelf, being got on horfe-back, and making a halt before the Ambassador's Lodging, told the *Mehemandar*, that he fhould bring forth the man, who had struck him the day before. The *Mehemandar* told him, he was fo dangerously wounded, that he was not able to rife; but the Ambassador not fatisfy'd with that anfwer, order'd him to be brought thither in a Coverlet, and, notwithstanding the mediation of the other *Persians*, who with great fubmiffions begg'd the *Kifilbach's* pardon, he commanded an *Armenian*, who was an Interpreter for the *Turkifh* Language, named *Mark-Fileroffein*, to beat him with a great Cudgel, after the fame manner as he had been beaten the day before.

Causes a Kifilbach to be kill'd in cold blood.

This mercilefs Rogue gave him one blow over the arm, and another upon the fide, wherewith he difpatch'd the poor *Kifilbach*, who ftirr'd a little afterwards; but when the *Armenian* would, by order from *Brugman*, have profecuted the execution, he found the man quite dead. The Ambassador feeing him in that pofture, faid, 'tis very well, he hath what he deferv'd; and thereupon turning to the *Mehemandar*, and the other *Persians*, he told them, that if *Schach-Sefi* did not revenge him for the affront he had receiv'd, he would return again in a fhort time, fo well attended, that he fhould do himfelf fatisfaction. The other Soldiers made it appear by their demeanour,

meanour, that they wanted neither will nor courage to exprefs their resentment of the injury done them, and cut all our throats, and I know not whether it were the presence of the *Mebe-mandar*, that prevented them from doing it; but certain it is, that it would have been no hard matter for them to do it, and that it was the effect of a miraculous providence, that we escap'd that mistfortune. 1638.

We travell'd that day, which was the 13. of *February*, two leagues over the Heath of *Mokan*, and lodg'd, that night, at *Oba*, in Shepherds huts. The *Mebe-mandar*, who had staid behind in the Village, overtook us at night, and brought us word that the *Kisilbach* was dead, and demanded of the Ambassador *Brugman*, the Horse, Arms, and other things, which he had from the deceas'd person, to be sent to his Widdow and Children, whom he had left in a very sad condition.

I observ'd that morning, that the Sun rose towards East-south-east, and consequently, that the Load-stone declin'd 24. degrees from the North towards the West, and at *Oba*, I found the Sun, at noon, at the height of forty degrees, forty eight minutes, and consequently, that the elevation of the Pole, under that Meridian, was thirty nine degrees, twenty eight minutes.

The Sea-coast lay from South-west to North-east, and we had a sight of the mountain of *Scamachie*, towards the North.

As concerning the Heath of *Mokan*, it is held to be sixty *Farsangs* in length, and twenty in breadth. The *Turks* call it *Mindunluck*, that is, a thousand wayes, or thousand holes, at which the smoak comes out, and the *Persians*, *Mogan*, or *Mokan*. It is inhabited by several peoples and families, whose Predecessors, having born Arms under the command of *Jesid* against *Hoffein*, were banish'd into this Desert, and they are not permitted to live either in Cities or Villages. In Summer, they encamp at the foot of the Mountain; and in Winter, they lodge in Tents upon the Heath.

They subsist by their Cattel, but so poorly, that it is as much as they can do. Whence it comes, that they are called *Sunek Rajeti*, either for that, from bone to bone, that is, from Father to Son, they are subject to the King no otherwise than as the most miserable Slaves are, or that they have hardly left them wherewith to cover their bones. They are a kind of Savages, and their chief families are called *Chotze Tschaubani*, *Tekle*, *Elmenku*, *Hatzikasilu*, *Sulthan baschelu*, *Carai*, *Ardenduschenlu*, *Chaletz*, &c. I speak in another particular Treatise of the origine of these families, and the manner of life of these people.

The 14. we travell'd three leagues, drawing towards the North, and lodg'd at night among the *Hatzikasilu*. We saw, in a Chapel by the way, the Sepulchre of *Bairam Tekle Obasi*. He was the famous Robber, who liv'd in the time of *Schach Abas*, who coming to be head of a strong party of Tories, did abundance of mischief to the *Bassa Tzakal Oglu*, who was entred *Persia* with a *Turkish Army*, infomuch that there hardly pass'd a day, but he sent some *Turks* heads to the King. A Robber General of an Army.

These little advantages, and the booty he got, improv'd his retinue to the number of twelve thousand men, who did the *Turks* more mischief than the Royal Army could. *Schach-Abas* requited his services, by honouring him with the quality of *Chan*, and bestowing on him the revenue of certain Villages, and some Lands, to maintain the new Dignity.

We lodg'd that night in Huts, and were hardly laid down, ere we heard the noise of a great volley of small shot; which gave us a hot alarm, and oblig'd us to put our selves into a posture of defence, in expectation of some engagement. We thought at first, that the *Kisilbachs* had a design to revenge the cruelty, which the Ambassador *Brugman* had exercis'd the day before on one of their Camerades; but we understood soon after, that what had been done, was by order from the *Muscovian Postanick*, purposely to frighten the Ambassador *Brugman*, though he would make us believe, it was to honour him, out of an imagination he seem'd to have, that it was the said Ambassador's birth-day.

The 15. we travell'd eight leagues along the Heath, and lodg'd within a quarter of a league of the River *Aras*.

We intended to take up our quarters that night at *Tzanat*; but understanding that *Areb Chan* of *Scamachie*, was lodg'd there with his whole Court, and that he would stay there all the next day, we also resolv'd to continue the 16. at the place where we were.

We had some reason to be distrustfull of *Areb-Chan*, by reason of what had happen'd between us at our first passage: but he made it appear that the *Persians* have this also common with all Generous minds, that they can forget injuries. For he did us no unkindness; nay, on the contrary, as long as we were in his Government, he let slip no occasion of obliging us, laying the cause of our misunderstanding one the other, on the Interpreter *Rustan*, who had forsaken us, and, as he said, had made him several bad reports of us, nor doubting but he had said as much to us of him, and protesting that if he had him, his head should go off for it. He order'd us to be receiv'd by a Person of Quality of his retinue, upon the first news were brought him of our being come to the River *Aras*, and made us a Present of three baggs of Wine, which came

J 3  
Var<sup>n</sup>  
24°  
Lat 39.28

9 2

5  
3

1638. to us very seasonably, in as much as that day, and the day before, we had been but poorly treated. *Aerzebeg*, who had been our *Mehemandar* at our former passage, came also to visit the Ambassadors, and presented them with an excellent Greyhound-bitch.

The 17. we cross'd over the famous River *Araxes*, near *Tzauat*, where they had made a Bridge of Boats, which they call *Tzissi*. The antient Historians and Geographers speak so differently of this River, that I conceive it will not be amiss I said somewhat here of it by the way.

The River  
Aras.

True it is, most of them put it in the Province, wherein it really lies, but they are mistaken in the description of its Course, in as much as they do not well understand *Q. Curtius*, who speaks of it in two several passages, but in a different sense. For in the 5. Book he puts it in *Persida*, and says its course is Southward; and in the 7. Book, he makes it pass through *Media*, and to fall into the *Caspian* Sea. Nor does *Strabo* express himself more clearly. *Raderus*, in his Commentaries upon *Q. Curtius*, thinks to make these passages very clear, by saying, that the River *Medus*, into which the *Araxes* fall, hath its course, at first, from North to South, and that it falls into the *Caspian* Sea. But he is mistaken; for it is impossible, that River should make its way through the dreadful mountain *Taurus*, which is many leagues in breadth, and which runs through all *Persia*, nay indeed all *Asia*, and pass from *Persopolis* towards the *Caspian* Sea. But the truth is, there are two Rivers of the same name of *Araxes* in *Persia*; one, in *Media*, the other in *Persida*. As to that which passes by the walls of *Persopolis*, now known by the name of *Schirus*, *Q. Curtius* calls it *Araxes*, as he gives to the *Jaxartes*, which passes to the Frontiers of the *Scythians*, the name of *Tanais*, and that of *Caucasus* to the Eastern part of the mountain *Taurus*, for which it would much gravel him to shew any reason.

The *Persians* call that which is in *Persida*, *Bend-Emir*, by reason of a great Miracle, which they believe *Aly* did there, and it falls into the Ocean near the *Persian* Gulf. That which we cross'd over in the Heaths of *Mokan*, still keeps its name, which is deriv'd, if we may credit *Eustathius*, from the Greek word *Ἀερόουσι*, which signifies to pluck, in as much as, when it overflows, it plucks up, and carries along with it whatever lies in its way. It rises out of the mountains of *Armenia*, behind the great *Ararat*, and receiving into its Chanel, the waters of many other Rivers, the chiefest whereof are *Karassu*, *Senke*, *Kerni*, and *Arpa*, it goes near *Karassu*, a great way into the Land, and falls soon after near *Ordabath*, with such a noise, as is heard above two leagues thence, in the Plain of *Mokan*, which lies very low, in comparison of *Armenia* and *Schirvan*.

Its course there is very slow, and after it is joined, viz. <sup>1/2</sup> leagues above *Tzauat*, with the River *Cyr* or *Cyrus*, (which is as big as it self, and comes Northward out of *Georgia* or *Gurtzistan*) it falls into the *Caspian* Sea. Whence it appears, that *Ptolomy*, and those who follow him, are mistaken, when they affirm, that the *Araxes* and the *Cyrus* fall into the *Caspian* Sea by two different chanel; as also when they say, that the City of *Cyropolis* was that which is now called *Scamachie*. This is inferr'd by *Maginus*, from the degrees of Latitude which *Ptolomy* gives him. But if it were so, we must put these two Rivers, not above, but below the City, towards the South, in as much as we found their Conflux or meeting together, which the *Persians* call *Kanschan*, at thirty nine degrees, fifty four minutes, and *Scamachie*, at forty degrees, fifty minutes, that is, thirteen leagues thence, and under another Meridian. And indeed we found such a distance between them, when we travell'd those parts. Nor is there any other River, eminent enough or big enough, within nineteen dayes journey of *Scamachie*, on either side of it, to deserve that name.

The 17. we took up our Quarters at *Tzauat*, where we were receiv'd, and magnificently treated by the *Mehemandar*, whom the *Chan* had sent to us. This Villtge derives its name from the *Arabian* word *Tzauat*, which signifies a passage, in regard that, at the crossing of this River, people are oblig'd to shew their pass-port, which is done, to prevent the entrance of the *Turks* into the Kingdom.

The 19. we travell'd eight leagues, for the most part, over barren Lands, and a desert Country, cover'd with Reeds, and lodg'd, that night, at the foot of the mountain of *Scamachie*, in three *Matzuchs*, or round Hutts, which had been purposely set up there for us. That day dy'd our Painter, whose name was *Thierry Nieman*, after he had been shaken several months together by a quartane ague, whereto a flux joyning carried him away in four dayes. He died by the way in a Wagon, and in ill weather. We had him buried the 22. before the City of *Scamachie*, in the Church-yard belonging to the *Armenians*, with the ordinary Ceremonies of our own Country.

The 20. we were upon our way betimes in the morning, that we might, in good time, pass over the mountain of *Scamachie*, which extends it self in those parts like a Crescent, towards the East, from the Sea, along the River *Cyr*, and it is called there, *Lengebus tachi*, by reason of a Village, named *Lengebus*, which is upon the op of the mountain.

The rain, which was then so cold, that we thought Winter coming on again, had so broken the

The mountain  
of  
Scamachie

20. 6.

the high-ways, that this was one of the saddest dayes journey we had ever since our first setting forth. 1638.

The Ambassadors, and such others as were well mounted, got to the City ere day-light was shut in, but it was very late ere the rest reach'd it; nay some got not thither till after midnight, some, not till the next morning.

The Camels, which being so heavily loaden, were not able to get up so narrow and slippery a way as is that of the Mountain, came not till eight dayes after. The *Chan* had assign'd us the same Quarters we had had, at our former passage that way; so that we were all lodg'd at the houses of the same *Armenians*, our antient Landlords. They receiv'd us very kindly, and as to the Ambassadors, the *Chan* sent them a Supper from his own Kitchin.

For my own particular, I had several Presents sent me from my friends, and Tutors, as *Mahab Aly*, the *Molla*, *Imanuli*, and *Chalib*, who sent me several dishes of Apples, and Grapes, and came to see me the next day, to examine how I had improv'd my self in their Language.

Feb. 22. The *Chan* and *Calenter* came in person to see the Ambassadors, and invited them and their retinue to a Supper. In the evening, the *Chan* sent horses, to bring them to the Palace. He treated us magnificently; and entertain'd us with very civil discourses, and such as were the more obliging, in that we afterwards found the effects of them, during our abode at *Scamachie*, where we continu'd five weeks; during which, we had the divertisement of several hunting matches, and were treated a great Feasts, which the *Chan* made from time to time purposely for us.

*Alexi Savinowits*, Ambassador of *Muscovy*, made a great and sumptuous entertainment on the first of *March* in commemoration of the birth of the Great Duke, his Master.

The 3. 6. and 10. the *Chan* treated us at his own Palace, to celebrate their *Naurus*, or Newyear. *Chalip*, the *Minatzim*, or Astrologer, belonging to the *Chan*, sent me, for my new-years-gift, a fat Lamb.

*March* 14. *Arab-Chan* receiv'd an assurance of the continuance of the King's favour towards him, according to the custome, by the Present of a new Garment: in as much as when the *Chans* and Governours have made their ordinary Presents, the King sends an expresse to them, to assure them, either of his favour or displeasure; whereof the Ceremony is this. The King's Envoy or Expresse, being come within three or four leagues of the City, sends a Messenger, to give the Governour notice of it, and to let him know he brings him good news. The Governour, who many times is not sure to return again, takes his leave of the City, as if he were not to come thither any more, and goes a league out of the City, to meet the Envoy, accompany'd by all his friends.

As soon as the Envoy sees the Governour coming, he makes a halt, and the Governour alights, and puts off his Sword, Garment, and Turbant, and in that posture approaches the Envoy, who hath in a Box cover'd with some rich Tapistry, a Letter of grace, with a new Garment, or else an order to bring the Governour's head. If the Kings favour be confirm'd to him, he receives from the Envoy, the new Garment, which he kisses at the collar, touches with his fore head, and then puts it on.

If the Envoy hath an order to bring away the Governour's head, he presently hath it cut off, puts it into the Box, and immediately returns. There are diverse examples of these executions in the time of *Schach-Abas*, as also in that of *Schach-Sefi*, The former caus'd to be executed after this manner, *Ahmiad*, *Chan* of *Hemedan*, *Kaban*, *Chan* of *Orumi*, and *Baisunkur Sulthan*, Governour of *Magasburt*; and the later put to death, by an Envoy, *Farali*, *Sulthan* of *Maku*, and *Moral*, *Sulthan* of *Bajesid*. But this last caus'd them to be strangled, and afterwards to be flead, and order'd their skins, fill'd with Hay, to be set in the high-way, because they had over-easily deliver'd up those places wherewith he had entrusted them.

*Arab-Chan* intreated the Ambassadors to be present at an action, which he knew could not be otherwise than advantageous to him; in so much that he had got a large dose of drink, ere he went out of the City. He was mounted on an excellent Roan horse, without any Arms, causing to be led before him several other gallant horses with rich trappings, and having about his person fifteen of his Guard, with their Carabins, and a retinue of about four hundred men besides the Ambassadors, and the *Calenter*, who accompany'd him with their Domesticks. He march'd in this order, as far as the King's Garden, without the City, halting several times, to make the Company drink, and causing several young Lads to dance in the mean time. His two Sons, whereof the elder was but 20. years of age, and the younger 18. both very handsome well shap'd persons, follow'd him with most of the Inhabitants of the City, and certain men on horse-back, who were cover'd with Lynxes-skins, and the fures of *Buchar-Sheep*, and carried on the tops of long Poles, certain *Turks* Heads fill'd with Hay, and the Colours, which *Arab* had taken from them.

He alighted before the Garden, and found the King's Envoy at the entrance of it, attended by three Servants, and holding the Box in his hand. The *Chan* being come within ten or twelve



1638. paces of the Envoy, he very cheerfully put off his Garment and Turbant, but perceiving the Envoy stood a while, without saying ought to him, he began to be a little startled and out of countenance, till the Envoy said to him, *Ai, Arab-Chan*, whereto *Arab* answer'd, *Nediersen*, what saiest thou? The Envoy continu'd, *Schach Sefi ne chalet kunderdiwe rakem, Schach Sefi dusti sen*, that is, "*Schach Sefi*, sends thee a Garment, and a Letter of Favour; thou art certainly belov'd of the King. Whereto the *Chan* reply'd very couragiously, *Scabung dowletti berkarar, olsumwe birkuni minkun olsum men seabung birkari kulim*: that is, "May the King's Wealth continue for ever, and may every day of his be as a thousand; I am one of the King's old Servants.

He thereupon took the Garment, with very great submission. It was of Sea-green Satin. The Envoy help'd him to put it on, with a Rochet of cloath of Gold, a Girdle, and Turbant.

The Envoy had, for his pains, a Present of certain *Tumains*. Then the *Cusi*, or Judge, made a Prayer for the King's health, which ended, the *Chan's* Steward, cry'd out, *Schach dowetine, Kasiler kuweline, Chan saglukine, alla dielim*; that is, "We pray for the prosperity of the King, the success of his Soldiers, and the health of the *Chan*, whereto all the people answer'd, *Alla, Alla, Alla*.

These Ceremonies ended, the Trumpets sounded, and the Tymbrels were play'd on, and the *Chan* return'd to the City, cauling to be carried, before him, the *Turks* heads and Colours, which, at his coming thence, had march'd after him. The *Chan* invited the Ambassadors to Dinner; but he himself had drunk so liberally, that he was forc'd to rise from Table, and the Company soon after withdrew.

Armenian Ceremonies. The 22. being *Maundy Thursday*, the *Armenians* performed the Ceremony of the washing of Feet, in memory of the beginning of our Saviour's Passion: They all came to Church, where the Priest wash'd the right foot of the Men, and the left foot of the Women, and made thereon the sign of the Cross, with Butter, which had been consecrated to that purpose: And that done, he was cast into a Chair by twelve men, who rais'd him up into the air, with exclamations of joy, and kept him there, till he had promis'd to treat them with a Dinner.

The Armenians begin the year at Easter. The 25. the *Armenians* began their year, and in regard that day fell on their *Easter*, they made a great Procession out of the City. The *Chan* would needs see it, and made a great entertainment for us, during which, the *Armenians* stood with their Banners, Crosses and Images before his Tent. Which they did only to please the *Persians*, in as much as, when the *Muscovian* Ambassador, who was troubled to see those poor people stand there so long in that posture, sent them word, that they might be gone with their Images, they made answer, that they ought not to stir thence, without express order from the *Chan*. The *Armenian* Women gave us the divertisement of their dancing, in three Companies, which successively reliev'd one another. The *Chan* gave us another kind of sport, by letting loose among the People, two Wolves, ty'd to long Ropes, to be drawn back when they pleas'd. He caus'd also the head of one of those wild Beasts which they call *Abu's* to be cut off at one blow with a Cymitar. That was done by this sleight, first they gave the Beast a blow over the back, which made it lift up the head, so that they could hardly miss it. That night I was stung by a Scorpion.

The Ambass. intended for Holstein comes to Scamachie. The 26. came to *Scamachie, Imanculi*, whom the King of *Persia* sent Ambassador to the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master. The *Chan* invited him to Dinner with our Ambassadors. The next day, they had a long conference together, for the regulation of our journey, for which we set all things in order.

The 29. *Imanculi Sulthan* came to visit the Ambassadors, to take leave of them, and to assure them, he would follow within eight dayes. *Abasculi-Beg*, our *Mehemandar*, took also his leave of us, and return'd toward the Court, and we had another appointed us, named *Hoffeinculi-Beg*, who was ordered to conduct us to the Frontiers of *Persia*.

The Ambassadors leave Scamachie. The 30. we left *Scamachie*, accompany'd by the *Chan* and *Calenter*, who, with a great body of horse, brought us half a league out of the City, where he treated us magnificently. Having mutually taken leave with the greatest expressions of civility, the *Chan* return'd, with his Company, to *Scamachie*, and we took our way towards *Pymaras*, whither we came in the evening, after we had travell'd, that afternoon, three leagues.

March the last, we were on our way by eight in the morning, and we got that day six leagues, all over mountains, whence we had not the sight of so much as one Village. At night we came into a Valley, to the Village of *Cochani*, where we lodg'd.

APRIL. April 1. we travell'd seven leagues, over hills and dales, till we came to the Village of *Babel*, otherwise called *Surrat*, from the fruitfulness of the Country, especially by reason of the abundance of Millet growing there, beyond what any other part of *Persia* affords.

Sources of Nefte. The 2. we got out of the mountain into the plain Country, leaving the Rock of *Barmuch* on the right hand, and coming within a quarter of a league of the Sea. We saw, as we pass'd by, within the space of five hundred paces, above thirty sources of *Nefte*, which is a kind of Medicinal Oil. There are, among the rest, three great ones, into which they go down by sticks, plac'd there to serve instead of a Ladder, fifteen or sixteen foot into the ground. A man, standing

eing above at the pits mouth, might hear the Oil coming out in great bubbles, sending up a strong smell, though that of the white *Nefte* be incomparably more pleasant than that of the black: for there are two sorts of it, but much more of the black, than of the white. We travell'd that day six leagues, and lodg'd at night, at the Village of *Kifichr*, not far from the Sea. 1638.

The third, we got two leagues, and lodg'd at night at *Schabran*, having pass'd over three little Rivers.

There lives in the mountains of these parts a certain people, call'd *Padars*. They live only by rapine, and course up and down the high-ways for twenty leagues about, to rob Travellers. We were told, that, the day before, they came to the Village, to inquire how strong we were, how we march'd, and what Guard we kept in our quarters. sort of people.

The *Mehemandar* and the Inhabitants advis'd us to keep a strong Guard, and to keep close together, as well in our march, as at our quarters. Whence it came, that ever after, we kept still in sight of the Baggage. The Inhabitants of *Schabran* are, in their Language, called *Kurs*, which occasion'd the mistake of diverse of our people in their Journals, who thought they were the people called *Kurdes*. But it was a great oversight, in as much as the *Kurdes* live in *Kurdesthan*, which is the antient *Chaldea*, a Province far distant from that we now speak of.

Apr. 4. we travell'd four leagues through a hilly, yet very delightful, Country. We overtook by the way a *Caravanne* of *Muscovian* and *Circassian* Merchants, who were very glad of our Company, to secure them against the incursions of those Robbers.

There appear'd one of them, who would have taken notice of our march, and strength; but the *Mehemandar* immediately commanded out ten or twelve *Persians*, who pursu'd him into the Wood, where they lost him. He had stoln an Ox, and being forc'd to leave him behind, the *Mehemandar* made a Present of him to the Ambassadors.

In the afternoon, we came to *Mischkar*, a Village lying in a fenny place, within two leagues of *Niasabath*, where our ship was wrack'd. The inhabitants of the Village, who took us for enemies, had left all, and were got into the Woods: but understanding afterwards upon what accompt we came, they had the confidence to return to their houses. We found in the house of one of their Priests, many fair Manuscripts.

The fifth we travell'd eight leagues, through woody roads, and deserts, to the Village of *Koptepe*. We saw by the way the Sepulchre of one of their Saints, named *Pyr Schich Molla Jusuf*, and met with a party of five and twenty Horsemen, well mounted and well arm'd. They said they were Country people of the adjacent Villages, and that they were forc'd to go in strong parties, and to travel so arm'd, to secure themselves against the Robbers thereabouts: but they look'd more like such themselves. For we understood afterwards, that the inhabitants of the Village, where we lodg'd that day, were *Padars*. Their houses were built upon the ascent of certain little hills, half within the Earth, being encompass'd about with a knot of trees, which made a delightful prospect from one house to another.

The 6. we travell'd three leagues, all through a continu'd Forest, and we cross'd the three Rivers of *Koffar*, *Sambur*, and *Kurgane*. That of *Sambur* is the most considerable, and rises out of the mountain of *Elbours*, dividing it self at this place into five branches, the chanel whereof were so broad, that our horses, as we pass'd through, had not water up to half the legs.

The 7. having gone three leagues, we came to the most antient City of *Derbent*. There came to meet us only a certain number of *Kifilbachs*, in regard the Governour, *Scabewerdi Sulthan*, between whom and his horse-men there was some difference, durst not come out of the Castle, lest the *Kifilbachs* should possess themselves of it. Come to Derbent.

The *Persians* put this City at 85. degrees longitude, and I found it at forty one degrees, fifty minutes, latitude. It is in length, reaching from East to West, about a league; and in breadth, four hundred and fifty ordinary paces. Derbent described.

It serves for a Gate to the Kingdom of *Persia* on that side, for, on one side it reaches to the foot of the mountain, and on the other, to the Sea, which is so neer, that sometimes the waves beat over the walls.

The *Persian* Authors, as also the Inhabitants of the City, affirm, that it was built by *Isander*, that is, *Alexander* the Great; not such as it is now (for that honour is due to their King *Nauschirvan*) but only the Castle, and the Wall, which encompasses the City on the South-side. These walls are very high, and at least five or six foot thick, and viewing them at a distance, a man would think them built of the best and fairest kind of free-stone; but coming neer them, he finds that the Stones are made of Muscle-shells, and pieces of free-stone beaten and molded like Brick, which time hath reduc'd to a hardness beyond that of Marble.

I found upon one of the Gates which are remaining of the building of *Alexander* the Great, a *Syriack* Inscription, of three lines, and in another place certain *Arabick* words, and strange Characters, but so eaten out by time, that they were not legible. The Castle, where the *Char* lives, is upon the top of the mountain, and kept by a Garrison of five hundred men, who are of two severall Nations, *Asumrunlu*, and *Koidurscha*. The second quarter of the City is at the

1638. foot of the mountain, and the most populous; but the lower part of it is very much ruin'd, since *Emir Hamse*, the Son of *Chadabende*, recover'd the City, out of the hands of *Mustapha*, the *Turkish* Emperour, to whom the Inhabitants had voluntarily submitted themselves.

The lower part, and that which reaches to the Sea, is about two thousand ordinary paces in compass; but it lies desert, having no houses, but converted into Gardens and Corn-fields. It was heretofore inhabited by *Greeks*, whence the *Persians* call it, to this day, *Scaher Funan*, that is, the *Greek City*.

All this coast is pure Rock; upon which score it is very dangerous for Vessels. It serves for a foundation to the walls of the whole City, which are so broad, that a Wagon may easily be driven on them. The mountain above the City, is cover'd with wood, where there may be yet seen the ruins of a wall, above fifty leagues in length, which, as we were told, had sometime serv'd for a communication between the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas. In some places it was some five or six foot high, in others, but two, in others, there was no track of any. There might be seen also on other hills, the ruins of several old Castles, whereby it might be judg'd, that they were built four square. There were two undemolish'd, and had garrisons in them. There are also several redoubts of wood, upon all the avenues.

The most remarkable thing about this City is the Sepulchre of *Tzumtzume*, of whom the *Persians* relate this story, after their Poet *Fiesuli*, who hath left in writing.

The Fable  
of Tzumt-  
zume.

They affirm, that *Eissi* (so they call our Saviour *Jesus Christ*) coming one day into those parts, found in his way a dead man's skull, and desirous to know whose it had been, pray'd to God, with whom he was in great favour, to raise that deceased person to life again, which God accordingly did, and then *Eissi* asked him, who he was. He made answer, his name was *Tzumtzume*, that he had been King of all that Country, and so powerful, that he consumed every day in his Court as much salt as forty Camels were able to carry. That he had forty thousand Cooks, as many Musicians, as many Pages with Pearls in their ears, and as many Servants. But says *Tzumtzume* to *Eissi*, Who art thou? And what Religion dost thou profess? Whereto *Christ* made answer, I am *Eissi*, and my Religion is that which saves all the World. If it be so, reply'd *Tzumtzume*, I am of thy Religion; but I pray thee let me dy as soon as may be, for, having been heretofore so powerful, it would extremely trouble me to be here now without a Kingdom and Subjects. *Eissi* granted his request, and immediately permitted him to dy; and at this place is his Sepulchre, over which there is a great tree, and, adjoining to that, there is a Scaffold erected, ten foot high, and sixteen, square.

We took notice, on this side of the City, of about five or six thousand Tombs, cover'd with stones, much larger than the ordinary stature of men, all half round, Cylinder-wise, and hollow within. They had all of them *Arabick* Inscriptions, and it is reported, that antiently, yet since the time of *Mahomet*, there had been, in *Media*, a King named *Kassan*, by birth, an *Okus*, (a people living in *Thabesseran*, behind the mountain of *Ebbours*) who being engag'd in a war against the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*, whom they call *Lefgi*, was desirous to give them battel in that place; but that he was there defeated, and that he caus'd the Officers then kill'd to be buried in the Tombs which are yet to be seen there. Towards the Sea-side, there were forty others compass'd by a wall, but much bigger than any of the fore-mentioned. These, as the Inhabitants affirmed, were the Sepulchres of so many great Lords, and holy Persons, who had been kill'd in the same battel. Every Sepulchre had its Banner.

The *Persians* name these Sepulchres *Tziltenan*, and the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Kerchler*. The *Persians* and *Tartars* do their devotions at them, in so much that this place was heretofore very famous, both for the many foundations, and charities given thereto: but now it is kept by an antient man, who makes a poor shift to live upon the Alms that are given him.

King *Kassan*, who liv'd many years after this Battel, is interr'd near *Tabris*, near a River, named *Arzi*, that is, *bitter waters*. The Tomb of *Queen Burla*, his wife, is to be seen near the Fortrefs of *Orumi*, and they say it is forty foot long.

Apr. 13. we saw several *Tartars*, as well men as women, coming to do their devotions there, which consisted in going, one after another, to kiss the Sepulchres of these forty Saints, upon which they set their hands while they pray'd. It was the tenth day of their *Silhatza*, on which they make a commemoration of the sacrifice of *Abraham*.

There are not any Christians at *Derbent*, but the Inhabitants are all *Mussulmans*, unless it be some few Jews, who pretend to be of the Tribe of *Benjamin*. It is accordingly a place of no Commerce, save only that the *Tartars* bring thither a great many stoln Children, or haply such *Turks* and *Muscovites*, as they have taken upon some occasion or other, and there sell them, to be carried further into the Kingdom.

The Soldiers who kept the Garrison there, as also the Citizens, were a proud, daring, and insolent sort of people, so far from treating us with any civility, that, on the contrary, they did what they could to pick a quarrel with us.

The *Mehemandar* himself gave us notice before-hand, to stand upon our guard: whence it came, that, on the 8. after Sermon, the Ambassadors order'd, upon several penalties, that none

of their retinue, should, either in word or deed, give occasion of offence to any Soldier, or Inhabitant, nor relieve any person whom they should find engag'd in any quarrel with them, lest they should take occasion, from a particular difference, to fall upon the whole Company. 1638.

The 9. the *Chan* of *Tarku*, who had given the Ambassadors a visit, at their former passage that way, sent us word, that the way we were to travel through the Country of the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*, was very dangerous, deliring us to make use of the Convoy he proffer'd us. The Ambassadors, considering that those proffers were made by a *Tartar* of *Dagesthan*, and that there were no more safety in his Company, than among the Robbers themselves, return'd him their thanks, and sent him word, that they would not put him to that trouble. However we thought it prudence, to make our advantage of the notice given us of the danger we might fall into among those *Barbarians*, and we order'd a view to be made of our Arms, and found, there were among us, two and fifty Muskets and Firelocks, nineteen cases of Pistols, two brass Guns, and four murthering-pieces, all well fixt, and fit for service.

Having staid some time for *Imanculi*, who had promis'd to follow us within a few dayes, and finding our selves in a place, where the Governour, instead of supplying us with provisions, forc'd us to buy all at a dear rate, the Ambassadors resolv'd the 12. to give order for their departure, commanded the Baggage to be made ready, and deliver'd every man his allowance of bread for four dayes, in as much as there was no great likelihood we should find much at the places we were to travel through. *They take order for their departure.*

The 13. we were got on horse-back, and ready to march, when word was brought, that the Governour had shut the City-gate. This news somewhat startled us, and oblig'd the Ambassadors to send the *Mehemandar* to him, to know the reason of his so doing. His answer was, that, having receiv'd intelligence, that *Osmin*, a *Tartar*-Prince, not far from *Derbent*, intended to set upon us by the way, and put us to an excessive ransome, or take away all we had, and that being responsable to the King for what might happen to us, he thought it not fit we should go thence without a Convoy, which being not to be had that day, he desir'd us to stay till the next. *The Governour hinders it.*

We knew the Convoy he intended us, would serve us in no stead, and that the care he took proceeded not from any kindness he had for us; but it was fit, we put on the best face we could upon it. and acknowledg'd our selves oblig'd to him. Only we sent to desire him, in regard we were all mounted, to permit us to encamp without the City, and there expect the Convoy. He was content we should do so; whereupon we went and encamp'd a quarter of a league without the City, near a Vineyard, upon the side of a small River, which serves for a common Frontier, between the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan* and the *Persians*.

We found near that place the Sepulchres of two other *Mahometan* Saints, one, that of *Pyr Muchar*, in the plain, at the foot of the mountain; the other, that of *Imam Kurchud*, within the mountain. They say the later was of kin to *Mahomet*, and that he alwayes sate at his feet, to be instructed by him. They add, that he liv'd three hundred years after *Mahomet's* death, and that he retir'd to King *Kassan*, whom he diverted by his playing on the Lute, and incessantly animated to make a war against the *Lesgi*, by the songs he sung to that instrument; but that at last, presuming to preach to those *Barbarians*, who were *Pagans*, in hopes to convert them to the *Mahometan* Religion, they kill'd him. *Other Saints Sepulchres.*

His Sepulchre is in a Cave cut within the Rock. There is also another hollow place in the same Rock, where there is a Coffin, made of four boards nail'd together, and rais'd about four foot from the ground. I saw it over-night, and found at it, an old woman, who had the keeping of the Sepulchre; but the next day, I found it set forth with a Carpet of *Brocado*, and the floor cover'd with Mat, for their convenience who came thither to do their Devotions.

There resorted thither many Women and Maids from the City, and other places, who went all bare-foot into the Cave, kiss'd the Coffin, and, having said their prayers, made their offerings to the old Woman, to whom they gave some Butter, Cheefe, Milk, others, Bread, Money, Wax, and the like. The night following we heard here a confus'd and dreadful noise, much like that of persons singing, dancing, and weeping, all at the same time. I never heard any thing so barbarous.

Apr. 14. we expected our Convoy till three hours after Sun-rising; but seeing none came, we set forward, observing the following order. *Leave Derbent.*

The three Lieutenants, with their Souldiers, having their matches lighted made the Vanguard.

Next them, follow'd a Field-piece, of two pound and a half Bullet, upon a carriage with four wheels, and then the four Murthering-pieces, with all things belonging to them, in a Wagon.

Then marched the Camels, loaden with the baggage, having on both sides some of our retinue, commanded by the Ambassador *Crusins*, and in the head of them a Trumpetter.

1638. Next the Baggage, came the other Field-piece, and after that, the Ambassador *Brugman*, who brought up the Rear, consisting of all the rest of the Company.

In this order we left the Frontiers of *Persia*, to go into those of the Tartars of *Dagesthan*.

The Tar-  
tars of  
Dagesthan

*Ptolomy*, and his followers, affirm, that this Country is part of that *Albania*, out of which *Q. Curtius* would have to come *Thalestris*, Queen of the *Amazones*, who came to *Alexander* the Great in *Hyrkania*, to get of him that kindness, which Women will not often beg, though they ever so much desire it. The *Persians* call these people *Lefgi*, and they name themselves *Dagesthan Tartar*, that is *Mountain Tartars*, from the word *Tag*, or *Dag*, which in their Language, signifies a *Mountain*: because they live between the mountains, and in the plain, at the foot of the mountains, which are twenty or thirty leagues distant from the *Caspian Sea*, toward the West.

They inhabit all along the Sea-coast, Northward, as far as *Terki*, about forty leagues, taking the way we came. The mountain it self, in some places, comes within half a league of the Sea, and in some it is two or three leagues from it, there being in the plains very fruitful and pleasant fields, unless it be towards the Sea-side, where it is all heathy and barren.

The Inhabitants are of a yellowish and dark complexion, inclining to black; they are well set and have strong limbs, dreadfully ugly in their faces, and wear their hair, which is black and greasy, falling down over their shoulders. They are all barbarous and savages.

Their habit.

Their cloathing is a long close Coat, of a grey or black colour, of a wretched coarse cloath, over which they wear a Cloak as coarse, or haply of Sheep-skin. On their head they wear a square Cap, made of several pieces of cloath, and their shooes are of Sheep-skin, or Horse-hide, all of one piece, and sow'd to their feet over the instep, and at the sides.

They are circumcis'd, and have all the other Ceremonies of the *Turks*, professing the *Mahumetan* Religion; but are so slenderly instructed therein, that it is not to be wondred, they have so little devotion. They live by the Cattel they breed, whereof the Women take care, while the men go up and down a-robbing, making no conscience to steal away the children of their nearest relations, to sell them to the *Persians* and others. Whence it comes, that, even among themselves, they live in perpetual distrust one of another.

Their Arms.

Their defensive Arms, which they put on and off, with their Cloaths, are, a Coat of Mail, a Head-piece, and a Buckler; and the offensive are the Cymitar, Bows and Arrows, and the Javelin, there being not any so poor among them but is furnish'd with these Arms. They put all Merchants to a ransome, and sometimes rob them of all; so that the *Caravanes* which pass that way, are either so strong as to make their party good against these Tories, or go by Sea to avoid them.

They fear neither *Persians* nor *Muscovites*, in regard no Army is able to follow them into the mountains, into which they retreat when they are pursu'd.

The Prince  
of the Tar-  
tars.

All this Country is not subject to one Prince; on the contrary, every City, almost hath its particular Lord. They call him who is the chiefest among them the *Schemkal*. He succeeds his Predecessor by an odd way of election. For, upon the death of the *Schemkal*, the other Lords or *Myrsas* meet, and sit down in a ring, into which the Priest of the place casts a golden Apple, and the person who is first touch'd thereby is made *Schemkal*. Yet is not his power so absolute, but that the other Lords participate thereof, they having only for him a certain respect and compliance, and that not very great.

How chosen

The Coun-  
try of Os-  
min.

We came into this Country, as we said before on the 14. of *April*. We travell'd that day five leagues, passing through several Villages, and pleasant fields, and lodg'd at night in the Country of *Osmin*, whom some call *Ismin*, at a Village named *Rustain*, which was also the name of the Lord of it. He sent to meet us his son, attended by fifteen persons on horse-back, well arm'd, who after the first Complement, fell off on the left hand, and went into a Wood, and we took the right. We quarter'd in the fields near a Village, fortifying our selves with the Baggage, and securing our selves against the surprises of those Robbers, by a good number of Sentinels, plac'd at all the avenues.

The young Prince return'd to our Quarters in the evening, but visited only the *Muscovian* Ambassador, only to learn of him who we were, and what there was to be gotten of us. We intended him a Present of 12. Duckats, and three pieces of *Persia*-Satin, had he honoured the Ambassadors with a visit; but he thought it enough to do it by two of his Officers, whereupon we only saluted him with the firing of two great Guns, charg'd with bullets, just at his departure from the *Muscovian* Ambassador's to take horse.

The 15. we prosecuted our journey, through a hilly Country, and had in our way good Hunting. There started so many Hares, that, in a short time, we took nine.

The Lord-  
ship of  
Boinack.

Having travell'd six leagues that day, we came, at night, into the Seigneury of *Boinack*, and lodg'd near a Village of the same name, upon the ascent of a hill, which was so steepy towards the Sea, that we were secure as to that side, and we fortify'd our Camp with the Baggage, which we drew up like a half-moon well flank'd. The Lord of *Boinack* hath not many Subjects, but in recompence, abundance of Cattel, wherein all his Wealth consists.

The

The Ambassador *Brugman* was incens'd at the people's looking on us, as a thing they had never seen before, and would have had some Muskets discharg'd among them, but without bullets, only to frighten them, and was enrag'd that those he spoke to would not execute so impertinent a command, which no doubt had cost us all our lives. For those Barbarians, who were wicked and daring, and discover'd that they wanted only a pretence to set upon us, grumbled that any should think it much they stood there, and were confident enough to tell us, that the ground, they were then upon, was rather theirs, than ours, and that they had as much right to be there as we had: That we might have forborn threatenng them; that they acknowledg'd we were too strong for them; but that upon the least sign the *Schemkal* should give them, they would come with such a force as were able to dispatch us all, though we were twice as many. That they car'd for neither the King of *Persia* nor Duke of *Muscovy*, that they were *Dagesthans*, and acknowledg'd no Superiour but God. They would not, at first, suffer us to go for water, without paying for it; but finding that the Well where it was to be had, was within the reach of our great Guns, and that we set things in order to force our way to it, they retreated and left us.

1638  
Brugman's  
impertinence.

The *Schemkal* sent us word late over-night, that we should not offer to go away the next morning, till he had search'd our baggage, to see whether we carried any Merchants goods. The Ambassadors return'd him answer, that they were not Merchants, but Ambassadors, and that consequently they might pass all places without paying: That they would stand upon their privilege, and that if the *Schemkal* offer'd them any violence, they should do what were consonant to the law of Nature and Nations to prevent it. But we heard no more of him.

I heard since, that the *Polish* Ambassador, whom we met in our journey out of *Persia*, and of whom I gave some account before, coming to lodge, in his return, at the same place, had quarrell'd with the Inhabitants of *Boinak*, and was kill'd with all his retinue, only three Servants excepted, who got back to *Derbent*, whence the *Mehemandar*, who had conducted him thither, carried them to the Court. During their stay there, the King allow'd each of them three *Abas's* a day, till he found a convenience to send them home, which he did afterwards, upon an Embassy which the Great Duke of *Muscovy* had sent to him.

A Polish  
Ambassa-  
dor kill'd.

The 16. we departed betimes in the morning, and came, long before night, into the Territories of the Prince of *Tarku*, where I narrowly escap'd falling into the hands of those Barbarians. For, hearing that we were not above a quarter of a league from the Sea-side, I left the Company, taking along with me the Master's Mate, *Cornelius Nicholason*, to go and observe the situation thereof: but we were hardly got thither, ere we discover'd at a distance two *Tartars*, follow'd, within two or three hundred paces, by eight more, who, as soon as they perceiv'd us, made all the haste they could towards us; but we soon recover'd the Road. The two first seeing us retreat, pursu'd us in full speed, with their Javelins in their hands; till the other eight, doubting, it seems, that we might not be alone in those parts, got up to a hill, to take a view of the Country, and seeing all our Company, from which we could not be above a Musket-shot distant, they call'd to the other two, to give them notice it was in vain to pursue us. Whereupon, they rode on gently, and came all together to the Company, saluted it, admir'd our Cloaths, and would needs see our Pistols, but were not permitted to handle them.

The Author  
like to be  
taken by  
the Tartars

We met that day with several parties of *Tartars*, some appearing before us, some behind us. Some only pass'd by, others accompany'd us a quarter of a league or better. Some try'd whether we would suffer them to cross us in our march; but we would not permit it.

Having travell'd seven leagues that day, we came at night before the City of *Tarku*, and encamped without the City, near a Fountain, within a quarter of a league of the Sea.

Come to  
Tarku.

The next day, *Apr. 17.* the Lord of the place sent his Brother, accompany'd by three persons of quality, to complement us, and make proffers of his friendship and services.

The *Chan* himself, being sick, could not come in person, which the Ambassadors understanding, they sent their Physician to him, as well to return their thanks for his civilities, as to offer his assistance, for the recovery of his health. He made use of him, and found such ease, that some dayes after, he sent to complement the Ambassadors, and thank them for the care they had had of him.

He was a Lord, of about 38. years of age, named *Surchon Chan*, and pretended himself descended from the Kings of *Persia*, with whom he held so good correspondence, that when the *Dagesthans* are engag'd in a war amongst themselves, he implores the assistance of the *Schach*, who fails not to back him. His authority is very considerable among them, yet not so absolute, but that several *Myrsas*, of his kindred, participate of the Government. Nay he had a Nephew, a younger Brother's son, who was Lord of some part of the City.

The City of *Tarku*, the Metropolis of all *Dagesthan*, lies within the mountain, between steepy rocks, which are so full of shells, that they seem to consist of nothing else, there being not the space of a hands breadth, but a man meets with five or six of them, most, about the bigness of a Wall-nut-shell. The Rock is as hard as flint, yet is there good pasture upon the top of the mountain.

Tarku the  
Metropolis  
of Dagest-  
han.

Out

1638. Out of these Rocks there rise several pleasant springs, which fall into the City several waies. The City is not wall'd. It may contain a thousand houses, built according to the *Persian* way, but not so well. These *Tartars*, as also those of *Boinak*, and the others who live more Northerly, are called *Kaitack*: but those who live behind *Tarku*, in the mountain, towards the West, are named *Kamuk*, or *Kasukumus*, who have, most of them, their particular Lords.

The Inhabitants of *Tarku* are as barbarous & mischievous as those of *Boinak*, but the women and maids were more civil. They go with their faces uncover'd, and are not kept in such restraint, as those of the *Persians*. The maids have their hair ty'd up in forty tresses, which hang down about their heads, and they were not shy of being seen, nor of having their hair felt.

A German living among the Tartars. We met here with an old man, named *Matthias Magmar*, born at *Ottingen* in the Dutchy of *Wittenberg*, who having left off his trade of weaving, to go into the wars of *Hungary*, fell into the hands of the *Turks*, who had sold him to these *Tartars*. He was circumcis'd, and had almost forgot the *German* tongue; yet he told us he was a *Christian*, and believ'd one God and three persons. He also said the Lords Prayer, but with much ado.

The proffers of friendship and service which *Surkou Chan* made us, had rais'd us into some confidence, that we were safe under his protection: but we found since, that we were in greater danger there, than we had been any where before. For, during the five weeks we were among the *Tartars*, all their discourse was of robbing, rifling, killing, and cutting of throats. We desir'd the *Mehemandar* to go along with us to *Terki*, upon the frontiers of *Moscovy*, or, at least, to leave us the Camels and other conveniences for carriage, considering the little likelihood we had to get any of the *Tartars*, and we should requite his kindness with a considerable sum of mony. But he told us, that he had express order to bring us only to *Tarku*, and that if he went any further, it might endanger his life: That we might treat with the Camel-drivers, and that he would assist us what he could do in it: but instead of obliging us in that, he took them all along with him that night, unknown to us. This sudden departure of his startled us the more, in that, the next day, two women, who sold us milk, and pretended to be *Muscovites* born, and *Christians*, and that they had been stoln away in their youth, & married in that Country, came to tell us, that the *Tartars* intended to kill us all, out of an imagination, that we carried along with us a vast treasure; That the Inhabitants of *Osmin* and *Boinak* had sent word to *Surkou Chan*, that we had pass'd through their Country, and that, instead of paying the duties for our Merchandises and Baggage, we had been so insolent as to threaten them, and give them ill words: That they had resolv'd to set upon us, to kill all the aged persons, and make the rest Slaves, and, to that end, had sent Messengers to *Surkou Chan*, and that there was one gone from him to the *Schemkal*.

The Ambassadors in great danger.

We put the best face outward before those women, and made as if we were not troubled at any thing the *Tartars* could do, in regard we knew not how far we should credit their relation. However we thought good to make our advantage of it, upon this reflection, that we found no order taken for our departure thence, and that there came thither a party of forty *Tartars* of *Boinak*, & that Messengers pass'd to and fro, as if it were in order to the execution of some great design.

The Ambassadors having call'd together the chief of the retinue, & represented the danger we were in, put it to the question what were best to be done. It was urg'd, that it had been more prudence to treat those Barbarians kindly, than to have exasperated them, as had been done, but since there was no recalling of what was past, that the only way was to take courage, and sell our lives at the dearest rate we could: That, having, on both sides of us, inaccessible Rocks, the Sea behind, and the *Tartars* before us, it would be more honourable for us to dy nobly, than fall alive into the hands of the *Tartars*.

Our greatest misfortune was, that there were differences among our selves. The Ambassador *Brugman* carried on his private designs, and found fault with whatever others advis'd, especially those among us who any way pretended to Learning. Certain it is, that, instead of contributing his endeavours to our preservation, he would have contriv'd our ruin, could he have done it, without danger to himself.

We understood since, that it was really the design of the *Tartars*, to set upon us, and that they had done it, if the *Schemkal*, out of hopes to have the whole booty himself, and trapann'd us an other way, had not prevented them. He sent an Express to tell us, that we should take our way over the Bridge of Boats, above the City of his ordinary residence, & that if we took any other, even that of the Sea-side, where we might have cross'd the River by Boat, he should treat us as Enemies.

The Messenger he sent us, having concluded his discourse, rose up, and would have been gone; but the *Muscovian* Ambassador taking him by the arm, said to him; "Friend, go and tell thy *Schemkal*, that he is not to appoint us our way; we shall take that we think fit: 't is true, it will be no hard matter for him, to cut off a handful of people; but let him know, that the *Czaar*, who is most concern'd in this Embassy, will resent it, and revenge our deaths, with the greatest cruelty imaginable. This sharp and resolute answer made the *Tartars* quit

quit the design they had to set upon us, as they intended, and oblig'd them to change their manner of proceeding: So that, *Apr. 20.* we were visit'd by four *Tartar-Princes*, who din'd with the Ambassadors in their Tent, and were not ill treated, considering the place we were then at. All their discourse was only of robbing and stealing, and selling men: nay one of them said that, all the week before, he had stoln but one poor Girl. After they were gone, the Prince of *Osmin's* Brother came to visit us. He express'd somewhat of civility, and made us great proffers of his services. After him, came the *Daruga* of the City of *Tarku*. We ask'd him, why we were not furnish'd with conveniences of carriage for our Baggage. He ingeniously told us, that we were not to expect any, till we had made a Present to *Surkou Chan*. The next day, there was one sent him, to wit, a pair of gold Bracelers, a pound of Tabacco, <sup>A Present sent to</sup> a Pistol, a Firelock, a barel of Powder, two pieces of *Persia-Satin*, and several sorts of Spices, <sup>Surkou-Chan.</sup> with this message withall, that a barel of Aquavitæ should be sent him, as soon as we came to *Terki*. This Present took him so, as that he presently promis'd we should have all conveniences, for mony, and invited the Ambassadors to come and dine with him. It was taken into consideration whether they should go, or not; but at last, it was resolv'd they should, taking along <sup>Who invites them to dinner.</sup> with them four other persons.

The cloath was laid upon the ground, according to the *Persian way*; and the whole entertainment consisted in four dishes, wherein there were little slices of Mutton, drawn upon sticks, some Whitings, and Curds, and in four other lesser dishes, Rice, with pieces of Mutton in it, and raisins of the Sun. The Carver sat in the middle of the dishes, and having broke a long thin Cake, he cast a piece of it to every one of the Guests. He also tore the pieces of Meat and the Fish, but all was done only by his hands, which were as black as his face; so that the fat running between his fingers, and mingling with the dirt from which it took another colour, almost turn'd our stomachs. <sup>Particulars of the entertainment.</sup>

But there was a necessity we should comply. Our drink was only water, in great glasses, and afterwards Aquavitæ, in silver Cups. After dinner, they would needs hear our *Mulick*, which we sent for; and after a divertisement of three hours, there was meat brought in again. I observ'd, among other things, the Liver and Rump of a Sheep, which was all fat, and weigh'd at least five or six pound.

One of the Carvers, (for at this second treatment there were three) minc'd the meat very small, salted it well, and serv'd every man by handfuls. The meat look'd as if it had been chew'd before, yet was it not so bad, as against our stomachs. After the treatment, we return'd to our Quarters.

The next day, *Apr. 21.* one of the other Princes, named *Imam Myrsa*, invited the Ambassadors to dinner. He was very young, as being not full eighteen years of age, and born between a Brother of *Surkou Chan's*, and a woman, by birth a *Kasamuka*. His Servant told us, that *Surkou Chan* usurp'd the Principality from him, and that his life was in some danger, by reason of his Uncle. <sup>Another Tartarian Feast.</sup>

The cloath was laid in a great Hall, where we sat down, with *Imam Myrsa*, and some other Lords of the Country, in Chairs, at a low Table. We were better treated, than we had been the day before, and the Meat was better dress'd. Among other dishes there was brought in a whole Lamb roasted, whereof every one carv'd himself what he pleas'd. They us'd no knives but tore the Meat in pieces, and I observ'd that when one had left any Meat about the bone, his next neighbour took it up, and pick'd it, and many times it went to a third and fourth hand, till at last, he who could find nothing about it would try what there was within, and get out the marrow.

Their drinking Vessels are of Cows-horns, and their drink a sort of liquor called *Bragga*, which they make of Millet, and, in colour and consistence, looks like the lees of beet. They think it very delicious, and drink freely of it, as they do also of Aquavitæ, and grow of a sudden so drunk, that notwithstanding the presence of their Prince, they made such a noise, as would have drown'd Thunder it self.

The *Tartars* having thus treated us, we took leave of them, well satisfy'd with the cheer they made us.

Some daies after, the Ambassadors were treated by another Prince, named *Emir-Chan*, who also gave them a visit. But all these *Barbarians* did in this kind, was only to get Presents from us.

The 23. the *Daruga* got us some Waggons for the Baggage. We immediately loaded them, intending to be gone the next day: but in the evening, *Surkou-Chan* sent us word, that he had certain intelligence, that *Sultan Mahmud* (so was the *Schemkal* call'd) had possess'd himself of all the passages of the River *Koisu*, with a design to stop us, and put us to a ransom, and that hindred him from permitting us to depart.

Late in the evening, there came neer *Tarku* twenty horse-men, well mounted and arm'd, who encamped close by our Quarters. The Ambassadors, accompany'd by some Musketeers, went to them, to know whence they came, and what their design was. They made answer, that



1638. the Prince of *Osmin* had sent them to the *Schemkal*, to tell him that certain forein Ambassadors, friends of the King of *Persia*, and *Czaar* of *Muscovy*, being come into his Territories, he had suffered them to pass without paying any toll or duties, and to intreat him, to do him the same favour; which the *Schemkal* had promis'd to do, provided they carried no Merchants goods. We gave not so much credit to this intelligence, as to neglect keeping a strong Guard, and having our Arms in readines.

The 24. these *Tartars* departed before day, and presently after, there came to us, two Messengers from *Sulthan Mahmud*, who asked the Ambassadors why they did not prosecute their journey, promising all the favour and assistance lay in his power, for their passage, provided they took the way he appointed them. These Messengers were hardly gone, ere *Surkou-Chan* came to visit us. The Ambassadors asked him, why he hindred their departure, he told them, that the Horses and Oxen, we had hired, were ready, and that we might be gone when we pleas'd, giving it him under our hands, how that we would needs depart, notwithstanding the notice he had given us of the designs of the *Schemkal*, in as much as otherwise he should be responsible to the King of *Persia*, and Great Duke of *Muscovy*, for the misfortunes might happen to us: That he knew the *Schemkal* better than we did: That he car'd for neither God, nor Devil, nor any forein Prince at all: That he never observ'd his word: That it was his only sport, to rob, and shed blood, and that it were better stay eight dayes longer, within which time he promis'd us a sufficient Convoy, without which we could not pass through the Prince's Country, if we resolv'd not to hazard our lives, and lose our Baggage: That ere that time were expir'd, the *Persian* Ambassador would come thither, with Letters of Commendation from the King, without which he durst not undertake to convoy us, lest he should thereby disoblige all the other *Tartars*.

This discourse put us into a great perplexity, considering that the arrival of the *Persian* Ambassador was uncertain, and that in the mean time, we might fear the same thing from *Surkou-Chan*, which he would have us apprehend from the *Schemkal*. We sent an Express to the *Weywode* of *Terki*, to desire him to send us a Convoy of *Strelits*, such as might secure us against the attempts of the *Tartars*; but he would do nothing. *Surkou-Chan* sent an Express to *Derbent*, to know of the Ambassador, how long it would be ere he came to *Tarku*: but he sent us word, some dayes after, that the man he had dispatch'd for *Derbent* was return'd, but had been so indiscreet as to put the Letter, deliver'd him by *Imancla Sulthan*, into his Quiver, and going to shoot at a beast by the way, had dropp'd it, so that he had been forc'd to send him back again. All these proceedings added more and more to our jealousy; but what most startled us, was the sudden departure of certain *Armenian* Merchants, who having joyn'd with us, out of hopes of travelling with greater safety in our Company, went into the City, upon notice given them, that two hundred *Tartars* intended to set upon us. Besides, the inconveniences we endur'd by reason of ill weather heightned our affliction: for the continual rains had not only sunk through our Tents and Cloaths, but also hindred us from making any fire, to warm us, and dress our Meat. No condition, for misery, could be compar'd to that we were then in, forsaken by all, destitute of all things, even advice and resolution, insomuch that we durst not go into the *Tartars* huts, *Surkou Chan* himself having given us notice, that we might run the hazard of being carried away and sold. Nay, *Apr. 27.* one of our Soldiers, a Scotchman, named *William Hoyer*, being got a little too far from the Quarters, was carried away by the *Tartars*, so clearly, that we could never learn any news of him, though we made great inquiry. We heard since, that he was carried to the Fortres of *Sachur*, within five or six leagues of *Tarku*.

The same day, there hapned to us another misfortune, in that, some of our people being shooting with Bows and Arrows, our Canonier, going somewhat near the Mark, to take up an Arrow, was shot into the Belly, whereof he died the next day.

The *Muscovite*, whose mishap it was to hurt him, had so sensible a remorse of what had happened, that he desired to be put to death, but the business being taken into consideration, it was found done by chance without any design; whereupon he was set at liberty. We interr'd the decess'd, by the advice of certain *Tartar*-women who were *Christians*, in the place where our horses stood, and made a Grave without the Quarters, into which was put an empty Coffin, it being certain that the *Tartars* would, after our departure thence, dig up the Carcass, to give it their Dogs. There died also a rich *Muscovian* Merchant. His body was inbalm'd, and brought to *Terki*, where it was buried, in the Church-yard, belonging to those of his Religion. Amidst all these afflictions and misfortunes, the *Tartars* came every day to get our Musick plaid upon; which was somewhat like that of the *Israelites*, at the waters of *Babylon*.

MAY. *May 1.* we dispatch'd a man to *Sulthan Mahmud*, to desire passage. Our Messenger return'd the next day, accompany'd by four *Tartars*, who told us from the *Schemkal*, that he wondred much to hear, that *Surkou-Chan* would perswade them, he was a famous Robber and faithles person: that he had given him no cause to dress him in such a Character, and that he should take occasion to resent it. For us, he proffer'd all his Credit, and his Subjects, for the advancement and safety of our journey; and that if we durst not trust him, he was ready to send

us three of the principal Lords of the Country as hostages, whom we should either take along with us, or leave with *Surchou-Chan*, till we were out of his Jurisdiction. 1638.

These unexpected proffers put us to some difficulty what we should do: but hearing, that *Sulthan Mahmud* liv'd otherwise than his Father had done, who, having dishonour'd his Country by continual robberies, had reform'd his life, and, to expiate his sins, went on pilgrimage to *Meca*, and to *Mahomet's* Sepulchre, we accepted of his proffers; and that the more willingly, in that the 6. following, we receiv'd Letters from *Derbent*, wherein the *Persian* Ambassador sent us word, that being oblig'd to continue there till he had receiv'd his dispatches and the Interpreter he expected from the Court, and thinking it would be a moneth longer ere he came to *Tarku*, he left it to our choice, whether we would expect him, or prosecute our journey. Upon this, we pres'd *Surchou-Chan*, to give order for our departure; which he did, after the receipt of another Present, which he had the boldness to beg himself, and security given, for the return of the Horses and Oxen, which carried our Baggage, by two of the *Schemkal's* hostages, whom we left with him, taking the third along with us.

May 12. we left *Tarku*, upon the dangerous word of *Sulthan Mahmud*. We had agreed 15. dayes before with the Waggoners of *Tarku*: but when the Baggage came to be loaden, they fell from the former agreement, and made us pay much more than we had promis'd them. They would have done the same for the Saddle-Naggs; but the Ambassadors would not condescend: which occasion'd some of our people, nay of the chiefest, to foot it, the two first dayes, not without abuses and jeers from their enemies.

We travell'd that day two leagues, through a plain and even Country, but desert, to a Rivulet which serves for a common Frontier, between *Sulthan Mahmud*, and the Prince of *Tarku*. We met by the way certain *Tartar* Lords, who intreated the Ambassadors to lend them our Physician, to visit one of their friends, who was sick not far thence. The Physician seeming unwilling to go, out of a fear he should never return, they left two of their Company, as hostages, with us, and brought him back after mid-night. All our Supper that night was, only Bread and troubled Water.

May 13. being *Whitsunday*, we travell'd four leagues, through a very woody Country. We thought that day, we should have been left by the way; for the *Muscovian* Ambassador having cudgell'd one of the Waggoners, all the rest would unteam, and return homewards: but with much intreaty and fair words we got them to stay. We pass'd over the night in the Wood, and those who were desirous to sleep, lay down supperless.

The 14. we got but one league, to the River *Koifu*, which, in my opinion must be that which *Protony* calls *Albanus*. It rises out of mount *Caucasus*. Its Water is thick and troubled, and its course very swift. It is at least as broad as the *Elbe*, & in that place, it was above twenty foot deep. *The River Albanus.*

The Town or Village of *Andre*, where *Sulthan Mahmud* liv'd, stands upon a hill, on this side of the River. Near the Village, there is a Spring of seething Water, which falls into a Pool, and makes the water thereof very fit for bathing. The Inhabitants of it are for the most part Fisher-men, and we saw them in great numbers upon the River-side, about their employment.

They thrust a sharp hook baited, which is fasten'd to a long pole, to the bottom of the River, and by that means take abundance of Sturgeons, and such like fish.

I heard they had an odd custom at their Weddings, which is, that all the men bidden thereto shoot each of them an Arrow into the floor, and leave them there, till they either rot, or fall of themselves, whereof I could never learn any reason.

As soon as they perceiv'd us, they came to the River-side, and proffer'd to help us over, and to facilitate the getting over of the Baggage, they joyn'd two Boats together, over which they laid a hurdle, strong enough to bear a Wagon. They demanded two Crowns for the passage of every Wagon, and we had about seventy; and perceiving we made some difficulty to give it them, and that we chose rather to make a bargain with them for all together, they pass'd over to the other side, where they fell a jeering and laughing at us. We saw there also the *Schemkal*, standing at the entrance of the Wood, accompany'd by a great number of persons on horseback: so that we knew not what case we were in.

We made huts of boughs of Trees, upon the River side, and had several private Assemblies; in regard there was not any publick, in relation to the holy time of *Whitsontide*. Such as profess'd Letters met at the Ambassador *Crusius's*, where we dined, having no other drink than *Oxycrat*, that is, a beveridge of Vinegar and Water, which was increas'd by the tears we shed, reflecting on the difference there was, between our present condition, and that we should be in at our return into our dear Country.

The 15. we intreated the *Muscovian* Ambassador to cross the River, which he did, and spoke to the *Schemkal*, according to the instructions we had given him, and prevail'd so far, that the *Tartars* were content to take two *Tumains*, which amount not to above forty Crowns, for the passage of all the Company and the Baggage.

We cross'd the River the same day, and the Ambassadors immediately caus'd their Tents to be pitch'd, and fortify'd the Quarter with the Baggage, which was defended by the Artillery.

1638. Soon after the *Schemkal*, accompany'd by two of his Brethren, and a retinue of 50. persons on horse-back, gave them the first visit. He was about 36. years of age, strong, bulky, and of a good countenance. He had on a Garment of green Satin, over a Coat of mail, and over that a Cloak, of extreme coarse cloath. His Arms, as also those of the rest of the Company, were the Cymitar, Bows, and Arrows. Besides a Present of certain Sheep and Lambs, he caus'd some of his people, to bring thither a great Chauldron, full of Sturgeon, cut into little pieces, and boil'd in water and Salt, whereto there was a sawce of fresh Butter and Sorrel. I may truly say, I never made a better meal, and that all the delicates of *Persia* were not comparable to that dish. The Ambassadors treated him with Aquavitæ and Musick, during which our brass Guns were several times discharg'd. He diverted himself in that manner for the space of two hours, till that being got half drunk, he withdrew; but return'd again within a while after.

We presented him with a pair of gold Bracelets, a silver Goblet, a Scarlet Cloak, lin'd with Furr, a case of Pistols, a Sword, a barrel of Powder, certain *Persia*-silk stuffs, and some Goatskins dress'd into leather. He immediately put on the Cloak, and gave his own to the Ambassador *Brugman*, who had the prudence to humour him, and assure himself of his kindness and friendship, by putting him in hopes of extraordinary advantages, likely to accrue to him by settlement of the Commerce, for which he had travell'd so far. He told him, that the *Persian* Ambassador was to follow them, to conclude with the Duke of *Holstein*, what they had but begun in *Persia*; that the said Ambassador would give him further satisfaction as to that particular, and that they should be oblig'd to pass through his Country once a year, with Commodities of great value: That that Country was not known at all in *Germany*, and that their Prince knew not they were, in those parts, to meet with so great a Lord, otherwise, he had sent him very considerable Presents; but that it should not be omitted hereafter, and that it was their intention to make a perpetual friendship with him. This discourse so pleas'd the *Schemkal*, that he would have hasten'd our departure thence, that we might the sooner return that way. So that we had horses for the saddle and for carriage at a very easie rate, to carry us as far as *Terki*.

Leave  
Andre.

May 16. we departed. He himself, accompany'd by fifty horse, convoy'd us through a thick Wood, half a league from *Andre*, where he took leave of us, with much civility. We travell'd that day two leagues, over a great Plain, to the River *Aksai*. It runs very slowly in those parts, and is not above fifty paces broad. The *Tartars* told us, that it is an arm of the River *Koitsu*, into which it falls, near the Sea. There we were forc'd to stay for the Boats, and the Hurdles, which the Inhabitants of *Andre* brought in Waggon, and in the mean time, we cut Reeds and Canes, to lay over the mudd which hindred our coming dry to the River side. We cross'd it by Moon-light, and paid there also two *Tumains* for our passage.

Such as were not in favour with the Ambassador *Brugman*, were forc'd to lye down supperless.

The 17. we travell'd seven leagues, over a great Heath, where we began to be out of sight of mount *Caucasus*.

We came at night to the River *Bustro*, and pitch'd our Tents in the adjoining Forest. This River is very muddy, and near as big, but not so swift as that of *Koitsu*. Running Northward, about five leagues from the *Caspian* Sea, it is divided into two branches, whereof one, heretofore named *Terk*, and now *Timenki*, hath derived its name to the City of *Terki*, by which it passes, and is about fifty foot broad.

The other branch of the said River is called *Kisilar*, by reason of certain Grains, like Gold, which come down with its gravel, and the Chanel of it is as broad as that of the other, but hath so little water, that many times, in the Summer, a man may cross it dry-foot. The mouth of this arm is eight leagues above the City of *Terki*.

It is to be observ'd here, that all these Rivers come from the West-north-west, and that between *Kisilar* and the River *Volga*, which are sixty five leagues distant one from the other, there is no other River. So that we are to conclude, that the *Aksai*, is the *Cæsius* of *Ptolomy*; that *Bustro*, is the *Gerrus*; that *Timenki*, or *Terk*, is the *Alonta*, and that *Kisilar* is the *Adonta*, in as much as there are only these Rivers between the *Albanus* or *Koitsu*, and the *Rha*, or *Volga*.

The River *Bustro* is a common Frontier between the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*, and those of *Circassia*; upon which account it was, that the Waggoners of *Tarku*, would not go beyond it.

Enter Cir-  
cassia.

May 18. we cross'd the River, and got over the Baggage, to our greater satisfaction in this particular, that we left, on the other side of the River, the *Mahumetans* and *Pagans*, and were entred into *Christendom*. For though the *Tartars* of these parts are also *Pagans* or *Mahumetans*, as well as those of *Dagesthan*, and the rest, yet are they under the Jurisdiction of a *Christian* Prince, who is the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, and hath, at all places, his Governours, Magistrates and Priests, for the exercise of *Christian* Religion.

Provisions were so dear in these parts, that we were forc'd to pay above thirty shillings for a Sheep. Nay they would not spare us many; so that to get flesh, we went into the Woods and shot at Crows, whereof there were abundance thereabouts. The

The 19. we travell'd five leagues, through a plain Country, full of Reeds, having also some few trees, which were, for the most part, planted round about a great Plain. 1638.

At night we encamped upon the Heath, neer a Well, or rather a Sink, in regard the water of it was so corrupt, that the very Beasts would not drink of it. The ground thereabouts was all full of holes, which the Serpents and Snakes had made there; and yet, though we were forc'd to lodge on the ground, not one of us receiv'd any harm.

The 20. we got four leagues further, over heathy and barren Lands, to the City of *Terki*. We saw that day a great many Serpents, many whereof were as big as a man's arm, and above six foot in length. They lay round, and sported themselves in the heat of the Sun, which gave a delightful lustre to the liveness of the colours, wherewith their skins were spotted all over. We saw also, neer *Terki*, a kind of *Field-mice*, which, in the *Arabian* Language, are called *Ferbuah*. They are about the bigness of a Squirrel, and somewhat like the Creature of that kind which is so common in *Europe*, save that their hair is blacker, their heads like those of Rats, they have long ears, the fore-feet short, and the hinder feet long; whence it comes, that they cannot run, but when they get up some place, and, in the plain, they only creep, unless it be, when they leap, for then they spring five or six foot high from the ground, having their tails layd over their backs. And whereas their tails are long, and without any hair, like those of ordinary Mice, but not so big, they are somewhat like the Lions Rampant, in Coats of Arms: and they made a pretty kind of sport, especially when many of them leap'd at the same time, as we said before. They say, there are abundance of them about *Babylon*, and in *Arabia*, where the Inhabitants eat them. Some will leave the field, and go into peoples houses; which if they do, the master of the house had need have a care of his money, lest they light upon it.

The *Persian*, whom I brought out of the Country, and who still waits on me, named *Achwerdi*, told me a story, how that his Father having observ'd that his money was, from time time, taken out of his Chamber, at first suspected his Wife and Children, till, one day finding there one of these *Ferbuah*, he presently imagin'd who playd the Thief: but to be assur'd of it, he set an *Abas* upon the Table, and, going out of the room, lock'd the door, so that no other could get in, and coming thither a while after, the *Abas* was gone, whereupon searching the nest of that Creature, he found in it more money than he had lost.

Within a quarter of a league of the City of *Terki*, came up to us a Brother of Prince *Mussal's*, of whom we have spoken heretofore, accompany'd by a Colonel, whom the *Weywode* sent to meet and complement us. He receiv'd us in Tents, pitch'd without the City, where we had a Collation of Ginger-bread, Beer, Hydromel, and Aquavita. During our stay there, there were Lodgings taken up for us in the City.

The next day, the *Weywode* sent the Ambassadors four dishes of Meat, for their wellcom thither. The Ambassadors sent to visit the Princess *Bika*, *Mussal's* Mother, and, some dayes after, went to her in person. They din'd with her. Now was our joy compleat, to find ourselves out of the power of the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*, and among the *Moscovites*, who were our friends and acquaintance, which made us send for our Musick to divert our selves at Prince *Mussal's*.

We promis'd, in the precedent part of this Relation, to give a further account of the *Circassian Tartars*, in our return, in as much as, travelling by Sea, as we went, we could not learn much of them. There is no Historian, either antient or modern, that I know of, who speaks of them. *Scaliger* makes mention of them, in his Exercitations, against *Cardan*, Exerc. 33. 167. & 303. sect. 3. but in very few words, and, with *Strabo*, calls them *Zigi*, placing them beyond the *Caucasus*, upon the *Euxine* Sea, and towards the *Palus Meotides*, upon the Frontiers of *Asia* and *Europe*: whereas they, whom we saw, are *Scythians*, or *Caspian Sarmatians*, and possess'd of part of the antient *Albania*, which hath for his Frontiers, on the East and West side, the *Caspian* Sea, and mount *Caucasus*; and on the South and North, the River *Bustro*, and the dreadful Deserts of *Tartary* and *Astrachan*.

Their Metropolis is *Terki*; but ever since the reduction of those parts by the Great Duke, he hath put Garrisons into all the Cities, leaving the *Circassian Tartars*, for their habitations, but only open Towns and Villages, though under the Government of the Lords of the Country, who are all subject to the *Czaar*, and oblig'd to take an Oath of Allegiance to him. The administration of Justice, whereof those of their Nation have the management, passes under the *Czaar's* name, and in the presence of the *Weywode*, especially if the affairs be of importance. Their houses are but poor ones, built, for the most part, of earth and boughs of trees, and within, plaister'd over with Clay.

The men, for the most part, are strong, and of yellowish complexion, but not so broad-fac'd as those of *Nagania*. Their hair is black and long, save that they shave the midst of their heads, from there fore-head to the neck, about the breadth of an inch, leaving at the crown a little lock, which falls down behind.

*Scaliger* saies, that the *Circassian Tartars* are the most perfidious, and most barbarous of any

1638. any Nation. It might be more truly said of those of *Dagestan*. For the *Circassians* are somewhat less barbarous, and more compliant. 'Tis likely, that since their coming under the Jurisdiction of the *Muscovites*, and their conversing with *Christians*. they, by degrees, quit their former barbarism.

*Their language Habit.* They have their Language common with all the other *Tartars*, and besides that, most of them speak also the *Muscovian*. The men are cloath'd as the other *Tartars*, save that their Caps are a little larger, and much like those of our Priests. Their Cloaks are of a very coarse cloath, or Sheep-skin, fasten'd at the neck with a point or string; but both sides do not come together, so that, it being able to cover only some part of the body, they turn it, before or behind, according to the Wind and Rain.

Their Women are well shap'd, and have good faces, a clear and smooth complexion, and their cheeks well colour'd. Their hair, which is black, hangs down in two tresses, on both sides of their faces, which are never cover'd. They wear about their heads a black Coif, cover'd with a piece of very fine Cotton, or some other wrought linnen cloath, which they ty under they chin.

*Women* The Widdows have hanging behind in their necks an Ox bladder, fully blown, cover'd with a piece of Cotton, Lawn, or some other stuff of several colours, so that at a distance, they seem to have two heads. The Women, in Summer wear only a smock, which is red, green, yellow, or blew, cut so deep before, that a man may see all down to their Navels.

They were very familiar, and of a very good humour. The first day after our arrival, four of them came to us, in a stately gate, and with such a confidence, as the Poets attribute to the *Amazons*, whom they place in or neer these parts. They staid us, and would not let us go, till they had taken particular notice of all things about us. Nor were they on the other side so shy, as to take it ill, that some of ours, who pretended to handle the beads of amber and shells, or necklaces of Tinn or Copper, which they wear about their necks, slipp'd their hands down into their bosoms. Some invited us to their houses, and we were told, it was the custom of the Country, that the husband, seeing any one going to his house, to speak with his wife, should, to avoid being troublesome, go out of doors, and leave them together. Though the men are seldome at home, as being all day busied in the fields, about their Cartel, yet do they relate miracles of the chastity of these women.

*Are Chaste.* One I have to this purpose from a Military Officer of ours, who being got into one of their houses, and finding the woman handsome, grew familiar with her, and found her very willing to do him any little kindness that lay in her power, even to make him Handkerchers, & wash his head: so that, thinking the fort as good as taken, he would try how much longer she could stand out. But she told him there was no such thing done among them; that the confidence their husbands had of their honesty, requir'd they should be as faithful on their parts; nay that though their husbands might connive at such a miscarriage, yet would not the rest of the people pass by an inconstancy of that nature. They made no difficulty to endure any thing else, and would be paid for it, taking and begging Presents, nay under preence of visiting our cloaths all about, they sometimes put their hands into our pockets, and took out what they could light on.

Though it be lawful among them, for men to marry several wives, yet most content themselves with one. When a man dies without issue, his Brother is oblig'd to marry the widdow, to raise up seed to him; and according to this custom, the *Mussal* had married his Brothers widdow.

*Their Religion.* Their Religion is in a manner Pagan; for though they are circumcis'd, yet have they neither Bible, nor Alchoran, nor Priests, nor Churches. They are themselves the Priests, and offer the Sacrifices, especially on the day of *St. Elias*.

*Their Sacrifices.* When a person of quality dies the relations and friends meet in the fields, both men and women, to sacrifice a he-Goat; and to find whether it be fit to sacrifice, they cut off the privy members, which they cast against the wall: if they do not stick thereto, they are oblig'd to kill another, but if they do, they proceed with the Ceremonies, fleaing it, and stretching the skin upon the top of a long pole, before which they offer their sacrifice, and boil, and roast the Flesh, which they afterwards eat. The Feast ended, the men rise, and go and adore the skin, and the prayers concluded, the women withdraw. The men stay, and grow so bestially drunk, with their *Bragga*, or *Aquavita*, that they seldome part without fighting. This skin is left upon the pole, till another person of quality dies, and then the former is taken away, and another set up instead of it.

We saw neer *Terkj*, both going and coming, not far from the Princess *Bika's* house, one of these stretch'd skins, with the head and the horns on, upon a black cross. The pole was planted in a quick-set hedge, only to keep the Dogs from coming neer it, and, by their pissing against it, profaning the Mystery.

*Their entombments.* They interr their dead very honourably; adorn their Sepulchres with pillars, and build houses over those of persons of quality. We saw one over the Sepulchre of *Mussal's* Brother, the boards

boards whereof were of diverse colours, plac'd checquerwise, having, upon the roof, several wooden Statues, poorly done, which represented the hunting of some wild Beast. 1638.

To express their sorrow for the departure of their friends, they tear their forehead, arms, and breasts, with their nails, after a barbarous manner, so that the blood comes out in abundance. Their mourning continues till the wounds are healed, and if they would have it last longer, they renew, them, by opening the scratches in the same manner.

May. 21. we began to set things in order, for the prosecution of our journey. We had a Desert of seventy leagues to travel over, and, to find horses for all the Company to ride, would have been too great an expence. Wherefore we agreed with the Waggoners of *Terki*, at nine Crowns a Wagon, drawn by two horses, which might carry each of them three or four persons, to *Astrachan*.

There joyned with us a *Caravan* of Merchants, of several Nations, as *Persians*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Muscovites*; so that then we had above two hundred Wagons, in our Company. But the Provisions allow'd us were but small for so great a journey: to wit, to every man, with the *Suchari*, and a loaf of mouldy brown bread, half a dry'd Salmon that stunk, without any drink. For the *Tartars*, pretending they had bargain'd only for the carriage of men, would not receive any barrels or other vessels into the Wagons, and the Ambassador *Brugman* would not be at the charge of a Wagon, purposely to carry beer or water for us, though he made good provision of all for himself and his Favourites. And indeed we stood not much upon it, out of an imagination, it was impossible, we should want water: but we had time enough to repent us of that presumption.

We left *Terki*, the fourth of *June*, in the afternoon, and soon entred into that dreadful Heath, taking our way on the left hand, and turning from the *Caspian Sea*. 'Tis a thing strange, yet very certain, that, in eleven daies journey, we saw neither City, nor Village, nor tree, nor hill, nor any River but that of *Kisilar*, contrary to what all Maps represent thereof. Nay, during all that time, we saw not so much as one Bird, but only a vast Plain, desert, sandy, and cover'd in some places with a little grass, and pits, or standing pooles, of salt, or corrupt and stinking water. We got the first day but two leagues, and lodg'd at night, neer one of those standing pools.

The 5. we encamped neer the River *Kisilar*.

The 6. we travell'd six leagues, and lodg'd neer one of those pools. These three first daies, we took our way towards the *West-north-west*, and *East-north-east*, to the River *Wolga*.

The 7. we got six leagues further, through a great Fenn, which we had much ado to pass. Heat and thirst troubled us extremely, but not so much as the Flies, Wasps, Gnats, and other insects, which both men and horses found it no small difficulty to keep off. The Camels, which have no tails, to keep away those insects, as the horses have, were all bloody, and full of swellings.

The 8. we were going before day; and, having travell'd 4. leagues, we gave our horses a little rest and provender, at the entrance of a very sandy road. In the afternoon, we got four leagues further, and lodg'd at night, neer a standing pool. The *Tartars* perceiving that one of their horses was like to miscarry by the way, prevented him, cut his throat, and shar'd him among themselves. At night they roasted him, making a fire of little bushes of thorns and reeds, and were very merry.

The 9. we travell'd seven leagues, and lodg'd, neer a pool which the overflowing of the Sea made thereabouts. The water was so bad, as was also that of all the rest, that we were forc'd to stop our noses while we drunk it.

The 10. we got seven leagues further, to a place cover'd with Reeds, where we found a little fresh water, deriv'd thither from the *Wolga*.

The 11. we got seven leagues further, to a standing pool, made there by the inundation of the *Wolga*. The water is not salt, but so dead and stinking, that there was no drinking of it. That day, twelve great wild Boars cross'd out way. Some *Tartars* on horse-back came riding after them, and as ill fortune would have it, there came two of them close by our Waggon. The horses were frightned, and fell a-running, so that the Physician and Steward fell out of the Waggon, with the Baggage. The *Sieur Uchterits* and my self, who sat in the fore-part of the Waggon, considering there was no getting out without danger, kept our places, till the horses, being not able to go any further, stopp'd at the entrance of a Fenn.

The 12. we travell'd eight leagues, and found, in our way, upon the ground, a Neast, wherein there were two Birds not quite fledg'd. Some were of opinion they were young Eagles. We pass'd by two salt marshes, the scent whereof was somewhat like that of a Violet, and very delightful.

The 13. we travell'd eight leagues further, lodg'd at night in a place, whence we could discover the City of *Astrachan*.

The 14. we got three leagues, and lodg'd on the side of the *Wolga*, over against *Astrachan*. All our people who had not drunk any fresh water, since their coming from *Terki*, ran up to their

1638. their knees in the River, to drink with greater ease. Aftoon as they had notice at *Astrachan* of our arrival, they presently came to visit us, and he who had the keeping of the Provisions sent thither for us, brought us a sack full of bread, Neats-tongues, hung-Beef, a tun of Beer, and a barrel of Aquavitæ. We continu'd that day on the River-side, to give the *Weywode* time to assign us Lodgings.

Come to Astrachan. The next day, *June 14.* we cross'd the River *Volga*, and were lodg'd in a great *Ambara*, or Store-house, built there not long before, upon the River-side, without the City, where we were much troubled with Flies. We found there also another Store-house, full of Provisions, which *David Ruts*, his Highness's Factor at *Moscou*, had sent thither six months before.

The Ambassador *Brugman* would have had all the Baggage dispos'd into an apartment by it self, intending to have it search'd, and to that purpose, had open'd some Chests: but those of the retinue who had not put off either cloaths or linnen, since their departure from *Terki*, were so incens'd at this procedure, that they broke into the Room, and carried away their Chests, notwithstanding the order he had given the Sentinel, plac'd at the door, to keep any from getting in.

*June* the last, the Ambassadors sent their Presents to the *Weywode*, who return'd them another Present, of four Sheep, an Ox, ten wild Ducks, ten Pullers, six Geese, a tun of Beer, and another of Hydromel.

JULY. 'Tis true, the Ambassadors dined and supp'd together, during our aboad at *Astrachan*; but there was not a word spoken at Table, unless it were when the Ambassador *Brugman* was pleas'd to fall on any with his ordinary Language which was picquant and satyrical enough. One day he gave such bitter expressions, to the Secretary of the Embassy, that he could not forbear making him some answer, whereat the other was so enrag'd, that he drew his knife at him, and made him rise from the Table, with such injurious words, that the Secretary, at his return into *Holstein*, was oblig'd to make his complaints thereof, to the Magistrate, who condemn'd *Brugman* to make publick satisfaction. This ill correspondence, and alienation of minds, proceeded chiefly from *Brugman's* being conscious to himself, of the many imprudent actions he had done in our Travels, and the fear he was in to be punish'd, for those disorders, at his return into *Holstein*, upon the prosecution of those, who had taken particular notice, and the freedom many times, to mind him thereof.

This averfion of his reach'd even to the Minister, who being oblig'd, by the duty of his Profession, severely to reprove the sins committed in the Company, had incurr'd *Brugman's* displeasure in so high a manner, that he could not get of him to buy a suit of cloaths, in so much, that, being, on some great Festival, to preach and administer the Sacrament at *Scamachie*, it was found he had only a pair of Drawers under his Cassock, to the great scandal of all, but particularly the *Muscovian* Ambassador, who liked our Liturgy, and would have given the Minister a suit of cloaths, had he not stood in fear of the indignation and violence of the Ambassador *Brugman*.

A pernicious design of one of the Ambassadors. We understood also, that he had a design to leave *Astrachan*, and to go by land, accompany'd by some of his own Creatures, and to forsake the rest of the Company. The *Muscovian* Ambassador, to whom he had communicated it, discovered it to us, and gave us notice, that we should observe his actions, in as much as his intention was no better than that of *Roussel*, who had betray'd the Marquess of *Exidueil*, and caus'd him to be sent prisoner into *Siberia*.

Soon after he had given us this notice, the *Muscovian* Ambassador took leave of us, to go for *Muscovy* by land: but we have heard since, that, at his coming to *Nise*, finding Letters from some friends, giving him to understand that he would not be well receiv'd by the Great Duke, he went no further, but there took a dose of poison, whereof he died.

*July 25.* came to *Astrachan*, a *Muscovian* Caravan, and, with it, a *German*, named *Andrew Reufner*, who had Lettets of recommendation from his Highness of *Holstein* to the King of *Persia*. The Ambassador *Brugman* had a great deal of private discourse with him, which begat such an intimacy between them, that instead of prosecuting his journey into *Persia*, he oblig'd him to return back thence, and to undertake the sollicitation of his affairs at the Duke of *Holstein's* Court.

*August 1.* the *Muscovites* celebrated, with great solemnities, the reduction of the City of *Astrachan*, taken from the *Tartars*, on the same day, in the year 1554.

AUGUS. The same day came to see us two *Cosaques*, with Letters for the Ambassadors, from *Alexei Savinouis*, whom they had met upon the River *Volga*.

These Rogues freely told us, that they had successfully set upon and rob'd so many people, that they were desirous to try how they should be able to deal with the *Germans*: That they car'd not much for our Artillery, in regard that was only for the unfortunate: That they heard, we had an invention to rofs all that came neer us into the air: That they could not imagine how it should be done; but that the worst they could fear was death, which they were forc'd

forc'd to suffer at a Gibbet, or upon a wheel, and that the hope of booty would make them attempt any thing. 1638.

Aug. 6. came to *Astrachan*, *Imanuli Sulthan*, the *Persian* Ambassador, whom we had expected so long, and the next day he made his entrance into the City. The Persian Ambassador comes to Astrachan.

August 11. dy'd one of our Interpreters, named *Kenry Krebs*, and was buried the thirtieth, in the Churchyard of the *Armenians*, with the ordinary Ceremonies. SEPTEMBER.

September the 5. there went away a *Staniza*, or Caravan, of about 200. persons, to go from *Astrachan* to *Moscou*, by land. *Andrew Resner*, made his advantage of that opportunity, and departed, taking some of our people with him.

The Ambassadors also took that convenience to send away some of their retinue with their horses. We began to set things in order to follow them by water, and to that purpose, bought two great Boats, sixty foot in length, and fifteen in breadth, which cost us 600. Crowns, and to every Sea-man, whereof there were thirty, we gave 12. Crowns, to bring us to *Casim*. The Ambassadors divide their Baggage.

Not long before our departure, some *Muscovian* Musketeers brought, to be sold, to the Ambassadors, a young Girl of ten years of age, whom they had taken from a School-Master, who was a *Tartar* of *Precop*, at the taking of the City of *Affon*, which lies upon the *Palus Meotides*, at the mouth of the River *Don*, and was taken by the *Cosaques* from the *Turk*, on the firh of *August*.

They brought us also another Girl about seven years of age, whom they had stoln not far from *Astrachan*, as she lay a-bed with her Mother. They had put her into a bagg, out of which they cast her at the Ambassadors feet, as if it had been a sucking-Pigg, stark-naked. Her Parents had made in her cheeks two blew marks, of the bigness of a Lentil, that she might be known again, in case she were stoln.

The Ambassador *Brugman*, considering, that, in purchasing them, he should bring two lost Sheep to the Fold of *Jesus Christ*, bought them both, one at 25. the other at 16. Crowns. At his return he presented them to the *Duchesse of Holstein*, who had them so well instructed, that in the year 1642. they were both baptiz'd, having before given a publick account of their Faith. Brugman's charity.

Our Interpreter for the *Turkish* Language was also a *Tartar*-born, and had been stoln in his Infancy and carried to *Moscou*, where he had been baptiz'd. His relations knew him again, and would have redeem'd him; but he would not consent thereto, protesting he would dy in the profession of the Christian Religion, since it was Gods pleasure to bring him to the knowledge thereof. But ever after, he went not far from the Ambassadors Quarters, lest he might have fallen into the hands of his relations, who would have dispos'd otherwise of him.

At this place, the *Persian* Ambassador bought him a Wife. She was a *Tartar*, and Sister to a *Myrsa*, who was a prisoner, and who sold his Sister for a hundred and twenty Crowns in money, and a horse, which the Ambassador valued at ten Crowns. This Ambassador was at least seventy years of age, but very vigorous, and us'd much Hemp-seed, bak'd in the Embers, whereof the *Persians* eat abundance, out of an opinion, that it revives Nature, yet hinders Conception. The Persian Ambassador buyes him a Wife.

Sept. 7. we left *Astrachan*, and embark'd upon the *Wolga*, the Ambassadors dividing their retinue, and taking each of them a Boat. We cast anchor within half a league of the City, expecting the *Persian* Ambassador, who came to us the next day, with three Boats. We gave him a volley at his arrival, and set sail together. Leave Astrachan.

The 10. we pass'd before the Iland of *Busan*, where the *Tartars* of *Crim* and *Pretop*, are wont to swim over the River, which in that place is somewhat narrow. The *Muscovites*, to prevent them, had set a Guard there, of fifty Musketeers, who sent to us for some Bread, and got a bag of *Suchary*.

The 15. we cast anchor before *Tzornogar*, which the *Muscovites* call also *Michailo Novogorod*, from the Great Duke *Michael Federonits*, who built it, within three hundred *werstes*, or sixty *German* leagues from *Astrachan*. The *Weywode* sent the Ambassadors a Latin Letter, which *Alexei Savinonits* had left for them, and sent one to invite them to come to refresh themselves in the City: but they would not lose so much time. Come to Tzornogar.

The 24. we got before *Sariza*, two hundred *werstes* from *Tzornogar*. The 29. the wind fair, we got forty *werstes*. The *Muscovites* attributed the cause of it to the Great Duke's name, whose Feast was celebrated that day, being *St. Michael's*. To Sariza.

October 2. one of the *Persian* Ambassadors Boats was a-ground. They were so long getting it a-float again, that the Ambassadors went ashore, where they dined together. Their people made also acquaintances among themselves, and those of *Persia* took so much *Aquavitæ*, that we were forc'd to carry, and drag them to the Boats like so many Beasts. OCTOBER.

The *Persians* must also needs fall out with the Musketeers, who guarded them. Cudgels and Cymitars were employ'd, and the Ambassador himself, who was got as drunk as any of



1638. his people, was going to draw upon them, when our Ambassadors came in, and reconcil'd all.

The night following, one of the *Persian* Ambassadors Pages, who was sick of a bloody Flux, fell into the water, yet none perceiv'd it till the next morning.

To Soratof.

The 6. we came before *Soratof*, 350. *werstes* from *Sariza*. We there heard, that a party of *Cosaques* would have set upon the *Caravan*; but fearing they might come by the worst on't, they only cross'd their march with a great noise, and, by means of their breeding-Mares, got away some *Archemagues*, or *Persian* horses, intended for breed.

The 14. the wind South-west, there rose such a tempest, that it scatter'd all our Boats. That of the Ambassador *Crusius*, and two of the *Persian* Ambassador's, which carried horses, were forc'd upon the shore, and immediately sprung such a leak, that we had hardly time enough to get out our Baggage, & the *Persians* their horses, whereof there was one drown'd. This Tempest having continued two daies, we got our Boats ashore, caulk'd them, and departed thence the 17. but the *Persian* Ambassador, who had two Boats unserviceable, was forc'd to send away his horses by land.

To Samara.

The 24. we came before the City of *Samara*, seventy leagues from *Soratof*.

NOV.  
To Casan.

*November* the sixt, we pass'd by the mouth of the great River *Kama*, and entred, with the night, into the River *Casan*: in very good time for us, in regard the next morning, the River *Wolga* was frozen over.

The *Weywode* of the City, *John Wasilowits Morosow*, who, at the time of our former being at *Moscou*, was Counsellor of State to the Great Duke, receiv'd us but very indifferently, as well in regard the Ambassadors had not made their acquaintance with him by Presents, as by reason of his siding with the *Muscovian* Merchants, who oppos'd our negotiation, and would have prevented the establishment of our Commerce. The Ambassadors sent their Steward to him, with the Great Duke's pass, intreating him they might be assigned Lodgings in the City; but he sent him back with this answer, that he might return to the Boat, and there the Ambassadors should hear further from him.

The next day, he sent to the Ambassador *Brugman's* Boat, a *Sinbojar*, who addressing himself to the Ambassador, ask'd him, which of the two was the Ambassador, which the Merchant. *Brugman*, thinking himself affronted by that discourse, took him by the arm, and said to him, Go tell thy Master, that if he cannot read, let him get one that can, and withall may shew him, what quality the Great Duke gives us. But notwithstanding all this, we were forc'd to continue several daies on the River, though the weather were very cold. The *Weywode* indeed sent us word, that we might lodge in the City for our money; but he issu'd our orders, that none should entertain us, and commanded the Sentinel, who had permitted the Steward to pass, and a Boy, who had been his guide through the marsh, from the River-side to the City, to be cudgell'd.

*Nov. 11.* the *Persian* Ambassador made his entrance into the City, and was lodg'd in that part of it which is built of wood. He prevail'd so far with the *Weywode*, that he permitted us to land, which we did the 13. taking up our Quarters in the Suburbs.

*Nov. 20.* the Ambassadors bestow'd the two Boats on the *Weywode*, and made him some other Presents, which put him into another humour, and made him very much our friend.

DECEM.

*December* the 16. the *Muscovites* celebrated the Festival of their Patron, *St. Nicholas*, for the space of eight daies together, during which a man could see nothing but perpetual drunkenness, and extraordinary bebauchdness, in both men and women. The *Care* or Parson of the Parish, came one day to my Quarters, accompany'd by his Clerk, as well to incense the Images, as to comfort the Mistress of the house, whose husband was put in prison for debt.

He told us, that, about forty years before, there had been found in the Monastery of *Spas*, which is in the said City of *Casan*, the bodies of two Monks, named *Warsinosi*, and *Kursh*, whose sanctity was approved, not only, in that their bodies had been found entire, after so many years, but also by the many miracles they did, there being no sick person but recover'd his health, after he had done his devotions at their Sepulchre. I ask'd him, why he complain'd of his back, and how it came to pass, there were so many blind people, and so great a number of other sick persons at *Casan*. The Priest had not a word to say, but grew angry, and went his way.

Leave Casan.

Having stay'd at *Casan* five weeks, till the Ice and snow were able to bear, we departed thence, the 13. of *December*, with sixty Sledges, leaving, by order of the *Weywode*, the *Persian* Ambassador behind us.

Come to Nise.

We took our way upon the *Wolga*, and came, the 21. to *Nise*, sixty leagues, or three hundred *werstes*, from *Casan*. The Ambassadors lodg'd at Mr. *Bernards* our Factor, and the retinue, up and down the neighbourhood. There it was we left the last *Lutheran* Church. Their Pastor dy'd six months before, so that our Minister preach'd there, the Sunday before *Christmasts*. The said Church was very desirous, the Ambassadors should stay there till after *Christ-*

*Christ-mass* day, that the Sacrament of the Lords Supper might be administred that day: but the Ambassador *Brugman* was against it, and order'd our departure thence on the 23. in the afternoon, qnitting the *Wolga*, to take our way by the River *Occa*; which was also frozen up. 1638.

The 25. we had a Sermon, at two in the morning, at a Village named *Kurim*, ten leagues from *Nise*, and travell'd that day ten leagues further.

The 29. we came to *Woladimer*, 42. leagues from *Nisan*, and 28. from *Moscou*. The ruins of the walls, towers and houses, which were to be seen up and down, are undeniable demonstrations of the antiquity of the City.

*December* the last, we came to a Village, named *Rubossa*, within eight leagues of *Moscou*, where our *Pristaf*, who had gone before, to acquaint the Great Duke with our arrival, came and told us, that, within two daies we should make our entrance into *Moscou*. The Ambassador *Brugman* fell into such a peevish humour at this place, that he threat ned some of the retinue to have their noses and ears cut off, as soon as he were come into the Frontiers of *Germany*. But his menaces troubled no body, nor did so much as any one offer to run away.

M. CD. XXXIX.

1638.  
IANUA.

The first of *January*, we departed, before day, and travell'd five leagues, to a Village named *Bechra*, whither we came betimes, and there did our devotions.

The 2. we made our entrance into *Moscou*, conducted by two *Pristafs*, whom his *Czaarick* Majesty had sent to meet us. The Ambassadors sate, each of them with a *Pristaf*, in a rich Sledge, lin'd with *Crimson* Satin, and hung with the richest *Persian* Tapistry, and the chiefest of the retinue had excellent horses sent them from the Great Duke's Stable, all white, twelve in number. We were lodg'd at the ordinary house appointed for the reception of Ambassadors, and, during our stay there, we were supply'd with all things requisite for the Cellar and the Kitchen. The Ambassadors horses, and such of our people as went from *Astrachan* along with the *Caravan*, were arriv'd there some time before; and *Reusfer* was gone for *Holstein*, according to the agreement between him and the Ambassador *Brugman*.  
Make their entrance into Moscou.

*Jan. 6.* *Twelf-day*, the *Muscovites* celebrated the consecration of the holy Water; at which Ceremony, the Great Duke and the Patriarch were in person.

The 8. the Ambassadors had their first private Audience, which laste'd above an hour.

The night following, dy'd *Knez Iuan Michaelowits*, second son to the *Czaar*, in the eighth year of his age. The

His departure put the whole City into mourning, especially the Court. Both men and women put off all manner of ornament, as gold, silver, jewels, and garments of silk, cloathing themselves only in old vestments, for the most part of a dark grey colour. *The Czaar's second son dies.*

*Jan. 21.* the Ambassadors had their second private Audience, and had a conference of two hours. There were sent to them and those of their retinue black horses, and they found the whole Court hung with mourning, and all the Senators clad in black Chamlet.

*Jan. 30.* departed thence the *Sieur Uchterichs*. He had a long time before desir'd leave to return into *Germany*, to look after some affairs of his own; but he could not obtain it of the Ambassador *Brugman* till then, and that under a promise, that he would not carry Letters for *Holstein* from any but himself. But he deceiv'd the deceiver, and shew'd him the Letters of the Ambassador *Crusius*, who was content they should be seen, and carried away the rest without shewing them to him.

*February* the second, died the *Sieur Gruneauld*, a Senator of *Dantzig*, who had travell'd with us, as a Gentleman belonging to the Embassy. He was a person of much worth, and one who had before travell'd into the *East* and *West-Indies*. FEBRU

The 5. the *Persian* Ambassador made his entrance into *Moscou*, and the 8. had his first Audience.

The 11. the Ambassador *Brugman* desir'd, and had, a private Audience, without acquainting his Colleague therewith.

*Febr. 23.* the Ambassadors had their publick Audience, in order to their departure, at which they took leave of his *Czaarick* Majesty.

*March* the 7. the *Persian* Ambassador departed, going before us, towards *Germany*. MARCH  
The 15. the Ambassadors left *Moscou* making what haste they could thence, that they might have the convenience of Sledges, till they came to the Frontiers of *Germany*: and fearing, the spring, then neer, would spoil the waies, they travell'd so hard, that the 18. they came to *Tuere*, and the 19. to *Tarsok*. Leave Moscou

*Tarsok* is but a small City, yet hath it thirty Churches and Chapels, whereof one is of stone, and makes a handsome show at a distance: but the *Muscovites* would not permit us to come within the City.

The 23. we came to great *Novogorod*, where we found the *Persian* Ambassador. We left it the next day, and getting out of *Muscovy* the 27. entred *Ingermania*. Enter Ingermania

1638. *March* the last, the three Ambassadors made their entrance into *Narva*, where Colonel *Wrangel* came to meet us, with a party of fifty horse.

*Make their entrance into Narva.* The *Persian* Ambassador was lodg'd at one of the Senators houses, about which there was got such a multitude of people, to see his wife, that he was half in a mind to get out of the City, and take up his Quarters in the open fields, that none might see her: so that they were forc'd to get the people away. This oblig'd him to take another course for the future, which was, to have a Curtain drawn from the Wagon, or Sledge, that brought her, to the house where she was to be lodg'd, that she might not be seen going in.

*April* the 14. the Ambassadors left *Narva* and lodg'd at the Village of *Purtz* where they staid one day, to change their horses.

*APRIL.* *Leave Narva.* The 8. they came to *Kunda*, a house belonging to a Senator of *Riga*, where they staid four dayes. Here we were forc'd to give over travelling with Sledges, for want of snow, and to make use of horses and waggons.

*Come to Reuel.* The 13. we came to *Reuel*, where the Senate receiv'd us very magnificently. The persecutions which the Secretary of the Embassy was forc'd to suffer from the Ambassador *Brugman*, oblig'd him to take the opportunity of a Vessel, which went thence the 15. for *Lubeck*, and so for the Court of *Holstein*, where he expected the arrival of the Ambassadors, who staid three whole months at *Reuel*, without any necessity for it, or other reason than this, that the Ambassador *Brugman*, who was loath to return, as fearing what might be alleg'd against him, would have it so.

Their stay in that City had this consequence, that many of the retinue found their satisfaction there in the matter of Wedlock, and among others the Ambassador *Crusius*, who married a Senator's daughter of that place.

*JULY.* *Embark at Reuel.* *Come to Travemunde.* *July* the 11. the Ambassadors, and a *Muscovian Postanick*, whom the Great Duke sent to the Duke of *Holstein*, embark'd, and after eleven dayes sail, arriv'd upon the Coasts of *Holstein*, neer the Iland of *Femerren*, intending to get into the haven of *Kiel*, but the contrary wind oblig'd them to cast anchor, before *Neustadt*, within two leagues of *Lubeck*. They soon understood that the Plague was there, whereupon they immediately departed thence, and went to *Travemunde*, whither they got the next day, *July* the 23.

*To Eutin.* Thence they sent their people and the Baggage by Sea, to *Kiel*, and the Ambassadors came the 28. to *Eutin*, where Duke *John* of *Holstein*, Bishop of *Lubeck*, our Prince's Brother, receiv'd us, and treated us magnificently.

*To Kiel.* The 30. they came to *Kiel*, where our Ambassadors left the *Persian*, and the *Muscovian Postanick*, to go and wait on His Highness, whom they found at *Gottorp*, the first day of

*AUGU.* *August.* And so they concluded their Travels into MUSCOVY, TARTARY, and PERSIA.

F I N I S.

THE  
Voyages and Travels

OF

J. ALBERT de MANDELSLO

(A Gentleman belonging to the *Embassy*, sent by the Duke of HOLSTEIN to the great Duke of MUSCOVY, and the King of PERSIA)

INTO THE

EAST-INDIES.

Begun in the year M. DC. XXXVIII. and finish'd in M. DC. XL.

Containing a particular description of

The great MOGUL's Empire, the Kingdoms of DECAN, CALICUTH, COCHIM, ZEILON, COROMANDEL, PEGU, SIAM, CAMBODIA, MALACCA, SUMMATRA, JAVA, AMBOINA, BANDA, The MOLUCCAS, PHILIPPINE, and other Islands, JAPAN, the Great Kingdom of CHINA, the Cape of GOOD HOPE, MADAGASCAR, &c.

---

In three Books.

---

*Illustrated with Maps and Figures.*

---

Rendred into *English* by JOHN DAVIES of *Kidwelly*.

---

The Second Edition Corrected.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for J. Starkey, and T. Bassett, in *Fleet-street*, at the *Mitre*, between the *middle-Temple-gate* and *Temple-bar*, and at the *George* near *Cliffords-Inne*. 1669.



To the Right Worshipful

The Governour, Deputy, Committies, and Fellowship  
of English Merchants, trading into the

## EAST-INDIES.

Right Worshipful,

**Y**OU have here the Travels of a young Gentleman, who went along with the Embassie, sent by the Duke of *Holstein*, into *Muscovy* and *Persia*. That it was his resolution to see the other parts of *Asia*, appear'd by the expresse permission he obtain'd from his own Prince, before his departure, to do it. For the particular description we have of *Persia*, we are indebted to *Adam Olearius*, the Author of the Ambassadors Travels into *Muscovy* and *Persia*, which I dare affirm to be such as is infinitely beyond ought came abroad of that part of the World before. What our present Author *Mandelslo* gives of it, is only what lay in his way between *Ispahan* and the City of *Ormuz*. But of his departure from the former, the motives upon which he went, and the assistances he receiv'd from some of this Nation, be pleased to receive this account.

His acquaintances with some *English* Merchants at *Ispahan*, the Metropolis of *Persia*, heightned in him the design of these Travels into the *East-Indies*; their recommendations conducted him first to *Ormuz*, and afterwards thence to *Surat*. The kindnesses he receiv'd from the *English* President, and other Merchants he met with there, were such, as not only engag'd his stay some time, but also found him the conveniences of divers Caravans, with whom he travell'd into several parts of the *Mogul's* Country, and particularly to the Court of that powerful Prince, where he had staid longer, had not an accident, which happened at *Ispahan*, during the time of the Embassie, occasion'd in his sudden remo-

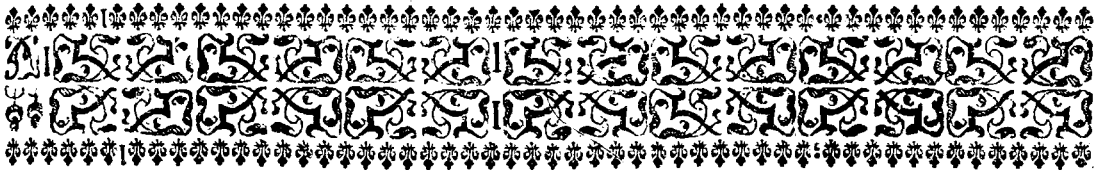
val thence. But what further Observations he might have made of those parts, are supply'd not only by the said *Olearius*, but also by the person who rendred his Work into the *French*, out of which, as being the most compleat, this Translation into the *English* is done. Having continu'd among the *English* Merchants at *Surat*, till the Ships bound for *England* were ready for their departure, he comes thence, along with Master *Metbwood*, who had newly resigned his charge of President to Mr. *Fremling*, at the Ceremonies whereof he was present. Being come to *London*, he found the same person, and others of the *East-India* Company as liberal of their kindness and hospitality, as they had been in those parts where he grew first acquainted with them; and such they continued, till his desires to wait on his own Prince, and put a Period to his Travels, occasioned his return into his own Country.

The civilities and endearments he receiv'd from them, were indeed such, as not only, then, oblig'd the Person, to whom they were shewn, but have, since, engag'd all those who have made any advantage of the Travels occasion'd thereby. It was therefore a noble and necessary gratitude in the Author, to make the frequent acknowledgments he does thereof in several places of his Work. It was a commendable compliance with his humour, in those who put it into other Languages, to propose both, as examples to their Countries. But for my part, I conceive there lies the greater Obligation upon me to make this address of my Labours herein, in that I am to let the World know, whose encouragements it is obliged to for these Travels, and to celebrate in our own Language and Country what was so nobly and generously done by some of your illustrious body in the more remote parts of the Universe, and shew withall what induc'd me to this presumption of assuming the quality of,

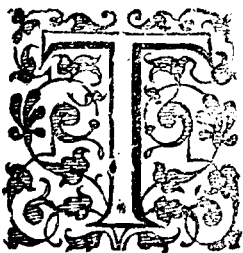
*Right Worshipful,*

Your most humbly devoted Servant,

J. DAVIES.



# THE P R E F A C E



He Relation of these our Travels would not be perfect, if at the return of our Embassy, we gave not an account what became of Monsieur Mandello, whom we left at Ispahan, with a design to travel into the Indies. This young Gentleman, who was born in the County of Meklenburgh, put off the quality of Page, when his Highness the Duke of Holstein resolv'd to send the Sieurs, Crusius and Brugman, into Muscovy and Persia, and express'd so great a desire to see Countries and Kingdoms so far distant from his own, that his said Highness did not only suffer him to go along with the Embassadors, in the quality of a Gentleman of the Chamber, but also to leave them as soon as they had finished their Negotiation in Persia, and to put in execution the design he had to travel farther, and see other parts of Asia.

1638.

Mandel:  
lo's person;

Hu Design.

He was so well look'd upon in the King of Persia's Court, that that Monarch press'd him to stay there for some years, and to that end proffer'd him many great advantages, and among others, a Pension of five or six hundred Tumains, which amount to near 10000. Crowns; many of the greatest about the Court, perceiving that the King had an affection for him, courted his Friendship, and, one after another, entertain'd him with continual Feasting, out of a hope to engage him in the heat of Wine, and by such great expressions of their kindness towards him. Those who were the most importunate with him, (and to that end appointed several meetings, whereat they gave him all the divertisements which might induce him to forget the inclinations he had towards his own Countrey) were the Master of the Horse, the great Faulconer, and the high Steward. They could not absolutely prevail with him, but shook his resolution so, as that he went and advised with the Prior of the Italian Carmelites, a person that by the abode of twenty four years at Ispahan, was perfectly acquainted with the Court of Persia. This good religious man, who was called Father Tinas, a person of eminent vertue, told him, that to put him out of the perplexity he was in, he would alledge unto him two instances, whereby he might himself judge, what fortune he was to expect in Persia. One was, that he had known a French Gentleman, who had so well establish'd himself in the Court, that the King, who had employed him in two great Embassies of great importance into Europe, which he very faithfully managed, had, to oblige him to spend the rest of his dayes in Persia, prevailed with him to marry a Persian Lady, but allowing him the freedom to live according to his own Religion. That some years afterwards, this Gentleman desired leave to return into France, but the King forbid him to depart the Kingdom; and to

Scach Seff  
loves him,  
and offers  
him a Pen-  
sion of  
10000.  
Crowns;

He considers  
whether he  
were best  
stay at  
Ispahan;

# The PREFACE.

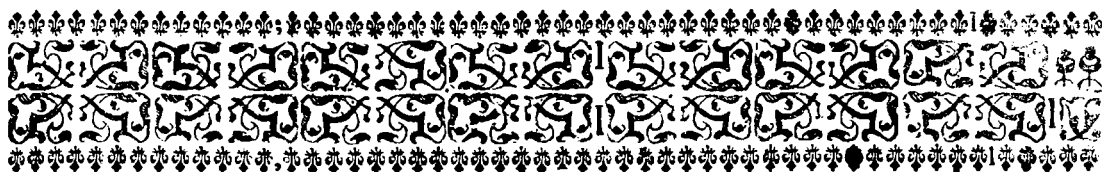
1638. prevent him from attempting it, caused all he had to be seized upon. That, even that unkindness had not smothered in him the desire he had to return into France, so that he made his escape notwithstanding that prohibition; but he was killed by the way. That his Lady, who had received Baptism, fled into the Monastery of the Carmelites, where she lay concealed, till she had an opportunity to disguise her self, and to go to Rome, whither the Pope had invited her. The other story was, that another Gentleman, an Italian, of the house of the Gabrieli, who was no less favoured at the Court then the French man, growing weary of living so long among Mahumetans, the professed enemies of his Religion, be-thought him to make a discovery to the King, of some notice he had, that there were about Ormus certain Mines, out of which Gold might be gotten, and shewed him a sample of it. The King did not so absolutely credit him, but that he sent along divers Lords and Gentlemen, who were to observe him: but coming to Gamron, he made them so drunk with sack; which the Portuguese had furnished him with, that he made a shift to get to the Sea-side, where finding a Boat ready, he made his escape to Ormus. That this escape of his had so incens'd the King, that it raised in Schach-Abas the first thoughts of besieging the City of Ormus, which he reduced to his obedience the year following.

To this the good Father added, that he had several other reasons to give him, which might divert a Gentleman of his age, and one so handsome in person, from staying in so depraved a Court as that of Persia: but that he conceived M. Mandello himself was better acquainted with it, then to engage him in a discourse of that nature. And indeed what he had said was enough to settle his resolution, so that before they parted, Mandello promised him to leave Ispahan with the soonest, and prosecute his design of going to Babylon, and thence to Jerusalem, whence he made account to go to Aleppo, and to return by the Mediterranean Sea into Europe. But having understood that the Grand Seigneur had besieged Bagdat, or Babylon, he changed his resolution, and took that of going to Ormus, and thence to the Great Mogul's Court, and so into the Indies.

To that end having disengaged himself from the Embassadors on the one and twentieth of December 1637. he stayed at Ispahan, till the 16. of January following. But in regard he himself hath taken the pains to set down the particulars of his Travels, and to make a very exact relation thereof, it were an injury to him, not to let him speak himself. He begins his relation thus.

MAN-





# MANDELSLO'S TRAVELS INTO THE INDIES.



The First Book.



He Embassadors of *Holstein*, having left *Ispahan*, the Metropolis of *Persia*, I resolv'd to make use of the Permission which the Duke my Master had given me, and having taken my leave of the Embassadors two Leagues thence, I returned to the City, where I stay'd almost a month, to put all things in order for the prosecution of my Design. During which time the King order'd *Imanculi Esichagasi*, a Native of *Karabath*, to make himself ready for the Embassy, upon which he would send him into *Holstein*.

1638.

Accordingly, *January 10. 1638.* *Imanculi* sent away the baggage, and the Presents that were to be made to the Duke, consisting in excellent Horses, and several Stuffs of Gold and Silk, amounting, as they were valued by the *Persians*, to 1500. Tumains, which make 20000. Crowns.

They about the Court, who had express'd a kindness for me, perceiving I was fully resolv'd to be gone, procur'd me a particular audience in order to my departure, to which I was introduc'd on the 12. of *January* by the Master of the Horse. I kis'd the hem of the Kings garment, who with much kindness was pleas'd to allow of my departure. The dayes following I spent in taking leave of my friends, and the 16. of *January* I left *Ispahan*, with a retinue of three persons, a Chirurgeon, a Lacquey, and a Groom, all three *German*s, and one *Persian* servant, Mr. *Honymood*, Agent of the English at *Ispahan*, accompany'd by several Merchants of the same Nation, and some *French* Merchants, brought me a League out of the City.

JANU-  
RY.  
Mandello  
leaves  
Ispahan.

I travell'd that day eight Leagues, to a Village call'd *Majar*, where I stay'd all the next day, expecting a *Carmelite* Father, who had promis'd me his company. But hearing that he had left *Ispahan* a day before me, I travell'd on the 18. and came that day to the Village of *Kamscha*, six leagues from *Majar*. All this way was one continued walk, set with trees on both sides in a direct line, with very pleasant Gardens adjoining; so that I do not think there can be a more delightful place then that Village? but the *Carauanfera*, where I was to take up my lodging, had nothing but the bare walls. The 19. I got six leagues, to the Village of *Machsud*. This Village hath a *Carauanfera* well furnished with Lodg-  
ings and Stables.

Comes to  
Majar.

To Kam'cha

Machsud.

The 20. I lodg'd in a *Carauanfera*, near a Village call'd *Hannabath*, which is very well  
seated,

1638. seated, on the descent of a pleasant hill. The 21. I travell'd 10. leagues, to a *Caravanjera*, call'd *Jurgisthan*, very ill way, and so much the more incommodious, by reason of the wind and snow, which hindred me very much.

The 22. I was forc'd to travel 12. *Farsangs*, or *Persian Leagues*; for, from *Jurgisthan* there is neither Village nor *Caravanjera*, where a man may be lodg'd; so that it was night ere I got to *Surma*. By that great dayes journey, I overtook the Mules of certain *Persian Merchants*, who came from *Ispahan* a day before me.

The 23. I was in like manner forc'd to travel 12. Leagues, to the Village of *Gusti*, where we were very ill accommodated, our Horses having not so much as a house over their heads, though it were very bad weather, and snow'd all night. The 24. we had a dayes journey, as great as the two precedent, but a much worse way; for as soon as we were out of *Gusti*, we came into mountains covered with snow, and had that day very cruel weather, though the Countrey thereabouts a man may think should afford a very pleasant prospect in Spring and Summer. We lodg'd at night in a great Village, call'd *Mesbid Maderre Soliman*, by reason of a sumptuous Sepulchre, which is within half a league of it. The Sepulchre is in a little Chappel built of white Marble, upon a high-square of free-stone-work, so as that the going up to it is by steps of all sides. The air and rain have eaten into the wall, in several places, but time hath in a manner consumed several great pillars of Marble, whereof what remains may be seen all about the Structure: upon the wall of the Chappel there are yet to be seen in *Arabian Characters* these words, *Mader Saleiman*. The Inhabitants say, that *Solomon's Mother* was interr'd there; but the *Carmelite Fathers* of *Schiras*, with more likelihood of truth, told me, that it was the Sepulchre of the Mother of *Scach Soliman*, the 14. Calif, or King, of the posterity of *Aaly*. *Elmacin*, in his History of *Arabia*, l. i. c. 14. sayes, her name was *Wallada*, the daughter of *Abbas Abasceam*, and that this *Soliman* liv'd in the year 715. and relates, among other things, one very remarkable, to wit, that the King, who was a very handsome graceful person, viewing himself one day in a Looking-glass, said, that he might justly assume the quality of King of Youth, as well as of his Kingdom; whereto one of the Scraglio-Ladies answered, that he might indeed justly do it, if his beauty would continue still the same, and were not subject to that change which is natural and common to all things; but that he must consider with himself that it was perishable, and that happily he should not enjoy it long; and that these words made such an impression in him, that, falling into a deep melancholy, he within a few dayes died of it. In this Village I met with the *Carmelite Father*, who came from *Ispahan* before me, with an *Armentian Caravan*.

The 26. I got five Leagues to the Village of *Siwan*; The 27. six Leagues to *Mardasch*. This last Village is very famous, for the Antiquities which are to be seen near it, and which obliged us, as they do all that travel that way, to make a particular Observation thereof. They are the ruines of an old Castle, which the *Persians* call *Tzilminar*, that is to say, forty pillars from a word compounded of *Tezebil*, which signifies 40. and *minar*, a pillar or Tower; in as much as the towers of the *Metschid* or *Mosqueys* of the *Persians*, having neither bells nor steeples, are of the form and bigness of a pillar. They are no doubt the ruines of one of the most magnificent structures that ever were; and the *Persians* say, that their King *Szemscid Padschal*, Grand-father by the mother side to *Alexander* the Great, (of whom mention is made in the precedent Travels of the Embassadors into *Muscovy* and *Persia*) was the Founder of that Castle; though others say King *Solomon* built it; and some would have it done by *Darius*, the last King of *Persia*. The Religious men of *Schiras* told me, that the learned were clearly of opinion, that the ancient *Persepolis* had stood thereabouts, and that these were the ruines of *Cyrus's Palace*. Whatever they were, they are at this day such as would ravish those who can ever so meanly judge of the excellency of ancient Monuments. The Ground-work of it is twenty two Geometrical feet in height, having at each of the four corners a pair of stairs of white Marble, consisting of 95. steps, which are very flat, and so broad, that twelve horse may go up together a-breast. Upon the square of it, before you come within the structure, may be seen the ruines of a wall, as also what is left of two great Gates, which have catv'd upon them each a horse, with harness and saddles very antiqk; and in the two other pieces, two creatures, whereof the hinder part hath some resemblance to the body of a horse, but the head, which is crowned, resembles that of a Lion, and both have wings of each side. On the one side, there are nineteen pillars of black and white Marble, whereof the least were eight, the biggest ten els high, without the bases. They told us, that not long before there were forty pillars standing; but it cannot be well judg'd, whether they had been design'd for the ornament of some great Hall; or set there in the air purely for show. A little further are the ruines of two chambers, which, as far as may be judg'd by the doors and windows, were not

X  
Maderre  
Soliman.

Siwan.  
Mardasch.

Tzilminar.

Persepolis

not very large. All is of Marble, so smooth and polish'd, that it might serve for a Looking-glass, as well as that of the palace Royal at *Ispahan*. On both sides of the doors, there are several figures of men, carved, whereof some are sitting, others stand, but much exceeding the natural proportion. They have all their hair so long, that it falls down over their shoulders, great beards, and habits falling down to their heels, with very wide sleeves, and a girdle about their garments. They have all round caps upon their heads; which, being much different from the ordinary habit of the *Persians* at present, argues a great antiquity. At a small distance, there are two other Chambers, built after the same manner, and of the same bigness, whereof there is nothing left but the doors, and the cross-bars of the windows.

The structure seems to have had many doors, which the *Persians* observe to this day in their buildings, so to make way for the winds they stand in need of to cool themselves. Near these chambers there may be seen, engraven upon a square pillar, certain unknown characters, which have nothing common with either the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, or *Arabian*, nor indeed with any other language. There are twelve lines of these characters, which, as to their figure, are triangular, Pyramidal, or like obelisks, but so well graven and so proportionate, that those who did them cannot be thought Barbarians: Some believe they are *Telesmes*, and that they contain some secrets which Time will discover. Besides these, there is also a great Court, upon the same ground-work, which is ninety paces square, having on each side two gates, whereof some are six, others but three paces wide, all built of a very well polish'd marble, whereof the several pieces are eight foot in length and three in breadth. In another Court there are represented in carv'd-work, in marble, battels, triumphs, and Olympick games, very well done, and with an exact observance of proportion. Upon every gate is represented a man, with a graceful countenance, sitting, and holding in one hand a Globe, in the other a Scepter, though the Kings of *Persia* never sat in that posture. I had the curiosity to get up on high, where I found the figure of a King at his devotions, adoring the Sun, Fire, and a Serpent. It is not easie to affirm, whether the Architecture of this Palace be of the *Ionick*, *Dorick*, or *Corinthian* order, the building is so ruin'd, though there be yet as much left as would find work for a good able Painter for six months. 'Tis a thousand pities, that no body hath yet had the curiosity to have it graven, had it been only out of this motive, that the barbarous people thereabouts ruine it daily more and more, and convey away the stones to carry on private buildings. *Ælian* says, that the Grand *Cyrus* was grown famous for the Palace he had built in the City of *Persepolis*, whereof he had himself laid the foundation; *Darius*, for that built by him at *Susa*; and *Cyrus* the younger, for the pleasant Gardens which he had himself planted and cultivated in *Lydia*. If this be the same place which *Diodorus Siculus* makes mention of, it is certain, that both as to greatness and magnificence it exceeded all those of that time. He says it was encompass'd with three walls of Marble, whereof the first was 16. the second 32. and the third 60. ells high, with the gates and balconies of brass. The work of so many years, and all that wealth were destroy'd in a few hours, by *Alexander* the great, who, upon the persuasion of a common Prostitute, caused it to be fired, as *Quintus Curtius* gives an account of it in his History. Having view'd these Antiquities, which with those of *Derbent*, were all we met with in our Travels, I prosecuted my journey the 28. of *January*, and got that day ten Leagues, to the City of *Schiras*. Lib. I. c. 59.

In this City I met with four Italian *Carmelites*, who have a very handsome well built Monastery there, and enjoy an absolute liberty of conscience, under the jurisdiction of the King of *Persia*. There had also been heretofore a Monastery of *Austin-Friers*; but they were forc'd thence, with the other *Portuguez*, when the City of *Ormuz* was taken from them. *Schiras* is the chief City of the Province of *Fars*, at 29. degrees, 36. minutes, seated in a very pleasant place, at the foot of certain Mountains upon the River, *Sendemer*, heretofore called *Araxes*, which discombogues it self into the *Persian* Gulf. We were told, the City had been much bigger then it is now, though there be in it at present above ten thousand houses; which I the more easily credited, in that we found all about it, and half a league beyond, the ruins of the gates and walls of a great City. Whatever Nature supplies mankind withall, not only for necessity, but also for pleasure, is here to be had in great abundance; as Wheat, Wine, Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Almonds, Dates, Pittachoes, &c. and the lovely Cypress-trees afford a pleasant shade against the excessive heats. The best Wine of all *Persia* grows hereabouts, and in such abundance, that it is transported all over the Kingdom, especially to the Court, where the King and great Lords drink not any other. 'Tis more sprightly, and more pleasant then Canary; but in regard no person of quality but drinks of it, and is willing to treat his friends with *Schiras Schirab*, it is dear enough at *Ispahan*, where it is sold at half a Crown a pottle. The soil here- Lib. 17.  
The City of Schiras described.

1638. hereabouts is very fertile, and produces abundance of Wheat and Fruit. The Sheep which are of an Ash-grey colour, with an eye of white, have their wooll curled or frizled, and their tails are so big, and so fat that they weigh 18. or 20. pound. The adjacent Forrests afford abundance of Maltick, which the Country people gather in dishes fastned to the Trees. It is at first green, but the Air in time corrupting it gives it the brown colour it is of, when brought into *Europe*. I stayed eight dayes at *Schiras*, as well to rest my Horses as to fortifie my self against the hardship I was to expect in my future travel, it being a hundred Leagues to *Ormus*, through a Country where I should not find what I left behind me at *Schiras*, which is doubtless the principal City of *Persia*, for Wine and Women; and affords so great enjoyments to those who can use these two things with moderation, that the *Persians* are wont to say, that if *Mahomet* had tasted the pleasures of *Schiras*, he would have desired God to make him immortal there: I left it the fifth of *February*, and passed by two *Caravanferas*, and took up my lodging at the third, having travell'd that day ten Leagues, through a fair even way.

FEBRU-  
ARY.

The sixth, I got seven Leagues, having a very bad way, but in sight of many Villages, whereof the prospect was the more pleasant, by reason of the Date-trees all about them.

The seventh I passed by one of these *Caravanferas*, and got that day ten Leagues, taking up my quarters in the little City of *Scharim*, in the middle of a Forrest of Date-trees. The five dayes following were the most troublesome of all my life. For the eighth of *February*, we got but five Leagues, through the most horrid way in the world. I cannot imagine how people made a shift to travel that way, before *Imanuli Chan* (of whom somewhat hath been said elsewhere, who was so cruelly put to death with all his children, by *Schach Sefi*) caus'd it to be repaired, with incredible expence, when at this day a man cannot pass, but in great danger of his life, by reason of the uneven and narrow wayes, between steepy mountains on the one side, and dreadful precipices on the other, where I very narrowly avoided a misfortune, which happens there very often. For my Horse's hoof, which I was leading by the bridle, being fill'd with snow, he stumbled upon me, forc'd me out of the way, so as that had I not caught hold of a wild Almond tree, which happened to be there, as it were by miracle, I had there ended both my travel and life, in the precipices. I lodg'd at night in a *Caravanfera*, where I had a house over my head; but that was all, for there was neither provender for my horses, nor any thing for my self and my servants to eat.

The ninth, having travell'd three Leagues, I came to a *Caravanfera*, where I found horse-meat. After dinner, I got five Leagues farther, to another *Caravanfera*; but meeting there with the *Armenian* Caravan, and the *Carmelite* Father, whom I spoke of before, I rode on, and travell'd two Leagues farther to a Village called *Berry*, and lodg'd not far from it, in one of the best *Caravanferas* that I met with in all my journey.

Berry.

The tenth I had very ill way along the mountain: I preferred this before another fairer way, which I might have taken by the Plains, but more about by four Leagues: Late at night I came to the City of *Laar*.

Laar.

The City is seated at the foot of a Mountain, in a spacious Plain, its houses are built of brick bak'd in the Sun; but the Citadel is very advantagiously seated on the mountain, and well fortified with a Rampire of free-stone. There is no Wine, but abundance of Dates in these parts. The Inhabitants drink only water, which being thick and troubled, must needs be very unwholsome, as is also the Air thereabouts; whence it comes, that no Inhabitant almost but is troubled with a kind of worm, which breeds between the flesh and the skin, about an ell long, and which is with much difficulty got out after the manner we shall have occasion to speak of hereafter; hitherto we had been more sensible of cold than heat; but in this place we began to think the heat of the Sun troublesome.

I stayed one whole day at *Laar*; but when I would have gone thence the twelfth, they would not suffer me to go out of the *Caravanfera*, till I had paid half a *Tumain*, which amounts to between forty and fifty shillings. I stood out, and alledged, that being no Merchant, they could not exact that duty from me: but the receiver of it very much pressing the payment, I sent my Passport, and the Letters of recommendation which the King had written on my behalf to the Sultan of *Gamron*, to the Governour of the Citadel, who immediately sent an Officer of the Garrison, with order for my departure, without any further trouble.

Laar de-  
scribed.

They say the City of *Laar* was built by *Pilae*, the son of *Siroes*, who had to his Successor *Gorgion Melech*, first King of *Laar*, and of whom the two and thirtieth Successor was *Ebrahim Chan*, who was ejected by *Scach Abas*, King of *Persia*, in the year 1602. It hath about four thousand houses, but neither gates nor walls, but only a Castle built there by  
the

the *Persians* since their conquest, upon a steepy rock, which commands the City, there being but one way to go up to it, and that so narrow, that two horses can hardly go abreast in it. The walls of it are cut out of the rock, and the Garrison consists of a hundred men, a sufficient number to make good that place, though there be in the Magazine Arms for three thousand men. The water they have within it is brackish; so that those of the Garrison are oblig'd to save that which falls from the Sky, whereof they have abundance at certain seasons of the year. I travell'd that day 14. Leagues to a *Caravanfera* near a little Village.

This great dayes journey did me no small prejudice, though I had felt some alteration in my health at my departure from *Schiras*. But the great journeys, especially the last I had made since; the water, which was troubled and corrupted, and the insupportable heats, brought me to such gripings in the belly, which were accompanied by an oppression of the stomach, and a very great looseness, that I began to be out of all heart. I caus'd enquiry to be made for a Litter, but there being none to be found, I was forc'd to get on the Horse which carried the sumpter, which I had so ordered, as that I had the convenience of resting my back. In that posture I went away the 19. and got that day to a great Village within 12. Leagues of the City of *Gamron*, and took up my lodging at the *Calenter's* of the place. In the evening came to the same lodging an *English man*, who was to succeed him who was the chief of the Merchants at *Ispahan*, accompanied by another Merchant of the same Nation, with whom I had some acquaintance during my abode at the King of *Persia's* Court. They were well provided with that kind of *Spanish Wine*, which is called *Seck*, though the true name of it be *Xeque*, from the Province whence it comes; which, together with two good meals whereto they had invited me, a little comforted my stomach, and recruited my spirits, at least as far as the posture of my health would permit. They gave me Letters of recommendation to an *English Merchant* of *Bandar Gamron*, whom they intreated to lodge me in the *Indian Company House* there, and to assist me all that lay in his power, in my Voyage to *Suratta*. They took horse after supper, but my indisposition kept me there till the 22. of *February*. That day I travelled six leagues to a *Caravanfera*, where I rested my self till the heat of the day was over, and then got three leagues further to another *Caravanfera*. I grew worse and worse, insomuch that my former indisposition being heightned into a burning Fever, I was reduc'd to the greatest extremity. But there was no staying in a place where I could not be reliev'd, so that I resolv'd to get to *Bandar*, whatever it cost me, out of the confidence I had that there, among so many Merchants of several Nations who trade thither, I should find some ease. Accordingly, as soon as I was got thither, the 23. of *February*, the *English, French* and *Dutch* came to give me a visit, and having had an account of my quality and design, as also of the nature of my indisposition, which was come to a bloody Flux, with a burning Fever, they took me so much into their care, that within four dayes the Fever left me, and I made a shift to visit the *Sulthan* or Governour of the City.

I had before sent him the Letters of recommendation which *Schach Sefi* had given me, directed to him, so that he no sooner heard of my recovery, but he sent to invite me to dinner, whither I went the 28. As soon as I was come into the room, he made me sit down by him, and to further my diversion and entertainment, he had intreated the *Dutch Merchants* to bear me company, by which means I had the opportunity to be acquainted with them. I shall say nothing of the particularities of this Entertainment, because there was nothing in it extraordinary, or more then we had seen at *Ispahan* and elsewhere.

The same day came to *Gamron* a Vessel from *Suratta*, of 600. Tun burthen. It belong'd to the Governour of *Suratta*, who had employ'd an *English Carpenter* in the building of it. There came in it a certain Queen, who was a Widow, Mother to the King of *Gelkende*, with her Daughter. The King fell in love with the Daughter, and would have married her, but the Mother would by no means consent to that incest, upon which he had forc'd her out of the Kingdom. The Daughter came along with her Mother, preferring the miseries of exile before the enjoyments of that incestuous marriage. It was reported, the Mothers design was to marry her Daughter to the King of *Persia*, or one of the chiefest Lords of the Kingdom.

*March 11.* The *Persians* celebrated their *Nawruz*, or first day of their year, with the ceremonies mentioned in the fourth book of the precedent Travels into *Persia*; the same day the *Sulthan* invited me again to dinner, with several *English* and *Dutch*. In the evening came to *Bandar* Mr. *Chapman*, whom I had met near *Laar*, who had accompany'd the new *English Captain* who was going to *Ispahan*. He brought along with him another *English Merchant*, with whom I had contracted a particular friendship, and whose conversation was so much the greater comfort to me, in that from my departure from *Ispahan*, I had

1638.

The Authors  
indisposi-  
tion.Leaves  
Laar.Comes to  
Gamron.Dines with  
the Sul-  
than.

MARCH;

1638.  
Mandelslo's distrust of the Dutch.  
Quem læsimus, Osimus.

not met with any friend that I could in the least be confident of. For though the *Dutch* entertain'd me very highly, and made great expressions of their kindness towards me; yet could I not well trust them, especially when I consider'd how little reason they had to have any affection for us, after the difference we had had with them at *Ispahan*.

March 13. I left the *Caravanfera*, to take up my Lodgings at the House belonging to the *English*, who incessantly importuned me to accept of it.

The 21. came to *Gamron* one Mr. Hall an *English* Merchant, with 253. Bails of Silk, valued at 200 l. a Bail, which he had received upon the account of the sum of 30000. *Lumains*, or 150000. Pistols, which the King of *Persia* was indebted to the *English*, for one moyety of the Customs of *Gamron*, whereof we shall speak more anon.

The same day died my Surgeon of a burning Fever, on the seventh day of his sickness. I must confess the loss of him was a very great affliction to me. For besides the great services he had done me, and those he might still do me in my sickness, which I had not quite shaken off; I might have expected many other good offices from him, upon the account of his being well skill'd in the Languages he had gotten by travelling into *Spain*, *Italy*, *Poland*, and the *East Indies*, where he had been twice. To alleviate this affliction, I went one day abroad a walking with one of the *English* Merchants, along the River side, where I saw one of those Trees which *Qu Curtius* makes mention of in the ninth Book of his History, in these terms, Alexander having crossed the River with Porus, went a good way into the Indies, where he saw Forrests of a very vast extent full of trees, which were very thick with boughs, and of an extraordinary height. Most of the Branches being as big as the boal of ordinary Trees bow'd down to the ground, and having taken earth, grew up straight again, so that a man would think they were not branches that started up, but other trees growing upon their own roots.

And indeed so it was, that the branches which came out of the boal of the tree, getting to the earth did there take root, and made another new tree, which at the height of fifteen or twenty foot cast forth other branches, and so became a Forrest, rather than a Tree, since that which I saw there was two hundred and fourteen paces about, and might well afford shade to two thousand persons. The *Portuguez* call it *Arbol de Rays*, and those who have written the natural History of those parts, *The Indian Fig-tree*, by reason of its fruit, which is about the bigness of a mans thumb, and full of grains within, as the common Fig, but its taste more unpleasantly luscious, and its colour red, and the leaves of the tree are much like those of the *Quince-tree*.

Arbol de Rays, or the Indian Fig tree.

The Sepulchre of a Benjan Saint.

At the foot of that tree, from which all the rest sprung, there is a little Chappel, built in honour of an *Indian* Saint, or *Benjan*, that lies buried there. The Guardian of the Sepulchre, who sat at the door, received us very kindly, and treated us with a collation of Almonds, Nuts, Dates, and very good fair Water. He suffered us to come into the Chappel, where we found the Saints Tomb all strew'd with Beans of several colours, and above it, under a Canopy of Satin, several Lamps, which the Religious man is obliged to keep in night and day. We shall have occasion to speak elsewhere of the Religion of the *Indians*, and particularly of that of the *Benjans*; and therefore we shall here only say, that it was not by chance that the Tomb was covered with Beans; but hence, that that Saint, and the Guardian of his Sepulchre, were of the Sect which is called the *Benjans*, who trade much to *Gamron*, and believe, with *Pythagoras*, that the souls of departed persons retreat into Beans: an opinion which is very common, not only among the Heathens of the *Indies*, but also all over *China*.

APRIL. Schach Sefi sends the Sulthan of Gamron an assurance of his favour.

April 1. there came to *Gamron* an Envoy from *Seach Sefi*, King of *Persia*, who brought the *Sultan* a present, which was a Garment, as an assurance to him of the favour of his Prince. The *Suliban* got on horseback, without any Arms about him, and having desir'd the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants to honour him with their company in his Cavalcade, and to afford him their presence at that Ceremony, I got in among them, and follow'd him about a quarter of a League out of the City, where the Envoy had caused a Tent to be pitch'd in the Field. Being got thither, they made us all sit down, but the *Suliban* stood, and with great submission receiv'd the Kings Letter, which he kiss'd and put to his forehead, as also the Robe, which the Envoy presented to him at the same time, with the Turbant and Girdle, which were of a very fine and thin silk, with Flowers of Gold. He immediately put on the Robe, and the other Presents, and having made a short prayer for the Kings prosperity, lifting up his eyes and hands to Heaven, and receiv'd the Complements of the whole company, he mounted again, and return'd to the City where he was received with the great Guns of both the Castles. At the entrance of his Palace he met the *Molla*, who made a speech to him that lasted a quarter of an hour, after which the *Suliban* treated the strangers, and the principal Officers of the Garrison very magnificently.

The

The City of *Gamron*, or *Bandar Gamron*, i.e. the Port of *Gamron*, lies at 27. deg. latitude. 1638. For though the *Persians* and *Arabians* in their Catalogues put it at 25. degr. yet is the observation which the *Hollanders* have made of it, and which we here follow, very just and exact; it being certain, that most of the Maps that have been yet made, and particularly that of *Persia*, are very defective. Their error proceeds hence, that they put the *Caspian* Sea too high, and consequently allow *Persia* a greater breadth from North to South, than it really hath. For they put the City of *Resht* at 41. degrees, whereas it is at 37. and so the breadth of all *Persia* can be but 10. degrees, taking it from *Gamron* to *Resht*, or 12. at most, if we should grant *Ormuz* to be at 25. degrees: so that *Boterus* is extremely mistaken, when he allows *Persia* the extent of 18. degrees.

*A description of the City of Gamron. The error of certain Geographers.*

It is not long since that this place was but a little Village, consisting of some few Huts, which the Fishermen had set up for their conveniencies, and it is since the reduction of *Ormuz* that the goodness of the Port hath rais'd it to a City of great Trade. The *Dutch* and *English* Ships, and the *Moor* Bottoms which come there daily, by reason of the convenience of the Road, and the Merchants of *Ispahan*, *Schiras*, and *Laar*, who bring their stufes thither, as Velvet, Taffata, raw-Silk, &c. and exchange them for others, will in time make this City one of the most considerable of all the East. It is seated upon the *Persian* Gulf, between two good Castles, which defend it against the descent of Pirates, and keep the entrance of the Haven, where there is a square Redoubt, with four pieces of Canon upon it. The Fortifications of the Castle are antick, with round Bastions, but very well furnished with great Guns. The Haven is so commodious, that Ships may anchor very safely at five or six fathom water. The houses at *Gamron* are built of a certain stone, which they make of stiff Clay, Sand, shredded-Straw and Horse-dung mixt together, whereof having set a Layer, they cover it with a Layer of Straw or Fagots, and then another Layer of Clay and Straw, and so alternately, till they have brought it six or seven foot high: then they set fire to it, and so bake the Stone; and to fasten and cement them together, they make a composition of the same Paste with Salt-water, and some Lime, and by that means make a kind of Mortar, which is almost as hard as the Stone it self.

*The Situation of Gamron. Its Houses.*

The best Houses are those of the *Sulthan*, or Governour of the City, and the Lodgings, or Ware-houses of the *Dutch* and *English*, which lie so near the Sea, that at High-water the Tide comes up to the walls of them, which is a great convenience for the loading and unloading of their Merchandizes. The lower rooms serve for Kitchens and Ware-houses, and the upper for Lodgings, which are the more commodious in this respect, that being high, they are the more fit to receive the wind of all sides, so in some measure to moderate the excessive heat of the Sun. The meaner sort of people have no other covering over them, then what they make with the branches and leaves of Date-trees, which they call *Adap*, and are the only trees that find them fruit, and timber for building. The Streets are narrow, irregular, and not kept clean. The Air is very unwholsom thereabouts, by reason of the excessive heat, as also of the continual change of the Winds which reign there, and which in the space of twenty four hours go through all the points of the Compass. For in the morning they have an East-wind, which is extremely cold; about noon a South-wind, which brings insupportable heats along with it; in the evening a West-wind, which coming fromwards *Arabia*, brings sufficient heats with it; and at midnight a North-wind, which comes out of the Mountains of the Country, and is cold enough. It rains so seldom, that it was observed in the year 1632. that with the rising of the Wind, there falling a great shower, after a continual drought of three years, the Inhabitants kept a day of publick thanksgiving for it. Whence it comes that in the Country all about this City, there is not so much as a Grass to be seen, unless it be in some Gardens, where they are forc'd, twice or thrice every day, to water the Pot-herbs and Pulse which they sow in them, and among the rest, particularly, Garlick, Onions, Chibols, Radishes and Cucumbers.

*Its Streets. The Air.*

*A great drought.*

But the Isle of *Kismisch*, which is but three Leagues distant from *Gamron*, and which is 15. Leagues in length, and three in breadth, supplies the City with all sorts of Fruits. For in the moneth of *June*, and during the greatest heats of Summer, they have Grapes, Damsons, Peaches, Mangas, Quinces, Oranges, Lemons, and Pomegranates red and white. In *October* they have Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, Radishes, Onions, Turneps, Almonds, Pistachoes, Apples, Pears, and several other Fruits, which are very excellent, and in such abundance, that they are cheaper there then in any other place of *Persia*. The Inhabitants live for the most part upon Fruits, and Pulse, and the Fish which they take in the neighbouring Sea, and find more wholsom and delicious then Fleth, which meeting with but little good sustenance, by reason of the extraordinary heats, must thereabouts be of ill nourishment, and in a manner without any taste. Among other sorts of Fish, they take there abundance of Pilchards and Smelts, as also Oysters and Crabs. They have good store of Cattle,

*The Isle of Kismisch.*

1638. Cattle, as Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Goats, and several other Creatures; but they have such abundance of Goats, that they are sold for six or eight pence a piece. There are also a sort of Rams that have four horns, but no wild Fowl at all. Their ordinary drink is only Water, unless it be that some have a little *Aqua vite*, made of Dates or Rice. *Schiras* Wine, which is brought thither only in Bottles, is very scarce and very dear there; nay the fair Water, which they get two Leagues from the City, is sold at such a rate, that what I and my servants spent, cost me about two pence every day.

Persons of quality, and Merchants, are clad after the *Persian* mode, but all the rest go naked, and cover only the privy parts. The Women wear about their arms and legs a great many Rings, or Plates of Silver, Brass, or Iron, according to their conditions and abilities. They fasten to their hair a Bodkin, or a long flat piece of Silver gilt, or Brass, which hangs down over the middle of their foreheads to the end of the nose, and they thrust through the left nostril a Gold Ring, having in the middle a Turquoise, a Granat, or haply a little Gold Knob or Button enamell'd, or simple, and the Pendants they wear in their ears are so heavy, that if those were not well fastened to their heads, they would go near to force them thence.

The great heats begin to abate in *October*, and so from that time till the beginning of *May* is the season of greatest trading. Then it is that all Nations come thither with their Commodities, as *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Indians*, *Banians*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, *Tartars*, *English* and *Dutch*. These last come thither by Sea, but all the others by Land, with the *Caravans*, which they call *Cassilas*, and which go at a certain day from *Aleppo*, *Bagdat*, *Ispahan*, *Sciras*, *Labor*, *Herat* and *Bassara*; coming all together in Troops, and having a Convoy of certain *Janizaries*, for the Security of their travel, against the incursions of the *Arabians*.

The Traffick of the English and Dutch there.

The *Hollanders* and the *English* bring thither ready money, and some certain Commodities, which they either take up in *Europe*, or go to the *Indies* for, and sell them there to very good profit. The *Dutch* are the better settled there of the two, and do furnish in a manner all *Persia*, with Pepper, Nutmegs, Cloves, and other Spicery, though they also expend very much ready money in their trading, as we said before, and especially *Spanish Ryals* and *Rixdollars*, which the *Persians* prefer before all other money, because they melt them, and make them into their own Coins with great advantage.

The *English* do either sell or truck their *English* Cloaths, Tin, Steel, Indico, Silk Stuffs, and Cottons out of the *Indies*; for though there are excellent good ones made in *Persia*, yet are those of the *Indies* more esteemed, because they are finer and closer woven. They buy of the *Persians* Satins purfled with Gold or Silver, Silk-Stuffs, and the Cottons of the Country, *Persian* Tapitry, which those of the Country call *Kalichey*, and the *Portuguez*, *Alcatifer*, raw Silk, Cotton, Rhubarb, Saffron, and Rose-water. This Water is made at *Schiras*, and in the Province of *Kerman*, either by infusion, and then they call it *Gul-ab*, whence no doubt the word *Julip* comes, or by extraction in a Still, and then they call it *Areka-gul*, that is to say, the sweat of Roses. They esteem the former incomparably beyond the other, and it is one of the best Commodities that a man can carry to the *Indies*, where they sprinkle it about their Chambers, and use it in the preparations of perfumes. There is made also in those parts great quantities of Linnen-cloth; but the Weavers, instead of doing their work in Looms at their houses as they do elsewhere, fasten the woof of the cloth to some Tree, without the City, and having made a pit in the ground, they put their feet into it, so that when they come home at night, it is no great trouble for them to bring their work and things belonging thereto along with them, in as much as they consist only of certain Canes fastened to the woof.

Their money.

They have a certain Copper Coin, which they call *Besorg*, whereof six make a *Peys*, and ten *Peys* make a *Chay*, which is worth about five pence *English*. Two *Chays* make a *Mamondy*, two whereof make an *Abas*, and three *Abas's* make a *French* Crown. A hundred *Mamoudis* make a *Tuzmain*, which is worth five Pistols. As to their weights, a *Man* weighs six pounds, a *Mancha* twelve, and a *Mansurats* thirty.

Weights.

Pearls.

The manner of fishing for them.

There is also a great commerce of Pearls, which are fished for near the Isle of *Babram*, six Leagues from *Gamron*. They put about the Fishermen's head a Cap or Case of boyled Leather, so close, as that it hath no hole but by a pipe which comes up above the water. In that posture he is let down to the bottom, where he gets together all the Shells he can meet withall, and having fill'd a bag therewith which hangs about his neck, upon a sign made to his Camerades, who wait on him in a Boat, he is drawn up.

The King of Persia's Officers at Gamron.

The Governour of the City hath the quality of *Sulthan*, and hath under him, not a *Calenter*, but a *Visir* or Secretary, and a *Conteval*, who is, as it were, the Captain of his Guard.

The



The King of *Persia* hath there also a *Sabandar*, or Receiver, who does not only receive the duties at the coming in, and going out of Commodities, but sets such an Imposition upon them as he thinks fit, and strictly searches the Ships, to see what Merchandises are brought in. The *Hollanders* pay no duties, according to a priviledge they obtain'd of *Scach-Abus*, and whereof they endeavour all they can to preserve the enjoyment by the Presents they ever and anon make to the Officers of the Court of *Persia*: But the *English* are so far from paying any thing, that on the contrary they enjoy many other priviledges and exemptions, and should by right receive one half of the Customs, upon what account we shall declare anon, but they have hardly the tenth part allowed them, nay, are obliged to take that little which they have in Commodities. And this the *Persians* do with so much confidence, and so openly, that they stick not to affirm, when they are surpriz'd in their frauds, that it is not ill done of them to endeavour the advantage of their own Prince, though ever so much to the prejudice of Strangers, especially if they be Christians. Among others, the *English* have this further priviledge, to send away yearly out of *Persia* twelve Horses, without paying any thing, whereas the *Dutch* are obliged to pay for the Licence of Transportation fifty Crowns at least for every Horse, as the *English* are also, if they send away above twelve. The *Persians*, who have a great advantage over the *Indians* in this respect, that they are better hors'd then the others, are very unwilling that Horses should be sent over to the *Indians*, who are their enemies, among whom they are so highly esteem'd, that an ordinary Horse there will bring four hundred Crowns.

The priviledges of the English at Gamron.

Persian Horses much esteem'd among the Indians.

The Inhabitants of *Gamron* are for the most part *Persians*, *Arabians*, or *Indians*, but all in a manner speak the *Portuguez* Language, which they learnt by the Commerce they have had with that Nation, who were a long time possessors of the City of *Ormus*. But now, that is the only Nation which is not permitted to come to *Gamron*, though all others are suffered to trade there. *Christians* and *Jews* are welcome thither, as also *Mahumetans* and *Pagans*; but ever since the reduction of *Ormus*, the *Portuguez*, and the King of *Spain's* Subjects, are not admitted thither; yet these last are suffered to come to a little Island within three Leagues of it, and there to traffick, where the King of *Persia* hath a *Sulthan*, who commands the Castle, receives the Duties at coming in and going out, and hinders the *Portuguez* from approaching with their great Vessels: so that these Nations being, as it were, in open Hostility, the *Portuguez* come sometimes with their Frigots, and take Prizes even in sight of *Gamron*, and often Land parties in the neighbouring Islands.

The City of *Ormus* is seated in an Island, which is distant from the Continent two Leagues, and is thought to be about six about. It is as barren as the Country about *Gamron*, for it is a continued Rock, which produces nothing but Salt; insomuch that it doth not yield even fresh Water. And yet its Haven is so good, and its situation so advantageous, that the City became so eminent for Commerce, that not only it had its particular Kings, but the *Arabians* said of it by way of Proverb, that if the Universe were but a Ring, the City of *Ormus* was the Diamond that should be set in it. *Teixera* says, that *Scach Mahomet*, the son of an *Arabian* King, who liv'd in the tenth Age, having reduc'd under his Jurisdiction the Provinces that are seated upon the *Persian* Gulf, as far as *Besra*, pass'd over into the Island, where he laid the first foundations of the City of *Ormus*. *Schabedin Mahomet*, eleventh King of *Ormus*, of the posterity of *Mahomet*, dyed in the year 1228. And he who liv'd when the *Portuguez* became Masters of it, was called *Seyfadin*, and paid Tribute to the King of *Persia*. *D. Alfonso d' Albuquerque* made a Conquest of it in the year 1605. for *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*; of which attempt, the manner and success of it, take the following Account.

The City of Ormus described.

*Tristan de Cugna*, who had taken the Island of *Zocotora*, whereof we shall have occasion to speak hereafter, left certain Vessels under the command of *Albuquerque*, with Orders to visit the Coasts of *Arabia*, while he attempted some new Conquest in the *Indies*; he being a person of great resolution, thought his only course, to settle himself there, was to set upon the Kingdom of *Ormus*, which he did with 470. Souldiers, whom he had aboard his Fleet. *Emanuel Osorio*, Bishop of *Selvas* in *Portugal*, says, that *Albuquerque* made his advantage of the *Mahumetan* Kings weakness, who then reigned. For understanding that the principal Minister of State, whose name was *Cojeatar*, a Forreigner, a Native of *Bengala*, and an Eunuch, had exasperated the people against him, by converting the publick Revenue of the Kingdom to his own profit and advantage, having left his Sovereign only the bare Title of King, he thought fit to strike in at that conjuncture of Affairs, and to that end left *Zocotora* upon the 20. of *August*, and having in a very few dayes taken in the Cities of *Calajate*, *Curiate*, *Muscate*, *Soar*, and *Orfassam*, he took his march directly to the principal City, to which he came the 25. of *September*. The first thing he did, was to defeat a very strong Fleet, which the *Moors* had within the Haven, and by that means

Taken by the Portuguese.

1638. oblig'd the King to come to a capitulation, by which the King of *Ormus* promised to take the Oath of Allegiance and Fidelity to the King of *Portugal*; to pay him every year fifteen thousand Ducats as a Tribute, in Gold, Silver or Pearls, and five thousand towards the charges of the present War; and to permit *Albuquerque* to build a Cittadel where he should think most convenient for the preservation of the City.

The *Portuguez* began the said Cittadel on the 25. of *October* following, and gave it the name of *Our Blessed Lady of Victory*. It is true, this establishment was not so absolute at the beginning, but that the *Moors* made some attempts to rid themselves of these new Guests: but the *Portuguez* made a shift to maintain what they had gotten, and to make the place they were in a Magazine of Armes for the *Indies*; taking occasion by that means to engross all the Commerce to themselves, and obliging all the *Persians* and *Arabians* to buy of them all those Commodities which they stood in need of from the *Indians*. Nay, this was so rigorously observed, that the Governour of *Ormus* prohibited the Inhabitants to sell any of their Commodities, till such time as he had sold his own. They permitted *Seyfadin* to live in the Island, but at a certain place far enough from the Cittadel, so not to give the *Portuguez* any occasion of jealousy. *Scach Abas*, King of *Persia*, being no longer able to endure the insolence of the *Portuguez*, and very much incens'd at their receiving into Protection the Gentlemen of the House of the *Gabrieli*, whom we have spoken of elsewhere, bethought himself of some course to get these Forreigners out of those parts. To effect this, he address'd himself to the *English*, who traded at *Ormus*; and by the advantageous proffers that he made, oblig'd them to promise him all the assistance they could to carry on the siege of that City, which was assaulted and taken by the *English*, in the year 1622. They put both the City and Cittadel into the hands of the King of *Persia*, who found in it six hundred great Guns, some Iron, some Brasses, which *Scach Abas* caused to be transported to *Laar* and *Ispahan*, all but fourscore Pieces, which he left in the Cittadel; He caused the walls of the City to be demolish'd, and the Materials thereof to be translated to *Gamron*, which began even at that time to raise it self upon the ruines of its Neighbours. The King of *Persia*, desirous to reward the services which the *English* had done him upon that occasion, did not only grant them an absolute exemption from all Impositions, but he also bestow'd on them one moyety of those Duties which other Merchants were to pay there; but, as we said before, the *English* come very far short of receiving what is due to them.

I found in the Port of *Gamron* an *English* Ship called the *Swan*, of 300. Tun, carrying 24. Guns. Master *Honywood*, Agent for the Affairs of *England*, recommended me to the Captain of it, and commanded him to carry me over to the *Indies*, and to defray all my charges till I came to *Suratta*. I had brought eight Horses with me, making account to sell them with very great advantage in the *Indies*; but the Ship was so full of Goods, that it was with much ado that I could get in only two of them: So that I was forc'd to put off the other six, to very great loss, as being able to get but thirty pound for those which had cost me sixty pound at *Ispahan*, and which I should have sold at above one hundred and fifty pound at *Suratta*.

APRIL. I embark'd the sixth of *April*, with Mr. *Manley* and Mr. *Hall*, *English* Merchants, whom Mandelsto  
embarks for  
Suratta: the President of the *English* at *Suratta* had ordered to come from *Ispahan*, about some business concerning the Company, and went aboard accompanied by most of the Strangers that were at *Gamron*, as also many *Indian* Merchants, with whom I had upon some occasions made acquaintance. The Captain ordered four Pieces to be fired at our coming aboard, and received us with much civility, inviting us, it being then about noon, to dine with him.

We went from *Gamron* to *Suratta* in nineteen dayes, during which the Captain treated me very magnificently, and did me the honour to resign his own bed to me, and to give me precedence upon all occasions. He was well furnished with Fowl, Mutton, and other fresh Meat, but above all things, with excellent good Sack, *English* Beer, *French* Wines, *Arak*, and other refreshments; which prov'd so well for me, that by the help of these good Cordials, and the benefit I had by the drinking of *Ptizanne*, which I caused to be made with Cinnamon and rinds of Pomegranats, at my arrival at *Suratta*, I found my health perfectly recover'd, though I must also acknowledge, as much contributing thereto, my using of *Thé*, to which I had so accustomed my self, that I ordinarily took it twice or thrice a day.

The contrary wind prevented our departure the day that we came aboard, so that we lay at Anchor all the night following; and the next day, being the seventh, we set sail, taking our course towards the Isle of *Ormus*: but towards night there rose so great a tempest, together with a West-wind, that to avoid running upon the shore, we were forced to cast Anchor in sight of the Isle.

Sunday, being the eighth, we lavec'd it with a West-wind, endeavouring to pass between the Isles of *Ormuz* and *Kismich*, which are four Leagues distant one from the other. 1638.  
About two in the afternoon, we cast over-board the body of a young Sea-man, who died of the Bloody-flux two dayes before. This Ceremony, which I had not seen before, put me into so much the greater fright, in that being still troubled with the same disease, I imagined they would shortly do as much by me.

The night following we pass'd in sight of the two Islands we spoke of last, to wit, *Ormuz* and *Kismich*; and the next day, being the ninth, we discovered the Continent of *Arabia*, taking our course along the Coast, which is thereabouts, without any danger.

Tuesday 10. A calm staid us at the same place, and the 11. we put off from the Coasts of *Arabia*, to make towards those of *Persia*, which we still kept in sight of till Thursday night, *April* 12. Then a good West-north-west wind rising, we took our course towards the East-south-east, at 25. degrees, 50. minutes elevation.

Friday morning, we could perceive no Land, but had sight of a Pirate, who by his making ever and anon more or less sail, discover'd he had somewhat to say to us. One while he came somewhat near us; another, he kept at a great distance; but at last, perceiving we made it our business to get the wind of him, he made towards the Isle of *Zocotora*.

This Island is seated at 21. degrees 40. minutes, at the entrance of the Red-sea, having towards the South-west, and North-east, the Country of *Melinda* or *Æthiopia*, and towards the South *Arabia*, from which it is distant about sixteen Leagues. It is about 25. Leagues in length, but not above ten in breadth, having on all sides very good riding for Ships, and safe Harbours. It is indifferently well peopled, and is subject to the King of *Arabia*, under whom it is governed by a *Sulthan*. *The situation and description of the Island of Zocotora.*

The Inhabitants are of low stature, and rather lean then fat, of a dusky complexion, and very laborious. Their only sustenance is Fish and Fruits, living very temperately. They treat their Wives, whom they buy in *Arabia*, with much civility, and have a certain respect for them; but will not permit Strangers to see them. They are very crafty in their trading, and delight much in it, though they have but few things to sell. And whereas they adulterate almost all their Commodities, they are accordingly distrustful of those which are brought to them. *Its Inhabitants.*

They reduce Dates into a paste, and it serves them instead of Bread. The Island affords very few Oranges, and those not very good, Tobacco, and Citruls. There are also some Cocos-trees, but not many, the fruit not coming to ripeness there, by reason the ground is very full of stones.

Their main wealth consists in Aloes, the juyce whereof they gather in bladders, or Goatskins; and dry it in the Sun. They have also the gummy juyce called Dragons-bloud, and Civet, which may be bought there at about three or four Crowns an Ounce: but those who are not very well skill'd in that Drug are many times cheated; for the Inhabitants of the Island put Grease and other nasty stuff into it. They keep abundance of Civet-cats about their houses, but they have very little tame Fowl; wild none at all. They have Camels, Asses, Oxen, Cows, Sheep and Goats, whose hair about the thighs is curl'd much after the manner that Satyrs are painted. The Town where the *Sulthan* hath his residence is called *Tamary*, and hath in it a Fort, which is distant from the Sea about a Canon-shot, with four Guns. *The Aloes of Zocotora.*

Their Arms are a kind of broad Swords, whereof the hilt is very large, but without any guard. In their Girdles they wear also Poniards, the blades whereof are above three fingers broad towards the handle, but very sharp towards the point. They are so curious, as to have something of Silver or Copper about the handles, but their Fire-arms are not well kept, and yet they are very expert at the handling of them, as they are also in manning those little Bucklers, wherewith they defend themselves in fight. *Their Arms.*

Ships may take in fresh water there without any trouble, for the waters which come from the Mountains fall into the Sea like a River. They have no other Boats then such as are absolutely flat-bottom'd, which they make use of in their fishing, which is very good thereabouts. They have this common with the *Arabians* and other *Mahometans*, that they eat no Swines flesh; but even in *Tamary* it self there is no *Mosquey*, nor any other place for them to meet at to do their Devotions. These they do morning and evening, at the rising and setting of the Sun, to which they make very low reverences, and mutter certain words between their teeth; this they do also three or four times a day besides.

The 14. of *April*, we were at 23. degrees, 24. minutes.

The 15. at 22. degrees, 40. minutes.

The 16. at 22. degrees, 40. min.

1638.

The 17. at 21. degrees, 55. minutes. This day the Captain of our Ship fell sick of a burning Feaver.

The 18. at 21. degrees, 8. minutes.

The 19. at 20. deg. 42. min.

The 20. at 20. deg. 50. min.

The 22. at 29. deg. 50. min.

The 23. at 20. degrees, 18. minutes latitude.

Comes to  
Surat.

The 25. of *April*, we came before the City of *Surat*, and cast Anchor two Leagues from Land, by reason it being the Captains intention not to stay there above three or four dayes, he would be sure of the convenience of parting thence when he pleas'd. Besides, there is no Road along that Coast where Ships can lye with any safety, from *May* to *September*, by reason of the continual Tempests and furious winds which reign there during that time; whereas on the Eastern Coast of the *Indies*, in the Gulf of *Bengala*, it is fair and calm at that time.

The year  
hath there  
but three  
Seasons.

The year is divided into three very different seasons; for in the moneths of *February*, *March*, *April* and *May*, it is extremely hot weather; in *June*, *July*, *August* and *September*, there is nothing but continual Rains, with Thunder and Lightning; and the moneths of *October*, *November*, *December* and *January*, are cold, at least as far as is consistent with the Climate.

*April* 26. The Captain sent one to the President of the *English* at *Surat*, to give him notice of his Arrival. The President sent him back the 28. accompanied by two young Merchants of the same Nation, who brought Orders to the Captain, and in the Presidents name intreated me to come with the soonest to *Surat*, where he should make good in effect those proffers which they were then come to make to me of his service. Having acknowledged the Captain's civility by a small Present, and leaving him very sick, and much troubled at our separation, after the friendship we had contracted together, I left the Ship the 29. of *April*.

Within a League of the Road we entred into the River upon which *Surat* is seated, and which hath on both sides a very fertile soil, and many fair Gardens, with pleasant Country-houses, which being all white, a colour it seems the *Indians* are much in love with, afford a noble prospect amidst the greenness whereby they are encompassed. But this River, which is the *Tapte*, called by others *Tynde*, is so shallow at the mouth of it, that Barks of 70. or 80. Tun can hardly come into it. We came ashore near the *Sulthan's* Palace, and went immediately to the Custom-house to have our things search'd by the Officers there: which is done with such exactness in this place, that they think it not enough to open Chests and Portmantles, but examine peoples clothes and pockets. The *Sulthan* or Governour, nay the Customers themselves, oblige Merchants and Passengers to part with, at the price they shall think fit to put upon them, those Goods and Commodities which they had brought for their own private use. Accordingly the *Sulthan* himself, who came to the Custom-house as soon as we were got thither, having found among my things a bracelet of yellow Amber, and a Diamond, would needs buy them both of me: whereto when I made him answer, that I was no Merchant, and that I valued those things, only for their sakes who had bestow'd them on me, he was pleas'd to return me the Diamond, but detain'd the Bracelet, telling me I should have it again when I honour'd him with a Visit.

While we were in this contestation, came to the place an *Indian* Coach, drawn by two white Oxen, which the *English* President had sent to bring me to their House; so that leaving the *Sulthan* with the Bracelet, I went into it. At the entrance of the House I met the President, with his second, that is to say, he who commands under him, and in his absence, whose name was Mr. *Fremling*, who received me with extraordinary kindness, and very civilly answer'd the Complement I made them, upon the freedom I took to make my advantage thereof. The President, who spoke *Dutch* very well, told me I was very welcome; that in the Country where we then were, all Christians were oblig'd to assist one another, and that he was the more particularly oblig'd thereto as to what concern'd me, in respect of the affection I would have express'd towards some of his Nation at *Ispahan*. He thereupon brought me to his Chamber, where there was a Collation ready. It consisted of Fruits and Preserves, according to the custom of the Country. As soon as we were set, he asked me what my design was, and understanding that I intended to return for *Germany* within twelve moneths, he told me I was come too late to get away that year, by reason no more Ships would come that way, but that if I would stay with him five or six moneths, till there were a convenience of passage, he would take it kindly: that during that time, he would contribute all he could to my divertisement: that



**Map of the EAST INDIES**  
*D. CHRISTOPH. BARTHURST. MD.*  
 Hanc INDARUM ORIENTALIUM Tabulam DDD. J. B.

that he would find out a means how I might see the most eminent places in the Country; 1638.  
 nay, that he would send some of his own Nation along with me, who should find me those accommodations I could not otherwise hope for. This obliging discourse soon prevail'd with me to accept of these proffers, so that he shew'd me all the house, that I might make choice of a convenient Lodging, which I took near his Seconds Chamber. In the evening, some Merchants and others, belonging to the President, came and brought me from my Chamber to supper into a great Hall, where was the Minister with about a dozen Merchants, who kept me company, but the President and his Second suppd not, as being accustom'd to that manner of life, out of a fear of overcharging their Stomachs, digestion being slowly performed, by reason of the great heats which are as troublesome there in the night time as in the day. After Supper the Minister carried me into a great open Gallery, where I found the President and his Second taking the coolness of the Sea-Air. This was the place of our ordinary rendezvous, where we met every night; to wit, the President, his Second, the principal Merchant, the Minister and my self; but the other Merchants came not but when they were invited by the President. At dinner he kept a great Table, of about fifteen or sixteen dishes of Meat, besides the Desert.

The respect and deference which the other Merchants have for the President was very remarkable, as also the order which was there observed in all things, especially at Divine Service, which was said twice a day, in the morning at six, and at eight at night, and on Sundayes thrice. No person in the house but had his particular Function, and their certain hours assign'd them as well for work as recreation. Our divertisement was thus ordered. On Fridayes after Prayers, there was a particular Assembly, at which met with us three other Merchants, who were of kin to the President, and had left as well as he their Wives in England, which day being that of their departure from England, they had appointed it for to make a commemoration thereof, and drink their Wives healths. Some made their advantage of this meeting to get more then they could well carry away, though every man was at liberty to drink what he pleas'd, and to mix the Sack as he thought fit, or to drink *Palepantz*, which is a kind of drink consisting of *Aqua vite*, Rose-water, juice of Citrons and Sugar.

*The respect the English at Surat have for their President. Their divertisements*

At our ordinary meetings every day, we took only *Thé*, which is commonly used all over the Indies, not only among those of the Country, but also among the Dutch and English, who take it as a Drug that cleanses the Stomach, and digests the superfluous humours, by a temperate heat particular thereto. The Persians instead of *Thé* drink their *Kahwa*, which cools and abates the natural heat which *Thé* preserves.

The English have a fair Garden without the City, whither we constantly went on Sundayes after Sermon, and sometimes also on other dayes of the week, where our Exercise was shooting at Butts, at which I made a shift to get a hundred *Mamoudis* ( or five pound sterling ) every week. After these divertisements, we had a Collation of Fruit and Preserves, and bath'd our selves in a Tanke or Cistern which had five foot water, where some Dutch Gentlewomen serv'd and entertain'd us with much civility. What troubled me most was, that my little acquaintance with the English Tongue made me incapable of Conversation, unless it were with the President, who spoke Dutch.

But before I relate what happened to me in this Voyage, and what I saw during my stay at *Surat*, it will not be amiss, to give here a general, but short description, of the *Mogul's* Country, and the Provinces whereof it consists; so to make the reader way for what we shall have to say of it hereafter.

The Country properly called *India*, which the Persians and Arabians name *Indosthan*, reaches, on the West-side, from the River *Indus* or *Sindo*, and the Kingdom of the same name ( the Inhabitants whereof are called *Abint*, or from the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Mæcon*, which some call *Gelsche Macquerona*, whereof the Inhabitants are *Baloches*, or *Baluches* ) as far as *Ganges*. The Ancients called this Province *Carmania*, and it hath a Port or Haven called *Guader*, at 25. degrees on this side the line. The Persians and Arabians call the Kingdom of *Sindo* *Diul*. The same Persians, and the *Indosthans* call the River *Indus*, *Pangab*, that is to say, five waters, because so many Rivers come into it before it falls into the Sea under that famous name. The first is that of *Bugal*, or *Begal*, which rises near *Kabul*. The second is called *Chanab*, and rises in the Province of *Quesmir* or *Cassmier*, fifteen dayes journey above *Labor*, towards the North. The third is that of *Ravy*, or *Ravee*, which runs by *Labor*, and rises not far from it. The two others, *viz.* *Via* and *Osuid* or *Sind*, come from a great distance, and meet near *Bakar*, which lies at an equal distance between *Labor* and the Sea. Whence it is to be infer'd, that those Geographers are in an error, who put this River at 24. degrees on this side the Line, and confound it with that which runs by *Diul*. Some say the great *Mogul's* Kingdom is of so  
vast

*A general description of Indosthan.*

1638. vast an extent, that a *Caravan* would have much ado to travel through it in two years: but these are Fables. Its certain Frontiers, according to the description of *Edward Terrin*, are on the East-side, the Kingdom of *Mavy*; on the West, part of *Persia* and the South-Sea; on the North, Mount *Caucasus* and great *Tartaria*; and on the South, the Kingdom of *Decan* and the Gulf of *Bengala*, containing thirty and seven great Provinces, which were heretofore so many Kingdoms: to wit,
- Candabar*, which takes its name from, or derives it to the chief City, is the most Western Province of all the *Indies*, and lies upon the Territories of the King of *Persia*, who hath several times been Master of it. It is indeed for this Province, that the Kings of *Persia* are in continual war almost with the great *Mogul*; as they are in *Turkey* side for *Badgat* and *Ervan*.
- The Province of *Kabul*, which is no doubt the richest of all the Kingdom, derives its name also from the Capital City, and hath for Frontier on the North-side great *Tartary*. In this Province rises the River *Nibal*, which changes its name into that of *Begal*, and falls into the *Indus*, as we said before. It is conceived by some, that this is the *Coa*, or the *Suastus* of *Ptolomy*.
- The Province of *Multan* owes its name also to the principal City, and is seated along the River *Indus*, having on the West-side the Kingdom of *Persia*, and the Province of *Candabar*.
- The Province of *Haca-chan*, or *Hangi-chan*, lies towards the East, and hath on the West the River *Indus*. It is called also the Kingdom of *Balochy*, as we shall express elsewhere; but it hath no considerable City.
- Bachar*, or *Buckar*, the chief City whereof is called *Bacherbukon*, lies also along the River *Indus*, which divides it in the middle, and makes it one of the most fertile Provinces in the Kingdom. It hath on the South-south-west-side, the Province of *Tatta*, and towards the West, the people called the *Bolaches*, a cruel and warlike Nation.
- The Province of *Tatta*, which hath also its name from the chief City, is divided into several Isles by the River *Indus*. This Province hath the reputation of having the most industrious Tradesmen of all the Kingdom.
- Soret* is a small Province, but very well peopled. Its chief City is *Jangar*; and it reaches Eastward to the Province of *Guzarata*, and Westward to the Sea.
- The Province of *Ifelmere* hath but one City in it of the same name, and hath for Frontiers Westward, the Provinces of *Soret*, *Bachar*, and *Tatta*.
- That of *Attach*, and its capital City, from which it is so called, are seated upon the River *Nibal*, which coming from the West, falls into the *Indus*, which divides it from the Province of *Haca-chan*.
- The Province of *Pang-ab* is one of the greatest, most fertile, and most considerable of all the Kingdom. The five Rivers we spoke of, which pass through it, give it that name. *Labor* is the chief City thereof.
- The Province of *Chifmer*, or *Quexmer*, the chief City whereof is called *Syranakar*, is seated upon the River *Bezat*, or *Badt*, which makes a great number of Isles in this Province, and after a great compass falls into the *Ganges*. It touches some part of the Province of *Kabul*, and is cold enough by reason of its Mountains, though it may be affirm'd, that in comparison of the Kingdom of *Tliebet*, which is as it were its Frontiers on the East-side, it is very temperate. About eight *Cos* (which make four Leagues) from the chief City, in the midst of a Lake which is three miles about, there is a little Isle, where the *Mogul* hath built a very fair House, for the convenience of hunting the wild Goose. All along the River which runs through the middle of this Lake, there is a kind of tree, whose leaves are like that of a Chestnut, but the wood, which is somewhat of a brownish colour, is checquer'd with small streaks of several colours, which makes it much sought after by persons of Quality.
- The Province of *Chifmer* hath on the East-side that of *Bankisch*, the chief City whereof is *Beibar*, or *Beitbus*.
- The Province of *Jengapar*, or *Jemipar*, so called from its chief City, lies between the Cities of *Labor* and *Agra*.
- The Province of *Jenba*, or *Jamba*, which hath also its name from the Metropolis thereof, hath on the West-side, the Province of *Pang-ab*, and is very hilly all over.
- The Province of *Delly*, and its chief City of the same name, lies between *Jenba* and *Agra*, towards the source of the River *Gemini*, by some called *Semana*, which passing by the City of *Agra*, falls into the *Ganges*. The chief City of *Delly* is very ancient, and was sometime the Metropolis of all *Indosthan*, as may be seen by the ruins of its palace, and other magnificent Structures.

The Province of *Bando*, and its Metropolis of the same name, hath on the West-side, the City of *Agra*. 1638. 16. Bando.

The Province of *Malway*, or *Malwa*, is very fertile, its chief City *Ratipore*, though *Thomas Row*, an *English Gentleman*, calls it *Ugen*. The River *Cepra*, upon which is seated the City of *Calceda*, the ordinary residence of the ancient Kings of *Mandua*, passes within half a League of it, and disembogues it self into the Sea, by the Gulf of *Cambaya*. 17. Malway

The Province of *Chitor* was heretofore a very considerable Kingdom, but the Metropolis from which it derives its name, and whereof the walls were heretofore six Leagues about, is now so ruin'd, that there is to be seen but the Relicks of what it hath been, with the sad remainders of its sumptuous Mosques, and magnificent Palaces. The great *Mogul*, *Achabar*, great Grand-father of *Schach Chiram*, reduc'd it to that condition, and conquer'd it from one of the Successours of *Rana*, who forc'd to make his escape came to a capitulation with him, and acknowledg'd the Sovereignty of the *Mogul*, in the year 1614. This Province hath on the East-side that of *Candisch*, and on the South, that of *Gufuratta*. 18. Chitor.

The Province of *Gufuratta*, which the *Portuguez* call the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, upon the account of its chief City, where they have their main trading, is without all question the noblest and most powerful of all the *Mogul's* Country. Its Metropolis seated in the midst of the Province, is called *Hamed-cwad*, that is to say, the City of King *Hamed*, who built it. It is now corruptly called *Amadavat*, or *Amadabat*, whereof we shall have occasion to speak more at large hereafter. 19. Gufuratta.

The Province of *Candisch*, the Metropolis whereof, *Bursampour*, or *Brampour*, was heretofore the ordinary residence of the Kings of *Decan*, before the Great *Mogul* united it to his Crown, is very large, and well peopled. The River *Taber*, or *Tapte*, which falls into the Sea by the Gulf of *Cambaya*, divides it from the Country of the Prince of *Partapha*, who is also a Vassal of the Great *Moguls*. 20. Candisch.

The Province of *Berar*, whereof the Metropolis is *Shapore*, or *Shaspour*, reaches Southward, and touches that of *Gufuratta*, and the Mountain of *Rana*. 21. Berar.

In the Province of *Gualor*, or *Gualier*, which hath its name from the chief City, there is a Cittadel, wherein the *Mogul* confines such as are Prisoners of State, and those Lords, of whose carriage he conceives any jealousy, and keeps there also some part of his Treasure, and abundance of Gold and Silver. 22. Gualor.

The Province of *Agra*, which derives its name to the Metropolis thereof, which is not very ancient, is at present the chiefest of all the *Mogul's* Country, according to the account we shall give of it hereafter. 23. Agra.

The Province of *Sambel*, or *Sanbel*, so called from its Metropolis, is divided from that of *Narvar* by the River *Gemini*, which falls into *Ganges* near the City of *Halebasse*, where these two Rivers meeting make a kind of an Isle: Whence some have taken occasion to call this Province *Doab*, that is to say, between two waters; as if one should say, *Mesopotamia*, or *Interaquas*. 24. Sambel.

The Province of *Bakor* lies on the West-side of the *Ganges*; its chief City is called *Bikameer*. 25. Bakor.

The Province of *Narvar*, the Metropolis whereof is call *Gebud*, hath running through it a most noble River, which falls into the *Ganges*. 26. Narvar.

The Province of *Nagracut*, or *Nakarkut*, is one of the most Northerly Provinces of the *Mogul's* Country. In the chief City thereof from which it hath the name, there is to be seen, in a sumptuous Chappel, the floor whereof is covered with plates of Gold, the Effigies of an Animal, or rather a Monster, called *Matta*, which brings thither every year a great number of *Indians*, who go to do their devotions there, and offer unto it a little snip which they cut out of their own tongues. In this same Province is the City of *Kalamaka*, famous for its Pilgrimages, which are the more frequent there, by reason of the flames cast forth by the cold Springs as they come out of the Rock, which flames the Inhabitants adore. 27. Nagracut.

The Province of *Siba*, whereof the Metropolis is *Hardwari*, gives its rise to the River *Ganges*. The Inhabitants of the Country imagine, that the Rock out of which it issues hath a Cows head, for which Beast they have a certain veneration, and that there is somewhat divine in that production. Whence it comes that they bathe themselves every day in the River. This Province is no less mountainous then that of *Nakarkut*, though it be not so much towards the North. 28. Siba.

*Kakres*, the principal Cities whereof are *Dankzler* and *Binsola*, is a very spacious Province, but very full of Mountains. Mount *Caucasus* lies between it and *Tartaria*. 29. Kakres.



1638. The Province of *Gor*, which hath its name from the chief City, is also full of Mountains, and gives its rise to the River *Perfeli*, which falls into the *Ganges*.
31. *Pitan*. The Province of *Pitan*, or *Partan*, and its chief City, which gives it the name, hath running through them the River *Kanda*, which also falls into the *Ganges*. This is also a very mountainous Province, and hath on the West of it that of *Jamba*.
32. *Kan' u- ana*. The River *Iderclis* divides the Province of *Kandwana*, the chief City whereof is *Karach*, by some called *Katene*, from that of *Pitan*. This Province, and that of *Gor*, are the furthestmost of the *Mogul's* territories towards the North.
33. *Porena*. The Province of *Porena* is as fruitful as the two last named are barren. It lies between the Rivers of *Ganges*, *Perfeli*, *Gemini* and *Candach*, and is so called from its chief City.
34. *Jewel*. The City of *Rajapore*, or *Reyapor*, is the Metropolis of the Province of *Jewel*.
35. *Meuat*. The Province of *Meuat*, the chief City whereof is called *Narnob*, is a Country barren enough, reaching from the *Ganges* Eastward.
36. *Voessa*. The Province of *Voessa*, or *Voeza*, the chief City whereof is *Jascanat*, is the uttermost Province of the *Mogul's* Kingdom towards the East.
37. *Bengala*. The Province of *Bengala* may no doubt be numbred amongst the most powerful of all the Country, giving its name to the Gulf, into which the *Ganges* disembogues it self by four several channels, or mouths. Its principal Cities are *Raymebel*, *Kaka*, or *Daeca*, *Philipatan* and *Satigam*. It is subdivided into many other lesser Provinces, the most considerable whereof are *Puna*, and *Palan*, from which several Kings have not thought it much to assume their Titles.

*Texeira*, in his description of *Persia*, speaking of certain Provinces of the *Indies*, names that of *Utrat*, with its chief City, but he only names it, without giving any account of its situation. He speaks also of the Kingdom of *Caeche*, and says it is considerable for the Race-horses it breeds, near *Cambaya*, towards the North: but certainly, it is no other then the Province of *Candisch*, before spoken of.

The extent of the *Mogul's* Country. The extent of the *Mogul's* Country, from East to West, is about six hundred Leagues, and from North to South, about seven hundred *French* Leagues, since its uttermost Frontiers towards the South are at twenty, and the furthestmost towards the North at forty three degrees.

A description of the Kingdom of *Gufuratta*. As concerning the Province of *Gufuratta*, which the *Portuguez*, improperly, call *Cambaya*, it lies all along the Sea-side, extending it self much like a Peninsula into the Sea, and having on both sides a Gulf or Bay, one whereof is eight Leagues broad at the entrance, and grows narrower and narrower for forty Leagues thence. The Land extends it self Westward along the Sea-coast, and Northward it hath the Provinces of *Soret*, *Quismer* and *Bando*; Eastward, those of *Chitor* and *Kandish*, and Southward the Kingdom of *Decan*. Heretofore its Frontiers reach'd along the Sea-coast, as far as *Gualor*, eight dayes journey beyond *Amadabat*, and Southward as far as *Daman*.

Its extent. But though its extent be not so vast at present as it hath been, yet it is now a very great Province, it being certain that it reaches above sixscore Leagues along the Sea-coast, and comprehends above twenty thousand Cities, Towns, and inhabited Villages; besides the places which were laid desolate some years since by War or Famine. Its principal Cities, most whereof are Maritime, are *Surat*, *Broitshia*, *Gandeer*, *Goga*, *Cambaya*, *Diu*, *Patepatane*, *Mangalor*, *Gondore*, *Nassary*, *Gandivi*, *Balsara*, or *Belsera*. The City of *Hamed-Ewad*, or *Amadabat*, which is the Metropolis of the Province, is at a great distance from the Sea.

Its Rivers. The principal Rivers of this Province are the *Nadabat*, which passes by *Broitshia*, the *Tapta*, and the *Wasset*; besides these conveniences, it hath two of the best Ports in all the *Indies*, which are that of the *Com* of *Subaly*; to wit, that of *Surat* and that of *Cambaia*.

Its Fertility. There is no Province in all the *Indies* more fertile then *Gufuratta*, nor any that affords more Fruits and Provisions, which grow in such abundance there, that all the neighbouring Provinces are thence supplid: 'Tis true indeed, that in the year 1640. the great drought, and the year following, the continual rains reduced it to so deplorable a condition, that the particular account might be given thereof would deprive the Reader of the diversion, which it is our design to find him in this Relation. But the Province hath since that time well recover'd it self of that desolation, yet not so as but the marks of it may be seen every where. But to prosecute our Relation, as to what happened to me during my stay at *Surat*.

The Relation continued. While I was at *Ispahan*, having fixt my resolution to travel into the *Indies*, I took into my service a *Persian*, who was to serve me as an Interpreter for the *Turkish* and *Persian* Languages, which I then began a little to understand. He was born of Christian Parents,

rents, his father and mother having been of those whom *Scach-Abus* had caused to be translated from *Georgia* to *Ispahan*, where his brethren then lived in good rank. Which considerations oblig'd me to treat him with the greater civility, and to promise him by way of wages four Crowns a moneth. He had made me believe that his engaging himself into my service was partly out of this respect, that he might thereby have the convenience of re-embracing the *Christian Religion*: but he had no sooner made his first acquaintances at *Surat*, ere he understood, that an Uncle of his by the Mother-side could raise him to great fortunes at the *Mogul's* Court, where he was Master of the Horse. Upon this intelligence, he soon took a resolution to leave me, and to desire the protection of the *Sulthan*, who kept him a while at his own house, and afterwards sent him to *Agra*. I was the more startled at this departure of the young fellow, the more it run in my thoughts, that knowing all the particulars of our engagement with the *Indian* Embassadour at *Ispahan*, his design might be to betray me into the hands of my enemies. And certainly, had I known of his going to *Agra*, I should not have had the confidence to take that place in my way: though it might appear, by what happened afterwards, that God sent him to that place expressly to save my life, since, had it not been for him, I might have lost it there.

In *May*, there came news to *Surat*, that the *Chan*, who commanded at *Candahar* for the King of *Persia*, had revolted, and had rendred the place to the *Mogul*, upon this account, that the *Scach* had threatned to put him to death. The *Mogul* sent immediately 500000 Crowns to the place, as a requital for the Governours service, and to pay the Garrison, which had revolted along with him. *Alymerdan-Chan*, Governour of the same place, had done such another trick at the beginning of *Schach-Sefi's* Reign, who would needs oblige him to bring his head to Court, which if he had done, he had never carried it away again upon his shoulders. Soon after *Scach* recover'd *Candahar* again; and it was partly upon this account, that the *Mogul* had sent to him the Embassadour I spoke of before, though among his other Instructions, he had order to demand the *Myrfa Polagi*, his Nephew.

*MAT.*  
The Governour of *Candahar* delivers up his place to the *Mogul*.

*June 16.* I went out a hunting with a young *Dutch* Merchant, and another *English* Merchant, with whom having cross'd the River, they brought me to an old ruin'd City, called *Reniel*, where the *Dutch* have a Ware-houfe. The Inhabitants of this City are called *Naites*, and are for the most part either Mariners or Tradef-men, and of the *Mahumetan* Religion. The streets of it are narrow, and the houses so rais'd from the foundation, that there is not any but hath one step to get up to it. There we staid all night, and were nobly treated by the Merchants, who had the management of the Trade there.

*JUNE.*

The next day we went to a Village called *Bodick*, and in our way let fly at a wild Duck and a Heron; there we saw about twenty Deers. Their skins which were somewhat greyish, were checkquer'd all over with white spots, and they had fair Horns, with several Brow-anecklers. There was among them a sort of creatures about the bigness of our *Ro-Bucks*, the Skins whereof were inclining to a dark brown, checkquer'd also with white spots, having very graceful Horns. Some are of opinion, that these are the same that *Aldrovandus* calls *Cervi-capras*, and that it is from this kind of Beast that we have *Bezoar*. We went thence to another Village, called *Damre*, where we saw abundance of wild Ducks in the Rice, whereof there grows great store in those parts. All the fields have a little ascent raised about them to keep in the water, the Rice requiring much moisture. In this Village we found some *Terry*, which is a Liquor drawn out of the *Palm-trees*, and drunk of it in Cups made of the leaves of the same Tree. To get out the Juyce, they go up to the top of the Tree, where they make an incision in the bark, and fasten under it an earthen pot, which they leave there all night, in which time it is fill'd with a certain sweet Liquor very pleasant to the taste. They get out some also in the day time, but that corrupts immediately, and is good only for Vinegar, which is all the use they make of it.

*Terry, or Palm-wine.*

The City of *Surat*, or *Surratta*, lies at 21. degrees 42. minutes upon the River *Tapta*, which rises near *Barampour*, and falls into the Sea four Leagues below the City. It lies all along the River side, and is built four-square. It hath no wall to the River side, but on the Land side it hath a good Rampier of Stone, and a Castle all of Free-stone.

*Suratta described.*

The City hath three Gates, whereof one goes towards the Village of *Briou*, where those who go to *Cambaya* and *Amadabat* cross the River; another goes to *Barampour*; and the third to *Nassary*. All the Houses are flat, as those of *Persia*, and most have very fair Gardens.

*Its Gates.*

*Its Houses.*

The Castle, which they say was built by the *Turks*, upon an Invasion which they made into this Country, hath but one Gate, which looks into a spacious Plain which serves for a *Meidan* to the City. Not far thence, and at the entrance of the City, stands the Governours

*The Castles*

1638. nours Palace and the Custom-house, and near them the *Bazar*, as well for forreign Merchants as those of the City. The Governour of the Castle hath no dependance on him of the City, whose business it is to look after the administration of Justice, and the payment of the Customs at the Exportation and Importation of all Merchandises, which pay three and a half in the hundred, except it be Gold and Silver, whether coined, or in wedges, or made into bars, which pay but two in the hundred.

The *Dutch* and *English* have their Houses there which they call *Lodges*, and are spacious and well built, consisting of many fair Appartments, Lodgings, Chambers, fair Halls, Galleries and Chappels.

The Port.  
The Kom  
of Subaly.

The Haven of *Suratta* is two Leagues from the City, at the Village of *Subaly*, whence the *Dutch* and *English* call it the *Kom* of *Subaly*. There Ships are unladen of their Commodities, which are brought thence to *Suratta* by Land. This Road lies at 21. degrees, 50. minutes, upon the course of North-east and South-west. The entrance into it is not very broad, since that at high-water there is but seven fathom water, and at low but five. The Haven it self is not above 500. paces broad before the Village, sandy at the bottom, and most of the banks are bare and dry at low-water, and so sharp and steepy, that sounding there is to no purpose at all. 'Tis very safe riding, there being no danger of any wind but that of the South-west. But from *May* to *September* there is no staying on those Coasts, by reason of the winds and tempests, accompany'd by extraordinary thunder and lightning, which reign there during all that time.

The Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants of *Surat* are either *Benjans*, *Bramans*, or *Moguls*. These last are *Mahometans*, and much better look'd on then the others, as well upon the account of their Religion, which they have common with the Great *Mogul*, and the chiefest Lords of the Country, as upon that of the profession they make to bear Arms. They have an aversion for Trades and Merchandise, and had rather serve, then engage themselves in any honourable employment: for if they can but once get to be Masters of a Horse, they court Fortune no further, and immediately list themselves in the service of their Prince. The *Benjans* on the contrary, are a reserv'd people and laborious, and apply themselves to Trades and Merchandise, and have an extraordinary devotion for the things that concern Religion; as we shall have occasion to insist on more at large hereafter.

Surat the  
general Fa-  
ctory of the  
English  
Trade.

There are also in the City some *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Armenians*, *Turks* and *Jews*, who either have their habitations there, or trade thither; but there are no Forreigners so considerable for their settlement there as the *Dutch* and *English*. They have there their Lodges, their Store-houses, their Presidents, their Merchants, and their Secretaries, and indeed have made it one of the most eminent Cities for Traffick of all the East. The *English* particularly have made it the main place of all their Trading into the *Indies*, and have established there a President, to whom the Secretaries of all the other Factories are oblig'd to give an account. He manages Affairs with the assistance of 20. or 24. Merchants and Officers, and hath under his superintendency the Factory of *Agra*, where they have a Secretary accompanied by six persons; that of *Ispahan*, where they have a Secretary and seven or eight other Merchants; that of *Mesulipatan*, with fifteen; that of *Cambay*, with four; that of *Amadabat*, with six; that of *Brodra* and *Broitscheia*, with four; and that of *Dabul*, with two persons: who are all oblig'd to come once a year to *Suratta*, there to give an account of their Administration to the President.

The *English* have also a Factory at *Bantam*, in the Isle of *Java*; but that hath its particular President, who hath no dependance on that of *Suratta*, which hinders not but that he hath a certain deference for him, as have indeed all the *English* Ships, which perfect not their Voyage without casting Anchor at *Suratta*.

The places  
about Su-  
rat.

The places about this City are the most delightful of any in the world. For, besides, the fair Gardens, where they have all sorts of Fruit-trees, all the Champion seems to want nothing that might recreate the eye. Among other things, I observ'd there one of those Trees, whereof I have given a description when I had occasion to speak of the City of *Gamron*, as also very many sumptuous Sepulchres built of Marble, and a *Tanke* or Cistern made eight-square of Free-stone, having at every angle a pair of stairs to go down into it, and in the midst, the Sepulchre of the Founder of that magnificent Structure, which is so spacious, that it contains water enough to supply the whole City, even in the greatest heats of the year.

SEPTEMBER.

Two Eng-  
lish ships  
arrive at  
Surat.

The tempests of Rain begin to cease with the moneth of *September*. About that time, viz. the 14. of that moneth, news was brought that two *English* Ships were arrived at the Port of *Subaly*. The President would have gone thither in person, but some business he had with the Governour hindered him; so that he was forc'd to send two of the chiefest Merchants, who took me along with them. We came to *Subaly* about noon, and having

lett

left our Horses in the Village, went aboard one of the Ships, called the *Discovery*. 'Twas a Vessel of 600. Tun, having 28. Guns, and 190. Men. Captain *Menard*, who commanded her, and the three Merchants who came to the President for Orders, receiv'd us kindly; and being come directly from *England*, they told us all they knew of the Affairs of *Europe*; which discourse made us pass away the best part of the night pleasantly enough. The next day we went to the other Vessel, called the *Mary*, which was 1200. Tun burthen, and carried 48. Guns. She had pass'd by *Aden* on the *Red-Sea*, where she had lost her Captain, who dy'd of sickness. The Merchant, who commanded her instead of the Captain, made us a reception equal to what we had in the other Ship; and both of them oblig'd us to come every day to see them, till the President were come, which was not till eight dayes after. Which hundred not but that we went sometimes a walking, and a hunting, but so as that we lay every night in one of the Ships.

As soon as the Commanders heard that the President was come to *Subaly*, they went a shore, and meeting him on the River side, he made a short discourse to them, exhorting them to shew their fidelity and compliance to their Superiours, during the time they should stay in the *Indies*. Which done, he went into the Boat, to go aboard of the first Ship, where they fir'd twelve Guns at his arrival. After supper, he went along with the whole company, to the other, where they fir'd sixteen Guns, besides those that were discharg'd at the drinking of the King of *England's* health, and those of some other persons of Honour in that Country. The two dayes following were spent in feasting, at which the Commanders of the two Ships treated the President, who afterwards return'd to *Suratta*; but night overtaking us by the way, we were forc'd to take up our Lodging in the little City of *Reniel*.

The 24. of the same moneth arrived two other Ships, whereof one was called *Bolduc*, a *Hollander*, of 1400. Tun. She came from the City of *Batavia* in the Ile of *Java*, and was returning for *Holland*, loaden with Pepper and other Spices: The other was an *English* Vessel, call'd the *Swan*, and had been sent by the Secretary of *Mesulipatan* into *Persia* for Silks; but the contrary winds having kept her four moneths together at Sea, had oblig'd her to put in at *Suratta*, whereas the *Hollander* had in less time made the whole Voyage from the *Texel* to the *Indies*. I again accompany'd the Merchants, who went to the Port to see their Ships. We went first aboard the *Hollander*, who receiv'd us very nobly, and we were shewn all the conveniences of the Vessel, which no doubt was the best contriv'd, and the biggest that ever came out of the Ports of *Holland*. It was twenty foot longer then the *Mary*, but not altogether so broad.

During my abode at *Suratta*, I wanted for no divertisement; for either I walk'd down to the Haven, or found company in the City, especially at the *Dutch* Presidents, who had his Family there, and with whom it was the easier for me to make acquaintance, in as much as I could converse with them in my own Language. But understanding that the *English* Ships, with which I intended to return into *Europe*, would not be ready for their departure under three or four moneths, I resolv'd to take a journey into the Country, to the Great *Mogul's* Court, taking my advantage of a *Cassia*, or *Caravan*, of thirty Wagons loaden with Quick-silver, *Roenus*, which is a root that dies red, Spices, and a considerable sum of Money, which the *English* were sending to *Amadabat*. The President had appointed four Merchants, certain *Benjans*, twelve *English* Souldiers, and as many *Indians*, to conduct and convoy this small *Caravan*; so that confident I might undertake this journey without any danger, (which it had not been safe for me to attempt without this convenience, by reason of the *Rasboutes*, and their robberies upon the high-way;) I took the Presidents advice, and put my self into their company.

These *Rasboutes* are a sort of High-way men, or Tories, who keep in the Mountains between *Brodra* and *Broitscheia*, which are called *Champenir*, where they have their fortifi'd places and retreats, wherein they sometimes make their party good against the *Mogul* himself. Not long before, he had taken in one of their strongest places, and by that means kept them a long time in subjection; but they revolted again, and exercised their robberies with greater cruelty then ever.

We left *Suratta* the last of *September*, being accompany'd by the President and some *English* Merchants, who having brought us a League out of the City, there took leave of us. We took our way towards *Broitscheia*, and came to the Village of *Briou*, or *Briaum*, where we cross'd the River. Then, at four Leagues distance from *Briou*, we pass'd by *Cattodera*, which is a ruin'd place, seated upon a River of the same name, and then by *Enkijffer*, where we soon made a shift to take above thirty wild Ducks, and many other Water-fowl, wherewith we feasted our people. We also kill'd a Roebuck, and met with so many Deer and wild Boars, that it was no hard matter for us to get us a good supper;

since

1638.

*Bolduc a Dutch Vessel of 1400 Tun.*

*Rasboutes.*

*Leaves Suratta to go to Amadabat.*

1638. since the *Dutch* and *English* never travel without their Cooks, who dress the Fowl and what else their Masters kill, which they never fail to do in abundance. The next day we cross'd a River which is more broad then deep, before we came to the City of *Broitfchia*, into which we were no sooner entred, but the *English* Secretary sent to us to dine with him, which we did.

*Broitfchia* described. The City of *Broitfchia* is at 21. degrees, 56. minutes, 12. Leagues from *Suratta*; and 8. from the Sea, upon a River falling out of the Mountains, which divide the Kingdom of *Decar* from that of *Balagatta*. It lies upon a pretty high Mountain, having its Walls of Free-stone, and so well built, that it may be numbred among the strongest places of all the *Indies*. On the Land side, it hath two great Gates, and two small Gates towards the River, by which is brought abundance of Timber for building, which none dare unload without the Governours express permission. There is a Guard kept in it, as well upon account of the place it self, which is very considerable, as upon this, that they exact there two in the hundred upon all Merchandises that pass through it. The City is sufficiently well peopled, as also its Suburbs, which are divided into two quarters, which they call *Poera*, though very few persons of Quality live therein, most of the Inhabitants being only Weavers, who make of those kinds of Cottons called *Bastar*, which are finer then any made in the Province of *Gusaratta*. All the fields about this City lie flat and even, unless it be that about five or six Leagues from it, towards the South-west, may be seen the Mountains called *Pindrsthee*, which reach as far as *Barampour* and beyond it, and are very fertile, as is also all the rest of the Country, which brings forth Rice, Wheat, Barly, and Cotton in abundance. It is out of these Mountains that the *Agat* is gotten, whereof are made such noble drinking Cups, Seals, Handles of Knives and Daggers, and several other rarities, which are commonly to be bought at *Cambaya*.

The jurisdiction of the City of *Broitfchia* extends it self over 84. Villages, the Demesne whereof belongs to it, but heretofore its territory comprehended three other Cities, who have now their particular Governours. Four Leagues below the City, the River divides it self into two branches, which there make an Isle near half a League about, below which it falls into the Sea, by two several channels. It hath no Port, but only a Road, which is so much the more dangerous, in that the Ships, which may indeed anchor there at seven fathom water, lie open to the mercy of all Winds.

*Indico*. Eight Leagues from *Broitfchia*, upon the way of *Cambaya*, there is a great Village called *Janbaysar*, or *Jamboufer*, where abundance of *Indico* is made: and upon the Road to *Amadabat*, there is to be seen the Sepulchre of a *Mahumetan* Saint, named *Pollemedory*, whither the *Moors*, or *Moguls*, go in pilgrimage with so great devotion, that some of them put Padlocks on their mouths to keep them from speaking, and never take them off, but only when they are to eat. Others fasten Iron chains to their arms; and it is reported, that the Padlocks are opened, and the Chains loos'd, by some supernatural power, as soon as they have accomplish'd their Vows at the Sepulchre.

*A fabulous miracle.*

*Leaves Broitfchia*. We left *Broitfchia* in the Evening, accompany'd by the Secretary, who would needs bring us half a League out of the City. He return'd thither, but it was to the end he might overtake us five Leagues thence; for, being entrusted with the managment of the Commerce of *Brodra*, as well as of that of *Broitfchia*, he thought fit to go along with the *Caravan*. We travell'd all night, and the next day, till the extraordinary heat forc'd us to encamp near a Fish-pond, where we pass'd away the rest of that day, and some part of the night following, our recreation being to set a dancing the Women that were among the *Benjans* in the *Caravan*. We went thence after midnight. I intreated the Secretary to come into my Coach, where I learnt of him several particulars of the Country, which by reason of my small stay in those parts, it was impossible I could have observed. We pass'd through the Villages of *Karawanet* and *Kabol*, where they made us pay a certain passage-Toll.

*Comes to Brodra*. Being come within some Leagues of the City of *Brodra*, the *English* Secretary went on before to take order for our lodging and entertainment. We met him with his Second, about half a League from the City, whither we came the seventh of *October*. The *Kassla* pass'd through the City, to be lodg'd on the other side of it; and the *English* Merchants carried me into a pleasant Country-house without the City, purposely built for a *Mausoleum*, to a person of Quality of the Country, whose desire it had been to be there buried with all his Family. Having taken two or three turns in the Garden, we went to the Lodge belonging to the *English*, where they made the greatest entertainment imaginable; and to come to the height of that Countries endearments, they sent for some *Benjan* women, who were very desirous to see my cloaths, which I still wore after the *German* fashion, (though the *English* and *Dutch*, who are settled in the *Indies*, go ordinarily according to the

OCTOBER

the mode of the Country) and would have oblig'd me to put them off; but perceiving I was unwilling to do it, and withall that I made some difficulty to accept of the proffers they made me to strip themselves naked, and to do any thing I would expect from persons of their sex and profession, they seem'd to be very much troubled, and so went away. 1638.

The City of *Brodra* lies in a sandy Plain upon the little River *Wasset*, 30. Cos, or 15. Leagues from *Broitschia*. This City is of no long standing, as having been built by *Rasia Gbie*, son of *Suliban Mihomet Begeran*, last King of *Guzuratta*, out of the ruins of the ancient *Brodra*, which was heretofore called *Radispora*, from which it is distant about half a League. It is fortifi'd with good Walls and Bastions, according to the ancient manner of Fortification, and hath five Gates, one whereof is damm'd up, because there is no highway abuts upon it. The Inhabitants of it, especially those of that part of the Suburbs which is towards the West-side of the City, are for the most part *Benjans* and *Ketteris* by profession, Weavers, Dyers, and other workers in Cotton, as being the place where, of all the Province, the best Clothes are made, which are more close, but a small matter narrower and shorter then those of *Broitschia*; and it is by that they are distinguished from the others. There are several forts thereof, to wit, *Bastar*, *N quamas*, *Madasous*, *Cannequins*, black *Chelas*, blew *Affamanis*, *Berams*, and *Tircandias*. We thought fit to name these several species, that we may the better understand the relations which come daily from those parts. *Brodra described.*

The jurisdiction of the Governour of *Brodra* extends it self over two hundred and ten Villages, sixty five whereof are design'd for the maintenance of the Garrison, and the *Mogul* disposes of the 135. for the advantage and entertainment of certain Officers of the Court, who have their pensions charg'd upon those Villages. Among which there is one called *Sindickera*, eight Leagues from the City, which yields yearly above 25000. pounds of *Lacca*. This *Lacque* is a Gum taken out of a certain kind of Tree, which is not much unlike our Plum-trees; and there is abundance of it gotten all over *Guzuratta*. Its colour is of a red brown; but when it is well dry'd, and beaten to powder, the *Indians* give it what colour they please, black, red, green, yellow, &c. and make it into sticks to seal Letters withall, or use it to adorn and beautifie their household-stuffe, as Chests, Boxes, Cabinets, Tables, Bedsteads, &c. whereby they give them such a lustre, as none yet could ever imitate in *Europe*, especially upon black. This Country does also produce much *Indico*. *Lacque.*

Besides the Sepulchre we spoke of before, there are many others to be seen without the City, most of them very magnificently built, having spacious Gardens about them, which are open for any that would go in. *The Sepulchres of Mahometan Saints.*

The same day I took leave of the Secretary, and went along with two *English* Merchants to the *Caravan*, which we found encamped at the corner of a Grove of the *Palms*, which bear *Cocos*, and out of which they get *Terry*, which is the ordinary drink of those parts. In the evening came the *Dutch* Secretary or Deputy of *Brodra*, who presented us with some bottles of Sack, and kept us company till after midnight.

One of the *English* Merchants came along with the *Caravan* as far as *Wasset*, which is an old Castle partly ruin'd, built upon a high Mountain, where there is kept a Garrison, consisting of a hundred Horse, who there received a certain Impost of a *Ropia* and a half, which amounts to somewhat under four shillings, for every Wagon: but we had a Passport from the *Mogul*, by vertue whereof we were to pass without paying, upon which account it was that one of their Merchants came along with the *Caravan* to that place. Accordingly the Souldiers of the Garrison staid some of our Wagons, and would have forc'd us to pay the ordinary duties; but we oppos'd it, and drew up our Convoy, who made their passage by force. We cross'd the River, and lodg'd in a Village, fortifying our selves with our Wagons against the attempts which might have been made against us. We found afterwards that this circumspection was no more then needed. For ere we had quite supped, came the Receiver with some thirty Souldiers, well arm'd with Half-pikes, Swords, Bucklers and Guns, and desiring a conference with us, we suffered him to enter with three of his Souldiers; but he demanding the duties of us, we told him, that we were not to pay any, and that the *Mogul's* Pass freed us; yet to avoid further trouble, and out of our good will to the Souldiers of the Garrison, we should make them a present of five or six *Ropias*. They would not hear of any such proposition, and still stood upon the payment of the whole duty. And so they went away, but with a design to return the next morning, as indeed they did. At the same time came a *Dutch* Merchant, who conducted a *Caravan* of 170. Wagons, guarded by 50. Souldiers, all *Indosthans*. He told us that the Souldiers of the Garrison had fell'd down a great Tree, and laid it cross our way, purposely to hinder our passage. We immediately commanded out four of our Souldiers to go and clear the way; which oblig'd those of the Castle to send some of theirs to hinder them: but in regard

1638. regard they could not go by, without coming within reach of our Muskets, we put ourselves into a posture of disputing their passage, and they attempted to force us out of our retrenchment, which occasion'd the coming back of those whom we had sent to clear the way. There was some firing on both sides; but we had so much the advantage of them, that those of the Castle came to a composition, and represented to us by the *Dutch Merchants*, that having no other pay then what they receiv'd from the Merchandises passing that way, they were forc'd to make passengers pay the duties, that they might have wherewithal to subsist, and that they would be content with one half of what was ordinarily received, nay, to avoid further inconvenience, with what we had proffer'd them the day before; so that they had at last six *Ropias*, which amount to about three Crowns. Their number, during this contest, increas'd to a hundred; and the *Indian Souldiers*, who convey'd us, refused to take up Arms against them, alledging it was not lawful for them to fight against the Souldiers of their Sovereign, and that it was their business to defend us against the Robbers, who might set upon us in the High-way. Two Leagues and a half thence is the Village of *Ammenoygi*; and at three and a half further, that of *Sejuntra*, whence we came to the little City of *Nariad*, which some call *Niriaud*, nine Leagues from *Brodra*. Its houses are handsome enough, and there are made in it Cottons and Indico, but not such abundance thereof as there is in the places before mentioned.

Comes to  
Nariad.

To Marnadebath.

October 11. we came to *Marnadebath*. This little City is within five Leagues of *Nariad*, upon a pretty large River which is very full of Fish. It is a handsome pleasant place, and was built by two Brothers, who have made a very considerable Castle on the North-side of the City. The Inhabitants of it are *Benjans*, and they make there great quantities of Cotton-thread, wherewith they drive a great Trade.

To Amadabat.

October 12. We travell'd five Leagues, and having pass'd by *Canis*, *Batova*, and *Issempour*, where there is a very fair *Caravanserai*, or, as they call it in *India*, a *Sary* for the lodging of the *Cassilas*, or *Caravans*, we got the same day very safely to *Amadabat*.

The Indian Oxen as met some of the Horses in Germany.

The two Merchants and my self went before, and we took along with us the Wagon that carried the provisions. Within half a League of the City, we entred into one of those Gardens, in which persons of Quality are wont to have their Sepulchres, and staying there for the coming up of the *Caravan*, we sent to the principal Merchant, who managed the Commerce in those parts, to acquaint him with our arrival. His name was *Benjamin Roberts*, and he had no sooner heard the news, but he took his Coach and came to receive me. His Coach made after the *Indian* fashion, was gilt all over, covered with several pieces of rich *Persian* Tapistry, and drawn by two white Oxen, which express'd as much metal as we could have expected from the best Horses in *Germany*. There was also led by the Coach a very stately *Persian* Horse, the harness whereof was covered with plates of Silver. He took a Collation with us of the little Sack and *English* Beer we had left, after which he took me into the Coach with him, and brought me to the City, ordering the Merchants to stay in the Garden till the *Caravan* were come up.

The *English* House or Lodge is in the middle of the City, well built, and hath many fair and convenient Apartments, with spacious Courts for the disposal of Merchandises, Master *Roberts* brought me first into his own Chamber, which look'd into a little Flower-garden, in which there was a Fountain. The floor was cover'd with Tapistry, and the pillars which sustain'd the structure were set out with Silk-stuffes of several colours, and above, a great white tassel according to the custom of the great Ones of the Country. We had a Collation; after which he shew'd me the whole house, and brought me into a very fair Chamber, with a large Closet in it, which he had design'd for my Lodging. We sup'd in a great Hall, whither the *Dutch* Deputy came after supper to see us, with some of his Merchants, with whom I had occasion to be acquainted at *Suratta*. After he was gone, the whole company conducted me to my Chamber, where my Host kept me company till after midnight. And that there might not be ought wanting in my entertainment (which in answer to the recommendatory Letters I had brought from the President, he would needs have in all things extraordinary) he sent for six Women-dancers, the handfomest could be found in the City, and told me, that if I liked any thing in them besides their singing and activity, I needed only to express my desires, and be confident, that they would give me all the satisfaction and divertisement which those of their sex are able either to give or take. I thanked him for his civility, but besides that, I had had some touches of my dis-ease by the way, I made some scruple to meddle in that kind with a *Pagan*.

They admir'd my cloaths, but above all that Lock of my hair that hung down over my shoulders: and could hardly be induc'd to believe I was what I really am.

Having staid two dayes at *Amadabat*, my noble entertainer took me along with him in a Coach, followed by two others, and shew'd me some part of the City.

He

He first brought me to the great Market-place, called *Meydan-Schach*, or the Kings Market, which is at least 1600. foot long, and half as many broad, and beset all about with rows of Palm-trees, and Date-trees, intermix'd with Citron-trees and Orange-trees, whereof there are very many in the several Streets: which is not only very pleasant to the sight, by the delightful prospect it affords, but also makes the walking among them more convenient, by reason of the coolness. Besides this *Meydan*, there are in the City four *Basars*, or publick places, where are sold all kinds of Merchandises. 1638.  
The Meydan.

The same day, I saw also the Castle, which is very large, and built of Free-stone, inso- The Castle. much that it is one of the most considerable in the Kingdom. Not far from the *Meydan*, we went into a House built of Brick, which they call the Kings Palace. Over the Gate, there was a kind of Curtain or Stage, for the Mulick, consisting of Violins, Haw-boys and Bag-pipes, which play there in the morning, at noon, in the evening, and at midnight, as they do in *Persia*, and all other places, where the Prince professes the *Mahumetan* Religion. All the Appartments of the House were sumptuous, gilt and adorn'd with painting, according to the mode of the Country: but more to their satisfaction, who are pleas'd with diversity of Colours, than theirs, who look for invention, and stand upon the exactness of proportions.

Then we went out of the City, to see the Walls of it, which are very fair, having twelve Gates, and many great Towers, with a Ditch sixteen fathom broad, but in many places it is ruin'd, and without water.

We return'd into the City, to see the principal *Mosquey* of the *Benjans*, which without dispute is one of the noblest structures that can be seen. It was then new, for the Founder, who was a rich *Benjan* Merchant, named *Santides*, was living in my time. The *Mosquey* stands in the middle of a great Court, which is enclos'd with a high Wall of Free-stone, all about which there is a Gallery, much after the manner of our Cloysters in Monasteries, having all its Seats or Cells, and in every Cell a Marble Statue, white or black, representing a Woman naked, sitting, and having her legs lying cross under her, according to the mode of the Country. There were some had three Statues, to wit, a great one between two little ones. A Mosquey  
of the Ben-  
jans.

At the entrance into the *Mosquey*, there are two Elephants of black Marble done to the life, and upon one of them the Effigies of the Founder. The whole *Mosquey* is vaulted, and the Walls adorn'd with several Figures of men and other living Creatures. There was not any thing within the *Mosquey*, save that at the further end of the Structure there were three Chappels, or obscure places, divided one from the other by wooden Rails, wherein might be seen Statues of Marble, like those we had seen in the Cells, with this difference only, that there was a lighted Lamp before that which stood in the middle. We saw there also one of their Priests, who was then busie in receiving from the hands of such as came thither to do their Devotions, Flowers, wherewith he adorn'd his Images, as also Oyl for the Lamps which hung before the Rails, and Wheat and Salt for the Sacrifice. While he set the Flowers about the Statues, his mouth and nose were covered with a Linnen-cloath, lest the impurity of his breath should prophane the Mytery, and coming ever and anon near the Lamp, he mutter'd over certain Prayers, and rub'd his hands up and down in the flame thereof, as if he had wash'd them in the smoak, and sometimes stroak'd his face with them. This was a kind of Purification, done out of a persuasion which these people have, that Fire having a far greater power of purifying than Water, they may after this Ceremony lift up clean and pure hands to God. But he continued this foolery so long, that we had not the patience to see the end of it; so that we left him in the midst thereof, to go and see the Sepulchres, which are the most remarkable Rarities of the City, whereof we shall here give a short description.

*Amadabath*, the Metropolis of all *Guzuratta*, lies at 23. degrees, 32. minutes on this side the line, 18. Leagues from *Cambaya*, and 45. from *Suratta*, upon a small River, which not far thence falls into the *Indus*. It is a very great and populous City, comprehending with its Suburbs, and the Villages adjacent thereto, which are part of it, near seven Leagues in compass. The Streets of it are very broad, and both publick and private buildings very magnificent, especially the *Mosqueys*, and the Governours House of the Province. There is a Guard kept there day and night, and the Garrison is very considerable, by reason of the *Badures*, a sort of people distant thence but 25. Leagues, who acknowledge not the *Mogul* for their Sovereign, and make perpetual incursions upon his Subjects. There is not in a manner any Nation, nor any Merchandises in all *Asia*, which may not be had at *Amadabath*, where particularly there are made abundance of Silks and Cotton-stuffs. 'Tis true, they seldom use any Silk in that Country, much less any out of *Persia*, because it is somewhat too coarse and too dear; but they ordinarily make use of that of *China*, which is very Amada-  
bath de-  
scribed.



1638. fine, mingling it with that of *Bengala*, which is not quite so fine, but much beyond that of *Persia*, and much cheaper. They also make there great quantities of Gold and Silver *Brocades*, but they put too much thin Lace into them, so that in goodness and substance they come not near those of *Persia*, though some of them amount in the Country to eighteen Crowns the Piece.

At the time of my being there, they had begun to make a new kind of Stuff of Silk and Cotton with flowers of Gold, which was very much esteem'd, and sold at five Crowns the Ell; but the Inhabitants were forbidden the wearing of it, upon this account, that the King reserv'd it for his own, yet not so strictly, but that he permitted Forraigners to buy of it, to be transported out of the Kingdom.

The princi-  
pal Com-  
modities  
there.

They make there also all sorts of Sattins and Velvets of all sorts of colours; Taffata, Sattins for linings, of both Thread and Silk, Alcatifs or Carpets, the ground Gold, Silk or Yarn, but not so good as those of *Persia*, and all sorts of Cottons. The other Commodities to be commonly had there, are Sugar, Candy'd or in Powder, Cummin, Honey, Lacque, Opium, Borax, Ginger, dry and preserv'd *Myrobalans* or *Indian Plums*, and all other sorts of Preserves, Salt-Peter, *Sal armoniack*, and Indico, which the Inhabitants call *Anil*, and which grows there in great abundance. There are also Diamonds to be sold there, but in regard they are brought from *Visiapour*, they may be had cheaper elsewhere.

Musk and  
Amber-  
greece.

There is also to be had some Amber-greece, and Musk, though the Countrey affords not any; for the best Amber-greece comes from *Pegu*, and *Bengala*, from *Mosambique* and *Cabo verde*, and is sold at *Amadabath*, at 40. *Mamoudis*, or 8. Crowns the ounce. Some are of opinion, that Amber is the seed of the Whale, hardned or congeal'd by cold in the Sea: but if this were so, there would be plenty of it found in the North, where men look after this Fish meerly to get out of it a certain liquor, which is as stinking and infectious as the smell of the Amber is sweet and pleasant. Nor can I approve of their opinion, who believe there are within the earth certain veins or sources of Amber, as there are of *Nefte*, or certain Mines, as those of *Brimstone*, since there is none to be found but towards the Sea, wherein it grows as Mushrooms do upon the earth, and is fastned to the bottom, till such time as the Sea, being tossed up and down by the Winds, casts it towards the shore. *Peter de la Brouck*, a *Hollander*, who made a Voyage to *Angola*, *Guinny*, and the *Indies*, in the years 1605. and 1606. says in his Relation, that in his time, there was found at *Cabo verde*, at the mouth of the River *Gambi*, a piece of Amber-greece, which weigh'd eighty pounds, whereof he bought some part.

A piece of  
Amber-  
greece that  
weighed  
eighty  
pound.

Musk.

As for Musk, all are joyntly of opinion, that it comes of an Imposthume or Swelling, which rises about the Navil of a certain Animal, which some affirm to be about the bigness of a Fox, and others say, is like a Roe-buck. Whether then it be that this rising of the flesh about that part happens every year, when those Creatures go to rut, and that as they tumble up and down the Grass it breaks, or that it is cut off when they are taken, certain it is that it comes from a living Creature, which some Authors call *Gazela*; but the Inhabitants of *Pegu* give it another name, which I could not learn, and which is not to be found in the Relations, or Natural Histories of the *East-Indies*.

*Michael Boyen*, a Jesuite, who some years since printed, at *Vienna*, a Treatise, which he calls *La Flore Chinoise*, says, that the right Musk is made of the Kidneys and Testicles of that Animal, which he calls *Hiam*, but that the *China* Merchants, who adulterate most of their Merchandises, put among it some of the flesh and blood of the said Animal, and so make up a kind of composition, wherewith they fill the little Purfes made of the Skin of the same Beast, which the *Portuguez* call *Papos*, and endeavour to make them pass for the right Cods. However this may hold, certain it is, that this excellent scent proceeds from a Beast, and that it may be called the soul of all Perfume. But there is not any thing so considerable as the convenience which this place affords for matter of exchange, the *Benjans* having their Correspondents in all parts of *Asia*, even at *Constantinople*; and this is so much the more to the advantage of the Merchant, the more he stands in fear of the *Rasboutes*, and other Robbers, who make travelling very dangerous, notwithstanding all the expence the *Mogul* is at, to maintain a great number of Souldiers, who are particularly kept for the safety of the High-ways.

Merchandi-  
ses pay no  
duties or  
custom at  
*Amadabat*.

There is nothing paid here, either at the exportation or importation of Merchandises, save that the *Conteval*, or Kings Lieutenant, hath given him by way of Present, about 15. pence for every Wagon; and it is lawful for all Forreigners to buy, and sell, and trade in all sorts of Merchandises, those only excepted which are prohibited, as Gun-powder, Lead and Salt-Peter, which may not be transported without the Governours permission; but that it is no hard matter to obtain, making but a slender acknowledgment of his favour therein.

The

The City of *Amadabat* comprehends within its territory twenty five great Towns, and two thousand nine hundred ninety and eight Villages, so as that the revenue thereof amounts to above six millions of Crowns, whereof the Governour hath the disposal, and therewith maintains the Souldiers, whom he is oblig'd to keep for the Kings service, especially against Robbers upon the high-ways; though many times he protects them, and divides the booty with them. The *Conieual*, who is as it were the Kings Lieutenant, commands under the *Sulthan*, and mannges the political Government, nay meddles also with the administration of Justice joyntly with the *Kasi* or ordinary Judge. The *Mogul* hath there also several other Officers, who are as it were Controllers and Supervisors of those we last named.

1638.  
Its jurisd-  
tion and  
revenue.

The dayes following I spent in seeing the Sepulchres which are about the City, and among others, particularly that which is in the Village of *Zirkees*, about a League and a half from *Amadabat*. 'Tis the work of a King of *Guzuratta*, built by him to the memory of a *Kasi*, who had been his *Preceptor*, and is grown very famous upon the account of many pretended Miracles done by him after his death. The whole Structure, wherein there are four hundred and forty great pillars, thirty foot high, is of Marble, as also the floor of it, and serves for a Sepulchre to three other Kings, who would needs be buried there with their Families. At the entrance of this sumptuous Monument, there is a large *Tanke*, or Cistern, full of water, and enclos'd with a wall, which hath several windows all about it. The *Mahumetans* of those parts go on Pilgrimage thither; and in this Village of *Zirkees* is made the best Indico in all the Country. About a League thence, there is a spacious Garden, with a fair House within it, which the *Mogul*, *Chon Chimanw*, built, in memory of a Victory gained by him in that place over *Sulthan Mahomed Begeran*, last King of *Guzuratta*, upon which he united that Kingdom to his Crown, as we shall express hereafter.

The Sepul-  
chre of a  
Kasi.

About a League and a half from the City, we were shewn a Sepulchre, which they call *Betti-Chuit*, that is to say, *thy daughters shame discovered*. There lies interr'd in it a rich Merchant, a Moor, named *Hajam Majom*, who falling in love with his own Daughter, and desirous to shew some pretence for his incest, went to an Ecclesiastical Judge, and told him in general terms, That he had in his youth, taken the pleasure to plant a Garden, and to dress and order it with great care, so that now it brought forth such excellent fruits, that his neighbours were extremely desirous thereof, that he was every day importuned to communicate unto them, but that he could not yet be perswaded to part therewith, and that it was his design to make use of them himself, if the Judge would grant him in writing a Licence to do it. The *Kasi*, who was not able to dive into the wicked intentions of this unfortunate man, made answer, That there was no difficulty in all this, and so immediately declar'd as much in writing. *Hajom* shewed it his Daughter, and finding nevertheless, that neither his own authority, nor the general permission of the Judge, would make her consent to his brutal enjoyments, he ravished her. She complain'd to her Mother, who made so much noise about it, that the King *Mahomet Begeran* coming to hear thereof, ordered him to lose his head.

The Sepul-  
chre of an  
incestuous  
Father.

Not far from *Amadabat* begin to appear the dreadful Mountains of *Marva*, which reach above 70. Leagues towards *Agra*, and above a hundred towards *Ouyen*, and are so inaccessible, that the Cattle of *Gurchitto*, (where lives *Rana* one of the principal *Radies* of those parts) is accounted impregnable, in so much that the Kings of *Pettan*, and the *Mogul* himself, found much ado to reduce it. The *Indians*, who are Pagans, have still a great Veneration for that Prince, who, they say, was so powerful, as that he could in a short time bring 120000. Horse into the Field.

The moun-  
tains of  
Marva.  
Where live  
Princes not  
subject to  
the Mogul.

In the Mountain which lies between *Amadabat* and *Trappe*, there lives another *Radia*, who is not subject to the *Mogul*, by reason the Woods and Deserts secure him against that Prince, who with all his power is not able to force him out of the places he is posses'd of, no more then he is the *Radia* of *Idcr*, who is his Vassal, but many times refuses to obey his Orders.

One of the noblest Gardens about the City is that of *Schack-bag*, in that part of the Suburbs which is called *Begampour*. It is the King Garden, very spacious, encompass'd with a high Wall, and hath within it a very fair House, the Ditches whereof are full of water, and the apartments richly furnish'd. I went thence along a Stone-bridge, which is four hundred paces in length, to another Garden, called *Niccinabag*, that is to say, the Jewel, and they say it was planted by a beautiful and rich young Lady. The Garden is not very great no more then the House within it; but both very advantageously seated in a place high enough to discover all the adjacent *Champion*, and upon the avenues of the

Schack-  
bag Gar-  
den.

1638. Bridge, to make the noblest prospect that ever I saw. The Rain which falls in the Winter time supplies a great Fish-pond or Pool in the middle of the Garden; but in Summer they make use of certain Engines, wherewith many Oxen put together draw up the water out of Wells, which are so deep, that they are never dry. A man can seldom go to this Garden, but he shall find some young Women bathing themselves; they will not permit the *Indians* should see them, but suffered us to come in and speak to them.

There are so many other Gardens about *Amadabat*, and the whole City is so full of Trees, that a man may say, it makes all but one Garden; for as he comes to the City, he sees such abundance of them, that he may well think he is going into a Forrest. Among other things I took particular notice of the High-way, which they call *Bascaban*, and leads to a Village six Leagues distant from the City. It is so straight, that it should seem they took a great pleasure in planting the Trees about it, whereof there is a double row on both sides upon a straight line. They are *Cocos-Trees*, which at all times refresh Travellers with their shade: but this road comes nothing near that which goes from *Agra* to *Barampour*, which makes but one continued Ally for a hundred and fifty *German* Leagues together. All these Trees lodge and feed an incredible number of Apes, among which there are some as big as Greyhounds, and strong enough to set upon a Man; but they never do it unless they be angered. They are most of them of a greenish brown colour, and their beards and eyebrows long and white. They multiply extremely, by reason the *Benjans*, who are much more numerous in those parts than the *Mahumetans*, believe the *Metempsychosis*, or transmigration of souls, and permit not the killing of beasts, and these much less than any other, because they have some resemblance of Man, and are persuaded, that the merriest and best humour'd souls, after their departure out of the body, retire into these Creatures; whence it comes that the City is full of them. They come into people houses at any time with all the freedom imaginable, and in so great numbers, that those who sell Fruits and Preserves have much ado to keep them from their houses, and to secure their Ware. I remember one day I counted above fifty at the *English* house at the same time, which fell a playing and putting themselves into several postures, as if they had been sent thither purposely to make me sport. I one day chanc'd to cast some Dates and Almonds among two or three Apes that came in, which they liked so well, that they waited every morning at my Chamber door for their Breakfast, and became at last so familiar, that they would take Fruit, or Bread, or any thing else out of my hand. I would sometimes catch one of them by the Foot, so to oblige the others to snarle at me, and as it were to demand their Companion, which I did till such time as I saw them make ready to set upon me, so to force him out of my hands.

The same Trees maintain all sorts of wild Fowl, but especially an infinite number of Parrots, whereof there are several kinds. The biggest are called *Indian Crows*. Some are all white, or of a Pearl colour, having on their Crowns a tuft of Feathers of a Carnation red, and they are called *Kabatou*, from that word which in their chattering they pronounce very distinctly. These Birds are common all over the *Indies*, where they make their Nests in Cities, under the Eaves of Houses, as Swallows do in *Europe*. The lesser sort of them, which are the more valued for the beauty and diversity of their colours, their Feathers being checquer'd between a lively Carnation and a bright Green, build their Nests in the Woods, and fasten them to the tops of the branches, so as that they hang in the Air, by which means they preserve their young ones from the Serpents that would devour them. They build their Nests with Hay or Stubble, and many times they fasten two together, with a covering above, and another beneath. These Birds are a great annoyance to the Fruits, and do much mischief in the Rice; because none kill them; nay, the *Benjans* are so superstitious as not to hinder them from eating; which freedom they also give the wild Ducks, Herons and Cormorants, whereof there are abundance about the River. In the precedent Travels of the Embassadors into *Muscovy* and *Persia*, there is some mention of these Birds, upon occasion of those which we saw upon the River *Volga*; We shall only add here, that it is the same kind of Fowl, that the Natural Histories call *Onocratalus*, from the noise it makes in the Water, when it puts its Beak into it, imitating in some sort the braying of an Ass. It hath the subtilty to swallow down Muscles, and keep them in the Stomach till the heat thereof hath opened the shell, and then cast them up again to take out the Fish.

There is no kind of wild Fowl, nor Venison, which may not be had in these Forrests, but especially, Fallow-Deer, Roebucks, Ahus, or wild Asses, wild Boars and Hares.

They have also store of tame Creatures, as Buffles, Oxen, Cows and Sheep: And the River is so well furnished with all sorts of Fish, that it may be confidently affirmed, there is no place in the world where a man might live more deliciously.

They

An Ally 150  
Leagues to-  
gether.

Parrots.

Cormorants.

Fowl and  
Venison.

Tame crea-  
tures.  
Fish.

They want nothing but Wine; but to supply their want of that, they have *Terri*, taken out of the *Cocos*-trees, which drinks as deliciously as Wine. They have the most excellent Water in the World; and out of Rice, Sugar and Dates, they extract their *Arak*, which is a kind of *Aqua vitæ*, much stronger and more pleasant than that which is made in *Europe*.

1638.  
No Wine in  
Guzuratta.  
*Arak*.

But as the Kingdom of *Guzuratta* is furnish'd with Creatures beneficial to man, as to carriage or otherwile, so are there also some which he must have a care of. There is no River but is pester'd with abundance of Crocodiles, called by the Inhabitants *Cayman*, which do much mischief, as well in the Water, as upon the Land among the Cattle, nay, sometimes among Men, whom they surprisè when they go a swimming, or when they go in Boats near the shore; this Creature being so nimble, that a Man hath much ado to escape by running, though it were no hard matter for him, by frequent turnings and windings to avoid his pursuit: for the Crocodile having no *Vertebrae* or joynts either in his neck or back, he cannot turn himself, and thence it comes that most commonly he rather surprisès Men then pursues them. He commonly lurks in the high Grass on the River side, to catch at those who come for Water; and the *Benjans*, who believe that the Souls of those who are thus devour'd by these Creatures, are immediately admitted into Paradise, take no course to destroy them. It is very certain, that in the Ditches of the City of *Pegu* there were Crocodiles above thirty foot in length, and fed so much upon Mans flesh, that no day pass'd but they devour'd some or other, and yet the *Benjans* took no course in the world to prevent it and destroy them. But the King having causèd one to be more particularly observed, which did more mischief alone then all the rest, had it taken and kill'd. There was one had swallow'd down a Woman with all her cloaths about her. They cover their Eggs, having laid to the number of 28 or 30. with Sand, about the change of the Moon, and so leave them till the wane, by which time they are hatch'd; when they uncover them, they kill a great many of the young ones, which hinders them from multiplying, as they would do otherwise to infinity. *Johnston* in his *Natural History* saith, that near *Panama*, in the *West-Indies*, there were found Crocodiles above a hundred foot long. But we shall not here make a digression into Natural History, and ingenuously acknowledge, that those we saw were about twelve or fifteen foot long. The skin, or rather scales of their backs is harder then Armour musket-proof; so that to destroy them, a man must go on one side of them, and run them into the belly. The Inhabitants of the Country affirm, that this Creature is of its own nature cowardly, and that it avoids those who stand to it, and hath courage only when it hath to do with those that have not any, and run away from it.

Hurtful  
creatures.  
*Crocodiles*.  
*Crocodiles*  
30. foot  
long.  
A *Crocodile*  
swallows a  
woman  
with all her  
cloaths.  
How they  
lay their  
Eggs.  
*Crocodiles*  
100. foot  
long.

Another quality which this Country hath; not common with all places, is, that it produces abundance of Snakes and Serpents, which are here very dangerous, and among the rest those, which from a Greek word are called *Amphisbenes*, and have two heads. I must confess I never saw any of them, and expect not that upon my testimony any should condemn the opinion of those, who with much probability affirm, that Nature produces no Creature with two heads, unless she intend to make sport, and frame a Monster; and that their error, who speak of the *Amphisbene*, proceeds only hence, that they have seen Serpents, which, contrary to the ordinary form of all Reptiles, are as big towards the tail as towards the head. We might also very well esteem those somewhat ridiculously conceited, who would have people believe, that these heads command and obey alternately by years, if those of the Country did not affirm as much, and if *Nirembergius*, in his *Natural History*, write, that an Inhabitant of *Madrid*, named *Cortavilla*, had assur'd him that he had seen it: but he doth not himself believe what he adds to that Story; to wit, that this Creature hath under one of its Tongues the Remedy against the Poyson which the other had cast.

*Serpents*.

The Woods are full of Lyons, Leopards, Tigers and Elephants; whereof we shall have occasion to speak elsewhere.

But there is no Creature more common in these parts, as also all over the *Indies*, then the *Batts*, which are as big as Crows with us, nay, there are some about the bigness of our Hens. They are so great an annoyance to Gardens, that people are oblig'd to watch them, for the preservation of the Fruits.

*Batts as big  
as Crows.*

The City of *Amadabat* maintains for the *Mogul's* service, out of its own Revenue, twelve thousand Horse, and fifty Elephants, under the command of a *Chan*, or Governour, who hath the quality of *Radia*, *Rajz*, or *Rasgi*, that is to say, Prince. He who commanded there in my time, was called *Arab-chan*, and about sixty years of age. I was credibly inform'd, that he was worth in Money and Household-stuffe, ten *Cron*, or *Carroas Ropias*, which amount to fifty millions of Crowns, the *Cron* being accounted at a hundred *Lake Ropias*, each

*Amadabat*  
maintains  
12000.  
horse.  
The Governours  
wealth.  
each

1638. each whereof is worth fifty thousand Crowns. It was not long before, that his Daughter, one of the greatest Beauties in the Country, had been married to the *Mughl's* second Son, and the *Chan*, when she went to the Court, had sent her attended by twenty Elephants, a thousand Horfe, and six thousand Waggons, loaden with the richest Stuffs, and whatever else was rare in the Country. His Court consisted of above 500. persons, 400. whereof were his slaves, who serv'd him in his affairs, and were all dieted in the house. I have it from good hands, that his expence in house-keeping amounted to above five thousand Crowns a moneth, not comprehending in that account that of his Stables, where he kept five hundred Horfe and fifty Elephants. The most eminent Persons of his retinue were very magnificently clad, though as to his own person, he was nothing curious, and was content commonly with a Garment of Cotton, as are the other *Indosthans*, unless it were when he went abroad into the City, or took a journey into the Country; for then he went in great state, sitting ordinarily in a rich Chair, set upon an Elephant, cover'd with the richest Tapistry, or Alcatifs of *Persia*, being attended by the Guard of 200. men, having many excellent *Persian* Horses led, and causing several Standards and Banners to be carried before him.

His Court.

His Expence.

Mandelslo visits the Governour of Amadabat.

Their discourse.

October 18. I went along with the *English* Merchant to visit the Governour, whom we found sitting in a Pavilion or Tent which look'd into his Garden. Having caused us to sit down by him, he asked the Merchant who I was: He told him in the *Indosthan* Language, that I was a Gentleman of *Germany*, whom a desire to see forreign Countries, and to improve himself by Travel, had oblig'd to leave his own. That coming into *Persia*, upon occasion of an Embassie sent thither by the Prince my Master, I took a resolution to see the *Indies*, as being the noblest Country in the world; and being come to that City, that I hoped he would not take it ill if I aspir'd to the honour of waiting upon him. The Governour made answer, I was very welcome, that my resolution was noble and generous, and that he pray'd God to blefs and prosper it. He thereupon asked me, whether during my abroad in *Persia*, I had learnt ought of the Language. I reply'd, that I had a greater inclination to the *Turkish* Language, and that I understood it so far as to make a shift to express my self in it. The Governour, who was a *Persian* born, made answer, that it was true indeed, the *Turkish* Language was much more commonly spoken in the *Scach's* Court then that of the Country, and thereupon asked me my age, and how long it was since I left *Germany*. I told him I was 24. years of age, and that I had travelled three years. He reply'd, that he wondred very much my friends would suffer me to travel so young, and asked me whether I had not chang'd my habit by the way; whereto having made answer that I had not, he told me, that it was an extraordinary good fortune, that I had travell'd in that equipage through so many Countries, without meeting with some unhappy accident, and that the *Dutch* and *English*, to prevent any such misfortune, clad themselves according to the fashion of the Country.

After about an hours discourse, we would have risen and taken our leaves of him, but the Governour intreated us to stay and dine with him. He caused some Fruit to be brought, while his people were laying the cloath, which was of Cotton, laid upon a large Carpet of red *Turkie*-leather. The dinner was very noble, and serv'd up and dress'd according to the *Persian* way, the Meat being laid in dishes, all Porcelane, upon Rice of several colours, in the same manner as we had seen at the Court at *Ispahan*. Presently after dinner we came away, but as I was taking my leave of the Governour, he told me in the *Turkish* Language, *Senni dabe kurim*, that is to say, we shall see you again, giving me thereby to understand, that he would be glad of some further discourse with me.

A second visit to the Governour.

Accordingly we went thither again the 20. but I had clad my self according to the mode of the Country, upon the design I had to travel into *Cambaya*, which I could hardly do without changing habit. We found him in the same apartment where we had seen him the time before. He was clad in a White Vestment, according to the *Indian* mode, over which he had another that was longer, of *Brocade*, the ground Carnation lined with white Satin, and above, a Collar of Sables, whereof the Skins were sewed together, so as that the Tails hung down over the back. As soon as he saw us come in, he made us sit down by the Lords that were with him. He was about some business, which hindred him for a while from discoursing with us, yet could I not but observe that he was pleas'd at my change of habit. He dispatch'd several Orders, and sometimes writ himself; yet did not his business take him up, so as to hinder him from taking Tobacco, which he took after the same manner as is elsewhere described in the precedent Travels of the Embassadors, there standing near him a Servant, who with one hand held the Pipe to his mouth, and set fire to it with the other. He quitted that exercise to go and take a view of certain Troops of Horfe and Companies of Foot, which were drawn up in the Court. He would see their

Armes

Armes himself, and caus'd them to shoot at a Mark, thereby to judge of their abilities, and to augment the pay of such as did well at the cost of the others, out of whose pay there was so much abated. So that seeing him thus employ'd, we would have taken our leaves, but he sent us word that we should dine with him, causing in the mean time some Fruit to be sent us, whereof by his order we sent the best part to our Lodging.

Soon after he call'd for a little golden Cabinet, enrich'd with precious Stones, and having taken out two Drawers, out of one he took *Offion*, or *Opium*, and out of the other *Bengi*, a certain Drug, or Powder, made of the leaves and seed of Hemp, which they use to excite luxury. Having taken a small spoonful of each, he sent the Cabinet to me, and told me, that it could not otherwise be, but that, during my aboad at *Ispahan*, I must needs have learnt the use of that Drug, and that I should find that as good as any I had seen in *Persia*. I told him, that I was no competent Judge of it, in regard I had not used it often; however I would then take of it for the Honours sake of receiving it from his hands. I took of it, and the *English* Merchant did the like, though neither of us had ever taken any before, nor did much like it then.

The Governour ask'd me, where I had learnt the *Turkish* Language, and whether I had ever been at *Constantinople*. I told him, I never had been there, but had employ'd the little time of my aboad in the Provinces of *Schirwan*, and at *Ispahan*, in learning that Language, which is as common there as that of the Country. He told me that *Schirwan* was his Country, and understanding that I had been particularly known to *Schach Sefi*, had dined at his Table, and been a hunting with him, he ask'd my judgment of the King of *Persia*, and what I thought worthy commendation or censure in that Prince? I made answer, that he was a Prince of a graceful Aspect and Person, and one that had understanding and courage enough to be obey'd in his Kingdom. He ask'd me, whether he still reign'd as a Tyrant, and continu'd his former cruelties? I answered, that Age having moderated his youthful extravagancies, his government began to be also more moderate.

But the *Chan* reply'd, that *Schach Sefi* had assum'd the Scepter with bloody hands, and that the beginning of his reign had cost the lives of an infinite number of persons, of all conditions and qualities: That Cruelty was hereditary to his Family: That it descended to him from *Scach-Abus*, his Grand-father, and that there was little hope he could rid himself of a quality that was become in a manner natural to him, though he might happily dissemble it for a time: That that was the only reason for which *Alymerdan-Chan*, Governour of *Candahar*, had been forc'd to cast himself into the protection of the *Mogul*, and to deliver up his place to him; as knowing his life was in danger, though he had never done ought against the service of his Prince, and that he was sent for to Court, to augment the number of those Lords whom that Tyrant had put to death: That he was content to believe, that *Schach Sefi* was an understanding person, but that even as to that, there was no more comparison between him and the *Mogul*, then there was between the poverty of the one and the vast wealth of the other, the Prince his Master being able to maintain a War against three Kings of *Persia*. I was loth to enter into any contestation upon so ticklish a subject, and therefore only told him, that it was indeed true, there was not any comparison between the Gold, and the Silver, and Wealth of *Persia*, and what I had already seen of the *Mogul's* Kingdom; but that it must be withall confess'd, that *Persia* had one thing which could not be had elsewhere, and was in effect inestimable, which was the great number of *Kisilbachs*, with whose assistance the King of *Persia* might attempt the conquest of all *Asia*. Which I said purposely, knowing the Governour was a *Kisilbach*, and that he could take no offence at such a discourse. Accordingly he discover'd his satisfaction thereat, not only in saying, that he must grant it to be true, but also, when turning to one of the Lords, who was a *Persian* as well as himself, he said to him, *Walla beksade, jasehi a-damdur, chassa adamlar souer*, that is to say, I believe this young Gentleman hath courage, when he speaks so well of those that have.

By that time we had ended this discourse dinner was brought in. The Carver sat in the middle of the great Vessels whercin the meat was brought up, and with a great spoon put of it into little dishes, to be serv'd up to us. The *Chan* himself would needs also put in some, to assure us of his being pleas'd with our company. The room was full of Military Officers, whereof some stood with Half-pikes in their hands, others sat about a *Tanke* or Cistern which was in the room.

Immediately after dinner we took leave, but the Governour told us, that he intended to give us the divertisement of the Women-dancers of the Country, and that we should pass away the afternoon with him: but some business intervening he could not do it then, and therefore was forc'd to put it off to some other time. But the earnestness I was in to prosecute my travels into *Cambayz*, together with the little satisfaction I found in the lewd

The Governour of Amadabat is Persian born.

But loves not the King of Persia.

Mandelstos's discretion.

1638. and insolent Postures of those Women, whereof I had seen but too much in *Persia*, hindered me from making any acceptance of his proffers.

*A Chara-  
cter of the  
Governour  
of Amada-  
bat.*

The Governour of *Amadabat* was a judicious understanding man, but hasty, and so rigorous, that his Government inclin'd somewhat to cruelty. It happened one day, that the two principal Directors of the *English* and *Dutch* trade there, being invited by him to dinner; a young Gentleman that waited upon the former, comes into the Hall to attend upon his Master; He had on a slash'd doublet, much after the fashion which was worn about 30. years since, which the Governour thought so ridiculous, that he could not forbear laughing at it, and askt the *English* President, in what quality that slash'd Gallant serv'd him, since that according to his habit, he conceiv'd he kept him for his Fool. The President made answer, not without some confusion, that he waited on him in his Chamber, and that he had opened his Doublet in that manner to make way for the Air, the better to avoid the excessive heats of the Country, which the *Europeans* could not well endure. Whereto the Governour reply'd, that that reason gave some satisfaction, but what he most wondred at was, that the *Christians*, who are a wise and understanding people, had not yet found out the way to make their Doublets of several shreds, rather than cut and mangle whole pieces of Stuffles to put themselves into that mode. This jesting with the *English* Merchant put him into so good an humour, that he would needs devote the remainder of the day to sport and divertisement, and thereupon sent for twenty Women-dancers, who as soon as they were come into the room fell a singing and dancing, but with an Activity and exact observation of the cadence, much beyond that of our Dancers upon the Ropes. They had little Hoops or Circles, through which they leap'd as nimbly as if they had been so many Apes, and made thousands of Postures, according to the several soundings of their Musick, which consisted of a *Tumbeck*, or *Timbrel*, a *Haw-boy*, and several *Tabours*. Having danc'd near two hours, the Governour would needs send into the City for another band of Dancers, but the Servants brought word, that they were sick and could not come. This excuse being not taken, he sent out the same Servants, with express order to bring those Prostitutes away by force; but they returning the second time with the same excuse, he order'd they should be cudgell'd. Upon that, they cast themselves at the Governours feet, and acknowledged that it was indeed true, they were not sick, but were at a certain place, where they got Money at a more delightful and easier sport than dancing, and that they absolutely deny'd to come, saying, they knew well enough the Governour would not pay them. He laugh'd at it, but immediately commanded out a party of his Guard to bring them to him, and they were no sooner entred into the Hall ere he ordered their heads to be struck off. They beg'd their lives with horrid cries and lamentations; but he would be obey'd, and caus'd the execution to be done in the room before all the Company, not one of the Lords then present daring to make the least intercession for those Wretches, who were eight in number. The Strangers were startled at the horreur of the Spectacle and inhumanity of the Action; which the Governour taking notice of, fell a laughing, and ask'd them what they were so much startled at? Assure your selves Gentlemen, said he, that if I should not take this course, I should not be long Governour of *Amadabat*. For should I connive once at their disobedience, these *Bete-Seiots*, or Sons of Whores, would play the Masters, and drive me out of the City. 'Tis but prudence in me to prevent their contempt of my Authority, by such examples of severity as these are.

*His cruelty.  
Mandello  
leaves A-  
madabat.*

October 21. I left *Amadabat*, with a Coach and one Saddle-nag, in the company of a young *English* Merchant, who, by order from the President, was to be my Fellow-traveller. The *Rasboutes* make the way between *Amadabat* and *Cambaya* very dangerous, which made me take for my Convoy eight Foot-souldiers arm'd wth Pikes and Bucklers. This kind of Souldiers do also the office of Lacqueys, running just before the Horses, and may be hired for a small matter; for I gave them but eight Crowns for the whole journey, though I had them three dayes, in which time I travell'd thirteen of the Country Leagues.

All the *English* Merchants brought me half a League out of the City, where I saw a sumptuous Tomb, which they call *Salu*. I got that day to the Garden of *Ischiabag*, made in memory of the place where the Sulthan *Mahomet Begoran*, whom we spoke of before, was defeated, and is without all comparison the fairest of any in the *Indies*; but it being dark ere I got thither, I shall forbear the description of it till my return that way, at which time I had the convenience of taking a particular view thereof.

*Tschistbag  
Garden.*

The 22. Having travell'd seven Leagues, I came to the Village of *Serguntra*, where I saw not any thing remarkable, but a great *Tanke*, or Cistern, wherein rain-water is kept all the year.

The 23. After five Leagues travelling, I came to *Cambaya*. I din'd in sight of the City

City among certain Trees, and in the mean time sent one of my Foot-souldiers to a *Broker*, that is to say, one of those *Benjans*, whom the *English* and *Dutch* make use of as Interpreters, and who understand their Language, together with the *Portuguez*, which they learnt by means of the great Commerce that Nation hath had all over the *Indies*. He immediately came in a Coach, and having brought me into the City, lodg'd me at a *Mahumetan* Merchants, where I was very well accommodated; which course I took, because the *English* Factor being from home, I made some difficulty to lodge at the *English* House. As soon as I was got into the City, I desir'd the *Broker* to shew me what was most worth the seeing there.

The City of *Cambaya* lies 16. Leagues from *Broitsebia*, in a sandy place upon the River *Cambaya* side, which makes there a great Bay, into which the River *May*, having pass'd by the Walls thereof, disembogues it self. The Haven is incommodious, though at High-water there be above seven fathom water; but at Low-water, the Ships lye dry in the Sand and Mud that is at the bottom. The City is encompass'd by a very fair Wall of Free-stone, and hath twelve Gates, very large houses, and strait and broad streets, most whereof have Gates which are shut up in the night time. It is much greater then *Surat*, as being at least ten Leagues about. It hath three *Basars* or Market-places, and four noble *Tanks* or Cisterns, able to find the Inhabitants water all the year long.

The Inhabitants are for the most part *Pagans*, *Benjans*, or *Rasboutes*, whereof some apply themselves to Commerce, others to a military life. Their greatest traffick is at *Achim*, *Diu*, *Goa*, *Meca*, and into *Persia*, whither they carry all sorts of Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, and bring back ready Money, both Gold and Silver, to wit, *Ducats*, *Chequins* and *Ryals*; also *Ruynas*, Dates, and other Commodities of those parts. After a walk of two hours, my Conductor carried me out of the City, and shewed me 15. or 16. publick Gardens, but among the rest, one, into which I went on that side that was towards the Sea, by a pair of stairs of Free-stone of many steps. It was enclos'd with a high Wall, and had in it two or three fair Structures, one whereof being over the Gate, had many noble Appartments. In the midl of the Garden there is a very high place, within which was the Sepulchre of the *Mahumetan* who had founded it, and was there buried with all his Family. The Tomb was covered with Marble, and had several *Arabian* Inscriptions: There is not any place in all those parts that hath so noble a prospect as this, not only towards the Sea-side, but also towards the Land, where a man hath the sight of the noblest Champion Country in the World. This is so pleasant a place, that the *Mogul* being one day at *Cambaya*, would needs take up his Lodging in the Garden, and caused the Stones of the Sepulchre to be taken away, that his Tent might be pitch'd there.

While I was taking a particular view of that Structure, came up to us two *English* Merchants, who obligingly reproach'd me with the slur I put upon their Nation, in preferring the House of a *Mahumetan* before their Lodge, as if I had been but poorly entertain'd at *Suratta*, and other places, where I had lodg'd among them. They proffered me their company to walk, and promised to carry me the next morning to a place, where an *Indian* Widow was to be burnt, with her own consent.

I went at night to my Lodging, whither the *Broker* brought several *Alcatifs*, or pieces of Tapistry, quilted Coverlets, Silk-stuffs, Cottons, Vessels, Handles for Knives, Seals, Bracelets, Rings and Buttons of Agat, Cornelian and Jasper, &c. of all sorts of colours, which pleased me very well; but not being in a condition to spare any money, I only bought some few trifles, to keep in favour with my Merchant.

The next day, the *English* Merchants came to my Lodging, whence we went together to the River side, without the City, where this voluntary execution was to be done. The *Womans* Husband was a *Rasboute*, and had been kill'd near *Labor*, 200. Leagues from *Cambaya*. As soon as she had heard of his death, she would needs do his Obsequies, by causing her self to be burnt alive; but whereas the *Mogul* and his Officers are *Mahumetans*, who endeavour by degrees to abolish this heathenish and barbarous Custom, the Governour had a long time oppos'd her desires, under pretence that the news of her Husbands death being uncertain, he could not consent to the doing of an inhumane action, whereof there would afterwards haply be cause to repent. The Governours design was to see, whether time would abate any thing of her passion, and the earnestness she was in to follow her Husband into the other World: but seeing she was daily more and more instant to do it, he permitted her to comply with the Laws of her own Religion.

She was not above twenty years of age, yet we saw her come up to the place of her execution with so much confidence, and a cheerfulness so extraordinary to those who go to present and inevitable death, that I was much inclin'd to believe, that she had dull'd her senses with a dose of *Opium*, which is as commonly used in the *Indies* as in *Persia*.

An Indian  
Widow is  
burnt by her  
own con-  
sent.



1638. In the front of the Proceſſion marched the Country Muſick, conſiſting of Haw-boys and and Timbrels. Then follow'd a great many Maids and Women, ſinging and dancing before the Widow, who was dreſt in her richeſt Cloathing, and had her Fingers, her Armes and Legs loaden with Rings, Bracelets and Carkanets. After her came a confuſed company of Men, Women and Children, and ſo concluded the Proceſſion. She made a ſtop at the Funeral Pile, which had been purpoſely erected for the Ceremony. The Woman had waſh'd her ſelf in the River, that ſhe might meet her Husband in a ſtate of Purity, in regard the body of the deceaſed being not upon the place, ſhe could not accompany it in its paſſage into the other World. The Pile was of the wood of Apricock-trees, among which they had put in ſome Sanders and Cinnamon. Having look'd upon it with a certain contempt, ſhe took leave of her Kindred and Friends, and diſtributed among them the Rings and Bracelets ſhe had about her. I was ſomething near her on horſeback, with the two *Engliſh* Merchants, and I think ſhe perceiv'd in my countenance that I pitied her, whence it came that ſhe caſt me one of her Bracelets, which I had the good hap to catch, and ſtill keep, in remembrance of ſo extraordinary an Action.

As ſoon as ſhe was got upon the Pile, they ſet fire to it, which ſhe perceiving, pour'd on her head a Veſſel of perfum'd Oyl, which the fire immediately taking hold of, ſhe was ſmother'd in an inſtant, ſo as that ſhe was not perceiv'd to make the leaſt wry face at it. Some that were preſent caſt upon her ſeveral Cruſes of Oyl, which ſoon reduc'd the body to aſhes, while the reſt of the Aſſembly fill'd the Air with their cries and ſhouts, ſuch as muſt needs have hindred thoſe of the Widow to be heard, if ſhe had the time to make any in the fire, which had made a ſudden diſpatch of her as if it had been Lightning. The Aſhes were caſt into the River.

How the  
Cuſtom  
came up.

I was told, that this barbarous Cuſtom had been introduc'd among the Pagans of thoſe parts upon this account, that Polygamy occaſioning much heart-burning among the Women, ariſing either from the little ſatisfaction they could have from a man, who is oblig'd to divide his affections, or the jealouſie, which is unavoidable among Rivals of that Sex; it happened that the Women procur'd their Husbands deaths; and 'twas found, that in one year there had been four Men buried for one Woman; ſo that to oblige them to be careful of their Husbands lives, it was ordered, that ſuch as were deſirous to be accounted honeſt Women, ſhould be engag'd to accompany their Husbands at their death, and to be burnt together with their bodies. Certain it is, that the *Persians*, and other neighbouring Nations, have ever had ſo particular a veneration for the fire, that it is not to be admir'd they ſhould chuſe rather to reduce their deceaſed to aſhes, than bury them. I ſay, this Obligation of dying with their Husbands was impoſed only on thoſe Women who ſtood upon the reputation of honeſty, yet ſo as they were engag'd thereto only by a principle of honour, there being not any puniſhment to be inflict'd on ſuch as refus'd to follow them in that dreadful journey, other than that they were not admitted into the company of Perſons of quality, as being looked on as infamous Women. They who are not ſo ſcrupulous, and ſtand not ſo much upon the punctilio of Honour, and prefer their lives before their reputation, do ordinarily ſtrike in among the publick Dancers.

The Ceremony being over, I went to ſee one of the chiefſt Merchants of the City, nam'd *Myrſabeg*, to whom I had Letters of recommendation from the Director of the *Engliſh* Commerce at *Amadabat*. He was not at home, but I found him on the River ſide looking on ſome Workmen he had about a Ship which was then a building. He receiv'd the Letters with much civility, and having cauſed me to ſit down by him, he enquir'd after my health, the ſucceſs of my Travels, and the Deſign I was engag'd in. He was a *Mahumetan*, and ſpoke to me at firſt by the means of my Interpreter; but having learnt from him, that I underſtood the *Turkiſh* Language, he would make no further uſe of the *Broker*, and ſpoke to me in that. I told him, that I had not met with any miſfortune by the way, and that I intended to be gone the next morning, as having no further buſineſs that might detain me at *Cambaya*, and that I had not ſtay'd there that day, had it not been for the honour of ſeeing him, and delivering him the Letters directed to him. He made answer, that it very much troubled him, that the ſmall ſtay I intended to make at *Cambaya*, permitted him not to expreſs what he would do for me, not only upon the account of the Letters I had brought him from his Friend, but alſo upon that of my own merit.

The Civility  
of an  
Indoſthan  
Mahumetan.

While we were engag'd in theſe Compliments, came up to us the Kings Lieutenant, who alighting, ſaluted me with much civility. Having made the ſame queſtions to me as the Merchant had done before, and receiv'd the ſame answer I had made the other, he told me, I ſhould do him a great kindneſs, if I gave him a viſit at his own Lodgings, which I promiſed to do. *Myrſabeg* told me, that he would come, and know of me, wherein he might ſerve me, and ſo I took leave of them both, with a deſign to ſpend the remainder

of

of the morning in walking about the City. As I rose from dinner were brought in the Presents of *Myrsabeg*, which were two Muttons, twelve Capons and Pullets, a basket of Eggs, a Pannier of *Cocos*, a great bundle of Sugar-canes, and a very fair Vessel of *Agat*. I requited his pains who conducted those that brought in the Present, with a small acknowledgment, and told him, I would not fail coming to thank his Master. I thought to have done it the next morning, but he prevented me, and surpriz'd me, giving order for my departure. He told me, it would have troubled him much, I should have departed ere he had taken leave of me. I thank'd him for the honour he did me, and the Presents he had sent me, and intreated him to accept of a Pocket-pistol, made at *London*, which was a very neat one, excusing my self, that as to the condition I was then in, it was impossible for me to acknowledge, as I would desire, the kindness he had shewn me. He made answer, that it was unhandſome to receive Presents from a Stranger, but that it would be a greater incivility to refuse what I proffer'd him, that he was far from deserving what I then made him, but being bestow'd with so much kindness and obligation, he could by no means forbear accepting of it.

I give a particular account of this answer, that the Reader may judge thereby, whether those persons who are so well furnish'd with Complements of this Nature, should be look'd on as Barbarians: and no doubt but he will be much more surpriz'd, when I shall tell him, that there is more civility to be found among the *Indians*, then there is among those who pretend to the sole possession of it, but seldom accompany it with the sincerity which ever attends it in the *Indies*, where such as are friends, are such without any shiness or reservation, to those to whom they have promised friendship, as they are, on the other side, irreconcilable enemies to such as have injur'd them.

I intreated *Myrsabeg* to sit down, and caus'd to be presented to him a Box of *Bettelé*, according to the custom of the Country, where they never entertain any friend, but there is of that Drug brought him, it being so commonly used all over the *Indies*, as that Bread cannot be more in *Europe*; in so much, that it may be truly said, that it is one of the most advantageous, and most considerable things of any produced in the *Indies*. The *Malabares* call it *Bettelé*, the Inhabitants of *Guzuratta*, *Pam*, and those of *Malacca*, *Sir. Avicenna*, an *Arabian* Physician, calls it *Tambul*. Its predominant qualities are hot and dry, and it is a Plant, whose leaves are like those of the Orange-tree, save that they are not quite so broad, and when they are in their full ripeness, they are of a brownish red colour. The stalk of the Plant is very weak, whence it comes that it is supported by a stake, or set near some other tree, to which it clings and spreads about the branches, as Ivy does. It is commonly joyn'd to that Tree which they call *Areca*, upon this account, that the *Indians* never use the leaves of *Bettelé* without the fruit of *Areca*. This Plant is very delicate, and must be cultivated with much care and tenderness, especially as to the watering of it; for it must not have either too much heat, or too much moisture, in as much as it is observed, that it grows not in hot places, such as *Mozambique* and *Zoffala*, nor yet in cold Countries; as for instance, in the more Northerly Provinces of *China*. It does not bring forth any fruit in *Guzuratta*, but in *Malacca* it does, in form like a Lizards tail, and the Inhabitants eat of it, and think it not unpleasant. In all other places it brings forth only leaves, which are sold in bundles by the dozen, and they keep fresh a long time. The *Indians* eat of them at any time of the day, as also in the night, both men and women, insomuch that no person of any mean condition, but spends two or three dozen of leaves a day. But in regard this Drug is of it self very bitter, they put into every leaf an *Areca*-nut, the predominant qualities whereof are cold and dry. This is that which *Avicenna* calls *Fausel*, and the Tree that bears it is not much less then that of the *Cocos*, which is commonly called the *Indian* Palm-tree. The Husk wherein the Fruit is enclosed, is smooth on the out-side, but within rugged and downy, as that of the *Cocos*, and the Fruit it self is of the bigness of a Wall-nut, but the kernel is no bigger then a Nutmeg, which is not much unlike, not only without, but also as to the veins, which are to be seen when it is cut. They mingle with it some of that Lime which is made of the Shells of Muscles, and so chew them together to get out the juyce of it, which they swallow, and spit out what remains in their mouths. They use it at any time of the day, but especially after meals, as conceiving it promotes digestion and prevents vomiting. Those Forreigners that have liv'd any time in the *Indies*, accustom themselves thereto out of compliange, but above all, the *Portuguez* Women at *Goa*, who are perpetually employ'd about this Exercise, chewing this Drug, as Cows and such other Cattel chew the Cud. It does indeed discolour the Teeth, which by the frequent use of it become of a red colour; but that is one of the Beauties of the *Indian* Women. No corner of a Street but it may be had ready prepar'd, so that a man need not to be troubled about the quantity he is to make use of. Great Lords have it brought after them in

1638. Boxes of Lacque or Silver, and take of it as they go along the Streets, nay many times when they are about business of consequence, and that in any place. They are also of a belief, that this Drug fortifies the natural heat, and accordingly account it one of their delicacies; upon which account it is, that they abstain from it when they are in affliction, and particularly when the *Moguls* and *Mahumetans* celebrate their Feasts.

*Myrsabeg* having taken a little of it, took leave of me, and I got into my Coach, intending to call on the Kings Lieutenant at his own house, as I pass'd by, in regard I was to go by his door: but I met him in the Street in his Coach, there being carried before him three Banners of Taffata, Red and Green, charg'd with flames of Silver; as soon as he perceived me, he turn'd his Coach, and oblig'd me to go along with him to his House. His House was seated in the most delightful quarter of the City, having two Gates to enter in at, one whereof led into a spacious Court, the other into a fair Garden, about the Walls whereof there was one continued structure. He treated me with *Bettelé* and Palm-wine; but having time little enough to perform the journey I intended that day, I staid not with him above half an hour. He sent one of his Menial servants after me to give order to the Officer of the Custom-house, and the Guards at the Gate, that I might pass without paying ought.

*Comes to Serguntra.* I came in the Evening to *Serguntra*, but it was so late, that the *Benjans*, who burn no Candles for fear that Flies and such other Insects might be destroyed thereby, would not open their Shops to sell me any forrage for my Beasts. It is much different from what is commonly used in *Europe*; For the Country bringing forth no Oats, and very little Grass, they accustom their Beasts to another kind of sustenance, and keep them with a certain Paste, which they make up of Sugar and Meal, into which they sometimes put a little Butter. We were going to break open one of their Shops, but ere we had done any harm, one of the *Benjans* brought us some forrage.

*What they keep travelling Beasts with.*

The next day before noon, we travell'd five Leagues to a great Village, where we baited our Beasts, giving to each of the Oxen a pound and a half, and to the Horses two pounds of Sugar, mixt with Meal. Thence we got to the Garden of *Tzietbagh*, where we baited again.

*Tzietbagh Garden.*

This Garden, which, no doubt, is the most delightful of any in the *Indies*, is also the most considerable of any in the whole Country, not only in regard of the Victory which the *Mogul* gain'd in that place, over the last King of *Guzuratta*, as we have mentioned before, and which gave it the name of *Tzietbagh*, that is to say, the *Garden of Victory*; but also in respect of its magnificent Structures, and the noble Fruits which grow there in great abundance. It is seated in one of the most pleasant places in the world, upon the side of a great Pool, having on the side toward the water several Pavillions, and on that towards *Amadabat*, a very high Wall. The sumptuousness of the buildings speaks the great Spirit of the Prince that founded it, as doth also the *Caravansera* adjoining thereto.

There are in the Garden many Allyes of Fruit-trees; as Orange and Citron-trees of all sorts, Pomegranate-trees, Date-trees, Almond-trees, Mulberry-trees, the Trees which bear *Tamarinds*, *Mangas*, and *Cocos*, besides many other not known to us; and there was such abundance of them, and they were planted so close, that we could walk about the Garden in the shade, which was a great refreshing to us: The branches of all these Trees were infinitely stor'd with Apes, which added not a little to the divertisement and satisfaction of our walk. We staid no longer in it then while our Horses were baiting, in regard we were resolv'd to get that day to *Amadabat*, whither we came at night. I was that day on horse-back, and by way of sport, would needs frighten the Apes, which plaid a thousand tricks about us, in so much that we began to think them troublesome. I shot two of them with my Pistol, whereat the rest were so incens'd, that they seem'd to conspire together, as if they had a design to set upon us. Their cries and distorted looks discover'd how much they were inclin'd to do us some mischief, in so much that about twenty of the biggest of them followed us for above half a League; but perceiving us ready to turn towards them, they got among the Trees, and at last gave over their pursuit of us.

*Goes for Agra.* Coming to *Amadabath*, I met with a *Cassila*, or *Caravan*, of about 200. Merchants, *English* and *Benjans*, which was going to *Agra*, the chief City of all the *Mogul's* country. The *English* President had ordered him, who had the conduct of the *Caravan*, to take me along with him, and the Director of the Commerce at *Amadabath*, added thereto his particular recommendations; so that those Merchants received me into their company, and I went along with them thence on the 28. of *October*.

The weather and the way were very fair, but I met with so few Villages, that the first I have any account to give of, was that of *Paingat*; and the sixth day after our departure

from

from *Amadabath*, we came to the City of *Heribath*, which is fifty Leagues distant from it. This City is not very big, and hath neither Gates nor Walls, as having been razed by *Temurleng*, or *Tamberlane*, as had been also the *Cattle*, whereof the ruines are yet to be seen upon a high Mountain, not far from the City. Between this City and that of *Damtiges*, which is distant from that of *Heribath* other fifty Leagues, we met a *Caffila* of *Benjan* Merchants, who told us, they had been set upon by 200. High-way-men, of the *Rasboutes*, who had forc'd them to ransom themselves at a hundred *Ropias*, and that we should do well to stand upon our guard, inasmuch as the day before they had seen a hundred more of them, who having understood from them what they had paid their Camrades, had said no more to them, and only took away one of their Oxen; but that they were gone to joyn with the former, and that they would not fail to set upon us. We made our advantage of this Intelligence, and caused our Waggon to be fastned together, and the Souldiers that guarded them were so disposed, as that they might relieve one another, without the least fear of any disorder. Near a certain Village we met with fifty of those rascally Companions, but they thought us so well arm'd, and so resolv'd to stand upon our advantage to defend our selves, that they passed by without saying ought to us, yet discovering withall by their march, that they were come only to take a view of us. We understood afterwards, how that returning by the same Village, they had said, that if we had been at a little further distance from it, they would have disputed the way with us.

Fifty Leagues thence, we came near a Village called *Syedek*, which had in it a very strong Castle. And whereas most of our Beasts were extreemly wearied, by reason of the great dayes journeys we had made, we ordered that some of the Oxen and Waggon should go before. But they were hardly got into a little bottom that was in the way, not above six hundred paces from us, ere they were set upon by ten *Rasboutes*, who had lain in ambush behind a little Hill, and at the first onset wounded two *Benjans*, and were driving away the Waggon, which they had before turn'd out of the Road, when we discovered them afar off, and sent to them some of our Souldiers, who forced the Robbers to forsake what they had taken. After this we met with no misfortune, and came safely to *Agra*, where I took up my quarters among the *English*, whose Civilities to me here were consonant to what I had received from them in other places.

The *Mogul*, or great King of *Indosthan*, does often change the place of his abode, inso-much that there is no City in all his Kingdom, of any considerable account, where he hath not his Palaces; but he delights not so much in any as *Agra*, which, to do it right, is indeed the noblest City in all his Dominions. It lies 28. degrees on this side the Line, in the Province of *Indosthan*, upon the River *Gemini*, which falls into the *Ganges*, above the Kingdom of *Bengala*. It is at least twice as big as *Ispahan*, and it is as much as a Man can do to ride about it on horse-back in a day. It is fortified with a good Wall, of a kind of red Free-stone; and a Ditch, which is above thirty fathom broad. Its Streets are fair and spacious, and there are some of them vaulted, which are above a quarter of a League in length, where the Merchants and Tradesmen have their Shops, distinguished by their Trades and the Merchandises which are there sold; every Trade, and every Merchant having a particular Street and Quarter assigned him. There are in it fifteen *Meidans* and *Basars*, whereof the most spacious is that which is before the Castle, where may be seen sixty great Guns of all sizes, but not kept in any order so as to be made use of. There is also in that place a high Pole, as at the *Meidan* of *Ispahan*, where the Court Lords, and sometimes the *Mogul* himself divert themselves with shooting at the Parrot fastned at the top of it. There are in the City fourscore *Caravanseras*, for the accommodation and convenience of Forreign Merchants, most of them three Stories high, with very noble Lodgings, Store-houses, Vaults and Stables belonging to them, together with Galleries and private Passages for the correspondence and communication of the Chambers. Every one of them hath a certain person, whose charge it is to lock them up, and to take care that the Merchandises be safely kept. He does also supply the place of a Sutler, and sells all sorts of Provision, Forrage, and Wood, to those that lodge in them.

And whereas the *Mogul*, and most of the greatest Lords about his Court, profess the *Mahometan* Religion, there is also in *Agra* a very great number of *Metschid*, or *Mosqueys*, and among the rest seventy great ones, of which the six principal they call *Metschid-adine*, because that it is in them they do their Devotions on Holy-days.

In one of these last named, is to be seen the Sepulchre of one of their Saints, called *Seander*, and they say he is of the Posterity of *Aaly*. In another of them may be seen the Sepulchre of another Saint, who being 30. foot in length; and 16. in breadth, must needs have been one of the mightiest Gyants that ever were talk'd of. His Tomb was cover'd all over with

i 638

Heribath.

Damtiges:

Comes to  
Agra.Agra de-  
scribed:It hath its  
Market-  
places.80. Carav-  
anseras.

Mosqueys.

The Sepul-  
chre of a  
Gyant.

with

1638. with little Flags, and we were told he had been one of their Heroes, who had sometime done wonders in the wars. To this place there are great Pilgrimages made, insomuch that the Devotions of the Pilgrims do, by the Offerings they make, very much augment the wealth of that *Mosquey*, the Revenue whereof is very great without those advantages. There are daily maintain'd in it a great number of poor people, so that it may be truly said, that the Devotions done there are not inferiour to those done at the Sepulchre of *Schich Sefi* at *Ardebil*. These *Metzids*, and the Courts which depend on them, serve also for so many Sanctuaries to persons guilty of any capital Crimes, as also to such as fear imprisonment for their Debt. These are the *Allacapi* of the *Persians*, and are called by the *Indians*, *Allader*, and the priviledges of them in the *Indies*, are equal to those the *Allacapi* are endued with in *Persia*, insomuch that the *Mogul* himself, though his power be absolute, cannot force a man out of these Sanctuaries, be his crime of ever so heynous a nature, by reason of the Veneration which these people have for their Saints.

Sanctuaries

800. Baths. There are numbred in the City of *Agra* above eight hundred Baths, or Hot-houses, from which there comes in yearly to the *Mogul* a very considerable sum of money, occasioned hence, that this kind of Purification making one of the principal parts of their Religion, there passes not a day, but that these places are frequented by an infinite number of persons.

The Mogul's Palace described.

The great Lords about the Court, who are called *Rasgi*, or *Rajas*, have their Houses and Palaces in the City, besides their Country-houses, all magnificent, both as to structure and household-stuffe. The King hath several Gardens and Houses without the City, whither he often retires himself with his Women-dancers, who dance before him stark naked. But there is not any thing gives a greater demonstration of the greatness of this Monarch, then his Palace, which stands upon the River *Gemini*, and is near four Leagues about. It is excellently well fortified, according to the fortification of that Country, with a Wall of Freestone, and a great Ditch, having at every Gate a Draw-bridge, the Avenues whereof are also very well fortified, especially at the North-gate. The Gate which leads to the *Basar* is on the West-side, and is called *Cistery*. Under this Gate is the *Diwan*, or the place of publick Judicature; and there is adjoining to it a spacious Hall, where the principal *Visier* dispatches and seals all Orders for the ordinary and extraordinary Levies of men, whereof the Originals are kept at the said place. As soon as a man is come within this Gate, he finds himself in a spacious Street, having Shops on both sides, which leads directly to the *Mogul's* Palace, which is called *Derbar*. The Gate by which a man enters into it is called *Achobarke Derwage*, that is to say, *King Achobar's Gate*, and there is such a respect observed at it, as that, the Kings Sons only excepted, all other Lords, what quality soever they are of, are obliged to alight from their Horses, and to go in a foot. It is in this quarter that the Women are lodged, who divert the King and his Family with their singing and dancing. The fourth Gate, which is called *Derfame*, leads to the River, and thither it is that the *Mogul* comes every morning to worship the Sun at his rising. It is on that side also, that the Grandees of the Kingdom, who are about the Court, come every day to do their submissions to the King, going up to a little eminent place, whence the King may take the more particular notice of them. The *Hadys*, or Commanders of Horse, do also give their attendance there, but they stand at a greater distance, and make not their approaches, but upon the Kings express Order, who comes also to this place to see the fighting of the Lyons, Elephants, Bulls and other wild Beasts, it being his ordinary divertisement every day, Friday only excepted, which he spends in his Devotions. Besides all this, there is yet another Gate, which leads into the Guard-Hall, which they call *Artesanna*, where the Officers keep a Guard, and relieve one the other by weeks. There is a passage through this Hall into a paved Court, at the further end whereof there is, under a Portal, a row of silver Pillars, where there stands a particular Guard, which keeps the people from getting within it, and permits only the Great Lords that belong to the Court to enter there.

The Mogul worships the Sun.

There it was I met with the *Persian* Servant who run away from me at *Suratta*, and who proffered me to do me any service lay in his power, during my aboad at *Agra*; nay, would have brought me within the Pillars before mentioned, but the Guards would not permit it. A man must go within these Pillars to get to the *Mogul's* Chamber, where may be seen, within another row of lesser Pillars, all of Gold, the Throne of that great Prince, made of massie Gold, and enrich'd with Diamonds, Pearls, and other precious Stones. Above the Throne there is a Gallery, where the King shews himself every day, and receives their Complaints who have any violence or injury done them. Those who have any Complaints to make, ring one of the little Bells which are hung up above those Pillars; but unless a man have excellent good Evidence to prove what he alledges, it will be dangerous

The Mogul's Throne.

gerous to offer at it, for he will hazard his own life. The Kings Sons only, who give him Air with a kind of Fan, and keep off the Flies, and the Grand *Vifiter*, are permitted to come within those Pillars; and there is no person to go into any of the inner Lodgings, but the *Godia*, or Eunuchs, who wait on the Ladies of the *Seraglio*, and are in number about a thousand or twelve hundred. 1638. The Seraglio.

There is also within this Castle another Apartment, which is known by a great Tower; the covering whereof is of Gold, which shews what excessive wealth is enclosed within it, in eight spacious Vaults, which are full of Gold, Silver and precious Stones, whereof the value is in a manner inestimable.

I was credibly informed, that the *Mogul*, who lived in my time, had a Treasure, which amounted to above fifteen hundred Millions of Crowns; and I have an Inventory of the Treasure which was found at the death of *Schach Achobar*, great Grand-father of *Schach Choram*, as well in coyned Gold and Silver, as in Lingots and Bars, Plate, precious Stones, Brocadoes and other Stuffles, Purcelane Books, Ammunition, Armes, &c. so faithfully drawn up, that for the Readers further satisfaction, I shall not think it amiss to insert it here. The Mogul's Treasures.

This King *Achobar* had ordered the Coynage of a certain sort of Money of 25. 50. and a hundred *Toles*, which amounted to two thousand twelve and a half, four thousand twenty five, and eight thousand and fifty Crowns the piece, which was coined accordingly, to the sum of six Millions, nine hundred and seventy thousand *Massas*, which make ninety seven Millions, five hundred and eighty *Ropias*, or, forty eight Millions, seven hundred and ninety thousand Crowns. A sort of money of eight thousand Crowns the piece.

One hundred Millions of *Ropias*, or fifty Millions of Crowns, in a kind of Money, which from the said Kings name, is called *Achobar Ropias*. Fifty Millions in ready money.

Two hundred and thirty Millions in another kind of money, which they call *Peyser*, thirty whereof make a *Ropia*, and sixty a Crown: so that what was found in *Peyser* amounted to seven hundred sixty six thousand, six hundred sixty six *Ropias*, and twenty Pence, which amount to three hundred eighty three thousand, three hundred thirty three Crowns, and ten Pence. A Million of Livres in small money.

In Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, Saphires, Pearls, and other precious Stones, to the value of sixty Millions, twenty thousand and one and twenty *Ropias*, or, thirty Millions, two hundred and sixty thousand, and twenty six Crowns. Thirty Millions in precious Stones.

In Figures and Statues (all of Gold) of Elephants, Camels, Horses, and other Creatures, to the value of nineteen Millions, six thousand seven hundred eighty five *Ropias*, or nine Millions, five hundred and three thousand, three hundred seventy Crowns and a half. Nine Millions in Statues, &c.

In Household-stuffe, and gold Plate, as Dishes, drinking Cups, Basons, Ewers, &c. to the value of eleven Millions, seven hundred thirty three thousand, seven hundred and ninety *Ropias*, and a third part of a *Ropia*, which amounts, to five Millions, eight hundred sixty six thousand, eight hundred ninety five Crowns and five Pence. Six millions in Plate.

In Household-stuffe, consisting of Bras and Copper, fifty one thousand, two hundred twenty five *Ropias*, or twenty five thousand, six hundred twelve Crowns and a half. 250000 Crowns in Copper Vessels.

In Purcelane, and Vessels of sealed Earth, and others, to the value of two Millions, five hundred and seven thousand, seven hundred forty seven *Ropias*, or, one Million, two hundred fifty three thousand, eight hundred seventy three Crowns and a half. 1200000 Crowns in Purcelane.

In Brocadoes, and other Stuffles of Gold and Silver, as also in those of Silk and Cottons, and such as come from *Persia*, *Turkey* and *Europe*, and those made in *Guzuratta*, fifteen Millions, five hundred and nine thousand, nine hundred seventy nine *Ropias*, which amount to seven Millions, seven hundred fifty four thousand, nine hundred eighty nine Crowns and a half. Near eight Millions in Stuffles.

In Woollen-clothes that came from *Europe*, *Persia* and *Tartary*, five hundred and three thousand, two hundred fifty two *Ropias*, or two hundred fifty one thousand, six hundred twenty six Crowns. In woollen Clothes 500000 Crowns.

In Tents, Hangings, Tapistry, and other Household-stuffe of that kind, as well for the City as the Country, nine Millions, nine hundred twenty five thousand, five hundred forty five *Ropias*, which amount to four Millions, nine hundred sixty two thousand, seven hundred seventy two Crowns and a half. 5000000 in Tents, &c.

Four and twenty thousand Manuscripts, so richly bound, that they were valued at six Millions, four hundred sixty three thousand, seven hundred thirty one *Ropias*; that is, three Millions, two hundred thirty one thousand, eight hundred sixty five Crowns and a half. Above 3000000 in Books.

1638. In Artillery, Powder, Bullets, and other Ammunition, to the value of eight Millions, five hundred seventy five thousand, nine hundred seventy one *Ropias*, that is, four Millions, two hundred eighty seven thousand, nine hundred eighty five Crowns and a half.

Near four millions of Crowns in Arms. In defensive and offensive Armes, as Swords, Bucklers, Pikes, Bows, Arrows, &c. to the value of seven Millions, five hundred fifty five thousand, five hundred twenty five *Ropias*, which amount to three Millions, seven hundred seventy seven thousand, seven hundred fifty two Crowns and a half.

In Saddles and Harness 1200000. Crowns. In Saddles, Bridles and Stirrups, and other Harness belonging to Horses, of Gold and Silver, to the value of two Millions, five hundred twenty five thousand, six hundred forty eight *Ropias*, or one Million two hundred sixty two thousand, eight hundred twenty four Crowns.

In Coverings for Horses, 2500000. Crowns. In Covering-clothes for Horses and Elephants, embroidered with Gold, Silver and Pearls, five Millions of *Ropias*, which amount to two Millions, and five hundred thousand Crowns.

Amount in all is 174113793 Crowns. All these sums cast up together, come to three hundred forty eight Millions, two hundred twenty six thousand, three hundred eighty six *Ropias*; that is, one hundred seventy four Millions, a hundred and thirteen thousand, seven hundred ninety three Crowns.

But this came not any thing near the Treasure which *Scach Choram* was possessed of, at the time of my Travels in those Parts. This Wealth is more and more augmented every day, not so much out of the ordinary Revenue coming in from the great Kingdoms he hath, (in regard that as his ordinary Expence abates not any thing of his Treasure; so is it seldom seen that he increases it, by ought remaining at the years end of his Revenue.) as by the Presents which are made him, and the Escheats falling to him at the death of great Lords and Favourites, who make the *Mogul* Heir to what they had gotten by his Favour, insomuch that the Children have no hope to enjoy ought of their Fathers Estates, either Real or Personal. For the *Mogul's* Authority is such, and his Power so Absolute, that the Estates of all his Subjects are at his disposal; and thence it comes, that only his will decides all differences arising among them, they having no other Law, then implicitly to submit to what he ordains. He hath the absolute disposal of their Lives and Fortunes, and thence it is, that upon his meer Order and Command, the greatest Lords are dragg'd to Execution, and their Estates, Charges and Governments taken away from them.

No hereditary charge or dignity in the *Mogul's* Country. There is no hereditary Dignity in all his Country. That of *Rasgi*, or *Raja*, which he bestows rather upon the account of Merit than Birth, is Personal, as that of *Chan* in *Perfis*, and is not deriv'd to Posterity, but by the recommendation of Vertue. Not that it is to be inferred hence, that the *Mogul* does exclude from Charges the Children of such as have done him good service; but he gives them lesser charges, by which they may advance themselves to the chiefest in the Kingdom, if either an extraordinary Vertue, or the Princes Favour call them thereto.

The chief Officers. The chiefest Offices of the Kingdom are those of principal *Visir*, which is somewhat like that of Chancellourship elsewhere; Chief of the Eunuchs, who is as it were Lord High Steward; the Treasurer, the principal Secretary of State; the General of the Elephants, and the Overseer of the Household-stuffe, Tents and precious Stones. These are of the Princes Privy Council, whereto is sometimes also called the *Couteval*, who is as it were the chief Judge, and commands the *Mogul's* Guard. The Council sits in the night, from seven of the clock till nine, in a Hall, which they call *Gafalean*. No day almost passes, but the *Mogul* is to be seen, in the morning, at Sun-rising, at which time the Lords of the Court salute him with their *Patschach Salammet*; as also about Noon, when he comes to see the Beasts fight, and in the Evening, when he comes to a certain Window to behold the Sun-setting; with whom he retires himself with the noise of a great number of Drums and Timbrels, and the Acclamations of the people, who wish him a long and happy life.

The *Mogul's* Revenue. It is to be found among the Registers of the Kingdom, that only the Provinces of *Candahar*, *Cabul*, *Guzuratta*, *Cassimer*, *Barampaur*, *Dely*, *Bengala*, *Agra*, *Orix*, and some others, bring in of yearly Revenue, one hundred seventy four Millions, and five hundred thousand *Ropias*, which amount to fourscore and seven Millions, and two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns; and that the Province of *Guzuratta* alone is able to raise fourscore and ten thousand Horse; *Cambaya* twelve thousand; *Kabul* as many; *Orix* fourscore thousand; and *Dely* one hundred and fifty thousand; besides those which may be raised out of the other Provinces, whereof I could get no certain Accompt. All this

*Milisia.*

*Militia* is divided into several Regiments, whereof some are of fifteen or twelve thousand Horse, which are for the Kings Sons, and the principal Persons of the Kingdom, who have also the Command of these Bodies, which consist of but two, three, or four thousand Horse.

The *Mogul*, *Scach Choram*, when he went in Person, in the year 1630. against *Chan Chan*, had an Army of one hundred forty four thousand and five hundred Horse, besides Elephants, Camels, Mules, and Horses for the Train. That Army was divided into four Brigades, which yet kept all together, that only excepted which was about the Kings Person at *Barampour*. The first was commanded by *Schaast-Chan*, the Son of *Affaph-Chan*, and consisted of several Regiments, to wit, that of *Schaast-Chan*, which was of five thousand Horse.

That of his Father consisting also of five thousand Horse; all <i>Rasboites</i> .	5000
<i>Sadoch Chan</i> .	3000
<i>Myrsa Yedt Madaffer</i> .	3000
<i>Giasar Chan</i> .	2500
<i>Godia Saber</i> .	2000
<i>Seid Jaffer</i> .	2100
<i>Jaster Chan</i> .	1000
<i>Mahmud Chan</i> .	1000
<i>Alawerdi Chan</i> .	2000
<i>Safdel-Chan Badary</i> .	700
<i>Myrsa-Seer-Seid</i> .	500
<i>Baaker-Chan</i> .	500

Whereto were added besides, four thousand six hundred *Mansebdars*, in several loose Companies.

The second Body, under the Command of *Eradet-Chan*, consisted of the following Regiments.

That of <i>Eradet-Chan</i> , of	4000
<i>Rau-Donda</i> .	1000
<i>Dorcadas</i> .	1200
<i>Kerous</i> .	1200
<i>Ram Tschend Harran</i> .	1200
<i>Mustapha-Chan</i> .	1000
<i>Jakout-Chan</i> .	2000
<i>Killoufly</i> .	3000
<i>Sidi Fakir</i> .	1000
<i>Ecka Berkendas</i> .	1000
<i>Fogi-Rasgi</i> , the Son of <i>Lala Berling</i> .	7000
<i>Teluk-Tschaud</i> .	400
<i>Fakoet-Beg</i> .	400

Three other Lords commanded each two hundred Horse.

*Aganour*, *Chabonecan*, *Babouchan*,  
*Seid-Camel*, *Sidiali*, and *Sadsed-Chan*, each five hundred Horse.

So that this Body consisted of 28000

The third Body, under the Command of *Raja Gedding*, consisted of the following Regiments,

<i>Raja-Gedding</i> .	3000
<i>Raja-Bideldas</i> .	3000
<i>Oderam</i> .	3000
<i>Raja-Biemsor</i> .	2000
<i>Madesing</i> , Son of <i>Ram Rattung</i> .	1000
<i>Raja-Ros-Affou</i> .	1000
<i>Badouria Raja-Bhozo</i> .	1000
<i>Raja-Kristensing</i> .	1000
<i>Raja Sour</i> .	1000
<i>Raja-T'Chettering</i> .	500
<i>Wauroup</i> .	500
<i>Raja-Odsing</i> .	5000
And under several other <i>Rajs</i> .	4500

That Brigade, which was about the Kings Person at *Barampour*, and to be as it were a Reserve, consisted of one and forty thousand Horse; to wit,

*Haddis* and *Berken-Dasse*.

15000  
*Afaph*.



1638.

<i>Asaph-Chan.</i>	5000
<i>Rauratti.</i>	4000
<i>Wafir-Chan.</i>	3000
<i>Mabot-Chan.</i>	3000
<i>Godia Abdul Hessen.</i>	3000
<i>Aftel-Chan.</i>	2000
<i>Serdar-Chan.</i>	2005
<i>Raja Jessing.</i>	2000
<i>Feddy-Chan.</i>	1000
<i>Jeffer.</i>	1000
<i>Mockly-Chan.</i>	1000
<i>Serif-Chan.</i>	1000
<i>Seid Allem.</i>	1000
<i>Amiral.</i>	1000
<i>Raja Ramdas.</i>	1000
<i>Tork Taes-Chan.</i>	1000
<i>Mier Femla.</i>	1000
<i>Myrsa Abdulac.</i>	500
<i>Mahmud-Chan.</i>	500
<i>Myrsa Maant Cher.</i>	500
<i>Ghamaes-Chan.</i>	1000
<i>Moried-Chan.</i>	1000

And under the Command of several other Lords, of their quality, whom they call *Ommeraudes.* 10000  
 The total of the Horfe 62500.

*The Arms of the Cavalry* The offensive Arms of the Horfe are, the Bow, the Quiver, having in it forty or fifty Arrows, the Javeline, or a kind of long-headed-Pike, which they dart with great exactness, the Cymitar on one side, and the Ponyard on the other: and the defensive is the Buckler, which they have alwayes hanging about their necks.

They have no Fire-Arms with Wheels, nor yet Fire-locks, but their Infantry are expert enough at the Musket. Those among the Foot, who have no Muskets, have besides their Bows and Arrows, a Pike ten or twelve foot long, with which they begin the fight, by darting it at the Enemy; instead of using it in opposition to the Horfe, as is done in *Europe*. Some among them have Coats of Mail about them, which come down to their knees: but there are very few make use of Head-pieces, in regard they would be very troublesome, by reason of the excessive heats in those parts. They know nothing of the distinction of Van-guard, main Battle, and Rear-guard, and understand neither Front nor File, nor make any Battalion, but fight confusedly without any Order.

*Observe no order in fighting.* Their greatest strength consists in the Elephants, which carry on their backs certain Towers of Wood, wherein there are three or four Harquebuses hanging by hooks, and as many Men to order that Artillery. The Elephants serve them for a Trench, to oppose the first attempt of the Enemy, but it often comes to pass, that the Artificial Fires, which are made use of to frighten these Creatures, put them into such a disorder, that they do much more mischief among those who brought them to the Field, then they do among the Enemies. They have abundance of Artillery, and some considerable great Pieces, and such as whereof it may be said, the invention of them is as ancient as that of ours. They also make Gun-powder, but it is not fully so good as what is made in *Europe*. Their Timbrels and Trumpets are of Copper, and the noise they make, in order to some Military Action, is not undelightful. Their Armies do not march above five *Cos*, or Leagues, according to the measure of the Country, in a days; and when they encamp, they take up so great a quantity of ground, that they exceed the compass of our greatest Cities.

*The order of their armies.* In this they observe an admirable Order, inasmuch as there is no Officer nor Sou'dier, but knows where he is to take up his Quarters; nor can there be any City more regularly divided into Streets, Markets and other publick places, for the greater communication and convenience of the Quarters, and for the distribution of Provisions.

The *Mogul*, and the General of the Army, have their Tents pitched at a certain distance from those of the rest, nay, as far as a Musket will carry, from those of their own Guards.

*The Mogul's Guard.* The *Mogul's* ordinary Guard consists of twelve thousand men, besides the six hundred, who are the particular Guard of the body, the Company whereof consists of so many young

young men, whom he buyes, and causes to be exercised in Armes, that they may be perpetually about his Person. 1638

The *Rasgi*, *Rajas*, or *Radias*, are never advanced to that Dignity, but upon the score of Merit. The *Mogul* bestows it also on the Chancellour, or principal *Visir*, who is the President of his Privy Council, and as it were Vice-Roy of all his Dominions, inasmuch as he it is who sends Orders into all the Provinces of the Kingdom; and it is to him that all are to make their Addresses in all Affairs of importance. The King permits him not to receive any Presents; yet does he not forbear taking them underhand, and his Secretaries and other Officers under him take them so openly, that there is no, ever so secret, transaction, but a man may have the particulars thereof, if he hath money to bestow among those who have the transcription and dispatch of them. These *Rasgi* have so great a Veneration for their King, that it were impossible for a man to approach things most sacred with more submission, then they express when they speak to him. The discourses they entertain him with are intermingled and interrupted with continual Reverences; and when they take their leave of him, they bow down their heads, put their hands over their eyes, thence afterwards upon their breasts, and at last touch the ground therewith, to shew they are but dust and ashes in comparison of him, wishing him all prosperity, and coming out of his presence backwards.

The dignity of the *Rajas*.

When the *Mogul* marches in Person in the head of his Army, or when he comes out of the City to go a hunting, or to take the Air, he is attended by above ten thousand men. In the head of this little Army, there march above a hundred Elephants, with their covering Clothes of Scarlet, Velvet, or Brocadoe. Every Elephant carries two Men, one whereof governs and guides the Creature, by touching his forehead with an Iron-hook, the other carries a large Banner of Silk, embroidered with Gold and Silver; excepting only the seven or eight foremost, which carry each of them one that playes on the Timbrel. The King himself is mounted on an excellent *Persian* Horse, or goes in a Coach, drawn by two white Oxen, the Horns whereof, which are very large, are adorn'd with Gold; or some times he is carried by several men in a *Palanquin*, or kind of Sedan. The *Rasgi* and the Officers of the Court march after him, and have coming behind them five or six hundred Elephants, Camels or Waggons loaded with baggage. For the most part he takes up his Quarters in the Fields, where he causes his Tents to be pitched; which is done upon this account, that as on the one side there are but few Cities, where he might find necessary accommodations for the quarters and entertainment of the Court, so on the other, he takes a particular pleasure in encamping, in the Summer time, in cool places; in the Winter, in hot places; insomuch that he is in some sort the Master of the Seasons, as well as of all the other things which are subject to him. He commonly leaves *Agra* towards the end of *April*, and retires near *Lahor*, or some other more Northerly Province, where he passes over the moneths of *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*; and then he returns again to the place of his ordinary residence.

The *Mogul's* ordinary retinue.

He changes the place of his abode according to the seasons.

The City of *Agra* is of such extent and so populous, that were there a necessity, there might be rais'd out of it two hundred thousand men able to bear Arms. There is no Nation in all the East, but hath some Commerce or other at this place; but most of the Inhabitants are *Mahumetans*, and all the Merchandizes that are imported into it, or exported out of it, pay ten in the hundred.

The City of *Agra* described.

There are above forty small Cities, and above three thousand five hundred Villages that depend on the jurisdiction of *Agra*, which extends it self above sixscore Leagues about. The Country is delightful and very fertile, producing abundance of Indico, Cotton, Salt-Peter and other things, wherewith the Inhabitants drive a vast Trade. There are two Festivals which are celebrated in this place, with extraordinary Ceremonies; one whereof is that of the first day of the year, which, with the *Persians*, they call *Naurus*, *Nauros*, or *Norose*, which signifies *nine dayes*, though now it lasts eighteen at least, and it falls at the moment that the Sun enters *Aries*.

In order to the celebration of this Festival, before the *Derbar*, or Kings Palace, there is erected a Theatre, fourteen foot high, fifty six in length, and forty in breadth; having all about it a row of Pillars after the manner of a Balcony, cover'd with rich Tapistry. Near this Theatre there is erected another building of painted wood, and embellish'd with Mother of Pearl, into which go some of the principal Lords about the Court, who nevertheless have their Tents pitch'd in the first Court of the Palace, filled with all they have that is rich and magnificent, whereof they make the greatest Ostentation they can that day: The Predecessors of this Prince, who now reigns, were wont to go into all these Tents, and to take thence any thing they liked; but now the Ceremony is otherwise. For the King accompanied by the seven Ministers of State, go up into the Theatre, where he sits upon

How the *Mogul* celebrates the first day of the year.

1638. Velvet Cushions, embroidered with Gold and Pearls, and staves for the Presents which are to be made to him. The Queen is in a certain Gallery, whence she sees all the Ceremony, yet is not seen herself. Departing thence, he sits upon his Ordinary Throne, where he receives the Presents of the people, which he continues to do for eighteen dayes together. Towards the end of the Festival, the King in his turn makes his Presents to the Lords, which consists in Charges, Employments, and new Honours, which he distributes among those that have given him most.

The Festival of the Mogul's birth-day.

The Mogul's birth-day is celebrated with the Ceremonies following. He begins the day with all manner of divertisements; which over, he goes to the Palace of the Queen his Mother, if she be living, and causes many Presents to be made her by the Grandees of his Kingdom. After dinner he puts on the richest clothes he hath, and covers himself all over with Gold and precious Stones, and being thus rather loaden then adorn'd with mettible wealth, he goes into a Tent, where he is expected by the Lords of the Court, in which finding a pair of Scales, he weighs himself. These Scales are of massy Gold, as are also the Chains by which they hang, and are all beset with precious Stones. He puts himself into one of the Scales, and into the other there are put several bags of Silver, one bag of Gold, some precious Stones, some pieces of Silk-stuffs, Linnen cloath, Pepper, Cloves, Nutmeg and Cinnamon, Wheat, Pulse and Herbs, and there is an exact account kept of the difference of weight there may be between one year and another. The King gives away with his own hands, all the money among the poor, and the rest are bestowed on the *Benjans*. That done, the King seats himself in his Throne, and causes to be cast among the Grandees, Nuts, Pistachoes, Almonds, and several other Fruits of Gold, but so finely wrought, that a thousand of them weighed not thirty Crowns. This some would boggle much to admit for a Truth; yet certain it is that it hath been seen, that the value of ten Crowns bestowed in these trifles, filled a great Basin of them; so that all the liberality of this powerful Monarch could not amount to a hundred Crowns. The Festival is concluded with a great Feast, at which the Mogul entertains the Lords of his Court, with whom he passes away the night in drinking.

Another Mahumetan Feast.

They celebrate also another Festival, which they begin ten dayes after the new Moon of the moneth of July, much after the same manner as the *Persians* celebrate their *Aschur*. The *Indians* observe this Festival in honour of two Brethren, named *Janze*, and *Jawze*, servants to *Haly*, who being gone in Pilgrimage to a particular place of Devotion, upon the Coast of *Coromandel*, the *Bramans*, and other Pagans of those parts set upon them, and forc'd them to retreat into a Castle, where they besieg'd them: These holy Persons maintain'd the Siege a long time; but being resolv'd not to drink of the Water which the Pagans had prophan'd by casting a Lizard into it, a Creature for which the *Mahumetans* have an aversion, because of its uncleanness, they took a resolution to make a sally upon the besiegers, and killed many of them, but at last they were overcome by the great number of their enemies, who left them dead upon the place. There are carried about the City, Coffins covered with Bows and Arrows, Turbants, Cymitars, and Garments of Silk, which the people accompany with sobbings and lamentations, in commemoration of the death of those holy Persons. Some among them dance at the Ceremony, others strike their Swords one against another; nay, there are those who cut and slash themselves, so as that the blood comes out in several places, wherewith they rub their clothes, and by that means represent a very strange procession. Towards night they set up several Figures of men, made of Straw, to personate the Murtherers of those Saints; and having shot a great many Arrows at them, they set them on fire, and reduce them to ashes. And this they do with so much fury and animosity, that should there be any of the Pagans in the Streets at that time, they would run the hazard of their lives; whence it comes, that during these Ceremonies, they stir not out of their houses.

The *Mahumetans* of those parts celebrate also another Feast in the moneth of June, in memory of the sacrifice of *Abram*, at which they kill He-Goats, which they eat at the Entertainments they make among themselves that day.

The Mogul comes from Tamerlan.

Certain it is, that the Mogul stands very much upon his descent, in a direct and masculine line, from *Temirlanque*, that is to say, *Temir*, the lame, who is commonly called *Tamerlan*, who was of the Family of *Chinguis-Chan*, King of *Tartary*. *Seach Choram*, who was living at my being in those parts, was a younger Son of *Seach Jabun's*, and had usurped the Crown from Prince *Polagi*, his Nephew, whom we found at *Caswin* at our coming into *Persia*. He might be then about sixty years of Age, and had three Sons, whereof the Elder was about 25. years of age; but he had not the affection he should have had for him, since it was his intention to have the youngest declar'd Heir of the Crown of *Indoethan*, and to leave the two elder Brethren the command of certain Provinces. The initials of his

his Government had been cruel and bloody, but he was very much reclaim'd from those courses, though he yet ever and anon betrayed his inclinations to severity, in the torments he put those persons to who were guilty of High Treason, whom he caused to be flead alive, or torn in pieces by wild Beasts. In other things he was of an humour good enough, being a great lover of Entertainments, Mulick and Dancing, especially that of common Prostitutes, who often danced stark naked in his presence, and diverted him by all manner of extravagant postures.

1638.  
The initials  
of his Go-  
vernment  
cruel.

The *English* told me a Story, which I think so pleasant, that I shall not think it much to digress so far as to insert it here. This King had a particular affection for a certain *Rasgi*, who upon the account of his courage, and the pleasantness of his conversation, was grown so considerable about the Court, that there hardly passed a day, but the King sent for him. One day the King asking some that were about him, why that Lord was not come to the Court; and answer being made him, that he had taken Phylick, he sent to him a company of those Women-dancers, and commanded them to strip themselves stark naked, and to ease their Natures before him. The *Rasgi* having notice brought him of their arrival, ordered them to be conducted to his Chamber, imagining the *Mogul* had sent them purposely to give him some divertisement; but understanding what they were ordered to do, and perceiving thereby that the King was in a good humour, and desirous to make himself sport, he resolved to put a trick upon him, and so to laugh at those who would have laugh'd at him.

A pleasant  
story of the  
Mogul.

Having ask'd the Women-dancers what commands the King had laid upon them, and heard their answer, he afterwards asked them whether they were ordered to do any thing else, and being inform'd they had order to do nothing but what they had told him before, he bid them put the Kings Command in execution with all the exactness they could, but that they should have a special care not to exceed it by doing any thing more, telling them, that if they piss'd the least drop while they did their other business, he would have them whipp'd till the blood came. Not one of them would expose her self to that danger; so that they thereupon returned to the Court, where they gave the King an account how they had been entertain'd by the *Rasgi*. The *Mogul* was so taken with the pleasant trick which the *Rasgi* had put upon him, that it put him into the best humour in the world.

His ordinary divertisement every day was to see the combats of Lyons, Bulls, Elephants, Tigers, Leopards, and other wild Beasts, an argument of his cruel Nature, and bloody Disposition, which his perpetual seeing of this kind of combats did much heighten. He also took a delight in seeing Men engag'd with Beasts, but this was not but with their own consent; and such as would venture their lives, out of a hope to gain that reputation of Courage as should prove the raising of their Fortunes, were to make use of no Arms but Sword and Buckler. This puts me in mind of a Combat which *Schach Choram* ordered to be had, at the conclusion of a great Entertainment which he had made on the Birth-day of his Son, who was King of *Bengala*, in a *Caravansera* without the City, at which place were kept to this purpose all sorts of wild Beasts. This *Caravansera* had adjoining to it a spacious Garden encompassed with a wall, upon which the people were come to see that divertisement. The first engagement was that of a wild Bull and a Lyon; and the next, that of a Lyon and a Tiger.

The Mogul  
divertise-  
ment.

As soon as the Tiger perceiv'd the Lyon, he went straight towards him, and closing with him with all his strength, got him down. 'Twas generally believed, it would be no hard matter for the Tiger to make an end of the Lyon; but the Lyon immediately recover'd himself, and took the Tiger so fast by the throat that he was thought dead: yet he made a shift to disengage himself, and the combat was renewed with greater fury then before, till at last weariness made both give over. They were both very much hurt, but the wounds were not mortal on either side. Upon this, *Allamerdy-Chan*, Governour of *Chisemsar*, who stood near the King, came forth and said, that *Schach Choram* was desirous to see, whether there were among his Subjects, any one that had so much courage, as to engage with any of those Beasts, and that only with a Sword and Buckler, and that he who durst attempt it should appear, that the *Mogul*, having been an ocular witness of his worth, might accordingly requite it, and honour him, not only with his favour, but also with the quality of *Chan*. Upon which Proposition, three *Indosthans* proffering to undertake the engagement, *Allamerdy-Chan* told them further, that the Kings meaning was, that whoever should undertake the Combat, should do it only with Sword and Buckler; and that it was his pleasure, that those who had any Coats of Mail about them, should put them off, that the Combat might be without any advantage.

A combat  
between a  
Lyon and a  
Tiger.

Upon these terms a furious Lyon was let forth, who perceiving his Adversary coming into

1638. into the place, made immediately towards him. The *Indosthan* made his party good very stoutly, till at last, no longer able to bear the weight of the Beast, which lay very heavy upon him on the left hand, he began to let fall his Buckler, which the Lyon endeavour'd all he could to force from him, while with his left paw, he would have fastned on his enemies right arm, and so have seiz'd him by the throat, when the Man, putting his hand to his Girdle, pull'd out a Dagger, and thrust it so far into the Lyons jaws, that he was forced to let go his hold, and get away. The Man followed him, and giving him a blow over the mouth laid him all along, and afterwards kill'd him. The people made acclamations for his happy victory over the Lyon; but as soon as the noise was over, the *Mogul* call'd the *Indosthan* to him, and with an angry smile said to him, *It must needs be confess'd thou art a valiant man, and that thou hast fought very gallantly. But had I not forbidden thee to engage against this Beast with any advantage? And had I not appointed what Arms thou shouldst make use of? And yet thou hast done contrary to my Order, and hast not overcome my Lyon as a Person of Honour, but hast surpriz'd him with forbidden Arms, and so hast killed him as a murtherer, and not as a declar'd enemy.* Whereupon he commanded two men to go down into the Garden, and to rip up his belly; which was immediately put in execution, and the Corps was set upon an Elephant to be carried through the City, to serve for an example to others.

*A Combat between a Man and a Tiger.*

He who, upon this Tragedy, came next into play, went with an undaunted courage towards a Tiger, which he was to engage with, in so much that his deportment was such as rais'd in the minds of the Spectators a certain confidence of his obtaining the Victory. But the Tigre, who it seems was too cunning for his Adversary, fastened on his throat, killed him, and tore his body in pieces.

*A third Combat.*

The third Champion that came upon the Stage, instead of being any way frightned at the misfortune of his two Camrades, came very chearfully and courageously into the Garden, and went straight towards the Tiger, who flesh'd with the precedent success, run at his Adversary, with a design to make quick work with him; but the *Indosthan*, though a man of low stature, and a wretched countenance, struck off at one blow the two fore-paws of the Beast, and having by that means got him down, he soon dispatch'd him.

*Courage rewarded.*

The King immediately ask'd him his name; whereto he made answer that it was *Geily*; whereupon there came in a Gentleman, who presenting him from the *Mogul* with a Garment of Brocadoe, said to him, *Geily, receive this Garment from my hands, as an assurance of the Kings favour, who sends it thee as a pledge thereof.* *Geily*, having made several low reverences, putting the Garment to his eyes and breast, and afterwards holding it in the Air, and having made a short Prayer to himself, he at last pronounc'd aloud to this effect; *My Prayers to God are, that the Mogul's glory may be equal to that of Tamerlan, from whom he is descended; may his Arms prosper; may his Wealth be increased; may he live seven hundred years, and may his House be established for ever.* Upon this there came to him two Eunuchs, who conducted him to the Kings Chamber, at the entrance whereof, two *Chans* took him between them, and so brought him to the Kings feet. After he had kiss'd them, and was rising up, the *Mogul* said to him; *It must be confessed, Geily-Chan, that thou hast done a very great and glorious Action. I bestow on thee that name and quality which thou shalt enjoy for ever. I will be thy Friend, and thou shalt be my servant.* Thus was the doing of a single Action the Foundation of a mans Fortune, who was not so much as known before, but grew famous afterwards, by the Charges he had in the *Mogul's* Armies.

*Mandelslo discovered to have kill'd an Indosthan at Ispahan.*

It was my design to make a little longer stay at *Agra*; but there happened an accident which oblig'd me to change my Resolution, nay, forc'd me to leave a place where I thought my life in danger. For being one day fallen into discourse with the *Persian* servant, who ran away from me at *Surat*, I perceiv'd coming towards me an *Indosthan*, a person of a goodly presence, and as far as I could judge, of quality, who immediately asked me whence I came, and what business I had in those parts. I made him answer, that I was an *European*, that I came from *Germany*, and that the desire I had to see the Court of the most powerful Monarch in all the East, had brought me thither. He told me, that if he were not much mistaken, he had seen me at *Isfahan*, and that questionless I was the person that had kill'd a Kinsman of his at the Engagement which had happened between the *Indians* and the *Germans*. This discourse had almost put me out of countenance; but upon a little recollection I told him, that I had never been in *Persia*, and that I came from *England* by Sea to *Surat*, which the two *English* Merchants, who were then in my company, affirm'd to be true. But he who did me the greatest kindness in this extremity, was my old *Persian* servant, who swore by his *Mahomed*, and by his *Hossein*, that what I had told him was nothing but the truth. Whereupon the *Indosthan* went away, but discover'd by his deportment, that he gave not over-much credit to what we had said: and for my part,

I conceiv'd it but prudence to be distrustful of a man who had expressed his good will, had there been occasion, to do me a mischief, and would no doubt have revenged his Kinsmans death, of which my conscience told me I was guilty. 1638.

Upon these reflections I left *Agra*, with a *Cassila*, or *Caravan*, that was going to the City of *Labor*, which lies sixty Leagues further into the Country. I had the company of two *Dutch* Merchants, and our travelling was so much the more pleasant, in that our way was but one continued Alley, drawn in a streight line, and planted on both sides with Date-trees, Palm-trees, *Cocos*-trees, and other kind of Fruit-trees, which gave us a continual refreshing shade against the heat of the Sun. The sumptuous Houses which were to be seen up and down the Country, the Apes, Peacocks, Parrats and other Birds found us very much sport. One day with a Pistol-shot I kill'd a great Serpent, which I met with in the way, and afterwards a Leopard and a Roe-buck: but the *Benjans*, of whom there were many in our company, took it very ill at my hands, and reproach'd me with my cruelty, in that I deprived those Creatures of a life which it was not in my power to give them, and which God had not bestow'd on them, but that he might be thereby glorified: in so much that when ever I handled my Pistol, they either express'd their trouble to see me take a pleasure in violating, in their presence, the Laws of their Religion; or they intreated me, for their sakes, not to kill them, and when I had made them understand, that I would in any thing comply with their desires, they, on the other side, had all the kindness imaginable for me. *Lahor described.*

The Country about *Labor* is very fertile, and brings forth all sorts of Fruits, as also Wheat and Rice in abundance, much beyond any other Province of that great Kingdom. The City is scituated at 32. degrees, 30. minutes elevation, upon the little River *Ravy*, or *Ravée*, which, with four other Rivers, falls into the *Indus*, which upon that occasion is called *Pangab*, or five-waters, as we have said elsewhere. It is very delightfully seated, especially towards the River, on which side it hath many fair Gardens. The Kings Palace is within the City, from which it is divided by a high Wall, and hath many spacious Apartments. There are also many other Palaces and great Houses, for the reception of those Lords who ordinarily follow the Court. And in regard most of the Inhabitants are *Mahumetans*, there is in this City also a great number of *Metzids*, or *Mosqueys*, and bathing places, for their ordinary Purifications. I had the curiosity to go into one of their Baths, to observe their way of bathing. I took along with me my Interpreter, who was by Profession a Broker, and went into one of their Baths, which was built according to the *Persian* manner, with a flat Roof, and had several Partitions, which were made all half round, very narrow at the entrance, and broad at the bottom, having each of them a door by it self, and two Receptacles or *Tankes* of Free-stone, into which the Water was let in by brazen Cocks, to such height as those who came to bathe themselves desired it. After bathing, I was ordered to sit down a while, and then I was laid down upon a Stone seven or eight foot in length, and four in breadth, in which posture the Master of the Bath rubb'd me all over with a Hair-cloth. He would also have rubb'd the soles of my feet with a handful of Sand; but perceiving I was not able to endure it, he ask'd me whether I were a *Christian*, and having understood that I was, he gave me the Hair-cloth, that I might rub my feet my self, though he had made no difficulty to rub all the rest of my body. This done, there came into the Bath a little short Fellow, who laid me all along on the belly upon the same stone, and rubb'd my back with his hands from the back-bone down to the sides, telling me, that bathing would do me but little good, if I suffered not the blood, which might haply lye corrupted in that place, to be by that rubbing dispersed through all the other members. *The Baths of the Mahumetans.*

I found not any thing remarkable about *Labor*, but one of the Kings Gardens, which lies two dayes journey distant from it. I had, as a further diversion in this short piece of my Travels, this, that in two dayes I rode on four several Creatures: For at first I had a Mule, then a Camel, then an Elephant, and at last an Oxe, whose trotting was the hardest of any beast that ever I besfrid, lifting up his hoofs as high as the stirrop, and carrying me between six and seven Leagues in less then four hours. I should have made some longer stay at *Labor*, but receiving Letters from *Agra*, I was forc'd to come away upon this account, that the *English* President intended very suddenly to embark in order to his return for *England*, whereupon I put my self into the company of certain *Indian* Merchants, who were then upon their return to *Amadabath*.

At my coming to *Amadabath*, the Director of the *English* Commerce told me, that he had received Orders from the President to make as strong a *Cassila* as he could possibly, and to come with all expedition to *Surat*. I there met also with Letters from the President, whereby I understood, that he only expected the *Cassila's* of *Agra* and *Amadabath*, and that *Returns to Amadabath.*

1638. that he would depart as soon as they were come. He writ to me further, that being with- in a few dayes after to resign his Presidentship to another, whom his Superiour had appointed to receive it; and there being to be a great entertainment and feasting at that Ceremony, he should be glad I were present thereat.

*Fire works.* During my stay at *Amadabath*, the *Mabumetans* celebrated a Feast, which was concluded at night with very noble Fire-works. The Windows of all the Houses that stand in the *Meidan* were beset with Lamps, before which were placed Vessels of Glass, fill'd with Waters of several colours, which made a very delightful prospect. Upon the same *Meidan*, before the Kings Palace, there are two low Houses, of which there is little use made but at this Feast, it being the place whither the *Suliban* and the Lords of the Court retire themselves, while fire is set to the Works, which consisted of Squibs, Crackers, and other ingenious inventions. Some had fasten'd Lamps to certain Wheels, which hung on, though the Wheels turn'd about perpetually with great violence.

*Returns to Surat.* As soon as the *Cassila* of *Agra* was come to *Amadabath*, I took leave of my friends, and went along with a *Caravan* of a hundred Waggons.

The first day we travell'd twelve *Cos*, or six Leagues, to the City of *Mamadabath*. The next day, I went before with the Director of the Commerce at *Amadabath*, who, with his Second, was desirous to be present at the Resignation which the President was to make of his place. We were four in company, and we took along with us four Waggons, two Horses, and twenty foot Souldiers for our Guard, leaving Order that the *Cassila* should follow us with all expedition.

*Persons of quality have Banners carried before them.* The foot Souldiers, who carried our Arms and Banners, made a shift nevertheless to keep pace with us. What I say concerning the Banners, relates to the custom of the *Indies*, where there are no persons of any quality but have a Banner, or a kind of Colours, such as Cornets use, carried before them. That day we cross'd the River *Wasset*, and took up our Quarters at night in the Fort of *Saselpour*. There we met with the Factor of *Brodra*, whose name was Mr. *Pansfield*, who treated us very magnificently the next day at the place of his residence. We went thence in the evening, and lodg'd the night following in a great Garden, and the next day we prosecuted our journey. In the evening we encamped hard by a *Tanque*, called *Sambord*; and in regard we had not met with any fair Water all that day, we endeavour'd to get some out of the *Tanque*. But the Country people fearing we might consume all the Water, there coming in at the same time a *Dutch Cassila* of two hundred Waggons, would not suffer us to come near it. Whereupon we commanded out fifteen of our foot Souldiers, with exprefs order to bring some Water, if not by fair means, by force. But coming to the *Tanque*, they found it guarded by thirty armed Men, and such as were resolv'd to maintain it, and to hinder any from taking of the Water. However our Men went very resolutely towards them with their Swords drawn, upon which, without any dispute at all, the Country people ran away; but while ours were drawing Water, the *Indians* shot a certain number of Arrows, and discharg'd three Muskets among them, and wounded five persons. Ours exasperated at that, kill'd three of the Country people, whom we saw afterwards carried to the Village.

*An Engagement with the Country people.* While we were at Supper, there came in to us one of the *Dutch* Merchants, who told us, that there had been seen two hundred *Rasboutes* upon our way, who had committed several robberies for some dayes before, and that the very day before they had kill'd six men within a League of the Village, near which we were then lodg'd. The *Dutch Cassila* went away about midnight, and we follow'd it immediately after. But we had not gone far beyond it, ere we discover'd one of those *Holacueurs*, who are wont to march in the head of the *Cassilas*, and before Troops of Horse, and serve instead of Trumpeters, by sounding a certain Instrument of Brass, much longer then our ordinary Trumpets. As soon as he perceiv'd us, he slipp'd into the Wood, where he fell a sounding as loud as ever he could, which we took for an assured Alarm that it would not be long ere they set upon us. Accordingly, almost ere we could resolve how to make our party good against them, we saw coming out of all sides of the Wood, a great number of *Rasboutes*, arm'd with short-Pikes, Bucklers, Bows and Arrows, but without any Fire-arms. We had the time to charge those we had, which were four Fire-locks and three pair of Pistols. The Merchant and I got on horseback, and bestow'd the Fire-locks among those who were in the Coach, with exprefs order not to fire till they were sure to do execution. Our Fire-arms were charged with square pieces of Steel, and the *Rasboutes* came on in so close a body, that at the first firing we saw three fall. They shot certain Arrows at us, wherewith they hurt an Oxe and two foot Souldiers. One was shot into the Pommel of my Saddle, and the *English* Merchant had another shot into his Turbant. The *Dutch Cassila* hearing the noise, commanded out ten Souldiers; but ere they could come in to our relief, we run a great

great hazard of our lives. For I was set upon on all sides, and was thrust twice with a Pike into my Buff-collar, which certainly sav'd my life that day. There came two of the *Rasboutes* so near as to lay hold on my bridle, after they had kill'd two of my foot Souldiers, and were going to carry me away prisoner. But I dispatch'd one of them with a Pistol-shot, which I gave him in the shoulder, and the *English Merchant* came in to my relief, and behav'd himself with as much gallantry as it was possible man could do. The ten foot Souldiers belonging to the *Dutch Cassila* being come in, and the *Cassila* it self not much behind them, the *Rasboutes* got into the Wood, leaving six men kill'd upon the place, and carrying along with them many hurt. On our side we had two foot Souldiers kill'd, and eight wounded, besides whom, the *English Merchant* had also received a slight wound. From that time we kept along with the *Cassila*, marching in very good order, out of an imagination we had that the *Rasboutes* would be sure to set on us a second time: but we heard no more of them, and came about noon to *Broitschia*, where we stay'd till the evening. We departed thence about four of the clock that same day, in order to our crossing the River, and that we might get five *Cos* further to the Village of *Onclaffer*, where we lodg'd that night; and the next day, being the 26. of *DECEMBER*, we got to *Surat*.

At my return to *Surat*, I found in the *English Lodge* above fifty Merchants, whom the President had summon'd out of all the other *Factories*, to give an account of their Administration, and to be present at the change of Government. This Assembly consisted of the persons following, *viz.* Mr. *Metwold*, the then President, Mr. *Fremling*, who was to succeed him in that charge, five Consuls from several places of the *Indies*, three Ministers, two Phylicians, and twenty five Merchants.

Comes to  
Surat.

Being all met together, the President made an excellent Speech, to give the Assembly then present his hearty thanks, for the many expressions he had received of their fidelity and affection during his Government, as also for the honour and respects they had rendered the *East-India Company* in his person, and to intreat them to continue the same towards Mr. *Fremling*, to whom he had received Order to resign up his charge, exhorting them in all things to do that which conduced most to the reputation and advantage of the Company. Having ended his speech, he delivered Mr. *Fremling* the Letters Patents, by vertue whereof he was to assume that new Charge, and made him a short Complement upon that occasion.

The Eng-  
lish Presi-  
dent resigns  
his charge.

This Ceremony ended, they went to their Garden without the City, where Mr. *Metwold* had prepar'd a magnificent entertainment, consisting of whatever the Country afforded that was excellent and rare, as also a set of *English* Mulick, Violins, another of *Mabumetian*, and a third of *Benjan*, which for our further divertisement, was accompanied by the Women-dancers of the Country. All which being over, Order was immediately given, that those Ships which were fully loaden, should make all necessary Provisions for their return, and we began to make all things ready for our Voyage.

*December 28.* There came to *Surat* a *Sultan*, sent thither by the *Mogul*, to succeed him whom I had found there at my Arrival. The new President went half a League out of the City to meet him, accompanied by five of the chiefest Merchants, who intreated me to go along with them. The *Sultan* had marching before him several foot Souldiers, and a certain number of *Palanquins*, and after them an Elephant, upon which a Man carried a Banner of red Taffata. After the Elephant came above a hundred foot Souldiers, and after them twenty other Souldiers, carrying every one a little Banner, much like those of our Cornets, of several Colours. These march'd immediately before the *Sultan*, who was mounted upon a gallant *Persian* Horse, and attended by several Persons of quality, and a great number of Men on horseback. On one side of him went a Page with a great Plume of Feathers, which serv'd for a Fan to keep off the heat of the Sun, and he had carried behind him his own *Palanquin*, which was all gilt. His name was *Myrsa Mahmuda*, one with whom the new President had been acquainted long before. Having accompanied him to his Palace, amidst the Acclamations of the people, which throng'd in the Streets to congratulate his Arrival, he return'd to his own house.

The Sul-  
than's en-  
trance into  
Surat.

Immediately upon the establishment of the new President, all the other Officers and Merchants departed one after another to the places of their ordinary Residence, and the Ships were ordered to make all things ready to set sail. They were the *Mary* and the *Swan*; but there were to go along with them two other Vessels, one whereof, being too old to get home into *England*, was to be sold at *Gou*, where the President was to touch in his way; and the other was bound for the same place, to receive fifty thousand Ryals, which the *Portuguez* were to pay, in execution of the Treaty of Peace they had made with the *English*, to be employed in the *Indies*, according as the President of *Surat* should dispose thereof.



1638. The *Swan* had Orders to set sail ten dayes before us, and to stay for us at the *Cape of good hope*. But ere we leave *Surat*, it will not be amiss to give that account of the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, wherein that famous City of Trade lies, which we promised elsewhere.

From the Mogul came to unite the Kingdom of Guzuratta to his Crown

We call it the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, in regard it is not above 120. years since the *Mogul* united it to his Crown, upon occasion of the King of *Guzuratta's* minority, who then reigned. For then *Sulthan Mamoët*, who died about the year 1545. left only one Son, named *Madofber*, who being but about eleven or twelve years of age, was put under the Guardianship of *Ehamet-Chan*, his Fathers Favourite. This Guardian perceiving, that his young Master was not in a condition to protect him from the envy of those *Grandees*, who had highly express'd their dissatisfaction with his Administration of the Government, and considering with himself, that he stood in need of a more powerful Protection, made his Applications to *Achobar* the *Mogul*, or King of *Indosthan*, and intreated him to come in to the relief of his Ward, promising to deliver up *Amadabath*, the chief City of the Kingdom, into his hands. *Achobar* thought it no prudence to neglect so favourable an occasion, and so immediately entred *Guzuratta* with a powerful Army; but instead of contenting himself with the City of *Amadabath*, he became absolute Master of the whole Kingdom, and carried away *Madofber* and his Guardian Prisoners to *Agra*. *Madofber* being come to thirty years of age, and beginning to reflect on the misfortune of his Captivity, which he saw must be perpetual, combin'd with one of the most considerable Lords of *Guzuratta*, who put him into possession of certain Cities of his Kingdom, such as lay at the greatest distance from the Frontiers of the *Mogul*; but they gave him not the time to settle himself therein. For *Achobar* immediately sent an Army thither, under the command of *Chan-Channa*, who recovered the whole Kingdom in less then a year, prevented *Madofber* from making his escape, and took him prisoner. This unfortunate Prince, reflecting on the Affronts which would be put upon him at his coming to *Agra*, and fearing that *Achobar* would put him to death, chose rather to prevent him, and being got to a certain place alone, under pretence of doing some necessities of Nature, cut his own throat.

The Governour of Amadabath is Viceroy of all Guzuratta.

The *Mogul* governs the Kingdom of *Guzuratta* by a Viceroy, or Governour General, who hath his ordinary Residence at *Amadabath*, in such manner, as that all the other Governours are oblig'd to give him an account of their Administration, and to receive Orders from him. His power is in a manner absolute: For, though in the judgment of Civil Causes, as also when he consults about affairs of Importance, he advises with some of the principal Lords of the Country, and of his Court; yet can it not be said, that he hath any settled Council, but takes their Proposals, rather to discover their Sentiments, then to follow them: Inasmuch, that if his employment were settled for a certain number of years, he would have no cause to envy the greatness of the *Mogul* himself. But this Government depends meerly on the Kings pleasure, who takes occasion often to change the Governours; as on the other side, they knowing that the least Order from the Court may dispossess them, let slip no occasion of making their advantages, and receiving from all hands, especially near the time they expect to be recall'd. For then they make it their business to get excessive sums of money out of the richest Merchants in the Country; especially those of the City of *Amadabath*, who are forc'd to clear themselves of false Accusations, which they had not been charged withall, but to squeeze them of some part of their Estates, inasmuch as the Governour being supreme Judge of all Causes, as well Civil as Criminal, they must either expect certain destruction, or satisfy the Governours avarice.

His magnificence.

There is no King in *Europe* hath so noble a Court as the Governour of *Guzuratta*, nor any that appears in publick with greater magnificence. He never comes abroad, but he is attended by a great number of the Nobility, and his Guards both Horse and Foot, having marching before him a great many Elephants, with their covering Cloaths of Brocade, or Velvet embroidered, Banners, Drums, Trumpets and Timbrels. In his Palace he is served as a King, and permits not any to come within his Lodgings, till they have demanded audience. He makes his advantages of all the Levies and Impositions which are made in his Government, so that in a short time he becomes Master of incredible wealth, especially by means of the third part of all the Arable Lands which belong to the King; and are assign'd to the Governour for the maintenance of a body of Horse, which he is oblig'd to defray, but com. smuch short of the number it should be of.

What the Revenue of Guzuratta amounts to.

The Revenue of the Kingdom of *Guzuratta* amounted heretofore to eighteen Millions of Gold, not accounting the Customs of *Brodra* and *Broitschia*, which brought in yearly near eight hundred thousand Crowns. This Country hath no Enemy it need stand in fear of; but the Mountains of those parts are the retyring places of certain

*Rudias*,

*Radias*, or petty Princes, who live only upon rapine, and the incurfions their Subjects make upon the *Mogul's* Territories, who with all his great power is not able to force them out of thofe inaccessible places. Befides thefe, there are alfo certain companies of Robbers, or *Tories*, who fometimes makes up a body of three or four hundred Men, to rob upon the High-way, infomuch that travelling cannot be without danger, unlefs fo many travel together as can in fome meafure make their party good againft the attempts of thofe Villains, who are fo much the more eafily defeated, by reafon of their having no fire-Armes.

The *Conteval* is he who judges of Affairs of leffer Confequence; but the adminiftration of Juftice amongst them is very pleafant, in as much as he who complains firft moft commonly gets the better of it, fo that it may be truly faid among them, according to the Proverb, that *who bears away the blows, payes for the bloud-whip*. Capital crimes are judged by the Governours of the feveral Cities, who caufe their Sentences to be put in execution by the *Conteval*. There is in a manner no crime, whereof a Man may not avoid the punifhment by Money, fo that it may be faid of thofe parts with greater reafon then of any other, that Gibbets are fet up only for the unfortunate. The Crimes punifhed with greateft feverity are, Murther and Adultery, efppecially when it happens to have been committed with a Gentlewoman of any Quality. Upon which account it is that they permit Brothel-houfes, all which pay a certain Tribute to the *Conteval*, who in requital protects them fo well, that it is not only fafe, but alfo honourable for any man to frequent them.

We have already given a Catalogue of the principal Cities of *Guzuratta*, as *Amadabath*, *Cambaya*, *Surat*, *Brodra*, *Broitfchia*, &c. All which we paffed through in our Travels, fo that it remains only, that we give a fhort account of the other more inconfiderable places of the Kingdom.

*Goga* is a fmall City, or rather a great Village, thirty Leagues diftant from *Cambaya*, at a place where the Gulf is fo narrow, that it feems to be a kind of a River. This place is fufficiently well peopled, and moft of the Inhabitants are *Benjans*, and live either by their Relation to the Sea, or by Weaving. It hath neither Gates nor Bulwarks, but only a Free-ftone Wall towards the Sea-fide, where the *Portuguez* Frigats have their Rendezvous, in order to the conveying of their Merchant-men to *Goa*.

*Pattepatane* and *Mangerol*, are two great Towns, nine Leagues diftant from *Goga*, and there are made in them great quantities of Cottons and Linnen-cloath.

The City of *Diu*, where the *Portuguez* have three ftrong Castles, is feated upon the Frontiers of the Kingdom, on the South-fide. They call it *Diuê*, pronouncing the *e* fo gently, that a man can hardly hear it. The word *Diuê* lignifies an Ifland, and thence comes the word, *Agredinê*, five Ifles, and that of *Nalediue*, four Ifles, which the *Portuguez* corruptly call *Maldina*; and *Diuê*, *Nonlaka*, the Ifle of fourfcore and ten thoufand, which hath that name given it, upon this account, that the Daughter of a certain Lord of the fuid place, having begg'd of her Father the Revenue of it for one day, it brought her in fourfcore and ten thoufand pieces of Silver.

The City of *Bifantagan* is one of the greateft of all the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, as containing near twenty thoufand Houfes. It lies almoft in the midt of the Kingdom, and till of late was but a fimple Village. The fertility of the adjacent Country hath raifed it to the greatnefs wherein it now is; for thereabouts they keep abundance of Cattle, and there grow alfo great quantities of Rice, Wheat and Cotton, which is made into Yarn and Clothes.

The City of *Pettan* was heretofore fix Leagues about, and encompassed with a ftrong Wall of Free-ftone, which is now broken down in feveral places, fince its Commerce began to diminifh. The Inhabitants are for the moft part *Benjans*, and their Profefion, making of Stuffs of Silk for the wearing of the Country, as alfo fome Cotton-cloaths, but they are very courfe, and are of thofe kinds which are commonly called *Djsternals*, *Sgarderberal*, *Longis*, *Allegiens*, &c. This City hath a fair Castle within it, where the *Sulaban* of the place lives. In the middeft of the City there is a *Mofquey*, which was built by the Pagans, and may pafs for one of the moft fumptuous Temples in all the Eaft. Its Roof is fustain'd by a thoufand and fifty Pillars, moft whereof are of Marble. Thofe who have contributed moft to the deftruction of that Cities Trading, are a fort of People called the *Coulfes*, who having taken any of the Inhabitants abroad in the Country, force them to ranfome themfelves, and do fo pefter the High-ways, that the Merchants dare not travel that way.

*Cheytepour* lies fix Leagues from *Pettan*, and twenty two from *Amadabath*, upon a fmall Rivers fide. All the Inhabitants are *Benjans*, who are Weavers, and make great quantities

1638. of Cotton-yarn. There is in the City a Garrison of 150. men, for the securing of the *Cassilas*, which pass that way for *Agra* and *Amadabath*.

*Messana*. *Messana* is an open Town, having within it an old ruin'd Castle, the Governour whereof is oblig'd to maintain two hundred Horse, for the safe passage of the *Cassilas*. The Country all about produces much Cotton, and some Cloaths are made there, but no great quantities.

*Nassary, Gaudun, and Balsara*. *Nassary*, or *Nausary*, *Gaudun*, and *Balsara*, are three small Cities, under the jurisdiction of *Surat*, from which the first is six, the second nine, and the third fourteen Leagues distant. They lye all three about two Leagues distant from the Sea. There are made in them great quantities of course Cottons; and it is in these parts that they sell the Wood, which is spent all over the Kingdom in the building of Houses and Ships.

*The Inhabitants of Guzuratta*. The old Inhabitants of the Country are Pagans, and are those whom they properly call *Hindoy*, or *Indou*. The *Mahumetans* Religion came in with the Arms of *Tamerlan*, and those other Forreigners, who have settled themselves there, by the Conquests they have in those parts. The Kingdom is peopled with *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, and several other Nations; but you shall seldome meet there with either *Chinese* or *Japoneses*; for they are so warm and well provided at home, that they seldome settle themselves elsewhere.

The *Mahumetans* of the Country, professing, at least by name, the same Religion with the *Persians*, occasions the *Persian* Language to be as common among them as the *Indosthan*, though in the Explication of the *Alchoran*, they follow the sentiments of *Hembili*, and *Maleki*, whereas the *Persians* accept only of the Exposition of *Aly* and *Tzaserjaduck*; but they both condemn that of *Hanifa*, which is approved by the *Turks*.

It is not our design in this place to run into any discourse of the *Mahumetan* Religion; but, having premised a short account of the Inhabitants of the Country, we shall afterwards treat more at large of their Religion, and the Sects whereof it consists. They are all of an Olive or Duskyish colour, but more or less such, according to the Climate in which they live. Those who are more towards the South, are without comparison of a much higher colour, than those who live more towards the North. The Men are strong, and well proportioned, having large Faces and black Eyes, and cause their Heads and Beards to be shaven clear off, excepting only the *Mustachoes*, as the *Persians* do also. The *Mahumetans* cloath themselves much after the *Persian* Mode, only they fold their Turbants after another way. There is also this difference observ'd between them, that the *Indosthans* have the opening of their Garments under the left Arm, whereas the *Persians* have it under the right Arm; and that the former tie their Girdles before, and let the ends hang down, whereas the *Persians* do only fold it several times about the body, and hide the ends within the Girdle it self. It is within these Girdles that they carry their Ponyards, which they call *Limber*, and are about a foot long, having the Blade much broader towards the Handle than it is towards the Point. There are some have Swords of that making, but the Soldiers commonly wear Cymitars. Good Horses are very scarce in those parts, whence it comes that they often make use of Oxen, which are altogether as swift as our Horses, and I have seen whole Troops consisting of this kind of Cavalry. The Women are very well proportioned, though of low stature. They have very handfom bodies, and are very sumptuous in their Attire. Their Hair hangs down over their Shoulders, and on their Heads they have only a thin Cap, or cover them with a Crepine of Lawn, wrought with Gold, the ends whereof hang down on both sides as low as their Knees. Those who are of ability wear in their Ears Pendants of Diamonds, Pearls, or other precious Stones, and about their Necks Neck-laces of a kind of great round Pearl, which makes no undelightful show on the brown complexion of the Ladies of those parts, who sometimes also wear Rings in their Nostrils, which is so much the less incommodious to them, in that they never almost have any occasion to wipe their Noses. They wear Breeches as well as the Men, which are of Taffata, or some kind of Cotton-stuffe; and those of such length, that were they let out, they would reach over their Heads. They lye close and even till they come down below the Ham, where they are folded like Mens Boots into many folds, in regard there is a String of Silver and Silk runs through them, wherewith they are ty'd and fastned above the Navil, the ends of which String hang down to their Feet. These Drawers, or Breeches, they wear under their Smocks, which are so short, that they reach not much below their Waste; and upon the Breeches they wear a Petticoat of Taffata, or Cotton, but so thin, that its eatie to see all under it. Their Shooes are commonly of red Cordovant, or Spanish Leather, flat-fold, and narrow towards the Toe. They go bare-breasted, and bare-arm'd up to the Elbows, save that much of those parts is hid by the many Bracelets which they wear about them. Those Women, who stand upon their Honour, appear not

*Their Cloaths.*

*Their Women.*



in publick with their Faces uncovered; nay those of any quality are very seldom permitted to come abroad. But the *Benjan* Women are clad quite after another manner.

There is no Province in the *India*, where there are not some *Benjans*; but in *Guzur* they are more numerous then in any other place, and they are distinguish'd from the *Mahumetans* by their habit. They do not shave their Heads, yet do they not wear their Hair very long. They have every day a yellow Mark made in their Foreheads, of about a fingers breadth, which is made with Water and Sandal-wood, in which they beat four or five grains of Rice. They are their *Bramans* who give them that Mark after they have done their Devotions before the *Pagodes*. The Women do not cover their Faces, as those of the *Mahumetans* do; yet do they not make any difficulty to adorn themselves with Pendants and Neck-laces, especially their Ears, which they in a manner cover with Pearls. The blacker their Teeth are, the greater beauty they think it. During my stay at *Ama-dibath*, some of the Women there told me, that it was an ugly thing to have white Teeth, as Dogs and Monkeys have; and thence it came that they called us *Bondra*, that is, Apes. They wear no Breeches, but only a piece of thin Silk-stuff, which they call *Cabay*, and reaches down to their Hams, and upon that they put their Smocks, and on them their upper Garment, which they tie with a String at the Waste. Some among them wear a kind of narrow Waistcoats, the Sleeves whereof reach but to the Elbow, being naked down from the Breasts to the Navil. In Summer they wear wooden Shooes, which they fasten to their Feet with Straps; but in Winter, their Shooes are of Velvet of several colours, or of Brocade, cover'd with gilt Leather. The quarters of their Shooes are very low, for this reason, that as well Men as Women put them off, when they go into any Room, the Floor thereof being covered with Tapistry. Children go naked, till they come to about four or five years of Age, the Girles as well as the Boyes. The Men are very civilly apparell'd, and live without any scandal among the *Mahumetans*, who being imperious and insolent, treat the *Benjans*, as if they were their slaves, with great contempt, much after the manner the *Jews* are treated in *Europe*, in those places where they are permitted to live. Which yet hinders not but that the *Benjans* are as ingenious as the *Mahumetans*, and, without comparison, more subtle, and more civil, then any of the other *Indians*. There are not any of them can write and cast account better then they, nor any whose conversation is more delightful then theirs: but they come short of that sincerity which the others have, so that a Man must be very cautious how he hath to do with them, in as much as there is no Commodity which they do not adulterate; and they never drive any bargain, but they endeavour to surprize and circumvent those they are to deal with. The *Dutch* and *English* know this by experience; whence it comes, that they make use of these people, as their Brokers and Interpreters, that they may discover the Impostures and cheats of others: There is no Trade which they apply not themselves to; and there is no Commodity but they sell it, unless it be Flesh, Fish, or any other thing that hath had life. Their children are oblig'd to match among those of the same Trade or Profession as the Father had been of; and they suffer not those who do otherwise, to be of the same *Caste*, or Family: but they may be the beginners of a new Trade, and yet continue in the same Religion.

Black Teeth beautiful.

The Cloath of the Benjan women.

The Benjans are ingenious.

They marry their Children at seven, eight, nine, or ten years of Age, and it very seldom happens that they stay till twelve, especially if they be Daughters: for, if they stay till that time, they are look'd on as stale Maids, it being their persuasion, that there must be some imperfection, either in the Maids person, or those of her Parents, if there be not some Addresses made to her before that time; in which particular they think themselves so much concern'd, that they make it a punctilio of Honour and Conscience.

The Wedding-day being come, the Parents of the betrothed parties sit down in a Hall, about a good Fire, and cause the Bridegroom and the Bride to take three turns about it, during which, the *Braman* pronounces certain words, which serve for a Benediction of the Marriage. This Custom they the more punctually observe, in regard, that, if the Bridegroom should chance to dye before he had taken his three turns about the Fire, the Bride might take a second Husband, which the *Benjan* Widows are not permitted to do, even though the Bridegroom died before the consummation of the Marriage, but she is obliged to suffer all her Ornaments to be taken away from her, and her Hair to be cut off. They are not forc'd to burn themselves with the dead bodies of their Husbands, as the Wives of the *Bramans* or *Rasboutes* are, neither are they hindred to do it, if they have an inclination thereto. Those Widows, who cannot brook a single life, get in among the publick Dancers of that Sex; which must needs happen very frequently in a Climate, which derives to the Bodies living in it no great disposition to Chastity.

Their Ceremonies of marriage.

1638.  
The men  
permitted to  
marry twice  
or thrice.

The *Benjan Law* permits men, not only to marry a second or third time, in case of death, but also to wed a second or third Wife, if the first and second proves barren; the first retaining nevertheless a certain preheminance, as being Mother of the Family. The Sons are Heirs of all their Fathers Estate, but with this provision, that they are to maintain the Mother, and marry the Sisters.

The Reli-  
gion of the  
Benjans.  
They wor-  
ship the  
Devil.

The *Benjans* are *Pagans*, as having among them neither *Baptisme* nor *Circum-ision*. They are indeed of a belief, That there is but one God, Creator and Preserver of the Universe; yet does not this persuasion hinder, but that they worship the Devil, and give for their reason, that God created him to govern the World, and to do mischief to Mankind. Whence it comes, that all their *Mojqueys* are fill'd with representations of him, in Statues of Gold, Silver, Ivory, Ebony, Marble, Wood, and ordinary Stone. The Figure under which they represent him is dreadful to look on. The Head, out of which grows four Horns, is adorn'd with a triple Crown, after the fashion of a *Tiara*. The countenance is horribly deformed, having coming out of the Mouth two great Teeth, like the Tusks of a Boar, and the Chin set out with a great ugly Beard. The Breasts beat against the Belly, at which the Hands are not absolutely joyned together, but seem negligently to hang down. Under the Navil, between the two Thighs, there comes out of the Belly another Head, much more ghastly then the former, having two Horns upon it, and thrusting out of the Mouth a filthy Tongue of extraordinary bigness. Instead of Feet it hath Paws, and behind, a Cows-tail: This Figure is placed on a Table of Stone, which serves for an Altar, and receives the Offerings which are made to the *Pagode*. On the right side of the Altar there stands a Trough, in which those who intend to do their Devotions wash and purifie themselves; and on the other side, there is a Box, or Chest, for reception of the Offerings, which are made in Money; and near the Trough there is placed, within the wall of a Vessel, out of which the *Bramans* take the yellow stuffe, wherewith they mark the foreheads of those who have said their Prayers. The *Braman*, or Priest, belonging to the place, sits at the foot of the Altar, whence he rises at certain times to say his Prayers; and when he goes away, he concludes his Devotions with that kind of purifying, which is performed by rubbing his hands in the flame of the Lamps, which stand before and above the Altar, as we have described it elsewhere.

Their Mol-  
queys.

Nor is it only in great Cities that the *Benjans* have their many *Mojqueys*, but they have them also up and down the Country, upon the High-ways, and in the Mountains and Woods. They have no other light then what they have from the Lamps, which are kept perpetually burning in them; having no other Ornament, then that the Walls are bedaubed with the Figures of Beasts and Devils, and look more like Caves, and the Recesses of unclean Spirits, which they are in effect, then places design'd for the exercise of Religion. Yet it is certain nevertheless, that these poor ignorant people express as much Devotion for these Monsters, as the most regenerate *Christians* can do for their God, and the most sacred Myteries of their Religion; though they at the same time acknowledge, that it is not a Divinity they adore, but a Creature which hath some power derived from God, and is able to do good and ill to Men.

Their Pur-  
fication:

They have this common with the *Mshumetans*, that they make the principal part of Religion to consist in corporeal Purifications. Whence it comes, that there passes not a day but they wash themselves, and many of them do it very betimes in the morning, before Sun-rising, going into the Water up to the waste, and holding in their hand a Straw, which the *Braman* gives them, to chase away the evil Spirit, while the *Braman* blesses and makes exhortations to those who purifie themselves in that manner.

Their God  
Brama.

These *Bramans*, or *Bramanes*, make it their boast, that they came out of the Head of their God *Brama*, of whom, they say, there were many other Productions, which came but out of his Arms, Thighs, Feet, and other more ignoble parts of his Body, but they have this advantage, that they have their being from the Brains of that great God.

Their opini-  
on con-  
cerning the  
Creation of  
the World.

*Abraham Rogers*, who lived ten years upon the Coasts of *Coromandel*, upon the service of the *Hollanders*, in an Employment, by means whercof he might make more certain Discoveries of the Religion of these people, relates, in the Treatise he hath written of *Paganisme*, that the *Bramanes* affirm, that their great God, whom they sometimes call *Wistul*, sometimes *Etmaras*, and who, they say, is the greatest, and the God of all the Gods, bethinking himself, before the Creation of the World, when there was in the Universe but one God and Water, meerly for his Diversion sake, to make a World, had assumed the Figure of a little Child, and having cast himself upon a Leaf, which he had found swimming upon the Water, and playing Childishly with his great Toe in his mouth, there came out of his Navel a Flower, which they call *Tamara*, of which Flower was produced the first of all Men, whom they call *Brama*.

That

That the first thing which *Brama* did, was to give God thanks that he had bestow'd on him a rational Soul, and that God was so well pleas'd with that acknowledgment of his, that he gave him power, not only to create the World, and whatsoever is contained therein, but also to take upon him the Government thereof, which God was willing not to be troubled withall himself: So that *Brama*, being as it were Gods Vicegerent and Deputy, in this vast and infinite Administration, there happens not any good or evil to men but by his means, since it is he who hath limited the life of Man to a hundred years, and hath decreed and appointed the prosperity and adversity that shall befall him.

To this they add; that *Brama* had five Heads, and that, one day, rebelling against the God *Wistu*, He commanded one of his Servants, named *Bierema*, to cut off the Head which stood in the midst, with his Nail: But that *Brama* having humbled himself before God, and having made Verses in praise of him, *Wistu* was so highly pleas'd to hear them sung, that he told *Brama*, it troubled him much, that he had ordered one of his five Heads to be cut off; but however, bid him be of good comfort, forasmuch as he should have the same power with the other four, as he had before. And yet they have this belief withall, that this imprudence of *Brama* will hinder him from enjoying, in the other World, that measure of Glory which he might have hoped, had he continu'd in his original Integrity.

They affirm, that *Brama* governs the World by many Lieutenants, the chiefest of whom is he whom they call *Derwendre*, who commands all those who govern the eight Worlds, which are like this we inhabit, and go to the Composition of the Universe, whereof, according to them, there are seven other parts like ours, all which swim upon the water, like so many Eggs. They believe also, that the World, which is now extant and in being, is not any effect of the first Creation, but that there have been many before it, and that there will be others after it. That that wherein we now live is to continue yet a Million of Ages longer, since that in the year MDCXXXIX. there were but four thousand seven hundred thirty nine years of the fourth Age of the World expired, and that the first had lasted a hundred and seven thousand two hundred and ninety Ages: That in the said first Age of the World all Men were good and just, so as that the Devil, who was created even in that time, had no power to do them any mischief: That in the following Age, the fourth part of Mankind became depraved; and that in the third, good and bad were equally divided; but that in these last times, the World was so much corrupted, that the number of the just was reduc'd to the fourth part.

But it is besides the Design of our Relation to digress into the Theology of these people; whereof the Author we cited before hath written a Treatise, sufficient to satisfy the curiosity of the most Learned.

We shall therefore only say, that these *Bramanes* are very highly respected among the other Pagans; not only upon the account of their austerity of life, and their extraordinary abstinence; (for there are some of them fast three or four dayes together, not eating any thing at all;) but also in regard, that besides their Superintendency in matter of Religion, they have the oversight of Schools, where they teach Children to read and write. They expound the Mysteries of their Religion to the ignorant, and by that means make what impressions they please in the minds of superstitious people, in as much as they give what Interpretation they fancy themselves, to the Auguries and other vanities, about which they are perpetually consulted. They are believed as so many Oracles; and thence it comes, that the *Benjans* seldom engage themselves in any business of consequence, without the advice and encouragement of the *Braman*. They are distinguish'd from the other *Benjans*, only by what they wear upon their heads, which is a Coiffure made of white Linnen-cloath, and comes several times about the Head, to cover their Hair, which they never cut; as also by three pieces of small Packthread, which they wear next their Skins, and come cross the Breast, from the Shoulder to the Waste, which Packthread they never put off, nor would, though it were to save their lives. They heighten and improve the popular superstition, by the Relations they make of thousands of false Miracles, done by their *Pagodes* and *Saints*, whom they persuade people to worship, as Intercessors with God for them.

They hold the Immortality of the Soul, but believe withall, that, at its departure out of the first Body, it transmigrates into that of some other Creature; and affirm, that the Soul of a good natur'd and docible person, is translated into the body of a Pidgeon, or Chicken; that of a cruel and wicked man, into that of a Crocodile, a Lyon, or a Tiger; that of a crafty man, into that of a Fox; that of a Glutton, into the body of a Swine; that of a treacherous person, into that of a Serpent, &c. before they are admitted to the enjoyment of a beatitude purely Spiritual. And this is the only reason, why the *Benjans* obtain from

1638.

Brama's  
LieutenantsThe Auth:  
rity of the  
Bramanes.They be-  
lieve the  
immortality  
and transf-  
migration  
of su's.

the

1638. the killing of living Creatures, even to the Insects, how dangerous or troublesome soever they may be. They also forbear keeping any Fire, and lighting Candles in the night time, out of a fear that the Flies or Moths should burn themselves therein; nay, they make some difficulty to make pits on the Ground, for fear of drowning the Fleas and other Insects, which might lie in the way. What is yet more superstitious, they do not only redeem the Birds, which the *Mahumetans* had taken, but they also built Hospitals for Beasts that are hurt and wounded.

*A strange employment of the Bramans among the Malabares.* The *Bramanes* are very much respected all over the *Indies*, but more then any where else, among the *Malabares*, where they have a very odd kind of Employment. For there is no marriage contracted among them, but the first Fruits of the Bride are consecrated to the *Braman*, to whom she is brought to be deflower'd. They believe that the marriage were not sufficiently blest'd, if the *Braman* have not the first trial of the Bride; whence it comes, that many times he is earnestly intreated before he does it; and if the persons be of any quality, he hath a reward given him, as if he had been hired to do the work. When the Men are to go any journey, they intreat the *Braman* to have a care of their Wives while they are away, and to supply their places till they return.

*The Sects of the Benjans.* The *Benjans* are divided among themselves, into fourscore and three principal Sects; not accounting the other less considerable ones, which are multiply'd almost to infinity, in regard there is hardly any Family, but hath its particular Superstitions and Ceremonies. The four principal Sects, which comprehend all the rest, are those of *Ceurawath*, *Samarath*, *Bisnow*, and *Goëghy*. Those of *Ceurawath* are so punctual in the preservation of living Creatures and Insects, that their *Bramanes* have their mouths cover'd with a piece of linnen-cloth, for fear any Fly should get into it, and in their Houses they have always a little Broom in their hands, to sweep the Room, lest they should negligently tread upon any Insect, and they will not sit, till they have first made clean the seat or place where they are to sit down. They go bare-headed and bare-foot, with a white Staffe in their hands, by which they are distinguish'd from the others. They keep no fire in their Houses, nor light any Candles in them. They never drink any cold water, for fear of meeting with any Insect in it, but they have it boil'd at some ones house of their Sect. They have no other cloathing then a piece of coarse Linnen-cloth, which hangs down from the Navel to the Knees, and cover not the rest of their body, but with a small piece of Woollen-cloth, as much as could be made of one Fleece of Wooll.

*Their Belief.* The Opinions they have of God are in some things different from those of the other *Benjans*, inasmuch as they do not attribute to him an infinite being, which disposeth of the events of things, but they would have them to depend absolutely on good and ill fortune. They have a Saint named *Tiel Tencker*, and acknowledge no other good works then Fasting and Alms deeds: They believe that the Sun, the Moon, and other Stars, the Earth, living Creatures, Trees, Metals, and in a word, all things visible, have in themselves the first causes of their production and motion. They hold, that there are two Suns, and as many Moons, which relieve one the other alternately every day. They believe nothing of Heaven or Paradise; and yet acknowledge the immortality of the Soul, but after a very extraordinary manner. For they affirm, that the Soul, at its departure out of the body it had first animated, enters into another, either of Man or Beast, according to the good or ill life of the deceased: but that it ever makes choice of the Female, that it may return again into the world, to live there in another body.

*Their Mosques.* Their *Mosqueys*, which they call *Rales*, are built four square with flat roofs, and towards the East-side there is an open place, under which are the Chappels of their *Pagodes*, built after a pyramidal form, and rais'd ten foot from the ground, having upon the stairs leading up to them, several Figures of Wood, Stone, and Paper, representing their deceased Kindred, whose lives had been remarkable for some extraordinary good fortune. They do their greatest Devotions in the moneth of *August*, during which, they mortifie themselves by so great abstinencies, as might pass elsewhere for no less then miraculous; it being certain, that there are some, who for the space of fifteen dayes, or three weeks, nay sometimes a moneth or six weeks, live without taking any thing but water, into which they put the scrapings or shavings of a certain bitter Wood, which is conceived to have somewhat of nourishment in it. I must confess this will not easily be credited; but it is so acknowledged a Truth in the *Indies*, that it is not disputed by their greatest Enemies. They have also about that time many Assemblies in their *Mosqueys*, where their discourse is concerning the lives of their departed Saints, and there are read certain Legends, the people standing about the *Braman*, who sits down in the midst of them, having his mouth cover'd with a Linnen-cloth.

*Their publick Assemblies.* As they go into the *Mosquey*, they bestow their Charities, casting them into a great Copper

Copper basin, which they place before the *Pagode*, and in requital, they receive a mark with the Sandal-wood, which is made in their Foreheads, or upon their Clothes. While they are discoursing about their Saints, which lasts for the most part four or five hours, they are entertain'd with Musick, which is paid for out of the Charities that had been collected among them for the poor. They burn the bodies of aged persons, but bury those of Children who dye under three years of age. Their Widows are not obliged to burn themselves with their departed Husbands, but they promise perpetual Widowhood. All that make profession of this Sect may be admitted to Priesthood. Nay, Women are receiv'd into that Function, provided they be above twenty years of age; but the Men are admitted into it, at seven, eight and nine years of age. To become Priests, all they have to do, is to put on the habit, to accustom themselves to the austerity of that kind of life, and to make a vow of Chastity. Any one of the married couple hath the priviledge to become a Priest, and by that means, to oblige the other to celibate, for the remainder of his or her life. There are some make a Vow of Chastity in the state of marriage; but this is seldom seen, and when it is, those who make such Vows, are not overstrict in the observance of them.

All the other *Castes*, or Sects of the *Benjans*, have an aversion and contempt for this, and condemn it so much, that their Doctors continually exhort their Auditours to shun the Conversation of those people; so that they will not only not eat or drink with them, but they would not so much as set a foot in their Houses, though it were to avoid an imminent and inevitable danger; and such as are so unhappy as to touch them, are obliged to do a publick and severe penance.

The second Sect of the *Benjans*, called *Samarath*, hath this common with the former, that it permits not the killing of any Creature or Insect that hath life, nor the eating of any thing that hath had it. This Sect consists of Lock-makers, Smiths, Farriers, Carpenters, Taylors, Shooe-makers, Furbishers, and all other Tradesmen, admitting among them, even Souldiers, Clerks, and other Officers. Their Religion is different from that of the former, in that they believe, that this World was created by a first cause, which governs and preserves all, with a soveraign and unchangeable power.

They call him in their Language *Permiseer*, and assign him three Substitutes, who have their severall Functions under his Superintendency. The first, who is called *Brama*, hath the disposal of all Souls, which he sends into such Bodies as *Permiseer* appoints, either of Men or Beasts. The second, whom they call *Buffuna*, teaches the World to live according to Gods Commandments, which they have disposed into four Books. He hath also the oversight of Provisions, and advances the growth of Wheat, Herbs and Pulse, after *Brama* hath endued them with Souls. The third, named *Mais*, exercises his power over the dead. He is also Secretary to *Permiseer*, and takes the good and bad works of the deceased into examination, that he may make a report thereof to his Master, who having examin'd both the one and the other, sends the Soul into a Body, where she doth more or less penance, proportionably to the good or ill she hath done in the former. Those that are sent into the body of a Cow, are accounted the most happy, in regard that that Beast having something Divine in it, according to their opinion, they hope in a short time to be purified of the sins which they had committed during their continuance in the former body. But those which are forc'd to take up their second habitations in the bodies of Elephants, Camels, wild Oxen, Goats, Asses, Leopards, Swine, Serpents, or any other unclean Beast, are on the contrary thought most unhappy, inasmuch as at their departure out of them, they pass into the bodies of other Beasts, either tame, or less wild, where they compleat the expiation of the Crimes for which they were condemned to those punishments. The same thing happens also to those souls which are in the bodies of some Creatures that dye before they have compleated their Purification; which being absolutely consummated, *Mais* presents the Souls so purified to *Permiseer*, who receives them into the number of his Servants.

They burn the bodies of the deceased, save only those of Children under three years of age; but they have this particular Ceremony, that these Obsequies are performed on the side of a River or Brook, whither they carry the sick persons, when they are past hopes of recovery, that they may expire there.

There is no Sect, in which the Women sacrifice themselves so cheerfully to the memory of their Husbands, as in this Sect of *Samarath*. For they are perswaded, that the promise which *Buffuna* makes them, in the Law he gave them from *Permiseer*, is infallible; to wit, that if a Woman hath so great an affection for her Husband, as to burn her self with him after his death, she shall live with him in the other World seven times as long, and shall enjoy him with seven times as much satisfaction as she had done in this; which hope makes



1638. them look on death, but as a passage, through which they are to enter into a beatitude and blifs, whercof they had in this world but a fmall earnest.

As foon as the Women are delivered, there is prefented to the new born Child, an Ink-horn, Paper and Pens, and if it be a Boy, they add a Bow and Arrows; to fignifie that *Buffuna* will write his Law in his understanding, and that one day he fhall raife his Fortunes by the Wars. For as we faid before, this Se&t admits of Souldiers: but thofe among them, whofe Profefion it is to bear Arms, make a diftin&t Se&t, which they call that of the *Rasboutes*, of whom we fhall give an account anon.

*The Se&t of* Thofe of the Se&t of *Bifnow* have this common with the two precedent, that they ab-  
*Bifnow.* ftain from feeding on any thing that hath had life. They faft alfo, and in the moneth of

*Their God.* *August* have their Affemblies in their *Agoges*; fo they call their *Mofqueys*. Their principal Devotion confifts in finging of Hymns to the honour of their God, whom they call *Ram-ram*, and pray, to blefs them and their Families with a fupply of what they think neceffary, that they may live without difcontent and inconvenienc. Their finging is accompany'd with dancing, and Mufick, confifting of Drums, Pipes, Copper-bafins, and other Inftuments, upon which they play before their Idols. They represent their *Ram-ram*, with his Wife, in feveral manners, and adorn both their Statues on Holy-dayes, with many Gold Chains, Collars of Pearl, and all forts of precious Stones, and fet up many Lamps, and Wax-candles before them. This God hath no Subftitutes, as that of the Se&t of *Samarath*, but doth all himfelf.

*Their man-* The ordinary fuffenance of the *Bifnow* is only Herbs and Pulfe, fresh Butter, Milk and  
*ner of life.* Curds. They are great lovers of the *Atfchia*, which is a certain Compoftion made of Ginger, *Mangas*, Citrons, Garlick, and Mustard-feed pickled with Salt, and drink only Water, or *Baratte*. They are either Women or Priests that drefs their meat; and inftead of

*Their firing* Wood, which they forbear burning, becaufe there are fometimes Worms in it, which might by that means be deftroyed, they ufe Cow-dung dried in the Sun, and mixt with Straw, which they cut in fquare pieces, as they do the Turfs in *Holland*, and fo expofe it to fale.

Thofe of this Se&t are for the moft part addic&ted to Merchandife, either upon their own account, or as Agents and Factors under others. They underftand the bufinefs of Commerce extremely well, and their Converfation is not unpleafant; whence it comes that both *Cbriftians* and *Mahumetans* employ them as Brokers and Interpreters, in their way of Trading.

*Their* They have this particular Cuftom in this Se&t, that they permit not the Women to burn  
*Wives are* themfelves with their Husbands; but they oblige them to perpetual widowhood, even  
*not burnt.* though the Husband died before the confummation of the marriage. It is not long fince, that among them, the younger Brother was oblig'd to marry his elder Brothers Widow, to raife up feed to him; but this cuftome is abolifh'd by an exprefs Law which condemns the Women to celibate.

In the morning they all wash themfelves in a *Tanque*, or rather in a River, if there be any near the place where they live, and they think it not enough to go into it up to the Wafte, but they tumble, wallow, and fwim in it, muttering certain words between their Teeth, while the *Braman*, who fits on the River-fide and looks to their Cloaths, gives them his Benedic&tion, and prays God that they may be as clean from their fins, as their bodies are clear of filth. At their coming out of the water he rubs their Foreheads, Nofes and Ears, with a certain Compoftion made of Sandal, or fome other Odoriferous wood, and they give him for his pains a fmall quantity of Wheat, Rice or Pulfe.

*The Se&t of* Thofe of the Se&t of *Go&ghy* intermeddle not with either Trade or Traffick, but live a  
*the Go&.* very folitary life, in the Country, in obfcure Villages, or the ruines of Houfes, where they  
*ghy.* worship their God *Bruin*, and his Servant *Mecû*. They have neither *Mofqueys*, nor any

*Their God.* other publick places, wherein to affemble to do their Devotions; nay will not go into the *Mofqueys* of the other *Benjans*, unlefs it be into thofe of the Se&t of *Samarath*; but it is only to take up their Lodging in them for want of other accommodation. For they are forbidden by their Law to be proprietors of any thing. They fhun the converfation of Men, and live in Woods and Defarts, like the Hermits and ancient Anchorites. They have nothing about them, but a piece of Linnen-cloath, to cover that part which Nature is unwilling fhould be expof'd to the view of all. They rub their Bodies all over with Afhes, and where-ever they fit down, they have a little heap of Afhes near them, which they are perpetually handling, and fcatrer of it upon their moift Hair, which diffigures them after a ftrange manner. They never fpeak to fuch as pafs by them, nor give them the time of the day; nay, they will not answer thofe that fpeak to them, out of this perfwafion, that being confecrated to their God *Bruin*, they believe they fhould defile themfelves

1638  
 selves by speaking to other men. Whence it happens, that when they come into any City, they make no stay therein, and will not turn out of that Street which leads them to the Gate they would go out at. Wherein they are so scrupulous, that they will not ask for any thing, though they were ready to starve. They will indeed receive what is given them, but if there be nought given them they live on Herbs and Roots, which they find in the fields. There are some among them that have three or four servants, who put themselves voluntarily into their service, that they may participate of their sanctity: but all the service they do them is what they list themselves. For the Masters never command them to do any thing, nay not what is most necessary to life. All the other *Benjans* have a certain veneration for the *Goëghys*, except it be those of the *Caste*, or Sect of *Ceurawath*, who have a horreur for them, and shun their conversation.

There are some among them have a greater reputation of knowledge and sanctity than others, but they make no advantage thereof, in as much as their condition is equal. They never marry, but live in so great observance of Chastity, that they would not suffer a Woman to touch them. The common people hath a great devotion for these *Goëghys*, saluting them with much respect, and receiving their Benediction with great submission.

The *Goëghys* believe, that their God *Bruin* hath created all things, and that he continues them in being, by his infinite power, by which he is able to destroy and reduce them to nothing. *Their belief.*

They affirm, that he is not to be represented by any Figure of either Man or Beast, but that he is a light, which cannot be the Object of our sight, inasmuch as, having created that of the Sun, it is not to be admired, that we cannot contemplate the principle of so transcendent a brightness.

They believe not the Transmigration of Souls, as the other *Benjans* do; but affirm, that the Souls at their departure out of the body, are immediately transferred to their God *Bruin*, to live with him eternally, and to be united to that infinite Light. *Hold not the transmigration of Souls.*

Certain it is, that Charcoal-men and Chimney-sweepers among us are not so besmuted as these people, who take a pleasure in disfiguring their bodies and countenances, not only by the Ashes wherewith they continually rub them, but also by their abstinences, which as they are greater, so are they with all much more frequent than those of the *Benjans* of the Sect of *Ceurawath*. There are some Women become *Goëghys*, but in regard that Sex is too tender and delicate, to accustom themselves to so great austerities, their number is not very great.

The *Benjans* oblige their Profelytes, that is, the *Mahumetans*, who embrace their Religion, to a very extravagant manner of life. For, to renew their whole body, which, according to their Opinion, is defiled by the flesh they had eaten, they oblige them for the space of six moneths together, to mix amongst what they are to eat, a pound of Cow-dung; out of this reason, that that Creature having, as they hold, some thing divine in it, here is nothing can purifie the body so well as that kind of nourishment, which their Profelytes are permitted to diminish by degrees, after the three first moneths of their conversion. They also condemn to that kind of Diet, those of their own Sect, who having been prisoners among the *Mahumetans*, or *Christians*, or conversing ordinarily among them, have been perswaded to eat flesh, or drink wine; and receive them not into their communication, till such time as they have been purified in that manner. *A strange manner of living.*

All the *Benjans* are extremely superstitious. For they never go out of their houses, till they have said their Prayers; and if at their going out they meet with any ill presage, they return into their houses, and do not any business of importance that day. They take to presage ill Fortune, the meeting of an empty Cart, a wild Oxe, an Ass, a Dog, if he be not eating somewhat, a Goat, an Ape, a Deer, a Goldsmith, a Carpenter, a Lock-smith, a Barber, a Taylor, a beater of Cotton, a Widow, a company of People going to the enterment of a dead Body, or a Man returning from the same Ceremony; as also, that of a Man or Woman carrying Butter, Oyl, Milk, brown-Sugar, Citrons, or any other sharp things, Apples, Iron, or any thing relating to War. They are on the contrary, well pleased with the meeting of an Elephant, or Camel, whether they be loaden or not, as also of a Horse, a Cow, an Oxe, a wild Oxe loaden with water, a He-Goat, a Dog eating, a Cat coming on the right hand of them, and Persons loaden with Provisions, Curds and white-Sugar; but above all, that of a Cock, or a Hare, and then they cheerfully go about what they have to do, as being prepossess'd with the opinion they have, that the success of their Affairs will be answerable to their expectations. *The Superstition of the Benjans.*

There are some who put the *Rasboutes* into the number of the *Benjans*, and affirm, that they are a branch of the Sect of *Samarath*, with which they believe the transmigration of *Rasboutes* their belief. *of*

1658. of Souls, and several other things. But they believe this in particular, that the Souls of Men go into Birds, who afterwards give their Friends notice of the good and evil which is to befall them: upon which account it is, that they so superstitiously observe the flight and singing of those Creatures. Their Widows burn themselves with the bodies of their deceased Husbands, unless it be, that, at the contract of Marriage, there was some promise made that they should not be forc'd thereto. But whereas all the other *Benjans* are of a mild and reserv'd disposition, abhorring the effusion of blood, even that of Beasts; these on the contrary, are a sort of violent and daring people, who eat flesh, and live only by murder and rapine, and never mind any other profession then that of Arms. The *Mogul* makes use of these Men, as do also most of the other Princes of the *Indies*, because they are undaunted, and entertain not the least fear of death. To this purpose, there is a Story of five *Rasboutes*, who forc'd by weariness to rest themselves in a Country mans house, there happened to be a Fire in the Village, which by reason of the wretchedness of the houses, soon came to that where they were. They had notice of it, but one of them said to the rest, that having never turn'd their backs from danger, it would be the greatest shame in the world to them, to shun death, which they had never fear'd: That it were baseness in them to stir thence, but that they were to make the Fire as much afraid of them, as others were of it, and force it to stop its progress when it came near them; and they were so earnestly engag'd in these temerarious and extravagant discourses, that the Fire getting into the Room where they were, one only had the time to get out, and to drag along with him one of his Camerades, who could never afterwards be recover'd out of the melancholly regret he had conceiv'd, at his not having follow'd the example of the others.

A Story of five Rasboutes.

It is related also of another *Rasboute*, who going into the Country, in the company of two others, came in his way to a Pit, at the sight whereof his Horse stood still; but the *Rasboute* condemning the caution of the Beast, as if it had proceeded from fearfulness, told him, that he was very much to blame to entertain any fear, having on his back a Man that never knew any; and thereupon beating him, he would have made him leap over the Pit; but, both Horse and Man falling, they were both drown'd, the Man acquiring among them, by this inconsiderable and brutish action, the reputation of a Man heroically courageous.

Their Charity towards Birds.

They have no compassion but what they have towards irrational Creatures, especially Birds, which they take the pains to keep and feed, out of a persuasion, that one day, when their Souls shall be lodg'd in Creatures of that kind, some or other will have the same charity towards them. And this is their employment particularly on Holy-dayes, as also for ten or twelve dayes after the decease of their nearest Kindred, and upon the anniversary dayes of their death.

They marry their Children very young.

They have this common with the other *Benjans*, that they marry their Children very young, which is the less to be wondred at, inasmuch as it is very certain, that the *Indians* of both Sexes are capable of engendring much sooner then any other Nation: so that there are not any but are fit for the work of generation at ten or twelve years of age. To this purpose I have a Story, which may seem fabulous, but I have it from such grave persons, that I shall make no difficulty to communicate it upon their credit.

A remarkable Story.

Not many years since, even in the reign of *Scach Choram*, who is yet living, a certain *Rasboutes* Wife, who liv'd at *Agra*, was brought to bed of a Daughter, which at two years of age had Breasts as big as those of any Nurse. A Lock-smith, neighbour to the *Rasboute*, advis'd the Father and Mother to permit, that the hot Iron might be apply'd thereto, which is the ordinary remedy they make use of against superfluous humours. They consented thereto; but as soon as they had applied the foresaid Remedy, the Lock-smith died, and soon after, the Father and Mother, and all those that had been present at the said cure. The child had at three years of age, what those of her Sex are not wont to have till twelve or thirteen. The year after she had nothing of that kind, but her Belly was so swollen as if she had been with child. That swelling was little abated the year following, and at six years of age she was brought to bed of a Boy. But this was thought a thing so extraordinary all over the Country, though they marry very young, as I said before, that *Schich Choram* sent for both Mother and Child, and ordered them to be brought up at the Court.

The Partis.

Besides the *Benjans*, there is yet another sort of *Pagans* in the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, whom they call the *Partis*. These are the *Persians* of *Fars* and *Chorasán*, who fled into those parts, to avoid the persecution of the *Mahumetans* in the seventh Age. For *Abubeker*, having undertaken to establish the *Mahumetan* Religion in *Persia* by force of Arms, the King perceiving it was impossible for him to oppose it, took shipping with eighteen thousand

land men at *Ormuz*, and landed in *Indosthan*. The King of *Cambaya*, who was a *Hindou*, or *Indian*, that is, a *Pagan*, as himself, received him to dwell in his Country, into which that liberty drew several other *Persians*, who, with their Religion, have preserv'd and continued their ancient manner of life. Their habitations are for the most part along the Sea-coast, and they live very peaceably, sustaining themselves by the advantage they make out of the *Tobacco* they plant, and the *Terry* they get out of the Palms of those parts, and whereof they make *Arak*, in regard they are permitted to drink Wine. They intermeddle also with Merchandise, and the exchange of Money, and keep Shops, and are of all Trades, except those of *Farrriers*, *Black-smiths*, and *Lock-smiths*; in regard it is an unpardonable sin among them to put out the fire.

Their manner of life.

The *Parfis* believe that there is but one God, Preserver of the Universe: That he acts alone, and immediately, in all things; and that the seven Servants of God, for whom they have also a great Veneration, have only an inferiour administration, whereof they are oblig'd to give an account.

The first of these Servants is called *Hamasda*, and hath the Government of Men, and his charge is, to induce them to the exercise of good Works.

The seven Servants of God.

The second, whom they call *Babman*, hath the oversight of Cattel, and presides over all the living Creatures that are upon Earth.

The third, named *Ardybesth*, preserves Fire, and hinders it from being put out.

The fourth is called *Sarymar*, and is entrusted with the charge of Metals, about which they are very curious; and accuses those who neglect the making of them clean; which negligence is a mortal sin among them.

The fifth, whom they call *Eslander*, hath a care of the Earth, and keeps it from being polluted, and hinders it from being otherwise used than it ought.

*Amaerdath*, who is the sixth, hath the same charge over the Water, as *Eslander* hath over the Earth, and keeps it from being defiled with filth.

The seventh, whom they call *Ammadath*, looks to the preservation of Fruits, Trees, Herbs and Pulse, but without any power either to advance or retard their production. For these seven subalternate Spirits are appointed by God, only to take cognizance of the abuses committed in this World, and to make their report thereof to him.

Besides these seven Servants, whose dignity is very great, God hath twenty six other Servants, who have all their particular Functions.

Twenty six other Servants of God.

The first, whom they call *Saroch*, takes possession of the Soul immediately upon its departure out of the Body, and conducts it before two Judges, whom they call *Meer Resus*, and *Saros*, to be examined, and to receive according to their Sentence, either its condemnation or absolution from its sins. Their manner of proceeding in judgment, is, to put the good and evil Works into two Scales, that they may judge of them according to their weight. The good and evil Angels stand about the Scales, and carry away the Souls adjudged to them, either into *Paradise*, where they enjoy eternal bliss, or into *Hell*, there to be tormented to the end of the World, which they believe will be renewed at the expiration of a thousand years; and then, they shall enter into other Bodies, to lead a better life than they had done in the former.

The fourth of these Servants is called *Berzm*, and hath the oversight of all Military affairs; upon which account it is that they address themselves to him, that they may obtain of God Victory, by his Intercession.

The fifth is *Carrasda*, that is to say, the Sun.

The sixth *Auva*, that is, the Water.

The seventh is called *Ader*, and governs the Fire, under *Ardybesth*.

The eighth is *Mobo*, or the Moon.

The ninth is *Tiera*, that is, Rain.

The tenth, called *Gos*, hath the oversight of Cattel.

The eleventh, who is called *Farmardy*, hath the custody of the Souls which are in *Paradise*.

The twelfth, named *Aram*, is he that gives Joy or Sadness to Mankind.

The thirteenth, named *Goada*, governs the Winds, and makes them blow as he pleaseth.

*Dien*, who is the fourteenth, teaches Men the Law of God, and inspires them with good motions to observe it.

*Apirsanich*, who is the fifteenth, is he who bestows Wealth on Men.

*Astaer*, who is the sixteenth, is he that gives Men Understanding and Memory.

The seventeenth, whom they call *Affaman*, is Superintendent over Commerce.

The eighteenth, called *Gamigat*, hath the Government of the Earth.

*Marispanj*

1638. *Marifpan*, who is the nineteenth, is Goodnefs it felf, who is communicated to thofe that invoke him.

They call the twentieth *Amiera*, and his Prefidentfhip is over Money, whereof he hath the difpofal.

The one and twentieth is called *Hoem*, and is he, without whofe concurrence there happens no Generation of Men, or Beasts, or Production of Fruits.

*Dimma* and *Berfe*, are indifferently defign'd to attend all Men: and the three remaining, whom they call *Dephader*, *Dephemer*, and *Dephdin*, are engag'd upon the particular Service of God, who imployes them about all Affairs indifferently.

The *Parfis*, who call thefe twenty fix Servants by one general name, *Gefhoo*, that is to fay, Lords, believe, that they have an absolute power over the things whereof God hath entrusted them with the Administration. Whence it comes, that they make no difficulty to worship them, and to invoke them in their extremities, out of a perfuafion, that God will not deny them any thing they defire upon their Interceffion.

They have a very great refpect for their Doctors and Teachers, and allow them a very plentiful fubfiftance, with their Wives and Children, though fome among them intermeddle alfo with Merchandife, which they are permitted to do according to their Law; but thefe are not fo highly efteemed, as thofe others who fpend all their time in teaching Children to read and write, and explicating their Law to the people. They have no *Mofqueys*, nor other publick places, for the Exercife of their Religion: but they make ufe, to that purpofe, of fome room in their houfes, where they do their devotions fitting, and without any inclination of the body.

They have  
no Mof-  
queys.

Nor have they any particular day in the week defign'd for that end, but they obferve the firft, and twentieth day of the Moon. Though their Moneths confift of thirty dayes a picce, yet does their Year confift of 365. dayes, for they add five dayes to the laft Moneth. Their Priests are not known by their habit, in regard it is common to them, not only with all the reft of the *Parfis*, but alfo with all the other Inhabitants of the Country; from whom they are diftinguifh'd by a String or Wreath of Wooll or Camels Hair, wherewith they make them a Girdle, which comes twice about the body, and is ty'd with two knots behind, which is the only diftinftive mark of their Religion, and fo infeperable from their Profefion, that if it happen to be loft, he who is fo unfortunate as to have loft it, may neither eat, nor drink, nor fpeak, nay not ftir from the place where he is till another be brought him from the Priest who fells them. The Women wear of them as well as the Men, after they are come to twelve years of age, at which time they are thought capable of comprehending the Myfteries of Religion.

The badge  
of their  
Religion.

Their houfes are little and dark, very poorly furnifh'd, and they have a great affectation to live in the fame quarter. They have no particular Magiftrate among them, yet do they not think much to accept of the employments which the *Mahumetans* give them, and create among themfelves two of the moft confiderable of the Nation, who decide fuch differences as may arife, and for which they never plead before any other Judges.

Their Hou-  
fes.

There is nothing fo precious among them as Fire, which they keep in very carefully, upon this account, as they affirm, that there is not any thing affords fo lively a representation of the Divinity as Fire does. Whence it comes, that they never put out a Candle, or a Lamp, and never make ufe of Water to quench the Fire, though the Houfe were in danger of being burnt; but they endeavour to fmother it with Earth. For it is the greateft misfortune can happen to them, to find the Fire fo far out in their Houfes, as that they muft be forc'd to go out among their Neighbours to get fome.

Five is ac-  
counted fa-  
cred among  
them.

They alfo marry their Children while they are very young, but they fuffer the Parents to bring them up at their own Houfes, till they are come to fifteen or fixteen years of age, and then they confummate the marriage. Their Widows are permitted to marry the fecond time; whence it comes that there are not fo many diforders committed among them, as there are among the other Nations. But Adultery and Fornication are the greateft fins they can commit, and which, no doubt, they would punish with death, if they had the administration of Juftice in their own hands.

They fe-  
verely pu-  
nifh Adul-  
tery.

Their man-  
ner of bu-  
rial.

When any one is fo fick, as that there is little hopes of his recovery, he is taken out of his bed, to be laid on a little bed of green Turfs upon the ground, where he lies till he give up the ghoft, and immediately after, five or fix Men, whofe employment it is to make the Graves, take him from the faid Pallat of Turfs, put a Shroud about him, and lay him upon an Iron-grate, made after the form of a Biere, upon which they carry the body to the place of burial, which is above a League from the City. Thefe places, or, if we may call them fo, Church-yards, are divided into three parts, all inclofed with a Wall of twelve or fifteen foot

foot high, one whereof is for the Men, another for the Women, and the third for Children. Over the Graves there are Bars laid cross like a Grate, upon which they lay the body, there to remain till the Crows and other devouring Birds have consumed them, so as that the Bones fall into the Grave. The Kindred and Friends accompany the Corps with horrid cries and lamentations, and make a halt when they are come within 500. paces of the Grave, till such time as the Grave-makers have laid it upon the Grate, and made certain Prayers for the Soul. About a moneth or six weeks after, they carry the Turfs upon which the deceased party died, to the Church-yard, as a thing polluted, which they would not so much as touch; and every moneth they make a Feast for the nearest of the Kindred, in memory of the departed. If it happens that they touch a dead Carcass, or the Bones of a dead Beast, they are oblig'd to cast off their cloaths, to cleanse their bodies, and to do penance for nine dayes together, during which, neither Women nor Children dare come near them. They are of this particular persuasion, that they whose Bones chance to fall into the Water, are irrecoverably damned.

Their Law forbids the eating of ought that hath had life; yet are not these prohibitions so rigorous, but that in case of necessity, may even in the time of war, they kill Sheep, Goats, tame Fowl and Fish, and eat thereof: But they religiously abstain from the Oxe and Cow, nor do they kill Elephants, Camels, Horses or Hares; but as to the Oxe and Cow, they forbear them so strictly, that they commonly say, they had rather feed on their Fathers and Mothers then eat of an Oxe or Cow.

They are permitted to drink Wine and Terry, but are forbidden the drinking of *Aqua Drunken-vite*, and above all things, being overcome with drunkenness: This is a sin among them, *nefs.* which cannot be expiated without undergoing a very severe penance, which a man must either submit to, or be content to quit their communion.

Their stature is none of the greatest, but they are of a clearer Complexion then any of the other *Indosthans*, and their Women are beyond comparison whiter and fairer then those of the Country, or those of the *Mahumetans*. The Men wear great bushy Beards, cut round or somewhat Spade-wise. Some cut off their Hair, others let it grow to the full length. Those who cut their Hair, leave growing on their Crowns a Lock or Tuft about an inch in compass.

They are the most self-ended and covetous sort of people in the World, using all possible industry to over-reach and circumvent those they trade withall, though otherwise they have an aversion for theft. They are of a better Nature then the *Mahumetans*, at least if it may be said there is any good Nature consistent with a self-seeking mind, when it is once possessed with the basest and most infamous of all Vices, Avarice.

There are in the Kingdom of *Gazurratta* two other sorts of Pagans, one whereof are the *Indous*, who come out of the Province of *Multhan*, and the parts about *Asmeern*, and are not *Benjans*, inasmuch as they kill all sorts of Beasts, and eat thereof, excepting only the Oxe and Cow. They eat their Meals within a Ring or Circle, within which they permit not the *Benjans* to enter. They are for the most part Souldiers, and the *Mogul* makes use of them for the keeping of the most considerable places of his Kingdom. The other sort comes out of the Kingdom of *Baghenal*, which is commonly called the Kingdom of *Golcanda*, and they are called the *Jentives*.

These are a sort of very ignorant people, who refer themselves, as to matter of Religion, to their *Bramans*. They believe, that in the beginning there was but one God, who took others into a participation of his power, according as Men came to deserve that honour by their heroick Actions; and it is to this kind of Saints that they build *Mosqueys*.

They believe the Immortality and Transmigration of Souls, upon which persuasion they abhor the effusion of blood. Accordingly are there not to be found any Robbers or Murtherers among them; but on the other side, they are generally Lyars and Cheats, in which good qualities they exceed all the other *Indians*. They severely punish Adultery, but they so openly permit Fornication, that there are whole Families among them, whom they call *Bagamaro*, who prostitute themselves publickly.

Besides all these, they have yet among them another sort of people, whom they call *Theers*, who are neither *Pagans* nor *Mahumetans*, for they have no Religion at all. They are altogether employed about the scouring of Wells, Sinks, Common-Shores, and Privies, as also the fleaing of dead Beasts, whose flesh they eat.

They also conduct condemn'd persons to punishment, and are sometimes the Executioners of them. Whence it comes that they are an abomination to all the other *Indians*, who are oblig'd to purifie themselves from head to foot, if any of these people, whom, upon that occasion, they call *Alchores*, should touch them. Which is the reason that they suffer

1638. suffer them not to live within Cities, but assign them Habitations in the extremities of the Suburbs, that they may be as far as may be conveniently from the conversation of other men.

We shall not make it our business here to speak of the Religion of the *Mahumetans*, wherewith the Kingdom *Guzuratta* is peopled, in regard that, some few points only excepted, it is common to them with the *Turks* and *Persians*, whereof there hath been an account given in the precedent Travels of the Embassadors. But we shall continue a little further the digression wherein we are engag'd, and treat of the manner of life of the *Mahumetans* of the *Indies*, which is much different from that of the *Turks* and *Persians*.

The marriage Ceremonies of the Indian Mahumetans.

We will begin with their Ceremonies of Marriage. The Friends on both sides being agreed, and the Wedding-day appointed, there is brought to the Bridegrooms door a Horse, whose Mane and Crupper are beset with all sorts of Flowers, as is also the piece of Network, wherewith they cover the Bridegrooms face, who gets on horseback, accompanied by his Kindred and Friends, having on each side two Pages carrying Umbrelloes of painted Paper, and before him Musick, and certain Men, who cast into the Air, Squibs, Crackers, and other Fire-works. In this Equipage he passes through the principal Streets of the City, and at last comes to the Brides door, where he entertains her with his Musick and Fire-works, for the space of half an hour. Then he goes into the house, where he sits down on pieces of Tapistry, purposely set there for that Ceremony; and whither the Bride comes to him accompanied by her Kindred, and the *Molla* and *Kafi*, or Judge of the place. The *Molla* reads certain passages of the *Alchoran*; and after he hath taken the Bridegrooms Oath, that in case of Divorce, he will provide for the subsistence of his Wife, he blesses the marriage, and goes his way. The rest of the company stay in the room to eat *Bettelé*, and some other Drugs, but they drink no Wine, instead whereof, they take Pills of *Amfion* or *Opium*, which works the same effect, and intoxicates them as Wine does. The Kindred and Friends continue their Assemblies, five or six, sometimes eight or ten dayes together, especially when the marks of the Consummation of marriage are apparent upon the sheets of the new married couple. But if the Bridegroom find it more beaten and common then he expected, he uses it as a high-way, and without any more ado abandons it to the publick; as on the contrary, if he be not able to force himself a passage, and that in the three or four first dayes of his marriage, he gives not visible assurances of his abilities in the work he hath undertaken, one of the Brides nearest Kinswomen sends him a Distaffe, with this message; That since he is incapable of doing mans work, 'tis but fit he should be put to womans.

The effects of Opium.

They may be divorced.

Their marriages are not indissoluble, as they are among *Christians*, nay indeed among the other *Mahumetans*, among whom there is no Divorce made, till the grievances of the parties be first examined, and after that, not without the authority of the Judge. But here the men make it an express Article in their Contracts of marriage, that they may be divorced, not only in case of Adultery or sterility, but also in case of ever so little aversion they may conceive against their Wives; provided some course be taken by them for their subsistence, during their lives.

Not a word of any restitution of Dower, in regard the Women there do not bring their Husbands any thing besides their Clothes and Jewels: Nor indeed is there any but have their Pendants, Rings and Bracelets, of each good store.

The Women go seldom abroad, and those that are of any quality go in close Coaches, or are carried in *Palanquins*, or Litters, according to the *Indian* mode. There are indeed those who ride on horseback, but they have their faces cover'd with a Skarf; so that they are only the meaner sort, or the common ones, that go a foot, or are seen with their faces uncovered. They are deliver'd without any pain almost, in so much that it is seldom seen there that Women are above two or three hours in labour.

They bring up their Children well.

The *Mahumetans* bring up their Children with much care and tenderness, send them to School as soon as they are capable of learning any thing; and there they are taught to read and write. Those who are not of ability to maintain their Children at School, bestow them on some person of quality, or send them to the Wars, as soon as they are able to bear Arms. They who put themselves into the service of others, enter into a very unhappy condition; inasmuch as they are allow'd but three or four *Ropias* a moneth, towards meat, drink and cloath.

It is observed, that the Children of the *Mahumetans* have a particular tenderness of those that brought them into the world; nay, that it is sometimes so great, that they would rather starve themselves, then suffer those from whom they derive their life, should want any thing requisite for the preservation of their own.

There

There is hardly any person of quality, but makes him a handſom Garden, within which he builds a fair houſe, having a great number of little windows of all ſides, which is to ſerve for a place of Sepulture for them, and all their Family after them; in theſe kinds of Structures they lay out vaſt ſums of money. 1638.

The Ceremonies of their Interments are theſe. Immediately upon the Departure, the Kindred bewail the deceaſed, and ask him, why he would dye? and whether he wanted thoſe conveniences which he ſhould have had? &c. Then they dine, and there is a Feaſt made, in memory of the deceaſed. In the mean time, the Body is well waſhed, there is a clean perfum'd Sheet wrapped about it, and it is put into an open Coffin, from which three or four *Mollas* never ſtir, but continue near the Body, reading and praying for the Soul of the deceaſed, till it be carried to the ground. The Coffin is cover'd with Cotton, Velvet, or ſome other more precious Stoffe, according to the abilities of the deceas'd, and the Kindred and Friends accompany the Body, which is carried by ten or twelve Men to the place of burial, the *Mollas* ſinging in the mean time certain Hymnes, of thankſgiving Songs, to the glory of God. The Body is laid down upon the right ſide, with the Face turned towards the Weſt, the Feet towards the South, and the Head towards the North; and the Coffin is covered with a board, to keep the Earth from touching the Body, and deſiling it. While the Body is let down into the Grave, the Kindred mutter certain Prayers between their teeth; and that done, all the company returns to the houſe of the deceaſed, where the *Mollas* continue their Prayers for his Soul, for the ſpace of two or three dayes: and during all this time, there is no fire made within the houſe, but the meat is dreſſed elſewhere.

*Their Interments.*

They aſſume the quality of *Muſſulmans*, and believe that there is no ſalvation out of their Communion, treating as Hereticks and Infidels, not only the *Chriſtians*, but alſo all ſuch as profeſs any other Religion then theirs. Nay, they would not eat of what a Chriſtian or Pagan had dreſſ'd, unleſs it be Bread, Butter, Cheeſe, Preserves, or any thing of that kind. They have a far greater averſion for the *Roman* Catholicks then they have for the *Proteſtants*, upon this account, that they cannot endure the worſhipping of Images, nor the Adoration of things viſible.

*They are called Manſulmans or Muſſulmans.*

They are for the moſt part of a good ſtature, and there are few hunch-back'd or lame among them. They among them who are called *Mogolies*, are of a clearer Complexion then the others, but they have all their Hair black, and without curling.

*Their ſtature and complexion.*

They love not flaxen or fair hair'd people, and have an averſion for ſuch as are red hair'd, out of an opinion they have, that they are Leprous. For that Diſeaſe is very common in thoſe parts; nay the more in this regard, that the Pox, which is no leſs common, is never ſo well cured, but that it leaves ſome corruption in the blood, which by inſenſible degrees infects the whole body, and, in time, degenerates into Leproſie. The *Mollas* ſuffer their Beards to grow, but all the reſt ſhave, not only their Beards, but alſo their Heads, excepting only a little tuft, or lock, which they leave upon the Crown; upon this perſwaſion, that by the ſaid lock, *Mahumet* is to take them and liſt them up to Heaven.

Both Men and Women are cloath'd much after the ſame manner. Their Garments, which are of Cotton, Silk, or Brocadoc, according to the ſeveral qualities of the perſons, are cloſe above, like our cloſe Coats, but from the waſt downwards they grow wider and wider, till they come to the ſmall of the leg, where their breeches, which come down to the feet, are gathered into many folds. Their Shooes are of *Spaniſh* Leather, or ſome Silk-ſtuffe, or Brocadoc, the quarters very low, in regard they put them off ever and anon, when they go into their Chambers, the Floors whereof are covered with Tapiſtry. As to what they wear about their Heads, it is rather like that of the *Turks* then that of the *Persians*, and is made of a very thin Stuff, of Cotton or Silk, and wrought with Gold or Silver Thread. They call it *Shees*, and never put it off, but when they go to bed. Upon their ordinary Garment; they wear a kind of Cloak, which they call *Pomereis*, againſt the Cold and Rain. They tye their Garment about with a Girdle, which they call *Commerbant*, which is made of a Silk-ſtuffe, wrought with Gold Thread, upon which they have another, which is a larger, of a very fine Cotton. Perſons of Quality wear in their Girdles a kind of Armes or Ponyards, ſhort and broad, which they call *Ginda*, or *Catarre*, the handle and ſheath whereof are of Gold, and many times ſet with precious Stones.

*Their Habits.*

The Houſes of Perſons of Quality are ſpacious enough, and conſiſt of ſeveral Apartments, Halls, Chambers and Cloſets. The Roofs of their Houſes are flat, ſo as that a Man may go upon them, to take the freſh Air, and lye there in the night. There is no Houſe almoſt, but hath its Garden and *Tanque*; but their Buildings are poor,

*Their Houſes.*



1638. for their Walls are but of Earth, plaistered over with a Composition, made of Free-stone beaten small, Lime, Gum and Sugar, which makes a dazzling white, and is as smooth as Glass. Their Houses are but poorly furnish'd, even the Kitchen it self, where you see only a few Dishes and Stoves: but the Women in their own Lodgings take no small pride in setting out their Gold and Silver Plate.

The Ceremonies of their Visits.

The Men receive their Visits in a Hall, where they sit on several pieces of Tapistry: At their entrance into the Room they mutually salute one another with their *Salom*, which they accompany with a low inclination; and if the Person whom they salute be of Quality, they put the right hand to their heads, to shew the power they are willing he should have over them. When there is no submission due on either side, the Visitants think it enough to salute one the other only with an inclination of the body, and sometimes they take one another by the lock, saying, *Grab anemcas*, that is, *be it to you according to the prayers of the poor*. He who receives visits keeps his place, and causes those who come to see him, to sit on both sides of him. They are very civil and very reserved in their conversation, insomuch that they are never seen contesting or loud in their discourse, and never use any gestures of either the hand or the head. When they would whisper to any one, they cover their mouth with a Skarf or Napkin, lest their breath should offend the person whom they speak to. They who make Visits about business, take leave as soon as they have done; but intimate Friends continue their Visits, till the Master of the house be called to dinner.

Their expence.

They are very expensive in Cloaths, Feasting and Women; for their Law allowing them to take all pleasures imaginable, provided they do not injure their Neighbours, they are willing enough to make their advantage of that permission, and so pursue all the delight their hearts can wish. When they eat, they sit upon Tapistry, and are served by a Carver. They have no Napkin, nor need any, for they never touch the Meat with their hands.

Their Domesticity.

They keep as many Servants as they can maintain, assigning every person his particular Employment, wherein the others are so exact, that they who are appointed to do one thing, will not do the least service for another. For a *Selvidar*, whose place it is to look to the Horses, will not meddle with an Oxe, or do any thing about the Cart, because that is the duty of the *Belluman*. The *Serrieman* hath the oversight of the Camels, and the *Mahont* that of the Elephants.

The *Frassy* looks to the Tents and Tapistry; and the *Santeles* are Lacqueys. These have a great Plume of Feathers on their Heads, and two little Bells upon their Breasts, and will easily travel fifteen or sixteen Leagues a day. They are not kept in the House, but have their Wages, on which they live, though it amounts not to above three or four *Ropias* a Moneth. But they have withall certain Vails, called *Testury*; yet with all the Advantages they can make of their services, it is as much as they can do to subsist.

Their greatest expence is that which they are at about their Wives. For being permitted to have three or four, if they please, they are oblig'd to maintain them, with their Eunuchs and Slaves, according to their quality, by allowing them a certain sum monethly, as also by finding them Cloaths, Pearls, and Household-stuffe. Their Polygamy hath this convenience in it, that there is no Woman, but uses all Industry and Artifice imaginable to gain her Husbands affection, and defeat her Rivals. All the caresses, all the kindneses she can think of, she makes use of to ingratiate her self.

There is no Drug eminent for its venereal Vertues, but she will find out some means or other to give him, to excite him to Voluptuousness; and she thinks no compliance too great, to purchase his more frequent enjoyments. They have also a great kindness for the Eunuchs, in whose custody they are, to engage them to afford them more liberty in their restraint, which they brook so ill, that in those parts a man would think Polygamy should rather be permitted the Women than the Men.

The condition of Tradesmen.

But of all, Tradesmen are in the saddest condition, in as much as the Children cannot be put to any other Trades then what their Fathers are of, and there is this inconvenience withall, that a piece of work must pass through three or four hands before it be finished; so that all they can do is to get five or six pence a day. They must accordingly fare very poorly, their ordinary Diet being only *Kisfery*, which they make of Beans pounded, and Rice, which they boyl together in water till the water be consumed. Then they put there-to a little Butter melted, and this is their Supper, for all day they eat only Rice and Wheat in the grain.

Their Houses.

Their Houses are low, the Walls of Earth, and covered with green Turfs. They make

make no fire in their Houses; for having nothing that is combustible but Cow-dung, the stink of that would be insupportable; whence it comes that they burn it before their Doors. They also rub the walls with the same dung, out of an imagination, that it keeps away Fleas and other Insects. 1638.

Merchants are infinitely more happy than Tradesmen; but they also have this inconvenience, that as soon as they have gotten any wealth together, they are exposed to the envy of the Grandees, who find out ways to fleece them, as soon as they make any shew of it. And whereas they cannot do it with Justice, they many times make use of such pretences as cost those their lives who have acquired excessive riches. Merchants.

All the *Mahumetans* of these parts may be said to profess the same Religion; but they have among them certain Superstitions, and particular manners of life, whereby they are distinguished into several Sects, though it may be also alledged, that they are to be accounted rather so many Nations, than different Sects. For when they are distinguished into *Patans*, *Moguls*, or *Mogollies*, and *Indosthans*, who are subdivided into many other more considerable Fractions, as *Sayet*, *Seegh*, and *Leet*, it must be confes'd, that if there be any difference in their humours, and manner of life, they brought it out of the Countreys whence they came, and that it is not to be attributed to their Religion. For it is certain that the *Patans* are those, who in the precedent Travels of the Embassadors, are called *Padars*, a sort of self-conceited, insolent, cruel, and barbarous people. They slight others, for no other reason, than that they are not so rash as themselves in hazarding their lives without any necessity. Patans.

The *Moguls*, on the contrary, who came out of great *Tartary*, are good natur'd, mild, discreet, civil, obliging, and full of compliance; whence it comes, that they are more respected than the others. Moguls.

The *Indosthans*, or *Hindusthans*, are the ancient Inhabitants of the Country, and distinguish'd from the rest by their colour, which is much blacker than that of the two former. These are a Rustical sort of people, and covetous, and not so ingenious and crafty as the *Patans* and *Moguls*. Indosthani

In the Province of *Haca-chan*, there lives a certain people, whom they call *Blotious*, who are of a strong constitution, and courageous, as the *Patans*. They are for the most part employed about the carriage of Merchandises, they let out Camels, and undertake the Condu&t of the *Cassilas*, and this they do with so much fidelity, that they would rather lose their lives, than endure the reproach of having lost any thing committed to their charge. Blotious.

There are no common Inns in all the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, nor indeed in all the *Mogul's* Country; but instead thereof, in Cities, as also in some Villages, there are certain publick Buildings, called *Sarai*, built by some persons out of Charity, for the convenience of Strangers and Travellers, who, were it not for those, would be forc'd to lie in the open Air. These are the *Caravanferas*, which have only the four walls, and a covering over head; so that to be accommodated therein, a Man must bring along with him what is not to be had there. No Inn in Guzuratta.

In travelling through the Country, they make use of Camels, Mules, Horses and Oxen. They have also a kind of Coaches, for two or three persons, which are drawn by Oxen, whereto they are so accustomed, that they easily go ten or twelve leagues a day. The upper part or covering of these Coaches is of Cloath or Velvet; but those which carry Women are close of all sides.

Persons of all quality make use also of Elephants, and are sometimes carried in *Palanquins*, which are a kind of Litters or Sedans, carried by two men upon their Shoulders with a bar. They bring up their Elephants with much care, and are at great charge about them. They delight much in Hawking and Hunting. Their Greyhounds are somewhat less than ours, but they tame Tigers and Leopards, whereof they make use in hunting, and these surprize their prey at a sudden leap, but they never pursue it.

They are particularly industrious at the catching of River-fowl, by means of the Skin of a tame Duck, which being fill'd with Hay, they swim even with the Water, and drawing the Decoy-duck after them, they insensibly get among the others, and take them by the feet, without ever frightening them.

They are very expert at the Bow, which they make of a wild Oxes horn, and the Arrows of a very light kind of Cane; nay, they are so excellent at it, that sometimes they will take a Bird flying. Their expertness at the Bow.

They delight much in Chess, and have also a kind of Game at Cards. They are lovers of Musick, though there be no great Harmony in their own. But above all things they are besotted with judiciary *Astrology*, in so much that they never undertake

1 638. undertake any business of consequence, but they first consult the *Minatzim*.  
 They have some of *Aristotle's* Works translated into the *Arabian* tongue, which they call *Aplis*, as also some Treatises of *Avicennas*, for whom they have a very high respect, because he was born at *Smarcanda*, under the jurisdiction of *Tamerlam*. Their Writings are not ill, and their Productions are not void of Eloquence. They keep a Register of all the remarkable Actions that are done among them, and have such an exact account thereof, as might serve to write a History of the Country.

Their Language. Of their Language there are many Dialects, but it is easie enough to be learnt, and they write as we do, from the left hand to the right. Most of any quality about the *Mogul's* Court speak the *Persian* tongue; nay some, but very few, speak also the *Arabian*.

The Diseases of the Country. The most common Diseases of those parts are the bloody Flux, and burning Feavers; and the Remedy they ordinarily make use of against them is Abstinence. They have good store of Physicians, but no Surgeons. Barbers, of which Profession there is a great number, are they who let blood, and apply Leeches.

Winter begins in June. In the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, Winter begins towards the end of *June*, and lasts till *September*: but there are not such continual Rains there as at *Goa*, for it rains only in certain Intervals, and particularly at new and full Moon. The North-wind blows constantly for six months together, and the South-wind for as many. The hottest months in the year are *April*, *May*, and the beginning of *June*, during which the sultriness of the weather is such, that it were insupportable, were it not that some Winds rise ever and anon, which moderate the excessive heats; but with that convenience they bring along with them an inconvenience, which is, their raising such an extraordinary Dust, that it deprives a Man of the sight of the Sun.

The Commerce of Guzuratta. There is a vast Trade driven in many Commodities all over the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, but particularly in Cotton and Linnen Cloaths, which are in fairness and fineness equal to those of *Holland*; as also in several Silk-stuffes, as *Coutoms*, which are of several colours, *Satins*, *Taffatas*, *Petolas*, *Commerbands*, *Ornis*, of Gold and Silk, which Women commonly make use of to cover their Faces withall, *Brocadoes*, *Tapistry*, or *Alcatifs*, *Chitrenges*, or streaked Carpets, to lay over Chests and Cabinets, quilted Coverlets of Silk or Cotton, which they call *Geodris*, or *Nalis*, *Tents*, *Perintos*, or *Neubar*, which they make use of instead of Couches, *Cadets*, or Bedsteads, Cabinets of *Lacque*, Chests-boards of *Tortoise-shell*, *Seals*, *Beads*, *Chains*, *Buttons*, and *Rings* of *Ivory*, *Amber*, *Rock-Crystal*, and *Agat*,

The manner of making Indico. The best *Indico* in the world comes from about *Amadabath*, from a Village call'd *Chirchees*, whence it derives the name. The Herb of which they make it is like that of yellow Parsnip, but shorter, and more bitter, sprouting forth into branches like a Reed, and growing, in kind years, six or seven foot high: the Flower is like that of a Thistle, and the Seed like that of Fenu-greek. It is sown in *June*, and cut in *November*, and *December*. It is sown but once in three years, and the first year the leaves are cut off within a foot of the ground. The stalks are taken away, and the leaves are set a drying in the Sun, and that done, they are set a soaking, for four or five dayes, in a Stone-trough, containing about six or seven foot water, which is ever and anon stirred, till such time as the Water hath sucked out the colour and vertue of the Herb. That done, they let out the Water into another Trough, where they suffer it to settle for one night. The next day, all the Water is taken away, and what is left in the bottom of the Trough is strain'd through a course Cloth, and is set a drying in the Sun. And this is the best *Indico*; but the Country people adulterate it, by mixing therewith a certain Earth of the same colour. And whereas the goodness of this Drug is discovered by its lightness, they have the cunning to put a little Oyl into it, to make it swim upon the water.

The second year, the stalk which was left the year before shoots forth other leaves, but they are not so good as those of the first. Yet is this prefer'd before *Gyngey*, that is, wild *Indico*. It is also the second year that they suffer some part of it to grow up to seed. That of the third year is not good, and consequently not sought after by forraign Merchants, but is imploy'd by the Inhabitants of the Country in the dying of their Cloaths. The best *Indico* is almost of a violet colour, and hath somewhat of its smell, when it's burned. The *Indians* call it *Anil*; and after it hath been in the ground three years, they suffer the Land to lye fallow for one year ere they sow it again.

Salt-peter. Most of the *Salt-peter* which is sold in *Guzuratta* comes from *Asmer*, sixty Leagues from *Agri*, and they get it out of Land that hath lain long fallow. The blackest and fattest ground yields most of it, though other Lands afford some, and it is made thus. They make certain Trenches which they fill with their Salt-petrous Earth, and let into them small Rivulets, as much water as will serve for its soaking, which may be the more effectually done, they

they make use of their feet, treading it till it become a Broath. When the Water hath drawn out all the Saltpeter which was in the Earth, they take the clearest part of it, and dispose it into another Trench, where it grows thick, and then they boil it like Salt, continually scumming it, and then they put it into earthen pots, wherein the remainder of the Dregs goes to the bottom; and when the Water begins to thicken, they take it out of these pots, to set it a drying in the Sun, where it grows hard, and is reduc'd into that form wherein it is brought into *Europe*.

*Borax*, or the green Earth which the Goldsmiths make use of in the refining of Gold and Silver, is found in a Mountain, in the Province of *Purbet*, under the jurisdiction of the *Raja, Biberom*, towards great *Tartary*; whence there is brought also good store of Spike-nard, Quicksilver, Musk, and Copper, as also a certain colour, which dyes a very beautiful brown. The *Borax* grows in the River *Jankenkar*, which at his coming out of the Mountain falls into the River *Maseeroor*, which crosses the whole Province, and produces that Drug, which grows in the bottom of the River, as Coral doth: The Inhabitants of *Guzuratta* call it *Janknckbar*, and keep it in Pouches of Sheep-skin, which, for its better preservation, they fill with Oyl.

The *Hingh*, which our Drugsters and Apothecaries call *Assa fetida*, comes for the most part from *Persia*, but that which the Province of *Utrad* produces in the *Indies* is the best, and there is a great Traffick driven in it all over *Indosthan*. The Plant which produces it is of two kinds; one grows like a Bush, and hath small leaves, like Rice, and the other resembles a Turnip-leaf, and its greenness is like that of Fig-tree leaves. It thrives best in stony and dry places, and its Gum begins to come forth towards the latter end of Summer, so that it must be gathered in Autumn. The traffick of it is so much the greater in those parts, upon this account, that the *Benjans* of *Guzuratta* make use of it in all their Sawces, and rub their Pots and drinking Vessels therewith, by which means they insensibly accustom themselves to that strong Scent, which we in *Europe* are hardly able to endure.

The *Ambion, Offion, or Opium*, which is spent in *Europe*, comes from *Aden, or Cayro*; but that which is sold in the *Indies* comes out of the Province of *Gualor*, in *Indosthan*, and is nothing but the juyce which is got out of Poppy, by an incision made therein, when it begins to grow ripe. All the Eastern Nations are great Lovers of it, in so much that the young people, who are not permitted the use of it, and the meaner sort, who are not able to buy it, will boyl the Poppy it self, and eat of the broath which is made thereof. And whereas the Poppy among them is called *Pust*, they thence call those *Pusty*, who make use of that broath, instead of *Opium*. The *Persians* affirm, that they were the first who made use of it, and that all other Nations did it in imitation of their *Grandees*, who took it, at first, to provoke sleeping. They take every day a small pill of it, about the bigness of a Pea; not so much in order to sleeping, as that it should work the same effect as Wine does, which infuses courage and great hopes into those, who otherwise would not discover much of either. The *Cassees, or Messengers*, who travel into the Country, take of it to hearten themselves; but the *Indians* make use of it for the most part, that they may be the better fitted for the enjoyments of Women. No doubt but it is a poyson, which kills, if a Man do not accustom himself thereto by little and little; and when he hath so accustomed himself, he must continue the frequent use of it, or he dies, on the other side. It so weakens their Brains who take it continually, that they run the hazard of losing the use of their Reason, and the principal functions of their Understanding, and become in a manner stupid, if they recover not themselves by the same Remedy.

We have spoken already of *Lacque*, and shall have occasion to say somewhat of it elsewhere.

We shall therefore here only add, that in *Guzuratta* there grows abundance of *Cummin, Ginger, and Mirobalans*, which they traffick much in, both dry'd and preserv'd with brown Sugar. There are also several other Drugs, which have their use in Physick.

There are found in the same Kingdom Diamonds, but not many, Pearls, Emeralds, Garnets, or Garnets, Agats, &c. Alablaster, red Marble, Jasper-stone, which the Inhabitants have the Art to polish above all others.

There is but one kind of weight all over the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, which they call *Mion*, that is to say, a hand, which weighs forty *Ceers*, and makes thirty pounds and a half, each pound containing sixteen ounces; and a *Ceer* weighs eighteen *Peyses*, which is a kind of brass money that makes about twelve ounces.

They have two kinds of Ells; the lesser makes but half an Ell, and a sixteenth part of the measure of *France*; and nineteen of the greater sort make thirteen Ells three quarters of the same measure.

They have also two sorts of Money, to wit, the *Mamudies*, and the *Ropids*. The *Mamudies* are their Meas-

1638. *modies* are made at *Surat*, of Silver of a very base alloy, and are worth about twelve pence sterl. and they go only at *Surat*, *Brodra*, *Broitschia*, *Cambays*, and those parts. Over all the Kingdom besides, as at *Amadabath* and elsewhere, they have *Ropias Chagam*, which are very good Silver, and worth half a Crown French money. Their small money is of Copper, and these are the *Peyfes* we spoke of, and whereof twenty six make a *Mamoudy*, and fifty four a *Ropia*. They also make use of Almonds, whereof thirty six make a *Peyse*, as also of certain Shells, which they call *Kaurets*, and are gathered on the Sea-side, eighty whereof amount to a *Peyse*. *Spanish Ryals* and *Rixdollars*, are worth there five *Mamoudies*, in regard they convert them into their own Coins with much advantage, by the change they make either to weight or alloy, and many times as to both. They esteem the *Larris* of *Persia*, the Silver whereof is very good. They have also a certain Coin of Gold, which they call *Xeraphins*, and is worth about thirteen *Ropias* and a half; but there are very few of them. The *Chequines*, and *Ducats* of *Venice*, are more common there, and are worth eight and a half, and sometimes nine *Ropias*, *Surat* money, according to the change, and the rate set on the money, which rises or falls according to the plenty or scarcity of money, upon the place where it is paid.

Much counterfeit money in the Indies.

There is abundance of counterfeit Money coin'd in the *Indies*, whence it comes that there is no payment made, but it is done before these Changers, whom they call *Xaraffes*, who have their Shops at the corners of the principal Streets, and for a small matter, secure the goodness of the Money, which they are so well acquainted with, that they immediately discover whether it be counterfeit or not.

Their ordinary way of accounting is by *Lacs*, each of which is worth a hundred thousand *Ropias*; and a hundred *Lacs* make a *Crou*, or *Carroa*, and ten *Carroas* make an *Areb*. A *Theil* of Silver makes eleven, twelve, or thirteen *Ropias*, current money. A *Massas* and a half make a *Theil* of Silver, ten whereof make a *Theil* of Gold. They call their Brass or Copper money *Tacques*; and it is prohibited, upon pain of death, that any should transport either Gold, Silver, or coined Brass out of the Country.

The fertility of Guzuratta.

Speaking before casually of the fertility of this Country, we said, it wanted not any thing requisite for the life of Man. It produces Wheat, Rice, Pease, Beans, Barly, Millet, *Turkish* Wheat, Flax, Mustard-seed, &c. Oyl, Butter, Cheese, though somewhat dry, and over-salted, to please the palats of Forreigners; and all these it is better stor'd with then any Province of *Europe*. Their Wheat is much bigger and whiter then ours, and they make bread of it, not to be baked in an Oven, as we do, but upon Iron plates. The poor sort, and particularly the *Benjans*, make a kind of Flawns of it in Fryng-pans over their fire of Cow-dung, which they make use of instead of Wood. Their Pease and Beans are somewhat less then ours, but much more delicate, especially their red Chices, wherewith in some places they feed their Horses, Oxen and Buffles, instead of Oats, which is a kind of Grain not used in the *Indies*. They do not make any Hay at all, nor ever cut any Grass, but what is eaten while it is green. Their Sowing time is in *May*, and their Harvest in *November* and *December*.

Their way of baking bread.

No Oats in the Indies.

Their seed-time and harvest.

The Mogul is really possessed of the whole Country.

There is not any person in the *Mogul's* Countrey, possess'd of any real Estate in Land. But when Seed-time is coming on, the Peasants apply themselves to the Governour, or him who is next under the King in the several Provinces, and acquaint him how much ground they intend to cultivate that year, upon condition to allow the King a third part, nay sometimes half the profits, in so much that it often happens, that the Peasants hardly get in the charges they had been at in the manuring of it. On the contrary, the *Mogul* leaves all the Meadow-ground to be Common, and makes little or no advantage thereof; whence it comes, that most Grounds lye fallow, and bring forth only Grass.

The Gardens.

They sow in their Gardens all sorts of Pot-herbs, as Lettice, Succory, Sorrel, Parsley, &c. Radishes, Navew, Cabbages, Cowcubers, Citruls, Garlick, Onions, Parsnips of several kinds; but above all, Melons, which in delicacy exceed those of all other parts. The Rose only excepted, there is almost no Flower but is sought after more for its colour then scent: for though those they call *Mogera* and *Scampi* have a good smell, yet are the Women more in love with them for their colour then scent. The former are white, the latter yellow, and both are to be had all the year long, as also the Grass wherewith all the Fields are covered, unless it be when the excessive heat of the Summer dries it up.

Trees.

Besides the Trees known to us, and which bring forth Lemmons, Citrons of several kinds, and Pomegranats; there are also those called *Ananas*, *Banasses*, *Jaccas*, *Cocos*, and Fig-trees, of which they most cultivate the *Cocos*-trees, out of which they get the Terry. There is also near *Surat* a kind of Grapes, but much less then those of *Persia*, and much dearer then any other Fruit of the Countrey. We shall have occasion to speak of it elsewhere, and shall therefore only add here, that their Forrests, which are full of these sorts of

Trees,

Trees, are stor'd, besides the Creatures we have spoken of heretofore, with a kind of wild Dogs, which they call *Jakals*; but it is death for any to hurt them, or any of the other Beasts, that are yellow or black, because that sport is reserv'd for the King, and the Governour of the Province. I 63 2.

Their Horses are not comparable to those of *Persia* and *Arabia*; yet are they at great charge in keeping them, allowing a Groom for every Horse, and feeding them after a particular manner. When they give them of that kind of Pease called *Ciches*, whereof we spoke before, called by them *Donna*, they cause them to be beaten and boild. Besides which, they give them, twice a day, morning and evening, two pounds of Barly-meal, which they make up into a Paste with half a pound of Butter, and a pound of Sugar. Their Horses.

The Oxen of this Country are of the same making with ours, save that they have a great bunch or rising between the Shoulders. The *Mahumetans* are the only people that eat of them, as they do also of Mutton; but they are only the poorer sort that do so. Persons of quality feed on Kid, which they either roast whole, making a Pudding of Rice, Almonds, and Raisins of the Sun, in the belly, or they stew them with Butter and Pepper, which they call *Brengbie*, and is very good meat. They eat also of those *Persian* Sheep that have such fat tails; but this is a very scarce dish, and consequently reserv'd for great Mens Tables, and extraordinary Entertainments. Their Beef and Mutton.

They have also Fowl, as Capons, Peacocks, Geese, wild Ducks, Teal, Partridges, Pigeons, Herons, Sparrows; as also all sorts of Birds of prey, as Falcons, Tassels, Hawks, Eagles, &c. Their Fowl.

They want no River-fish, as Carps, Breams, Eels, &c. and Salt-fish is extraordinary good, and very cheap, proceeding hence, that the Pagans eat not of it at all, and the *Mahumetans* love Flesh better then Fish. They have also all sorts of Shell-fish, as Oysters and Crabs, and particularly a certain Fish (which in the Maritime Towns of *Picardy* is called *Cheurette*, and is a kind of great Prawn) so big, that a dozen of them makes a good dish. It is very remarkable, that whereas, upon all the Coasts of *Europe*, this Fish is best at the Full-moon, in those parts it is so at the New; and at the Full, Shell-fish are in a manner empty. The Fish called *Tubarons*, which devour Men, are often seen in those parts, and that is one reason why all persons ordinarily bathe and wash themselves in *Tankes*. Fish.

Their Ships are but poorly built, in so much that they have no other way to dispose of their Artillery but upon the deck, and consequently in the open Air. The greatest Voyages they make are those of *Java* and *Sumatra*, Eastward; and to *Aden* and *Meca* upon the Red-sea. They sometimes carry above a thousand persons together, who for the most part go upon Pilgrimage to *Meca*, that at their return they may be put into the number of their *Hoggoi*, or Saints. They set sail at the beginning of the *March-Moon*, and return in *September*, for the tempests, which reign from *June* till that time upon those Coasts, makes them spend six months in a Voyage which might be performed in two. Their Ships.

The Commodities they transport to the Coasts of *Aden*, are Cotten, Linnen-cloath, Indico, Camphire, Tobacco, Allum, Sulphur, Benjamin, Pepper, and other Spices, Mirobalans, and several other sorts of Preserves, and they bring back very little in Commodities, to wit, Coral, Amber, *Misseit*, wherewith they dye red, *Kabwa* or *Coffee-berries*, and *Opium*, which is accounted the best of all the East; but their best returns consist in Gold and Silver coined. Their trading to the Red-sea.

The other Vessels, which are less, and go from *Surat*, *Cambaia* and *Broitschia* upon the Coasts of *Persia*, bring home Brocadoes, Silk-stuffes, Velvets; Chamlets, Pearls, dry Fruits, as Almonds, Raisins of the Sun, Nuts, and Dates, and above all Rose-water, wherewith they drive a great Trade. These go away in the months of *January* and *February*, and return in *April*, or the beginning of *May*. There are other Ships of a hundred, two hundred, and three hundred tuns burthen, which carry to *Acim*, in the Island of *Sumatra*, all sorts of the Commodities of the Country, and bring home Sulphur, Benjamin, Camphire, Porcelain, Tin and Pepper. These last set sail in *May*, for this reason, that the *Portuguez*, who forbid the selling of Pepper any where but in the Cities where they have established their Commerce, upon pain of death and confiscation of Goods, and guard the Coast against the Pirats of the *Malabares*, draw not into their Havens till that time; and therefore they must so order their Affairs, that they may be at home again in *October*, before the *Portuguez* set out their Fleets to Sea. To the Persian Gulf. To Achim.

The *Malabares*, who inhabit that part of the *Indian* Coast, which reaches from *Cap di Ramo*, ten Leagues from *Goa* Southward, as far as *Cap di Comori*, about a hundred and seven, or a hundred and eight Leagues in length, and comprehends the Cities of *Calicut*, *Onor*, *Bacalir*, *Bacanor*, *Mangalor*, *Cananor*, and *Granganor*, have also very great trade at *Surat*, *Cambaya* and *Broitschia*; and bring thither *Cayro*, which is the bark of the *Cocos-trees*, whereof The Commerce of the Malabares in Guzuratta.

1638. whereof they make Cordage for Ships: *Copera*, or the pith of the same Trees, brown Sugar, which they call *Sigaga*, *Areca* and *Bettelé*, which they call in their Language, *Dimang*; a certain kind of Wood which dyes red, called *Patang* and *Harpus*, wherewith Ships are calked, as also Rice and other provisions. They carry home *Opium*, Saffron, Coral, Cotton, Thread, Linnen-cloaths and other Stuffles. They come to *Surat* and upon the Coasts, in the moneth of *December*, and go away in *April*.

The Commerce of the Portuguez.

The *Portuguez*, who for a long time had all the advantages of the Trade of *Guzuratta*, and were become Masters thereof, by means of the Forts they had built at *Daman*, *Diu*, and *Goa*, to make their party good against the *Malabares*, their irreconcilable Enemies, brought thither Lead, Tin, Vermilion, Quicksilver, all sorts of Woollen-clothes, Ivory, Sandal-wood, Pepper, *Cardomomum*, or grains of Paradise, Cloves, Porcelane, *China*-Stuffles, Cinnamon, *Cocos*, *Cayro*, Vessels of Gold, Vermilion-gilt, made in *Europe*; and bought there all sorts of Stuffles, Cotton-clothes, Indico, Saltpeter, *Lacque*, Sugar, *Mirobalans*, Preserves, Bed-steads, Cabinets, and other pieces made of *Lacque*, which they brought to *Goa*, and disposed into their great Ships or *Carracks*, which set thence for *Portugal* in *January* and *February*. They bought there also, Butter, *Assa fetida*, *Opium*, Cummin, Cotton and Thread, to be transported to *Malacca*, *China*, and *Sapan*, where they traded many times at two hundred upon one hundred profit. But since the *English* and *Dutch* settled themselves in the Kingdom of *Guzuratta*, they have been forc'd to quit some part of that Trade, and to content themselves with what they still carry on at *Goa*, whereof we shall give some account in the second Book of this Relation.

MAN-

MANDELSLO'S  
TRAVELS  
INTO THE  
INDIES.

The Second Book.



He *English* President, Mr. *Metwold*, who had resign'd his charge in the *Indies* to his Successour, Mr. *Fremling*, having taken all requisite order for our Voyage, went the first day of *January*, 1639. to take his leave of the *Sulthan*, who receiv'd him very kindly, and presented him with a Vestment of *Brocadee*, the Collar whercof was made of two *Martins* Skins with Sables, which he then had about him; as also many other rare things, which he entreated him to keep for his sake. At our coming out of the *Sulthans* Palace, we were received

into a *Shallop*, which brought us aboard the *Mary*, then lying in the Road, two Leagues from the mouth of the River. The new President, and the chiefest of the *English* Officers, accompanied us into the Ship, where they stay'd three dayes, entertaining and treating one another, and dawning in good Wine the affliction which was to ensue upon so long a separation.

We set sail the fifth, two hours before day, and got at night in sight of the City of *Daman*, where we found one of our Ships which was gone before us, to take up a *Portuguez* Vessel that was to go along with us to *Goa*. The Governour sent us a Vessel of Wine, about the bigness of a Barrel, and some other refreshments, notwithstanding the siege which the King of *Decam*, his Neighbour, then maintain'd against the place, but with little good success, in regard the Haven being not block'd up, the *Indians* could not prevent the sending in of relief into the City, even in the day time.

The Kingdom of *Decam*, or rather *Cuncam*, for so it is more commonly called, though from its *Metropolis* it sometimes gets the name of *Visiapour*, reaches all along that Coast, from *Ingediva*, which lies within twelve leagues of *Goa*, towards the South, to a place named *Siffarde*. The Neighbouring Princes are, on the North-side, the King *Nesamsa*, who is possess'd of the Country which lies between the Province of *Dalte Babih*, within the Kingdom of *Decam*, and the Kingdom of *Bailama* on *Daman* side; and on the East, the King of *Bengbenal*, whose residence is in the City of *Golconda*, which is corruptly called *Golconda*.

The chief Maritime Cities of the Kingdom of *Decam*, are *Geytapour*, *Rasapour*, *Carapatan*, and *Dabul*; but the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom is *Visiapour*, eighty Leagues from *Dabul*, and eighty four from *Goa*.

The way from *Goa* to *Visiapour* lies according to the following direction, which we

JANU-  
ARY.

1639.  
Mandello  
leaves Su-  
rat.

Comes to  
Daman.



1639. thought fit to insert here, purposely to take occasion by that means to discover a good part of the Country.

*The way from Goa to Visiapour, Ditcauly.* As soon as you come out of *Goa*, you cross the River *Madre de dios*, to get into the Country of the King of *Visiapour*, in which the first place you come to is the City of *Ditcauly*, three Leagues from *Goa*. The Governour of this City is Governour also of the Fort of *Ponda*, which is upon the same River. From *Ditcauly* to *Danda* are counted six Leagues.

*Danda.* This City is of a competent largeness, and hath very fair Streets. It is seated upon the River *Dery*, which falls into the Sea near those Isles, which the *Portuguez* call *Islas quemadas*. Its Inhabitants are *Decanins* and *Benjans*, who traffick very much at *Goa*.

*The Mountain of Balagatta.* From *Danda* to the Mountain of *Balagatta*, are nine Leagues, and you pass through the Villages of *Amby* and *Herpoli*, and at the foot of the Mountain, through that of *Amboly*. This Mountain reaches along the Kingdom of *Cuncam*, as far as the Coasts of *Coromandel*; and there on the top of it Plains, whose fertility is equal to that of the most pleasant Valleys.

*Herenekassi.* From *Amboly*, to the Village of *Herenekassi*, upon the River of the same name, there are eleven Leagues, and within Cannon shot of it, you pass through the Village of *Berouly*, which lies in a Valley between the Mountains of *Balagatta*. Two Leagues thence, you come to the Village of *Werferée*; three Leagues thence, to that of *Outor*; and six Leagues and a half further, to that of *Berapour*; half a League thence, to that of *Matoura*, and a League thence, to that of *Calingra*. About five hundred paces from *Calingra*, you come to the Village of *Kangir*, and ere you get much further, to a Hamlet, which hath no other name then that of *Bary*, which is given to all those places that have no particular name.

*Worry.* About a League thence is the Village of *Worry*, and half a League further that of *Attrowad*, near which, upon an eminent place, there is a very magnificent *Pagode*, of the Countrey, or *Mosquey*, which may be seen at a very great distance. About two Leagues and a half from this *Pagode*, you turn upon the left hand, and go through the Village of *Badaraly* to *Kerwes*, which is also two Leagues and a half from *Badaraly*. From *Kerwes* to *Skeokory* are accounted two Leagues; and from *Skeokory*, to a very sumptuous *Benjane Pagode*, five Leagues.

*Rajebag.* From this *Pagode* may be discovered, at a great distance, the Castle of *Mirsis*, two leagues thence, upon the left hand, and you go thence to *Rajebag*, which is about a league distant from the said *Pagode*. *Rajebag* is a very great City, and drives a great trade in Pepper, which the Inhabitants transport to *Bisnager*, and elsewhere.

It is part of the Dowry of the Queen of *Visiapour*, who hath there a Governour under her.

*Getteuy.* About a League from *Rajebag*, you come to a very noble Well; about two Leagues thence, you cross the River *Cugny*; and about half a League further you come to the City of *Getteuy*. You leave it on the left hand, yet go through one Gate of it, to pass through the Villages of *Goetesi* and *Omgar*, which are but about five hundred paces thence; and about half a League further, you come to the great River *Corstena*, which runs through the whole Kingdom of *Decam*, as far as *Masulypatan*. About a League and a half from the River, you go through the Village of *Eynatour*, and not far thence, through that of *Kzterna*, and thence to those of *Tangly* and *Erery*, and so to the River *Agery*, which is distant thence about a League and a half. About three Leagues further you come to the City of *Atteny*, which is so considerable as to be a common Market to all the adjacent Country, whence are daily brought to it abundance of all sorts of provisions. About four Leagues thence, you come to the Village of *Bardgie*, and at three and a half further, pass through the Village of *Agger*, which is within three Leagues of the City of *Talsengbe*, which is distant from that of *Homoware* three other Leagues, and thence there are as many to the City of *Ticota*, which is within six Leagues of *Visiapour*.

Before you come to the chief City, you pass through the Villages of *Nouraspour* and *Sirrapour*, which are in a manner its Suburbs, and whereof the former was heretofore the ordinary residence of the King *Ibrahim Schach*, who reign'd at the beginning of this last Age: but now it is wholly ruin'd, and the Materials of its Palace and great Houses are convey'd thence for the carrying on of those which are building at *Visiapour*.

The City of *Visiapour* is of such largeness, that it is above five Leagues in compass. The Walls, which are very high, are of Free-stone, encompass'd with a great Ditch, and several Fortifications, mounted with above a thousand great Pieces, of all sorts, Iron and Brass.

The

The Kings Palace is in the midit of the City, from which it is divided by a double Wall, and two Ditches, being above 3500. paces in compass. He who commanded there in the time of *Sulthan Mamedh Idelshach*, the Son of *Ibrahim*, was called *Nammouth-chan*, by Countrey an *Italian*, born at *Rome*. His command extended also over the City, and the 5000. men who kept Garrison therein, besides the 2000. who were the constant Garrison of the Cattle. The City hath five distinct Suburbs, where the principal Merchants have their habitations, and particularly in that of *Schanpour*, where live most of the Jewellers. The other Suburbs are called *Gurapour*, *Ibrahimpour*, *Alapour* and *Bommenaly*. The Inhabitants are *Decanins*, that is, of the Kingdom of *Decam*, or *Benjans*, *Moguls*, and *Fentives*, of whom an account hath been given before.

1639.

To go from *Vistapour* to *Dabul*, you return the same way as far as the City of *Atteny*, whence you go to the Village of *Agelle*, which is two Leagues distant from it, and thence to the City of *Arecq*, which is six Leagues and a half from *Agelle*. From *Arecq* to the City of *Berce* are three Leagues, and thence to *Mirsie* three Leagues. This City, which is called also *Mirdsi*, and *Mirisgie*, is large, but not very populous, having, on the North-side, a Castle, so well fortifi'd, that the *Mogul*, who sometime besieg'd it with all the Forces of his Kingdom, was forc'd to raise the Siege. In this place are also to be seen the Tombs of two Kings of *Delly*, who were enterr'd there above five hundred years since. The Inhabitants of the City, as also those of the Country thereabouts, have a great veneration for that place. From *Mirdsi* to the Village of *Epour* are two Leagues, and thence to the City of *Graeen* three. It is not easily decided, whether it be one City or two, inasmuch as it is divided only by the great River *Corsena*, the distance between both parts being about 800. paces; and there are so many houses on either side of the River, that they may be taken for two considerable Cities, though one be much less than the other. From the River to the Village of *Toncq*, are counted two Leagues and a half; thence to that of *Astava* one, and thence to the City of *Asta* two Leagues. Between this last Village and the City, there is a Hamlet, which is called *Barry*; but it is to be observ'd, that this name is given to all those places which have not any in particular, as we said before. The City of *Asta* is very considerable for its trading, and hath a noble Market, where may be had all sorts of provisions. The *Mogul*, who sometime came as far as this place with his Army, hath left behind him sufficient marks of the devastation which attends the marches of such numerous Armies.

Graeen  
two Cities.

Having left *Asta*, you come to the great City of *Ballouwa*, which is distant from it three Leagues; and three more thence to those *Oëren* and *Isselampour*, which lye distant one from the other not above a Cannon-shot. You leave the former on the right hand, and the other, which hath a strong Cattle, and its particular Governour, on the left. Two Leagues from *Isselampour*, lies the Village of *Taffet*, and three thence, that of *Cassegam*, whence there are above two Leagues to the City of *Calliar*, which is wholly destroy'd. Two Leagues thence, there is a little Village called *Galoure*, whence you pass through the Village of *Winge*, and afterwards by the City of *Qualampour*, where much Linnen is made, and by that of *Domo*, to the City of *Tamba*, which is six Leagues from *Galoure*. The City of *Tamba* is considerable both for its largeness, and its being very populous. It lies on the other side of a River, the name whereof I could not learn; for that of *Coyna*, which they give it, is a general name, and signifies only a great River. The Inhabitants are *Benjans* and *Fentives*, who live by Commerce and Tillage.

Ballouwa  
Oëren and  
Isselam-  
pour.

Taffet.  
Cassegam.  
Calliar.  
Galoure,  
Winge.  
Qualam-  
pour.  
Domo.  
Tamba.

From the City of *Tamba* to the Village of *Morel* are two Leagues, and thence to that of *Suppero* two Leagues; to *Belou* four; and thence to the Town of *Werad* two Leagues. This Town lies nine Leagues from the Mountains of *Balagatta*, and there is not far from it a Village, called *Patan*, which was sometime the retreat of a famous Robber named *Hiewogby*, who made all he took pay a certain Ransome: and when ever notice was brought him of any design against his person, he got into the Mountain, whither it was impossible to pursue him. From *Werad* to the Village of *Helemacko*, and the River which runs by it, are counted above three Leagues. This River, which comes down from the City of *Chaury*, which is thirty six Leagues distant from this Village; hath no other name than that of the Village, though they give it also that of *Coyna*, as being indeed the greatest of any in the Kingdom of *Cuncam*. From the River to the Village of *Gattamatta*, which is within the Mountains of *Balagatta*, are three Leagues; and thence to the Village of *Pory* three more. This Village is seated at the foot of the Mountain, which is at that place very rough and craggy. Thence to the Village of *Camburley* are two Leagues, and thence to that of *Chipolone* two more: this last Village lies upon the River *Ghoyhbeer*, which falls into that which runs by *Helemacko*; whence it comes, that those who go to *Dabul* by water embark at that place, *Dabul* being sixteen Leagues from it. At the same place they also

Werad!

1639. embark all the Merchandises which are transported to all parts of the Kingdom, paying a *Larin* and a half upon a *Candy*, which comes to four *Quintals*, or four hundred weight and a half carriage.

The City of Dabul described.

The City of *Dabul* is seated upon the River *Kalewacko*, at seventeen degrees, forty five minutes, on this side the Line, though *Linschoten* puts it at eighteen degrees. It is without doubt one of the most ancient Cities of the whole Kingdom; but now it hath neither Gates nor Walls, and all its Fortifications consists in two Batteries, on the Rive-side, upon which there are four Iron Guns. The Wood, which lies on the left hand as you go into the River, represents a great Castle; and at the foot of the same Wood may be discover'd a white Tower, which serves for a *Pagode* or *Mosquey*, and is an infallible direction to Pilots. The entrance into the River is somewhat difficult, there being at the mouth of it a Sand-bank, which at low-water is dry; so that as you go in, you must alwayes keep towards the South, in regard that, even at low water, you have on that side between five and six fathom water, unless it be at the very mouth of the River, where you have not above twelve or fourteen foot water at most. The Road is good within a League of the River, but it is incomparably better four Leagues thence, in the Bay of *Zanquizarra*. Twelve Leagues thence lyes the Haven or Road of *Ceitapour*, which is within twenty Leagues of *Goa*, at seventeen degrees, ten minutes, and is no doubt the best on all the Coast; for casting Anchor behind the Island, which shelters it, you need not fear being expos'd to any wind. Three Leagues thence lyes the City of *Rasapour*, which is one of the chiefest maritime Cities of the Kingdom of *Cuncam*. The Bay of *Wingurla*, nineteen Leagues from *Rasapour*, and three from *Islas quemadas*, is a convenient Haven, but we shall forbear any further description thereof, in regard it is not our design at present to afford materials for a Maritime Map of those parts.

Rasapour.

The Inhabitants of *Dabul* are either *Pagaus* or *Mahumetans*, whose principal trading is in Salt, which is brought thither from *Oranabammara*, as also in Pepper. Heretofore there were set forth thence several Vessels for the Gulf of *Persia*, and the Red-sea; but now their Commerce that way is so inconsiderable, that they hardly send out three or four wretched bottoms for *Gamron*. The Custom paid there is three and a half upon the hundred; but the *English* pay only a moyety thereof.

The Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Cuncam* or *Decam*, though they are for the most part *Benjans*, eat any kind of flesh, unless it be that of an Oxe, Cow, Buffle, or wild Oxe, and a Swine. They have a certain veneration for the Oxe and the Cow; but Swines-flesh is an abomination to them. As to their manner of life, their Marriages, Entertainments, Purifications and other Ceremonies, they imitate therein the *Benjans* of *Guzuratta*. Their Houses are of Straw, and the Doors so low, that a Man cannot get in without stooping. All that's to be seen within them is only a Mat, on which they lie in the night, and a pit in the ground, wherein they beat their Rice. Their habit is the same with that of the other *Benjans*, save that their Shooes, which they call *Alparcas*, are of wood, ty'd up over the Instep with straps of Leather. Their Children go naked till they come to seven or eight years of age, and they are for the most part by profession Gold-smiths: There are also among them some who work in Brass: they have Physitians, Barbers, Chirurgeons, Carpenters and Mafons, who work for the *Mahumetans*, the other *Benjans*, and the *Parfis*, whereof there is a greater number in those parts, then there is of *Decanins* and *Canarius*. They make use of the same Armes as the *Indosthans* do, and they have this common with them, that they are not so good as either those of *Turkey* or *Europe*.

Their principal Commerce consists in Pepper, which is transported by Sea into *Persia*, to *Surat*, and into *Europe*; as also in provisions, wherewith all the neighbouring Provinces are thence supply'd. There are made also in those parts great quantities of Linnen-cloath, which is transported by Sea out of the Kingdom; and they traffick much by land with the Inhabitants of *Indosthan*, *Golconda*, and the Coasts of *Coromandel*, whither they carry Cotton-clothes, and Silk-stuffes. There are abundance of Jewellers at *Visapour*, and there is found thereabouts great quantity of Pearls; but it is not there they are to be had cheapest, since they are brought thither from other places. There is also abundance of *Lacque* made in the Mountains of *Balagatta*; but it is not so good as that of *Guzuratta*.

The *Portuguez* drive a great trade there, especially with the Merchants of *Ditcauly* and *Buzla*, which lye but three or four Leagues from *Goa*, buying Pepper at seven Ryals the *Quintal*, or hundred weight, and at eight, when they pay for it in Stuffles, or some slight Commodities made of Iron, as Snuffers, Hinges, &c. made in *Europe*.

Venesars a people of Decam.

There is in the Kingdom of *Cuncam* a certain people called *Venesars*, who buy the Wheat

Wheat and Rice, which is brought to the Market, in Cities, once a week, and sell it again in the Country of *Indosthan*, and the other neighbouring Provinces, into which they go with *Cassilas*, or *Caravans*, of five or six, and sometimes nine hundred or a thousand Beasts loaden; with which they carry their Families, especially their Wives, who are as expert at their Bows and Arrows as the Men, and by that means becomes dreadful to the *Rasboutes*, who never durst set upon them, nor yet the *Couliers*, who exercise their robberies on all without any distinction, upon this encouragement, that the *Rajas*, who should punish them, protect and connive at them.

There are two sorts of money in the Kingdom of *Cuncam*, to wit, the *Larims*, or *Laris*, which come from *Persia*, and the *Pagodes*. Eight *Persian Laris* make a *Pagode*, which is worth ten *Laris* of *Dabul*. They have also a certain small brass Coin, which they call *Basaruiques*, nine whereof make a *Peise*, and eighteen *Peyses* a *Laris*. But in regard there is no City, nay indeed no Village, which hath not some Coin or other peculiar thereto, it is impossible to assign the just value thereof. Besides, there is such abundance of counterfeit money, that though there be no payment made, but in the presence of the *Xiraf*, or Money-changers, yet it is a very difficult matter to shun it; for the Changers themselves thrust in what is not current among that which is, notwithstanding the penalties appointed by the Laws to be inflicted on those, who either make or put off counterfeit money, which are very rigorously put in execution.

They make use of the same weights as they do in the Kingdom of *Guzurattz*, save that twenty *Maons* of *Surat* weight makes twenty seven of *Cuncam*; and the ordinary *Maon*, which consists of forty *Ceeres*, and sixteen *Peyses*, makes twenty seven pounds; each pound making two marks. They have a particular weight for the Pepper, which they call *Goemy*, and weighs twelve *Maons*, four *Maons* make a *Quintal* or hundred weight, and twenty make a *Candy*.

The King of *Cuncam*, or *Visapour*, is a Tributary of the great *Mogul's*, especially ever since the disorders, which happened under the King *Idal-schach*: which were occasion'd as you shall find in the ensuing relation.

In the time of *Sulthan Ibrahim Schach*, the Father of *Idal-Schach*, there was belonging to the service of the Master of the Chappel, or the Kings Musick, a certain Slave, named *Chauas*, a person of understanding and courage, of a pleasant humour, and to taking a Conversation, that the King, who had particular notice of him, begg'd him of his Master, and prefer'd him, after several other employments, to the oversight of that apartment, where his Wives and Concubines were lodg'd. But it prov'd his misfortune one day, that the King calling to him for drink, they gave him of a bottle that smelt of Oyl; upon which the King commanded him to leave his presence. Yet was not his disgrace so great, but that the King had yet somewhat of the ancient kindness for him, for he made him Captain of the Cattle-gate, and bestow'd on him the Government of the City; which he manag'd with so much conduct, that the King being upon his death-bed, and *Mustapha-Chan*, his Favourite, refusing to undertake the Regency during the Princes Minority, who was then but ten years of age, that great and important charge was conferr'd on *Chauas*, who had the Dignity of *Chan* long before. His Regency, for the space of ten years, had the approbation of all the people, but *Idal-schach*, being come to the twentieth year of his age, began to think it irksome to be under the tuition of a revolted Slave, and openly to condemn the familiarity of his conversation with the Queen his Mother. He had also engag'd the State into a very unjust and extremely destructive War; upon this account, that he paid yearly to the *Mogul's* Deputies, the tribute of thirty Millions of *Pagodes*, which the King ow'd him, yet afterwards he caus'd them to be robb'd at their return, by persons set on purpose to do it, who brought him back again all the money. The *Mogul Scach Jahan*, who was then living, made his complaints thereof at first, as of a disorder, which *Idal-schach* was oblig'd in justice to take some course to prevent: but finding himself abus'd and laugh'd at, he entred *Cuncam* with an Army of two hundred thousand fighting men, where he laid siege to the Castle of *Perinda*, which certain *Hollanders*, who had been sent prisoners thither, helpt to maintain for the space of two years, till such time as a peace was concluded with the *Mogul*, after the death of *Chauas-chan*, who was kill'd as followeth.

*Idal-schach*, not able any longer to suffer the extraordinary and unjust power of his Guardian to be exercised over him, as we said before, made his complaints against him to the Governours of Provinces and places of trust, intreating them to advise and assist him against the usurpation of *Chauas-chan*. They met together, and sent a Message to the Regent; that their King having attain'd an age fit to govern the Kingdom himself, it was time he return'd into his hands the administration of Affairs; to which end it were fit

he

1639.

The money of Decam.

The weights.

The King of Decam tributary to the Mogul.

The History of Chauas-Chan.

He is made Regent of the Kingdom.

Engages the State in a war.

The King implores the assistance of his Grandees against him.

1639. he came out of the Castle, and liv'd in the City as the other Grandees of the Kingdom did; giving him withall to understand, that if he slighted these Remonstrances of theirs, they should be forc'd to employ some part of the Kingdoms Forces to oblige him thereto. But *Chauas-chan* being very unwilling to develt himself of an Authority which he had been possess'd of for so many years, and over-confident of the affection of his Creatures, as also of that of the people, which he had made it his main business to acquire, during the Regency, by a liberality truly Royal, made no reflection on these Remonstrances, till he found some of the great Ones, with an Army of thirty thousand men at the City Gates. Being reduc'd to this extremity, he took a resolution which proved his ruine.

He attempts  
the life of  
his Prince.

For, imagining that the people had so great an affection for him, as to proclaim him King, in case there were no other, he resolv'd to make away the Prince, and to kill him with his own hands. To that end, and full of this design, he goes out of his Chamber one night, while the Army was not yet come within five Leagues of the City, and being come to the door of the Kings Lodgings, the Guards having made no difficulty to let him pass, and finding it lock'd, contrary to the custom, he would have forc'd it: but the King awaken'd at the noise, asked who was there. He made answer that it was he, and that he had some Letters of great consequence to communicate to him, which he had just then received from some of the chief Commanders of his Army. The King made answer, that it was an unseasonable time of the night for the reading of Letters, and bid him come again the next morning, and thereupon immediately getting up, he went to the *Mabael*, or Queens Lodgings, to whom he gave an account of the presumptuous demeanour of *Chauas-chan*, in coming to his Chamber door at such an hour. The Queen, who was a Woman of a solid judgment, made such reflections on his procedure, that it was presently resolv'd, that they should, with the soonest, make away that pernicious Minister. They employ'd to effect their design a *Meldar*, or Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, and one named *Chideram*, Grand Faulconer, and Overseer of the Rams and wild Oxen, which the King keeps for fighting. As soon as it was day, the King presented himself upon his Throne, accompany'd by those two persons who were to be employ'd in the foresaid execution; and having sent for *Chauas-Chan*, he delivered him a seal'd Letter, and said to him; *There Chauas-Chan, look into that Letter, which I have just now receiv'd from the Generals of my Army, give me an account of the Contents of it.* But while *Chauas* was opening it, in order to the reading of it, the *Meldar* run him into the Breast with a Ponyard, but with so much precipitation, that, not staying to see what effect the Wound he had given him would have, he went presently along with the King into the Womens Lodgings. Another Gentleman, who was present at the blow, perceiving the Wound was not mortal, and pretending a kindness to *Chauas*, run immediately to him, embrac'd him, ask'd him what might be the occasion of his disgrace, and making as if he would have taken the Ponyard out of the Wound, wherein it still stuck, thrust it so much the further in, that he fell to the ground. The Eunuch, who was with him, got him convey'd to his own house. But the Queen having notice of what had past, as also of the disorder, wherein the King and the *Meldar* had drawn off, commanded *Chideram* to go and make an end of him. *Chauas-Chan* seeing *Chideram* coming into his Chamber, and imagining he came out of civility to give him a visit, said to him, *Who is me, Chideram, who is it that hath thus murdered me?* But *Chideram*, not suffering him to fall into further discourse, made answer, *Traitor, 'tis I;* with which word he run upon him and cut off his head. There were present at this daring action *Chauas-chan's* Brother, who was Captain of the Castle-gate, three Chirurgeons, two Captains, friends of *Chauas*, and some other of his Kindred who were present; yet they not only made not the least opposition, but suffered themselves to be all tamely kill'd, not one proffering to avoid that fatal destiny.

But is pre-  
vented.

And kill'd.

*Chauas-Chan* had among his Domesticks a certain *Caffre*, who coming to hear of his Masters death, run immediately to the Castle, with an intention to dispatch the King; but he met by the way with about thirty Souldiers, who stop'd him. He made a shift to kill ten of them with his own hands, and had dispatch'd the rest, had he not been over-power'd by number, which increas'd as the noise of the attempt spread more and more into the City. They cut off his head, and hung it up as a Trophey, upon one of the Towers of the Castle.

His Friends  
would re-  
venge his  
death.

One of *Chauas-chans* Creatures, whose name was *Morary*, was advanc'd with ten thousand Horse, within five Leagues of the City of *Visapour*; in so much that the King fearing that General might assemble all the Friends of the deceased, caused him to be proclaim'd a Traitor against his Prince, and set his Head at a certain price. His own Army seiz'd his person, and receiving intelligence, that another Lord, named *Rundelo*, was coming up to the relief of *Chauas-chan*, and intended to joyu with *Morary*, they sent him a by-

way

way to the City, whither he came about eight at night. He sent a Message to the King, proposing, that if his Majesty would pardon him, and bestow on him the Government of the *Brammenes*, he would pay him yearly twenty thousand *Pagodes*; but those Propositions were rejected, and the King ordered him to have his hands cut off, and his tongue cut out, and that in that posture he should be led all about the City; but he died by the way.

The only Action that had eclips'd the Ministry of *Chauas-chan*, was the disgrace of *Mustafa-chan*. This *Mustafa* was he, who of all the Lords about the Court, was most in credit with *Ibrahim Schach*, as being the person upon whom he had cast his eye for the Guardianship of the Prince his Son. But he, unwilling to accept of it, excus'd himself, and recommended the merit of *Chauas-chan*, who requited him with the greatest ingratitude that ever was heard of. *Chauas* would needs have that Lord to countenance by his Authority whatever had been done during the time of the Regency, and finding it impossible to corrupt him, he resolv'd to dispatch him out of the way, by perswading the King, that the honest old Man had some design upon his life. The young Prince implicitly crediting what was told him by his Favourite, resolv'd to secure his person, which oblig'd *Mustafa-chan*, who had notice thereof, to stand upon his guard, and to fortifie himself in his house, having about him 700. Horse, and 2000. Foot. The place was regularly besieg'd with ten Guns; and after he had held out six dayes, he was forc'd to render it and himself up at mercy; for most of his people, nay his very menial servants fell off from him. *Idal-Schach* hearing that *Chauas-chan* intended either to put *Mustafa-chan* to death, or at least to have his eyes out, prevented both, by representing to him, that the *Mogul*, to whom he was ally'd, would concern himself in the Fortunes of *Mustafa-chan*; and upon these considerations, he was sent prisoner to the Castle of *Bellagam-Chapour*, being allow'd of all his vast Revenues, but five *Pagodes* to live upon.

Accordingly the *Mogul*, *Schach-Jahan* had no sooner intelligence brought him of the disgrace of *Mustafa-chan*, but he sent an Envoy to *Idal-Schach*, to require, that he might be set at liberty, and put into possession of all his estate, or that he should be oblig'd to declare a War against him. *Idal-Schach* promis'd to do both, but *Chaus-chan* eluded the performance of that promise, so that *Mustafa* got not out of prison, till after *Chauas* his death: upon which, he was restor'd to his former dignity, enjoying near ten millions of *Pagodes* of yearly revenue. He kept ordinarily a thousand Domesticks, and three thousand Horse at his own charge abroad, besides those he maintained at his own Palace. *Chideram-chan*, who had been very instrumental in the death of *Chauas-chan*, was next in credit to *Mustafa*; and next to him, *Agu-rasa*, who was Governour General of the Castles of *Ponda*, *Perinda*, *Salpour* and *Bellegam-chapour*. He was one of *Chauas-chan*'s Creatures: whence it came, that upon the death of his Patron, he was not so much in favour as he had been, but was continu'd in his employments, though he desir'd to be disburthen'd of the care of publick Affairs by reason of his age.

They say, the King of *Cuncam* is able in a short time to raise two hundred thousand Men; yet, as we said before, he is a Tributary to the *Mogul*. *Adelham-Schach*, great Grand-father of *Idal-Schach*, in the year 1586. took the City of *Goa* twice from the *Portuguez*: but considering at last, that War destroy'd his Country, he treated with them, and by the Treaty concluded between them, he left them the Country of *Salsette*, with 67. Villages, that of *Bardes*, with 12. and that of *Tisuary* with 30. Villages, provided that the Inhabitants of *Cuncam* should enjoy freedom of Commerce all over the *Indies*; yet with this further proviso, that they should be oblig'd to sell all their Pepper to the Merchants of *Goa*, who had made a general Treaty to that purpose, upon pain of Confiscation. But this Treaty hath not been so well observ'd, but that there were, on both sides, from time to time great dissatisfactions, which by an unhappy accident broke forth into something of Hostility in the year 1635. For, upon intelligence brought to the *Portuguez*, that four of the Kings Ships, bound for *Meca*, and some parts of *Persia*, were partly loaden with Pepper, they sent four Frigots to Sea after them, which set upon the Kings Ships, and after a vigorous resistance, wherein a *Portuguez* Captain was kill'd, took them, and having brought them to *Goa*, kill'd in cold blood all the *Indians* that were aboard; so that it was not questioned, but that the King of *Cuncam* would declare War against the City of *Goa*.

There is not any Prince in all those parts so well stor'd with Artillery as the King of *Cuncam*. Among others, he had one Brass piece, which requir'd a Bullet weighing eight hundred weight, with five hundred and forty pound of fine Powder; which did such execution, as was reported, that at the siege of the Castle of *Salapour*, at the first firing, it made a breach in the wall of forty five foot in length. The Caster of it was a *Roman* born, and

1639.

*Chauas's*  
ingratitude  
towards his  
Benefactor.

The *Mogul*  
concerns  
himself in  
*Mustafa's*  
Fortunes.

The King of  
*Decam*  
able to raise  
200000.  
men,

His Artillery.

1639. the most wicked of mankind; since he had the inhumanity in cold blood, to kill his own Son, to consecrate that monstrous Piece with his blood, and to cast into the Fire, wherein he had melted his Metal, one of the Kings Treasurers, who would call him to account for the charge he had been at therein. But it is time we prosecute our Voyage.

*Bacim.* Jan. 7. We came betimes in the morning before the City of *Bacim*. Being come near the City, the *Portuguez* Governour gave us seven Pieces, and we answer'd his civility with three. We stay'd there above four hours expecting a *Portuguez* Jesuit, whom we had promis'd to carry to *Goa*; but finding he came not within the time he had promised, we kept on our course. Being got about a League thence, we perceiv'd coming out of the Port a *Portuguez* Frigot, which, as we imagin'd, came to bring the Jesuit aboard us; whereupon we struck some of our sail, to expect it: but the Captain told us, that it was the Governours desire to the President, that that Frigot might go to *Goa* under the *English* Colours, as fearing to meet some of the *Dutch*, who incessantly rove up and down that Coast. He brought us, as a Present from the Governour, three Oxen, some Sheep, Bread, several Baskets of Citrons and Oranges, and divers other refreshments, wherewith we merrily pursu'd our Voyage.

Wednesday, Jan. 9. with a good North-wind, we pass'd by the Isles of *Bandera* and *Bambay*, which reach all along the Coast, from *Bacim*, as far as *Rasiapour*. That of *Bambay* is of a considerable biguets, and hath a very good Haven towards the Continent.

*Rasiapour.* Jan. 10. We pass'd in sight of *Rasiapour*, which is but 21. Leagues from *Goa*. In the afternoon we pass'd by the City of *Fingerla*, within four Leagues of *Goa*, where the *Hollanders* have a Factory; and in the evening we discover'd the Isles about *Goa*, and afterwards the two Castles which secure the entrance of that noble City.

*Come to Goa.* Jan. 11. We cast Anchor under the Castle *Deguard*, about a quarter of a League from the City. We found in the Haven six Gallions and a Carrack, whom we saluted with our great Guns. The *Mary* fir'd twenty five, the other nine, and the third five. The General of the Gallions gave us a volley of his greatest pieces. The Castle fir'd three; we, in answer thereto, five; the other two, eight between them. Immediately after, came aboard us a *Portuguez* Captain to complement the President from the Viceroy. Not long after, came the General of the Gallions aboard us in person, in a Gondole gilt and cover'd with Scarlet. At his coming into the Ship there were twenty Guns fired. After the first Compliments, he intreated the President to go along with him in his Gondole to the Gallion, to refresh himself for some hours: But the President excus'd himself, in regard he was then going to the City, and promis'd, at his return, to give him a visit aboard. The Gallions were there only to keep the Haven against the twelve *Dutch* Ships, which pretended to block up the City of *Goa* towards the Sea. At our coming thither, they were got off at some distance, to recover themselves after an Engagement, wherein they had lost two of their Ships, some few dayes before, which were burnt by the Fire-ships: but the next day they came up again, and cast Anchor in the Road, to hinder the Carrack from getting out, while the Frigots and little Vessels, which could go along the Coast, brought thither all sorts of Provisions and Commodities, so freely, that, one day, I saw coming in a *Caravan* of above three hundred Boats, loaden with Pepper, Ginger, *Cardamomum*, Sugar, Rice, Fruits, and Conservés.

The President, who as he went up the River had his Trumpets sounding before him, went strait to the house of the *Fiador de la fasende*, who is as it were the Overseer of the Exchequer, it being with him chiefly, that he was to negotiate the business, which had occasion'd his calling at *Goa*. The *Fiador* was sick in bed, yet did he receive the President with all civility, and promis'd to do him all the good offices he could expect, from the friendship they had long before contracted together. Thence the President was carried in a *Palanquin* to the Lodgings which were assign'd him: whither as soon as he was come, he sent to demand audience of the Viceroy, which was immediately granted him. The Viceroy's Palace lies upon the River, so that we went thither by boat. We found upon the River-side, many *Hidalgor*, or Gentlemen, of the Viceroy's retinue, who conducted us into the Hall, where he was to give the President audience. The Guards, who were all clad in the same livery, had taken their Armes, and stood in two files in the Anti-chamber, through which there was an entrance into the Hall, which was richly furnish'd, and full of the Pictures of several Princes of *Europe*. The Viceroy, who was all in black, as were also all his Courtiers, rose out of his Chair at the Presidents coming in, and sat not down again till the other was set. All the rest of the Company stood before the Viceroy, some only of the Gentlemen excepted, who carried us into one of the cross Rooms to entertain us:

The

The President, having dispatched his business, took leave of the Viceroy, who brought him to the Hall door, where he stood bare, till we were all got out. The same Gentleman, who had receiv'd us at our coming out of the Boat, brought us back to the River, shewing us, as we came along, twelve excellent Horses, sumptuously cover'd and harness'd, which had been purposely brought thither, that we might take notice of the Viceroy's magnificence. We saw there also a *Biggel*, which is a Creature about the bigness, and much of the same colour as a *Renne*, but is headed like a Horse, main'd like an Ass, having black and cloven feet, and upon his head two black horns.

We had hardly dined, at our return to our Lodging, ere we were tir'd with Visitants. Most of the *Portuguez* Lords came to salute the President; and there was no Monastery but sent its Deputies to complement him. The ten dayes we stay'd at *Goa* were spent in reciprocal Visits and continual feasting. One of the noblest Entertainments we had, was that which was made us the 15. of *January*, by a *Portuguez* Lord, who had been Governour of *Bacim*, and was then newly come to the government of *Mozambique*. Every course consisted only of four dishes of Meat, but they were so often chang'd, and the Meat so excellently well dress'd, that I may truly say, I never was at the like. For with the Meat there was brought such variety of excellent Fruits, that by the continual change and intermixture of both, the appetite was sharpened and renew'd. But what was most remarkable, was, that though the *Portuguez* Ladies are as seldom seen as those of the *Muscovites* and *Persians*, yet this Lord, knowing he could not any way more oblige the *English*, then by allowing them the sight of Women, we were serv'd at Table by four handfom young Maids of *Malacca*, while he himself was attended by two Pages and an Eunuch. These Maids brought in the Meat, and fill'd our Wine; and though he himself drunk not any, yet would he have the *English* treated after their own way, and drink to what height they pleas'd. Being risen from Table, he brought us into a spacious Chamber, where he again press'd us to drink; and when the President was to take leave of him, he presented him with a noble Coverlet of *Watte*, a quilted Covering for a Horse, a fair Table, and a rich Cabinet of *Lacque*.

The next day, being the 16. we dined at the Profess'd House of the *Jesuits*, who had invited us to a sumptuous Feast. There were in this House a hundred and fifty Fathers, and at least as many Scholars or Students, yet did not that great number near fill that noble Structure, which was four stories high, and had the pleasantest prospect in the World, as well towards the Sea, as on the Land side. They first shew'd us all the conveniences of the House, their Wealth, and the order they observ'd in their Oeconomy. Then they brought us into a fair arched Hall, as big as an ordinary Church, which was beset with Tables placed all along the Walls. The Cloath was laid, with the Trenchers, the drinking Cups, and Earthen pots, and they had brought in Bread and Fruit. In the midst of the Hall, there was another little square Table, cover'd and furnish'd as the rest, for those who were to do penance for their having done any thing contrary to the discipline of the Order. In the midst of the Entry to this Hall, there was a Pillar, out of which issued a Spout of water for the washing of their hands. Then they carried us up to the third story, to another Hall, which was not as large as that below, but so richly furnish'd, as might become the Appartment of a very noble House, as well in point of Tapistry as other things. The Table prepared for us was very large, and plac'd in the midst of the Hall, cover'd with a noble Cloath, beset with Fruit, and Bread, and *China* dishes, which Persons of Quality in those parts do prefer before those of Silver.

The Father Provincial, having given the President the precedence, sat down by him, and afterward ordered all our company to be so plac'd, as that, between every two, there were two *Jesuits* to entertain and discourse with us; the rest standing behind to wait on us. The Meat was brought in little dishes of Porcelain, to every man his own dish; and this for several courses, both of *Flesh* and *Fish*, all excellently well dress'd. The desert was suitable to the rest of the entertainment, and consisted in Tarts, Florentines, Eggs dress'd after the *Portuguez* way, admirably well perfum'd, Marchpains, and Conserves, both dry and liquid.

At our rising from Table, they conducted us into several Chambers, where they left us, to take the ordinary repose, during the greatest heat of the day. There was in every Chamber three Beds, and in the midst upon a Table a great Vessel of Porcelane, full of fair Water. Then they came and carried us into a Hall, where we were to have the divertisement of a Ball, which was danc'd by the Children of certain *Indians*, whom they had baptiz'd and instructed in the *Roman* Catholick Religion. The Arch-bishop of *Goa*, who was Primate of all the *Indies*, was there also in person, as well to participate of the divertisement, as to entertain the President, by order from the Viceroy. The Dancing-master

1659.

The Jesuits  
of Goa treat  
him,

A feast at  
the profess-  
ed house of  
the Jesuits:



1639. made the first entrance alone, and did pretty well for a *Portuguez*: The Habits of the Dancers were very rich, but they had no Visards on, nor any thing upon their Heads, but a Crown of Flowers. The noblest entrance, and that which discover'd the subject of the Ball, was that of fifteen persons who came in, bringing along with them, some pieces of a broken Pillar, some Garlands of divers Flowers, wherewith they adorn'd the Pillar after they had, after several turnings, absolutely set it together, all performed with observance of the Musick. At the upper end of this Pillar came out a Flower, made like a Tulip, which opened of it self, while they danc'd, till at last there came out of it an Image of the blessed Virgin, with her Child in her arms, and the Pillar it self opened in several places, to cast out perfum'd Waters like a Fountain. After they had danc'd a while, they took the Pillar asunder, after the same manner as they had put it together, and went out of the Room in very good order. The *Jesuits* told us, that by that invention they represented the pains they had taken, in planting among the *Pagans* and *Mahumetans* of those parts, the Church of God, whereof our Saviour is the only Pillar or Corner-stone. After this there was an entrance of twelve Youths, who sung and play'd every one upon a different Instrument, all done in exact measure. There came in also some *Morris-dancers*, who danc'd to the *Castagnets*, and kept measure with the Musick so exactly, that I never saw any thing like it. There came in also one Man alone, who was covered with Birds-nests, and cloath'd and mask'd according to the *Spanish* mode, who began the farce of this Comedy, by ridiculous and fantastick postures, and the Ball was concluded with the coming in of twelve Boys, dress'd like Apes, which they imitated in their cries and postures. The Ball being over, we staid there a while to hear their Musick, which was altogether after the *Portuguez* way. As we took leave of our Entertainers, they told us, that they made use of those Divertisements, as well to reduce the *Pagans* and *Mahumetans* of those parts to the embracing of *Christian* Religion, by that kind of modern Devotion, as to amuse the Children, and divert them after their studies.

Another  
Feast at the  
Jesuits  
Colledge.

The 18. of *January*, we were invited to dinner by the *Jesuits* of the Colledge, which they call the *Bon-Jesus*. We were receiv'd at the entrance by some of the most ancient Fathers, who shewed us in several Halls and Chambers the Pictures of several Princes and Persons of Quality, who had been of their Order; as also the Histories of those of their Society, who had suffer'd Martyrdom for *Christian* Religion; among whom the Authors of the Gun-powder plot in *England* were not the least. But they forbore giving us the Explication thereof; only they entertain'd us with a long relation of the cruelties, exercis'd some years before, upon those of their Society in *Japan*, where the Emperour had made use of the most exquisite torments could be invented, upon the *Christians*, as well the *Forreigners*, who had spent their endeavours in planting Religion in those parts, as upon the *Japonneses* who had made profession thereof.

Having shew'd us whatever was worth the seeing in their Colledge, they brought us unto the Church, which is no question one of the most sumptuous the *Jesuits* have in all *Asia*. The Structure is vast and magnificent, and the Ornaments are so sutable to the greatness thereof, that it were not easie to imagine any thing more noble. The first thing we were shewed was the High-Altar; but though it were one of the noblest I ever saw, yet came it not, in wealth, near another lesser one, which had been built in honour of Saint *Francis Xavier*, whom they call the *Apostle of the Indies*. We were shewed his Image, which was upon wood, drawn according to the life, and we were told his body was still to be seen in that Church, in the same posture as it was at the time of his departure.

The *Jesuits* told us, that the body of the said Saint *Francis Xavier* was found in the Island of *Ceylon*, and that it was discovered only by a most delightful smell, which had brought those who found it many Leagues distance from the Sea, to the place where it was hidden. Which story does not agree very well with what others write of the same body. For besides, that the scent which is carried from the Island of *Ceylon* so far into the Sea, proceeds from the Grove of Cinnamon, wherewith that Island is in a manner covered. *Maphæus*, one of the gravest Authors that ever were of the Society, sayes in express terms, that *Francis Xavier*, not satisfied with the progress he had made in the *Indies* by the means of his preaching the Faith of *Christ*, would needs try whether it might have the like success in *China*: but that he died on the Sea-side, as soon as he landed. Whereto he adds, that the Matter of the Ship, which had carried him thither, caused the Corps to be put into unslak'd Lime, to the end he might carry away the bones, after the flesh had been consumed; but that after certain dayes, that consuming matter had not made any impression upon it, and that the body, instead of being corrupted, smell'd very sweetly; and that thereupon they resolv'd to carry it to *Goa*, where it was received

The Sepulchre of  
Francis  
Xavier.

with

with great Ceremonies. They related to us a great many Miracles wrought by that Saint; but I remember only two or three of the most considerable; to wit, that he had caused the Sun to come back an hour after it was set; that he commanded the Sea and the Winds with the same power, as our Saviour had sometimes done; and that he had rais'd up two Men, one whereof had been buried a whole day before.

Out of the Church they brought us into their Refectory, where the Tables were placed all along the walls, as we had seen them in the Professed House, and in so great a number, that there was room enough for two hundred persons. Yet were there only four of the chiefest among them that dined with us, while all the rest stood and waited on us. We were as well treated by these as we had been by the others: but I must confess these gave us the best Canary that ever I drunk. Of all the Moral Vertues, there is not any the *Jesuits* endeavour more to practise than Sobriety, in so much that Drunkenness is a Vice they can the least of any be charged withall; and yet at this time they often call'd to drink, I conceive, purposely to engage us, to make it appear that it was not out of pure Complement we commended their Wine. After dinner, they carried us up into the Steeple, whence we could take a view of all the City, the Sea, the River, and all the adjacent Champion, as far as the Mountain, much better then we could have done from the fourth Story of the Professed House.

As we took leave of them, they promised to send two of their Fathers to our Lodgings the next morning, who should shew us the great Hospital, whereof the *Jesuits* have the oversight. It is a very noble Structure, consisting of Chambers, Halls and Galleries, able to lodge above a thousand sick persons, who are very carefully supplied with all things. Every Bed is mark'd with a certain Figure; and those which are not taken up, are known by their mark, which is standing upright; whereas those which are, have the mark in some other posture. The noblest Apartments of the Hospital were the Kitchin and the Apothecaries shop belonging to it, both well furnished with all things necessary for the accommodation of the sick, whereof there were a very great number; but most of the Pox, or Bloody-flux. Those who are to look after them have this foresight, that they would not have the sick to be disheartened by seeing others dye; for as soon as they perceive the sick party so far spent as that there is no way but death for him, he is carried to a private room, whither a Priest is sent to him, who stirs not thence till he be dead.

Having view'd the Hospital, we went to see the Monastery of the *Augustines*, which they call the Convent of our *Lady of Grace*. It is seated upon a little eminency, so that, seeing it at a certain distance, a man would take it for one of the noblest Palaces in the World. The Friars carried us all about it, and shewed us particularly the rich Copes and other Priests Vestments, which they said were given them by Persons of Quality, who had spent some time among them. I deliver'd them the Letters of recommendation, which the *Augustines* at *Ispahan* had given me, directed to them: whence it came that their civilities towards me were extraordinary. They proffer'd to shew me what was most remarkable about the City; but in regard I had already seen as much as I desir'd, I thank'd them, and came away with the rest of the company.

As soon as the President had dispatch'd his business with the Viceroy, who paid him nine thousand pounds sterling, in ready Money, and promis'd him the rest should be paid, either in Money, or Commodities, to those *English* Merchants, whom, to that purpose, he had brought from *Surat*, he return'd their civilities, of whom he had received any, and took leave of all. The Viceroy, the General of the Gallions, and all the principal Lords about the Court, sent him very considerable Presents. The former presented him with several Skins of Cinnamon, a *Biggel*, some Butts of Sack, Sheep, and certain Baskets of Fruit, and other refreshments. The *Jesuits* sent him *Aqua vite*, and good store of all sorts of Conserves, dry and liquid, with an intreaty, that he would take along with him, for *England*, certain *Jesuits*, and among the rest, one who had liv'd long enough in *China* to be thoroughly acquainted with the Country. Of all the Presents that were sent him, what the President esteem'd most, was a Bottle of Oyl, which had been extracted out of the Flower of Cinnamon, and a Candle made of the Oyl extracted out of Cinnamon it self.

Jan. 20. We left *Goa*, and met upon the River with above a hundred small Vessels, loaden with all sorts of Provisions and Commodities, which came from *Cananor*, and the Coasts of *Malabar*, and had passed, notwithstanding the Block-house of *Dutch* Vessels, which could only hinder the Gallions and Carracks from getting thence, to go for *Portugal*, or towards the *Moluccas*. As soon as we were got out of the River, we made strait to the Generals Gallion, which was called the *Bon-Jesus*, and carried sixty four Brass Guns, all Cannons or Culverings. There were aboard her six hundred Men, Mariners and Souldi-

1639. ers; and it was one of the noblest Vessels I ever saw. The General receiv'd the President with much civility, and brought him into his Chamber, in and about which were an Anti-chamber, a Closet, and two Galleries: and after a Collation of Conserves and Sack, contrary to the custom of the *Portuguez*, who never proffer a Man drink, unless he ask for it, he shew'd us all the Ship, which had the name of a Gallion, but might very well be accounted a Carrack by reason of the bigness of it. The other Vessels of the Fleet were also very noble ones, there being not any one among them, that had not fifty Guns at least. The General and President were in private discourse, for about half an hour, after which the President took his leave, and the General conducted him to a door which was in the Stern of the Ship, at which it was more commodious getting out, then it is in other Ships by Ladders of Ropes. As soon as the President was got into the Boat, all the *Portuguez* Fleet fir'd their Guns. The Governour of the Castle *de Guard*e, having saluted the President, who was his intimate Friend, with all the Guns he had, presented himself upon the Battery, put off his Hat, and took leave of us. The President being come aboard, ordered twenty Guns to be fired, which the General answered with twenty others; whereupon we went into the Road, and lay between the *Portuguez* and *Dutch* Fleets.

Goa described.

But, ere we leave *Goa*, it will not be amiss, to give yet a little further account of what we found most remarkable in that City, which no doubt is one of the noblest and greatest of those the *Portuguez* are Masters of in any part of the *Indies*. It lies in the Kingdom of *Cuncam*, or *Decam*, fifteen Degrees on this side the Line, in an Island, which the River divides from the Continent. *Alfonso Albuquerque* took it by Composition, on the 16. of February, 1510. from *Zabaim Dalcam*, Prince of *Goa*, who recovered it again from him on the 30th of May following; but on the 21. of November in the same year, *Albuquerque* receiving fresh Forces from a Fleet, which *Diego Mendez Vaseoncelos* had then newly brought from *Portugal*, set upon the City and took it by storm. The City of *Goa* was, even at that time, very considerable for its Traffick, but much less then it is now, as may be seen by the Walls of the old City, which are yet standing, though the Gates be down, in so much that there is nothing between it and the new City, built by the *Portuguez*, since they established their main Trade there. It hath on the South-side the Island of *Salfette*, which is divided from the Continent only by a small Rivulet, as is also the Island of *Bardes*, which lies on the North-side, and under which Ships may cast Anchor with all safety, without fear of any Winds. The Castle *de Guard*e lies at the foot of a Rock, on which they have built a Tower, in form of a Redoubt, wherein, in the night time they make a Fire, for a direction to Ships, and it hath several Bras pieces placed even with the Water. From the mouth of the River to the Haven are about two Leagues, but it is equally broad all along, even at the place where it runs between the Island and the Continent, though in some places it be so shallow, that in Summer time there is not above two foot water.

The Island of *Goa* does not produce any thing, and is so barren, that some few Lambs and Goats excepted, it is not able to sustain any thing; and yet the *Portuguez* have some Gardens there, and in them some Fruit, but it is to be attributed rather to their industry, then to Nature. Palm-wine is there in abundance, and all other provisions are brought thither from the two forementioned Islands, or from the Continent, so plentifully, that they are so cheap there, that notwithstanding the Block-house of the *Hollanders*, a Hog might be had for a Crown, six sucking Pigs, ten Pullets, or eight wild Ducks, for as much; but there are very few Oxen there, then which Sheep are yet more scarce. They permit not the *Indians* to go over into the Continent, without leave obtain'd from those who keep the passages, who make a mark in their Armes, which they are oblig'd to shew as they come back: for the *Portuguez* would not have the *Decanines* and *Canarines* come into the City without a Pass-port. All the fresh-water they have within the City comes from a Fountain, which represents a *Lucrece*, out of whose Wound there comes Water enough to supply the whole City: but the Ships take in fresh-water near the Cattle, above which there comes out of the Rock a Rivulet, which there falls into the River.

Goa hath no wall.

The City hath now neither Gates nor Walls, but the River, which makes the Island, secures it against the attempts, which an open place might be expos'd to. The publick Buildings are very fair, and the Palaces of great Persons very magnificent, especially in their Household-stuffe.

Its inhabitants.

The Inhabitants are either *Castizes*, that is, *Portuguez*, born of Father and Mother *Portuguez*; or *Mestizes*, that is, born of a *Portuguez* Father, and *Indian* Mother. The *Mestizes* are distinguished from the others by their colour, which inclines towards the Olive; but

but those of the third Generation are as black as the Inhabitants of the Country; which happens also in the fourth Generation of the *Castizes*, though there were no mixture among them. The *Portuguez* are either *Titulados*, as those who are employed in the principal charges; *Fidalgos da casa del Rey*, that is, Gentlemen in ordinary of the Kings House; *Mocos Fidalgos*, young Gentlemen, that is, the Sons of *Titulados*, or *Cavalleros*, or newly admitted to Gentility by the King, *Cavalleros Fidalgos*, *Escuderes Fidalgos*, or simply Gentlemen. There are also such as have the quality of *Mocos da camra*, or Grooms of the Kings Chamber, who pass also for Gentlemen. All the rest are *Hombres*, *Honrados*, and *Soldados*. The former are Merchants or Tradesmen, and appear publicly with the same gravity, and almost with the same retinue as Gentlemen; in as much as, some only excepted, who cut Leather for Shoes, and Stuffs for Clothes, all the rest have their business done by Slaves.

No Person of Quality goes abroad afoot; for some are carried by their Slaves in a *Palanquin*, and others ride on Horseback, or go in painted and gilt Gondoles; but not any without a Slave to carry an *Umbrello*, or Fan.

The *Portuguez* have the reputation of being very highly conceited of themselves; but those of *Goa* are such in so high a degree, as well in their gate, as all their other actions, that they treat, as unacquainted with the World, such as are newly come from *Portugal*, and are not accusom'd to their manner of going and life. They are excessively civil one to another; nay, they are, in this, so ceremonious and exact, that he who should omit to render a person, that gives him a visit, the honour he conceives due to himself, whether it be in making him sit down otherwise then he would, or not bringing him to the street-door, must expect the effects of a deep resentment, whereof the least are cudgelling or caning, which they liberally bestow on persons of mean condition, who being below them, have omitted giving them the respect they look for from those that are not their Equals, though indeed they owe them not any.

Winter begins there towards the end of *June*, with a South-west Wind, which comes from the Sea, and reigns for the space of four moneths, all along that Coast, from *Diu*, as far as the Cape of *Comory*; and during all that time, the Sea is not only innavigable, but there are few Havens, where Ships can ride in safety, and unexpos'd to Storms, mixt with terrible Thunder and Lightning, which disturb the Air there in that season. Which is yet so much the more to be wondred at, inasmuch as, at the same time, the Coast of *Coromandel*, which is in the same *Peninsula*, and at the same degree of elevation, and in some places is but twenty Leagues distant from that of *Malabar*, enjoys a pleasant Spring, and the most divertive season of the year. Accordingly, those who go from *Cochim* to Saint *Thome*, by land, as they pass over the Mountain of *Balagatta*, which divides the whole *Peninsula*, as the *Apennine* does *Italy*, discover, from the top of the Mountain, on the one side, a clear and temperate Air, and on the other, a Country cover'd with a perpetual mist, and drown'd with the Rains that continually fall. The same observation may be also made in those Ships, which go from *Ormuz* to the Cape of *Rosalgate*. Where, as they pass the Cape, they suddenly pass out of fair Weather, into dreadful Storms and Tempests. Whence it comes that, in those parts, there are but two Seasons, as there are also principally but two Winds that reign there in the Summer time, to wit, those of the East, which the *Portuguez* call *Therentos*, which come from the Land-side, and blow from mid-night till mid-day; but they are not felt above ten Leagues within the Sea; and those of the West, which they call *Virafons*, which come from the Sea, immediately after dinner, and blow all the rest of the day.

This change of Seasons from one extremity to another is the cause of many Diseases among the *Portuguez*; but the most common there are those which they call *Mordexin*, which kills immediately, burning Feavers, and bloody Fluxes, against which they have in a manner no remedy but bleeding. The Plague is a Disease not known in the *Indies*; but, to make amends, they have the Pox, which destroys every year a great number of *Portuguez*. For, though the Country produces present and topical Remedies against the Disease, yet so violent are their inclinations to Women, who, on the other side, are as mad for Men, that they will not take the time to be cur'd of a Disease, which is not got off by Remedies, if they be not accompany'd with a very regular diet. The Women of those parts have an excessive affection for white Men, and, being kept very much in restraint, they are put to all imaginable inventions, to let them know how passionately they love them, and to get them into their Lodgings: where they many times prosecute their delights, even in the Husbands presence, by means of a Drug, which so stupifies his Senses, as that he seems either to have lost them, or to sleep with his eyes open.

The *Indians* call this Herb *Doutro*, *Doutry*, or *Datura*, and the *Turks* and *Persians* *Datula*.

*Garcias*

1639. *Garcias ab horto*, and *Christopher d' Acoſta*, affirm, that it is a kind of *Stramonea*; that the Herb grows abundantly all over the *Indies*, in the ſhade, and that it is ſomewhat like Bears-foot. They extract the juyce of it, while it is green, or they beat the Seed to powder, and mix it in Conſerves, or put it into his drink, whom they would reduce to that condition for twenty four hours: during which time he is depriv'd the uſe of all his Senſes, ſo that he does not ſee what is done before him, though his eyes be open, unleſs ſome body moiſten the ſoles of his feet with fair water, which revives and recovers him, much after the ſame manner as if he awoke out of a ſound ſleep.

*The Women go abroad.* There are few *Portuguez* Women, or *Mestiſes*, ſeen going about the City; and when they go abroad, either to Church, or upon neceſſary Viſits, they are carried in cloſe *Palanquins*, or are attended and watch'd by ſo many Slaves, that it is impoſſible to ſpeak to them. When they appear in publick, they are all very richly attir'd, in Velvet, Flower'd-Sattin, or Brocado, and adorn'd with abundance of Pearls and precious Stones; but at home, they go in their Hair, and have about them only a Smock, which reaches to the Navil; and thence downwards, they have Petticoats of painted Clothes falling down to the Feet, which are bare. They eat no Bread, as liking the Rice better, now that they are accuſtomed to it; nor do they fare over-deliciously as to other things, their ordinary ſuſtenance being Salt-fiſh, *Mangas*, or only Rice, ſoak'd in a little Fleſh or Fiſh-broath. They make uſe of certain Bottles, made of a kind of black Earth, which they call *Gorgolettes*, and have a Pipe coming up to the brims, ſo as that they may ſuck up the Water without lifting up the Bottles to their mouths.

*The jealouſie of the Portuguez* The Men there are ſo jealous of their Wives, that they permit not their neareſt Relations to ſee them: for Chaiſtity is ſo ſtrange a Vertue in thoſe parts, that there is no Woman but contrives all the wayes imaginable to purſue her enjoyments, never minding the breach of thoſe Laws which God and Nature hath impoſed upon them, though the frequent miſfortunes which happen upon that occaſion ſhould engage them to be more cautious and reſerv'd. The perpetual idle life they lead makes them ſo high in their deſires, for they do not any thing of buſineſs in the world, but ſpend the day in chewing of *Betele*, which adds fuel to the flames of their lewd inclinations, as do alſo the Cloves and Nutmegs, which they eat, out of an imagination that they prevent the corruptions of the Teeth and Stomack, which commonly make the Breath ſtink.

The *Indian* Women, who conceive by an *European*, have ſo great an affection for their Children, that they would rather dye then part with them. Children are not cloth'd till they are of age to wear Breeches: and till that time they are brought up by Slaves, or other *Indian* Women.

*The Portuguez Souldiers.* The Souldiers live after another rate among them. For thoſe who go in that quality from *Portugal*, do not liſt themſelves under any particular Captain, nor will be engaged to continue in any one certain place to keep Garrifon there: but when they come to the *Indies*, they do what they pleaſe themſelves. Accordingly they have no pay, but when they are in actual ſervice upon the Engagements they are forc'd to at Sea, againſt the *Malabars*, or the *Dutch*. But the Captains, who have occaſion for theſe people, treat them with much civility, and give them now and then ſomewhat towards their ſubſiſtence, that they may be aſſured of their perſons and ſervices, when they have any work for them: ſo that they have what to live upon, yet ſpend not much. For commonly they live ten or twelve in the ſame houſe, where they diet together, having but two or three Servants among them, and as many Suits of Clothes, for thoſe who go abroad, either to beg, or upon ſome deſign, while the reſt ſtay at home, till their turns come to march out.

*Their Marriages and Chriſtenings.* The Marriages and Chriſtenings of the *Portuguez* are celebrated with very great magnificence. The Friends and Relations come on horſeback to the Bridegrooms door, and thence march before him to Church, into which he enters, accompanied by two of his Friends, who are inſtead of God-fathers to him; and the Bride follows him in a *Palanquin*, accompanied alſo by her two God-fathers. After the benediction of the marriage, they reconduſt the new married couple to their houſe, into which only the God-fathers enter with the young couple, who go into a Balcony, or ſtand at a Window, to give the company thanks, which in the mean time ſhew a thouſand tricks in the Street. Their Chriſtenings are performed, in a manner, with the ſame Ceremonies, ſave that, at theſe there is carried, an Ewer with a clean Napkin, a Salt-ſellar, and in the miſt a Silver Baſin, in a heap of Roſes, or other Flowers, a Wax-candle, into which they put a piece of Gold or Silver, for an Offering to the Prieſt. The God-father, and the Mid-wife, are carried with the Child in *Palanquins*.

*Their Slaves.* Moſt of the *Portuguez* have many Slaves of both Sexes, whom they employ not only about

about their persons, but also upon any other business they are capable of; for what they get comes in to the Master. Whence it comes that handsome Wenches are sought after, to be employ'd in the selling of Fruits, and such Commodities as the *Portuguez* send to market; to the end their beauty might draw in Customers, and so they by a double way of trading, bring in double profit to their Masters. Their keeping, as to diet, stands them in very little; and all the cloathing they give them is only as much Linnen-cloth as will cover the privy parts. The Children born between Slaves belong to the Master, unless the Father will redeem them, within eight or ten dayes after they are born; which if they let slip, they are not afterwards admitted to do it, and the Master disposes of them; and when they are able to do any thing, makes use of them himself, or sells them in the Market, as we do Cattle.

The Inhabitants of the Country are Pagans, and for the most part *Benjans*. Their Houses are all of Straw, and very little, having no light but what comes in at a little low door. All their Household-stuffe consists principally in certain Mats made of Rushes, which serve them both for their lodging at night, and to lye down upon at meals. Their Dishes, Drinking-cups, and Napkins, are made of Fig-leaves, of which they also make Pitchers and Oyl-pots, and their ordinary sustenance is Rice, which they boyl in Earthen pots. They daub over their Houses with Cow-dung, out of an imagination that it drives away Fleas.

They are so superstitious, that they never go abroad till they have said their prayers; and if they chance to meet a Crow, where-ever they be, they immediately return home, and undertake no business of any consequence that day. When they travel, they do their devotions before their *Pagodes*; and the *Portuguez* tolerate their Idolatry, upon this account, that the Inquisition hath no power, but only over such as either are Christians, or have been such. They have also their particular ceremonies for their Marriages, their birth-dayes, and other dayes, and seasons of the year: but they differ so little from those where-of we have spoken already, that we shall need say nothing of them. There are among them some very able Physicians, who are so highly respected at *Goa*, that they are permitted to have their Umbrellos carried with them; which is a Priviledge allowed only persons of quality: nay the *Portuguez*, even to the Vice-Roy himself and the Arch-Bishop, make use of them, rather than of those of their own Nation. They never eat but with those of their own Sect, though they were ready to starve. Nay, in this particular they are so scrupulous, that if, in their journey to *Cochim*, their provision should fall short, they would rather starve, than be oblig'd to eat what another had sown or made ready. Most of the Porters about *Goa* are Christians, as are also their Money-changers, whom they call *Xaraffes*, who make an external profession of Christianity, but, in their dealing, are *Jews*, apt to over-reach and deceive all that have to do with them. There are in *Goa* many *Decanins* and *Canarins*, who have Shops there, and buy of the *Portuguez*, Porcelane, Velvet *Damask*, and other Stuffles of Silk and Cotton, as also some *China* Commodities, all by whole sale, and afterwards sell them again by retail. These also bring Provisions from the Continent, and trade therein, having to that end their Brokers and Factors, who manage their business, while they go to *Cambaya*, and along the Coast to improve their Traffick. There are amongst them Goldsmiths, Jewellers, Gravers, and other Artizans, who do things incomparably better than any of ours. These also farm the Kings Demesne in the Islands of *Bardes* and *Salfette*; upon which account, having sometimes occasion to go to Law, they are so well vers'd in the Laws and Customs of *Portugal*, that they need no Advocates to plead their Causes.

Most of the *Canarins* are either Husband-men, or Fisher-men. There are some of them have no other employment than dressing the *Cocos*-trees, to get the Wine and Fruit they produce. Others only wash Linnen, or whiten Cloath. The Peasants bring in every day to the City, wild Fowl, Milk, Fruit, Eggs, and other provisions to be sold. Their Wives are deliver'd with the greatest easiness imaginable. They make no use of Midwives, but are deliver'd alone, wash their Children themselves as soon as they are born, put them under a few Fig leaves, and return to their work, as if they had not been about any such thing. The Children brought up after this rate, grow so hardy and strong, that it is an ordinary thing to see Men among them of a hundred years of age, yet have not a Tooth missing, but all the time in perfect health. They are all excellent Swimmers, whence it comes, that they venture over to the Continent in their little Boats called *Almadies*, which indeed are so little, that they can hardly carry one person: in so much that they are frequently overturn'd, but they recover them again by swimming, cast out the Water, and prosecute their Voyage. Though in these parts they burn the dead bodies instead of burying of them, yet are not the Women oblig'd to burn themselves with

The Inhabitants of the Country, and their houses.

The Decanins excellent Gravers, &c.

Their women deliver'd with ease, and without pain.

They live in perfect health to 100 years of age.

their

1639. their Husbands Corps, but only to cut off their Hair, and make a Vow of perpetual Widowhood.

The Jews  
of Goa.

The *Jews*, who live at *Goa*, have there their Temples and Synagogues, and enjoy an absolute liberty of Conscience. They are either *Indians* born of, Father and Mother, *Jews*, or they come out of *Palastine*; these last, for the most part, speak the *Spanish* tongue.

The *Mahumetans*, who live there, trade for the most part to *Meca*, and other places upon the Red-sea, whither they carry Spices. The *Portuguez* and the *Mestizes* have their greatest Trade in *Bengala*, *Pegu*, *Malacca*, *China*, and in *Guzuratta*, at the City of *Cambaya*. No Person of Quality at *Goa*, but goes once a day to the Market, whither the Merchants, nay, most Gentlemen come, as well to hear what news there is, as to see what there is to be sold; for, from seven in the morning to nine, (after which the heat is such, as that a Man is not able to stay there) the publick Criers, whom they call *Laylon*, sell there by outcry, all sorts of Commodities, but especially Slaves of both Sexes, and Jewels. There you shall see the Crier loaden with Chains, Gold Rings, and precious Stones, and followed by a great number of Slaves, all to be sold. There are also to be sold there, *Persian* and *Arabian* Horses, Spices, all sorts of Aromatick Gums, *Alcatifs*, *Porcelane*, Vessels of Agat, several things made of *Lacque*, and whatever is thought precious or rare in any other part of the *Indies*. Merchants and Tradesmen are distinguished by Streets; so that Silk-men are not shuffled in among Linnen-Drapers; nor the Druggists among those who sell Porcelane. The greatest profit they make is in the exchange of Money. For when the *Spanish* Fleet comes in, they buy Ryals at ten or twelve in the hundred loss; and in *April*, when the Ships go away for the *Molucca's* and *China*, where the Ryals are much esteem'd, they sell them again at twenty five or thirty in the hundred profit, notwithstanding the Order there is to sell them at four hundred Reis. They make the same advantage by the change of the *Laris*, which they also sell at ten or twelve in the hundred profit.

Their money.

They have several sorts of money. The least is that which they call *Basarucques*, which on the one side have a Globe, on the other two Arrows cross'd. They are made of Tin and Lattin mixt together, and eight of these *Basarucques* make a *Ventin*, whereof five make a *Tanghe*. Five *Tanghes* make a *Serafin* of Silver, which, according to the Kings Command, is set at three hundred Reis, and six *Tanghes* make a *Pardai*. The *Serafin* hath on the one side Saint *Sebastian*, on the other a sheaf of Arrows. There are also *Serafins* of Gold, coined heretofore at *Ormuz*, of a more refin'd metal then any other Moneys of the *Indies*; whence it comes, that the Gold-smiths melt down all that fall into their hands of them. They have also *Santemes* of 16. *Tanghes*, and *Pagodes* of 14, 15. and 16. *Tanghes*.

Customes  
upon For-  
reign Com-  
modities.

Forreign Merchants pay at their coming in eight in the hundred for all Merchandises, and as much at their going out; but the Farmers of the Customs are so reasonable in their valuing of them, that the Merchants have no cause to complain. They have also this favour, that if a Merchant hath paid the Customs at his coming in, and hath not put off his Commodities, he may carry them to some other place, without paying ought at the Exportation. In like manner, a forreign Merchant that hath bought of a *Portuguez*, or other Citizen of *Goa*, Spices, or any other Commodities of *Malacca* or *China*, may enter them under the Sellers name, and so avoid paying the Customes due at exportation.

The Viceroy  
of Goa.

The Viceroy at the time of our being there, was *D. Pedro de Silva*. His person was not answerable to his quality, but he had about him above fifty Gentlemen, who gave him the same respect as they could have done the King himself. This charge is continued in the same person, but for three years, as well in regard it were dangerous, a Subject should longer be possess'd of a Dignity, which differs from the Sovereign only in time; as that the King of *Spain* hath many Lords to gratifie with an Employment, which enriches them sufficiently in that time. For, besides that his whole Court lies at the Kings charge, he hath the disposal of all his Revenue, and every year makes a Visit for sixty or eighty Leagues about, which is worth to him very much. But the Presents which the neighbouring Princes, and the Governours and under Officers make him, are not to be valued. He hath his Council of State, and his Courts of Law and Equity. He is absolute Judge in all civil Causes, the most important only excepted, wherein there may appeal be made to the King. Criminal Sentences are executed there, notwithstanding the Appeal; but it is not in the Viceroy's power to indict a Gentleman, but he is oblig'd to send him, with the Informations brought in against him, to *Portugal*, unless the King order some other course to be taken with him. The Viceroy at his arrival into the *Indies*, lands in the Island of *Bardes*, or some other Haven on that side, whence he immediately sends his Agents to *Goa*,

to take possession of his charge, and what ever depends on it. His Predecessour makes way for him, upon the first news he receives of his Arrival, unfurnishes the Palace, and leaves him only the Guards and the bare walls. Thus much we thought fit to say of the City of Goa.

January 22. about noon, the President sent away the two Ships which came along with us from *Surat*, and were to carry thither the money which had been received at *Goa*; and after he had dismiss'd certain *Jesuits*, and several other persons of quality of *Goa*, who were come to visit him aboard, we hoys'd sail, yet expecting to come aboard our Ship the General of the *Dutch Fleet*, whose name was *Van Keulen*, who had intreated him to convey some Letters to his Superiours. But he came not. In the Evening we saw all the *Dutch Fleet* under sail, whence we imagin'd that the General intended to give us a visit, but with the night we lost sight of them, and having a reasonable good wind, kept on our course.

Jan. 23. At break of day, we had a sight of the *Dutch Fleet* again; and then we conceiv'd they were going to relieve the King of *Ceylon*, who had intreated the General to assist him against the *Portuguez*, who had declar'd war against him. About noon, we were at thirteen degrees latitude, and out of sight of land. But in regard we intended to go towards the Coast of *Malabar*, upon intelligence brought us, that an *English Ship*, coming from *Bantam*, richly loaden with Spices, had been set upon and spoil'd by the *Malabar Pyrates*, the next day we chang'd our course, and took it more Eastward, so to get towards the land. The *Malabars* had taken their advantage of the condition that Ship was in, which was so over-burthen'd, that she could make use of but six Guns; they found indeed no great difficulty to enter her; but they were no sooner in, ere the *English* sent above six hundred of them, with the upper Deck into the Sea. They dispatch'd as many with the second; but afterwards being themselves forc'd to go to the Stern, to avoid the fire, they yielded to the *Malabars*, who, with the Ship, took the Captain, the Masters Mate, the Clark, and fourteen others, whom we intended to redeem.

About noon we pass'd in sight of *Monteleone*, a high Mountain, from which the *Malabars* discover, at a distance, the Vessels they conceive they may set upon with advantage, and at night we came to the Haven of *Cananor*, where we found three *English Vessels*, the *Dragon*, the *Catharine*, and the *Seymour*, commanded by Captain *Weddell*, one of the most experienced Sea-Captains of his time, one that had been at the taking of *Ormuz*, and was then entertain'd into the service of a new Company, erected not long before in *England*, for the trade of the *Indies*. Having fired some Guns to salute the Castle, we sent to Captain *Weddell*, to know what condition the *English* prisoners were in; and hearing they were most of them set at liberty, we would stay no longer on that Coast.

The *Portuguez* have a Garrison in the Castle of *Cananor*, but the City is inhabited by *Malabars*. They call by that name all those people who live upon that Coast from the City of *Goa*, as far as the Cape of *Comory*, or *Comorin*. The Country is very fertile, and brings forth abundance of Spices, but particularly the best Pepper in the *Indies*, which is most esteem'd, because the grain of it is bigger then it is any where else, even then that which grows in *Sumatra* and *Java*. The Inhabitants go stark naked, covering only those parts, which Nature would not have seen even in Beasts. They make holes in the tips of their Ears, and are black, but have not such great Lips as the Moors of *Africk*. They tye up their Hair together upon the Crown of the Head, and let their Beards grow to the full length, without any ordering or trimming, in so much that they are not unlike those figures, under which we would represent the Devil. Nor is their disposition unsuitable to this pleasant external shape, for they understand nothing of civility, nor are capable of any Commerce or Conversation. They are for the most part Pyrates and Souldiers, who may be said to have rashness rather then courage, and are expert enough in the handling of their Armes, which are Sword and Buckler, Bows and Arrows. They make also a kind of Muskets themselves, and use them with advantage. They obey neither the King of *Cuncam*, nor the Viceroy of *Goa*, but they have their particular King or Prince, who also performs the functions of High-Priest, and is of the Sect of the *Bramans*. These were the most considerable enemies the *Portuguez* met with, at the beginning of their establishment in the *Indies*: but ever since they made a Treaty with them, they have liv'd in very good correspondence. Their Prince, whom they call *Zamorin*, is also King of *Calicut*, upon the same Coast. In the year 1604. the *Dutch* made a Treaty with him, for the freedom of Trade; but the *Portuguez* coming to be more powerful in those parts, and the *Dutch* finding it easier to settle themselves in other places, where they continue their Trade with greater advantage, they have neglected the friendship of these



1639. Barbarians. I observ'd at *Cananor*, that there were some men among them, who never par'd their Nails; and that there were others, who wore Bracelets and Rings about their Armes. These are the Gentry of the Country, whom they call *Nayres*, that they may be distinguish'd from Persons of meaner condition, whom they call *Polyas*. The *Nayres* are very proud, and conceited of themselves, and permit not the *Polyas* so much as to touch them. They alwayes go with their Sword and Buckler, wherewith they make a noise in the Streets as they go, and perpetually cry out *Po, Po*, that people should make way for them. As soon as they perceive them coming, they close on both sides, look down to the ground, and do them reverence. Some affirm, that this punctilio of Honour, whereby they pretend to a respect due to them from all that are not of their race, was one of the things that most obstructed the Treaty which the *Portuguez* were ready to conclude with the King of *Cochim*, at their first establishment, in regard they would have the *Portuguez* do them the same submissions as the *Polyas* did. The *Portuguez*, on the other side, who are as highly conceited of themselves as any Nation in the World, refused to do it; so that to decide the difference, it was agreed, that a *Portuguez* and a *Nayre* should fight for the honour of the two Nations; upon condition, that the Conquerour should give the Law to the conquered. The *Portuguez* Champion had the advantage, and by that means obtain'd the precedence for his Nation; and ever since that time, the *Portuguez* have the same honour done them by the *Nayres*, as they have done them by the *Polyas*. Many of these *Nayres* never marry, in regard they have a certain priviledge to see the Wives and Daughters of their Camerades, and to that end, to go into their Houses at any time of the day. When they go into any House upon that score, they leave their Sword and Target at the Street-door, which mark prohibits entrance to all others whatsoever, nay the very Master of the House himself, finding those Armes at his Door, passes by, and gives his Camerade full liberty to do what he please. The *Polyas* are not so much honour'd as to have the *Nayres* visit their Wives, who must be content with their own Husbands; for it were a great crime in a *Nayre* to defile himself, by conversing with the Wife of a common person. The *Nayres* are all Souldiers, made use of by the King, both for his Guard and in his Wars. On the contrary, the *Polyas* are forbidden the bearing of Armes, and so are either Tradefmen, Husbandmen, or Fishermen.

The priviledges of the *Nayres*

The *Malabars* write with a Bodkin upon the bark of the *Cocos*-tree, which they cut very thin, and in an oblong form like a Table-book, drawing a String through the middle, which hold the leaves together, and comes twice or thrice about the box or case, which is as it were a covering to it. Their Characters have nothing common with those of the other *Indians*, and are understood only by their *Bramans*, for most of the common people can neither write nor read.

The King of *Calicut* doth not eat any thing, which had not been presented before to his *Pagode*; and it is to be particularly observed, that in this Kingdom it is not the Kings Son, but the Kings Sisters Son, who inherits the Crown, it being the common persuasion, that the Children born of the Queen, are begotten rather by their *Bramans* than by the King himself.

As concerning the City of *Cochim*, it is to be observed, that there are two Cities of the same name in the Kingdom of *Cochim*, one wherof lies upon a great River, and belongs to the King of *Cochim*, the other to the *Portuguez*. This last, wherof we now speak, is seated upon the same Coast, at ten degrees on this side the Line, having on the West-side of it the Sea, and on the Land-side a Forrest of black Trees, wherof the Inhabitants of the Country make their Boats called *Almadies*. These Trees they make hollow, and so their Boat is all of one piece, yet with these they make a shift to go along the Coast as far as *Goa*. The Port is very dangerous, by reason of the Rocks which make the entrance into it very difficult.

*Cochim* described.

At the beginning of Winter, there falls such abundance of Rain in the neighbouring Mountains, that several Brooks are of a sudden by that means overflown, and run with such violence, that the Earth which they carry along, and which is stopped by the Waves that are forc'd by the Wind against the Earth, makes in that place a kind of Bank, which so stops up the mouth of the Haven, that 'tis impossible to get into it or out of it, during that time, nor indeed till the Wind, which changes with the season, forces the Sea back again, which carries along with it the filth which the Rain had left in that place.

The *Portuguez* carry on a great Trade in this place in Pepper, which the King of *Cochim* sells them at a certain rate, agreed upon with the Viceroy at his first coming to *Goa*; but the Inhabitants of the Country, and other Forreigners, pay dearer for it.

The King of *Cochim* is one of the most powerful Princes of those parts; it being certain, that he is able to raise above a hundred thousand men, the most part *Nayres*, who are obliged to serve at their own charge, either with Horse or Elephants. As to their manner of life, it is not fully so brutish as that of the *Malabars*, but they observe the same Custom, for the succession of their Kings, and the Consummation of their Marriages, which work is performed by their *Bramans*.

1639.  
The power  
of the King  
of Cochim  
A great  
Priviledge  
of the Bra-  
mans.

This sort of people is so highly respected amongst them, that the Master of the House seeing a *Braman* coming into it, makes him way, retires, and leaves him alone to do what he please with his Wife. They make holes in their Ears, and hang little weights of Lead at them, which stretch them so much, that in time they reach down to their Shoulders. The principal Commerce of this place consists in Pepper, Ginger, and Cinnamon.

It is not long since all the *Malabars* had but one King; but *Sarama Perymal*, Monarch of all that Coast, from *Goa*, as far as the Cape of *Comeri*, having imbrac'd the *Mahumetan* Religion, and desirous to end his life in solitude, near the Sepulchre of his great Prophet, distributed his Territories amongst his Friends, upon condition that the Kings of *Cananor*, *Cochim* and *Chaule*, should acknowledge the Sovereignty of the King of *Calicut*, on whom he bestowed the Dignity of *Zamourin*, or Emperour; but since the establishment of the *Portuguez* in those parts, the power of *Zamourin* is grown so low, that at the present, the King of *Cochim* is more powerful then he.

The Zamor-  
in of Ca-  
licuth was  
sometime  
Emperour  
of the Ma-  
labars.

*January* the 26. We left *Cananor*, and saw going thence Captain *Weddell*, who would gladly have come along with us into *England*, had he not been obliged to go and dispatch some business he had to do at *Cochim* and *Calicut*. Captain *Weddell* cast Anchor there, but we only fired some Guns, and pursued our Voyage.

The next day we discover'd, at a great distance, eighteen Sail of Ships, which coming directly towards us, easily discover'd what their design was. We had much ado to clear our Guns, for the Ship was so loaden that every hole was full. However we had the time to put our selves into a posture of receiving those *Pyrats*, who had not the confidence to come within Cannon-shot of us, while day-light might discover them; but presently after midnight, as soon as the Moon was up, they set upon us on all sides, though with little advantage, for they were so well receiv'd, that at the first firing of our Guns we sunk two of their Frigots, and made three or four others incapable of further engaging. Our small Shot in the mean time playing upon those which came nearest our Ship, that they thought it their best course to let us alone.

An Engage-  
ment with  
the Mala-  
bar Pirates.

The same night we pass'd by the Castle of *Chochim*, and the next day, the twenty eighth, we could discern no more then fourteen of the *Malabar* Frigats, which follow'd us a far off, whereupon we conceiv'd the other four were sunk. Mean while, we continued on our Voyage with a favourable Wind, discovering towards the East, a low Country planted with *Cocoas*, and something farther, towards South-east, the Cape of *Comory*, the most Southerly quarter of this part of the *Indies*, by the Ancients call'd *India* on this side *Ganges*.

The Cape of  
Comory.

The night following, the *Malabars* made as if they would again attacke us, and two of their Frigots came within our Cannon, we only gave them two Volleys without Bullets to draw them nearer, but they retreated.

On the morrow, the twenty ninth, we saw the Isle of *Ceylon*, at the head whereof we were fix'd as immoveable by a Calm, which lasted three weeks compleat. This Island lies ten Leagues from the Continent, extending from South-south-east to the North-east, betwixt the Capes of *Comory* and *Nigapatam*, which lies at eleven degrees, towards the Coast of *Coromandel*. 'Tis in length sixty Leagues, in breadth forty, and about two hundred and fifty in compass. They say, it was heretofore much larger then now at present, and that the flowings of the Sea, which in those quarters are exceeding violent, carried part of it away, on the side towards *Comory*. This, without dispute, is the richest and most fertile of all the Eastern Islands, if we may credit *Maffeus*, the most learned and grave Author that hath written of the Affairs of the *Indies*, or particularly the experienc'd and famous *S. Borhart* in his *Phaleg*; this is without doubt the Ancients *Taprobane*, though *Mercator*, *Jos. De l'Escale*, *Em. Ostorius*; and others, take the Isle of *Sumatra* to be it, of which we shall speak hereafter.

The Isle of  
Ceylon.

The ancient  
Tapro-  
bane.

Howsoever, it is most certain, *Ceylon*, or *Zeilon*, is the most considerable of all the *Indian* Islands, for it produces not only all such things as the other Islands afford, but moreover, there shall you see whole Forrests of Orange and Lemmon-trees, as also of Cinnamon, which emits its odour very far upon the Sea, and great quantity of precious Stones, in so much as, except the Diamonds, there is no Stone which is not there found. They fish

tion.

1639. likewise there for Pearls, but they are not so fair as those of *Baharam*: but in recompence it produces the best Ivory of the World. *Laurence*, Son of *Francisco Almeida*, discover'd it in the year 1506. who took possession of it in the name of *Emanuel King of Portugal*, erecting there a Column, with an Inscription, signifying, that it had no owner, though at the same time he had a Treaty with one of the Kings of the Island, wherein he promised him the King of *Portugal's* protection, for two thousand five hundred *Quintals* of Cinnamon, in acknowledgment. The *Portuguez* have since fortified the Town of *Colombo*, which lies at seven degrees on this side the Line, and kept it, till the *Hollanders*, three years since, in the year 1657. took this important place from them; by this means dispossessioning them of all they held in this Island.

When discovered by the Portuguez.

The *Hollanders* began not their Commerce here till the year 1602. in the time of *Fimala Derma suri Ada*, King of *Candy*, who is the most puissant, and in a manner the sovereign of the Island, who succeeded to the Crown by wayes so extraordinary, that I perswade my self 'twill not be tedious to the Reader, to hear the particulars.

The History of Fimala Derma King of Candy.

*Mara Ragu*, King of *Settavacca*, had three Sons legitimate, and one natural, called *Derma*. Some will have this *Derma* to be the Son of a Chyrurgion; but they are mistaken, it being certain, he was the Son of *Mara Ragu*, begotten on one of these *Balladeiraes*, or Dancers, such as almost all the *Indian Princes* keep for their divertisement. *Mara Ragu* had an affection for this Child, and caus'd him to be brought up a Souldier, that one day he might command his Forces; wherein *Derma* improv'd so well, and acquir'd such reputation, that the Army, who conceiv'd it would be a happiness to be under a Martial Prince, established him in the Throne, this unnatural Child having first taken away the lives of his Father and his three legitimate Sons. The *Cingales*, who in this Island of *Ceylon* are as the *Nayres* amongst the *Malabares*, had some regret to admit this change, and be Subjects to a Bastard: but he began his reign with such severity, and ordered so many executions, that they who murmur'd most were compell'd to entertain what they could not hinder, till such time as they found means to make him away by poyson.

Derma murders his Father and three Brothers.

The death of *Derma*, and that of the King of *Candy*, which happened much about a time, very much advanced the establishment of the *Portuguez* in this Island. For, allowing to the *Cingales* their ancient Liberties and Priviledges, and without scruple of Religion, intermarrying with them, they stood fair to become Masters of the Island, had it not been for the opposition of one Lord of the Nation, of whom they had good reason to be confident. His name was *Fimala Derma Suri Ada*, and was grand *Modeliar*, that is, Constable of the Kingdom of *Candy*, when the King dyed. He was Son to one of the cheif Princes of the Kingdom, and in his youth had his breeding amongst the *Portuguez*, who brought him to *Colombo*, where he was baptized, and named *Don John of Austria*, in remembrance of the natural Brother of *Philip* the second King of *Spain*. Afterward they educated him at *Goa*, whither they brought him at such time as *D. Emanuel de Sousa Continno* was Viceroy; and he was there likewise while *Matheo Albuquerque* succeeded *D. Emanuel* in the same Dignity. The *Portuguez* observing him to be a graceful person, and being, as they thought, sure of his affection, made no difficulty to confer upon him the Office of Grand *Modeliar* of *Candy*, and by this means to set him in the first rank of the whole Kingdom, wherein *D. John of Austria* made such use of his trust, that he gain'd the affection of all the Souldiery, so as that after the decease of the King, the *Cingales* promoted him to succeed in his place.

Fimala declares against the Portuguez

The first thing he did, was to put to death all the *Portuguez* in the Town of *Candy*, and to declare war against the rest. There was yet a Princess, Heir to the Crown, whom the *Portuguez* had brought to *Mannar*, where they baptized her, and named her *D. Katharina*, with design to make use of her when occasion should require, as in the present Conjunction it did. For *Pedro Lopes de Sousa*, Captain General of *Malacca*, conceiving he could raise the Inhabitants of *Candy* in favour of this Princess, enters the Kingdom with a powerful Army, and with him brings along *D. Katharina* with intention to marry her, by which means he would make himself King, having first caus'd her to be acknowledged Heir. He became Master of the capital Town without much difficulty, but that prov'd his ruine. For *D. John*, who, with his *Cingales*, was retir'd to the Woods, did not only annoy him in cutting off all the *Portuguez*, who came out of the Town for forrage or other necessaries of livelihood; but he so cut off all Provisions, that *Lopes*, to maintain his Army, was constrain'd to betake himself to the Field, and leave the Town, to give *D. John* battel. It was fought in the year 1590. upon a Sunday; and notwithstanding the advantage the *Portuguez* had of their Fire-arms, and above forty Elephants arm'd for war; *D. John*, who would now have no other name then *Fimala Derma Suri Ada*, routed and absolutely defeated them. *Lopes* was kill'd upon the place, and *D. Katharina* became prisoner

Gives Battle.

soner to *Fimala*, who afterwards married her, by this means acquiring a right to the Crown, which before he only held by the Sword. i 639.

Four years after this Victory, *D. Jeronimo d' Azenedo*, General of the Conquests of *Zeilon*, having receiv'd Orders from the King of *Spain* for a new attempt on the Kingdom of *Candy*, raises a potent Army, which the Viceroy of *Goa* reinforc'd with all the Cavaliers and *Hidalgos* attendance: he advances to *Ballene* the place where the first Battle was fought, and thence sends defiance to the King of *Candy*.

The second  
Battle  
given.

The *Portuguez* were not more fortunate in this, then they had been in the former battle; for though the *Portuguez* Army receiv'd not a defeat, and *D. Jeronimo* got high honour by his retreat for five dayes together in sight of the Kings Army, that pursued him to the very Gates of *Colombo*; they were notwithstanding so weakned, that from that time the *Portuguez* durst never attempt the Kingdom of *Candy* by force. Nevertheless they cease not to maintain a war by surprizes and incursions one upon another.

For not long before the *Hollanders* arrived in the *Ile* of *Zeilon*, the *Portuguez* were most basely trappan'd by the double intelligence, which one *Jeronimo Dias* kept with them. He was by birth a *Portuguez*, but as the rest of his Nation, who settle amongst the *Indians*, making no difficulty to plant themselves in places where there is no publick exercise of Religion, easily lose that whereof they had only a sleight and superficial knowledge; so this man having renounc'd his Religion, undertook to betray his Country-men, as I am about to tell you. This *Jeronimo*, being prisoner to the King, remain'd at *Candy* till he had contriv'd the means to betray the *Portuguez*. Afterwards he escaped, and returning to *D. Jeronimo d' Azenedo*, told him, that if he thought fit, he would undertake to kill the King of *Candy*. *Azenedo* supposing after the Kings death, 'twould not be hard for him to possess himself of the Kingdom, hearkens to the Proposition, raises to himself an assurance in a Man, who undertakes in cold blood to murder a Sovereign Prince; allows him three Captains, *Christoval Jacomo*, *Albert Primero*, and *Jean Pereira*, with two Souldiers, to assist him in this enterprize, which he made appear very feasible: promising to make him King of *Candy* immediately upon the Kings expiration, and furnishing him with a good sum of money for the purpose, without which, he said, there was nothing to be done. *Dias* would go alone, as well that he might seem to have escaped from the *Portuguez*, as to dispose the King to put these five *Portuguez*, his Complices, into the Fort of *Ballene*; for that he was to perswade the King, that they came likewise to render themselves to him, to serve against the other *Portuguez*: but being come to the King, he discover'd the double dealing he had contriv'd, so as the night following, the King re-inforc'd the Garrison of *Ballene* Fort, and went in person thither, on design to surprize the *Portuguez*, who were ambuscado'd in the Woods, to assault the Fort upon notice of the Kings death.

The treachery of a  
Portuguez  
Renegado.

These five *Portuguez*, Confederates in *Dias's* treason, being arrived at the Fort, were received in; but as they entred were convey'd into private rooms, where they were disarm'd and put into Irons: which could not be carried with so much secrecy, but some of those *Cingales* the *Portuguez* brought along with them discovered it, so as returning with speed they gave notice to the *Portuguez* in the Ambuscade, who otherwise had run the hazard to be cut in pieces through the ill success of the enterprize. *Jeronimo Dias* for his service was rewarded with the dignity of Grand *Modeliar*, which he enjoy'd at the time the *Hollanders* arriv'd in the *Island* of *Zeilon*, where they sped no better then the *Portuguez*. For the King of *Candy*, who in the year 1602. received their Admiral with civility, in the year following, caus'd their Vice-admiral, with fifty of his Men, to be put to death in cold blood; in so much as for that time they were constrained to lay aside all thoughts of settling a trade there. But since they have found opportunity for a firm establishment, by gaining from the *Portuguez* the Fort *de Punto de Gallo*, and fortifying the Port *de Negombo*, where they drive a great trade, much augmented by their taking likewise the Town of *Colombo* from the *Portuguez*, where these last kept commonly a Garrison of eight hundred men.

The *Hollanders* ill  
treated in  
the *Ile* of  
*Zeilon*.

The King of *Candy* is the most puissant and most absolute of all the Kings of *Zeilon*. He delights in the *Portuguez* manner of building, and fortifies his Holds after the modern way. This Kingdom extends it self along that River, on which the City of *Vintane* is situate, where the Kings Gallies and other Vessels have their retreat. It contains many fair and well-built Towns. The Inhabitants are like the *Malabars*, but not so black. They go naked as low as the Navel, but some use Coats or Dublets after the *Portuguez* fashion. In their Ears they hang Pendants, and the greatest part have a *Criss* or *Poniard* by their sides. Women have likewise their Breasts bare, and go very decent in habit, and in their conversation with Men discover much of modesty. They dress their Heads much like the *European* Women, laying their Hair very close on their Head, and tying their

The Kingdom of  
*Candy*.

The Inhabitants.

The Women.

Tresses

¶ 639. Treffes behind. They wear Collars of Gold or Silver, and Rings upon their Hands and Feet, and their Arms and Legs beset with abundance of precious Stones. Their houses are conveniently enough built, and the Women very skilful in Cookery. The *Cingales* addiſt themselves to nothing at all, nor are they fit for war, by reason they are accustomed to so idle a life they can indure no hardship.

Viſtuals  
cheap.

Throughout the *Indies* there is no part so abounds in all sorts of Viſtuals, as this Isle *Zeilon*. Fowl, Fish, Venison, Poultry, Butter, Milk and Honey, are at extraordinary low rates, as well as *Ananas*, *Bannanas*, *Cocos*, *Jacques*, *Mangas*, *Oranges*, *Lemmons*, *Citrons*, and all other sorts of Fruits. They eat of all things in general, even of Pork, and all sort of Cattle, except the Oxe, Cow, or Buffle; Wine they drink not, no more then the *Mahumetans*, who dwell amongst them, and enjoy a full liberty of Religion. These Islanders are of the same Religion as other Pagans in these parts. They bear great reverence to their *Bramans*, who observe a more austere way of living, and eat not of any thing hath had life, by reason that for the whole day they adore the first Beast they meet with at their coming out of doors in a morning. Maids are here married at the age of ten or twelve years: And they burn their dead Corps.

Their Re-  
ligion.

*Fimala Derma Suri Ada* had gotten some tincture of Christian Religion, if at least it be to be found amongst the *Portuguez*; it was soon raz'd out by the compliance he had for the *Cingales*; and after his decease his Successors fell back to Paganism. There are some amongst them, who adore the head of an Elephant, wrought in wood or stone, and say, their intention is to obtain wisdom; for they are of opinion, the Elephants of *Ceilon* are not only more knowing then other Elephants, but further, that they out-go men in judgment. In their houses they have a Basket, wherein they put such things as they design for an offering to their *Pagodes*, to whom they have a particular devotion in their sicknesses, because it is from them alone they look for remedy. They hold, as matter of faith, that the World shall not perish so long as their grand *Mosquey*, which may be seen at a great distance from the Sea, between *Punto de Gallo* and *Monte Calo*, shall be extant. Another particular opinion they have of a Mountain in this Island call'd *Pico d' Adam*, and say it was there that the first Man was fram'd; that the Spring on the top of this Mountain rose from the tears *Eve* shed for *Abel*; and that the Isle of *Ceilon* was part of the terrestrial *Paradise*. To conclude, they are very docile, and willing to acknowledge the errors of their Idolatry; in so much that there were great likelihood of their conversion, if *Christians* would undertake these long Voyages, as much out of a religious zeal, as worldly concerns.

Kings tri-  
butary to  
the Portu-  
guez.

All the other Kings of *Ceilon*, except the King of *Candy*, pay tribute to the *Portuguez*: but 'tis so inconsiderable, that the Princes think it not worth while to take Arms to free themselves from a subjection, which consists but in a bare acknowledgment. For the King of *Matecalo*, who is not the least considerable amongst them, payes annually but fifty Duc-kates.

Mines of  
Gold and  
Silver.

The Island produces Pepper, but their chiefest Commodity is Cinnamon. They find here Mines of Brass and Iron; and certainly there is both Gold and Silver, especially in the Kingdom of *Candy*, but the King will not permit a search to be made for the discovery thereof. Their rich Stones they permit not likewise to be sold to Strangers, which are there found in great abundance; but there is so great plenty thereof, that it is impossible but some may be had under hand; for they are found in the heaps of Gravel, and in the Town of *Candy*; nay, after the Rain hath washed down the Earth of some neighbouring Mountains, the Inhabitants find them in the currents of Water, and though they are oblig'd to bring them all to the King, 'tis impossible that Order should be exactly observed.

The Island likewise yields Timber and Stone for building; the Soyl produces Corn, Oyl and Wine, if any Man will take the pains to plant the Vine, Cotton, several Roots for Dyers, Ginger, *Cardamoms*, *Mirobalans*, *Corcoma*, and divers other Medicinable Drugs, Nutmegs, &c. but particularly so great a quantity of Rice, that the whole Coast of *Caromandel* is furnished from hence. Likewise here is so great a quantity of Cinnamon, that the *Hollanders* buy it for a hundred and twenty eight Livres, forty eight Souls the Quintal or Hundred weight.

The chief Maritime Towns of the Isle of *Ceylon* are scituated at this distance following: that is, from *Punto de Gallo* Westward, *Alican* 9. l. *Verberin* 1 l. *Calutre* 3. l. and *Colombo* 6. l. *Nogombo* 5. l. *le Gilan* 5. l. *Putalon* 10. l. *Mannar* 18. l. Eastward to the Coast of *Matecala*, *Bellingan* 4. l. *Mature* 2. l. *Dundule* 1. l. *Tammadar* 1. l. *Halpilana*, two Leagues and a half. *Attalle* 3. l. *Veleche* 9. l. *Tanfilar* 7. l. *Trincoli*, 12. l. *Matecalo* 5. l. and thence to the River of *Trinquamale* 10. l. To go from *Colombo* to *Candy*;  
the

the way lies through *Tranquero grande*, that is, the great Fort, or the great Rampier, 3. l. *Maluana* 2. l. *Gronabley* 3. l. *Settavecca* 3. l. *Grouenelle* 2. l. *Mumera tuste* 4. l. *Duicly* 3. l. *Matappety* 2. l. *Altonnar* 1. l. *Ganiattany* 1. l. *Ballene* 1. l. *Cady* 1. l. From *Matecalo* to *Candy*, the Road is as follows, *Aldea de Nore* 1. l. *Occatoty* 2. l. *Viador* 2. l. *Neguritti* 5. l. *Niluale* 2. l. *Vegamme* 4. l. *Vintane* 6. l. *Vendro* 5. l. *Candy* 4. l.

The Calm staid our Ship hard by this Isle, for near upon three weeks, which I employ'd in inquiring of our President and certain *Jesuits*, who were aboard our Vessels, into this pleasant part of the *Indies*, which I had never seen, and merits to be known by the Description I shall make from the report of these persons, amongst whom there were some who had spent there the best part of their lives. I will then begin with the place where we were, and faithfully deliver you all I could learn of those Kingdoms and Provinces, which without question are the wealthiest of any in the World.

Towards the Cape of *Comory*, or *Comorin*, where we then were, are likewise those Islands the *Portuguez* call *Maldivas*, or *Maldivar*. They extend along the Coast of *Malabar*, having the Cape upon the North, and taking up about seven score Leagues by Sea, which divides them into such small parcels, that they are esteem'd near upon a thousand. Some are inhabited, others not, by reason they lye so low the Sea often drowns them, as it doth likewise the Skirts of the Continent, near *Cochim*, and *Cranganor*. The *Malabares* say, that heretofore they were joyn'd to the Continent, and were separated by the Sea, which in some places hath left such narrow divisions, that an active man might leap from one side to the other. The Capital City, which consists of four Islands, and gives them the appellation of *Maldives*, or *Naldive*, is a place famous for trading, and the Residence for the King of all the Islands. Except *Cocoas*, which are there in great abundance, they produce little, notwithstanding the Inhabitants by industry make very neat Garments both of Silk and Thread brought from other places; in so much that set aside the *Moguls*, there are not amongst the *Indians* any that go more neatly apparrell'd then they.

As concerning *Coromandel*, the Eastern part of the *Indies* on this side *Ganges* is so called, a Coast divided from the *Malabares* by the Mountain *Balagatta*, extending from South to North, from the Cape of *Comorin*, or rather the point of *Negapatam*, to the River *Nazund*, and the Town of *Masulepatam*, containing all along the Coast, about a hundred Leagues. 'Tis the more commodious, for that it serves for a retreat to all Vessels which are constrain'd to quit the Coast of *Gusuratta* during the Winter season, and it hath many good Havens, and the best Roads of any in all the *Indies*.

The *Portuguez* there possess the Town of *Saint Thomas*, at thirteen degrees, thirty two minutes on this side the Line; and they say, that at the time when *Vasco de Gama* discovered the *Indies*, and seiz'd on *Cochim* and *Cranganor*, the Inhabitants on this Coast, who called themselves *Christians*, crav'd protection of the King of *Portugal*; and that arriving at *Saint Thomas* they found *Christians* who made profession of the *Greek Religion*. For this purpose they tell a Story grounded on a Tradition, which nevertheless is not to be proved out of the Ecclesiastical History. Thus then they say, that *Saint Thomas*, one of our Saviours twelve Apostles, having long preach'd the Gospel in the Kingdom of *Narsingia*, notwithstanding the opposition of the *Bramans*, resolv'd to petition the King that he might build a Chappel for the doing of his Devotions, and that the *Bramans* engag'd the King to deny him the favour. But it happened that a huge piece of Timber was so lodg'd in the mouth of the Haven, belonging to the Town of *Meliapour*, then the Metropolis of the Kingdom, that not only great Vessels, but the smaller Barks, being not able to get in, the Trade of the Town was in a short time quite lost. There was a trial made with a company of Elephants to remove the Tree, but in vain; then the Magicians of those parts were employ'd to try if their Art could do what strength could not effect, but to as little purpose; wherefore the King proclaim'd a considerable reward to him that could clear the Haven, which invited the Saint to offer his service, and this for no other reward, then the mere Timber it self. His proffer to draw it out himself made him at first appear ridiculous, and specially when they saw him tye his Girdle to it, to draw out a weight that many Elephants had not the strength to stir; but he pulling, the Beam followed, as easily as if it had been a little Boat, which when he had laid upon the Land, the King was amaz'd with admiration, and in honour of the Miracle, permitted him to build the Chappel, as he had requested. The *Bramans* seeing their Doctrine disparag'd by this Miracle, and that if Christian Religion began to spread in those parts, there was little hope to support the Pagan; they resolve to free themselves of the Apostle, and cause certain *Panyns* to murder him while he was at his Devotions in his Chappel. Some there are who will have

The Maldives.

The Coast of Coromandel.

The Inhabitants on the Coast of Coromandel are Christians.

A History of Saint Thomas.

the

1639. the Church dedicated to this Saint in that place, to be built by a King of *Narsinga*, and that the door was made of that miraculous beam; but the *Portuguez* say they built it, of which indeed there is most probability.

*Lentscholen* saith, that in these parts there are certain people with one leg bigger than the other, and that they are held to be the Progeny of those that martyred the Apostle.

Saint Thomas the Apostle martyr'd at Edessa.

*Muffeus*, in the eighth Book of his *Indian History*, relates how *John* the second King of *Portugal* made search for the bones of this Saint upon the Coasts of *Coromandel*, which he transported to *Goa*, where he built a fair Church in honour of him: but if credit may be given to *Ruffinus* and *Socrates*, in their *Ecclesiastical History*, the Apostle Saint *Thomas* suffered his Martyrdom at *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia*, whither heretofore they made Pilgrimages to his Sepulchre; yet *Marco Paulo Veneto* says otherwise, though with some contradiction to himself. *Gasper Balbia Venetian Jeweller*, who hath made a very handsome relation of his Travels in the *Indies*, says, That, being at the Town of Saint *Thomas*, in the year 1582. there was a Church then building in the honour of Saint *John Baptist*; and that the building almost finished, they found they wanted Timber to perfect it, when at the same time the Sea cast a Tree ashore of such a bulk, that looking on it as a thing extraordinary, they would needs measure it; and finding it to be a just proportion for the Edifice, the people cryed out a Miracle, wherein they were confirm'd, when sawing it, it yielded just so many Beams as serv'd to finish the Church. He adds further, that the Tree came from some far distant place, because in cutting, it sent forth such a stinking smell, that it infected the whole Country. The Town of Saint *Thomas* is not very great, but the greatest part of the Houses are of Stone, and well built. The Church there hath no Steeple, yet may be seen at a good distance. There live here about six hundred *Portuguez*, or *Mestizes*, besides some *Armenian Merchants*.

The Town of Meliapour.

The *Indians*, *Pagans*, and *Mahumetans*, live in the Town of *Meliapour*, which is seated on a small River two Leagues from Saint *Thomas* Northward; but it is fallen from the pristine glory it had, when it was the Capital Town of the Kingdom of *Narsinga*. The King of *Portugal* hath no Governour at Saint *Thomas*, nor so much as a Magistrate, nor any political Order; by reason whereof divers disorders are daily committed without punishment.

The South and South-west Winds reign here from *April* to *September*, during which time the Road is very good; but all the rest of the year, small Barks are constrain'd to get into the River *Palacatte*, and greater Vessels into the Haven of *Negapatam*. You have five fathom water even within Cannon-shot of the Town; but the Sea is so rough at all times, there is no Landing without danger!

Upon this Coast the *Hollanders* have divers Plantations where they drive a great Trade; but principally at *Potlapouli*, otherwise call'd *Nisapatam*, where they have had their Ware-houses ever since the year 1606. and at *Paleacatte*, where they have built the Fort of *Geldria*.

This Country was heretofore divided into three Kingdoms, that is, *Coromandel*, *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*; but at present 'tis all subject to one Prince, who resides sometimes at *Bisnagar*, sometimes at *Narsinga*.

Orixa:

Masulipatam and Golconda.

Above the Town of *Masulipatam*, lyes the Country, or Kingdom rather, of *Orixa*, reaching from the River of *Masulipatam* to the River of *Guenga*; but the *Hollanders* would have it comprehended under the name of the Coast of *Coromandel*. The chief Towns of the Kingdom are *Masulipatam* and *Golconda*, the one considerable for Commerce, the other for being the Kings Ordinary Residence. The Country yields plenty of Salt, and Diamonds are likewise there found; but all above five Caratts in weight appertain to the King.

Bengala.

Next to *Orixa*, winding towards the North, lyes the Kingdom of *Bengala*, which gives name to the Gulph, by the Ancients called *Sinus Gangeticus*. They drive here a great trade in Rice, Sugar, and Cotton, but chiefly in Silks, which are esteem'd the best in all the *Indies*. The finest Canes we have are brought from *Bengala*, where there likewise grows a sort of Canes which are finer than the Olier, in so much as Vessels are made of them, which being glazed with *Lacque* on the inside, contain liquid matters, as long and as well as a Glass or Silver Bowl. There also grows a certain Herb, having on the top of its stalk, (which is about the compass of a mans thumb) a great button like a tassel: this tassel is spun out, and there are excellent Stuffs made of it. The *Portuguez* call it *Herba de Bengala*, and make of it Hangings, and Coverlets, in which they represent all sorts of Figures.

The people of the Country are all *Pagans*, and, in the manner of their living, exceeding brutish. Theft is here very common, and Adultery, though it be punished with severity by cutting off their Noses who are taken in it; they forbear not nevertheless to pollute themselves with all sort of uncleanness can be committed in that Vice. They bear religious worship to the River of *Ganges*, and hold the water hereof to be so holy, that who wash themselves therein are cleansed from all their sins; and this superstition reaches so far, that the King of *Narsinga* sends to the *Ganges*, for the water he uses for his purifications.

1 6 3 9.  
The Inhabitants.  
Their superstitions.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* joyns upon *Bengala*, upon the East-side, and takes its name from the capital City, where the King hath placed the Seat of his Monarchy. This is a very potent State, and as *Gaspar Balbi* says, (whom I follow in this Relation, because I saw not the Country) the Metropolis is divided into two parts; the one called the old, the other the new Town. The King, with all that relate to the Court, live in the latter, and Merchants and Tradefmen inhabit the other. For the greatest part, the dwelling-houses are built of Canes, but they are joyn'd to Ware-houses that are vaulted to prevent fire. The new Town is four-square, and the Flankers of it so streight, that from any Gate thereof one may discover both corners of the Wall. There are Bastions of Timber, and a large Moat, full of water, where they keep Crocodiles to secure the Town from surprisal. The *Peguans* hold this Creature to have something Divine about it, whence it comes they are so desirous to drink the water, though they fetch it not without danger of being devour'd by the Crocodiles, as it often happens. Notwithstanding, they water their Elephants there; but this is a Beast that strikes terrour in the Crocodiles, and would be too hard for them.

Pegu.

Crocodiles  
in the  
Moat.

The Palace Royal stands in the middle of the City, and hath its peculiar Fortifications, Walls and Moats, whereby it is divided from the Town. The Castle is said to be much more spacious then the City of *Venice*; and that there is no entrance but on the Town-side, by two Ports, and as many Draw-bridges. Within the first Port are the Houses of the *Grandees*, who enter not into the body of the Castle, without exprefs Order from the King. His Guard consisting of a great number of Souldiers, with them called *Bramas*, is kept at the second Port, where they sit, having their Arms hanging before them on the Wall. In this place are the Stables for Elephants, as well such as are kept for the Princes service, as those design'd for War, being about eight hundred in number. The Kings Apartment is exceeding rich, painted Azure, with Flowers of Gold; and when the King gives Audience, he appears in great magnificence. In his hand he holds a Fan, to Fan himself, and on his head he hath a quadruple Crown of Gold, enamell'd white. Near his person stand four Youths, whom he makes use of in his brutalities; and before him all the *Grandees* of the Court, who whensoever they speak to him lift their hands above their head, and bow down to the ground. Being sat, they bring before him his fairest Elephants, and amongst the rest his white one, which is said to be the only one in all the *Indies*, nor ever is there more then one to be seen at Court, which was brought thither after the Victory he gain'd against the King of *Siam*, with whom he had not made War but to gain that Beast, as we shall tell you anon. These Beasts make their reverence to him, and testify a Worship to his Person. If we may give credit to the fore-mentioned *Balbi*, this, next the King of *China*, is the most Potent Prince on Earth. He says, this Prince can bring into the Field fifteen hundred thousand Men, and above eight hundred Elephants, and that his Treasure is sufficient for so mighty an Army, by reason every Person of Quality is oblig'd to raise and maintain so many Men of War at his own proper charges.

The Palace  
Royal.

The Guards

The Kings  
Forces

He relates to this purpose, that, in his time, the King of *Auva*, his Fathers Brother, but Vassal to the King of *Pegu*, denying homage to his Nephew, and to pay such Diamonds and precious Stones as he stood oblig'd to in that consideration; the King of *Pegu*, who was well assured his Uncle held a very private intelligence with some Noble men of his Kingdom, against the security of his State and Person, to shew how mindful he was of his Fathers request on his death-bed, and the recommendation he then made in favour of the King of *Auva*; sent him an Embassadour extraordinary to reduce him to his Duty, and persuade him to come in again to him: but his Uncle, instead of taking the advantage of his Nephews Nobleness, puts the Embassadour to death, and declares War against the King of *Pegu*. But he having raised an Army of three hundred thousand men, before he would march into the Field, purg'd his Court, and put to death those Traytors who had engaged to deliver him into the hands of his Uncle. Assembling then all the Confederates of this Treason, under pretence of calling them to a Council about this War; he caused them to be secured, and they, their Wives and Children, to be burnt alive. Then to free himself from the *Odium* of so horrid an Execution, he sends to the Judge, that he should defer the Execution,

He makes  
war upon  
his Uncle  
King of  
Auva.

A just execution, but too severe.



1639. tion, till he receiv'd express Order under his Signet; but the *Dogad gini*, or Judge, who had other private instructions, proceeded according to them.

That done, the King of *Pegu* appeared in the head of his Army, mounted on an Elephant, covered with trappings of Tissue, having by his side a Sword, that was presented him by *D. Lewis of Atayda*, Viceroy of *Goa*, resolving to march in few dayes against his Uncle, but he was hindred by the small Pox, which he had in extremity. As soon as he was recovered, he causes the Army to advance to the very Frontiers of *Auva*, where he accepts a Challenge sent him by his Uncle, that they two might decide the difference by a single Combat; and was so fortunate, as to kill his Adversary, in view of both Armies. This single Victory was of greater advantage, then a defeat of the Enemies whole Army could have brought him: for the whole Kingdom of *Auva* delivered it self up, at mercy: The Queen, who was his Sister, fell likewise into his hands, and was prisoner during life, though kept in a Princely Palace, and honoured and attended as a Queen.

A single  
Combat be-  
twixt two  
Kings.

The King of *Pegu*, in acknowledgment of the service his Elephant had done him in the Combate, where he fell dead under his Master, caused certain *Pagodes* to be made of his Tooth, and had them plac'd amongst the other Idols kept in a *Varella*, or Mosque, which is within the Castle. Amongst these Idols there is the Figure of a Man, done to the life, in massy Gold, having on the Head a Crown enchas'd with precious Stones of divers kinds, on the Forehead a Ruby as big as a Plum, and on each side the Head Pendants as rich as can be imagined, about the Waste a Scarf, and over the right Shoulder, and under the left Arm, a Chain of Diamonds and other Stones inestimable. In the same Chappel are likewise three Statues of Silver, higher by two foot then the first; with Crowns set with Gems, and a fourth more massive and rich then all the rest, and besides these a Figure made of *Ganza*, which is a mixt metal of Copper and Brass, valued at as high a rate as the other four. The Kings Father, who lived in the year 1578. caused these Statues to be made in memory of that famous Victory he obtain'd over the King of *Siam*, in the War he made against him, for the white Elephant we spoke of.

The Idols.

The Forrests of *Pegu* have greater store of Elephants then all the *Indies* besides, and they are tam'd with very little trouble, in ten or twelve dayes after they are taken by the means of Females, who intice them out of the Woods, and make them follow into the very Stables, where there are Dens that hold but one of these Beasts only, where they shut them close in as soon as they are entred.

The Pegu-  
ans Arms.

The *Peguans* have Fire-arms, but ordinarily they use half Pikes made of Canes, short and broad Swords, and long and narrow Bucklers made of boyl'd Leather doubled, and laid over with a certain black Gum call'd *Achiran*; their *Salades* or Helmets are made of the same stuff, and like ours in fashion.

They are  
Pagans.

Adore the  
Devil.

They are generally *Pagans*, except some who contracting alliance with the *Portuguez*, have embrac'd their Religion. These *Pagans* believe that God, who hath under him many other Gods, is the Author of all good which arrives to Mankind; but the disposing of all evil he leaves to the Devil, to whom these wretches bear more veneration then they do to God; because the one will do them no hurt; and they must please the other, that he may not.

Their  
Feasts.

They do their Devotions ordinarily on the Munday, and have besides, five principal Feasts which they call *Sapan*. The first, which they call *Sapan Giacchi*, is chiefly celebrated by a Pilgrimage, made by the King and Queen, twelve Leagues out of Town, where they appear in triumphal Chariots, so set with precious Stones, that, without Hyperbole, it may be said they carry the worth of a Kingdom about them. They call the second, *Sapan Carena*, observ'd in honour of the Statue kept in the grand *Varelle* of the Castle, in honour of which the Noblemen of the Court erect Pyramides of Canes, which they cover with several Stuffs artificially wrought of divers fashions, then have them put into Chariots drawn by above three hundred persons to the Kings view, that he may judge of their inventions. All the people come likewise, and bring their Offerings to him. The *Sapan Giaimo Segienon*, they celebrate also in honour of some of these Statues, where the King and Queen are both present in person; and the fourth Feast, which they call *Sapan Daiche*, is particularly celebrated in the old Town; at which the King and Queen cast Rose-water at one another. All the Grandees have likewise a pot of Rose-water in their hands, wherewith they so water themselves, that their bodies are as 'twere bath'd all over, nor can any one pass the Streets that day, without hazard of being wash'd with water thrown from the windows. At the fifth Feast, called *Sapan Donon*, the King and Queen go by water to the Town of *Meccao*, attended by above a hundred Boats, all which row for the fastest, to gain a Prize allow'd by the King.

The

The King dying, they prepare two Boats, which they cover with one gilt Covering, and in the middle of these Boats they place a Table, whereon they lay the dead Corps; and underneath the Table they make a fire of the Wood of *Sandale*, *Beniouin*, *Storax*, and other sweet-scented Woods and Drugs, then turn the Barks down the Stream, certain *Talapoi* or Priests mean while singing and rejoicing till the flesh be intirely consum'd. These Ashes they temper with Milk, so making a PASTE, which they carry to the mouth of the River, where they cast it into the Sea. But the Bones they bear to another place, and bury them near a Chappel, where they build another in honour of the deceased.

1639  
How the  
Kings Corps  
are burnt.

Their *Talapoi* carry a Bottle made of an empty Gourd at their girdle, and live by Alms, as our Mendicant Friars. They are in great esteem amongst them, and they very well preserve their credit by their exemplary life. On Munday morning they go about with their Tin-basins, to awake the people and invite them to a Sermon. They treat not at all of points of Doctrine, but chiefly insist upon Morality, exhorting the Congregation to abstain from Murther, Theft, Fornication and Adultery, and to do to others as they would be done by. For this reason they are of opinion, that Men are sooner saved by good Works and innocency of Life, then by Faith. They have no Aversion for those that forsake their Religion to become *Christians*, so their Life be correspondent to the Profession they make.

The Church-  
man,

• They exclaim lowdly against the Offerings the *Peguans* make to the Devil, particularly when they perform any Vow they made in their sickness, or in any other unfortunate Accident, and endeavour to abolish this wicked custom, which is grown so inveterate, that hitherto they have lost their labour. These people ordinarily live in Woods, and to prevent the danger of wild Beasts, whereof these parts are full, they have their Couches hanging in the Air betwixt boughs of Trees. They eat but once a day, and are habited in red Vestures that reach to their heels, bare-footed, and over their Shoulders a short Coat or Mantle that comes to their hams. They shave their heads, nay cannot endure hair upon any part of their body; and to guard them from the Sun-beams they wear a Hat. Great honours are done to them after their death, and after their Corps hath been attended certain dayes, they are burnt with Sandale-wood, they cast the Ashes into the River, and interr the Bones near the place they liv'd in.

*Pegu* yields no Corn at all, but in recompence, they have more Rice then they can spend; in so much that they can afford some to their Neighbours. They have a custom to make a Drug of certain little Fishes, which they pound in a Mortar, and being so brought to a PASTE, they lay it in the Sun to putrifie, till it be quite corrupted, and grows moist, and then they use it in their Sauces, instead of Oyl or Butter, making a dainty of that, which it were not possible for us to endure the smell of.

A strange  
Sauce.

*Sodomy* was heretofore so common in those parts, that to extirpate this Vice, which had near destroy'd the whole Species, one of the Queens of *Pegu* ordain'd by Edict; that every Man should carry in his Yard a little Bell, which would make it swell in such sort, that he should not be able to do Nature any violence. And to the end the Women should not be frustrated of their due, their Virginity was to be taken away, while they were yet very young, by means of a Composition, of contrary operation to that used by common Women to heighten the pleasures of their Gallants. These little Bells are put in betwixt the skin and the flesh: and to effect the operation, they cast them into a sleep, with a certain Drink, to make them insensible of the pain they are put to by the Incision, whereof notwithstanding they are cur'd in few dayes. For their greater aversion from *Sodomy*, they paint the Boyes at seven or eight years of age with a certain blew, which extending with the skin as it grows, changes into another colour, and makes them look most horribly. The Women, on the contrary, do all they can to appear lovely, and attract the Men, covering their privy parts only with a thin piece of Linnen, which fits not so close, but the least wind shews all they have.

Other pecu-  
liar Cu-  
stoms.

All of them in general make their Teeth black, and Men, when they ride on horseback, fill their Mouths with something that puffs out their Cheeks. They who marry buy their Wives of their Parents; and when they are cloy'd send them home again, but the money belongs to the Wife, who on her side is obliged to restitution, if she part with her Husband without cause.

The King is Heir to all that dye without Children, and they who have Children can leave them but two thirds of their Estate, the rest belongs to the King.

The best Commodities to be brought to *Pegu*, and which may be sold to greatest profit, are Stuffs and Linnen-clothes, from *Saint Thomas*, *Musulipatam* and *Bengala*; Pepper, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Opium and Sandale-wood, &c. by reason they have no other Spices

The third  
part of all  
real Estates  
falls to the  
King.  
Merchan-  
dizes of  
then *Pegu*.

1639. then Ginger. At *Pegu* they take in no other Merchandizes then Silver and Rice, which they transport to *Malacca*. In bargaining they make no words at all, they do no more but give their Hand cover'd with a Handkerchief, and in grasping or moving their Fingers they make their meaning known. For borrowing of money they stick not to pawn their Wives and Children; but if the Creditour enjoys them carnally during that time, he is then paid, and the Debtour acquitted.

*Siam*. *Siam*, one of the most considerable Kingdoms of the *Indies*, lying at eighteen degrees on this side the Line, hath on the North, the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Auva*; on the West, the Gulf of *Bengala*, from the Haven of *Martauan* to the Town of *Tavaga*; towards the East, *Patana*, whence the Coast runs first Northwards to thirteen degrees and a half, comprehending in this space, the Gulf of *Siam*: And lastly, Southward, to twelve degrees, lying more at a distance from the Sea; it joyns Eastward on the Desarts of *Cambodia*, and the Kingdoms of *Fangoma*, *Tangou* and *Lansiangb*, to eighteen degrees towards the forementioned Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Auva*, making as it were a semi-circle, containing near upon four hundred and fifty Leagues. The Country in some parts is rough and mountainous, in other parts covered with Woods, and to the Seawards 'tis low and marshy, and generally flat, good and fertile, yielding in abundance all necessaries for livelihood; and having on the Gulfs divers Isles, Rivers, Bayes, Harbours and Roads, commodious for the transportation of such things as they themselves can spare.

*Menam a River*. The River called *Menam*, that is, Mother of the waters, is one of the greatest *India* hath. The breadth of it is not great, but its length such, that hitherto no man hath discovered the head of it. It sends its Current from North to South, passing through the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Auva*; and at last, running through *Siam*, by three Streams it falls into the Gulf of *Siam*. One quality it hath common with the *Nile* and *Ganges*, that it yearly overflows the adjacent Country, for the space of five months together, destroying in that time all Worms and Insects, and leaving, when it retires, a slime or moist soil proper for the increase of Rice. That Channel of this River which is most commodious for Barks or Vessels, is that, which lies most Eastwards, at thirteen degrees and a half elevation, but what makes it almost useles, is, that there lies a Shelf a League in length, or better, at the mouth of the River, which at low-water holds not above five or six foot water.

*Overflows as Nile doth*. At high-water it holds fifteen or sixteen foot, and in *September*, *October* and *November*, seventeen or eighteen foot. Vessels of greater burthen ordinarily stay in the Road two Leagues from the Shelf, where having at no time less than five or six fathom water they ride secure. They who venture to come over the Shelf with the Tide, may go up along the River to the City of *Banckock*, six Leagues from the Sea, and thence may pass by boat in five or six dayes, as high as the City of *India*, twenty four Leagues within the Land, except in the months before mentioned, during which season the River is innavigable.

*Siam very populous*. The Provinces of this vast Kingdom are all very populous, though not equally; for such as have the Commodity of Rivers and Havens, far exceed those that lye more remote. It would be very difficult to reckon all the Towns of this great Dominion: wherefore we will here give only an account of the principal and most considerable, either for greatness, or as the most considerable of the several Provinces. The chief of the Kingdom is *India*, by some called *Ody*; then *Camboya*, *Campaa*, *Sincapura*, *Picelouck*, *Surkelouck*, *Capheng*, *Soucthay*, *Kephinpet*, *Conseyman*, *Pytsyay*, *Pitsedi*, *Lidure*, *Tenou*, *Mormelon*, *Martenoy*, *Lygor*, *Bordelong*, *Tanasserim*, where the *Portuguez* drive a good Trade, *Banckock*, *Pipry*, *Mergy*, &c. Besides which, there are many more, which rather deserve a place in a Map, than in the Relation of a particular Mans Travels.

*India*. The City of *India*, the ordinary Residence of the Court, is seated on the River *Menam*, which makes an Island entirely taken up by that City, having on the River-side a strong sufficient wall, for about two Leagues in compass, and the Suburbs on both sides the River, as well built and adorn'd with Temples and Palaces as the Town it self. Here are divers very fair Streets, with Channels regularly cut; but withall there are some which are neither large nor fair, though the River crosses the Town in so many places, that there is scarce a house but may be gone to by boat.

*Its houses*. The Houses here, as generally all over the *Indies*, are but of ordinary building, and for the most part covered with Tiles. There are within the Town above three hundred fair *Mosqueys*, or Chappels, with gilt Steeples, or Pyramides, which at a distance yield a glorious prospect, with abundance of *Pagodas* of all sorts of Metals. The Palace, which is as it were a City of it self within the other, hath its Towers and Pyramides gilt, so as the City

of *India* may be said to be as beautiful, as large, and as populous as any City in *India*; nevertheless, I will not affirm what *Fernando Mendez Pinto* writes, that it contains within its Circuit four hundred thousand Families, whereof three quarters are *Siamazes*: but thus much I can add, that the City hath this advantage, that it is impregnable; for being of it self strong enough to indure any Siege for many moneths; it hath an infallible relief, which never fails at six moneths end, by reason that the River overflowing, no Line can withstand it, nor no Camp can be so strong but must dislodge.

The King of *Siam* that now reigns, and who amongst his other Titles, takes that of *Pre-can Salcu*, that is, *Sacred Member of God*, holds the Crown from his Ancestors, who have possessed it for many Ages; and next to the *Mogul*, this Prince can reckon more Kings of his Family, than any Prince of the *Indies*. The King of Siam of a very ancient Family.

He is absolute Monarch in his Dominions, solely disposing, with an Independent Authority, of all Affairs of his Kingdom. He makes War and Peace, imposes Taxes on his Subjects, creates Magistrates, sets value on Money, and makes Laws and Statutes, without the consent or advice either of States or Lords: He allows them to consider of such Affairs as come to their knowledge, and to offer him their Advice by way of Remonstrance; but he reserves to himself the Power to approve, or reject, what he pleases. Is absolute.

These Noble men are called *Mandorins*; and are there as the Privy Council, a quality the King bestows on whom he pleases, as he doth of all other Honours in the Kingdom, without regard either to birth or merit; because his Subjects are his Slaves, and the King is Master of all they possess, even their very lives, whereof he hath power to dispose to his service and advantage. 'Tis true that in this, as in deposing the *Mandorins* from their Dignities, and reducing them to the rank of their fellow Subjects, he observes some appearance of Equity, by following in some measure the Laws of the Kingdom, but being above the Law, he explicates and executes it as he pleases.

The Prince is exceeding magnificent in his Apparel and Train, but his State appears in nothing more than his manner of living. For the people, who seldom see him, have a peculiar Veneration for his Person, nor do the *Grandees* and Officers scarce ever come into his presence. When he gives Audience, he sits most gloriously habited on a Throne of Gold, with a Crown on his head, and at his feet the Officers and Gentlemen of the Household on their knees; and not far from him a Guard of three hundred Souldiers. No one speaks to him but on the knee, and they who come for audience present themselves in this sort, their hands being lifted above their head, and making to him ever and anon most low reverences: The continual inclinations that are made him, and the Titles given him, must likewise be accompanied with obliedging speeches, and attributions beyond what either greatness or goodness can deserve. His manner of life.

His Answers are receiv'd as Oracles, and his Orders executed without delay or dispute. He hath in every Province of his Kingdom his Palaces and Gardens: when he removes his Household, he hath with him a number of Elephants loaden with Tents, to be pitched when he comes to places fit to rest in.

He hath but one Wife, to whom they give the Title of Queen; but he hath an infinite number of Concubines, which are chosen for him out of the fairest Virgins of the Kingdom. He feeds very high, but drinks only Water, because the Laws both Civil and Ecclesiastical prohibit the use of Wine to Persons of Quality; when he pleases to recreate himself upon the River, he goes in a splendid gilt Barge under a Canopy of Brocade, attended by some of his Domesticks, and a Guard of three or four hundred, in seven or eight other Barges, which have each of them fourscore or a hundred Slaves to row. The Noblemen who follow, and are sometimes to the number of a thousand or twelve hundred, have each their several Barge. Hath but one Wife.

The like is done when the King goes from his Palace into the City; Then he sits in a Chair of Gold, born on the shoulders of ten or twelve Waiters, having marching before him many Elephants and Horses richly harnessed, in this sort marching with a stately and grave pace, while the people prostrate themselves to him, and render him the same honours they might do to God himself.

He appears particularly in his greatest Magnificence on a certain day in *October*, designed for this Ceremony. On this day, he appears both in the City, and upon the River, to make a procession to one of his chiefest *Mosques*, whither he goes to sacrifice, and to do his Devotions for the prosperity of the State. In the head of this procession march about two hundred Elephants, each of them carrying three arm'd Men: then comes the Musick, consisting of Hoboyes, Tabours, and Cimbals: next come about a thousand Men compleatly arm'd, divided into several Companies that have their Colours and Banners. Next to these A magnificent Procession.

1639. these follow many Noble men on horseback, and amongst them some with Crowns of Gold upon their Heads, with a Train of fourscore or a hundred persons on foot. Betwixt these Noble men and the Life-guard, march two hundred Souldiers, *Japoneses*, all very well cloath'd, and go immediately before the Horses and Elephants, which are for the Kings particular use, their harness made with Buckles and Studs of Gold, set with Diamonds and other precious Stones. The Servants, who bear the Fruits and other things for the Sacrifice, march before certain Grandees of the Kingdom, whereof one bears the Kings Standard, the other the Scepter of Justice. These walk on foot immediately before the King, who sits, mounted on an Elephant, in a Chair of Gold. The Prince his Son, or some other Prince of the Bloud, follows next after him, and then comes the Queen and the Kings other Women on Elephants, but not to be seen, as being in certain wooden Closets gilt. The rest of the Household, and six hundred of the Guard, come in the Rear, which by this means consists of fifteen or sixteen thousand persons.

Procession  
upon the  
River.

As to their Procession upon the River, they observe the order following. First, in the head of this Fleet march about two hundred Noble men, each in his several Barge, where they sit in a gilt Cabin, and each Barge row'd by three or fourscore Slaves. Then follow four Barges assign'd for the Musick, and next follow about fifty Barks of State, each having fourscore, or fourscore and ten Rowers; and after these come ten other gilt Barges, in one of which the King is seated in a Throne of Gold, attended by divers Noble men, all upon their knees before him, and amongst them, one of the chiefest *Mandorins*, who bears his Standard. The Prince follows after him in another Barge, and after him comes the Queen, and the Concubines; And lastly, in a great number of other Barges, the household Servants and the Guards, so as that this Procession consists of twenty five or thirty thousand persons, who come either to see the magnificence of the Ceremony, or to adore their Prince.

The Revenue.

Since the thirds of all real Estates fall to the King, we may well suppose his Revenue to be very great; but this advantage comes not near the profits accruing to him by the Commerce, which by Factors he holds with Strangers for his Rice, Copper, Lead, and Salt-peter. He hath in his Country good store of Gold; and the Customs he hath of all Merchandizes, both coming in and going out, bring considerable sums, besides the Presents which Governours of Provinces are obliged to make him every year. A great profit likewise he raises by Commerce with ready Money into *China*, and along the Coast of *Coromandel*, which yields him yearly two thousand *Cattys* of Silver advantage. He hath throughout his Kingdom abundance of Officers for managing of his Revenue, and receiving his Moneys, which as *Mendez Pinto* says, amounts annually to twelve Millions of Duccats; but principally in the City of *India*, whither they repair from all other parts, once a year, to make their accounts. The greatest charge the King is at, next his Household, is in building places and *Mosques*, rewarding Services, and maintaining his Guards, the rest comes into the Treasury, which by this means swells almost to infinity.

His Ex-  
pences.

Most Cities have their particular Jurisdictions, and Judges for Administration of Justice, to take an account whereof there is a Council appointed in the City of *India*, consisting of a President, and twelve Councillors, who give a definitive Sentence, and decide all differences brought before them by way of appeal: 'tis nevertheless allowed them sometimes to prevent these Sentences by a Review before the Privy Council; but this happens not frequently, by reason, the Charges are so great, very few will undertake it. They plead by Councillors and Attorneys, both by word and writing, but in presence of both parties who are to enter a Summary of the Plea in the Records Register. But besides Counsellors and Attorneys, you have here the Pettifogger, who is inseparable; so as Suits sometimes last whole Ages here as well as in other places.

In Criminal matters, they have an extraordinary and summary way, but much after the same form and manner used in *France*.

First, They inform, then imprison, then examine; the Parties are brought face to face; and where evidence falls short, they are put to the Rack, upon pregnant presumptions, The Steward records the whole, and makes report to the Judges, who upon the criminal Confession, or Deposition of Witnesses, give Judgment, and cause the Sentence to be executed immediately, without appeal, save that they never put any to death without the Kings express Order, in whose power it lyes to confirm the Sentence, or pardon the Party, as he pleaseth.

Their pu-  
nishments.

Their punishments are severe, rather cruel: The slightest Crime is punished with pecuniary Fines, Banishment, or Transportation: For Theft they suffer amputation of Hands or Feet, or are condemned to perpetual slavery. The ordinary punishments of these Countries



Countries are unknown there; but condemned persons are cast alive into boiling Oyl, according to the atrocity of the Crime, but always with Confiscation of Goods for the benefit of the King, and the Judges.

In want of sufficient Testimony, they make use of certain extraordinary ways for Conviction, or Justification of the Criminal, which they do by consent of all parties, with the Judges permission, who allows them to maintain what they say, by Water, by Fire, or by boiling Oyl. When they submit to the Tryal of Water, the Accuser, and the accused party are both let down along a great Pole, which is planted in the River, and he that staves longest under water gains the day; as he that patiently holds his Hand longest in boiling Oyl. Others, who chuse the tryal of Fire, are to go five or six steps, very slowly, in a great Fire, and that betwixt two Men, who lean as hard as they can upon their shoulders. But the way they hold most infallible for their justification, is, to swallow a Pill of Rice, over which their Priests have pronounced some words of malediction, which he that swallows without spitting is so clearly justified, that his friends attend him in triumph to his habitation.

The Kings Armies consist chiefly of his Subjects; for though besides five or six hundred *Japoneses*, who bear the reputation of Valour throughout the *Indies*; he hires sometimes both *Rasbontes* and *Malayes*; the number is notwithstanding so small, that 'tis inconsiderable. The King now reigning had taken so great an aversion for the *Japoneses*, on suspicion they had a design upon his person, that he put some to death, and expell'd the rest. Yet since that he hath given way for their return to their ancient trust; but, as I said, they exceed not the number of five or six hundred. His Subjects are obliged to go to the Wars at their own charges; so that according as occasion requires, he calls out the hundredth, the fiftieth, the twentieth, the tenth, and sometimes the fifth man; besides those, the Noble men, at their own charges, bring along with them a sufficient Guard of their persons: By this means he raises at a small charge a most puissant Army, wherein there shall be sometimes three or four thousand Elephants, though he seldom raise an Army of above fifty or threescore thousand men.

His Infantry are well enough disciplined, but very ill armed; only Bows and Arrows, Swords, Pikes and Bucklers, without Fire-arms. Nor are their Horse better appointed, as being but poorly mounted; so as his chiefest strength consists in his Elephants, which are train'd to the work, and carry each three arm'd men; but many which are brought out with the Army are employed about the Baggage. Great Artillery they have, but manage them ignorantly. Their Naval Forces are in as ill condition as their Land; consisting in a multitude of Frigots and Gallies, well furnished with Artillery, but their Souldiers and Sea-men are inexpert. There is an infinite number of Barks for service against the Enemy upon the River, as advantagious to them as at Sea, by reason his Neighbours are rather worse provided then he; but all his Forces joyned together were not sufficient to oppose a *Spanish*, *English*, or *Holland* Fleet; yet this Princes Predecessors have often had great Victories over their Enemies, while Martial Princes have had the Conduct of their Armies.

The Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam* have at all times pretended to a sole Monarchy over all the Kingdoms in these parts, and without dispute *Pegu* had something the better, but the continual War they have held, as well for this as other differences, hath so wasted the Frontiers of both these Kingdoms, that the Armies are not able to subsist there any longer, and so necessity forced them to conclude a Peace; which since they break not, but by incursions of some flying Army of twenty or thirty thousand, during the Summer Season. The last War the King of *Siam* made upon the Kings of *Jangoma* and *Langsgaugh* were purely out of ambition for the Sovereignty they pretended to over those Kingdoms. 'Tis not long likewise since the King of *Cambrodia*, a Tributary to the King of *Siam*, revolted; whereupon *Siam* enters his Territories with a potent Army, but was opposed so vigorously, that he was forced to retire. The Kingdom after this enjoyed a long peace, till the deceased King having caused his Brother to be murdered to establish his Son upon the Throne, one of the Princes of the Blood took occasion to usurp the Crown, as I shall immediately tell you.

This Usurper made shew as if he would espouse the interests of the State against the Kings of *Pegu* and *Anva*, and especially against the King of *Cambrodia*, though he would not enter into open Hostility with them, because he might have enough to do to stand arm'd against the designs the right Heirs might have upon his person.

He continued likewise the same friendship for the *Hollanders* his Predecessour had testified to them, since he took their part against *Fernando de Silva*, Governour of the *Manilles*. This *Portuguez* taking the confidence to set upon a *Holland* Frigot upon the River of *Me-*

1639. *nam*, in the year 1624. the King seiz'd upon his Vessel, and forced *Fernando* to restore the Frigot. Since which time the *Siameses* have been continually vext by the *Portuguez* in their Traffick with *China*, though the *Hollanders* assist them effectually against their Enemies, and declare highly for them; as they lately likewise assisted the King of *Siam* with six Ships, to chastise the Rebels of *Patany*.

Elephant hunting.

For certain, the King of *Siam* keeps more Elephants than any other Prince of *India*, and herein consists his chiefest Forces. For though the *Indians* affect this Beast, of what part so ever he is, yet have they a particular esteem for those of *Siam*, for their make, their strength, and, as they call it, for their apprehension. They take them here as they do in *Pegu*, bringing into the Forrest fifteen or twenty tame Females, which being, as it were, Decoyes, suffer themselves to be led up and down, till some of the wild Elephants herd with them, and so are by little and little betrai'd into a large Court well wall'd about, to which you enter by a double walk of Trees, which as well as the Court is shut up with strong Rails: As soon as the Elephants are in, then are the Females let out one by one at another Gate, leaving the wild by themselves. Within this Court are two four-square Partitions, divided with Pallizadoes like Cages, the one in the middle, the other at the side of the wall. The posts whereof they are made, are set at such distance, that men may with ease pass in and out to vex and provoke the Beasts; but they must make a swift retreat within their Appartment, when this formidable Foe pursues them. This is the most acceptable divertisement can be presented to the King, who with the Nobility of his Court is ever present at this hunting. After the Elephants are by this kind of hunting sufficiently tired, they drive them into another close Pen no bigger then their bodies, made of strong beams, where they tye them by the legs to three or four tame Elephants; whereupon hunger and acquaintance with the others, in three or four dayes bring them to live as they do. Sometimes they hunt them in the Forrest, and open Champion, with tame Elephants, till at last they fasten them by the legs together, and so by force drive them away, but this not without conflict and danger.

A white Elephant.

Sometimes in the Kingdom of *Siam* they meet with white Elephants. All over *India* they have a veneration for this Creature: but the *Siameses*, and the people of those parts, say, they are the Kings of the Elephants; in so much as the King of *Siam*, when he meets with one, causes him to be served in Vessels of Gold, to walk under a Canopy, and allows him a Princely train.

The occasion of the war between the Kings of Pegu and Siam.

In the year 1568. the King of *Pegu*, understanding that the King of *Siam* had two white Elephants, sent a solemn Embassy to request he might buy one of them, and that he would set a price upon him; which the King of *Siam* refusing, the King of *Pegu* resolves to fetch him with a powerful Army. He found such slender resistance in *Siam*, that the King seeing his Kingdom and chief City in the hands of his Enemies, took poyson, whereof he dyed, though that Conquest cost the King of *Pegu* the lives of five hundred thousand men.

Raja Hapi King of Siam.

*Raja Hapi*, King of *Siam*, who lived about the year 1616. acknowledged at that time the Sovereignty of the King of *Pegu*, but this was only till he could find opportunity to free himself from this subjection, as he did some few years after. For entering the Kingdom of *Pegu* with a powerful Army, he laid siege to the City of *Aracam*; resolved not to move thence till he had taken it. In effect he rais'd not the Siege, but not being able to force the City, and unwilling to break his Oath, he built a House near it, where he dyed. This Prince was so famous for his cruelty, that 'tis reported of him, that being sick, and hearing two of his Concubines laugh in an anti-chamber, he commanded they should be immediately cut to pieces. He had a Favourite, called *Ochi Chronwi*, whose ambition swell'd to that height, that he brought four or five hundred *Japoneses* into the Kingdom, cloath'd like Merchants, to be employed to murder the King, and settle him upon the Throne. This design took no effect during the Kings life, but he being dead, *Ochi Chronwi* seiz'd on the Crown, and caused himself to be proclaimed King. The Son of *Raja Hapi* had friends sufficient to cast out this Usurper, but he was not fortunate enough to keep the Crown in his possession, for he was likewise slain, and left it to his younger Brother alive at this day. 'Tis not long since the King of *Siam* had the satisfaction to have two young white Elephants together, but they both dyed in a short time.

The *Indians* do believe that a white Elephant hath something in it of divine, and say, they respect it not only for the colour, but they observe in him that he looks to be treated as a Prince, and that he is troubled, when other Elephants render not him the honour due to him.

The King a Pagan.

The King of *Siam* is a Pagan, nor do his Subjects know any other Religion. They have divers *Mosquees*, Monasteries and Chappels, where their Ecclesiasticks retire and assemble

semble to do their Devotions. They are discerned from other buildings by the gilt Towers and Pyramides. There are infinite *Pagodés* of Gold, Silver, Stone, Timber, and other materials, of all sizes; some of twenty, some thirty, forty, fifty foot, and amongst the rest one which sits, which if it stood, would be sixscore foot in height.

Their ecclesiasticks are very exemplary in their life, having amongst them a kind of *Hierarchy*, under the direction of the High-Priest of the Grand *Mosquey* of the City of *India*, to whom all the rest yield obedience. In matters of Religion his Authority is great, but in Temporals he acknowledges the King, and yields him the same respect as his other Subjects do. In the City of *India*, there are above thirty thousand of these Ecclesiasticks, who are easily known by their habit, for they all wear Garments of a yellow Linnen-cloath, and have their Crowns shav'd. Amongst them they chuse the most learn'd and accomplish'd for Priests, and to take charge of the *Mosqueys*. These are as Parsons amongst them, who on Festival dayes preach to the people, and sacrifice to their Idols. They are prohibited the company of Women on pain of being burnt alive: but their Vows are not so indispensable, but such as have not the gift of Continency are allowed to change their profession; every *Mosquey* hath a Convent belonging to it, for entertainment of Priests design'd for the service, which is regularly said, morning and evening. They live partly on the Revenue of the *Mosqueys*, and partly on Gratuities given them by the King and Nobility, in the way of Almes, but they have their chiefest livelihood at the peoples Charge, by begging every day through the City, like our Friars Mendicants. They have likewise Religious Women and *Beguins*, who are aged, devout Women, who inhabit near the *Mosqueys*, that they may be present at all the Church-Services; but these make no Vow, nor are obliged to any particular rule of Discipline.

They believe there is one God, who created the Universe, and hath under him divers other Gods, by whom he governs the World. They believe the Soul is immortal, and that at its departure out of the Body, it goes either to enjoy beatitude, or into eternal torments, having first passed through other Bodies. This is the ground of their Religion, which, they say, they have received from time immemorable by Tradition of Saints, whom they have exalted to Deities, and now do part of their Devotions to them. They hold likewise, that good works will save them, and in particular their Charity, which they direct not to men alone, but to Beasts likewise. And hence it is, that on Festival dayes, the people bring Birds and Fish hard by the *Mosqueys*, which they buy on purpose to set them at liberty, because with the *Benjans* they believe a *Metempsychosis*, or transmigration of Souls.

In their Ceremonies they use abundance of lights, which they set up before their *Pagodés*, in time of Service. They likewise Incense them, and adorn them with Flowers and precious Stones. They have no certain day in the week design'd for their Devotions, but they have some in particular every quarter of the Moon, and observe moreover a sort of Lent for three months, during which they abstain from several sorts of Meat.

They pray for the dead, and bury them with many Ceremonies. They wash, shave, and perfume the Corps in the presence of the Ecclesiasticks; then they are brought near the *Mosqueys*, where the Corps is burnt, and the Ashes buried in the same place, under a rich Tomb or stately Pyramide, according to the degree and abilities of the deceased. The nearest Relations shave themselves, give Alms, procure the Priests to say Prayers, and attend the body with Musick, Theatrical Representations, and Fire-works, so as these Obsequies put them to great charges.

They never dispute with any of a contrary Religion, but believe, that by living well they may be saved in any Religion: though they are so fixt to their own, that there is no hope of ever introducing another. The *Portuguez* endeavoured to catechise some, but with as little effect as the *Mahumetans*, who would have brought in the *Alcoran*.

The inferiour people here invoke the Devil, contrary to the doctrine of their Ecclesiasticks, who incessantly preach against this abomination; but hitherto they cannot pluck up this rooted wickedness, which they sucked in with their first Milk.

The *Siameses* are comely, and well proportioned, but ill Souldiers, though cruel and insolent enough after Victory. They are rather black then brown, ingenious in Commerce, but they are cautious, diffident, dissemblers, unconstant, false, and lyars.

The Men are lazy, and care for no employment which requires labour, such they leave to their Women and Slaves, leaving affairs and husbandring of land to their charges, while they walk the Streets, or make their addresses at Court. They cover themselves with a painted Cloath from the Navel to the Knees. Men wear short Shirts with sleeves hanging to their Elbows, and Women hide their Breasts with a linnen Cloath, which is fastned about their Neck. All observe one fashion in Clothes, so as Persons of Quality are not

1639.

A Hierarchy.

Vow Chastity, but may quit the Priesthood.

Beguins.

Their belief

Lights in the Mosqueys.

Prayers for the dead.

The Siameses invoke the Devil. Are well shap'd.

Their qualities

Their habit.



1639. to be distinguished from others, but by their Train, which consists of about five and twenty or thirty Slaves.

*Their houses.* Their Houses are made of Timber or Canes, of a fashion peculiar to the Country, and covered with *Coco* leaves, they are raised three or four foot from the ground, and in every partition have several windows, which is very commodious. They have no other moveables then what are necessary for the Chamber and Kitchin, and their diet is Rice, Fish and Pulse, and they drink nothing but Water, but at Feasts they make better cheer, and are willing to be invited to be drunk with *Arac* or Strong-water.

*Their marriages.* Ecclesiasticks meddle not in the marriages of Persons of Quality, by reason the parties are content to confide in each other for the conditions agreed upon, and obtaining the consent of their Parents they consummate the marriage. But they ever reserve liberty of separation, with an equal division of Goods and Children, without License of any Magistrate, and to marry again, with whom, and as oft as they will. Their contract with their Concubines is of a different kind, for they are considered but as Slaves, and under the authority of the Wife, who on her part is satisfied with this precedency, knowing her Children, who are only esteemed legitimate, shall divide all, leaving to the natural but a very small share.

The Estates of Persons of Quality are ordinarily divided into three parts; one falls to the King; one to the Ecclesiasticks, they defraying the Funeral Charges, which there are great; and the third to the Children. People of middle condition buy their Wives, and consummate the Marriage, after payment of the sum accorded on; but have the same privilege of Divorce as the others.

Their Children divide the inheritance equally, except the eldest, who hath some advantage.

*Education of Children.* Till they are five or six years of age, they bring up their children with little care; then they put them to the Ecclesiasticks to be taught to write and read, and to be instructed in Religion; during which time they see their children but very seldom; but having learnt these first Rudiments, they put them to a Trade; or if they find them to be ingenious, they continue them in their Studies, to make them capable of the Priestly Function, or fit for some employments, which among them are bestow'd according to merit, and not sold for money. Those who live in Cities subsist by Merchandize, turn Courtiers, or betake themselves to some Handy-craft, or else become Fisher-men, whereof there are very many along the Coast, as there are also in those Cities, which have the convenience of any River. The Peasantry is very wretched, living only on their labour, employing themselves in dressing the *Cocoas*, and in breeding Cattle and Poultry, but Provisions are so exceeding cheap that they make very little advantage thereby.

*The Traffick of the City of India.* In the City of *India*, the principal Commerce consists in Stuffs brought from *Suratta*, and the Coast of *Coromandel*, all sorts of *Chinese* commodities, precious Stones, Gold, *Benjamin*, Wax, Copper, Lead, *Indico*, *Calamba*-wood, *Brasil*-wood, Cotton, Saphires, Rubies, &c. but above all, Deer-skins, whereof they furnish the *Japoneses* with above fifty thousand every year. It likewise yields a great trade of Rice, which they transport to all the neighbouring Islands. By reason of the abundance of these Commodities, there is scarce a Nation throughout *Asia* that have not their Merchants in *India*, besides the *Portuguez* and *Hollanders*, who have some years since settled themselves in those parts.

*The King a Merchant.* The King himself likewise trades amongst them, and for that purpose hath his Factors at *Pegu*, at *Auva*, at *Jangoma*, at *Lansiangh*, upon the Coast of *Coromandel*, and principally at *China*, where he hath those privileges which are not allowed to any other Prince.

*The money of Siam.* The Money of this Country is very good, by reason the King only hath power to stamp, and so prevents variation of the value; there are of it three sorts; *Ticals*, *Mases*, and *Foangs*. Two *Foangs* make a *Mase*, and four *Mases* make a *Tical*, worth about thirty Sols French money. Four *Ticals* make a *Tayl*, and twenty *Tayls* a *Catty* in Silver. In Silver their least money is a *Foang*, but they make use of a certain sort of Shells brought them from *Manilles*, from *Borneo*, and *Lequeo*, whereof eight or nine hundred amount to a *Foang*, without which they could not chaffer, by reason Victuals are so cheap, that a Man may buy more there for five of these Shells, then in any part of *Europe* for a Farthing.

The *Portuguez* finding of what consequence the King of *Siam*'s friendship is to them, for supporting of their Trade with the *Moluccas*, the *Philipine* Islands, or *Manilles*, have still a particular care to preserve a good correspondence, by civilities from the Viceroys of *Goa* to the King at their arrival in the *Indies*, and by Persons of Quality daily

daily commission'd thither, confirming themselves by this means so well in the Princes favour, that he not only allows them to trade throughout his Dominions, but imployes them in his most important Affairs, permitted them to build a Church in his chief City, and maintains one of their Priests at his own charge. They enjoy'd all these priviledges, till such time as the King of *Siam* began to favour the *Hollanders*, whom he found less insolent and more sincere then the *Portuguez*, who jealous of the affection of the King shewed to the *Hollanders*, presently obstructed the Commerce the *Siameses* held at *Saint Thomas* and *Negapatam*, and proceeded so far, as at last, in the year 1624. they set upon a *Dutch* Frigate upon the River *Menam*, as we told you before: whereat the King was so offended, that the Bishop of *Malacca*, having a Vicar Resident at *India*, he forbid him to come to Court. The *Portuguez* instead of making amends for this first fault, in a conjuncture when the *Hollanders*, their profess'd enemies, might have joynd with the King of *Siam*, continued still to obstruct the Commerce of the *Siameses*; in so much that the King perceiving their design was absolutely to destroy it, was out of all patience; and in the year 1631. stayed one of their Ships with all the Men; but they finding means to make an escape, contrary to their parole, he put an Imbargo upon all the *Portuguez* Ships, which were found in the Ports of *Lygoar* and *Tanassary*, and put all the Men in prison, out of which they were not set at liberty till two years after.

The *Hollanders* made their first establishment there, at the beginning of his age, though it is only since the year 1634. that they trade there with any profit: they have made great advantages of the friendship of that King, in order to the Commerce they have at *Java* and *Sumatra*. The settlement of the Hollanders at Siam.

On the North-west side of the Kingdom of *Siam*, lies that of *Cambodia*, which on the other side hath nothing but the Sea. The Metropolis, from which it derives its name, lies sixty Leagues from the Sea, upon a pleasant River, which rises out of a great Lake, as do also all the other Rivers of the Kingdom. But in that of *Cambodia*, it is particularly observable, that it overflows every year as the *Nile* doth; and as doth also the River *Menam*, in the Kingdom of *Siam*. It begins to rise at the beginning of *June*, and so rises by degrees to ten or twelve foot; but in *July* and *August* 'tis not navigable, for that it drowns the whole Country. The City of *Cambodia*, to prevent these Deluges, is built upon an advantageous rising, having but onely one street, and is inhabited by *Japoneses*, *Portuguez*, by *Cochinchinez* and *Malayer*. The *Portuguez* carry *Malacca*-Stuffs thither, and there load with *Benjamin*, *Lacque*, *Wax*, *Rice*, *Brass*, *Vessels* and *Bars* of *China*-*Iron*.

The King, who is but a Vassal of the King of *Siam*'s, resides in the City of *Cambodia*, in a Palace fortified with a good Pallisado instead of a Wall, where are some Pieces of *China* Artillery, and about twenty four or twenty five pieces of Cannon, which he recovered out of two *Holland* Ships wrack'd on that Coast, all mounted on four-wheel'd-Carriages, only painted blew, except four which are mounted on ordinary Carriages, varnish'd black, with Ladles and other Utensils of Silver, or Iron, so polished they might be taken for Silver. The King of *Cambodia* is nothing so powerful as the two Kings whom we last mentioned; for an Army of twenty five or thirty thousand is the most he can draw into the Field, so as were the *Siameses* more Martial, they might with small trouble make *Cambodia* subject to their King. The Palace Royal.

The Nobility of the Court are divided into *Ockinas*, *Tomimas*, *Tonimnes*, *Nampras* and *Sabandars*, each in his degree, but for the best part without any particular charge, except the first, who are most considerable in publick Assemblies, distinguished by little Cabinets of Gold carried after them, wherein are *Cardamum* and other Drugs to rub their Lips, Cissars to cut their *Bettele*, by them called *Pynang*, and for the Lime, *Areca* and *Bettele*, which they chew continually. In the presence of the King, whether it be for Council or Complement, they stand in a semi-circle, and behind them the *Tommaes*, known from the others by their Bottles of Silver. The Lords of Cambodia.

No address is made to the King, but by mediation of these *Ockinas*; for though the Priests are next his Person, between him and the *Ockinas*, and converse familiarly with him, they esteem it notwithstanding a kind of Sacrilege for an Ecclesiastick to meddle in secular Affairs, so as none but the *Ockinas* communicate general or particular Affairs to him; of which 'tis their Office to take cognizance, as also of the Kings Orders upon their report. In the whole Town there is but one *Pagode* or *Mosquee*, wherein there are three bigger, and three lesser Statues. It is supported with wooden Pillars, varnished black, with a foliage of Gold, and the floor covered with Mats. Their Priests have no houses near the *Pagode*, and when the chief of their Ecclesiasticks dyes, they build him a Monument of Stone, which at the bottom is four-square, and upwards to the top grows round like a Pear.

1639. The *Portuguez* are so well settled here, that the *Hollanders* cannot hope to carry on any Trade, till they have first destroyed that of the *Portuguez*. At their first Arrival, in the year 1637. they committed the management of their Affairs to an adoptive Son of the Queen, to whom the King had given the name of *Tisnecha*, and the honour of *Nampra*, and they used the credit of the *Chabandar* of the *Japoneses*, in hope by this means they might gain a small establishment. But the friendship they had contracted with the King of *Siam*, and the Artifices of the *Portuguez*, bred them difficulties they could not master; otherwise they might have laded there yearly eighty or a hundred thousand Deer-skins, besides Neat and Buffles hides, above a hundred *Picols* of black *Lacque*, at ten *Tbails* the *Picol*, above three or four hundred *Picols* of *Benjamin*, at seventeen or eighteen *Tbails* the *Picol*, and might have vented their Cotton-yarn, and Cloath, for above sixty or seventy in the hundred profit.

Provisions in these parts are so plentiful, that the Inhabitants having so much more than they have use for, sell them in a manner for nothing, specially Venison, Beef, Pork, Goats, Hares, Kids, Cranes, Hens, and all sorts of Poultry; as likewise Oranges, Citrons, *Mangas*, *Cocoas*, &c. but to judge the better of the fertility of this Soyl, take notice, that the people of *Quinam* alone fetch yearly thence two thousand *Coyangs* of Rice, five *Coyangs* making four *Lestes*, or eight Tuns, at seventeen or eighteen *Tbails* the *Coyang*. And so much by way of Account of the small Kingdom of *Cambodia*.

Malacca.

When discovered.

That Tongue of Land is called *Malacca*, which in form of a *Peninsula* extends it self from the Kingdom of *Siam*, from the South-east towards the North-west, even to the Equinoctial Line, betwixt the Gulfs of *Bengala* and *Siam*, or *Cambodia*; and contains, besides the City of *Malacca*, (whence it derives its name) the Kingdom of *Jabor* and *Patana*. The Country was discovered by *Alphonso d'Albuquerque*, in the year 1511. since when the *Portuguez* have kept their ground there so firmly, that none yet can supplant them. *Malacca* is situate upon the strait that divides the Isle of *Sumatra* from the Continent, on this side the Line two Degrees and a half, in a large Plain, where there is but only one Mountain, the foot whereof is almost wholly taken up with the Town, leaving only a small space open towards the North-east. About eighteen hundred paces may be the compass of it; for six hundred whereof it lies on the Sea-coast, enclosed with a good Wall, as likewise on the River-side, which bounds another third of the Town; and on the Land-side, 'tis fortified with four regular Bastions. The first, which is on the River-side, is called the Bastion of *Saint Domingo*; another on the Sea-shore, *Saint Jago*; and two more betwixt these two, called *Madre de Dios* and *Unze mil Vergenes*: from that of *Saint Jago*, to that of *Madre de Dios*, there is a good Pallisado of eighteen foot high, and between those of *Madre de Dios* to *Saint Domingo*, a sufficient Ditch. The Colledge of the *Jesuits*, also called *Saint Pauls*, which serves likewise for a Parish Church, stands on the top of the Hill, whence it commands the Town, and the Country near about it. There is likewise another rising ground about a Cannon shot from the City, where there is a Convent of *Jacobins*. The River there, which runs North-west, is not very broad, and at high-water it mixes with the Sea, but is fresh at low-water. There is a Bridge over it, though one side is without comparison much higher than the other, by reason the Land, South-east, is so low and marshy, that it cannot be broken, but water comes in immediately, and in some places 'tis absolutely drown'd. No week passes but it rains two or three times, unless it be in *January*, *February*, and *March*. The Ebb there leaves open above two thousand paces of shore, which being nothing but a deep mud, affords no landing at low-water.

Before the City lye two Islands; one the *Portuguez* call *Ilha da Naos*, about a Cannon-shot distant from the City, the other, *Ilha de Pedra*, for the Quarries where they get Freestone for their building, and lyes something more remote. The Caracks and Gallions cast Anchor betwixt these Islands at four or five fathom water, but Frigots and Barks enter the River, and Vessels of a middle rate shelter under the *Ilha da Naos*, between the River and the City.

In the City of *Malacca*, its Suburbs, and the neighbouring Towns, possessed by the *Portuguez*, there may be about twelve thousand Inhabitants, thus accounted; in the Parish of *Saint Thomas*, in the place they call *Camp klein*, a thousand; in the Suburbs towards the River eighteen hundred; in the Parish of *Saint Lawrence* two thousand; and in *Senhora Nossa de Pidade* as many; in *Nossa Senhora da Guadalupe*, five Leagues thence, about seven or eight hundred; and within the walls of the City, three thousand, making at most not above three thousand fighting men. Amongst them there are not above three hundred natural *Portuguez*, the greatest part are *Mestizes* or *Malayans*.

The

The City is so commodiously situate for Commerce with *China* and the *Moliques*, 1639. whereof the *Portuguez* having experience, to hinder other Nations from footing there, gave out, that the Air was unwholsome, that it was not inhabitable, especially for Forraigners, while they notwithstanding continued there, and followed their business.

They are possessed of no more then the City and Suburbs, and five Leagues off, upon the same River, the Town of *Nostra Senhora de Guadalupe*; for about half a League thence live the *Manancambos*, Subjects to the King of *Jabor*: but that would not have hindred the *Portuguez* from making it one of the most considerable places of the *Indies*, if the *Hollanders* did not disturb their Commerce, and find work for the King of *Spain's* Armies in that part of the Universe. At the request of the King of *Jabor*, in the year 1606. they came down into *Malacca*, and besieg'd the chief City, upon promise they should be posselt of it; but the aid that King brought them was so inconsiderable, that they were constrain'd to raise the Siege; yet not till they had so ruin'd the place, that it could never since be repaired, six thousand lives being lost in that Siege. On the other side, since the *Hollanders* got such strong hold in *Ceylon* and *Java*, the *Portuguez* trade with *China* and the *Moliques* is quite lost, by reason they are no more Masters of that Sea. But what more and more ruins the City, is the avarice of the Governours, who will not accept of that Government, but on condition to enrich themselves two hundred thousand Crowns in three years: to raise which sum they are forc'd to oppress the Inhabitants as well as Strangers; which oppressions will in time so ruine the Commerce of this place, that for the future the *Portuguez* must make no great account of it.

The Kingdom of *Patana* is not so great as that of *Jabor*, but without comparison more populous: for some that have dealt there for the *Hollanders*, and have staid there a sufficient time, affirm, they have seen Records, that assert the King of *Patana* can raise an Army of an hundred and fourscore thousand men. True it is, the *Patanans* are bad Souldiers, and very improper for war; but we speak of the number, not the quality, and say, that the City of *Patanan*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, can alone set forth at least ten thousand; that is, the *Malayans* four thousand, the *Chineses* three, and the *Siameses* as many. Patana:

The City of *Patana* stands upon the Sea-side, but the Haven is two thousand paces Description thence. The Houses are of Timber or Canes, and well and handsomly built. The Kings of Patana. Palace is surrounded with a Pallisado, and the *Mosquey* is made of Brick.

As to the Inhabitants, they may be said rather brown then Olive-coloured; of body Its Inhabi- well proportioned, but they are haughty and proud; yet this rather in their Comport- tants. ment then Conversation, wherein they are very affable: for the Queen her self admitted the *Hollanders* to come into her Bark with her Noble men, and excused it, that the severity their Sex observe, neither permitted her to see them more often, nor to admit them to her Retirement, to which she was obliged since her Widowhood.

The *Chineses* and *Siameses*, who have lived any time there, are ingenious, and understand Navigation; but the *Malayans* meddle only with Husbandry and Fishing, living miserably, and drinking nothing but Water. They have no liking to Wine, and for *Arac* and *Aqua vite* they have an aversion: but Women they love, and prefer that pleasure before all others, wherefore there is not a Man, who, besides four or five lawful Wives, hath not as many Concubines.

Simple Fornication they allow of, and hold it no sin; but Adultery they punish severely. This is a Crime unpardonable, and for which the Father, or Son, or one of the nearest Relations, is obliged to be Executioner, the manner of death being left to the person guilty; yet is this Crime so common, that they would dispeople the Country, should they punish all that are guilty of it.

Their wealth consists in Land and Slaves, whom they feed with nothing but Rice, and a little Fish, yet make great profit out of their labour: Only the *Chineses* and the *Mestizes* betake themselves to any Trade, or apply themselves to Traffick, which they chiefly have in *Siam*, *Burdelon*, *Lugor*, *Cambodia*, *Cochinchina*, *Macasser*, *Grece*, *Paban*, *Jambi*, *Jabor*, *Bantam*, *Bandar*, *Malin*, *Suchidanar*, and other places upon the same Coast or Countrey, where they carry all sorts of *China* Commodities, Purcelane, Skins, Pots, Kettles, and other Iron Utensils; as likewise Flesh powder'd and smoak'd, Fish dry and salted, Cloath which they have from the *Hollanders* and *Chineses*. From their Neighbours they fetch Timber to build withall, *Rottang*, that is, Cordage of *Cocoe*, Oyle of the same, Fruits dry'd and preserv'd, Skins of Neat, Buffles, Goats, Pepper, and particularly a Drug they call *Saroy-boura*. These are only Swallow-nests, which they find on Rocks by the Sea-side, and are Swallows of such esteem in *China*, that they sell them for three or four Crowns the pound. There nests. are two sorts of them, the white, which are much in request, and are sold for six, seven, or

1639. or eight *Campan*s the *China Catti*; but the grey are not so dear, and not worth three or four *Campan*s the *Catti*, which amounts not to above eleven *Sols*, or a *Mamide* of *Cambaya*.

The Air of  
Patana.

Though the Country lye not far from the Equinoctial, yet is the Air good and wholesome, though the heats are exceeding great. Summer begins there in *February*, and lasts to the end of *October*; there falls continual Rains during *November*, *December* and *January*, with a North-west wind. They Till the Earth with Oxen and Buffles, and sow nothing but Rice, of which they get great abundance. They have for every moneth several Fruits, and Hens that lay twice a day, by reason whereof the Country abounds in all sorts of provisions for the belly, as Rice, Oxen, Goats, Geese, Ducks, Hens, Capons, Peacocks, Deer, Hares, Coneys, Fowl and Venison, and specially in Fruits, whereof they have above a hundred several sorts; as *Durians*, *Mangosthans*, *Annas*, *Lanciats*, *Ramboutammas*, *Pisfians*, *Oranges* and *Lemmons*, and above all *Lemmons gibol*, called in *France* *China Oranges*, bought there five or six hundred for a *Campan*; *Mamplans*, *Batians*, and *Centals*, &c. whereof more hereafter.

Mahumetans.

The Inhabitants breed no Swine, but the Forrests are so full of wild ones, that they are forc'd to hunt them to prevent the destruction of their Rice; which being taken, they bury them in the ground, as being *Mahumetans*, and eat none themselves, nor suffer others.

In the Forrest likewise there are abundance of Tygers and Apes, which are no less pernicious to the Fields then the wild Swine are; but the wild Elephants, of which there are likewise great numbers, are very harmless. They are taken by hunting, turning a tame Elephant amongst them, with whom they presently fight, and while they are in the fury they tye their hinder feet together; so as being not able to withstand any longer, they yield to be driven away, and are tam'd by hunger in a short time.

The *Portuguez* heretofore bought there fifteen or sixteen horned Beasts in a year, and carried them to *Malacca*, paying a *Campan* a head for the export. But the *Hollanders* pay nothing, neither for those they slaughter in the Country, nor for those they ship for *Sumatra* or *Java*: for doubtless they win more on their affections then the *Portuguez*, or any other Strangers.

The King of *Patana* is Subject, or rather Vassal to the King of *Siam*, but payes him annually a very inconsiderable Tribute. Not many years since there reign'd a Queen, that sent him no more then once a year a Flower of Gold, and some Silk-Stuffes and Scarlet; she was about that time fifty years of age, whereof she had been a Widow fifteen; when she appear'd abroad, which was seldom, to take the Air, she was attended by four thousand Persons of Quality, with the Armes and Equipage of her deceased Husband born before her.

Johor.

The King of *Johor* possesses all the utmost parts of the *Penninsula*, the Ancients called *Aurea Chersonesus*, to the Streight of *Sincopura*, the chief Towns are *Linga*, *Bintam*, *Carymon*, &c. but the chief City of all the Country is *Batusabar*, scituate six Leagues from the Sea, upon the River *Johor*, divided into two Towns, one keeping the name of *Batusabar*, the other called *Cottasabrang*, one being thirteen hundred paces about, the other about five hundred. They are both built with Free-stone, and all the Houses stand along the River-side, raised on piles eight or ten foot from the ground, which lies so low, that at high-water 'tis covered twice a day. In it are near four thousand Inhabitants able to bear Armes; and could they bring themselves to take pains in Fortification, with little labour might this River be brought about the Town, which might thus be made one of the strongest places in the *Indies*. The *Hollanders* have used all their Endeavour to bring them to it, and to secure themselves from the *Portuguez*, their irreconcilable Enemy: but their Houses in *Cotta Zabrang*, and thereabouts, being nothing but Straw, they care not much for burning, so they have but time to save themselves in *Batusabar*, where the building is of Timber, and they can defend themselves against flying parties.

The soyl  
fertile.

The Country belongs intirely to the King, who gives Land to manure to any that desire it; but the *Malayans* are so slothful, that the Ground is all, as it were, overgrown with Moss, though by the Herbage and Trees it produces, it is easie to perceive, great profit might be raised, if the Soyl were cultivated. For further testimony of this, the *Hollanders*, in their Relations, amongst other things observe, that at a time the King of *Johor* presented their Admiral with Sugar Canes eighteen foot long, and seven inches about.

The *Malacca* or *Malayan* Language is held the most elegant of all the *Indies*, where it is at least as general as *French* in *Europe*, and is the easier to learn, because there are no inflections,

otions, neither in Nounes nor Verbs. For the Readers curiosity I shall here insert some of their words, that he may spend his judgment, and begin with the numbers, which they thus count. 1639.

*Satu* one, *dua* two, *tyga* three, *eupat* four, *lyma* five, *nam* six, *toufion* seven, *de lapan* eight, *sambalan* nine, *sapalo* ten, *sabalas* eleven, *duabulas* twelve, *tyga balas* thirteen, *capat balas* fourteen, *lyma balas* fifteen, *nam balas* sixteen, *toufion balas* seventeen, *dela-ban balas* eighteen, *sambalan balas* nineteen, *duo pola* twenty, *saratua* a hundred, &c. *Arys* the day, *Malam* night, *Zoufion* the stomach, *lebeer* the neck, *dangudo* the mustachoes, *Bat* the tongue, *Iargary* the fingers, *Toulang* the leg, *Goumo* the foot, *Tangam* the arm, *Capalla* the head, *Rambot* the hair, *Pourot* the belly, *Fanget* the beard, *Tangan* the hand, *Molot* the mouth, *Martye* the eyes, *Troidon* the nose, *Conet* the skin; *Babpa* Father, *Maa* Mother, *Ibou* Grandfather and Grandmother, *bewangdarnet* to bleed, *mackol* to beat, *mollay* to begin, *billy* to buy, *chimy* to pay, *diem* to be silent, *ambel* to take, *toulong* to assist, *Manye* I, *Pakanera* you, *andrior* to melt, *boday* to deceive, *dengaer* to hear, *battou* to content, *mansuiry* to prick, *Mus* Gold, *Salacha* Silver, *ada* I have, *Palla* a Nutmeg, *toy quitabo* we, *Lacky* a Man, *bilby* to traffick, *tidor* to sleep, *tavar* to promise, *britacot* to menace, *terran* to clear, *pang* to cut, *Negle* Steel, *Lada* Pepper, *minnon* to drink, *tackana* to enchaunt, *chium* to kiss, *bretoun* to make, *dousta* to lye, *banga* to rise, *suitsidana* to wipe the Nose, *tieda tan* I understand it not, *Sicke* Cloves.

Leaving the firm Land and the *Peninsula*, by the Ancients called *Aurea Chersonesus*, on the Coast of *Malacca*; we find the Isle of *Sumatra*, not above ten Leagues distant. Some have said 'twas rent from the Continent by the Sea Currents, as *Ceylon* from that part of the *Indies* heretofore called *India intra Gangem*, but for this conjecture there is little ground in History, it being not to be affirmed more of this place, then it can of *Sicily*, or *England*, or any other Island in the World; except we shall presuppose, that at the Creation the Sea compassed the whole Earth, and that then there was no Islands, but that they were made by the Sea, which afterwards by degrees form'd them out of the firm Land. To enter into this dispute is not our design, no more then to decide whether *Sumatra* were the ancient *Taprobane*, as *Jos. de l'Escale*, *Mercator*, and divers others think; or *Ophir*, where King *Solomon's* Ships fetch'd the Gold and other precious things, as the Scripture sayes; but we shall recite only what we could gather out of these last Relations. Sematra.

All conclude that *Sumatra* extends from the fifth degree on this side, to the sixth degree beyond the Line; by which Rule it should contain a hundred and sixty, or a hundred sixty five Leagues in length, with a breadth of sixty; and so they who inhabit the middle of the Island, to have the Equinoctial Line perpendicularly over them. By the situation we may judge the heats to be there extream; and herewithall there is so much Wood, and such a multitude of Lakes, that the Air, especially for Strangers, is exceeding unhealthful. Nevertheless it is abundantly fertile, and besides Gold, Silver, and divers other Metals, as *Copper*, *Iron*, *Brass*, whereof they have the Art to make as good Artillery as they do in *Europe*; it produces Rice and Millet, particularly Fruit, in such quantity, as the Forrefts are loaden with it, and sufficiently furnish all the Inhabitants. In the middle of the Isle there is a burning Mountain, flaming by intermissions, as *Vesuvius* in the Kingdom of *Naples*; and, they report; there is a Balsom Fountain running incessantly. 'Tis wealthy in Diamonds and other precious Stones, Silks, Spices, Wax, Honey, Camphire, Cassia, and divers other Drugs used in Medicine. There are whole Woods of white *Sandale*, and Cotton sufficient to cloath the Inhabitants. The Riches.

This Island was heretofore divided into ten Kingdoms, but Men making this Voyage only for Traffick, they are contented to visit those only next the Sea, and omit to travel further into the Country, where doubtless Riches are to be found unknown to the maritime Inhabitants. The *Portuguez* give us account only of two Mediterranean Kingdoms, which they call *Andragidan* and *Arunau*; as also those of *Achim*, *Pedir*, *Pacem*, *Camparam*; *Zande* and *Mancabo*, all on the Sea-side, and on this side the Line. The *Hollanders*, for advance of their Commerce in the Isle of *Java*, have discovered the Kingdom of *Polymbam* beyond the Line, and have made there a most firm establishment, as may be seen in their Relations. The *Portuguez* have there nothing at all, but have freedom of Trade, except hindred by the *Hollanders*. Contains many Kingdoms.

The King of *Achim* hath united to his Crown the Kingdoms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*, with almost all the Northern Coast of the Isle; but he that reigned there in 1596. when the *Hollanders* first sailed into those parts, was a Fisher-man that usurp'd the Crown, and, in the Siege of *Polymbam*, was slain, leaving only one Son of five moneths of age, under the govern- King of Achim,

1639. government of his Father in Law. Which young Prince dying, his Grandfather succeeded to the Crown; and that was he the *Hollanders* treated with in the year 1668.

*The Town of Achim.* The City of *Achim* stands in a wide Plain upon the side of a very broad River, but so shallow, that the least Boats get in with difficulty. It hath neither Gates nor Walls, the Houses all built on piles, and covered with *Coco*-leaves. The Castle, or Palace Royal, stands in the middle of the Town, which on two sides hath most excellent pleasant Forrests, well stored with Apes, Hens, and all manner of Birds.

*The Inhabitants.* The Natives are flat-fac'd, and of an Olive colour, they cover their body with a Cotton or Silk Shirt, and their head with a light Turbant of the same stuffe; Children go stark naked, only Girls have their secret parts hidden with a Silver-plate. The Inhabitants of *Guzuratta*, *Malabar*, *Negapatam*, *Bengalan*, and *Pegu*, and all Strangers that live among them, cloath themselves after the same manner.

The Castle is fortified with a good Wall and Pallifado, and well flanked, so as the Artillery commands all the Avenues and streets of the Town. The Houses in the Castle are built of the same matter and same form of those of the Town, by reason the River, which often overflows, drowns them sometimes to the first story. The piles that support them are gayly wrought, and the Houses covered with Canes. They enter into the Castle by seven Gates, one within another, which are neither curious nor strong. Without the Kings special Licence, none but the Life-guard and Women enter the Pallifado, all others must sue for Audience, or expect till the King sends for them. Such as present themselves to him, do him reverence, with their hands joyn'd and lifted above their head, crying, *Daula tuancon*, that is, *Long live the King*. He never recreates himself but with Women, or appears in publick, but either to see Cock-fighting, to bathe in the River, or hunt the Elephant. He is serv'd only by Women or Eunuchs. He uses his Subjects as slaves, and governs by four *Sabanders*, who are next in authority to him. His Laws are severe, and punishments extremely cruel; so as one shall there meet a multitude of people without either hands or feet, and have been so mutilated, for miscarriages not worth the name of Crimes.

*Religion.* The King of *Achim*, as almost all that inhabit the Coast of *Sumatra*, is a *Mahumetan*; for which reason I shall not need to say any more of their Religion; only, that they begin their Lent with the new Moon in the twelfth moneth, and end it, at the new of the next moneth, observing abstinence all day, during that time, till night. Whence it comes, that their impatience to see the end of their Lent, makes them still gaze in the West, fixing their eyes up to the Heavens, to find the new Moon; which is no sooner seen, but they fall to feasting and jollity for the remainder of that night.

*Their Vi- suals.* In *Sumatra* they get no Corn, but Rice sufficient, of which the Inhabitants make good varieties, particularly Cakes with Oyl; they have plenty likewise of Beef and Buffles, Goat and Mutton, though none but the King hath priviledge to breed Sheep. Oranges, Lemmons, *Bonana*, *Tamarindes*, *Batalas*, Reddish, Spinage, and Lettice in great abundance; they drink Water, or *Arac* made of Rice or *Coco*s.

*The mourn- ful day-tree.* There is in *Sumatra* a Tree, in the *Malayan* Language called *Singadi*; in *Arabia*, *Guræ*; the *Canarians* call it *Parizaticco*; the *Persians* and *Turks*, *Gul*; the *Decanins*, *Pul*; and the *Portuguez*, *Arbor triste de dia*. It puts forth an infinite number of branches very small and full of knots, from every knot comes two leaves like a Plumb-leaf, save that they are as sweet as Sage, and are covered with a beautiful white. Every leaf hath its bud, which opening thrusts forth small heads, whereof each hath four round leaves, and from each head comes five flowers, composing as it were a Nofegay, in such manner as the fifth is seen in the middle of the rest. The flowers are white as Snow, and a little bigger then the Orange-flower; blows immediately as the Sun is set, so suddenly, that they are produced as 'twere in the cast of an eye. This fecundity lasts all night, till the return of the Sun makes both the flowers and leaves drop off, and so strips the tree that the least greenness is not to be found upon it, nor any thing of that admirable odour which perfum'd the Air, and comprehended all that *Asia* affords of sweetness. The tree keeps in this condition, till the Sun hath left the Horizon; and then it begins to open its womb again, and deck it self with fresh flowers, as if in the shades of night it would recover it self out of the affliction which it is put into by that Planet, whose return enlivens the rest of the Universe.

*Coco*s. There is not in the Island a Tree more common then the *Coco*s, and in regard 'tis general through the *Indies*, I will give here a brief description of it; and first tell you there are four sorts thereof. That which bears the fruit called *Coco*s, which are the Nuts of the Country, is the most considerable, not only of any Tree in this Country, but indeed of any other

other part of the world. This Tree, not above a foot diameter, grows in body exceeding high, having not a branch but at the top, where it spreads as the Date-tree. The fruit comes not out of the branches, but beneath out of the body, in bunches or clusters of ten or twelve Nuts : The flower is like that of a Chestnut, and it grows only near the Sea, or upon the River side in sandy ground, and nevertheless grows so lofty, that except the *Indians*, who by practice climb it with as much agility and quickness as an Ape, there is no Stranger will venture to do it. 'Tis as common in the *Indies*, as the Olive in *Spain*, or Willows in *Holland*; and though the wood be sappy, yet it serves for such variety of things, that there is no Tree of so general an use. In the *Maldives* Isles, they make Ships that cross the Sea, without any thing but what the *Cocoe* affords. Of the outer rind they make a kind of Hemp, which they call *Cayro*, whereof they make Cordage and Cables for their Ships. Of the leaves they make Sails, and cover Houses with them; they make of them likewise Umbrelloes, Fans, Tents, Mats and Hats, which for their lightness are very commodious in Summer.

Ships made  
of it, as also  
Sails, Ca-  
bles, &c.

These Trees are planted either for the Fruit, or the Terry which is got out of them. The Fruit is of the bigness of an Eltridge egg; and the Husk, that is green, as of our ordinary Nuts, being dried, is converted into the Thread called *Cayro*, which I spoke of before. Sometimes they gather the Fruit before it comes to perfect maturity, and then it is called *Lanbo*, whence may be drawn two pints of refreshing Liquor pleasant to drink. This Juice by degrees turns to a little Nut, in taste not much unlike our Haselnut, but something sweeter. The shell of this Nut, while 'tis green, is good to eat, but being dry, they make Cups, Spoons, and other Utensils of it, or make Coal for Goldsmiths. The *Indians* peel this Nut, and extract a Milk out of it, as useful to all purposes, as our Cows milk. None but the poor eat the Fruit, because ordinarily they dry it, to extract the Oyl, which is good to eat, useful in medicine, and to burn in Lamps. The fruit being kept in the shell, by degrees turns to a kind of Apple, which in time grows yellow, and is excellent to eat.

They extract Wine out of it, thus; pulling off the Flower, they fasten to it a pot of Earth they call *Collao*, well stop'd and luted with Potters earth, that it may not dye nor sharpen. They know in what time the pot will be filled with a certain Liquor, which they call *Sura*, that hath the taste and quality of Whey. This Liquor boyl'd makes *Tery*, which serves them for Wine, and being set in the Sun, makes excellent Vinegar, and stilling it in a Limbeck makes good Strong-water. They make likewise Sugar of it, which they call *Jagra*, but esteem it not, for that 'tis brown, having such plenty of white. The *Portuguez*, steeping Raisins of the Sun and some other Ingredients in *Sura*, make a Drink that hath the taste and quality of Sack.

How they  
make Wine.

The *Indians* esteem most the inside of this Tree, for the Pith is white, and as fine as any Paper we have, will hold in fifty or sixty folds, or many leaves. They term it *Olla*, and use it in stead of Paper, so as Persons of Quality seek much after it, only for this use; of the Bark they make courser paper, to make up Merchandizes in.

Paper of  
this Tree.

The second Species of *Cocoes*, is the Tree that the *Portuguez* call *Arrequeiro*, for the *Areca* that comes of it, whereof we spoke in the precedent Book, and of which we shall have further occasion to speak more hereafter, as well as of the other two kinds, called *Tamor* and *Lantor*, in the description of the Isle of *Java*, to which we shall come immediately.

*Bananas* is not any where so common as in *Sumatra*: 'tis a kind of *Indian* Fig-tree, which grows to a mans height, and produces Leaves six foot long, and a foot and half broad. We call it, with the *Portuguez*, the Fig-tree, in regard that though the Fruit be not altogether like other Figs, yet hath it the shape and colour. It may be called rather a Bush than a Tree, because it hath no body. The Leaves begin to break forth when the Sprout is but four foot high, and as some come forth, others wither and fall, till the Plant be at full growth, and the Fruit come to maturity. The bole of it is not above ten or twelve inches thick, and so soft that it may with ease be cut with a Knife. In the middle of the Leaf there comes out a Flower as big as an Eltridge Egg, inclining to a violet colour, out of which comes a branch which is not wood, but tender as a Cabbage-stalk, loaden with Figs. At first they are no bigger then a Bean, but in time they grow seven or eight inches long; and as big as a Cowcumber; not a sprig but shall have near a hundred Figs, which joyn together like a bunch of Grapes. They gather them before they are full ripe, which they know by their colour, which is of a yellowish green; then they hang them on a Nail till they ripen, which will be in four or five dayes. No stalk hath more then one bunch; they cut it close to the ground, whence it springs again with such vigour, that in a moneth it recovers its former condition; and at that rate fructifies the year throughout, which is a great

Bananas.



1639. Manna to this Country, where a little sufficeth; and thus they live in a manner for nothing. The Cods or Husks, whercin the Figs are inclosed, are no less delicious and useful then the Fruit it self, and as nourishing as our finest Bread, and in taste much like a Cake, so as this Tree alone is sufficient to feed the whole Country.

Pepper.

The Pepper of *Sumatra* is without doubt the best in the *Indies*, except that of *Cochim*. Commonly they plant it at the root of another Tree, under set it with Canes or Poles, as Hop or *French-beans*. The Leaves resemble Orange-leaves, only they are a little less and more sharp; it grows in little branches as red Goosberries, or Juniper. While it hangs on the tree it is green, and turns not black till it be gathered and dry, which they do in *December* and *January*. The places which produce most of it are, *Malabar*, *Onar*, *Barjelor*, *Mangalor*, *Calicut*, *Cranganor*, *Cochim*, *Conhon*, *Quida*, *Dampin*, *Dedir*, *Campir* and *Andragir*, the Isles of *Sumatra* and *Bantam*, and certain places in the Isle of *Java*. They bring forth likewise white Pepper, but not in so great abundance. The *Malayans* call Pepper *Landa*; the Inhabitants of *Java*, *Sabargh*; and the *Malabars*, *Molanga*. Long Pepper is not gotten but in *Bengala*, which is another sort of Fruit like the tag of a point, but something thicker and gray, containing a small white grain of the same taste and use as common Pepper. In *Malabar* and *Goa* there grows another sort of Pepper, which they call *Canarins*, but used only by poor people.

'Tis something strange, but very certain, that they spend more Pepper in the *Indies* then is brought into *Europe*; though in the Haven of *Bantam* only, 'tis known they have laded forty eight thousand Bags in a year: for the *Indians* dress not any meat without handfuls of it, but they never beat it, nor grind it.

Java.

*Java*, an Island commonly called *Java Major*, to distinguish it from another less of the same name, which lies hard by it, is South-East from the Isle of *Sumatra*, from which it is dis-joyned, only by a narrow Streight, called the Streight of *Sunda*. It lies seven Degrees beyond the Line, and is about fifty Leagues long: but hitherto no mans curiosity hath discovered the breadth of it, which makes some conceive that it is not an Island, but part of the Continent, known by the name of *Terra Australis*, near the Streight of *Magellan*. *Julius Scaliger*, in his *Exercitationes* against *Cardan*, calls it the *Compendium of the World*; because there is not Animal, Plant, Fruit, Metal, nor Drug, which is not here in greater abundance, then in any part of the Universe.

Inhabitants.

The Natives say, that originally they came from *China*, and that their Ancestors, weary of the yoke that King kept them under, removed to the Isle of *Java*; certainly they are in face like the *Chineses*, their forehead and brows large, and eyes narrow; for which reason divers *Chineses* settle in this Island.

The King of Bantam.

There is scarce a Town in *Java* but hath a particular King, who not above forty or fifty years since obeyed all one Emperour, but of late they have shaken off that Sovereignty, and are all independent. The King of *Bantam* is the most puissant, and next him the King of *Palambuam*, from whom is denominated the Streight that divides the Isles *Java* and *Bali*. Ten Leagues thence, towards the North-East, lyes the Town of *Panarucan*, where they drive a great trade with the Slaves they bring from *Malacca*, as also in long Pepper and Womens Garments.

A flaming Mount.

Near *Panarucan* there is a Mountain of Sulphur, which began in the year 1586. to cast up fire in such violence, that at that first blazing above ten thousand persons perished by it. The Kings of *Panarucan* and *Palambuam* are *Pagans*, but the King of the City of *Passaruan*, six Leagues from *Panarucan*, is a *Mahumetan*. At *Passaruan* they have a great traffick in *Garnitre*, a fruit like a Raspberry, whereof the Merchants of *Quilin* make Beads and Bracelets, which they sell, and put off all over the *Indies*.

Joartam.

Ten Leagues thence Westward lies the City *Joartam*, with an excellent Haven upon a fair River, where Ships, in their Voyage from the *Moluccoes* to *Bantam*, take in Provisions and fresh Water.

Gerrici.

Upon the same River lies the City *Gerrici*, to whose King the other Kings of *Java* render the same respect, they again exact from their own Slaves, and near to these two Cities it is they fetch the Salt that is brought to *Bantam*.

Surabaia.

The City of *Surabaia*, that stands next in rank, hath likewise its proper King, who also reigns over the City of *Brandam*, six Leagues thence towards the West, and lives at *Cidaye*.

Cidaye

This City is fortified with a good Wall well flanked; but the Haven is not safe, by reason there wants shelter against the Winds that come from Sea-wards.

Taboan.

Ten Leagues Westward lies the City of *Taboan*, next *Bantam*, the most considerable of the Island, as we shall tell you anon.

Cajam.

Five Leagues further North-west is *Cajam*, a City of no traffick, no more then *Mandaliccaon*, which is inhabited by none but Fishermen.

Five Leagues onwaads West stands *Japara*, upon a skirt of Land that thrusts it self three Leagues into the Sea. The scituation of this Town is upon a fair River, with a good Harbour that renders it very Merchantile. This hath likewise a peculiar King, and none of the meanest in the Island. 1639.  
Japara.

Twenty five Leagues from *Japara*, and forty five from *Bantam*, lies *Matram*,<sup>1</sup> or *Matavam*, a great City, with a King of its own; who heretofore was so powerful as that he pretended to Sovereignty over the whole Isle; and for this was the declared enemy of the King of *Bantam*. Matram or  
Matavam.

Then five Leagues West from *Japara* is the City of *Pati*, and three Leagues beyond that of *Dauma*, which acknowledges the King of *Matavam*, as doth also that of *Taggal*, scituate with the two others in the same Bay. Pati and  
Dauma.  
Taggal.

The next is the fair and strong City of *Cbarabaon*, upon a fresh-water River; and on-wards the Cities of *Dormago* and *Monucaon*, whence they pass through the Village *Gaccon*, to the City of *Jacatra*, and so to *Bantam*. Monuca-  
on.  
Jacatra.  
Bantam.

Without question this last is the Metropolis, and most considerable City of all *Java*, scituate about twenty five Leagues from the Isle of *Sumatra*, at the foot of a Mountain, whence three Rivers rise, two whereof run by the walls, the other through the City, but all too shallow for Navigation. The Town is indifferent great, but rascally Houses; the walls, which are of Brick, and three foot in thickness, are not entirely lined with Earth, yet so flanked, that at every hundredth pace lies a Cannon, which would sufficiently secure the Curtain, were it in condition for service; but their Artillery is not mounted, and they have no other Ammunition then a little Powder brought from *Malacca*, where the *Portuguez* have a Mill. The City Gates are so wretched, that one might beat them down with a Club; but so vigilantly guarded, 'twould be hard to approach without notice; there are neither Bastions nor Towers, but in lieu thereof Scaffolds of three stories, which yield a strong defence.

In the whole City there are but three principal Streets, which all abut upon the Castle called *Pacebam*. The one goes from the *Pacebam* to the Haven; another, where the Slaves and the Kings Domesticks inhabit, leads to the Gate towards the Fields; and the third, to the Gate at the foot of the Mountain. The Streets are not pay'd, but are as commodious, by means of the Sand they are covered with. The Channels, which in divers places cross the City, are foul and stinking, by reason the Stream of the River not being strong enough to carry away the filth it brings it self, and what is thrown forth, the Water choaks and makes puddles that infect the whole City. No Person of Quality who hath not his private Chappel, or Mesquite, in his House; but one there is in common, near the Palace, on the Magazine and Stable side. The City is divided into several Posts, each of which is assign'd to some Person of Quality, who commands in time of War, and hath the direction in civil Affairs. They have a Drum as big as those *Germane* The Kings  
Palace.  
  
A Drum  
for a Clock. Casks, call'd Thunder-bolts, used instead of a Bell, which they beat with a wooden Bar as big as a Weavers-beam, morning and evening, as also on Alarms. Likewise they have Brass basins, which they beat musically and chime upon, as they do on Bells.

At every corner of the Streets there stands a Guard, and at Sun-set they draw up and make fast all Passage-boats, so as in the night there is no stirring in the Street. At the Prison gate, near the Palace, stands a Guard of fifty Men; nor is there a Person of Quality, who hath not one or ten or twelve at his House. The Town is full of *Cocoe*-trees, nor is there a Mansion without divers belonging to it. The housing is poorly built, of Straw or Reeds upon piles, made like those at *Achim*. They cover their Houses with *Cocoe*-leaves, and the sides of their lodging Rooms have only Curtains for freedom of the Air, which is exceeding necessary in this hot Climate. For preservation of their Wares, they have Store-houses of Stone, but they are covered only with Straw, so that to secure them from fire, which is but too frequent amongst them, they lay great pieces of Timber over the Roof, and cover it with Sand, that the fire may not find passage. The Rooms in their Houses are only divided by partitions, made of Canes called *Bambus*, which they slit so thin, that a Horse-load serves for all the Rooms in a House. At the Houses of Persons of Quality, at the first entrance, you come into a square Court, where the Guard is, and where the Master of the House speaks with such as have business with him, under a little Shed, covered with Canes or *Cocoe*-leaves. In one of the corners of this Court stands the *Mesquite*, where at noon they do their Devotions, and not far thence the Cistern where they wash themselves. Being entred the House, you find on both sides of a narrow Gallery several little Niches, for Slaves to rest in, who watch for their Masters security; by reason they are all afraid of being surprized and killed by their Enemies in the night. All For- The Guard  
of the town's

1639. raigners, as the Inhabitants of *Bengala, Guzuratta, Malayans, Abissins, Chineses, Portuguez* and *Hollanders*, lye out of Town.

Market  
places.

Here are three great Market places, where Merchants meet daily; The grand *Bazar*, or Exchange, is towards the East part of the Town, and is the meeting place of foreign Merchants; as *Portuguez, Arabians, Turks, Chineses, Quilins, Peguans, Malayans, Bengalans, Gufurats, Malabars*, and other *Indians*, who are there from the break of the day till nine of the clock, and then break up. The second Market place is before the great *Mesquite*, divided from it by a Pallisado. To this place Women resort with Sacks, and a weight of three pounds, they call *Gantam*, who buy Pepper of the Country people, at eight or nine hundred *Caxas* the *Gantam*. But the *Chineses*, who are very skilful in this Trade, forestall them sometimes; for they go to the Peasants and buy all they have by the lump before hand. Betwixt the Pallisado and the *Mesquite* stand Women that sell *Bettele, Araca, Bananas, Melons, &c.* and some there are sell fine Cakes to be eaten hot.

Armourers.

A little higher on the right hand are Armourers, who sell small pieces of Cannon, Pistols, Sword-blades, Battle-axes, Knives, &c. Not far thence, there are others that sell Sandal-wood, white and yellow, and on the left hand are Confectioners, that sell Sugar, Honey, and all sorts of Sweet-meats liquid or dry. Near to that is the Bean-market, where are sold all sorts of Beans, black, white, red, yellow, green and grey, at three hundred *Caxas* the *Gantam*. Next to this is the Onion-market, where Merchants that sell Cloath by whole-sale come, and such as deal in return of Money, and assurances of the return of Vessels. Hard by this is the Poultry, where, besides tame Fowl, they sell also Kids, Geese, Pigeons, Parrats, &c. Coming thence you meet three ways; one going to the *Chineses* Shops; another to the Herb and Pulse-market; and the third to the Shambles. By the way to the *Chineses* Shops, on the right hand, are some Jewellers, who for the greater part are *Choroacones*, that is, *Persians*, or *Arabians*, who sell *Rubies, Hiacinths, Turqueffes, Granats, &c.* And on the left hand is the place for the *Bengalians*, with their Toyes and small Wares.

On the backside of this Street, the *Chineses* sell their Silks raw and colour'd, Damask, Velvet, Sattins, Brocades of Gold and Silver, Puzelane, and Cabinets, and works of Lacque, &c. By the way to the Herb-market, upon the right hand upon the Strand, are the *Bengalians* with their small Wares. On the left hand Merchants of Linnen-cloath, and at the lower end of this Market married Women have Seamsters shops; but men are forbidden to come there under pain of a forfeiture. Then you come to the Herb-market, where are a multitude of Simples unknown to us. Turning thence you see the Fish-market, then the Shambles, with Stalls full of Beef, Buffles and Venison: then the Spice-market, where Women sell Pepper, Cloves, Nutmegs, Mace, &c. and all sorts of Gums and Drugs, to *Europeans* unknown: and the Rice-market, where likewise they sell Earthen-ware and Salt; whence they pass by the same way they came, to the place where Merchants and Masters of Ships meet about their Affairs.

The sale of these Commodities lasts but till nine of the clock, and then opens the Market before the *Facebam*, or Palace Royal, where are sold all sorts of Victuals, as likewise some Pepper, which they truck with the *Chineses*. About noon the Market in the *Chineses* quarters begins, where nothing is sold but for the Table.

Tuban.

We told you before, that next *Bantam, Tuban* or *Tubaon*, is the chiefeft Town in *Java*, and in effect, is stronger then all the rest, and although not so great as *Bantam*, 'tis at least as handsome, and as well built. The Palace is exceeding spacious, and hath very fair Appartments, where Elephants and other Beasts have their several quarters. Each Elephant hath his lodge built upon four pillars, with a post in the middle to tye him to. The rooms are filled with Chests and Hampers for the baggage, when the King goes his Progress. Near to his Lodgings is a place where his fighting Cocks are kept, every one his Pen apart, and every one his Keeper; as likewise the Parrots, which are much before those they bring into these parts. The greatest part of a beautiful flame colour, with a great golden spot on the back: the out-sides of their wings blew and red, and the in-side a lovely carnation. They are too tender to indure the inconveniences of a long Voyage; besides the *Indians* highly esteem them, for that they love their owners, and delight to be made much of by them. The King of *Tuban*, whom the *Hollanders* saw, in their third Voyage to the *Indies*, delighted much in these Creatures, as likewise in Dogs, Horses and white Ducks, by much larger then ours. He had four legitimate Wives, six Sons, and two Daughters, besides natural Children a great number by Concubines, which he kept in several Appartments. His Bed was raised some distance from the ground, built like an Altar of great Stones, whereon lay a Quilt and certain Pillows of Sattin, filled with raw Silk.

The Chief Commerce they have at *Tubzon* consists in *Pepper*, which they carry to the Isle of *Body*, where they truck for Cloath, and Stuffs of Cotton and Silk, which afterwards they bring to *Banda*, *Ternate*, the *Philippines*, and other parts, to truck for Cloves, Mace and Nutmegs. The Inhabitants, for the greatest part live only on Fish. They wear no other Garment then a Linnen-cloath about the Loyns; only persons of Quality sometimes have loose Coats of *Chamelot*, which reach but to their Thighs. They are by this habit distinguished from other persons, and by their train of Slaves, without whom they never come abroad. They delight much in Horses, and to have their Saddles exceeding rich, which are made like our great Saddles, and their trappings studded with Gold and Silver, striving to appear well mounted at Assemblies, and to shew the King their horsemanship, and the nimbleness of their Horses.

1639.

The Inhabitants that live in the inner parts of the Isle of *Java* are *Pagans*, and the greatest part *Pythagoreans*, believing a transmigration of the Soul; for which reason they eat neither Fish nor Flesh. Towards the South part of the Isle, there are, though but few, some *Mahometans*, as we said before, and they observe the *Turkish* Religion in all things, sending for Priests to *Meca*.

The Javians, Mahometans.

They observe two Fasts. The greater of the two begins the fifth of *August*, and at the beginning of this Lent it is, the Slaves renew their submission to their Master, with Ceremonies extraordinary. For they take them by the feet, and rub them upward to the knees; then closing their hands, they rub the head, face and neck; and then unclothe them again.

Fasts.

Lent being ended, they celebrate *Easter*, entertaining their Children and all their Domesticks with a Dinner. There is scarce a Man in *Bantam*, who hath not three or four Wives, and some have ten or twelve, besides Concubines, who wait on their Wives especially when they go abroad. They make no difference betwixt legitimate and natural Children. A Father hath not power to sell his Child, though he had it by a Slave. Children go stark naked, only the Girls cover their Privities with a thin plate of Gold or Silver. They marry at the age of eight, nine, or ten years, not only to prevent the disorders which in this hot Climate were inevitable, but because the King is Heir to all, who dying, leave their Children under age; whom he makes his Slaves, as he doth the Widow and Family of the deceased. The Dowry Persons of Quality give with their Daughters consists in Slaves of both Sexes, and in a sum of *Coxas*, which is very considerable, when it amounts to three hundred thousand, which is much about two Crowns and a half *French* money.

Divers Wives.

Young marriages.

The Women appear with great decency at the marriage of their Relations, though they use no great ceremonies. One may know the day by certain Poles which are stuck in the Houses of the Bride and Bridegroom, with Tassels of red and white Cotton.

Dinner ended, they bring a Horse to the Bridegroom, whereon he rides about the Town till evening, expecting the slaves he is to have in marriage, who come commonly loaden with Presents. None but the nearest Kindred sup with them, and see the new married couple abed.

Women of Quality are kept in such restraint, that they suffer not their own Sons to come within their Chambers; and when they go abroad, which is very seldom, all give place and respect to them, even the King himself would do it: nor dares any man speak to a married Woman without the leave of her Husband. Women of Quality are known from others, only by their Train; for all are dressed after the same fashion, wearing a Petticoat of Cotton or Silk, which comes from the Breast to the mid-leg. Stockings they have none, and go all bare-headed, tying up their Hair together on the Crown of their Head; but when they come to Weddings, or other publick Assemblies, they wear a Coronet of Gold, and have on their Fingers and about their Arms Rings and Bracelets. They are so much addicted to cleanliness, that there passes not a day but they bathe themselves three or four times. They do not their natural necessities, nor receive their benevolences from their Husbands, but they go up to the Neck in Water to cleanse themselves: They do no work at all, which needs be no wonder, for the Husbands themselves having employed two or three hours about their Merchandize, all the day after do nothing but chew *Bettele* amongst their Wives, who are most solicitous, by all the little kindnesses they can imagine, to court their love, washing and rubbing them till they are stir'd up to voluptuousness.

The Magistrate of the Town of *Bantam* sits in Judicature in the Court of the *Pace-Magistrate* *bam*, from four or five in the Evening till it be Night. The Plaintiff and Defendant appear both in person, and plead their own Cause. One only punishment of Criminals is, they tye them to a post, and stab them to death with a *Poyniard*: Strangers have this privilege,

of Bantam.

1639. viledge, that giving satisfaction to the party complaining, they may redeem themselves from death, except they have murdered in cold blood, or upon advantage.

The Kings  
Council.

The Kings Council meets upon Affairs of State, under a broad spread Tree, by Moonlight, where sometimes there come near five hundred persons, who part not till the Moon go down. When the Council is risen they go to bed, and there lye till dinner time: afterwards the Councillours of State give audience to all who have ought to propose to the Council. When the King comes there in person, he sits in the midst of them; or else with the four principal Ministers of State, and propounds the point wherein he requireth their advice, or causes the Governour of the Town to propound it. To a Council of War they call the three hundred Captains, Commanders of the Troops the Armies consist of, which is raised in the Town it self. They have a particular course for quenching fire, which happens but too often among them; for the Women have this Office imposed upon them, while the Men stand in Arms to defend them in the mean time from pillage.

The train  
and state of  
the Nobility

Persons of Quality, when they go to Court, or through the Town, have carried before them a Lance, and a Sword sheath'd in a black Velvet Scabbard, and by these Ensigns oblige all the Street to make way for them, who retiring back, sit on their Heels till these Grandees are past. Their ordinary wear is of Stuff wrought with Silk, and they wear Turbants of a fine *Bengalian* Cloath. Some amongst them wear Mandillions of Velvet, black or crimson, and never forget the Dagger or Poyniard under their Girdle. They ever go with a numerous train of Slaves; one amongst them carrying the *Bettele*-bottle, another the Chamber-pot, and a third the Umbrello. They all go bare-footed, it being thought a disparagement among them, to walk with Shooes through the Town. In their Houses many wear them; they are made at *Achim*, *Malacca* in *China*, and the Isle of *Sumatra*, where are also made most part of the Umbrello's used in the *Indies*.

The quali-  
ties of the  
Javians.

The *Javians* are haughty, self-conceited, perfidious, mischievous, and cruel; who never fail to make an end of such they once get advantage of; and having once committed a murder, they kill all in their power; for knowing death to be their inevitable reward, they discharge their fury indifferently on all they encounter, without consideration of sex or age; so as sometimes they are constrained to kill them in the place, instead of taking them to be delivered up into the hands of Justice.

They generally wear long hair, are of a Chestnut Complexion, having great Jaw-bones, flat Faces, great Eyebrows, little Eyes, thin Beards; and being of a middle stature, well set, and strongly limb'd. They are addicted naturally to theft, and so vindictive, that to be revenged of an Enemy, they stick not to run upon his Weapons, and hazard an assured death, to take away anothers life.

Good Soul-  
diers.

This bloody disposition shews they have courage, and would make good Souldiers, were they but as dextrous at Fire-arms as they are at their usual Weapons; which are the Pike, the Battle-axe, and the broad Sword, but above all the Dagger, or Poyniard. Their Bucklers are of Wood, or boyled Leather stretcht upon a Hoop; and for their bodies they have Cuirasses, the pieces being fastned together with mails of Iron. Souldiers in time of peace have no pay, but in time of war they have Arms and Clothes, and Rice and Fish for provision. They are all Slaves, and not only such as belong to the King, but likewise to other Lords, who are obliged to enroll them for their Princes service. They are seldom or never idle, but imploy themselves most commonly in making Sheaths for Ponyards of Sandalwood made hollow, or pollishing their Arms, which they generally poyson; keeping them so well, that no Raizer can be sharper then their Swords. The *Javaneses*, as indeed all the rest of the *Indians*, hold their Daggers so dear to them, that they will not speak to any man without that by their side, not one Brother with another, and at night they lay it under their Bolster. Some use Truncks, through which they blow little poysoned Arrows, so bearded, that pulling it out the head remains in the wound, which by this means becomes incurable and mortal. Amongst such a multitude of Villains, there are notwithstanding some honest people, but the number is very small: for except some that inhabit near *Bantam*, upon the Streight of *Sunda*, at the foot of the mountain *Gonon Besar*, who were transplanted thither from *Passaruan*, all the rest are depraved. The people not able to live under the tyranny of the King of *Passaruan*, put themselves on certain conditions under the protection of the King of *Bantam*, and have built the Town of *Sura*, which hath a peculiar King, but subordinate notwithstanding to the King of *Bantam*. They live very peaceably, and persevere in the exercise of their Pagan Religion.

Javians  
Sophisticate  
their wares.

The soyl is cultivated, either by free people, who take it of the King, or other Lords, at a certain rent, and are not bound to labour longer then their bargain, and may afterwards do what they please; or by Slaves, who cultivate the Pepper, Rice and *Cocoas*, breed Poultry

Poultry and Cattle for their Masters profit, and to supply his Kitchen. Some Slaves take the *Cocoas* at one thousand *Caxaes* the Tree. Others work by the day, and get eight hundred *Caxaes* a day, which is to their Masters profit. Others are not maintain'd by their Masters, but serve them six dayes, and the six dayes following work for themselves, and so get their livelyhood. The Woman slaves keep market, where they sell their Masters Pepper, and other Commodities; or else imploy themselves in sewing, or making Cloath, that they may not live unprofitably. When they have a mind to be eas'd of them, they lead them from Port to Port, and sell them to him will give most. The ordinary price for one of an able body is five *Fardos*, that is about a Pistol a-piece. The Children of a Slave belong to the Master, who disposes of them as he thinks best; but he hath not power over the life of his Slave, without the express consent of the King or Governour.

How they  
employ their  
Slaves.

The Pepper which the *Javians* sell to Strangers is usually mixt with Ordure, black Sand, or Gravel, or they adulterate it some other way, either in quality or weight, as they do all their other Commodities. They keep a trade with all the neighbouring Islands, with notable advantage. At the Towns of *Macasser* and *Surubya* they fetch Rice, which there they buy for one *Sata de Caxa* the *Gantan*, and sell it for double the price. At *Balambuan* they buy *Cocoas*, a thousand *Caxes* the hundred, and venting them by retail at *Bantam*, they sell eight *Cocoas* for two hundred *Caxes*. There they likewise buy the Oyl of the same Fruit. At *Joartam*, *Gerrici Pati*, and *Juama*, they fetch Salt at a hundred and fifty thousand *Caxaes* the eight hundred *Gantans*; and at *Bantam*, three *Gantans* are worth a thousand *Caxaes*. They carry Salt to *Sumatra*, where they truck for Lacque, Pepper, Benjamin, Cotton, Tortoise-shell, and divers others Commodities. From *Jacatra*, *Jappara*, *Crauaon*, *Timor* and *Palimbaon*, they fetch Honey, Wax, Sugar, &c. Salt-fish from *Crauaon* and *Bendermassing*; Iron from *Crimata*, in the Isle of *Borneo*; Copper and Lead from *Pepa* and *Gufelen*, upon the Coast of *Malacca*; from *Bali* and *Cambaya*, Cotton and Cotton-cloath, &c.

Rich Merchants make no Voyages themselves, but venture the greatest part of their money, for more or less profit, as the Voyages are long or dangerous, and near upon the like conditions we do here in *Europe*. Obligations, as all other Instruments, are written upon the bark of a Tree, the Letters engrav'd with a Bodkin, and they make it up in a Roll, or fold it four-square betwixt two boards, which they tye together with a Pack-thread very neatly. Sometimes they use *China* Paper, which is very fine, and of all colours. As yet they know not the Art of Printing, but they paint their own Characters exactly well, which are rather Figures then Letters. The usual Language is peculiar to the Country; but the *Malayan* is more general; the *Mahumetan* Religion hath likewise brought in the *Arabian* Language.

The *Persians*, by the *Javians* called *Coracons*, traffick here for precious Stones, and all sorts of Gums and Drugs, and are a people to be confided in, because they are open-hearted and civil. The *Arabians* and *Beguians* come thither for *China*-ware, and bring with them the Commodities of the neighbouring Islands. The *Malayans* and *Quilins* let their money out at Interest, or upon change. The *Gazurattans* are poor, and commonly Sea-men: All these Forreigners are attired all of one fashion, in a Cotton Garment, and a Turbant of the same stuffe. At their coming to *Bantam*, they buy a Woman that is for all uses; and at their departure thence, they sell her again; but if they have Children by her, they are tied to provide for them.

Strangers  
commerce  
there.

The *Chineses* are they that bring the greatest trade hither, the most industrious to get wealth, and live the best. They are a self-ended people, that live by Usury, and have there the same repute as the *Jews* in *Europe*. They go into the Country, with a weight in hand, to buy all the Pepper they can meet with, and having weighed one parcel, so as they may have a near guess at the rest, pay them present money, or according as they have occasion for it, and by this means engross so great a quantity, that they have sufficient to lade the *China* Fleet when it arrives, selling for fifty thousand *Caxaes* the Sack, what cost them but twelve thousand. This Fleet arrives at *Bantam* in the moneth of *January*, to the number of eight or ten, and are Vessels of forty or fifty Tun.

The trade of  
China.

By them likewise comes the money hither, which in the *Malayan* Language is called *Cas*, Coin of *Javan*, *Pity*, and is current, not only at *Bantam*, and all the Isle of *Java*, but through Java, all the neighbouring Islands. 'Tis a little thin plate made of Lead, and the Skum of Brast, so brittle, that letting fall a string of *Caxaes*, you shall break at least ten or twelve. They are made in the Town of *Chincoa* in *China*, and they are beholding to *Wany*, King of *China*, for them, who lived about the year 1590. and finding that the *Caxaes* made by

his

1639. his Predecessour *Huyien*, King of *China*, went not off, by reason the *Chineses* had so filled the adjacent Islands with them, he contrived this brittle money, which his Successour *Hamendon* put forth, as now it is corrupted. It hath a four-square hole through it, at which they string them on a Straw; a string of two hundred *Caxaes*, called *Sata*, is worth about three farthings sterling, and five *Satas* tyed together make a *Sapocon*. The *Javians*, when this money came first amongst them, were so cheated with the Novelty, that they would give six bags of Pepper for ten *Sapocons*, thirteen whereof amount but to a Crown. But they have had leisure enough to see their error; for in a short time, the Island was so filled with this stuffe, that they were compelled absolutely to prohibit all trading, which so disparaged this money, that at present two Sacks of Pepper will scarce come for one hundred thousand *Caxaes*.

Likewise from *China* they bring Purcelane, which they sell here at cheap rates; for at the first arrival of the *China* Fleet, six pieces of Purcelane may be bought for a thousand *Caxaes*. They bring their Country Silks, Sattins and Damask, and take away Pepper and Lacque, brought to *Bantam* from the City of *Tabanbaon*, *Anil* or *Indico* brought thither from the Town of *Anier*, Sandal-wood, Nutmegs, Cloves, Tortoise-shell, whereof they make Chests and Cabinets, Ivory, whereof they make Chairs for the *Mandorins*, who prefer this stuffe before Silver.

The Portuguez Commerce.

The *Portuguez* that deal at *Bantam* live out of Town, in the same Quarter with the *Chineses*. They drive here a great trade in Pepper, Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace, Sandal-woods, *Cubebs*, long Pepper, and other Drugs; and sell here Cotton, Cloath, and other Stuffs, sent them from *Malacca*: for the greater part of them are Factors, and Commissioners of the Governour of *Malacca*, and the Arch-bishop of *Goa*. At *Bantam* they have neither Priest nor Chappel; but at *Panarucan* they have both.

In the Isle of *Java* are all sorts of Beasts, both wild and tame: The Forrests are full of Elephants and Rhinocerots, Leopards and Tigers, which are more cruel and furious then those of any other place, and do so much mischief, that people go not without danger to gather Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrhe and Benjamin, which is there in its greatest perfection, and whereof there were great quantity to be gotten, if the Forrests were not almost inaccessible, by reason of the wild Beasts, as also for Serpents, Lizards, and Salamanders, exceeding dangerous, and of so extraordinary a growth, that there are Serpents have swallowed Children and Sheep intire. The Tigers and Leopards often come out of the Woods, and make great spoil amongst the Cattle, which for this reason are reared with great difficulty. Their Swine have no bristles, and are so fat their bellies trail on the ground.

Oysters of three hundred weight

The Rivers breed Fish in abundance; and Oysters have there been seen that have weighed three hundred pound; a thing would seem incredible, if *Olearius* in his Notes upon *Mandelslo's* Relation did not observe, that being in *Holland* in the year 1652. he bought at *Encluyfen*, of the Wife of a certain Sea-Captain, who had made a Voyage to the *Indies*, two Oyster-shells, that weighed four hundred sixty seven pounds, yet to be seen in the Duke of *Holstein's* Cabinet at *Gottorp*; and he adds, That the woman affirm'd there was so much meat within them, that it sufficed all that were in the Ship, being an hundred and twenty persons.

'Tis very hard to hunt Deer, Goats, Boars, and other game, fallow or black, which abound there, by reason the Woods are so thick, that 'tis impossible to make any way through them; and the *Javians* are so unskilful at their Fire-arms, that it hath been observ'd, That a *Javian*, having shot at a wild *Buffler*, made a shift to kill the beast; but the Musket recoyling, he fell down, with his cheek all bruised, and the loss of two of his teeth; in so much that these creatures may be seen in whole herds, feeding up and down the fields. There are likewise abundance of Apes, Foins, Squirrels, wild Peacocks and Parrots, and infinite other birds, exceeding beautiful to the eye.

Crocodiles.

In the Rivers there is abundance of Crocodiles, which seize not only on men bathing, but attempt the Cannows, as they pass along, snatching men out of them, and dragging them to the bottom. The *Chineses* tame this Creature, and fatten it, to be afterwards eaten as a great dainty. Their Civet yields as much perfume as that of *Guiny*; but it is neither so white, nor so good.

Civet

Hens.

They have two sorts of Poultry, one like ours, the other betwixt ours and the *Indian* kind; and these last, which are in a manner monsters, are so furious, they will fight till death decides the battel. Amongst the common sort there are some whose flesh is black, yet are they very good meat.

Rhinoceros.

The Rhinocerot, by the *Indians* called *Abadu*, is not so ordinary in the Isle of *Java*, as in *Bengala*, *Patane*, and other places, though there are some; and the *Javians* make so great account

account of this Beast, that there is nothing about him which they use not in medicine, not only the Flesh, the Bloud, the Horn, the Teeth, but even his very Dung : They hold there is no better Antidote against Poyson, and attribute the same qualities to this, that ancient Authors do to the Unicorn. 1639.

The Ants are exceeding troublesom in most of these places, but chiefly in the Isle of *Ants:*  
*Java* : They are much bigger then in our parts, and so mischievous, that there is no Stuff they spoil not, nor Victuals they consume not, if they can get to it ; wherefore they ordinarily set the feet of Tables and Cupboards in Tubs half filled with Water, to hinder the Ants from creeping up ; and 'twere impossible to preserve any Birds, did they not set them on Poles planted in a Dish of Water ; for should they put them in a Cage, the Ants would get up and kill them. There is besides another sort of Ants, about the length of a Mans finger, and red ; but these are only in the Fields, where they live on the barks of Trees and Herbs.

As concerning the Trees and Fruits in the Isle of *Java*, amongst others there is the *Arcca.*  
*Arcca*, whereof we spoke a word by the way in the precedent Book. The *Portuguez* call the Tree that bears it *Arre quero*, the *Arabians*, *Fausell*, and *Malayans*, *Pynang*. It is a kind of *Cocoe*, but not so great, nor the leaves so big and broad. The Fruit is like a Date ; Nature incloses it in a husk, which opens not till it flower, and when it ripens, the shell falls off, the fruit remaining at the branch. It hath scarce any taste, but it moistens the mouth, dyes the lips red, and the teeth black. The *Indians* lap it up in a *Bettele*-leaf, mix a little Chalk or Lime with it, and chew it rather out of custom then for any pleasure, though they hold that it strengthens the Stomach and Gums, and is a topical Medicine against the Scurvy ; and in effect there is scarce an *Indian* that is subject to this Disease, or troubled with the Tooth-ach. This Drug will make some people to be drunk, that all things seem to turn round ; but that dizziness is presently over.

The *Mangas* grow on Trees not much unlike our Nut-trees, but they have not so many leaves. *Mangas:*  
They are of the bigness of a Peach, but longer, and something bending like a Crescent, of a light green, drawing a little towards the red. It hath a great shell, that encloses an Almond of greater length then breadth, and eaten raw very distasteful, but roasted on the Coals not unpleasant. 'Tis useful in Physick, against the Worms, and the *Diarrhea*. It ripens in *October*, *November*, and *December*, and being perfectly ripe, 'tis full as good as a Peach. They get them while they are green, and put them up in Salt, Vinegar, and Garlick, and then they call them *Mangas d' Achar*, and they serve in stead of Olives. There are likewise wild ones, which they call *Mangas brauas*, of a pale green too, but brighter then the other, and full of juyce, which is immediate death without a present Antidote.

The *Ananas* is one of the loveliest, pleasantest and wholesomest fruits of the *Indies*. *Ananas:*  
It grows on a bush, and hath leaves like *Semper-vivum*. The fruit at first is green, but being ripe turns Orange, or Aurora coloured, drawing a little to a Red, shap'd like a Pine-apple ; for which reason the *Portuguez*, who met with this fruit first in *Brasil*, called it *Pinas* : but 'tis tender and easie to cut. They are yellow within, of a delicate scent, they are eaten in Wine, but the excess is dangerous for Feavers. The juyce is so sharp, that if one wipe not the Knife they are cut with, next morning it will be found eaten. The Tree is so apt to grow, that a sprig will take root in the earth, though it have not past two or three leaves, be half withered, and have been cut fifteen dayes before. The *Canarins* call this fruit *Ananasa* ; the *Brasilians*, *Nava*, and in *Hispaniola*, and the other Western Islands, they call it *Fajama* : 'tis as big as the larger sort of Lemmons, or the middle Melons, excellent both in scent and taste. At distance they look like Hartichoaks, only they are not so picked as the leaves of that Plant. The stalk is like that of a Thistle, and every stalk bears but one, and that at the top of it ; for though many times it puts forth at the side o. her stems, yet the fruit that comes of them is very small, and seldom comes to maturity. They have of them in *March*, and then they are very pleasant, for the juyce hath the taste of sweet or new Wine, and is exceeding easie of digestion, but it heats, and often brings a Feaver.

In *Java* there is another fruit called *Samaca*, 'tis as big as a Citron, the colour green, something drawing to a red ; full of juyce, that is tart and toothsom, and within hath *Samaca.*  
divers black kernels : the leaves are like those of Lemmon-trees, but not so long. They put them up in Salt or Sugar, and use them as *Tamarinds*, against burning Feavers, Inflammations of the Breast, and pains in the Stomack, and Fluxes.

*Tamarinds* grow on great Trees, full of branches, whereof the leaves are not bigger *Tamarinds*  
then, nor unlike to the leaves of *Pimpernel*, only something longer. The flower at first is like the Peaches, but at last turns white, and puts forth its fruit at the end of certain strings :



1639. as soon as the Sun is set, the leaves close up the fruit, to preserve it from the Dew, and open as soon as that Planet appears again. The fruit at first is green, but ripening it becomes of a dark grey, drawing towards a red, inclosed in husks, brown or tawny, of taste a little bitter, like our Prunelloes. Every husk contains three or four little Beans in a certain skin, which is that the *Portuguez* call *Tamarinbo*. The fruit is viscous, and sticks to the fingers, but of so good a taste, that the *Indians* use it almost in all Sawces, as we do Verjuyce; but 'twould turn a mans stomach to see them cook Meat with this Drug; for squeezing it between their hands, the juyce that runs through their fingers looks more like a Medicine then a Sawce. These Trees bear twice in the year, and grow every where without being planted, or otherwise looked after. Physitians use this Drug against burning Feavers, heat of the Liver, and Diseases in the Spleen, and infused a night in cold Water, it purges gently. The *Tamarinds* brought to our parts, are either salted or preserved in Sugar. The Inhabitants of the Isle of *Madagascar*, where there grows plenty of it, call it *Quille*, and the *Javians*, *Sunda assn*. The *Portuguez* gave it the name of *Tamarindes*, for the resemblance the fruit holds with the Date in *Arabia*, called *Tamar*, as if they would say, Dates of *India*. The *Malabars* call it *Puli*, and the rest of the *Indians*, *Am-puli*. The Tree is as big as a Walnut-tree, full of leaves, bearing its fruit at the branches, like the Sheath of a Knife, but not so straight, rather bent like a Bow. The *Indians*, when they would transport their *Tamarinds*, take them out of the husks, and make them up in Balls as big as a Mans fist, unhandsome to look on, and worse to handle.

**Tabaxir.** We told you before, that 'tis common to plant Pepper near to a fort of Canes, by the *Javians* called *Mambu*, in which the *Tabaxir* is found. 'Tis true, in the Isle of *Java* there was never any of them found; but again 'tis certain, that on the Coast of *Malabar*, *Coromandel*, *Bijnagar*, and near to *Malacca*, this sort of Cane produces a Drug called *Sacar Mambu*, that is, Sugar of *Mambu*. The *Arabians*, the *Persians*, and the *Moors* call it *Tabaxir*, which in their Language signifies a white frozen liquor. These Canes are as big as the body of a Poplar, having straight branches, and leaves something longer then the Olive-tree. They are divided into divers knots, wherein there is a certain white matter like Starch, for which the *Persians* and *Arabians* give the weight in Silver, for the use they make of it in Physick, against burning Feavers, and bloody Fluxes, but especially upon the first approaches of any Disease.

**Boats of Canes.** These Canes are so big, that the *Indians* cleave them to make Boats, leaving a knot at each end, whereon they sit to guide it; one before, another behind, and use this sort of Boat the rather, for that they are perswaded, Crocodiles bear a respect to the *Mambu*, and never hurt the Boats made of this Cane.

**Duriaons.** In the Isle of *Java* there is another fruit, called, amongst the *Malayans*, *Duriaon*, not to be seen any where but in this place and the *Malaccas*. The Tree that bears them, by the *Malayans* call'd *Batan*, is as big as our Apple-tree, the bark thick, plentiful of boughs, and wealthy in fruit: the blossom, which they call *Buaa*, is white, inclining to yellow, and the leaves half a foot in length, and two or three fingers broad, on the outside, of a pale green, drawing towards a grey; but on the inside the green is very delicate and lively; the fruit is as big as a Melon, covered with a thick rough rind, green, and hath ribs, as the Melon; within 'tis divided into four quarters, which are again divided into two or three little cells, that contain the fruit, which is as big and white as a Pullets-egg, and of taste so delicious, that the *Bianco Mangiares*, which the *Portuguez* compound of Rice, Brawns of Capon, Cream, Sugar, and Rose-water, is not more dainty; each fruit hath a Stone as big and rough as that of the Peach: It will not keep; for when the white begins to turn, it must be thrown away, and must be eaten as soon as the husk begins to open. Such as are not used to this fruit will not like it at first, for that it hath the smell of a roasted Onyon; but the taste is so pleasing, that it may be reckoned amongst the prime and most excellent fruits of the *Indies*: One thing it is very remarkable for, that there is so great an antipathy between it and the *Bettele*, that the least number of *Bettele* leaves laid near a Room full of *Duriaons*, they corrupt and rot immediately. Accordingly, when a man hath eaten too much of this fruit, let him but lay two or three *Bettele* leaves upon his breast, and he shall be eased; and the eating of but one of these leaves after the *Duriaons* causes speedy digestion; so as thus one may eat as much as he will, without the least inconvenience.

**Lantor.** The *Lantor*-tree, which is another sort of *Cocoe*-tree, as we said before, is frequent in the Isle of *Java*. The leaves are five or six foot long, and so smooth, that the *Javians* write upon it with a Bodkin, and use it instead of Paper.

Of all the *Indies*, no part bears *Cubebs* but the Isle of *Java*: the *Javians* call it *Cucimbi*, and *Cumuc*; the other *Indians* call it *Cuba China*, because the *Chineses* first fetch'd it thence to furnish other parts, before the *Portuguez* or *Hollanders* had any Commerce there. This Fruit grows up another Tree, like Pepper, and in bunches like Grapes. The *Javians* knowing 'tis not any where but with them, esteem it so, as they will not suffer a Plant to go from amongst them, and sell it not unbov'd, for fear it should be planted elsewhere, though there is such plenty of it, that a *Baruth*, a weight of fifty six pounds, is worth but six, or, at the most, seven thousand *Caxaers*. The use of it is to fortifie the Stomach, and cleanse the Breast; but the *Mahumetans* take it with a little *Areca*, and are of opinion it restores languishing and spent Nature.

The *Mangosthan* is a Fruit growing by the High-ways in *Java*, upon bushes, like our Sloes, and much of the same taste.

The Hearb the *Javians* call *Talasse*, and which the *Malayans* call *Lalade*, bears neither Fruit nor Flower; but 'tis used in Sauces, and some eat it green, and assign it the same virtues as they do the *Cubebs*.

In *Java* they have another Fruit, which grows likewise in other places, call'd *Jaca*, in form and bigness like a Citrul, with a thick and rough rind: Within 'tis full of certrin Nuts, the Kernels whereof, being toasted on coals, are good to eat, and stay the Flux of the belly. The Tree is very great; but the boughs being not strong enough to bear the Fruit, it hangs all along the body of it, up from the very ground: Being full ripe, the rind grows hard and black, and emits a very sweet scent; the Fruit it self often changes taste, yielding one while that of the Melon, another that of the Peach, sometimes that of Honey, sometimes that of a sweet Lemmon; but is so hard of digestion, that 'tis never eaten, but vomited up again: The Nut of it is as big as a Date, and causes windiness in those that eat them green; but roasted after the manner we told you, they are very pleasant, and good for such as have a kindness for Women.

In the same Island, towards the Streight of *Sunda*, there grows also abundance of wild Cinnamon, which the *Portuguez* call *Canela de Mato*, and the *Malayans*, *Cajumanis*. It is not near so good as the fine Cinnamon, whence it comes that there is but little of it bought, it being hardly worth the transportation.

The *Carcapuli* is a Fruit about the bigness of a Cherry, and much of the same taste, and the Trees which bear it are like our Cherry-trees. Of these there are several kinds, whereof some are white, some of a dark red, and some of a lively carnation colour.

The *Costus Indicus*, by the *Malayans* called *Pucho*; by the *Arabians*, *Cost* or *Cast*, is the wood and root of a Tree that resembles the Elder-tree, as well in height as in flower and scent: The *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Arabians*, make an extraordinary Traffick of it, as they likewise do of *Calamus Aromaticus*, which also grows on the Coast of the Streight of *Sunda*. That yellow and spongy matter, which Women use against pains in the Matrix, is properly in the Stalk of it. The *Javians* give it to their Horses, compounding it with Garlick, Cummin-feed, Salt, Sugar, and Butter; making it into a Paste, which they call *Arata*; and they hold it very sovereign for these beasts, to whom notwithstanding they never give it, till the extremity of the heats be over.

The *Zerumbet*, which the *Javians* and *Malayans* call *Canior*, likewise grows in these parts, and is like to Ginger, only the Leaves something more long and broad. They use to dry it, or preserve in Sugar, as they do Ginger, but esteem it above Ginger.

There are two kinds of *Galanga*, by the *Arabians* called *Caluegian*. The lesser comes from *China*, and is much better then that which is brought out of the Isle of *Java*, where they call it *Languus*. This Herb is neither sowed nor set, but grows naturally, and is about two foot high above the ground, the flower is white, and the leaves pointed, and as hard as the point of a Knife. The *Javians* use it for a Sallad, as also in Physick; as they do the root, which is thick and long, and full of knots like a Cane, as biting in taste as Ginger, and of a very sweet scent.

*Benjamin* is a Gum distilling from Trees not unlike Lemmon-trees. While they are young the *Benjamin* is black, which is the best; but as they grow old the *Benjamin* grows white, and loses strength, so as to put it off, they mingle it with black: The *Moors* call it *Lovan Javy*, that is, Incense of *Java*.

In the Forrest of *Java* there grow Trees of red *Sandale*; but the white and yellow *Sandale*, which is without comparison the better, comes from the Isles of *Timor* and *Solor*. This Tree is of the bigness of a Walnut-tree, and bears a fruit not unlike our Cherries, but is black and insipid. The *Indians* beat white and yellow *Sandale*, and

639. make a Concoction wherewith they rub their Bodies, not only for the scent, but for that they believe 'tis restorative. They value not red *Sandale*, but sell it at cheap rates to other parts.
- Ginger. They have likewise abundance of Ginger, by the *Malayans* called *Aliaa*, and by the *Javians*, *Gauri*; but they either eat it green in Sauces, or preserve it, for they never dry it.
- Anacardium. *Anacardium*, by the *Portuguez* called *Fava de Malacca*, by reason of its likeness to a Bean, is very common here, and the *Javians* take it in Milk against the Asthma, and against the Worms: some pickle them as they do Olives, and they are altogether as pleasant as the Olives.
- Palo de cuebro. That Wood, the *Portuguez* call *Pala de cuebra*, grows there in great abundance. It is white, inclining to yellow, hard and bitter. The *Indians* bruise it, and take it in Wine or Water against burning Feavers, and the stinging of Serpents. 'Tis said, that for this cure they are beholding to a Creature in size and shape like our Ferrets, by them called *Quit* or *Quirpela*, which they breed for recreation, and to catch Rats and Mice: this little Beast being a mortal enemy to Serpents, never meets with any of them, but it sets upon them, and being bitten runs immediately to this root, which is his present cure.
- Calamba. *Palo d' Aguila*, by Druggists called *Lignum Aloes*; by the *Portuguez*, *Palo d' Aguila*; and by the *Indians*, *Calamba*, grows in *Java*, but not in such quantity as in *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Cambaya*, and other places. The Tree is like the Olive-tree, only a little bigger. The Wood, while green, hath no scent, but as it dries its odour increases. The weightiest and brownest is the best; the perfection is known by the Oyl that issues out of it when 'tis held to the fire. They make Beads of it, and the *Indians* use it to imbellish their Cabinets, but the chiefest use of it is for Physick. For this Wood beaten to powder, and taken in broath or wine, fortifies the Stomack, staves vomiting, and cures the Pleurisie and bloody Flux. That the *Portuguez* call *Aguila brava*, or wild *Calamba*, is not so good as the other, and the *Indians* chiefly use it at the Funerals of their *Bramans*, making the fire of it that burns the Corps.
- Lacque. At *Bantam* likewise they sell store of *Lacque*, whereof they make *Spanish wax*, and the Varnish they lay over so many excellent works in *China*, *Japan*, and other places. *Java* produces of it; but the best comes from *Pegu*, where 'tis called *Tieck*, and where great and winged Ants get up the trees and suck the Gum, which afterwards they lay upon the boughs as Bees do Honey and Wax: when the boughs are full, the owners cut them, setting them to dry in the Sun, till the *Lacque* falls from the boughs, then they beat it to powder, and give it what colour and form they please.
- Other Drugs in Java. The other Drugs gotten in *Java*, are, *Pody*, a mealy kind of substance, which they use against Rhume and Wind; *Carumba* or *Flors*, a Root whereof they make Sauces, and wherewith they dye their Cotton-clothes. *Conjuapi* is a Wood wherewith they rub their bodies. *Samparentam* is a Root found near *Sunda*, stronger then Ginger, and very bitter. *Pontion* they hold good against Feavers, but 'tis exceeding dear. *Gatogamber* is a Fruit like an Olive, good against the tooth-ach. *Ganti* a Root so like Ginger, that the *Javians* have given it the same name; but 'tis dearer; and with it they rub their bodies. *Sasam* is Mustard-seed. *Doringi* is a Drug they give Children as soon as they come into the world. *Galam*, a Root growing in the water, and is very refreshing. *Tianco*, a Fruit they beat and take in water as soon as they find themselves ill. *Maidian*, *Maya* and *Corossani*, are intoxicating Drugs they mix in their drinks. *Spodium* is the ashes of a Tree growing near *Sunda*, wherewith they rub their bodies, as they do with *Sary*, which is a Flower. The *Targary*, *Suraban* and *Sedowaya*, are Roots for the same use. *Sambaya* is the Fruit the *Chineses* call *Geiduar*, as big as an Acorn; of high price, by reason 'tis not ordinary, and is a sovereign Remedy against Poyson, and the biting of Venomous beasts. *Ialave* is like *Sambaya*, and of the same use in Medicine. *Paravas* is a very cooling Hearb, but very scarce, and very dear. *Tomonpute* is a Root like *Galigan*, used against Inflammations of the Spleen. The *Conduri*, which the *Javians* call *Saga*, are red Berries, spotted with black, wherewith they weigh Gold and Silver, but are not to be eaten, they are so bitter, and, as some say, poysonous. There is likewise *Azebar*, the *Sycomore*, the *Nux Indica*, and divers other Trees, Plants and Drugs, to *Europeans* some known, some unknown, but 'twould require a peculiar Treatise to name them all, and would fill a large Volumn to describe their good and bad qualities.

The *Javians* making their benefit of the *Portuguez* ingratitude to the *Indian* Princes, who entertain'd them, do constantly oppose the establishment of any Strangers in the Isle: But the profit the Kings of *Bantam* and *Jacatra* received, by venting their Spices to the *English* and *Dutch* was so considerable, that at last they consented, that the people of those

two Nations should build a House for such Factors as they should have occasion to leave there, and for stowing up the Commodities they traffick'd in. The *Dutch*, by treaty with those Kings, regulated the Customs of Importation and Exportation; but those Articles were so ill kept by the *Indian* Kings, who raised their rates according as they discovered the Strangers necessity of Commerce, that the *Dutch*, to avoid this injustice, and secure themselves from the violences of the *Barbarians*, by degrees secretly fortified their Quarters at *Jacatra*, and in a short time made it defensible. The *Indians* perceiv'd it not, till 'twas past their hopes of forcing it; so as in this despair of driving out the *Dutch*, they made use of the bad correspondence betwixt the *English* and them, which chiefly appear'd in a Sea-fight they had near *Bantam* and *Jacatra*, *January 2. 1619.* The *Holland* Fleet, which consisted but of seven Vessels, had the worst of the *English*, that were eleven. The *Dutch* being forced to retreat, the King of *Jacatra*, with the *English* Forces, belieg'd the *Dutch* Fort, now called *Batavia*; which Siege lasted six moneths, till the *Holland* General, having reinforced his Fleet with the Ships that lay in the *Molucques*, constrain'd the *English* to raise the Siege, to embark their Guns, and quit the Streight of *Sunda*, to get into the main Sea. The King of *Jacatra* would have cast the blame of all these disturbances upon the *English*; but the *Dutch* General would not be satisfied with such excuses, but landing his Forces, to the number of eleven hundred men, he assaulted the Town of *Jacatra*, which he took by force, and, having put all to the sword, fir'd it. That done, the *Dutch* compleated the fortification of their Quarters, and brought it to a regular form, with four Bastions of Free-stone, well trench'd and pallisado'd, with Half-moons, Redoubts, and other necessary Works. The King of *Matram*, who is as 'twere Emperour of *Java*, in the year 1628. besieg'd this Fort, and, lying under the Cannon, storm'd it several times; but in the end was forc'd to raise the Siege, as hein like manner was the year following; and since that time the *Dutch* have established their Commerce joyntly with the *Chineses*, the *Iaponeses*, *Siameses*, *Succadans*, and other Neighbours, taking ten in the hundred Custom upon all Commodities, whether brought thither, or carried thence.

The City of *Batavia* is twelve Leagues from *Bantam* Eastward, in a Bay, which being fheltred with some small Islands on the Sea side, is one of the best Roads in all the *Indies*. Strangers that inhabit there pay a certain tax by the moneth, according to the profit they make, which is great: for a Porter, who will with ease get two Ryals a day, payes but one and a half in a moneth; a Fruiterer four Ryals; a Fisherman three Ryals; Distillers of *Arack* eight Ryals; Mechanicks, as Shoemakers, Taylors, &c. two Ryals so as at present the most important place and firm est establishment the *Dutch* have throughout the *Indies*.

Between the Isles of *Java* and *Borneo*, North-east from the former, lies the Isle of *Madura*, governed by a particular Prince, that resides in the City of *Arossabaya*. In this Isle there is no Commerce at all, as well because the soil is barren of all Spices, as for that 'tis inaccessible, by reason of the Shelves of Sand that on all sides environ it. The Islanders, for the most part, live by Piracy, and run up to the very Coasts of *Pegu*, which their Neighbours are forced to connive at, least they should hinder the exportation of Rice, which is there in great abundance. The *Hollanders*, who had been hardly used by the *Javians*, near *Tubam* and *Cidayo*, Towns three Leagues from *Joartam* in the Isle of *Java*, coming in sight of the Isle of *Madura*, in the beginning of *December, 1596.* and apprehending some danger to be taken by certain *Praus*, or Ships equipped for War, where the Prince and *Cherif*, or High Priest of the Island, were in person; to prevent the *Javians*, whose intent was to surprize them, fir'd some Guns at the great *Prau*, where the King, and *Cherif*, with divers others, lost their lives; for that Ship being three Tires high, and filled with Souldiers, there was not a Gun fired which destroyed not a great number; so as the *Hollanders*, who in the mean time got into their Shallops, with little difficulty became Masters of them. This done, they made no stay there, but sail'd from thence to the Isle of *Baly*, where they arriv'd *January 30. 1597.*

The Isle of *Baly* lyes towards the Oriental part of the Isle of *Java*, being in circuit about twelve Leagues, towards the South, putting out a Cape or Promontory a long way into the Sea. The North point of it is eight degrees and a half beyond the Line, and the chief City, where the King hath a magnificent Palace, derives its name to the Island.

The Islanders are *Pagans*, and adore the first thing they meet with at their going out in the morning; they are black, and their Hair curling: In habit they differ nothing from their neighbour-Islanders, with whom they likewise correspond, in wearing no Beards; for when the Hair first begins to come, they pluck it up by the roots. Their Women;

who

1639. who have an averſion to Beards, oblige them to do ſo, as alſo to ſquat down when they make water, becauſe Dogs, held with them unclean beaſts, piſs ſtanding. There is not a Man but hath ſeveral Wives, whence the Iſland grows ſo populous, that they reckon upon fix hundred thouſand Souls there, though they give way for abundance of Slaves to be bought from them. The greateſt part are Husbandmen or Weavers; by reaſon the Land produces great ſtore of Cotton, and is very proper for Rice; but they permit not any to be transported, leſt ſome hard year ſhould bring them to a neceſſity of being beholdiſg to their Neighbours. They have ſtore of Oxen, Buffles, Goats and Swine; likewiſe Horſes, but they are ſo ſmall, that none but the Country people uſe them; Perſons of Quality being carried in Sedans or Coaches. Their Forreſts of Oranges, Lemmons and Pomecitrons, are ſtored with Feafants, Partridges, Peacocks and Turtles; their back-Yards ſwarm with Poultry, and their Fens and Rivers with Ducks and other wild Fowl.
- Abounds in Rice.** In the whole Iſland there is no other Spice then Ginger, which generally grows in all parts of the *Indies*, but here are found ſeveral other Drugs, as *Galigan*, *Doringui*, *Canior*, *Bangué*, &c. as likewiſe a certain Fruit, incloſed in a Shell, like a Cheſnut, white within, of excellent taſte, and ſovereign againſt the Scurvy; alſo another Fruit as big as a Walnut, that grows in the ground, like the Saligots.
- Fowl.** The Coaſts of the Iſland, and the Rivers, ſo abound in Fiſh, that, next to Rice, 'tis the ſubſiſtence of the Inhabitants. They entertain in a manner no Commerce, only they ſet forth ſome ſmall Barks to the Iſle of *Java*, for vending their Cotton-clothes. The *Chineſes* ſometimes come hither to fetch it, and in exchange bring them Sword-blades and Purcelane. This is a common Road for all Ships bound from the Continent to the *Molucques*, which here take in water and reſreſhments, proviſions being at exceeding cheap rates. Iron and Braſs Mines there are, as likewiſe Gold, but the King will not ſuffer them to be wrought, for fear of attempting his Neighbours to an Invaſion; he is well furniſhed with ſtore of Gold-plate for his own ſervice. Subjects render him the ſame reſpect, and ſpeak to him with the ſame Ceremony, as the other *Indians* do to their King. He ſeldom appears in publick, but all Addreſſes are made to a Noble man, in whom the direction of Affairs lies. He is intitled *Quillor*, which is the ſame as Conſtable, or Grand-Minifter, in other places. He governs by divers other Perſons of Quality, who have their Diviſions and Provinces to regulate, according to Orders from him. The Kings name is in ſuch veneration amongſt them, that all the Subjects unanimouſly joyn in a moment to oppoſe any diſturbance to the peace of the State.
- Drugs.** As appear'd in the end of the laſt preceding Age, in the perſon, a Prince of the blood, who riſing againſt the King, and having ſome deſign upon the life of his Prince, was immediately taken and condemn'd to death: but the King in compaſſion chang'd his Sentence, to perpetual exile in *Pulo raza*, that is, the deſert Iſland, where he ſtood confin'd with all his Complices, who ſo well did cultivate it, that divers other families have been ſince tranſplanted thither. They retain the *Pagan* Religion they profeſs in the Iſle of *Baly*, and quit not that accurſed cuſtom, for Women to burn themſelves after the death of their Huſbands.
- Fiſh.** The Iſle of *Borneo* lyes more North then *Java*, and is one of the greateſt in thoſe parts: 'tis ſituate under the Equinoctial Line, but ſo, as the greater part is on this ſide of it, extending to ſix degrees towards the North. Some do aſſign it four hundred Leagues in circumference, as *Bartholomew Leonardo de Argenſola*, who wrote the Hiſtory of the Conqueſt of the *Molucques*, and others; but the *Hollanders* allow it but two hundred and fifty Leagues. The principal Towns are *Borneo*, *Succidava*, *Landa*, *Sambas*, and *Benghemaffin*.
- Gold Mines.** The City of *Borneo*, from which the Iſland derives its name, ſtands in a *Marſh*, as *Venice* doth; ſo as there is no paſſing from Street to Street but by boat. The ſame *Argenſola* ſayes, it contains 23000. Houſes, but the *Dutch* allow it but two thouſand. The beſt Camphire in the *Indies* is gotten in the Iſle of *Borneo*: Here is alſo Gold and *Bezoar*. This Stone breeds in the Maw of a Sheep or Goat, about a knot of Graſs that ſtays in the Maw, and is often found within the Stone. The *Persians* call theſe Beaſts *Bazans*, and the Stone *Bazar*, which is, a Market, as by excellence proper for a Market or Fair: and from the ſame word comes the *Bazarucques*, the leaſt Money that is ſent to the Market. The Stone is ſmooth and greeniſh, and the more ſubſtantial and weighty it is, the better it is, and of the greater vertue. In the Country of *Pan*, near *Malacca*, they find a Stone in the Gall of a certain Swine, more highly eſteem'd then the *Bazar*. It is of a reddiſh colour, as ſmooth and ſlippery in the feeling as Soap, and exceeding bitter; ſo that when it is to be uſed, they only ſleep it in cold water, and the water is a moſt ſovereign Antidote againſt

against all poyson, and an effectual cordial against all infectious Diseases. Here they have likewise Diamonds, *Sapan-wood* for dying, as also *Brasile*, Wax, and good store of Pepper, Frankincense, Maltick, and all other sorts of Gums. 1639.

The Island hath divers Havens and Roads, but its Cities are not very populous. *Borneo* The Haven is better then the rest, and the Haven upon the mouth of a fair River, is large and very commodious. The *Spaniards* were once Masters of the Haven, but they quitted it, because the Air was so unhealthful they could not subsist. Their Houses are of Timber, but so slightly built, that they ordinarily pull them down to change their habitations, or pass over to the other side of the River. They are an ingenious and dexterous people, but addicted to theft, and great affecters of Pyracry, so as sometimes they will cruze up and down the Sea as far as the Coasts of *Pegu*, which is four hundred Leagues from that Island. They use all sorts of Arms, as Swords, and *Gosos*, which are Bucklers made of boyled Leather, Lances, Darts, and a sort of Pikes they call *Seliber*, the wood whereof is extremely hard, but withall so small and brittle, that if it break in a Wound, it leaves Splinters, that render the part incurable. The King is a *Mahumetan*, as also the greatest part of the Islanders on the Sea coast; but they that live in the heart of the Island are *Pagans*. Their hue is rather black then tawny; they are of compact well proportioned bodies, and inhabited near like the rest of the *Indians*, with a Linnen about their loins, and on their heads a little Turbant.

On the first of *October*, in the year 1609. the *Hollanders* treated with the King of *Sambas* The Hollanders treat with the King of Sambas. for establishing a Commerce of Diamonds, which are to be found in the Mountains far within the Country; and since have made one for Pepper, with the King of *Borneo*, with exclusion of all other Forreigners; but the *Borneans* are no more faithful in the observance thereof then the other *Indians*.

Betwixt the Isle of *Borneo* and *Molocques*, under the Equinoctial Line, lies the Isle of *Celebes* Celebes Isle.; and if credit may be given to *Mercator*, this is one of the three Islands *Ptolemy* calls *Sindus*. The chief City here is called *Macassar*, and lies in the most Southerly part of the Island, five degrees, seventeen minutes, beyond the Line. It abounds in all sorts of Provisions, particularly Rice, wherewith in the moneths of *March*, *April* and *May*; the Territory is so entirely covered, that 'tis not to be imagined there is an inch untill'd: and in effect, besides what they convert to pasture for their Cattle, and what they assign for their *Cocoas*, there is not the least parcel lyes unfowed. In the face they are like the people of *Pegu* and *Siam*, and 'twas but in the beginning of the present Age they deserted *Paganisme*, and imbraced the *Mahumetan* Religion. 'Tis said, that in the time of *Paganisme* they were *Anthropophagi*, and that the Kings of the *Molucques* sent their Malefactors to them to be devoured. But it may be averr'd for truth, that at this day the *Indies* have not a people so tractable as they: yet they are couragious and irreconcilable where they once declare enmity. Their chief Armes is Bow and Arrow, whereof they impoyson the head to render the Wound mortal. The Men are of a comely make, carrying in their Prepuce a Ball or two of Ivory, or a Fish-bone, massie, and not hollow, like the *Siameses* and *Peguans*: but this custom by degrees wears out, as that amongst the Women, to cut their Hair off; for at present they let it grow, and coil themselves as the *Malayans* do. Women, when they walk the Streets, and Slaves, have their Breasts open, and wear Breeches that reach from the Navil to the Knee; but when they bathe in their Cisterns or Wells in the Street, they are stark naked. The Houses of *Macassar* are built upon Piles, and rais'd nine or ten foot above the ground, by reason of the Rains which fall with the West and North-west Winds from *November* till *March*, during which season the Road is exceeding dangerous, and almost useles, because 'tis impossible Vessels should get near the Shore, to lade their Rice.

Upon the same Island there is a King of *Tello*, and another of *Battergoa*, who are the most powerful next to that of *Macasser*. The *Dutch* Relations tell wonders of the prudence of the former, and attest they met there with Barks and Frigots so artificially built, their most experienced Carpenters acknowledged, that they could not possibly have improv'd their Art to that perfection. He had settled Granaries throughout his Dominions, to store up Rice, which was not to be stirr'd till a new recruit had furnisht him with sufficient to replenish it; and did all he could to engross the Commerce to himself; for which purpose he had his Factors at *Banda*, to vend his Cotton-clothes, and lade, in exchange; Mace and other Spices.

The Isle of *Gilolo*, called by the *Portuguez*, *Bato China de Moro*; by the *Molucquez*, *Alemaera*, is much larger then *Celebes*: it yields good store of Rice, of *Sagu*, whereof we shall have occasion to speak presently, in the description of the *Molucques*, wild Hens, and Tortoises of extraordinary size. The Natives are well proportioned, but savage, and not long since *Anthropophagi*, as the *Celebans* were. Amboyna

1639. *Amboyna* is an Island so near adjoining to the *Molucques*, that some have reckon'd it in the number of them, as well for the situation, as for the production of Cloves, which are said to be kindly no where but in the *Molucques*. 'Tis situate four degrees beyond the Line, two Leagues from the Isle of *Ceiram*, and is in circuit about twenty four. On the West-side of the Capital Town there is a Bay of six Leagues, composing a good Road, where Ships are well sheltered from all Winds. By reason of this Bay the Sea wants not much of cutting thorow the Island; for on the other side the Sea advances so far within the Land, that it leaves but a small Isthmus of about sixscore fathom over. The Island being thus, as 'twere, divided into two parts, the lesser, wherein is the Castle of *Amboyna*, contains twenty small Towns, or rather so many Villages, which can send forth about two thousand men, able to bear Arms. The greater part hath four Towns, which have each seven Villages substitute, and can arm about fifteen hundred men. The Natives were heretofore brutish, and, like their Neighbours, *Anthropophagi*, or Canibals, in so much that they would devour their Parents, when age made them decrepit, or when they were visited with any desperate Disease. The Land it self lay wild, and overgrown with Forrests; but at present 'tis exceeding fertile, and, besides Cloves, bears all other sorts of Fruits, as Lemmons, Oranges, *Cocoas*, *Bonanas*, Sugar-canes, &c. Oranges particularly are so plentiful, that one may buy fourscore for a Button. The Inhabitants are a sort of simple people, habited like the *Bandayans*, living meanly enough on what they get by the Clove-husbandry. They use no other Arms then the Dart, (which they cast so dexterously, that they will not miss the breadth of a Crown piece threecore paces distant) the Cimeter, and Buckler. They make a sort of Cakes of Rice, Almonds and Sugar, which they sell to their Neighbours of the adjacent Islands, where they take them against Fluxes. They make likewise Rice-bread, in the form of Sugar-loaves. Their Gallies, which they call *Caracorras*, are well built; and they know how to manage them with such address, that ours come not near them for swiftness.

The inhabitants.

The discovery.

The Island was first discovered by the *Portuguez*, in the year 1515. under the conduct of *Antonio Abreo*, who there erected a Column, as well to record the possession he took of it for the King of *Portugal*, as to serve for a Trophy of his Adventures, in advancing farther into the *Indies* then any of his Predecessors had done. These *Portuguez*, observing the *Hollanders* obstructed the advantageous Commerce they carried on here, in the year 1601. set forth a Fleet of thirty Ships, with a resolution not only to destroy the *Hollanders* Traffick, but withall, so to chastize the Inhabitants of *Amboyna*, who bore more affection to the *Hollanders* then to them, that they should change their opinion. *D. Andres Furtado de Mendoza*, Admiral of this Fleet, having intelligence of five *Holland* Vessels that were in the Port of *Banda*, resolv'd to fight them, but was worsted, and forced to retreat into the Port of *Ijou*, the chief City of *Amboyna*.

The Hollanders take Amboyna Castle.

The *Hollanders*, though victorious, were not in condition to pursue their good fortune, and much less to hinder the *Portuguez* from discharging their revenge upon the Inhabitants, who were most rigorously used by these enraged people; nay, such was their spight, that they pull'd up their Clove-trees, meerly that the *Hollanders* might not make their profit of them. Hereupon *Stephen Verbagen*, the *Holland* Admiral, arriving February 21. 1603. in the Road of *Amboyna*, landed a party of Souldiers, with design to storm the Castle. The *Portuguez* Governour, perceiving his intention, sent forth two of the Garrison Officers, to demand of him, how he durst approach a place committed to his charge by the High and mighty King of *Spain*; to whom the *Holland* Admiral made answer, He was come in the Name of the States of the United Provinces, and the Prince of *Orange*, with Order to take in the Castle, and expell the Enemy; so as he was to come to present Articles, or sustain the Assault he should make as soon as his Artillery came on shore. This Bravado so daunted the *Portuguez*, that he rendred the place without so much as a Cannon shot. There march'd out six hundred *Portuguez* with their Arms. Such as were married, taking the Oath of Fidelity, were permitted to stay in Town.

Religion.

The Inhabitants of all those Islands, *Java*, *Amboyna*, and the *Molucquez*, were all *Pagans*, till their Commerce with the *Persians* and *Arabians* brought in *Mahumerism*, which, notwithstanding, hath not so extirpated their former Religion, but such as embrace Circumcision continue their Pagan Superstitions: Some make open profession thereof, and adore the Devil, there being neither Town nor Village that hath not one peculiar thereto. Not that they understand in any sort what the Devil is, or that they have any knowledge of what the Scripture sayes of him; but they affirm, That what they adore comes out of the Air, whence some of them call one of their principal Demons *Lanithe*, that is, Air, who notwithstanding depends on another greater then he, called *Lanbila*, nay, is not so con-

considerable as their *Taulay*, who in power is next to *Lanbila*. The general name for them is *Nito*, which signifies evil Spirits, or *Tuzn*, that is, Lord or Master. 1639.

They say their *Nito* appears often to them in the shape of an ordinary person, which the Spirit takes on him for this purpose, and by which he pronounces his Oracles, that his intentions may be known. To have conference with him, they assemble, to the number of twenty or thirty, and call upon him with the beat of a little Drum, consecrated expressly to this use, called by them a *Tyfa*, lighting mean while divers Wax-candles, and pronouncing certain words of conjuration, which they think very effectual. Before they propound their Affairs, either private, or publick, to him, they present him both meat and drink, and after he that personates the Dæmon hath done eating, the Congregation make an end of the remainder. Consult with the Devil.

They take in hand no business, be it never so mean, nay, not so much as piercing of a Tree to draw *Terry*, till they have done their devotions to the Devil, and engrav'd certain characters upon it, which in their opinion will preserve the Tree, and bless their labour. In their houses they have one place where they light a wax Candle, and where they wait on the Devil with meat and drink, who not coming, as it often happens, they eat that themselves which they had consecrated to him; but leaving some part of it, that, if he should come, he might find something to stay his stomach. There is not a Master of a Family that is not provided of a Vesture extraordinary, and a Ring, which he carefully preserves, and which is constantly kept in the house, for a perpetual testimony of his alliance made with the Devil. They are prepossessed with this opinion, that there comes no ill but from the Devil, for which reason they adore him, to avert mischiefs, or appease him, when they fall upon them. Superstitions.

They have their Circumcision, but much different from that of the *Jews* and *Mahometans*; for they circumcise not Children till twelve or thirteen years of age, and in stead of cutting off the Prepuce, as the *Jews* do, they only slit it with a little Cane made expressly for this purpose. Circumcisions.

At their Marriages they use no Ceremonies; for the parties being agreed, the Bridegrooms Father carries a present of some toys to the Bride, and the Brides Father makes a Feast, at which they have their Musick of *Tabours* and *Logologo*, or Dances in the honour of *Nito*, and so consummate the Marriage, which they break with the same facility they contracted it. For the Wives leave their Husbands upon the least discontent happens between them, and provided they are able to restore the Present given them by their Father in Law, pouring water on their Husbands feet, to shew that they cleanse themselves from all the impurity they may have contracted together, they take their leave, and the next day may joyn again in marriage with some other, if they are so agreed. Marriage.

Their Oaths for decision of differences, or other matters of importance, they make in the manner following. They put Water into a Dish, into which they cast in Gold, Earth, and a Bullet of Lead, then dip in it the end of a Musket barrel, the point of a Haibert, Sword, Knife, or some other Weapon; and they give of the Water to him who is to swear; the design of all these Ceremonies being to raise in him a fear, that all that is cast or dipt into the Water will conspire his ruine, if he make a false Oath. Oaths.

There are amongst them certain people they call *Zwangi*, whom they take for Sorcerers; though for the most part they busie themselves in doing mischief rather by poyson then enchantments; but if they can prove the least against them, so as there be but grounds for presumption only, they are undone; and commonly the whole Family suffers with them. The horrour they have of these people, is one cause they watch dead bodies, with Sword and Buckler, for fear the *Zwangi* should come and eat them. Sorcerers.

The *Amboynians* are naturally timorous, gross and stupid, unfaithful, and so diffident, that they will not trust a man six pence without a good pawn. They bury their Goods and Money for fear of Rapine, for being themselves naturally inclined to theft, they think others would do to them as they would do to others. Their qualities.

They are not to be taught any thing, nor have they any Trades, in so much that the Stuffs made by them are like Sacks, open at both ends, wherewith the Women cloath themselves. They can neither write nor read, nor have Characters amongst them, so as they have no intelligence of former Ages, nor any light of Religion. Their business is fishing, or their Gardens, where they get some Fruits, to live on, but so slenderly, that 'tis a miracle they can subsist with so little; nevertheless, for the greatest part, they are of good proportion, and comely personage. Indolent.

From the account we have given you of their Marriages, the small affection betwixt Man and Wife may easily be guessed at; as indeed there is little or none at all, yet they love their Children most excessively, but so imprudently, that there is not a Father takes



1639. care to correct them; and to this reason we may attribute the disorders that often happen, the Children out-raging Nature in the persons of those that brought them into the world.

*Profaneness* The little knowledge they have of Religion causes a most remarkable humour of profanation amongst them, and so great a contempt of sacred things, that they would deride their *Nito*, were they not restrain'd by a sottish fear of some mischief he would do them. The *Portuguez* transported thither heretofore some families of free persons, call'd *Maldecas*, whom they had taken near *Malacca*, and who serving the *Portuguez* had gotten their language, and in some measure their Religion; but these Families are lost by degrees, and the little instruction had been given them wearing out with time by conversing with *Pagans*; one may say, that except some Profelytes made by the *Hollanders*, who for the greatest part are *Chineses*, there is not a *Christian* in the Island.

*The Hollanders possess it intirely.* The *Hollanders* have three Forts in the Isle of *Amboyna*, the Fort *Cambella*, otherwise called *Victoria*, (the Bastions whereof are built of stone) those of *Hiem* and *Louw*. The first hath in it sixty Pieces of Cannon, and a Garrison of six hundred men; so as that without question, this, next *Battavia*, is the best establishment they have in the *Indies*.

*Banda.* *Banda* lies twenty four Leagues from *Amboyna*, and is about three Leagues in length, and one in breadth, reaching from North to South in form of a Horse-shoe. It contains some small Towns, whereof the chief is *Nera*, but *Orjattan* and *Labbettacca* are inconsiderable. The Inhabitants are all *Mahumetans*, and so zealous in their Religion, and so devout, they will not meddle in any business till they have said their Prayers. They enter not into their *Mesquites* till they have wash'd their feet; and being there, they pray with such vehemency, that they may be heard two hundred paces thence. Those Prayers ended, they rub their faces with both hands, lay a Matt on the ground and stand upon it, lift their eyes twice or thrice to Heaven, fall on their knees, and bow their head two or three times to the ground, pronouncing certain Prayers with a low voyce, only moving the lips. In their *Mesquites* they have many meetings, where they eat together of what is brought thither by every one. They have likewise some such Assemblies upon a Mountain, which is in a Wood in the middle of the Island, where the Inhabitants of *Puldrim*, *Puloway*, and *Lantor*, their Allies, meet them to consider of publick matters. After they have treated of publick Affairs, they sit down on the ground, and they serve to every one upon a *Banana* leaf, which serves them instead of a Trencher, a Morfel of *Sagu*, which is their Bread, and a little Rice steep'd in broath, which they eat by handfuls. During the Feast, the Gentlemen, to entertain the Guests, have a kind of Skirmish. They are almost in continual war with their Neighbours, and keep constant Guards upon the Coast, as well to surprize others, as to prevent their being surprized themselves. Their Arms are the *Cimeter*, with them called a *Phabang*, and a Buckler of wood above four foot long. They handle their Weapons with much address, being train'd to it from their infancy. They have likewise Fire-arms, but in war they chiefly use a sort of Lance, of eight or ten foot long, made of an exceeding hard wood, which they cast with such force, that they will run a Man quite through with it. Having cast their Lances, for commonly they carry two, they fall to their Sword, which hangs at their left side under their Buckler, or to another sort of Weapon, which they dart and pull back with a string, whereto they tye a short Truncheon, having at the end a crook-ed iron that is exceeding sharp and dangerous. Some use Corsets, but these are Persons of Quality; others contenting themselves with Casks of Steel, and made like Cocks-combs. Their Gallies are very light, having on both sides, in a manner even with the water, two Scaffolds like wings, where the Slaves are set to row. They are three to every seat, and every one hath an Oar, which is properly but a deep wooden Shovel, which they thrust as far as they can into the Sea, and when they draw it back, they bring it about their heads to cast out the water; which they do so fast, and with such sleight, that a Ship must be a good Sailor, that shall with a good wind take one of these Gallies.

*They live long.* In the Isle of *Banda* 'tis no rarity to meet with people of sixscore years of age, and above. They believe, that who fails to pray for the dead shall have no resurrection, whereas otherwise, with the *Mahumetans*, they believe the resurrection of the dead. Women that are present at the death of a friend, cry out with all violence, as if by this means they would fetch the Soul back again, but seeing it comes not, they interr the Corps, which is born by ten or twelve persons on their Shoulders, in a Biere or Coffin covered with white Linnen, the Men going before, the Women behind. The Corps being laid in the ground, they return to the house of the deceased, where they dine together; then they burn Incense over the Grave for four and twenty hours, and at night set a burning Lamp over it, in a Hut made for that purpose.

The Men mind nothing but their recreation, and walking up and down, and leave all the work to be done by their Wives, whose chiefest business is to break the Nutmeg shell, and dry the Nut and Mace, wherein consists their greatest revenue. This excellent fruit, for ought I could ever learn, grows only in the Isle of *Banda*, which the Inhabitants call *Bandan*, or rather in the six Isles 'tis composed of, that is *Gunaxi*, *Nera*, and *Lantor*, ( betwixt which lies the Road for the Vessels that are bound thither ) *Puloway*, *Pulorim*, and *Bassingin*.

It is a thing to be admired, that these six little Islands should furnish the whole World with Nutmegs, if it were not certain, that except a few *Duriaons*, *Nancan*, *Bananas*, *Oranges* and *Cocoers* that grow there, they produce not any thing else; and the Islands are so covered with Nutmeg-trees, that excluding only the fiery Mountain in the Isle of *Gunapi*, there is not a foot of Land but is employed, and the Trees at all times loaden with fruit and flowers green or ripe. They chiefly gather them thrice a year; that is, in *April*, *August* and *December*, but that which ripens in *April* is the best. The Tree is not unlike a Peach-tree, only the leaves are more short and round. The Fruit is covered with a husk, as thick as that of our Wallnuts, which being opened, there appears a very thin leaf upon a hard shell; yet does it not so cover it, but that the shell is to be seen in several places, and this is that they call the Nutmeg flower or Mace, and the shell must be broken to come at the fruit. The flower is of a lively carnation, while the Nut is green; but afterwards it changes, and draws towards an Orange colour, especially when it parts from the shell. The Inhabitants preserve it in the shell, with Salt or Sugar, and make a very excellent Preserve. The Natives call the Nutmeg *Palla*, and Mace *Bunapalla*. This Spice comforts the Brain, helps the Memory, expels Wind, cleanses the Reins, and stays Looseness. Mace hath almost the same vertues, but 'tis much more proper for Sauces. Oyl of Nutmegs strengthens the Sinews, procures Sleep, stays Defluxions, and cures the pains in the Stomack; and of powder of Nutmeg or Mace mixt with the Oyl of Roses, they make an Unguent sovereign against such Grievs as proceed from Indigestion.

The *Hollanders* have built here two Forts, which they call *Nassau* and *Belgica*, where the Road is so good, that Vessels come up within Musket-shot, and ride safely at nine or ten fathom water. The Island is inhabited with about ten or eleven thousand persons; yet would it be hard to draw out five hundred Men fit to bear Arms. Here they drive a good round trade in Garments brought from *Coromandel*, Rice, Purcelane, Velvet, Damask, Taffaty, Scarlet, Provisions and Ammunition for the Forts. The Inhabitants are obstinate and mutinous, so as the *Hollanders* cannot assure the possession of this Isle, but by force alone.

In their Relations of the Isle of *Nera*, they report, there are Serpents so great, that one day, the Author of the twentieth Relation observing his Poultry dayly to decrease, and being told by the Natives there were Serpents that devoured them, he had then watch'd so carefully, that they took one, which about midnight was crept into the Hen-roost, and had made a strange havock. The Servants who kill'd it, found in the belly five Hens, one Duck, and a sucking Pig, which they made no difficulty to eat of, no more then they did of the Serpent it self.

Though some comprehend in the number of the *Molucques*, many of the Islands that fill up this *Oriental Archipelago*, yet properly there are called by the name of the *Moluccaes*, but the five following Islands, *Ternate*, *Tidar*, *Motiel*, *Machiam* and *Bachiam*, by the ancient *Pagans* called *Cupe*, *Douco*, *Moutil*, *Mara*, and *Seque*. This last is by several Arms of the Sea divided into divers Isles, which notwithstanding are not known but by the common name of *Bachiam*, because they are subject to one Prince. They are all situate under the same Meridian, as 'twere within view of one another, and take not up above the space of twenty five Leagues, so as the utmost North hath but one degree of Latitude towards the North, and the farthest South, but one degree toward the South. The Soyl is so dry and spongy, that it not only drinks immediately the Water that falls from Heaven, but dries up the Torrents at their very rising out of the Mountains, and suffers them not to pay their tribute to the Ocean; and yet the Sun not being able either to penetrate the Forests, or consume the Exhalations arising out of the Earth, there remains sufficient moisture to furnish both Trees and Herbs with constant verdure.

These Islands, where no Fruit is wanting, and which yield, in great abundance, *Bananas*, *Cocoers*, Lemons, Oranges, *Sandal*, and *Calamba*, and all sorts of Spices, produce neither Corn, nor Rice; but Nature makes sufficient recompence for this defect, in a sort of nourishment, which might be accounted miraculous, were it not common in *Amboyna*, and other places. They have it from a Tree the *Portuguez* call *Segueiro*, and the *Molucquez*,

1639. *Laudan*, which grows to twenty foot high, and hath leaves like *Coccos*, only a little less. The Tree is a mans fathom about, nevertheless with a Knife it may be cut down, because 'tis only Bark and Pith: The Bark is about an inch thick, and the rest all Pith, which serves for Bread. It is somewhat like worm-eaten wood, save that it is white, and may be eaten as it comes from the Tree, taking away the strings of the wood which are mixed with it; but to make Bread they order it as follows. Having felled the Tree, they cut it Cylinder-wise, and beat the Pith to powder, which looks like Meal; then they put it in a Searce they make of the Bark of the same Tree, over a Tub made of the Leaves, and according as the Searce fills they pour in Water, which dividing the Meal from the Strings of wood that are mixt therewith, falls into the Tub, as white and thick as Milk, and leaving a certain settling or consistency at the bottom, falls out at a little Spout at the top of the Tub; this settled consistency is that which they call *Sagu*, and serves them instead of Meal, and in effect is such, when it is dry. It is baked in certain Moulds of Earth, which they make red hot in the fire, so as putting in this substance, it becomes Paste, and bakes in a moment, so speedily, that one Man, in a morning, may bake Bread to suffice a hundred Men a whole day: From the same Tree they extract *Ibuack*, which they drink, and is as pleasant as Wine. While the Leaves are young they are covered with a Cotton, whereof they make Stuffs; and being at full growth, they cover Houses with them; and the bigger Veins are strong enough to make Rafter for their Houses; and of the lesser they make good Cordage.

How they  
make bread  
of it.

Wine from  
the same  
Tree.

They have store of Cattle; but they rather affect Fish, though *Linschotten* says they have neither. Mines of Silver or Gold they have not, and hitherto there are none discovered of any other Metals; but the Isle of *Lambaco* furnishes them with Iron and Steel, whereof they make their *Campilans* and their *Cris*, that is, their Swords and Daggers.

The Inhab-  
itants.

Their Men are rather black then tawny, but the Women not so much. Their Hair is black and smooth, either naturally, or for that they continually rub it with sweet Oyls; their Eyes great, their Eyebrows large, their Bodies strong and robustous, but fitter for war then work. They are dextrous and active, and live long, though they grow gray betimes. In conversation with Strangers they are civil and obliging; but a little too familiar and importunate in their demands, self-ended in Commerce, diffident, deceitful, and lyars, needy, and by consequence insolent. Men wear Turbants, after the Turkish fashion, of several colours, deckt with Plumes: The King only wears a Crown like a Miter, but in all things else is clad like his other Subjects, in a *Jupo*, and Drawers of *China* Sattin, blew, red, crimson, green, and yellow. Some there are wear close Coats, tied on the Shoulders, and cut below, like the ancient *Romans* military Coats. Women dress themselves in their Hair, which they lay smooth over their Heads, and tye it behind, and deck it with Plumes and Flowers, which well becomes them. They have Bracelets, Rings, Neck-laces of Pearl, Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeralds, &c. apparelling themselves almost all in Silk, using the Stuffs they have from *Persia*, *China*, and the rest of the East, in truck for their Cloves.

Partly Ma-  
humetans.

The *Chineses*, by possessing a great part of the East, became likewise Masters of this Isle, and, after their example, the *Persians* and *Arabians*, who brought in the *Mahometan* superstitions, admit the adoration of their Gods, from whom divers of their Families pretend to be descended. They know no written Law, and their Customs are barbarous enough; *Polygamy* is allowed amongst them, and Adultery passes unpunished; but Theft is severely punished, as a mortal and unpardonable Crime among them. They have Officers, who at break of day go about the Town, and with the beat of a Drum awake the people, and exhort the Masters of Families to remember their Matrimonial Duties, by reason it concerns the publick, that the Inhabitants should multiply. Both Men and Women express their arrogance in their carriage and gate. Every Island hath a peculiar Language, whence we may conjecture they are originally derived from several Nations, and that 'tis necessity forces them to use the *Malayan*, for general Communication.

A particular  
policy.

The Clove  
trade.

The *Javians* were they that first brought Cloves to these places, whence the *Persians* and *Arabians* might convey them to the *Greeks* and *Romans*. The Kings of *Egypt* settled this Commerce, together with that of other Spices, in the Ports of the Red Sea; where the *Romans* having reduc'd that Kingdom to a Province, continued it till the dissolution of the Empire. The *Genueses* were long time Masters of it, by transferring it to *Theodosia*, now call'd *Cassa*, whither at length the *Venetians* sent their Consuls and Factors, taking the benefit of the *Caspian* Sea. The *Turks* spoil'd this Commerce by means of their *Caravans*, that brought Spices to divers places on the *Mediterranean* Sea, where the *Europeans* might fetch them with less charge and danger; but the *Soldans* of *Egypt* re-established it

at *Alexandria* and *Cyros*, by the way of the *Nile*, and doubtless had kept it still, had not the *Portuguez* found out a way to surround *Africa*, and fetch this precious Drug from the utmost parts of the East. Their Conquests in the *Indies*, and the Fleet they maintain upon the *Persian* and *Arabian* Coasts, towards *Cape Guardafun*, intirely bereaved the *Soldans* of their Commerce; and the *Portuguez* continued Masters of it, while they kept that Sea: but after the *Hollanders* appeared there, they were constrained to give place, and to lose an advantage, which no other durst have disputed with them.

In the year 1511. the *Portuguez* discovered the *Molucques*. *Francisco Serrano*, who first set foot on shore, found so much simplicity there, that *Boleyse*, King of *Ternate*, and *Almanzor*, King of *Tidor*, made it their earnest request to have the advantage of the Fort the *Portuguez* were about to build, to secure the possession of these Isles. 'Tis true, these two Princes were declared enemies, and thought to make use of these Strangers Forces in their particular quarrels: but 'tis to be believed their jealousy was grounded on other principles; for that *Cachil Laudan*, King of *Bachiam*, made the like request to *Tristan de Meneses*, who went to relieve *Serrano*.

'Twas now some time since Pope *Alexander* the sixth had divided the two *Indies* betwixt the Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal*; so much that of the three hundred sixty degrees, which compose the Globe, the *Spaniards* were to possess what they conquered within one hundred and eighty degrees, counting from the thirty sixth degree of *Libone*, Westward, and the *Portuguez* the other hundred and eighty degrees Eastward; by vertue of which division the Emperour, *Charles* the fifth, pretended the *Molucques* belonged to the Crown of *Castile*, by reason *Ferdinand Magellanus*, who had done very advantageous Service in the *Indies*, under *Alphonso Albuquerque*, and had with little satisfaction deserted the *Portuguez*, to serve under *Charles*, computed by *Ptolomies* authority (upon a false supposal, that between *Indus* and *Ganges* there were thirty degrees, whereas there are scarce ten) that the *Molucques* being distant six hundred Leagues, which make about thirty six degrees from *Malacca* Westward, they belonged to the Crown of *Castile*. He was commissioned by the Emperour to go take possession of them, and upon this design parted from *Saint Lucars* the 21. of *September* 1519. and having wrought to 53. degrees, and passed the Streight, called to this day by his name, the *Streight of Magellan*, he came almost to the height of the *Molucques*; but by contrary Winds, and the Sea-currents, he was forc'd down to the *Manelles*, where he was slain, with thirty five of his company; *Gonzalo, Gomez d' Espinosa*, and *Sebastian del Cano*, made afterwards some establishments for the Emperour, taking an Oath of Fidelity of *Sutrau Carala*, King of *Ternate*, Predecessour of *Sultan Bongue*, of *Sultan Almanzor*, King of *Tidor*, and *Sultan Jusuff*, King of *Gilolo*. But the possession of these Isles was of such importance to the *Portuguez*, for continuati- on of their Spice trade, that they did what was possible to keep them, wherein they found the less trouble, because the Emperour had his hands full in *Europe*, and was but imperfectly informed of the Affairs in *Asia*, as well by reason the *Portuguez* hindred the *Castilian* Ships passing by the *Cape of good hope*, as that the passage by the West was so dangerous, that hitherto it is not used. Notwithstanding all Acts of Hostility passing between these two Nations in the *Indies*, 'twas thought convenient that Commissioners for both Kings should meet at *Segovia*, in the year 1525. but not agreeing, the meeting was removed the year following to *Sevil*, where likewise they came to no result: so as the business continued in this state, till the Treaty at *Saragossa*, in the year 1529. at which the Emperour engag'd these Islands to the King of *Portugal*, for three hundred and fifty thousand Ducates. Ever since the *Portuguez* have enjoy'd them, till by the union of the Kingdom of *Castile*, and *Portugal*, they were confounded in *Philip* the Second. After this the *Hollanders* put in there, and the revolution that happened in *Portugal* in the year 1640. hath so changed the face of Affairs, that the *Spaniards* must first conquer that Kingdom, before they think of the Appendages belonging thereto.

*Ternate* is the first and largest Isle of the *Molucques*, scituate twenty eight Leagues from the Isle of *Banda*, and forty degrees on this side the Line. It is about eight Leagues in compass, and no bad Country, yet yields but little Provisions besides Poultry and Goats. It produces likewise Almonds, excellent good, and bigger then ordinary, though there be three or four in every shell, which is so hard, 'tis not easily to be broken with a Hammer; but they make so strong a fire, that Smiths and Forgemn use it instead of Coal. The Inhabitants likewise plant Tobacco, but 'tis far short of that comes from the *West-Indies*.

The chief Town, called *Gamma lamma*, stands on the Sea-side, and is but one Street, about 2500. paces long. Their Houses are built of Canes or Timber, as are also the Mosquites and Palace Royal. The Road is of no use, for that the bottom being nothing but

1639.  
The Portu-  
guez.  
seize it.

Dispossest  
by the Hol-  
landers.

A difference  
between the  
Castilians  
and the  
Portuguez  
for the Mo-  
lucacs.

Grounded  
on a false  
supposition.

Magellan  
finds a new  
passage.

Ternate:

Gamma  
lamma.

1639. but Stone and Rock, an Anchor cannot fix. The *Holland* Vessels ride before a Village called *Telingamma*, between the Islands of *Ternate* and *Tidor*, within half a League of *Malay*.

*Cloves.* The most precious thing in these Islands is the Clove; I know not if it be the same *Pliny* calls *Garyophylla*, though the *Persians* call it *Calafur*, and these two words seem to have the same Etymology. The *Spaniards* sometimes called it *Girofe*, but at present they call it *Clavos*, by reason of its likeness to an ordinary Nail. The *Molucques* call the Tree that bears them *Siger*, the Leaf *Varaqua*, and the Fruit *Cbamque*. The Tree is much like the Laurel, only the Leaves something less and narrower, like the Almond-tree, and shoots forth its branches at the top as Myrtle doe. When 'tis in flower it perfumes the Air round about it; and the Fruit is at first white, in time grows green, and so brown, but not black till it be gathered.

Some beat them down with Poles, but commonly they fasten a Rope to the branch a little above the boal, and drawing it to them force away the Fruit and leaves with much violence, and so it is when the Inhabitants fell it, and so the *Chineses* and *Indians* transport it.

The tree grows without planting.

The Trees grow of themselves, as the Chestnut-trees do, without planting, or any cultivation. In the eighth year they bear, and last a hundred years, bringing forth every two years: for besides the injury done the branches, in getting off the fruit, as we said before, the Inhabitants break off the young buds, which shoot forth the first year, that they may be sure of a better crop the next. It is at its full ripeness from *August* till *January*; and when it is gathered, it is laid in the Sun, and in two or three dayes it is sufficiently dried.

*Avicenna's error.*

*Avicenna* affirms, that the Gum of this Tree is like Turpentine; but he is mistaken, it being certain, that it does not produce any at all. For it is so hot, that it does not only drink up all the Water Heaven is pleased to send it, but it also attracts all the moisture of the Earth lying about it; nay, its Fruit is so hot, that if a Pitcher of Water be set in a Chamber, within ten foot of a bag of Cloves, they will so suck up the Water, that within two or three dayes there shall not be a drop left: which that they have done shall not be perceivable any way, but by the weight. The Inhabitants know this well enough, and make their advantages thereof. The *Chineses* have the same experiment in their raw Silks, which do attract moisture in the same manner.

What cloves the Moluccas yields yearly.

It is commonly affirmed, that the Cloves grow only in the *Moluccas*: but this is said, either in regard some comprehend under that name many other Islands near them, or that the five we have named yield more then all the rest. It is generally granted, that they yield every year near six thousand barrels of Cloves, allowing five hundred weight and a half to every barrel; and it is certain withall, that the Islands of *Ires*, *Meytarana*, *Cavaly*, *Sabugo*, *Marigoran*, *Gamocnora*, and *Amboyna*, yield also very considerable quantities, especially that of *Veranula*; though they are not so fair as those of the neighbouring Islands.

The Mountain of Ternate.

In the midst of the Island of *Ternate*, there is one of the highest Mountains in those parts, covered all over with Palms and other Trees, having at the top a hole so deep, that it seems to reach the Center of the Earth. Some have had the curiosity to make trial of the depth of it, and have found that a Rope of five hundred fathom touched not the bottom, but reach'd a fair Spring, the water whereof was very clear; yet hath there not yet been any that durst venture to taste of it. Out of this Mountain there issues a sulphureous smell, and by certain intervals a thick smoak, and sometimes, especially at the two Equinoxes, it casts up flames, and red Stones, with such violence, that some are carried not only as far as the City, but even into the Islands of *Meao*, and *Casures*, twenty Leagues distant from *Ternate*. The smoak infects all the circum-ambient Air, and the excrements which the Mountain casts forth, do so corrupt the Springs and waters of those parts, that no use can be made thereof. The Mountain is green two third parts of its height, but from thence upward it is insupportably cold, and there is on the top of it a Spring of fair water, but so cold, that a man can drink but very little of it without taking breath. From the top of it may be seen the Sea, and all the *Moluccas*; upon it, a man hath a clear and serene Air, which is never troubled with Mists or Clouds; and there is a Lake of sweet water, set about with Trees, in which there is a great number of blew and yellow Lizards, bigger then a mans arm, which sink under the water as soon as any body comes near them.

But one season in the Moluccas.

There is no difference of Seasons in these Islands, nor any certain time for Rain, though it rains oftner with the North-west wind, then it does with the South. There are Serpents there thirty foot long, and of a proportionable bigness; but they are neither dan-

gerous

gerous nor venomous, no more then are those of *Banda*. Some affirm, that these Creatures, not finding any thing to feed upon, eat Grass, and going to the Sea-side vomit up what they had eaten, and by that means draw together a great many Fish, which being intoxicated with the chew'd Grass, float upon the Water, and so become the prey and food of these Serpents. 1639.

There is in this Island a kind of Beasts they call *Cufos*, that keeps constantly in Trees, living on nothing but Fruit. They resemble our Rabbits, and have a thick, curling, and smooth hair, between gray and red, eyes round and fiery, little feet, and such strength in the tail, that they will hang by it, the better to reach the fruits. The Forrests are full of wild Birds, and, except the Parrot, there are few domestick, at least of those known to us. There are *Crevisles* that come ashore, and creep under certain Trees, the very shadow whereof is so virulent, that no Grass grows near them. I know not whether it be from that Tree they contract that venomous quality, which lies in one part of them, which is so dangerous, that it kills in four and twenty hours those that eat it. Others there are that resemble Grasshoppers, and lye in Rocks, where they take them by night with fire-light: near the tail, in a bag, they have a lump that is exceeding delicate, for which they take them. Cufos:

In the *Moluccas* there is a certain Wood, which, laid in the fire, burns, sparkles, and flames, yet consumes not; and yet a man may rub it to powder betwixt his fingers. A Wood in- combustible.

Near the Fort of *Ternate* grows a Plant, by the Inhabitants call'd *Catopa*, from which there falls a small Leaf, the Stalk whereof turns to the Head of a Worm, or Butterfly, the Strings to the body and feet, and the wings are made out of the finer part of the Leaf, so as at last there is a compleat Butterfly. Leaves turn'd to Butterflies.

*Tidor* is an Island as fruitful as that of *Ternate*, but larger. In a Signet of the Kings of this Island, in *Persian* or *Arabick* Characters, it appears, this Island was called *Tudura*, not *Tidor*; and they say the word signifies Beauty and Fertility. These people have the industry to prune and water the Clove-tree, which by this means bears a fruit much fairer and stronger then that which owes its production only to nature. The white Sandalwood, that grows here, is doubtless the best of all the *Indies*. Here they have Birds, by the Inhabitants called *Mann codiatas*, by the *Spaniards*, *Paxaros de l' Cielo*; those we call *Birds of Paradise*. Many take them to have no feet; but they are deceived; for they that catch them cut off their feet so near the body, that the flesh beginning to dry, the skin and feathers joyn together, so that there scarce remains any scar. Birds of Pa- radise.

The *Dutch* in *Ternate* possess the Town of *Malaya*, regularly fortified, and not far off the Fort of *Taluco*. In *Tidor* they have the Fort *Marieco*. In *Motir* again they have a Fort with Bastions of Stone. In *Machiam* they have made three Forts. At *Tassaso*, *Tabillola*, and *Guoffiquia*, and in *Bachiam*, the Fort *Barneveldt*.

The King of *Bachiam* owns neither the King of *Ternate* nor *Tidor* for Superiour; but is himself Sovereign, and independent as to any Forreign Power. His Territory is great, where there grows great store of *Sagou*, so as the Inhabitants subsist with little labour, which makes them so idle and lazy, that the Kingdom, which heretofore was one of the most considerable of the *Molucques*, is so sunk from that grandeur, that at present it can hardly raise five hundred fighting men. King of Bachiam.

The Isle of *Machiam* was brought under the jurisdiction of the *Dutch* by Admiral *Paul van Carden*, in the year 1601. The chiefest of the three Forts they are possessed of is that of *Guoffiquia*, which is built upon an Eminency, with four Bastions of stone, yet is it but a small one, and irregular, in regard that, for want of place, they could not make all the Bastions of the same bigness, nor extend the Curtain as far as it should have been. The Fort of *Tassaso* is also upon an ascent, and hath four Bastions; but it is bigger then the other, and distant from the Sea about a hundred and sixty paces. These two Forts have neither Wells nor Cisterns, save that near the top of the ascent on which *Tassaso* stands, there is a Well within a Half-moon, which serves for a fifth Bastion to the place. *Tabillola* hath but two Bastions, so far one from the other, that they cannot command all the Curtain, so that there is no great account to be made thereof. This Island is about seven Leagues in compass, and subject to the King of *Ternate*: It is very populous, able to raise two thousand and two hundred fighting Men; and it hath *Sagu* and other provisions sufficient for the Inhabitants, and yields as much Cloves as any of the other Islands. Machiam.

Besides the five Islands properly called the *Molucques*, there are others, to the number of seventy two, subject to the King of *Ternate*, situate in the same *Archipelago* from *Mindansao*, on the North-side, and *Bina* and *Corcz*, which are on the South, and between the Continent of *New Guiny* towards the East. The chiefest are *Motir*, *Machiam*, *Cajoa*, Xulz

1639. *Xula, Burro, Na, Noloa, Meao, Tufure, Doe, Saquite, Totole, Baol, Guadupa, Gorontano, Ilibato, Tamsue, Manado, Doudo, Labague, Jaqua, Gabe, Tobuquo, Buto, Sanguien, &c.* amongst which some lye seventy Leagues from *Ternate*. The Kings of all these Islands are Tributaries to the King of *Ternate*, and tyed to find him such a number of Souldiers, which the Author of the History of the *Molucquez*, whom we mentioned before, raises to sixscore thousand.

Philippins. North of the *Molucques* lye the Isles now call'd the *Philippins*, discovered by *Ferdinand Magellanus*, when he compass'd the World in the year 1520. and had doubtless given them his own name, had he lived till this new discovery: *Sebastian del Cano*, his Camerade in this stupendious Navigation, not daring to hazard an establishment after the death of *Magellanus*, who was slain in these Islands, as we said before, return'd for *Spain*. After this there was no mention of these Islands, till that in the year 1565. *D. Luis de Valasco*, Viceroy of New *Spain*, sent the *Adelantado, Michel de Lagnuspe*, into this Sea, where he put into haven in these Islands, which in honour of King *Philip* the Second, who then reigned in *Spain*, he called by the name of *Philippines*. His first Conquest was the Isle of *Zebu*, where he remain'd six years; after that he went to *Luson*, now called *Manille*, from its chief City, whereof *Velasco*, after a sleight opposition, became Master.

Manille.

This City lies in a Canton of Land, incompass'd all about with the Sea, fourteen Degrees on this side the Line, in the most Southerly part of the Isle, which is in compass three hundred and fifty Leagues. On the North, it hath *China*, from which it is distant seventy Leagues; on the North-East, the Isle of *Japan*, which is two hundred and seventy Leagues distant from it; Eastward, the Ocean, and towards the South the great Archipelago, which is as it were divided into five Seas, filled with so many Islands, Kingdoms and Provinces, that it may be said, they are in a manner innumerable. The *Chineses*, who were heretofore possessed thereof, have now deserted them, but still trade thither.

The Inhabitants in their labour answer the fertility of the soyl, which produces Corn, Rice, all sorts of Fruits, and Drugs; and it breeds Neat, Buffler, Deer, Goats and Swine; so as they want nothing necessary to livelihood; and the *Chineses* take care they shall want nothing that is superfluous, as Silk, Purcelane, and *Lacque*. They have also Date-wine, but they make it of a different manner to other places: for they draw it from their *Cocoes*, by cutting off one of the boughs, whence there distils a Liquor which they suffer to work till it grows as strong as *Spanish* wine. They have the best Lemmons and Oranges in the World, and the most excellent Figs and Pears, all sorts of Birds of prey, and domestick, Falcons, Tercels, Parrots, Eagles, &c. but principally such abundance of Crocodiles, that they are constrain'd to kill them, to extirpate the breed: for you have here Men of sufficient courage to encounter a Crocodile single, though as big as an Oxe. For the Combat they Gantlet their left Arm to the Elbow, taking in that hand a Truncheon of a foot long pik'd at both ends, and a Dagger in the other, and in this posture they go into the River up to the Waste. The Crocodile no sooner spies his Man, but he comes on with open mouth to swallow him; the *Indian* presents him his left hand, and thrusting it down his throat, hinders his jaws from shutting, and in the mean time gives him so many wounds in his throat with his Poniard, that he kills him. This Creature is in form like a Lizard, but covered with Scales, so hard, that he is invulnerable all over but in the throat and belly. It layes abundance of Eggs, which are so hard, that they will not break with throwing against a Stone; and to hatch them they thrust them into the Sand, on a River side, that heat and moisture, the principles of Generation, may hatch them. These Islands breed more Tigers, Lions, Bears, and other wild Beasts, then *Africk* does, but especially the *Algalias*, which are the Creatures from which they get the Musks, and Civet-Cats.

Hunting of Crocodiles.

The Commerce of the *Chineses* and *Spaniards* in the *Philippins*.

All these Islands are very populous, and so rich, that not only the *Chineses* continue their trading thither, with great advantage, but also the *Spaniards*, who heretofore brought thither money from New *Spain*, by which they gain'd two Marks of Gold for eight of Silver, having given over that Trade, in regard they make far greater advantages by their other Merchandizes, the returns whereof many times come to a thousand for a hundred, by the traffick they have there with the *Chineses*, who bring all sorts of Cottons and Silk-Stuffes, Purcelane, Gun-powder, Sulphur, Iron, Steel, Quicksilver, Copper, Meal, Nuts of several kinds, Bisket, Dates, Linnen-cloth, Cabinets, Ink-horns, and things made of *Lacque*: which the *Spaniards* come and snatch up to be carried into the *West-Indies*, where they have money for nothing.

The *Spaniards* have in the City of *Manilla* an Arch-bishop, who hath spiritual Jurisdiction over all the *Philippine* Islands, which he exercises by three Suffragan Bishops, and some Priests. These are so highly respected by the Inhabitants, who have not shaken off their Original simplicity, that they govern the Country, and keep it in subjection to the *Spaniards*. They are indeed such absolute Masters of these Islands, that though in several of them there is not so much as one *Spaniard*, yet is there not one of the Inhabitants refuses to pay the Tax imposed upon him, which is by the Poll, at ten Ryals a Head. The same Arch-bishop hath also the Quality of Viceroy, and exercises all the Functions thereof, joyntly with the Kings Council, which is established in the same City, as well for Affairs of general concernment, as for the Appeals of such differences as may arise in the other Cities.

1639.  
The Arch-  
bishop of  
Manilla is  
Viceroy.

The City and Houses of *Manilla* are of Stone, and built after the modern way; and the City it self is so great, that the *Spaniards* have been forc'd to divide some part of it from the rest, to serve them for a Cittadel, in case of necessity; by which means they avoid the charge of keeping so great a number of Souldiers as might be requisite for the defence of the place: The Haven, which is called *Cavite*, lies two leagues from the City, and is defended by two wooden Forts. There live within the City of *Manilla*, and about it, above fifteen thousand *Chineses*, besides those who come thither every year, from *December* to *April*, and trade with above five hundred Ships. The *Japoneses* come thither also, but not in so great a number, and yet the *Spaniards* are much more jealous of them, then they are of the *Chineses*.

The City of  
Manilla.

T t t

JAPAN.



1639.

## J A P A N.

**J**APAN is a collection of several Islands made there by the Sea, from the one and thirtieth degree of elevation to the thirty ninth, being in some places but ten leagues in breadth, in others, reaching to thirty. This Country, which was anciently called *Chryses*, or, if we may credit *Mark Paulo Veneto*, *Zipangry*, hath on the East *New Spain*, on the North *Tartary*, on the West *China*, and on the South the Sea, and that part of the World, which is called *Terra Australis*. It is divided into sixty six little Kingdoms, fifty three whereof depend on that part of this great Empire, which is properly called *Japon*, or *Japan*, and consists of two very powerful Kingdoms, called *Meaco*, and *Amagunce*, under which all the rest are comprehended. The other part is called *Ximo*, and comprehends nine Kingdoms or Provinces; the chiefest whereof are *Bungo* and *Figen*; and the third part called *Xicom*, comprehends the other four Kingdoms.

It is doubted whether it be an Island or Continent.

The *Japonneses* themselves acknowledge, that they cannot positively affirm, whether their Country be an Island, or part of the Continent; inasmuch as from the Province of *Quanto*, whereof the City and Castle of *Jedo* is the Metropolis, as it is also of the whole Territory, as far as the extremities of the Province of *Tzungaa*, it is seven and twenty dayes journey towards East and North-East. Then you cross an Arm of the Sea, about eleven leagues over, to get into the Province of *Jesso*, or *Sesso*, which is so covered with Woods, and checker'd up and down with Mountains, that the Emperour of *Japan* hath not yet been able to search what may be had out of them. All they could ever learn, is, that there were seen in those parts a sort of people, who were hairy all over their bodies, and suffered the hair of their heads and beards to grow, so as that they seem'd rather beasts than men. Whereto they add, that they make use of that passage by Sea, to go into *Sesso*, whence they bring Furs, not out of this respect, that the Sea divides that Province from *Japan*, but that it were a great way about to go over those inaccessible Mountains which joyn those two Provinces.

The Island which we call *Japan*, and the Inhabitants name *Nippon*, is divided into six great Provinces, which are called *Saycock*, *Chickock*, *Famaysiort*, *Jetsengen*, *Quanto* and *Ochio*, which are subdivided into several other lesser ones, which are governed and possessed by Lords and Princes, whose names we shall here give, together with their Revenues, that the Reader may thereby judge of the greatness of this Empire, whereof we have hitherto had no great knowledge, setting down the sums according to their way of accounting, by *Cockjens*, which are worth about four Crowns French money a piece.

The names and revenues of the Great Lords of Japan.

*Cangano Tzium Angon*, King, or Prince of the Provinces of *Kanga*, *Jetcoui* and *Natta*, who lives in the Castle of *Canga*, hath a yearly revenue, one million, one hundred and ninety thousand *Cockjens*. 1190000

*Surugano Daynangon*, Prince of the Province of *Suruga*, *Toto* and *Mikawa*, who lives in the Castle of *Fuytsui*, seven hundred thousand *Cockjens*. 700000

*Ouwarmo Daynangan*, Prince of the Provinces of *Ouani* and *Mino*, who lives in the Castle of *Nangay*, seven hundred thousand *Cockjens*. 700000

*Sendaino Tsinangon*, Prince of the Provinces of *Massamme* and *Oysia*, who lives in the Castle of *Senday*, which is an impregnable place, six hundred and forty thousand *Cockjens*. 640000

*Sutsumana Tsinangon*, Prince of the Provinces of *Zatsuma*, *Osuny*, *Fionga* and *Lui-kio*, who lives in the Castle of *Cangasinna*, six hundred thousand *Cockjens*. 600000

*Kinokony Dainangon*, Prince of the Provinces of *Kino* and *Iche*, who lives in the Castle of *Wakejamma*, five hundred and fifty thousand *Cockjens*. 550000

*Cotto Fingo Camy*, Prince of *Fingo*, and the Neighbouring Provinces, who lives in the Castle of *Koumanotte*, five hundred and fifty four thousand *Cockjens*. 554000

*Matsendairo*

<i>Matsendairo Janonosk</i> , Prince of the Provinces of <i>Tsaikisen</i> , and <i>Faccatto</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Fonckosa</i> , five hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	510000
<i>Matsendairo Yonocami</i> , Prince or King in the Great Province of <i>Jetsegen</i> , which lives in the Castle of <i>Onde</i> , five hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	500000
<i>Catto Skibo</i> , King or Prince in the great Province of <i>Ocbio</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Ais</i> , four hundred and twenty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	420000
<i>Matsendairo Nangato</i> , Prince in the Province of <i>Sono</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Fungi</i> , three hundred and seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	370000
<i>Mitono Tzuinangon</i> , Prince of the Province <i>Fitzys</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Nito</i> , three hundred and sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	360000
<i>Nabissima Sinano</i> , King or Prince in the Province of <i>Fisen</i> , who lives in the City of <i>Logioys</i> , three hundred and sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	360000
<i>Matsendairo Sentaro</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Inaba</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tackajano</i> , three hundred and twenty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	320000
<i>Todo Ifumi</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Fuga Iche</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Ism</i> , three hundred and twenty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	320000
<i>Matsendairo Kuncy</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Bisen</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Oka-jamma</i> , three hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	310000
<i>Juno Camman</i> , The most valiant of all the Gallant persons in the Country, and Prince of the Province of <i>Tosomy</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Sawajamma</i> , three hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	300000
<i>Fosocama Jetschui</i> , Prince or King of the Province of <i>Boysen</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Cocora</i> , three hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	300000
<i>Ojesungi Daynsio</i> , King in the great Province of <i>Jetsengo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Jany Samwa</i> , three hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	300000
<i>Matsendairo Sensio</i> , King also in the same Province of <i>Jetsengo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Formanda</i> , three hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	300000
<i>Matsendairo Auwa</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Awa</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Inots</i> , two hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	250000
<i>Matsendairo Jechigenocemy</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Kange</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Takato</i> , two hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	250000
<i>Matsendairo Tuifio</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Je</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Matsiamma</i> , two hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	250000
<i>Ariuma Gamba</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Tzickingo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Couraine</i> , two hundred and forty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	240000
<i>Morino Imasack</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Mymasacka</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tzi-amma</i> , two hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	200000
<i>Toringanocami</i> , Prince in the Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Immagat-ta</i> , two hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	200000
<i>Matsendairo Tosa</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Tosanecory</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tokosianna</i> , two hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	200000
<i>Satake Okion</i> , Prince in the Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Akia</i> , two hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	200000
<i>Matsendairo Sunosano camy</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Sunosa</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tattebys</i> , two hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	200000
<i>Fubuo Jamaystro</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Jusimo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Matsdayts</i> , a hundred and eighty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	180000
<i>Ikenocamy</i> , Prince of the Province of <i>Samke</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Coquan</i> , a hundred and eighty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	180000
<i>Fondacainocamy</i> , Lord of the Province of <i>Farma</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Triatno</i> , a hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	150000
<i>Sackay Connay</i> , A Lord very considerable in the great Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Fackeso</i> , a hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	150000
<i>Terasawa Simadonne</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Fisen</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Carats</i> , sixscore thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	120000
<i>Kion Gock Wackasa</i> , Lord of the Province of <i>Wackasa</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Uf-fano</i> , sixscore thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	120000
<i>Fori Tango</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Jetsegen</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Fouckiamma</i> , sixscore thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	120000
<i>Sackaybarra Schibon</i> , Lord of the Country of <i>Kooske</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tattaitts</i> , sixscore thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	120000

1639.	<i>Minjino Fiongo</i> , Lord of the Country of <i>Bingo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Foukyamma</i> , sixscore thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	120000
	<i>Matsjendairo Cawaitis</i> , Governour or Captain of the Castle which the Emperour hath in the Province of <i>Quanto</i> , hath a yearly revenue, a hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	110000
	<i>Ockendeyro Imasacka</i> , Lord of the Country of <i>Simotoke</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Oetsnomio</i> , a hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	110000
	<i>Sammada Ins</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Simago</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Koska</i> , a hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	110000
	<i>Taytsifibayma Finda</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tzickingo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Jannangainua</i> , a hundred and ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	110000
	<i>Ongasura Onckan</i> , a Lord in the Country of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Akays</i> , a hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	100000
	<i>Indatii Toutomii</i> , Lord of the Country of <i>Jiio</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Itasima</i> , a hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	100000
	<i>Nambou Cinano</i> , a Lord of great quality in the Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Moriamma</i> , a hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	100000
	<i>Niwa Groseiman</i> , another Lord of great quality in the said Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Siracama</i> , a hundred thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	100000
	<i>Abono Bitchion</i> , Governour or Captain of the Castle of <i>Iwatsucki</i> , which belongs to the Emperour, in the Country of <i>Mousays</i> , eighty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	80000
	<i>Kiongoek Onieme</i> , Lord of the Country of <i>Tanga</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Tanabe</i> , seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	70000
	<i>Makino Suruga</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Jetsengo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Nangaoeka</i> , seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	70000
	<i>Nackangamua Neysien</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bongo</i> , who lives in the City of <i>Nangona</i> , seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	70000
	<i>Matsjendairo Tamba</i> , a Lord in the Country of <i>Cinano</i> , who lives at a place called <i>Matsmourte</i> , seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	70000
	<i>Noeytosamma</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fitaiits</i> , who lives in the City of <i>Iwayro</i> , seventy thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	70000
	<i>Jeckenda Bitshion</i> , Captain of the Castle of <i>Matsamma</i> , in the Province of <i>Bitshion</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Matsura Fetsennocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fesen</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Firando</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Sengock Biofo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Cinano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Oienda</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Catto Dewado</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jyo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Oets</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Tosawa Okjou</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Cinchiro</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Matsjendairo Iwamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Seigneiory of <i>Chisogory</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Matskonra Boungo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fisen</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sunabarra</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Jetschawa Tonnomon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bongo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fita</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Tzangaar Jetsiu</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Tzungaa</i> , upon the Sea-side, sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Ongasawara Sinano</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Province of <i>Sekzys</i> , sixty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	60000
	<i>Itho Cuiri</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fongo</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Orafi</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000
	<i>Furtasjobo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Iwamy</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Daysiro</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000
	<i>Wakibacca Aways</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Sinano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ina</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000
	<i>Koncky Nargato</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Ische</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Toba</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000
	<i>Arima Seymonose</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Nicke</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ac-canda</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000

<i>Outafaba</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jamatta</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Outa</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	1630.
<i>Matsendairo Demadonne</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Jetsenio</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Chibatta</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Minoskyts Fokky</i> , a Lord in the same great Province of <i>Jetsenio</i> , who hath also his Habitation in the said Lordship of <i>Chibatte</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Inaba Minbou</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Boungo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ousifira</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Croda Caynocomy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Sinano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Coiniro</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Matsendairo Souodonne</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Isomy</i> , who hath his Residence in the Lordship of <i>Kisnowodda</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Touda Sammon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tfounocouny</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Amangasac</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Stotfijaganni Kennots</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Iche</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Kangou</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Fonda Ichenochamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Mikawa</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Ockasacka</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Matsendayro Jamayffiro</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tamba</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sassejamma</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Mory Cainocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Inga</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sourosada</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Fonda Notanocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fimoys</i> , fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	50000	
<i>Akito Chionoske</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fitayts</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Cibindo</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Affano Oevieme</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Chiono</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Cassama</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Neyto Ceinocamy</i> , a Lord in the same Province of <i>Chiono</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Acandate</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Catto Skibbodonne</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ains</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Soma Daysiennocamy</i> , a Lord in the same Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Soma</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Toyda Jamatta</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tayfima</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Isius</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Ouckobo Cangato</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Mino</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Canuo</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Neito Boyfen</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Lord of <i>Jodata</i> , the like sum.	50000	
<i>Inaba Aways</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tainbo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fouckuit Syamina</i> , forty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	40000	
<i>Cammet Deirick</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Iwamy</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Mongamy</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Catnayngiri Ismon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jammatta</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Tatsta</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Fonda Findanocamy</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Jetsegen</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Maroka</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Itakoura Sovodome</i> , Governour for his Majesty, in the great City of <i>Miaco</i> , hath of yearly revenue in the Province of <i>Jamayffiro</i> , forty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	40000	
<i>Matsendairo Bongo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Iwamy</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Nackymia</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Fonda Naykie</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fimeis</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Matsendairo Tango</i> , a Lord in the great Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sucki</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Canna morti Ifoumo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Finda</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Oamory</i> , the like sum.	40000	
<i>Chiongoek Chiury</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tango</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Tannabe</i> , thirty six thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	36000	
<i>Outagiobo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Mino</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Istnoday</i> , thirty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	30000	

1639.	<i>Matsendairo Jetsso</i> , Governour of the Castle of <i>Fondo</i> , in the Province of <i>Jamayssiro</i> , thirty thousand <i>Kockjens</i> .	30000
	<i>Matsendairo Ouckon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ocko</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Minsonija Ichenocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Cooske</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Chinotayins</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Jammafacka Kainocami</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bitchiou</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Narse</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Matsendayro Jamatto</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jetsesen</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Catsiamma</i> , thirty thousand <i>Kockjens</i> .	30000
	<i>Junoflabo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Cooske</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Anna</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Matsendairo Tonnemon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Micamua</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Jussimda</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Akysucky Nangato</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Nicco</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Summino</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Sua Inaba</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Sinano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Takaboys</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Singamoma Ouribe</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tatomy</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Sese</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Simaas Oemansce</i> , a Lord of the Province of <i>Nicco</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sandobarra</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Kinostay Jemon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bongo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fius</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Sonotfuffima</i> , Lord of the Island of <i>Tziuffina</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Koynde Inuano</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Tonga</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Okoda</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Fonda Simofa</i> , one of the most valiant persons of all that Empire, and Governour of the Castle of <i>Niffewo</i> , in the Province of <i>Micauwa</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Gorick Setfnocanny</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Micauwa</i> , who lives at the Castle of <i>Fammamats</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Chinsio Surago</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Litacits</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Tsuitoura</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Sakuma Fisen</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Sinano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Irajamma</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Todo Toyifina</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Mino</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Cannajamma</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Fonda Ifumi</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fitayets</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Minan-gaw</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Tongauwa Tofa</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bitchiou</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Niakys</i> , the like sum.	30000
	<i>Matsendayro Tofa</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jetsesen</i> , who lives in the Lordship <i>Conamatta</i> , the like sum of thirty thousand <i>Kockjens</i> .	30000
	<i>Sangii sarra Tokii</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fitayets</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Oungouri</i> , hath the yearly revenue of twenty thousand <i>Kockjens</i> .	20000
	<i>Kinostay Counay</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bitchiou</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Courofi</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Matsendayro Koysiro</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Farima</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Firamma</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Inafacka Tzouuacamy</i> , Governour of a Castle belonging to the King in the Province of <i>Onofacka</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Matsendaro Kennots</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Jamba</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Camme-jamma</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Mastay Saske</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Ochio</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sanbonmaets</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Oumoura Minbou</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Fisen</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Daymats</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Matsendayro Ifumy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Mino</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Iwamoura</i> , the like sum.	20000
	<i>Matsendayro Conocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Sonnocomy</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fyannori</i> , the like sum.	20000

<i>Minisofaito</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Micauwa</i> , who lives in the Castle of <i>Caria</i> , the like sum.	20000	1639
<i>Nito Tatewakie</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Chiono</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Iwaystoma</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Ongasaware Wakasa</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Simofa</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Sekijada</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Fischicatta Cammon</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Chiono</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Manwaro</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Iwsky Sirrosy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Chiono</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Jedou-ra</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Reckongo Fingo</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Dewano</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Jury</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Tackenacke Oenieme</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Bongo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Fonnay</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Mouri Ichenocamy</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Boungo</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Ounays</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Wackebe Sacjow</i> , a Lord in the Province of <i>Totomy</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Onso</i> , the like sum.	20000	
<i>Isifoy's Insanocamy</i> , another Lord in the same Province of <i>Totomy</i> , who lives in the Lordship of <i>Cosioys</i> , hath in like manner a yearly Revenue, of twenty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	20000	

There are, besides the forementioned, many other Lords, who have very considerable Revenues; as namely, *Sangoro Saffioye*, and *Fory Mimasacka*, who have each of them a Revenue of twenty thousand *Kockiens*.

There are also others, not much inferiour to these in point of Revenue, whom we shall not think much particularly to mention.

<i>Qua jamma Sammon</i> , hath a yearly Revenue of fifteen thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	15000
<i>Fossacauwa Gemba</i> , as much.	15000
<i>Sackina Daysen</i> , as much.	15000
<i>Maisendayro Daisien</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Gotto Aways</i> , Lord of the Island of <i>Gotto</i> , near <i>Tirando</i> , the like sum.	15000
<i>Gattaingiri Iwami</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Crusima Jefsingo</i> , the like	15000
<i>Conbori Totomy</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Takangi Mondo</i> .	15000
<i>Miake Jefsingo</i> .	15000
<i>Sackay Ouckon</i> .	15000
<i>Conda Iwamy</i> .	15000
<i>Nasua Feuts</i> .	15000
<i>Ondaura Bisen</i> , the like sum.	15000

Besides all these, there are yet some five or six and twenty, who have each of them ten thousand *Kockiens* of yearly Revenue. But we shall forbear the naming of them.

It remains then only, that we give an account of the Revenues of those Lords who are actually attendant on the Court, which are so considerable, that they may well deserve a place by themselves.

<i>Deyno Oiedonne</i> , hath a yearly Revenue of a hundred and fifty thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	150000	The Revenues of the Ministers of State.
<i>Sackay Outandonne</i>	120000	
<i>Nangay Sinnanodonne</i>	100000	
<i>Sackay Sannikodonne</i> .	90000	
<i>Audo Onkiondonne</i> .	60000	
<i>Inoie Cawayrdonne</i> .	50000	
<i>Inaba Tangodonne</i> .	40000	
<i>Sackay Auwadonne</i>	30000	
<i>Sackay Jamaissoradonne</i> , the like.	30000	
<i>Neyta Ingadonne</i> .	20000	

*Tsmisfia*

1639.

<i>Ismitia Nimbo-donne</i> , the like.	20000
<i>Nisior Onkioudonne</i> , the like.	20000
<i>Matsendayro Femondonne</i> , the like sum.	20000
<i>Immanguyts Taytemadonne</i> , the like.	20000
<i>Matsendayro Insdonne</i> .	15000
<i>Abobongodonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Anwajamma Onkoradonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Ciongoek Sensindonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Itacoura Neysindonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Narsye Insdonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Akiamonta Tayfimadonne</i> , the like.	15000
<i>Forita Cangadonne</i> , ten thousand <i>Kockiens</i> .	10000
<i>Miura Simadonne</i> , the like.	10000
<i>Maynda Gonorkadonne</i> , the like.	10000
<i>Missona Jamatta</i> , the like.	10000
<i>Fory Isnocamy</i> , the like.	10000
<i>Miury Omonaskadonne</i> , the like.	10000
<i>Fonda Sanjandonne</i> , the like sum.	10000

Now the Revenues of the Princes and Lords of whom we have given this account, consists altogether in Lordships and Demesnes: for some are rich in Corn and Cattle, others in several Mines, as Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Quick-silver, Iron, &c. Others are wealthy in Woods, Flax, Cotton, or Silk; of all which the Emperour hath a certain knowledge, by the secret informations sent him by those Secretaries whom he places about them to manage their Affairs; for he recommends to every one of them a Secretary, with a Letter to this effect. *Well-beloved, I know you have many Vassals and Servants, and that the occasions wherein you are to employ them are very great; therefore I send you a person, whose assistance may in some measure ease you of the burthen which lies upon you, and of whose fidelity you may be assur'd, in as much as I commend him to you, as one who hath been brought up at my own house: Make use of him, and take in good part the care I have of your person and affairs.* These indeed, for the most part, are such as have serv'd the Emperour in their youth, in his three Chambers, and of whose abilities, prudence, and judgment he is satisfied, assuring himself of their fidelity, besides the expressions he might find thereof during the time of their service, by an act signed with their blood: in so much that there is not ought done in the Provinces, whereof he hath not, by this means, a perfect account. For these Secretaries keep an exact Journal of whatever they observe in the life and actions of the Princes whom they are sent to, who undertake nothing without their advice, nor do any business wherein they are not consulted, which gives them great authority in the Provinces, and makes the Princes themselves look on them as such, whose favour they stand in need of to keep a fair correspondence with the Court. On the other side, these Princes are glad to have able and understanding persons about them, such as may observe the miscarriages of their Government, and have the confidence to be their Remembrancers thereof; as chusing rather that a faithful Servant should acquaint them therewith, that so they may be seasonably reform'd, than that they should become the discourse of the people, or any should take occasion thence to do them ill Offices about the Emperour.

The Lords have three names. Slaves dye with their Masters.

The great Lords, who govern the chiefest Provinces, have three names; to wit, their own proper Name, that of the Family, and the Sirname, which they take from their Province, and which they commonly give the Castle where they live; and they are the more willing to be called by the name of their Family, then their own, upon this account; that, as they say, the Family was before them. But it is withall to be observed, that there is not any man but hath his name changed thrice; for the name which had been given him in his Infancy, being not fit for him when he is become a man, at the age of twenty years there is another given him; and when he comes to that of fifty five or sixty, he receives a third name, such as was not fit for youth or a less advanc'd age.

The departure of great Lords is commonly attended by the voluntary execution of twenty or thirty Vassals or Slaves, who rip up their bellies and die with their Masters. These are oblig'd to this by an Oath, and it is done partly by way of acknowledgment of the particular kindness which their Lords had for them. Having acquainted their Lord, that they are willing to be oblig'd to sacrifice themselves in that manner when occasion shall require, they entertain him with a short discourse to this purpose; *Most mighty Sir, you have many other slaves and servants, of whose affection and fidelity you are assur'd; who am I, or what have I deserv'd, that you should honour me with your favour above any of the rest?*

rest? I resign up this life to you, which is already yours, and promise you, I will keep it no longer than it shall be serviceable to yours. Then the Lord and the Vassal take off, each of them, a Bowl of Wine, which is the most Religious Ceremony they have among them, to confirm their Oaths, which thereby become inviolable. 1639.

To do this execution upon themselves, after the death of their Lord, they get together all the nearest of their Kindred, who conduct them to the *Mesquite* or *Pagode*, where they sit down upon Mats and Garments, wherewith they cover all the floor, and having spent some time in making good cheer, they rip up their bellies, cutting them cross, so as that all the guts come out; and if that does not dispatch them, they thrust themselves into the throat, and so compleat the execution. Nay, there are some, who coming to hear that their Masters intend to build some Edifice, either for himself or the Emperour, will desire him to do them the honour, that they may be laid under the Foundations, which they think are made immoveable by that voluntary Sacrifice; and if their request be granted, they cheerfully lay themselves down at the Foundation, and have great Stones cast upon them, which soon put them out of all pain. But it is for the most part Despair which puts them upon this resolution; in as much as these are of that kind of Slaves, who are so cruelly treated, that death were more supportable to them than the wretched life they lead.

All their *Pagodes* or *Mesquites* are of Wood, rais'd three or four foot from the ground, and about seven or eight fathom square; They have on the outside many Turrets, having lights on all sides, and gilt all over, but very narrow, and set out with certain fantastick Figures, but wretchedly done, as to proportions. They have also Statues in their *Pagodes*, whereto they address their Prayers, and bestow on them, by way of Alms, a certain number of *Caxias*, which the Priests make their advantage of. *Their Mesquites.*

But their Castles are much better built. His Majesty hath belonging to him many spacious and fair ones, but the most considerable are those of *Osacca* and *Jedo*. The Princes and great Lords have also very handsome Castles, but those which are fortifi'd are oblig'd to receive a Garrison from the Sovereign. The Cities have not any Fortifications at all: for, some few only excepted, which lie between *Firando* and *Jedo*, and have only simple walls; the rest have not any at all, but the Streets are streight, and of the same breadth and length, that is, sixty *Jekiens*, which make about fourscore and ten fathom. Every Street hath two Gates, which are shut up in the night, and a Watch kept at them: as also two Officers, who are accountable for the disorders committed in their Quarter, and speak to the Judge, about any thing wherein the Inhabitants of the Streets, whereof they have the oversight, are any way concern'd; there being, it seems, such order taken, that all persons are not permitted to present themselves indifferently before the Magistrate, but they would have it done by such as know what respect they owe to their Superiours. *The Cities of Japan are not wall'd.*

The Cities or Towns have no particular Revenue, nor any sums of Money in bank, whereof they have the disposal; for all the Demesne belongs to the Sovereign, who bestows the Revenue thereof on the Princes and great Lords before mentioned, and permits not the raising of any Impositions or Taxes, of any nature whatsoever. Not is it to be fear'd that the mildness of the Air of that Countrey should breed any of those Grasshoppers, which consume, where-ever they come, all the Fruit which the Hail hath left on the Trees, in so much that they leave not any verdure on them. They only pay a small chief Rent for their Houses, which the great Lords receive yearly, but it amounts not to above thirty shillings for the greatest, those of the middle sort ten, and the ordinary ones twenty pence. The Inhabitants are, besides these, oblig'd to certain dayes works, and to find a man for their Lord, to do what business he hath to put him upon; but this happens not above twice or thrice a moneth, and is but for an hour or two, or at most but for half a day. By this means the Lord lives upon his Demesne, the Souldier by his Pay, the Merchant by his Traffick, the Tradesman by his Trade, and the Husbandman by his Labour. *No Impositions in Japan.*

One of the most considerable parts of these Lords Revenues consists in Fishing, especially that of the Whale, which the Emperour gives them. There are taken every year about two or three hundred upon the Coasts of *Japan*, but they are not so big as those taken towards the North, and have, at most, not above seven or eight inches of fat, but much flesh, or meat, which the *Japonneses* feed upon.

There is no Lord, nor indeed any Citizen, or Merchant, but may put his Vassals and Domesticks to death, and that by way of Justice, he himself being the Judge; but to others Justice is administred, all over the Country, in the Emperours name. Gentlemen and Souldiers have the priviledge to be their own Executioners, and to rip up their bellies themselves: but others are forc'd to receive their death from the hands of the common Executioner. *The power of Masters over their Servants.*



1639. Executioner. They alledge, as a reason for this proceeding of theirs, that Merchants are, in some respect, infamous, in as much as they are, for the most part, Lyars, and deceive those that trust them. Tradesmen they sleight, as being only but publick servants, and the Peasantry is contemptible, by reason of the wretched condition they live in, which is little better then that of Slaves. Only the Gentlemen and Souldiers are best respected, and live at the charge, and upon the labour of others.

Gaming a Crime.

No offence, though never so small, but is punish'd with death, but especially Theft, though it were but for a Penny. Gaming, whether that which depends upon chance, or requires skill, is capital among them, if it be for money; and he who kills another, though innocently, and in his own defence, is to die without mercy; with this only difference, that such as kill in their own defence, as also they who commit such Faults or Offences, as would not here be punished with death, die only themselves, but other Offenders involve all their Kindred in their misfortune; so that for the Crime of one single person, the Father, Brethren and Children are put to death, the Wives and Daughters are made Slaves, and the Estate of the whole Family is confiscated. And this happens so frequently, that there are Commissioners expressly appointed for the administration of what is so confiscated; yet does not the money raised thereby go to the King, but is employed in the building of *Paragodes*, and the repairing of High-ways and Bridges.

All the Relations of Offenders die with them.

A particular Punishment for Theft.

The torture Thieves are put to, for want of evidence, makes rather the unfortunate than the guilty to be condemned. They take a piece of Iron, about a finger thick, and a foot square, and make it red hot, and as soon as the redness is gone, and the Iron return'd to its own colour, they put it to the hands of the party accused, upon two sheets of Paper, which immediately flame, and if the accused person can cast the piece of Iron upon a little Hurdle standing near him, without burning himself, he is dismissed; but if his hands are ever so little touched by the Fire, he is sentenc'd to die. This Crime is punish'd with a particular kind of death. The Criminal is tied with a Straw-roppe, by the Neck, to a great Cane, overthwart which they put two other Canes, much after the manner of a *Lorraine-Cross*, whereto they fasten the Feet and the Hands, and then the Executioner runs him through with a Pike, from the right Side up to the left Shoulder, and from the left Side to the right Shoulder: so that being twice run through the heart, he is soon dispatch'd. Sometimes they only fasten the Malefactor with his Back to a Post, and they make him stretch forth his Hands, which are held out by two Men, and then the Executioner, standing behind him, runs him in at the Neck, and so into the Heart, and dispatches him in a moment.

The Lords have such an absolute power over their menial Servants, that there needs but a pretence to put them to death. An example of this happened not long since; a Servant had the insolence to address himself to a Gentleman, to proffer his service to him, but ask'd greater Wages then he knew the other was able to give, purposely to abuse him. The Gentleman, perceiving the impudence of the Raskal, was a little troubled at it, but smother'd his indignation, and only told him, that his demands were very great, but that he had so good an opinion of him, that he must needs be a good Servant. Accordingly he kept him a while; but one day charging him with some neglect, and reproaching him, that when he should have been about his business, he had been idling about the City, he put him to death. The Gentlemen and Souldiers are for the most part very poor, and live miserably; but being highly conceited of themselves, most of them keep Servants, though only to carry their Shooes after them, which are indeed but as it were a pair of Soles, made of Straw or Rushes, having a hole towards the toe, which keeps them on their feet.

The Crimes for which all the Kindred are put to death.

The Crimes for which all of the Family or kindred are put to death, are Extortion, Coyning, setting of Houses on fire, ravishing of Women, premeditated murder, &c. If a Mans Wife be guilty of any Crime her Husband is convicted of, she dies with him, but if she be innocent, she is made a Slave. Their punishments bear no proportion to the Crimes committed, but are so cruel, that it were not easie to express the barbarism thereof. To consume with a gentle Fire, or only with a Candle, to crucifie with the Head downwards, to boyl Men in seething Oyl or Water, to quarter and draw with four Horses, are very ordinary punishments among them.

One who had undertaken to find Timber and Stones for the building of a Palace for the King, and had corrupted the Officers appointed by his Majesty to receive and register what he should send in, was crucified with his head downwards. The officers were condemn'd to rip up their bellies; but the Merchant was put to the foresaid death. He had the repute of an honest man, and was one that had had occasion to oblige several Persons of Quality; in so much that some resolv'd to petition the Emperour for his pardon, though these intercessions for condemn'd persons be in some sort criminal; and indeed the Empe-

our took it so ill, that the Lords, who had presented their Petition for him, had no other answer thereto, but the reproaches he made to them of their imprudence. 1639.

It happened in the year 1638. That a Gentleman, on whom the King had bestowed the Government of a little Province, near *Jedo*, so oppressed the Country people, that they were forc'd to make their complaints thereof to the Court, where it was ordered, that the said Gentleman, and all his Relations, should all have their bellies ripp'd up on the same day, and as near as might be at the same hour. He had a Brother, who lived two hundred forty and seven Leagues from *Jedo*, in the service of the King of *Fingo*; an Uncle, who lived in *Satsuma*, twenty Leagues-further; a Son, who serv'd the King of *Kinocuni*; a Grand-son, who serv'd the King of *Massamme*, a hundred and ten Leagues from *Jedo*; and at three hundred and eighty Leagues from *Satsuma*, another Son, who serv'd the Governour of the Castle of *Quanto*; two Brothers, who were of the Regiment of the Emperours Guard; and another Son, who had married the only Daughter of a rich Merchant near *Jedo*; yet were all these persons to be executed precisely at the same hour. To do that, they cast up what time were requisite to send the Order to the farthest place, and having appointed the day for the execution there, Orders were sent to the Princes of all the forementioned places, that they should put to death all those persons upon the same day, just at noon, which was punctually done. The Merchant, who had bestowed his Daughter on that Gentlemans Son, died of grief, and the Widow starv'd her self.

Lying is also punished among them with death, especially that which is said in the presence of the Judge. Lying punished with death.

The forementioned punishments are only for Gentlemen, Souldiers, Merchants, and some other persons of mean quality: but Kings, Princes and great Lords are ordinarily punished more cruelly than if they were put to death. For they are banished into a little Island named *Faitfensima*, which lies fourteen Leagues from the Province of *Jedo*, and is but a League about. It hath neither Road nor Haven, and it is so steepy all about, that no doubt it was with the greatest danger imaginable, that the first who got up to it made a shift to do it. Those who first attempted to climb it up, found means to fasten great Poles in certain places, whereto they have tyed ropes, with which they draw up those that are sent thither, and make fast the boats, which otherwise would split against the Rocks with the first Wind. There grows nothing in all the Island, but a few Mulberry-trees, so that they are obliged to send in provisions for the subsistence of the Prisoners. They are relieved every moneth, as is also the Garrison kept there, but they are dieted very sparingly, as being allow'd only a little Rice, some roots, and other wretched fare. They hardly afford them a lodging over their heads, and with all these miseries, they oblige them to keep a certain number of Silk-worms, and to make a certain quantity of Stuffs every year.

The expence which the Emperour of *Japan* is at every year in his Court, and what relates thereto, to wit, the salaries and allowances of the Officers and Counsellours, amounts yearly to four millions of *Kockiens*, and the salaries of Governours of places and Military persons, together with the Pensions he gives, amount to five millions of *Kockiens*. The Emperours expence.

They who speak of the Sovereign Prince of all *Japan*, give him the quality of Emperour, in as much as all the other Lords of the Country, on whom they bestow that of King, depend on him and obey him, not only as Vassals, but as Subjects, since it is in his power to condemn them to death, to deprive them of their Dignities, to dispossess them of their Territories, to banish or send them to some Island, for very petty Offences.

The Castle of *Jedo*, which is the place of his ordinary residence, is near two Leagues in *Jedo* Compaſs, and is fortified with three Walls, and as many Moats, very deep, and built of Free-stone, but so irregular, that it is impossible to assign it any certain Figure. Within less than three hundred paces, a Man must pass through eight or nine Gates, not one of them standing opposite to another; for being come within the first, he must turn on the right hand to go to the second, and being come within that on the left hand to go to the third, and so alternately till he comes to the last. Just within the last Gate there is a Magazine of Arms, for three or four thousand men, on which about all the Streets, which are fair and broad, having on both sides many magnificent Palaces. The Gates are done over with great Iron bars, and over every Gate there is a House, wherein two or three hundred Souldiers may be lodg'd. The Emperours Palace stands in the midst of the Castle, and hath belonging to it many Appartments, Halls, Chambers, Closets, Galleries, Gardens, Orchards, Groves, Ponds, Rivers, Fountains, Courts, &c. and several particular Houses, for his Wives and Consurbines.

1639. At your coming out of the Palace, you go into that quarter, where the Princes of the  
*The Palaces of the Kings.* Bloud, and Counsellors of State live, and thence into another quarter, where are the Palaces of the Kings and great Lords of *Japan*, which are all gilt both within and without; and the more sumptuously built out of this respect; that there is a certain emulation amongst them, who shall be at greatest expence to please the Emperour. In the next quarter to this, there live other Princes and Lords, who are not so powerful as the former, yet have their Palaces gilt, and so richly furnish'd, that a Man would think, at his first coming in, he met with Mountains of Gold. In this quarter there live some of the Wives and eldest Sons of those Princes, whom the Emperour hath brought up in the sight of the Court, as so many Hostages of their Fathers fidelity: so that this Castle, though as big as a considerable City, yet is so full of people, that the Streets can hardly contain them.

*The Emperours Retinue.* When the Emperour goes out of his Palace, he either rides on horse-back, or is carried in a *Palanquin*, open of all sides, and he is accompany'd by a great number of Lords, whom they call the Emperours *Camarades*. These Lords are of great quality, and very rich, yet do they not think it any dishonour, to apply themselves to such things as are either necessary or delightful. Some are skill'd in Musick, some in Physick, some are excellent at Writing, or Painting, others study eloquence and the managment of Affairs. Next them there goes a part of the Guard, which consists altogether of persons cull'd out among the Children of younger Brothers, Cousins, or Kinsmen of great Lords, among whom there are also some natural Children of such as either actually are in employments, or may, upon presumption of their Birth, pretend thereto. Then follow the ordinary Guard, commanded by their Colonels and other Officers, who so dispose thereof, that two or three thousand march before the Emperour, and as many after him. Among so many Souldiers, there is not one but there hath been some trial made of his courage, nor any that hath not gone through all the necessary exercises, in order to such a kind of life, and whose countenance and demeanour is not answerable to the employment they are put into. They leave a space between them and the Emperour for a great number of other great Lords, who are about his Majesties person, who must needs make a strange shew, among five or six hundred Men, all clad in black, some on horse-back, some afoot, all marching with such gravity, and so orderly, that there is not only any one man to be seen out of his rank, but a man hears not so much as a word spoken. The Streets are swept, and strew'd with Sand or Gravel, and the doors of all the houses standing open: yet is there not a person to be seen, either in the shops, or at the windows; or if it happen there be, the Guard makes them kneel till such time as the Emperour is pass'd by.

*The Dayro* Once every five year, the Emperour goes to *Meaco*, to do reverence to the *Dayro*, who is the true Prince of *Japan*, and still hath the quality, but without any function. There is a whole year spent in making all things ready for that journey, whereof we shall hereafter give a particular description, and Orders are issued out to the Lords who are to follow, and who accordingly come at the day appointed to the places where they are to meet the King; dividing themselves so, as that some go before, to relieve such as come from the Court, so to prevent the disorder and confusion, which were unavoidable among so great a number of Princes, who are all oblig'd to make their appearance upon this occasion, with all the bravery and magnificence they can.

*The Emperours magnificence.* From the City of *Jedo*, to that of *Meaco*, there are a hundred and twenty five Leagues, and within every three or four Leagues there is a considerable City, able to lodge the whole Court; yet hath the Emperour caused to be built between those two places, at an equal distance one from the other, eight and twenty fair Houses, of which there are twenty great Castles, and in every House there is a Retinue, and all things else befitting a Kings Court, as Gentlemen, Guards, Horses, Officers, and Servants, with Provisions necessary for the subsistence of the whole Train. They who go along with the Emperour, from the City of *Jedo*, leave him to the care of those whom they find in the first House; These accompany and conduct him to the second; and so from one to another, till he comes to the City of *Meaco*; in his return from whence, he observes the same order, being attended from one House to another, till he comes to *Jedo*.

The Emperours of *Japan* build many of these Castles, and have them finish'd in so short a time, that they will have a Structure compleated in six moneths, which in *Europe* would take up as many years. We have an Instance of it in the Castle which the Emperour had built in the year 1636. in the Province of *Nioko*, four dayes journey from the City of *Jedo*. It is fortified with a double Moat, and a double Rampier, and both of Freestone, and it is so spacious, and consists of so many particular Palaces, for the Grandees of the Court, and so many Appartments, Gardens and Fountains for the Emperour himself, that the best Architect in *Europe* would not have finish'd it in several years; yet

was this great building compleated in less than five months: there were so many Masons, Carpenters, Joyners, Stone-cutters, Gilders, Painters, &c. employ'd about it. This Castle is so far within the Countrey, that the Emperour lodges there but once a year, when he goes to do his Devotions at his Father's Sepulchre, which is thereabouts, upon which occasion he stays there two nights. 1639.

His Treasures are so great, that it is impossible to give any thing near an exact account of it, inasmuch as the Gold and Silver is lock'd up in Chests, and dispos'd into the Towers of the Castle, besides what is in several places, up and down the Countrey, where it increases almost to infinity, since the Revenue of two months, will defray the charges of a whole years expence. The late Emperour, Father to him who now reigns, lying on his death-bed, call'd for his Son, and told him, That the Kingdom, and all the Treasures would beere long at his disposal, but he recommended to his particular care certain Chests and Cabinets, where he should find the ancient Chronicles of the Kingdom, and several excellent Books of Morality, as also the Crown-jewels, exhorting him highly to esteem them, as himself and his Predecessours had done. The pieces he had so much recommended to his Son, were, one kind of Cymitar, called *Iejuky Massamme*; another Cymitar, of a kind called *Samoy*; one other lesser Cymitar, called *Bongo Doyssiro*; A little Pot for *Tsia*, or *Tbe*, called *Naraisiba*; another greater *Tsia* Pot, called *Stengo*, and a Manuscript, intituled *AUC KOKI KINDOI*. He left his elder Brother, the King of *Ouwary*, a Picture called *Darma*, which was to be look'd on only of the one side, and a Cymitar, called *Massamme*. To his second Brother, the King of *Kinocony*, a Cymitar, called *Jessa Massamme*, and a Picture, wherein were represented a great number of Frogs; and to the third Brother, King of *Mico*, a Cymitar, called *Sandame*, and a Manuscript, named *Sinche*. And though his six Pieces are not to be compar'd to those he bequeath'd his Son, yet not any one of them but was valued at above a thousand *Oebans* of Gold, which amount to forty seven thousand *Thayls*, or crowns. The Legacies he gave several Princes and Princesses of the Blood, and other Lords and Ladies, as also to some of the Soldiery, and his Servants, amounted to thirty six millions.

The Emperour who now reigns, was not married when he came to the Crown upon the death of his Father, which proceeded from his detestable addition to Sodomy; inasmuch that the *Dayro*, perceiving the aversion he had conceiv'd for women was such, that the State would in all likelihood come to be without a Governour, made choice, among his nearest kindred, and the best qualifi'd Princesses of the Kingdom, of two young Ladies, of extraordinary beauty, whom he sent to the Emperour, intreating him to take one of them, and honour her with the quality of *Miday*, which is that they give the Emperours lawful wife. He was so compliant as to marry one of them; but his brutality had so debauch'd him, that he treated her with such indifference, that it brought her into a melancholy which had almost cost her her life. Her Nurse troubled to see her in that condition, took one day the freedom to tell the King, that she could not comprehend, how he could slight one of the greatest beauties in the world, to pursue those irregular enjoyments, which cannot be had without violence to nature. The Emperour, who before was merry and in a good humour, was so troubled at this discourse, that going immediately into another room, he sent for several Architects and Undertakers of Buildings, and commanded them to build a Castle fortifi'd with several Moats and Draw-bridges, and very high Walls, in which he confin'd his Wife, with her Nurse, and all the Women and Maids belonging to them. The Emperour's own Nurse, who had a greater influence upon him, then his Mother, perceiving that there would be a want of Heirs to inherit the Crown, bethought her of a course to remedy that inconvenience, which was, to get to Court all the handsomest young maids in the Kingdom, whom she produced, as often as the Emperour's good humour gave her occasion or encouragement to do it. Of all she brought, only the Daughter of an Armourer insinuated her self into his affection, and was got with child by him; but the other Ladies troubled to see a maid of so mean quality prefer'd before them, found means to corrupt the midwife, and to kill the child, so secretly, that the Emperour never had the least knowledge thereof.

We have it from the Chronicles of *Japan*, that that great State hath always been govern'd by a Monarch, whom in their Language they call *Dayro*, and that his Subjects had so great a veneration for their Prince, that they thought it a crime to be wanting in point of respect towards him, so far were they from taking up Arms to disturb the Peace of the Countrey. His person was accounted so sacred, that they would not have it touch the ground, or that he should be uncover'd abroad. Whence it came, that when the other Princes were engag'd in a war one against another, there was a General named, who acted in the *Dayro's* name, and reduc'd the Rebels to their duty. They have still the same respect for the *Dayro*.

His Treasures.

The Emperour of Japan is a Vice-roy.

Confines his Wife to a Castle.

How the Emperour of Japan came to the Crown.

1639. *Dayro*, infomuch, that they permit not that his hair or beard should be cut, or his nails par'd, nor his meat to be dress'd in Pots that had been used before. He hath twelve Wives, which are bestowed on him with extraordinary Ceremonies and Magnificence. When ever he goes abroad, his twelve Wives follow him in so many Coaches, which are gilt and enriched with their Arms and devises. They are lodg'd in twelve great Pallaces, built in the street which goes to the King's Palace, and having adjoining to them several other fair houses for his Concubines. Not one of these Women, but hath a great Supper made every night at her Palace, at which there is Musick, and the Women-dancers; but as soon as the King is gone into that Palace where he intends to pass away the night, they all send in their suppers, and have their divertisements at that Ladies Lodgings, whom the King is pleas'd to honour with his presence.

*Ceremonies at the choice of a Nurse for the Dayro's son.*

One of the greatest Ceremonies and Magnificences to be seen in *Japan*, is that performed at the birth of a Prince, who is to inherit the dignity of a *Dayro*. For, to chuse a Nurse for the Child, they get together fourscore of the handsomest young Women in the Kingdom, whom they present to the Twelve Wives of the *Dayro*, and to nine of the greatest Lords of the Countrey, and of nearest kin to the *Dayro*, who, for want of Issue male, might succeed him. These Princes and Ladies receive those designed for this employment, give them extraordinary Titles, and treat them a whole day together. The next day the foresaid number is reduc'd to the moyety, and one half is dismiss'd, with very great Presents. The next day, they add to the Titles of those who stay, with great Ceremonies, and their number is reduc'd to ten, and afterwards to three, the rest being still dismiss'd with Presents, and at the end of three days, they make choyce of one of these three, on whom they bestow, besides several other Titles, the quality of the Prince's Nurse. In order to her establishment in that Function, she is brought into the Prince's Chamber, whom she finds in the arms of one of the chiefest Ladies of the Countrey, by whom he had been kept from the time of his birth; and after the Nurse hath spurd a little of her milk into the Childes mouth, he is delivered up to her. All these Ceremonies, as also those performed at the ordinary Feasts, are very great, and they are at this day performed with the *Dayro*, who still enjoys a very considerable Revenue, sufficient to defray all the charge, and continues the same grandeur his Predecessours have been possess'd of, though the force of the Empire hath been devolv'd into other hands, as we shall now relate.

*A revolution in Japan*

The charge of General of the Army was heretofore the greatest of any in the Kingdom, as is that of *Constable*, in *France*; and it was invested ordinarily, though contrary to the rules of good policy, in the second Son of the *Dayro*. About a hundred and twenty years since, it happened there was a *Dayro*, who having a son he exceedingly doted on, would needs out of an imprudent compliance he had for the Mother, consent that he should participate of the Royal Dignity; and it was ordered that it should pass alternately from one to the other, every three years. But the son willing to make his advantage of the occasion, found means so to insinuate himself into the affections of the great Lords and the Soldiery, during the three years of his Reign, that he resolv'd to continue it, contrary to the exhortations of his Father, who too late repented him of his divesting himself of an authority which indeed is not communicable. This was the first disturbance that ever had been seen in *Japan*, inasmuch as both Father and Son being equally invested with the quality of *Dayro*, the people conceived they might, without any crime, take up Arms for either: However most of the Lords detesting the ingratitude of the Son, joyn'd with the General, whom the Father had appointed to reduce his Son to obedience, who was defeated and killed in that Civil warr. The General, finding himself well established in his charge, followed the example of the Prince, and abusing the lawful power, whereof he was seized, made his advantage of it to settle himself in the Throne, after the *Dayro's* death, yet leaving the lawful heir, with the quality of *Dayro*, all the outward appearance of his former greatness. This demeanour of the Generall's occasioned a second Civil warre, which was thought the more just, out of this respect, that in this the people took up Arms against an Usurper, who had not the quality of *Dayro*, nor consequently the Character, for which the *Japonneses* have so great a veneration. Accordingly, this war had the same success with the former; for the Usurper was defeated and executed. But this second General took the same course as his Predecessour had done, so that by this second Usurpation, the Countrey was reduced to an absolute Anarchy, wherein all were Masters; there being no Prince, nor Lord, nay hardly a Village, but was engaged in war against some other. These disorders gave occasion to a Soldier of Fortune, named *Taycko*, to appear at first, in the head only of fifty men, with whom he did such exploits, that he soon improved that handful to a very considerable Army.

*A Soldier of Fortune gets to be General of the Army.*

His first adventures were the taking in of several Castles and small Cities; but within

in a while after, his thoughts flew much higher, and he proved so fortunate in his designs, that within less than three years, he became absolute Master of the whole State. He left the *Dayro* the external part of his former greatness, and thought it enough to be in effect, what the other was only in appearance. The *Dayro*, on the other side, perceiving it was impossible for him to prevent that establishment, comply'd therewith, and chang'd the quality of *General* of the Army to that of *Emperour*. *Taycko*, who could not expect much quietness in his newly acquired fortune, if he removed not those Lords of whom he conceived any jealousy, resolv'd to keep them at a distance from the Court; and to that end, he sent the chiefest of them with an Army of sixty thousand men, into the Countrey of *Corea*, with order not to return thence till they had conquered that Province. They there met with such resistance, that they were near seven years reducing that Nation to obedience: *Taycko* in the mean time feeding them with fair hopes, and animating them to prosecute a design of so great concernment to the State. They were forc'd to obey; but being impatient to return to their own habitations, they committed such exorbitances as made the Inhabitants of *Corea* desperate; insomuch, that not able any longer to endure the burning of their houses, the murthers, and other violences done them; they sent an Embassador to the Court, who to deliver his Country out of the miseries it had suffered for so many years, made a shift to poyson *Taycko*, who some days after dyed. The Army in *Corea* was immediately disbanded, and the Lords who had the command of it, return'd to their several homes.

*Taycko* being on his death-bed, and considering with himself that he could not hope to derive the succession to his Son, who was but six years of age, if he made not some powerful Person Protector, during his Minority, sent to *Ongoffchio*, one of the greatest Lords of the Country, desiring him to undertake the tuition of that young Prince. *Ongoffchio* accepted it, and to give *Taycko* the greatest assurance he could expect, that he would be faithful to him, promised him, by an act signed with his blood, that he would deliver up the Crown to *Fidery*, (so was the young Prince called) as soon as he were come to the fifteenth year of his age, and that he should be Crown'd Emperour, by the *Dayro*. The disorders of the late Civil Warrs were yet fresh in every mans memory, so that there was a general joy conceiv'd, to see the Regency in the hands of a person, excellently qualified for the execution thereof. *Ongoffchio* was indeed a person of very great endowments, but he had withal too much spirit and ambition to be reduced to a private life; after he had been possessed of the Sovereign Power for so many years. He had obliged *Fidery* to marry his Daughter, yet could not so near an alliance smother so that predominant passion in him. Whence it came that he immediately gave out, that *Fidery* was grown so distrustful of him, that he was forc'd to stand upon his guard, and to raise an Army to oppose that which *Fidery* was going to get together against him. He gave out also that *Fidery* would needs be treated as Emperour, and discharge the Functions thereof, before the *Dayro* had acknowledged him to be such, or Crown'd him in that quality. Accordingly he took his march with a powerful Army, raised in the Kingdom of *Suruga*, towards the City of *Ozacka*, where *Fidery* lived, and after a siege of three months, reduced him to so great extremities, that *Fidery* sent his Wife, who as we said before, was *Ongoffchio's* daughter, to intreat her Father to grant him his life, and to sign him such Lands in any Province of the Kingdom as he should think fit, where he might live privately: But *Ongoffchio* would not see his daughter, and continuing his siege, he became at last Master of the Castle.

The unfortunate *Fidery* being got, with his wives, and several other persons of Quality, in one of the Palaces; *Ongoffchio* ordered it to be compassed about with great piles of wood, which being set on fire, the Pallace and all within was reduced to ashes. He put to death all the Lords who had sided, or held any correspondence with *Fidery*, and by that means established himself the sole Monarch of that State, as *Taycko*, his Predecessour, had done before him. *Ongoffchio* died the year following, and left the Empire in quiet, to his Son *Combo*, or *Combosamme*, the Father of *Chiongon*, who now Reigns.

It is no hard matter for the Emperour of *Japan* to raise and keep an Army on foot, in regard all his Subjects are obliged to bring in and maintain a certain number of Soldiers, proportionably to their Revenue. For he who hath a thousand *Kockiens*, or four thousand Crowns *per annum* is obliged to maintain twenty foot and two horse-men; and according to this account, the Lord of *Firando*, (where the *Dutch* made their first establishment) who hath sixty thousand *Kockiens* of yearly Revenue, was tax'd at twelve hundred foot, and one hundred and twenty horse, besides the servants, slaves, and what else is consequent thereto. So that by this means, according to the Revenues of the Lords we mentioned before, which amount to eighteen millions, and four hundred thousand *Kockiens*, the Emperour

1639  
And Sovereign.

Is poyson'd.

Bestows the  
Regency on  
one of the  
Lords.Put to  
death the  
Heir of the  
Crown.The Empe-  
rour of Ja-  
pan raises  
his Armies  
upon the  
charge of  
his Subjects

1639. perour of *Japan* may raise an Army of three hundred sixty eight thousand foot, and thirty  
 Can raise eight thousand eight hundred horse, not accounting the hundred thousand foot and twen-  
 368000. ty thousand horse, which he is able to maintain out of his own Revenue, and which he  
 foot, and keeps as a standing Army, for the defence of his Castles and strong places, and for his Guards.  
 38800. Most of these Lords find it no great trouble to make their Levies, for there are few of  
 horse. them but ordinarily maintain twice as many Soldiers, out of an humour they have to make  
 great shoves, especially upon those occasions wherein they expect to give some assurances  
 of their courage or zeal they have for the service of their Prince.

*Their Arms.*

Their Cavalry is armed with Corselets, but the Foot have only Head-pieces. The offen-  
 sive Arms of the Horse are a sort of Fire-locks, not much longer then our Pistols, half-  
 pikes, Bowes, Arrows, and Cimitars. The foot wear every man two Cimitars, and have  
 Muskets, Pikes, and *Nanganets*, or half-pikes, and every man hath about him a very broad  
 Knife. Their Companies consist but of fifty Soldiers, who are commanded by a Captain,  
 a Lieutenant, and ten Corporals, to wit, a Corporal for every five Soldiers. Five Compa-  
 nies make a Body, which is commanded by another Officer, and every fifty Companies have  
 their Colonel. The Emperour of *Japan* hath the same course taken, to know every year  
 how many persons there is in his Kingdom. For every quarter of a City or Village is di-  
 vided into Cantons, consisting of five houses, which are commanded by a certain Officer,  
 who keeps a Register or Catalogue of all those who die or are born within the five houses  
 under his jurisdiction, and reports the same to his superiours, who give an account thereof  
 to the Prince or Lord of the Province; and these last to two Counsellors of State, who  
 are appointed for that purpose.

*The Council of State.*

The Council of State consists of several Lords, who have each of them his particular  
 function, excepting only the four chiefest, who are every day punctually at Court to give  
 the Emperour an account of affairs. All the rest are so powerful and rich, that some among  
 them have above two millions of yearly Revenue, others three or four hundred thousand  
 Crowns, others but forty or fifty thousand. They are very reserv'd in the advice they give  
 the Emperour, to whom they speak not, even of affairs, if they find him not in a good  
 humour to hear them: but none will presume to speak to him twice of the same thing,  
 or renew his intreaties, after a refusal. This Council consists of such Lords as the Empe-  
 rour may be the more confident of, in regard they have commonly their education at the  
 Court. These have the management of all publick affairs, but with such dependance on  
 the Sovereign's pleasure, that they do not only never resolve on any things of themselves,  
 but indeed they never speak to the Prince, till he gives them some occasion to do it, and  
 that they have first consulted his eyes, and studied his countenance, to find what his sen-  
 timents are. They ever approve what he says, though never so prejudicial to himself,  
 even to the loss of a whole Province; for the least contestation would cost them their for-  
 tunes, if not their lives.

*The expen-  
 ces of great  
 Lords.*

From what we said before, it is evident, that the Revenues of these Lords are very  
 great; but their Expences are as great. For, first, not one of them but is obliged to  
 live one halfe of the year at Court, and, during that time, to keep house in the chief City of  
*Jedo*, where he who lives at the highest rate is most in favour with the Emperour. The  
 first six months in the year, those Lords who have their Principalities and Lordships  
 in the Easterly and Northerly Provinces of the Kingdom, continue at the Court, and the  
 other six months, those that live in the Western and Southern Provinces. At their com-  
 ing to the Court, and their departure thence, they make very considerable Presents to the  
 Emperour, and great Entertainments among themselves. Their Journeys and their  
 Expences at Court, whither some Lords bring a Retinue of five or six thousand per-  
 sons, lie very heavy on the richest, and ruine the rest. The Lord of *Firando*, who, as we  
 said, was one of the meanest, had in his Family, above three hundred men, and maintain'd  
 in the two houses he had at *Jedo*, above a thousand persons, comprehending in that  
 number the Women and Concubines he kept, as did also the other Lords, in one of  
 his two houses.

*Provisions  
 dear.*

Provisions are dear enough all over *Japan*, but at an excessive rate about the Court,  
 by reason of the abundance consumed by so great a number of persons of quality. Ano-  
 ther way to exhaust their Estates is, their magnificence in Building, there being still some-  
 what wanting in their appartments, either as to Painting or Gilding, or the like. Most of  
 their Domesticks go in Silk, especially their Women, and those of their own sex that  
 wait on them: so that there is hardly any Lord but spends more then his Revenue amounts  
 to. But what helps to ruine them, is the Order they receive from the Emperour, to sup-  
 ply him, ever and anon, with men and money, to carry on the publick Buildings, which he  
 does rather to drain the Purfes of these Lords, then out of any necessity obliging him there-  
 to.



The greatest Lords, when they build a Pallace, do ordinarily make two Gates thereto, one for their own use, and the other for the Emperours passage into it. The latter is much larger then the other, and made all of Joyner's work, excellently varnish'd, carv'd into branch-work, and gilt. Asoon as it is finish'd it is cover'd with boards, against the injury of the weather, and is not uncover'd, till near the time of the Emperour intends to honour the house with his presence, to dine there; and asoon as he is departed thence, it is shut up, and so kept ever after, out of this respect, that having serv'd for a passage to the Emperour's Sacred Majesty, it were a profanation, if any private person should pass through it after him. It is also to be observ'd that the Emperour never dines above once in any house belonging to another man, and that they are three whole years in making all things ready for his Entertainment. Accordingly he hath notice of it, three years before, and in the mean time all the furniture of the house is made and marked, as is also all the Plate, with the Arms and Characters of the Emperour; and after that time they are never more used, but kept very safe, as things not to be employed in any thing, after they have once serv'd the Sovereigns person. So that this Expence, and that which they are at in the Entertainment, which the Master of that House is obliged to make for the whole Court, for three months together, were enough to beggar an ordinary King.

1639.  
The Magnificence of the Lords in their buildings.

Three years requisite to provide an entrance for the Emperour.

Another thing lies heavy on these Lords, is, the Presents which the Emperour makes them. For upon his return from his ordinary Hunting, which is that of the Crane, a bird there very highly esteemed, he is wont to send some of those he hath taken, to such as he hath most kindness for. But that Present costs him at least half a years Revenue, in Feasts, Presents, and other publick Entertainments, which he is obliged to make in acknowledgment of the favour done him by his Majesty, in sending him a Bird taken by a Hawk put off from his Sacred Hands. It is not long since, that the Lord of *Zatiuma* treated the Emperour at a Dinner, in a Palace which was then but newly finished; but he got well by the expence he had been at. For the Emperour made him a Present for his Horses, (so they call the Gratifications he makes his Favourites) by an addition to his former Revenue, of two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns *per annum*.

The Grandees never take any Wife, but what they have from the Emperours hands; and it is of her alone who is given by him, that the Children are to be born, who are to inherit their Estates. Accordingly, they look on her and respect her as the person from whom they expect Heirs for the propagation of their Family, and upon that account, recommended to them by the Emperour. He who expects to have this honour done him builds a Palace purposely for her reception, furnishes it very richly, and allows her a Retinue consisting of a great number of Women and Maids, to accompany her, and wait on her.

The Emperour marries all the great Lords.

Women go not abroad but once a year, to give their Relations a Visit, and then they are seen in the streets, with a Retinue of thirty, forty, or fifty close *Palanquins*, wherein are carried so many Maids of Honour, accompanied each of them by their Waiting Gentlewomen, and other Women, marching in a File on both sides of the *Palanquins*, which are varnished over and gilt. All the remainder of the year, the women stir not out of their houses, into which there are not any men permitted to enter, save only some of the Wives nearest Relations, who sometimes have the freedom to see them, but very seldom, and that in their Husbands presence. It is his business on the other side to make the restraint as little burthenous as may be to them, by allowing them all the diversions and recreations, which honest women can take; finding them Gardens and Parks for walking, Ponds for fishing, keeping all sorts of living Creatures for their pleasure, and entertaining them every day with Musick and Plays. But they must expect to end their days in this restraint, and renounce the conversation of men, inasmuch as the least suspicion is here as unpardonably punished with death, as any other manifest crime; not only in the person of the Lady, but also in all about her. Her Attendants are commonly some of the handsomest young Gentlewomen in the Province, who always stand before the Master and Mistress with such respect, that they study to answer, laugh, and hold their peace, upon the least sign made them. They are ordinarily distinguished into Bands or Companies, consisting of sixteen Gentlewomen, who have each a Governess over them. They are clad in Silk, of sixteen different colours or liveries. For one Band is in a flower'd, painted, or embroidered, of different colours or liveries. For one Band is in a red livery, with girdles and head-cloathes of a green colour; another, white, with girdles and head-cloathes red; another, yellow, with girdles and head-cloathes of a sky-colour, and so of the rest. The Gentlewomen, who are received into the service of these Princesses, at fifteen or twenty years of age, oblige themselves, most of them, for the remainder of their lives; but such as are taken into it while they are yet children, are sometimes afterwards married to Gentlemen, Soldiers, or others of the menial Servants, who have some Office about the House, and whose Allowances are upon that Account augmented: but such as are not married at thirty, must not expect to change their condition, otherwise than by

The women kept in restraint.



being advanced to some more honourable Employments among the women. It is the custom of the Country, that Women should be instructed betimes, not to meddle with any kind of business whatsoever, in so much that they never speak of any such thing to their Husbands. These, on the other side, make it their brag, that they are enabled with such a strength of parts and understanding, as to leave all serious thoughts behind them, at their own Lodgings, when they leave those to go into the apartment of their Wives, where their discourse is altogether of mirth and divertisement. If a Woman should trouble her Husband with the least discourse about business, she would immediately put him out of humour, make him change his countenance, and oblige him to retire, without so much as speaking to her. But this she will be sure to avoid, though out of no other motive than this, that another might not have those enjoyments of him, which she by her imprudence would deprive her self of. For they affirm, that a woman is bestowed on man merely to serve, and divert him, and to mind the education of his Children, and that herein consists all her duty, and that there are but too many Examples of the mischiefs happening through the excessive freedom heretofore allowed to women.

The Wives of *Japan* have the reputation of being extremely faithful to their Husbands, and so modest and reserv'd, that none any where else come near them. Of this many instances might be produced: but confining our selves to the relation of a particular man's Travels, wherein these digressions must needs be thought tedious, we shall here produce only two or three, of many others, that happened much about the time we speak of.

*The generosity of a Japanese Wife.* The King or Prince of the Province of *Fingo*, hearing that a Gentleman of the Country had a very handsome woman to his wife, got him dispatch'd out of the way, and having sent for the Widdow, some days after her Husband's death, acquainted her with his desires. She told him, that though she had much reason to be glad, and think her self happy, in being honour'd with the friendship of so great a Prince, yet was she resolv'd to bite off her Tongue, and murder her self, if he proffer'd her any violence; but if he would grant her but one favour, which was to spend one month in bewailing her Husband, and then give her the liberty to make an Entertainment for the relations of the deceased, to take her leave of them, he should find how much she was his Servant, and how far she would comply with his affection. The Prince, who thought himself sure enough of her, made no difficulty to do what the Gentlewoman desired of him, and having provided a very great dinner, at the place where she desired it might be, all the kindred of the deceased came thither, but it was only to be witnesses of the fidelity which she expressed to her husband after his death: For the Gentlewoman perceiving the King began to be warm in his wine, out of the hope he was in to enjoy what had been promised him, desired the liberty to withdraw into an adjoining Gallery to take the Air; but as soon as she was come into it, she cast her self headlong down, in the presence of the King, and all her husband's Relations.

*An example of modesty in a Maid.* Much about the same time, it hapned that a young gentlewoman, being on her knees at the end of a Table, waiting on her Master, in the apartment of the Women, and overreaching her self to take a flaggon that stood a little too far from her, she chanced to let wind backwards, which she was so much ashamed of, that putting her Garment over her head, she would by no means shew her face after, but with an enrag'd violence taking one of her nibbles into her mouth, she bit it off with such fury, that she died in the place.

*Another example of modesty.* Another Lord, having had an exact search made for all the handsome young Damosels in his Province, to be dispos'd into his Ladies service, there was among the rest brought him one whom he was so much taken with, that he made her his Concubine. She was the Daughter of a poor Soldiers widdow, who hoping to make some advantage of her daughters good fortune, took occasion one day, to write her a large letter, wherein she express'd what a necessitous condition she was in, and how she was forc'd to sue to her for relief. While the Daughter was reading her Mother's Letter, her Lord comes into the room; but being ashamed to discover her Mothers poverty, she endeavours to hide the Letter from him, yet could she not convey it away so, as that the other did not perceive it. The disorder he observ'd in the Gentlewoman's countenance, made him suspect there might be some design in it, in so much, that he pressed her to shew him the Letter; but the more importunate he was, the more unwilling she was to satisfy him; so perceiving there was no way to avoid it, she thrust it into her mouth, with so much precipitation that thinking to swallow it down, it choaked her. This so incensed the Lord; that he immediately commanded her throat to be cut, whereby they discovered only the Mothers Poverty, and the Daughters innocence. He was so moved thereat, that he could not forbear expressing it by tears; and it being not in his power to make any other Demonstrations of his affection to the deceased; he sent for the Mother, who was maintained among his other Ladies, at the time we speak of, with all imaginable respect.

They

They are generally so reserv'd in their conversation, that their discourses are not only far from being guilty of any obscene or impertinent expression, but also they will not so much as talk of marriage, or ought relating thereto, even in honourable terms, in the presence of young people, who, when there is any such thing spoken of, immediately rise and go out of the Room. The Children have a great tenderness and respect for their Parents; as being perswaded there is no sin more severely punished by the Gods, then the disobedience of Children. They have also a certain veneration for their memory after their decease; for they religiously observe those fasting dayes they impose upon themselves of their own accord, abtaining from whatever hath had life, upon those dayes of the moneth, on which their Parents departed this World.

As they are very severe in restraining their Wives and Concubines of even the least liberty, so are they excessively cruel in punishing those which are not careful to preserve their honours, or give the least suspicion of their inclinations to be dishonest. It is not long since that the Lord of *Firando* caus'd three Ladies to be put into so many Chests, through which there were Nails struck in of all sides, one, for having prostituted her self to a Gentleman, who ripp'd up his own belly as soon as their familiarity was discovered; and the other two, because they had been privy to their Loves, and had not acquainted him therewith. He who finds a Man lock'd up in the same Room with his Wife, may kill them both; and in the Husbands absence, the Father, Brother, or any other Kinsman, nay, any one of the menial Servants may do as much: and by this means, they so avoid those scandals, which are but too frequent elsewhere, that a man seldom hears of Adultery among them; in so much that I do not remember I ever heard of any more then one Example, which being a remarkable one, I shall not think it much to insert it here.

A certain Merchant, who had some reason to suspect his Wife, pretended to go into the Country, but returning soon after, surpriz'd her in the very act. The Adulterer, he killed, and having ty'd his Wife to a Ladder, he left her in that half-hanging posture all night. The next day he invited all their Relations on both sides, as well Men as Women, to dine with him at his own house, sending them word, that the importance of the business he had to communicate to them, excused his not-observance of the custom they have, to make Entertainments for the Women, distinct from those of the Men. They all came, and wondred not much that the Mistress of the house was not to be seen, in regard her Husband told them that she was busie in the Kitchin; but dinner being well-nigh past, and the Guests perceiving the Woman appear'd not, they intreated him to send for her, which he promised to do. Whereupon rising from the Table, and going into the Room, where she was ty'd to the Ladder, he unbound her, put a Shrowd about her, and put into her hands a Box of *Lacque*, wherein were the Privy-members of her Gallant, cover'd with Flowers, charging her not to open the Box, and saying to her, *Go and present this Box to our common Relations, and see whether I may, upon their mediation, grant you your life.* She came in that equipage into the Hall where they sat at dinner, and falling on her knees presented the Box, with the precious Reliques within it, to the Kindred: but as soon as they had opened it, she swooned. Her Husband perceiving it, went to her, and to prevent her returning again, now that she was going, cut off her Head; which rais'd such an horror in the Friends, that they immediately left the Room, and went to their several homes.

To prevent these disorders, they have in their common Inns upon the Road, as also in certain places in Cities, the convenience of furnishing Travellers with a kind of Women, who are for the most part Slaves, but very well clad in Silk, and make no difficulty to profess themselves to keep men company all night. These have the Custom of Masters of Ships and common Sea-men that are Forreigners; but if they will bid at a little higher Game, and be more sure of their enjoyments, they may buy a Concubine, with whom they contract for the time they are to stay in the Country; allowing them five or six pence a day towards their diet, a Garment or two, certain pair of Shoes of *Cordevant*, and about eight or ten Crowns, for the Father, or Master, who lets her out.

We are so far from charging this Nation with being over-superstitious, that on the other side, we affirm, that there is no mark of Devotion to be observed among them. Those who are conceived to have very much, go once a moneth to their *Pagodas*, and pronounce several times the word *Nammanda*, which is the name of one of their Gods; but they are never seen praying to God, neither morning nor evening, nor at any time of the day. There is a certain Sect among them, which hath Priests, who preach thrice a year, to which Sermons all those of the same persuasion resort. There are also some who make use of another kind of Ecclesiasticks, especially in their long diseases, wherein they have prayers

1639. made, which last twenty four hours, with such a noise, that they stunne such as come near them, who yet cannot understand one word they say; not only in regard they pronounce ill and confusedly; but hence, that whatever they compose, as well in matter of Religion as Medicine, and the other Sciences, is couched in such high and obscure terms, that many times they understand them not themselves.

Their Pagodes and Priests.

Notwithstanding this irreligion, there are in *Japan* an incredible number of *Pagodes* or *Mesquites*, some of which have fifteen or twenty Priests belonging to them. They are distinguished from the *Laicks* in that their Heads are shaved, as also by their cloathing, in as much as they go in a kind of Cassock, made like the Frocks worn by some Country people: but upon Holidayes they go in a sort of long Garments, which they fold up under the left Arm, like a Cloak. Their principal employment is to pray before their Gods, and to bury the dead, or at least the ashes of such bodies as have been burnt. They are divided into several Sects, and consequently have so many different wayes of doing their Devotions, especially on the Anniversary dayes of the deceased, which they call *Bom*, on which the Priests are employed in praying and singing Letanies, in making Processions about a Chappel set about with Wax-lights, much after the same manner as is done in some parts of *Europe*. Their Sepulchres are near their *Pagodes*, covered with great Stones, two or three foot high, on which such as go to do their Devotions there cast Flowers, or branches of Trees, and put into a little Pit, made in the ground, some fair Water and a little Rice, which is taken away thence by the poor. Persons of Quality erect a little Pillar near their Sepulchres, and grave thereon their names, with a certain Elogy, which serves for an *Epitaph*.

Distinguished into several Sects.

A cruel kind of death.

Their Ecclesiasticks are divided into twelve principal Sects, of which eleven eat not of any thing that hath had life, and make a Vow of Chastity, with so strict an Obligation for the observance thereof, that if they break it, though in never so small a point, they are put to the most cruel death that ever was heard of. For the Priest who hath broken his Vow is put into the ground up to the Waste, near the High-way; and all that pass by, who are not nobly descended, are obliged to give a little stroke upon his Neck with a wooden Saw, which being very blunt makes the Wretch languish three or four dayes together. This course is taken with them, upon this account, that being permitted to use *Sodomy*, they may forbear Women.

The Priests of the twelfth Sect live after another rate. For it is lawful for them to feed on any thing that Earth or Water affords, as also to marry: and yet this Sect, which they call *Icko*, whence the Priests, whereof it consists, are named *Ickon*, is accounted the holiest, and most perfect of them all. He who is Head of this Sect, is also Supream Head of all the Clergy of the Country, and is in so great veneration among his followers, that they do not only carry him in a *Palanquin*, but indeed do him such honours as are almost Divine. All the Priests depend on the *Dayro*, who still hath the same power over the Ecclesiasticks, as he had heretofore, joyntly, with the secular power. Only such *Pagodes* as belong to these last have a settled Revenue, and enjoy many Priviledges and Immunities granted them by the Emperours. All the other *Pagodes* are maintain'd by what is given them, either by way of Alms, or the Gratifications that they get from those who employ them about Prayers for the dead, wherein the main part of the exercise of their Religion consists.

Their opinion concerning the Soul.

Some among them believe, that the Soul is immortal, that the Body is reduced to its first Principle, and becomes Dust and Ashes, but that the Spirit is either raised to eternal joy, or condemn'd to an endless grief, and that at its return into this World, it shall find good or evil, according to what it had done during this life. Others make no distinction between the Souls of Men and those of Beasts, and as they have no knowledge of the Worlds Creation, so are they ignorant that there is a time appointed for its dissolution. The most zealous among them make no scruple to convert their *Pagodes* into Drinking-houses; for, as they make choice of the most delightful places of the Country, for the *Pagodes*, so they walk in them, and divert themselves, in the presence of their Gods, and have the company of their Priests, drinking and debauching themselves to that height, that it proves the occasion of many consequent disorders.

No disputes about Religion.

A man shall never, in this Country, meet with any Controversies about Religion, nor ever find that a *Japponese* conceives himself any way obliged to instruct his Neighbour, or shew him his Errour: but on the contrary, their indifference for these concernments is generally so great, that some among them will not stick to change their Religion for a hundred Crowns.

They hate Christians.

They have so irreconcilable an aversion for the *Christians*, that, perceiving they went cheerfully to their deaths, when they only cut off their Heads, and crucified them after their

their death, they have since found out such exquisite torments, to procure their more painful departure, that, though they had resolution and constancy enough to endure them, yet could they not express that insolence and insensibility, as to receive so greivous a death, with the same alacrity they had discover'd at the ordinary Executions. There were indeed some who fung amidst the Flames; but it would have been somewhat above humanity, if they should not have groan'd in the torments they endured, when they were broild, with a gentle Fire, upon Gridirons, or suffer'd to languish for several dayes together. Yet did not all these courses much diminish the number of those Wretches; in so much that these Monsters of barbarisme, perceiving that Death little frighten'd those who look'd on it but as a passage to a better life, bethought themselves of other courses to be taken with them. Young Maids, of any Quality, they caused to be stripp'd stark naked, to be publicly violated, made them go on all four through the Streets, and dragg'd them through rugged and uneven places, till their hands and knees were cut, and their bodies torn in several places, and after all put them into Vats full of Serpents, which enter'd into their bodies at all the open places, and so put them to a very painful death: yet was this done with less horreur, then when they fill'd the privy parts of a Mother or a Daughter with Match done over with Gun-powder, and bound about those of a Son or a Father with the same, and forced the Son to set fire to that of the Mother, and the Father to that of his Daughter. 'Twas a kind of favour shewn them, when they cover'd their bodies all over with Turfs, and incessantly pour'd seething Water into their privy parts, till they expir'd amidst those torments, which commonly dispatch'd them not in less then three or four dayes. They drove great companies of them up and down the Country, and into Forrests, stigmatiz'd in the foreheads, with prohibitions, upon pain of death, that any should give them any sustenance or entertainment. Some were put into Cages upon the Sea-side, that the Tide might come up to their chins, and at the return of the water they might recover their spirits a little, to endure the greater torment at the next Floud. They bound the Fathers and Mothers to a Post, and hood-winked them, while they put the Children to inconceivable torments, which they being not able to endure, intreated their Parents with the most importunate expressions they could imagine at that age, to deliver them out of their pains, by renouncing. This was one of the most insupportable punishments of any they invented, and which brought many to death and abjuration. Another torment they had for those poor Children was, to pluck off their Nails, and to prick them with Bodkins in the tenderest parts of their bodies. To make a discovery of *Christians*, they ordered, that all the Inhabitants should once a year protest before their *Pagodes*, and sign a certain Instrument, whereby they renounced *Christian* Religion; and by this means there passed not a year, but a great number was discover'd. Such as were hung up by the feet, and were continued in that posture for ten or twelve dayes, endured the greatest torment of any, in regard the anguish of this punishment still increasing, there is no pain, not even that of fire it self, comes near it.

Diabolical  
inventions  
to put  
Christians  
to death.

These persecutions must needs have much diminish'd the number of *Christians* in *Japan*; but what most contributes to the destruction of *Christian* Religion, is a course they have taken, to put the *Christians* to death, even though they proffer to renounce; so that there is no way for any to avoid death, but by discovering another *Christian*, who may endure it in their stead, and by that discovery they escape. However, there is an exact Register kept of these *Renegadoes*, out of a design, as it is conceiv'd, one time or other, to rid the Country of them, when the Executions must cease for want of *Christians*.

About the same time there was a search made for *Christians* in all the Hospitals for Lepers, where they found three hundred and eighty *Christians*, whom they sent away in two Ships, to the *Philippine* Islands, as a Present to the *Portuguez*. The Leprosie is so common a Disease in *Japan*, that a man shall meet there with many, whose fingers and toes are so rotted, that they fall off.

The *Christians*, who are conducted to punishment, are tied; but the Priests, whether *Castilians*, *Portuguez*, or *Japonneses*, are otherwise treated. They shave off one half of their Heads and Beards, which they paint over with a red colour, put a Gag into their Mouths, and a Halter about their Necks, which is tied to the Horse-tail, on which they are brought to the place appointed for their execution.

Most of their Houses are built of Wood, slightly enough, in regard the Country is very much subject to Earthquakes. They are all raised three or four foot from the ground, <sup>their Houses</sup> boarded and matted, and very handfom within, especially those Rooms where they receive their Visits. They are, for the most part, but one story high, in which they live, and the rest serve for Corn-lofts. They have places distinct from their Houses, where they keep their

1639. their Merchandises, and what else they most esteem, in regard their Houses are so apt to take fire, that they are forc'd to have Fats full of Water always ready against such Accidents, which are very frequent among them.

The Houses of Gentlemen and Souldiers are divided into two partitions, whereof one is taken up by the Wife, who is never seen, and the other by the Husband, who hath his Chambers and Halls for the reception of his friends and his business. The Wives of Citizens and Merchants appear in the Shops, and have a care of the House; but they are treated with so much respect, that none durst let fall a free or equivocal expression in their presence, nay, a licentious one were criminal. Instead of Tapistry, they have a kind of Scenes or Shutters, which serve them also for Pictures, whereof they cover the closures with Paper painted and gilt, and so neatly pasted on, that the whole piece seems to consist but of one sheet. These Shutters are made of very thin boards; and fall one into another, so as that of two or three small Chambers, they can of a sudden make a very fair Hall. All these little Rooms make a kind of Gallery, which serves equally for both the Apartments of the Husband and Wife, and leads to a common Door to go into the Garden, which Door is ordinarily opposite to the Hall-windows. In the midst of the Room there commonly stands a Cabinet, on which they set a Pot of Flowers, which are there to be had all the year long. They are very curious about their Gardens, and make them as pleasant as may be, with Groves, Fountains, Orchards, and especially one kind of Tree, which is as green in Winter as in Summer.

There is not much Household-Stuff to be seen in their Houses, in regard they bestow on their Wives, the Trunks and Cabinets of *Lacque*, their rich Tapistry, and the like, or they dispose them into some private Rooms, into which they admit only their most intimate Friends. They are very expensive in their Pots for *Cha*, or *Tsia*, as also in Pictures, Pieces excellent for the writing, and in Arms.

They are civil.

They are civil, and entertain such as visit them with great Compliments. Persons of Quality make such as come to see them sit down, and present them with *Tobacco* and *Tsia*. If the Master of the house hath a particular esteem for the Friend who visits him, he will treat him with Wine, which is brought in a varnish'd Cup; and it were an incivility in him, to whom this honour is done, to refuse it. They are not so reserv'd, but that sometimes they will take a little more than they are well able to carry away; but seldom to that height, as to do ought whereof they may repent the next day, or quarrel in their Drink; for the perpetual apprehension they have of the unavoidable Death that would follow, keeps them in, and sends them to bed with whole Skins.

No drinking houses in Japan.

In Cities, and upon the High-ways, there are Inns, for the entertainment of Travellers and Passengers, but otherwise there is not a Tipling-house, or Cooks-shop, in all *Japan*. For though there are great lovers of good cheer, and company keeping, yet have they not any publick places for that purpose, but they meet at one anothers houses, and there spend the time in good fellowship and drinking, and have a kind of Musick, which is not very harmonious. They have but few Musical Instruments, and that most used among them, and which they are most taken with, is a kind of Lute, the belly whereof is above a foot-square, with a long and narrow neck, as being made only for four strings, which are of Silk, and they strike them with a Peg of Ivory, about the bigness of a Mans finger. They sing to it, but the voyce is as immelodious as the sound of the Instrument.

Their Musick.

Their Wine.

Their Wine they make of Rice, putting thereto some Sugar or Honey, and they call it *Moursack*, or *Saltse*. It is a kind of *Hydromel*, rather than Wine, yet it is as strong as the best Sack, and makes a Man drunk much sooner.

Tsia, how prepared.

As for *Tsia*, it is a kind of *Thé* or *Tea*; but the Plant is much more delicate, and more highly esteem'd than that of *Thé*. Persons of Quality keep it very carefully in Earthen-pots well stopp'd and luted, that it may not take wind: but the *Japonneses* prepare it quite otherwise than is done in *Europe*. For, instead of infusing it into warm water, they beat it as small as powder, and take of it as much as will lye on the point of a Knife, and put it into a dish of Porcelane or Earth, full of seething Water, in which they stir it, till the Water be all green, and then drink it as hot as they can endure it. It is excellent good after a debauch, it being certain there is not any thing that allayes the Vapours, and settles the Stomack better than this Herb doth. The Pots they make use of about this kind of Drink are the most precious of any of their Household-Stuffe, in as much as it is known, that there have been *Tsia*-pots, which had cost between six and seven thousand pound sterling.

Their Marriages.

Their Marriages are solicited only the Relations, who have some superiority over those that contract them. The Father and Mother find out the party, and propose that alliance, and for want of them, others of the Kindred; so as that the young Couple know nothing

of what is done, in so much that the persons who are to be married never see one another till the Marriage is to be consummated. This is the more easily effected, in that it is in the Husbands power to keep what number he thinks fit of Concubines, nay, may prosecute his enjoyments among common Prostitutes, whereas the least suspicion of the Womans dishonesty would cost her her life. They have also the convenience of Divorce, and may send their Wives back to their own Friends, yet conceive it no disparagement to them. True it is, that only Persons of mean condition use it, as Merchants, Tradesmen, and common Souldiers; and that Persons of Quality take another course, out of a respect to the Birth and Relations of the Woman; and in case of disagreement they still maintain them according to their Quality. Which hinders not but that they also are most liberal of themselves among their Concubines, little it seems troubled at the discontent they give their Wives, whom they see but when they please themselves. For, certain it is, that the Women only are married, and that the Men are as much at liberty after, as they had been before marriage. Common Brothel-houses are allowed, and there are some Masters who buy Slaves only to drive that trade; it being their persuasion, that to avoid a greater scandal, this may be permitted.

They bring up their Children with extraordinary indulgence and mildness, never beating, and very seldom chiding them; out of this consideration, that knowing they are not come to the use of their reason, they conceive they are not to be made capable thereof before the time, and that things are to be instill'd into them, according to their weak capacity, with mildness, and that they ought to be instructed rather by good Examples than many Precepts. It is to be imagined that the little correction they give them in their Childhood, strengthens that obstinate disposition, which is remarkable in all the *Japponeses*: but it is to be confessed withall, that this noble and mild kind of education much heightens that vivacity of Understanding and Judgment, which is discernable in them, while they are yet very young; in so much that Children of seven, eight or nine years of age, have more piercing Wits, and are more searching and inquisitive, than our youth is at seventeen or eighteen years of age.

They are not sent to School till they are seven or eight years of age, upon this account, that, as they affirm, Children are not capable of instruction before that time, and that they are apt to learn only naughtiness and unhappy tricks one of another. The Masters, when they meet with dull Boys, never either chide or beat them for that, but teach them to read and write by degrees, by raising an emulation in them to do as well as others; and by this course they improve them much better, than if they treated them harshly, it being to be observ'd, that it is an incorrigible Nation, expecting to be mildly treated, and seldom to be bettered by foul means and blows.

They never swath the Children, but as soon as they are brought into the World, the *Nor Midwife* having wash'd them in cold Water, thrusts them into the Sleeves of their *Japoneses*, and by that means they so harden them against heat and cold, that many times such as scarce have the use of their legs, will crawl stark naked of all four about the House, and into the Fields.

The eldest Son being come to Mans estate, the Father resigns his charge to him; or, if he be a Merchant, makes over his Trade to him, with the better half of his Estate, assigns him the best Lodgings in the House, and goes with the rest of the Family to another part of it; or if he be a person of ability, he resigns the whole House to him, and takes another, manning what he hath reserved of his Estate, for the advancement of his other Sons, if so be he hath any. The Daughters have no part of the Fathers Estate, no not even when they are married, in regard they would not have Wives to make any advantage of their Dower; so that if the Brides Father should on the Wedding-day send a sum of Money to the Bridegroom, he returns it back again with great Compliments, and sends word, that he would not have his Father-in-Law think, that his Address to his Daughter proceeded from any other motive than the desire he had of his alliance, and consequently that he expected not to make any advantage of his Estate.

They are so ambitious and highly conceited of themselves, that it is seldom seen a *Japponese* does any thing wherewith he might be reproached: but on the contrary, they would rather lose their lives than betray their honour. Of this I shall here insert an illustrious Example.

In the time of the War between *Fidery*, and his Guardian, the King or Prince of *Cocora*, who had discovered some inclination to the contrary party, was forc'd to leave his Wife and Children as Hostages with *Fidery*, who hearing that the Prince of *Cocora* had openly declar'd for his Adversary, sent word to his Wife, that his pleasure was, she should come and live within the Palace. She would have excused her self, by representing to *Fidery*,

*Their education of their Children.*

*Go not to School till seven or eight years of age.*

*swath'd.*

*The Japponeses tender in point of honour.*

*An Example of it.*

that

1639. that she was a Wife, and as such, ow'd the Prince her Husband the same obedience, as her Husband ow'd to the Emperour; so that if his Majesty expected she should do what he would have her, his best course were to apply himself to her Husband, that he might command her to do it. *Fidery* seeing her constancy, sent her word, that if she came not, he would have her brought thither by force. But the Princess considering with herself, that if she left her House, it would be a dishonour both to her and her Husband, withdrew herself with her Nurse and Children, and some of the menial Servants, who proffer'd to dye with her, to a Chamber, into which she caused Gun-powder and Wood to be brought, and having made her Will, and writ a Letter to her Husband, she put both into the hands of a trusty Person, with order to depart as soon as he had seen the Powder set on fire, and by this means gave an extraordinary Demonstration of her constancy.

Are good Friends.

They are also very punctual in the performance of what they had promised those, who desire their assistance or protection. For no *Japonnese* but will promise it any one that desires it of him, and spend his life for the person who hath desired him to do it; and this, without any consideration of his Family, or the misery whereto his Wife and Children may be thereby reduced. Hence it comes, that it is never seen a Malefactor will betray or discover his Complices; but on the contrary, there are infinite Examples of such as have chosen rather to die with the greatest torment imaginable, then bring their Complices into any inconvenience by their confession.

What For-  
raigners  
trade thi-  
ther.

*Japan* is so rich and abundant in all things, that, some few Merchants excepted, who trade into the *Indies*, there is hardly any *Japonnese*, who meddles with the venting of any foreign Commodities. The greatest Commerce which is carried on there is that of the *Chineses*, who have continued theirs in this Country ever since the Island was first peopled. The *Spaniards* and *Portuguez* have traded thither these six or seven score years; and the *English* had no sooner begun, but they gave over their trading into those parts, by reason of the small advantage made thereby. Those of *Siam* and *Cambodia* were wont to send thither yearly two or three *Jonques*; but this is also given over, especially since the *Dutch* bring them the Commodities of *Japan* at a lower rate, and with less danger than they could fetch them themselves. The chief Trade is at the City of *Meaco*, whither most of the Merchants, as well foreigners as those of the Country, bring all their Commodities, and where they have their Agents and Factors, to distribute them over all the Island.

The occasi-  
on of the  
rupture be-  
tween the  
Chineses  
and the Ja-  
ponneses.

The Commodities which Foreigners bring to *Japan* are, about four or five thousand *Picols* of Silk, and abundance of Stuffs, of Silk, Cotton, Thread, &c. above two hundred thousand Deer skins, about a hundred thousand other Hides, Hemp, Linnen-clothes, Wooll, Garments, Cotton, Quicksilver, all sorts of Gums and Medicinal Drugs, Spices, Cloves, Pepper, Sugar, Musk, a sort of Wood called *Sappan*, and *Calambac*, Purcelan, Camphir, *Borax*, Elephants Teeth, Coral, and all kind of *Mercury*, which the *Chineses* bring.

The *Chineses* and *Japonneses* have heretofore lived in very good correspondence, in so much that there hardly passed a year, but the Kings of those two powerful States visited one another by reciprocal Embassies. This friendship continued till the *Japonneses*, who lived in *China*, became so insolent, as to ransack a whole City, and to ravish all the Women and Maids that fell into their hands. The *Chineses* resented the affront as they ought, and killed all the *Japonneses* they met withall. The King of *China*, considering of how dangerous consequence it was to afford refuge to a sort of people, who had the insolence to commit such an action in the time of peace, banished them his Kingdom for ever, ordering the Decree to be graven in golden Letters upon a Pillar, which to that purpose he caused to be erected upon the Sea-side, and forbidding his Subjects, upon pain of death, to trade into *Japan*. These Prohibitions are still so strictly observ'd, that the *Chineses*, who go thither, give out, that they carry their Commodities to some of the neighbouring Islands of the *Indies*; in regard they are sure they would be confiscated, if it were known they carried them to *Japan*; but the *Japonneses* treat the *Chineses* otherwise, and give them the egress and regress of their Country.

Japan was  
not peopled  
by Chineses.

It is haply from these Prohibitions of the King of *China*, that some have taken occasion to affirm, that *Japan* was peopled by certain Exiles, whom the King of *China* had sent thither, upon a Conspiracy they were engaged in against his person; since the Histories of neither *Japan* nor *China* speak of any such thing, and that otherwise there is so great a difference in their Cloathing, their Ceremonies, manner of Life, Language and writing, that it is impossible that the same Nation should have contracted, even in the sequel of many Ages, such contrary Habits. Some affirm, that the *Japonneses* have made this change, in revenge for the ill treatment they received of the others; but besides the unlikelihood there

there is, that a whole Nation should, of a sudden, conceive an aversion for what they lov'd before, there is yet a greater improbability, that it should so change its language and manner of writing, as that there should be no rapport between the one and the other. The *Chineses* never cut their Hair, but tie it up together upon the Crown of the Head; the *Japponeses*, on the contrary, shave the fore-part of the Head down to the Ears, and tie up the rest of their Hair in their Neck behind, with a String made of Paper. The latter do also shave their Beards, whereas the *Chineses* suffer theirs to grow to their full length: whence it may be imagined, that they were rather *Tartars*, who first got into this Island, than *Chineses*. 1639

The *Japponeses*, being thus banished *China*, began to establish their Commerce at *Tayouan*, in the Island *Fermosa*, whither the *Chineses* came with their Commodities; but the King of *China* hearing of it, forbad his Subjects to trade thither, by which means the *Japponeses* were frustrated of that Navigation. Which so troubled the Emperour, that he would not permit his Subjects to trade out of the Kingdom without his express Commission and Passports; as well out of this consideration, that he would not have any Arms transported out of the Country, as the experience he hath that the *Japponeses* are a stout and daring People out of their own Country, and being extremely conceited of himself, he would not have any affront done them, which it should not be in his power to resent, or that any other than himself should chastise their insolence, as it happened to them, not long since in the Kingdom of *Siam*, upon their Attempt against the Kings person there, and at *Nayouan*, upon their assaulting the Governour of the place.

There is no Custom or Duty paid upon any Commodities in *Japan*, either to the Emperour, or any other Prince or Lord, so that the whole advantage comes in to the Merchant; but in regard all drive some Trade or other, and that the Countrey is extremely populous, the profits are very small. No Custom paid in Japan.

Since the Rupture between the *Chineses* and *Japponeses*, the Emperour of *Japan* hath not held any correspondence with any foreign Prince. The King of *Siam*, the Pope, and the King of *Spain*, sent very considerable Embassies to him, which were all very kindly received by him; but the Emperour of *Japan* never sent to visit or complement them. No correspondence between the Emperour of Japan and other Princes.

There is, all over *Japan*, but one Language, which is so different from that of *China*, *Corea*, and *Tunking*, that the Inhabitants of these four Countreys, understand one another no more then we do the *Arabick*. There is also the same difference between their Characters, and yet they have all four a sort of Characters, by which they understand one the other, so that those among them, who have studied, understand and express in their particular Language, what the others would have expressed in theirs, by means of these common Characters. They write with Pencils, and that so fast, that they spend very little time in writing the Notes, by which they do most of their Messages, rather then by word or mouth. They endeavour to express themselves in few words, especially when they either speak or write to Persons of great Quality; so that the Letters and Petitions they address to their Superiours are couched in few words, that it is no great trouble to afford them the reading.

They have not the way of keeping Accounts as the Merchants in our parts have; but they can count with certain little Bowls, which they thread upon little Sticks on a square Board, as fast as our ablest Accountans by all the Rules of Arithmetick, even that of Three. Their Arithmetick.

They have many Books, and some great Libraries, but of these not so great a number as we have in *Europe*.

The *Dayo* is the person who keeps Memorial of whatever passes, and writes the Chronicle of the Country. It is also only he, and the Lords and Gentlemen of his House, who are in number above eight hundred, as also the Lords and Ladies descended from him, who have the priviledge to write any Books. These only have all the Learning among themselves, and are so proud of it, that the advantages they make thereof are equal to those they derive from their Birth, which is no doubt more noble then that of the Emperour. Thence it comes that they slight all others so far, that they shun their conversation, live in a quarter of the City distinct from the rest, and will have no communication with the ignorant. The Dayo writes the History of the Country.

There is but one kind of Measure all over the Country, and all the Money is at the same rate and value. The Gold is in its excellency, but the Silver not so good, so that to reduce it to the rate of that of *France*, there will be a loss of 22 or 23. in the 100. They have three sorts of Gold Coins, whereof one weighs six *Spanish Ryals*, and is worth forty eight *Tayls*, accounting every *Tayl* at about five Shilling *Sterling*. Ten of the second kind. The Money of Japan.



639. kind weigh a *Ryal* and half a quarter, and are worth one *Tayl*, and a fifth part each of them; and ten of the third sort weigh a *Ryal* and a half, and half a quarter, and are worth, each of them, the sixth part of a *Tayl*. The Silver Coin, which is made in the form of a *Lingot*, is of no certain weight; but it is so ordered, that as much of it as amounts to fifty *Tayls* is to be of a just weight, which they dispose into Rolls of Paper, in each as much as comes to twenty Crowns, and so they dispatch their Payments with little trouble. They have besides this a lesser Coin of Silver, made much like *French Beans*, which also is not of any certain weight, save only in gross, or when it amounts to such a sum, from the value of seven pence to six shillings, or better. There is also a great difference in the value of the *Caxias*; for of some of them, a thousand are worth but a Crown, whereas of others the same number may amount to three Crowns and a half. Much about the time of our Travels the Emperour had ordered them to be cried down, intending to have a new Money made of Brass, and that the poorer sort might not be ruined thereby, he caused the bad Money to be called in, and made good the value of it to such as brought it in.

Japan well  
stored with  
Cattel and  
Fowl.

This Country wants not any kind of Cattel, but is so much the more abundant therein, out of this respect, that they do not geld any Creature. Thence it comes they are well stor'd with Horses, Bulls, Kine, Swine, Deer, wild Boars, Bears, Dogs, &c. as also with all sorts of Fowl, as Swans, Geese, Ducks, Hens, Cranes, Eagles, Falcons, Pheasants, Pidgeons, Woodcocks, Quails, and all the other sorts of small Birds, that we have in these parts.

There are also in this Country several sorts of Mineral Waters, very good against divers Diseases. Some have the taste and qualities of Copper, others that of Saltpeter, Iron, Tin, Salt; and there is, among others, a Source of hot water which hath the taste of Tin, and issues out of a Cave, which is about ten foot diameter at the mouth, and hath both above and below several picked Stones, like Elephants teeth, so that it somewhat resembles that figure, by which some would represent the Jaws of Hell. The Water, which comes out of it in great bubbles day and night constantly, is not so hot, but that it may be endured as soon as it is out of the Source, so that there is no need of mixing any other water therewith.

There is in this Country, in a spacious Plain, at the foot of a Mountain, not far from the Sea-side, another Source, which gives Water but twice in four and twenty hours, and that during the space of an hour at each time, unless it be when the East-wind blows, for then it gives water four times a day. This water comes out of a hole, which Nature hath made in the ground, and which they have cover'd with several great Stones; but when the time of its flood, as I may call it, is come, the water is forced out with such violence amidst the Stones, that it shakes them all, and makes a cast twenty or twenty four foot high, with such noise as would drown that of a great Gun. It is so hot, that it is impossible one should raise ordinary water to so high a degree of heat, as the earth gives this; for it immediately burns the stufes on which it falls, and keeps its heat much longer, then the water that hath been boil'd over the fire. The Well is inclosed with a high Wall, having at the bottom thereof several holes, through which the water runs into certain Channels, and so is brought into the houses, where they bath themselves, reducing it to such a degree of warmth as may be endured.

Their Physicians.

Some affirm that their Physicians are so able, that there is no Disease which they cannot discover by the Pulse. They are perfectly well skill'd in the vertues of Simples and Drugs, especially those of the *Radix Chinat*, and *Rhubarbe*, whereof they make use in their *Recipe's*, which for the most part consist in Pills, with very good success. They are also very fortunate in the curing of ordinary Diseases; but Chirurgery is not as yet known among them.

The riches  
of Japan.

The Mineral Waters we spoke of before, are a sufficient demonstration, that there are in *Japan* Mines of all sorts of Metals. Accordingly, there is found Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron and Lead. The Country brings forth also Cotton, Flax and Hemp, wherewith they make very fine Cloaths. It produces also Silk, and affords abundance of Goat and Deer skins, the richest Works of Wood and *Lacque* of any in the World, all sorts of Provisions and medicinal Drugs. They have, among others, a particular Invention for the melting of Iron, without the using of any fire, casting it into a Tun done about on the inside with about half a foot of Earth, where they keep it with continual blowing, and take it out by Ladles full, to give it what form they please, much better, and more artificially then the Inhabitants of *Liege* are able to do. So that it may be said, *Japan* may live without its Neighbours, as being well furnish'd with all things requisite to life.

A particular  
way of  
melting  
Iron.

The *Portuguez* came to the knowledge of *Japan*, by means of the Trade they drove in the Kingdom of *Siam* and *Cambodia*. They found it no hard matter to settle themselves there,

there, in as much as the *Japonneses* had not, at first, any aversion for their Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, so that in a short time the *Roman Catholick* Religion got such footing there, that they were permitted to build Churches in several places of the Kingdom, and particularly at *Nangasacky*. But the *Spaniards* too soon discover'd the Design they had to establish themselves there, and had not the reservedness to smother that haughty humour, which would reign all over the World: which occasion'd the *Japonneses* first to set upon, and afterwards, to burn their Ships, in so much that in the year 1636. they banish'd them the Country, with Prohibitions, upon pain of Death, not to return into it.

The *Dutch* have traded thither ever since the year 1611. and still continue it, so much to their advantage, that their Commerce to *Japan* is worth what they carry on all over the rest of the *Indies*. They affirm in the Relation of the Voyage they made thither in the year 1598. that the City of *Meaco* is one and twenty Leagues about, but that it had been much ruined by the precedent Civil Wars. That *Offacka*, and *Boungo*, are Cities, which, for Wealth, may be compared to any other in the *Indies*. That the Emperours of *Japan* were ordinarily interr'd in the City of *Coyo*, or if they made choice of any other place for their Sepulture, yet were some of their Bones carried thither, though it were but a Tooth. That the City of *Piongo*, eighteen Leagues from *Meaco*, was in some part ruined during the Civil Wars of *Nobananga*, who was defeated by *Faxiba*, the Predecessour of *Taicko*, and that what remained of it was partly destroy'd by an Earthquake that happened in the year 1596. and partly by the fire which consumed the wretched remainders of it, some time after. The Cities of *Sacay*, *Voluquin*, *Fonnay*, *Tosam*, and several others, are also very considerable ones.

The Air is good and healthy, though more inclin'd to cold then heat, and yet the *Japonneses* sow their Corn at the beginning of *May*, but cut not the Rice till *September*.

They have neither Butter nor Oyl, and have an aversion against Milk, out of an imagination, that the Souls of Beasts reside in it, and that it is blood in effect, though of a different colour. They do not eat the flesh of either Bulls or Kine, nor that of any tame beast, but love wild Fowl and Venison, and are much addicted to the hunting thereof. They have Cedar-trees, which are so big, that they make Pillars of them for their greatest Edifices, and Masts for their Ships.

Poverty is not so criminal or infamous in *Japan*, as it is in several places of *Europe*, where the rich are only accounted vertuous. They hate Calumniators, Swearers and Gamesters; but they have also their Vices, which much eclipse their other good parts.

They are rather of a brownish Complexion then white, strong and well set, enduring pains taking, and the inconveniences of the Seasons, with incredible patience. They endure hunger and thirst, heat and cold, without any trouble, and are no otherwise clad in Winter then they are in Summer.

The *Japonneses* are distinguished into five Orders. The first, is that of Kings and Princes, and such as have civil or military Charges and Employments, who are all called by a common name *Tones*. The second is that of Ecclesiasticks, whom they call by a general name *Bowzes*. The third is that of Gentlemen and Merchants. The fourth that of Tradesmen, and such as relate to the Sea. And the fifth that of Labourers, and such as work by the day.

The general administration of Affairs is in the hands of three principal Ministers of State; the first whereof, whose superintendency is over Ecclesiastical affairs, hath the quality of *Zazo*; he who hath the disposal of Charges and Offices is called *Uco*, and he who hath the oversight of things relating to the War is called *Cabacama*.

There could not be hitherto had any true account of the Emperour of *Japan's* Revenue: but it is certain that he makes above two Millions of Gold of the Rice, which his own Demesne affords him every year. It is also certain, that the Emperour of *Japan* is so powerful, that *Taicko*, whom we spoke of before, finding himself well settled upon the Throne, had a design to pass over into *China*, with a Fleet of two thousand Vessels, for the building whereof he had already cut down Timber, which he might have done with the more ease, upon this account, that the *Japonneses* are incomparably a more warlike Nation then the *Chineses*.

But in regard there is not any thing makes a greater discovery of the greatness of this Monarch, then the Ceremonies of the Interview between him and the *Dayro*, whereof we promised before to give here a short description, we think fit to that purpose to insert in this place the Extract of a Relation made by the Director of the *Dutch* Commerce in *Japan*, who was at *Meaco* in the year 1626. This Author sayes, that being at the Emperours Court in the moneth of *October*, in the year aforesaid, with some others of the Deputies of his Nation, he was desirous to see the Procession, which was made there on the

1639.  
The Roman Catholick Religion planted in Japan.

The Spaniards banished it.

The Dutch established theirs.

The Air of Japan.

How many good qualities.

Are distinguished into five Orders.

The principal Ministers of Japan.

1639. 25. of the said moneth. To that end they went the 24. and with the retinue took up a house, which they had hired near the *Dayro's* Palace, in regard the next day it would have been impossible for them to pass the Streets.

The Pro-  
cession of  
the *Dayro*  
and Empe-  
rour.

On the said 25. of *October*, as soon as it was light, they found the Streets and tops of Houses full of people. The Streets were rail'd in on both sides, from the *Dayro's* Palace to the Emperours, having files of Souldiers all along, and the middle of the Street strew'd with white Sand, all laid so even, that nothing should retard the Procession, or disturb its Order. These Souldiers, who were part of the *Dayro's* Guards, part of the Emperours, were all clad in white, having on their Heads Casks of black *Lacque*, by their sides two Cymitars, and in their Hands a *Nanganet*, that is, a *Japonnese* Pike.

The *Day-  
ro's* bag-  
gage.

The first appearance was that of a great number of the Domesticks of these two Princes, going to and fro, as also that of several Porters or Sedan-men, who carried in great square Chests, which were of black *Lacque* and gilt, the baggage of the *Dayro* to the Emperours Palace.

The Ladies  
of Honour.

Then followed, in forty six *Palanquins*, carried each of them by four men, so many Maids of Honour belonging to the *Dayro's* Wives, who went in that equipage to the Emperours Palace. The *Palanquins* were of a fine white Wood, painted with Verdure, garnished with brass Plates, very neatly made, and five or six foot high.

After them there came one and twenty other *Palanquines* of a kind, which they call *Norrimones*, varnish'd with black and gilt.

27. Lords  
of the *Day-  
ro's* Reti-  
nue.

Next them there came twenty seven other *Norrimones*, of the same bigness with the precedent, but made with Wickets and Windows, for so many Lords of the *Dayro's* Retinue, who were carried in them to the Emperours Palace, having every one before him a gilt Umbrello, covered with very fine Cloth. They had about them a hundred and eight Pa-

24. Gentle-  
men.

ges clad in white, and behind them four and twenty Gentlemen, armed as if they were ready to engage in a fight. These had on their Heads a kind of Bonnets of black *Lacque*, with a little Plume of Feathers of the same colour, and under their *Japonneses* they had long and narrow Breeches of Satin, of several colours, embroidered with Gold and Silver, with Buskins varnished with black, and gilt at the extremities. By their Sides they had Cimitars, the Hilts whereof were gilt, and Bows and Arrows at their Waste, and over their Shoulders Scarfs richly embroidered, the ends whereof hung down on the Cruppers of their Horses. No doubt, they had cull'd out the goodliest persons in the Country for this Ceremony; for they were all the handsomest persons, both as to Body and Countenance, that could be seen. Their Saddles were varnish'd over and gilt, the Seats embroidered and covered with Tigers and Lynxes Skins; their Trappings were of Crimson Silk twined, and the Horses had their Mainstied up with Gold and Silver Thread, and they had on the Breast and Crupper a kind of Net-work of twined crimson Silk, and instead of Shoes their Hoofs were done about with plain crimson Silk. Every Horse was led by two Lacquies, and two other Lacquies carried two great Umbrelloes, covered with a very fine and transparent cloth, and upon that a covering of Scarlet fring'd with Gold. Another Lacquie carried a *Nanganet*, or Pike, the top whereof was also covered with a piece of red and black cloth. Every Horseman had eight Pages clad in white, and arm'd with two Cymitars, according to the mode of the Country.

The *Day-  
ro's* three  
Wives.

This body of Horse serv'd for a Guard for the three chiefest of the *Dayro's* Wives, who followed in three Coaches of so extraordinary a making, that we shall not think it much to afford them a short description. They were at least twenty or twenty five foot in height, ten or twelve in length, and five or six in breadth, having on each side three, and before, two Windows with embroydered Curtains. Before and behind they were made like the Front of a House, as was also the Door at which they went in, which was made behind at the back. The Wheels were of Iron, and the Coach was varnished all over with black, so that the Wheels might be seen turning as it were in a Looking-glass. The Roofs of them, which were built Arch-wise, had drawn thereon the *Dayro's* Arms, within a great Circle of Gold. The Pillars, as also the inside of the Coach, was enriched with Figures of beaten Gold and Mother of Pearl, and all the extremities were garnished with Gold. Two great black Bufflers, covered with a Net-work of Crimson Silk, drew each of them, and they were guided by four Halberteers clad in white. Every Coach was valued at seventy thousand *Tayls*, which amount to twenty thousand pounds *Sterling*.

These Coaches had also their Foot-guard, and many Pages marching on both sides of them.

The chief  
Servants of  
those La-  
dies.

Twenty three of the chiefest Servants belonging to these Ladies were carried next to them in so many black *Norrimones*, adorned with Brass plates, having each of them marching before him a Halbertier, who carried an Umbrello, on each side two Pages, and behind them

them sixty eight Gentlement of the *Dayro's*, clad and armed as those we mentioned before. These march'd two a breast, and were followed by a great number of Pages, Halberters, and Slaves. 1639.  
68. Gentle-  
men.

After them there were carried.

Two gilt Stools, with Plates of Gold at the extremities.  
A great Fire-work.  
A great and very rich Sea-Compass.  
Two great Golden Candlesticks.  
Two Pillars of Ebony.  
Three Cabinets of Ebony, garnished with Gold plates.  
Four other Cabinets, bigger and richer then the three precedent.  
Two great Gold Basins carv'd.  
A pair of Pantofles varnish'd.

After these, there followed in two Coaches of the same making as the three first, the Emperour and his Ward, having before them a hundred and sixty Gentlemen, armed with two Cymitars and a *Nanganet*, serving for a particular Guard about their Majesties persons. These Guards they call *Sambreys*, and they are chosen out of the most valiant and most active persons in the Kingdom. Immediately before the Coaches there march'd four Men with Umbrelloes, four others with great Iron Rods to make way, two light Horfies magnificently cover'd, and with very rich Trappings, accompanied each of them by eight Men, arm'd with Bows and Arrows, and two great Pikes. The Empe-  
rour and his  
Ward

The Emperours Brethren followed next on Horfe-back, accompanied by all the Princes and Lords of *Japan*, who were also on Horfe-back, all armed, and sumptuously clad, 164. in number.

The Chiefest of these Lords were,

*Owaruy Cammy Samma*, the Emperours Brother.  
*Quiney Deymangon samma*, another Brother of the Emperour.  
*Mittot Chonango samma*, a third Brother of the Emperour.  
*Massummenamoet Nocammi samma*, a fourth Brother of the Emperours.  
*Matsendairo Thoy quese Nocammi samma*, Lord of *Canga*.  
*Matsendairo Moutsnocammy samma*, *Satsumadonne*, that is, Lord of *Satsuma*.  
*Matsendairo Fondonne*.  
*Matsendairo Symouts quedonne*.  
*Matsendairo Quonenoch, Wacchoo*; and  
*Turogano Deynangono Cammy samma*.

The greatest  
Lords of  
Japan.

These march'd all in a File, having each of them a long train of Pages, Lacqueys, Halberters, Guards and Slaves.

The other Lords, among whom were *Oumaydonne*, and *Woutadonne*, the chiefest of the Emperous Council, march'd two a breast, he of the greater quality taking the left hand, which among them is accounted the more honourable.

After them march'd four hundred of the Guards of the body, and in the same order, in white Liveries.

Next them, in six fair Coaches, came the *Dayro's* Concubines; but these Coaches were not so large as the former, and were drawn each of them by a single Buffler. The Day-  
ro's Con-  
cubines

Then followed sixty eight Gentlemen on Horfe-back, attended by a great number of Lacqueys and Slaves.

The *Dayro's* Secretary, accompanied by thirty seven Gentlemen on Horfe-back, follow'd next in a Coach, and immediately preceded forty six Lords of the *Dayro's* House, who were carried in *Norimottes*, whereof fifteen were of Ebony, beautified with Ivory, thirteen varnished with black and gilt, and the other eighteen were only varnished with black. There were carried after them forty six Umbrelloes suitable to their *Norimottes*. His Secre-  
tary.

Then followed the *Dayro's* Musick, which consisted of fifty four Gentlemen, very odly, but very richly clad, who plaid on their Instruments, which were only Tabours, Timbrels, Copper Basins, Bells, and that kind of Lute we spoke of before, which was not heard by reason of the confused noise of the rest. His Musick

Yet

1639. Yet was this distracted kind of Musick delightful to the *Dayro*, who immediately followed it. He was fate in a little wooden Structure made like a Sedan, but much larger, as being about seven or eight foot high, and as many Diameter, having windows on all sides, with embroidered Curtains. The Roof of that little Structure was arch'd, and had in the midst, upon a great Button, a Cock of massie Gold, with his Wings spread in a Field Azure, with several Stars of beaten Gold about the Sun and Moon, which appeared there with a lustre coming near the natural. This *Machine* was carried by fifty Gentlemen of the *Dayro's* retinue, all clad in white, with Bonnets on their Heads. Fourty other Gentlemen went before it, and represented the Guard for the *Dayro's* person. These were clad after a particular fashion, much like that of the ancient *Romans*, carrying each of them a gilt *Nougnet*. The Captain of the Guard marched alone on Horse-back, behind the *Dayro's* Chair, armed with a Target, stuck through with several Arrows, and had carried after him fourty Umbrelloes for the Guards.

Next were carried thirteen varnish'd Chests, and in the close of the Procession came four hundred Souldiers clad in white, who marched six a breast, and by that means hinder the crowds of people to interrupt that Order. This Ceremony took up the whole day, so that night coming on upon us at the place where we were, we thought it not safe to venture home at so unseasonable a time, by reason of the many Robberies, Murthers, and other Violences committed in the Streets during the disorder, which proved so great, that the next morning there were found a great number of dead persons, some whereof had been kill'd and robb'd, and others had been smother'd in the throng. The *Dayro* staid three dayes at the Emperours Palace, who during that time waited on him in person with his Brethren, and had the charge of his Table, for that time defray'd by *Sugadonne*, chief Judge of the City of *Meaco*, *Ivocamosamma*, *Coberitotkomy samma*, *Macamora*, *Mockiemon samma*, and *Mannosa Froyemon samma*. There were brought to his Table at every meal, a hundred and fourteen dishes of meat.

*Onwaydonne*, the President of the Emperours Council, *Ivemondonne*, one of the Counsellors of State, *Farimadonne*, *Quiniem Ondonne*, *Sioyserodonne*, and *Chirotadonne*, provided for the Table of the *Dayro's* three chiefest Wives.

The Emperours Present to him were.

Two hundred Marks of Gold.  
 A hundred Garments of *Watte*, of the best.  
 Two great Silver Pots, full of Honey.  
 Five *Catties* of the Wood of *Calambac*.  
 Two hundred pieces of Crimson Serge.  
 Five Pots of Silver, full of Musk; and  
 Five excellent Horses with very rich Trappings.

The young Emperour gave him.

Three thousand pieces of Silver amounting each to four *Tayls* and three *Mests*.  
 Two fair Cymitars set forth with Gold.  
 Two hundred rich Garments after the *Japonnese* fashion.  
 Three hundred pieces of Satin.  
 A piece of *Calambac*-wood, three Ells and a half in length, and above two foot thick.  
 Five great Vessels of Silver, full of Musk; and  
 Ten excellent Horses with rich Trappings.  
 These shall suffice for an account of the Kingdom and people of *Japay*.

## The Island FERMOSA.

**W**E said elsewhere, that when the *Japonneses* were banish'd *China*; there were also Prohibitions made, that none should trade with them, and that the *Chineses*, to avoid the confiscation of their goods, which they might carry to *Japan*, made choice of the Island of *Tayovang*, for the continuance of their Commerce. This example encouraged the *Dutch*, in the year 1632. to make use of the convenience of the same place, in regard the *Chineses* had depriv'd them of all hope of Commerce with them, if they came not out of their Country, and settled not themselves in a place where they might give no occasion of suspicion. The Use of Tayovang

There is not in all the East, a more convenient haven for the Trade of *China*, and for the establishment of a Communication with *Japan*, and all the rest of the *Indies*, then this Island affords. For ships may come thither at all times of the year, so as that they need not stay for the *Mouffons*, or convenience of the general winds, which in all other places last six months of the year.

About that time the *Dutch* built there a Fort, with four Bastions, all of freestone, upon a Down, or Sandy ascent, within half a League of the great Island *Fermosa*. Within three hundred paces of the Fort, there passes a Channel, which serves for a Haven, though, even at high water, there be but thirteen or fourteen foot water; but the ships that Anchor there may defie any wind. They have made a redoubt of Stone, very well flank'd upon the Channel, where they have a little Garrison of twenty five or thirty men, which are enough to defend the entrance of it; and they have found the situation of it so advantageous, that they have given it the name of new *Zealand*. The Dutch settle there.

The Island *Fermosa*, that is, the *Fair Island*, called by the *Chineses* *Paccande*, lies at 21. Degrees on this side the line, within 32. Leagues of the River of *Chincheu*, and the Island of *Quemoy* in *China*, reaching in length from South-west to North-east, as far as 21. Degrees and a half. And call new Zealand, Fermosa.

It is about a hundred and thirty Leagues in compass, and contains many Villages, and an infinite number of men, who acknowledg no King nor Sovereign, and have no other Superiours over them, then such as they create among themselves, after the manner we shall give an account of hereafter. Its Rivers are excellently well stor'd with Fish; Its Forrests well furnished with all sorts of wild-Fowl and Venison; and its Fields, which are for the most part Meddows, in a manner covered with Cattel. They have Deere, Wild-Goates, Hares, Conies, Pheasants, Partridges, Pidgeons, &c. and besides these a kind of horned Horse, by the Inhabitants called *Olavang*, whose horns are like those of Deere, and the flesh very delicate. They have also Tygers, and another kind of Animal, which they call *Tirney*, made like a Bear, but much stronger. The skin of this Beatt, they account one of the most precious things that the Island produces. An Anarchy

The ground here is fat and fruitful, but so poorly cultivated, that there are very few Fruit-trees, and the little Fruit that is, so bad, that though the Islanders eat it in some delight, yet cannot other Nations so much as taste of it. There grows some Ginger and Cinnamon in this Island, which they say hath Gold and Silver Mines, whereof the *Chineses* have sometimes made trial; but it is more then the *Dutch* could ever discover.

The parts thereof which these last mentioned have most frequented are, *Sinkan*, *Man-dawn*, *Toulang*, *Taffacang*, *Tifulucang*, *Teosang*, *Tefurang*, which are all within a small distance of the Fort *Tayovang*; so that they may be all gone to in two days, save only the Village of *Tefurang*, which lies in the Mountains, at a day and a halfs journey at the least, from the habitation of the *Dutch*. The rest lies as it were upon the Sea-side, and have all the same manner of life, the same Religion, and almost the same Language. The places possessed by the Dutch.

A man would take the Inhabitants at the first sight, to be *Barbarians*, and *Savages*. For the men are strong and hardy, much bigger then any of the *Europeans*, and coming somewhat near the stature of the *Gyants*. Their bodies are hairy all over, and they are of a brown complexion, inclining to black, as most of the *Indians* are. The women are somewhat less, but fat enough, and, for the most part, well shaped. They make a greater discovery of shamefacedness then the men, in that they have somewhat of cloathing about them: but both men and women strip themselves, when they bath, which they do twice a day, in warm water: for then, the latter are not ashamed to be seen by men, nor care much whether they have ought about them. The Inhabitants of Fermosa

This

1639.  
Are civil  
and good  
natured.

This People, which in appearance seems to be so barbarous, is in effect, good natur'd, faithful and obliging, entertaining strangers with much kindness and civility, and communicating to them such good cheer as nature affords them. It hath never been found that they were desirous to get what belongs to any other by indirect ways, but on the contrary, they have often returned to the owners what they found mis-laid or lost; though the Inhabitants of the Village of *Toulang* have a very ill report, as to this particular. They are constant and faithful in their friendship, and religiously observe, as well the Treatises they make among themselves, as those made with Forreigners. Treachery is a thing they are so unacquainted withal, that there is no misfortune which they would not suffer rather than any reproach should be made them of unfaithfulness. They want neither ingenuity nor memory, but easily apprehend and retain what is said unto them. 'Tis true, they have an humour of impudently begging any thing they see; but they are denied with the same freedom, and are satisfied with a small matter.

Are ingeni-  
ous.

They live altogether by the little Husbandry they carry on, and the Rice they get out of the ground. Not but that their Lands are very fruitful, and that the *Cantons* we named before might produce, what were able to sustain above ten thousand Families: but in regard they have no Ploughs, nor Creatures fit for Tillage, they have no other way of digging the ground, then that of the Spade, and that by the hands of Women; inasmuch as the men mind only War and Hunting, and so their increase cannot be so great as that of those places where they have better conveniences. Another employment of the women is, to transplant the Rice, when it grows thicker in one place than another; which work takes up much of their time, as does also their cutting of it when it is ripe. For instead of reaping it by handfulls with a Hook, they cut it Corn by Corn, some four or five fingers below the Ear, so put it up in the house, and never beat it but when there is occasion, in order to their subsistence, that is, every day. The woman of the house sets over-night two or three little bundles of it a-drying in the Chimney-corner, and rising the next morning two hours before day, she beats it in a Morter, and makes as much clean Rice as is requisite for the Family that day, and no more. And thus they live all the year long.

Fruits.

They sow also two or three sorts of Fruit, which they call *Ptingb*, *Quach*, and *Taraan*, which are somewhat like Millet, as also a kind of Pulse much like the *French Bean*. They have also several sorts of Roots, which they may use instead of Bread, and which in effect were able to sustain them, though they had no Rice nor any other kind of Fruit or Corn. They have Ginger, Cinamon, Sugar-canes, *Bannanan's*, Lemmons, abundance of *Areca*, and several other sorts of Fruits, Simples, and Pulse, not known in *Europe*, such as it would be no easie matter to describe.

Their Wine.

Though they have no *Cocos-wine*, nor any other natural drink, yet have they found out a way to make a kind of Beverage, which is as strong, and intoxicates a mans brains as soon as the best Sack. Their way of ordering it is thus. They set a soaking in warm water a certain quantity of Rice, which they afterwards beat in a Morter till it be reduced to a PASTE. Then they chew some Rice-meal in their mouths, which they spit into a Pot, till such time as they have got a Quart of Liquor, which they put to the PASTE instead of Leaven, and after they have kneaded all well together, till they have brought it to Dough, such as that of the Bakers, they put it into a great Earthen Pot, which they fill up with water, and so let it remain there for two months; and by this means they make one of the best and most pleasant Liquors that a man need drink. This is their Wine, which is stronger or weaker according to the time it remains in the Pot; and the older it is, the better and sweeter it is; inasmuch that sometimes they keep it five and twenty or thirty years. What is towards the mouth of the Pot is as clear as Rock-water, but at the bottom there are only dregs, such as were able to turn a weak stomach; and yet the Islanders make it one of their delicacies, and eat it with Spoons, having first stirr'd it about, with a little water put to it. When they go into the Countrey, they carry along with them a Pot of this stuff, and a Gourd-bottle full of water, and so they are furnish'd as to meat and drink. They make use of the upper part of this Beverage, as of *Aqua-vitæ*, to comfort the heart, and they eat what's in the bottom, ordered as we said before; whence it comes that they spend most part of their Rice in this composition.

Their wo-  
men go  
fishing.

When the women have no work to do about their Grounds, they go a fishing, and particularly to get Oysters, which the Islanders prefer before all meat whatsoever. They have a way of salting the Fish slightly as soon as it is taken, with the shell, and whatsoever is within it, and they eat them with all the filth, nay with the worms, which sometimes are bred within them for want of Salt.

How the  
men live.

The men, especially the younger sort, to the age of twenty four or twenty five years, do

do nothing at all: but when they are come to forty, they help to do somewhat about the grounds, where they continue night and day with their Wives, in little Huts, and return not to the Village till some necessity or divertisement calls them thither. 1639.

They have several kinds of Hunting, and use, in their sport, Snares, slender Pikes, or Bows and Arrows. They spread their Snares or Nets in the Woods, cross those Paths, which the Deers and wild Boars are wont to make, and force those Creatures into them; or haply, they spread them in the open fields, with the convenience of a great Cane, one end whereof they plant in the ground, and the other is bowed down, and fastened to certain little sticks, upon which they lay a Snare cover'd with a little earth, which as soon as the wild Beast touches, the Cane is suddenly as it were unbent, and hath him by one of the feet. The Hunting with that kind of Pikes is thus. There met together, at a certain place appointed, the Inhabitants of two or three Villages, arm'd every one with two or three Pikes, and having divided themselves into several parties, they send their Dogs into the Woods, and they force out the Game into the Fields, where they meet, and make a great Ring, a League or more in compass, within which when they have once gotten the Deer and wild Boars, it seldom happens that any of them escape without being kill'd or hurt. The Pike it self is of Cane, six or seven foot in length, having an Iron at the top with several Hooks, so as that being entred into the beast, it is beyond any mans strength to get it out: but the Iron is not made so fast to the Wood but that it comes off at the first bush the beast runs into; and to the end it may still annoy the Deer, there is a Cord fastened thereto, which holds both, and at the top of the Iron there is a little Bell, whereby the Beast is discover'd where-ever it goes. They destroy so great a number of Deer by these kinds of Hunting, that being not able to spend all they take themselves, they sell the flesh of them to the *Chineses*, for little Garments, Sweet Wood, and other Commodities, eating themselves only the Umbles and Paunch, which they salt with the filth in them, and indeed care not much for them, till when they are thus corrupted. Sometimes while they are hunting, they cut off a piece, and eat it immediately, so as that the blood runs about their mouths, and if they find any young ones in the belly of the Female, whether come into any form or not, they eat them with the skin and hair, as a thing very delicate.

Their Military engagements are as followeth. They begin not any War till they have first declared it against the Village by which they conceive themselves injured, and then they go by small parties of five and twenty or thirty men, and hide themselves near the place they are to assault, till it be night, and then they run about the Fields, and if they find any in the Huts, where aged persons are wont to keep, as we said before, they kill them, cut off their heads, and, if they have time enough, the hands and feet, and sometimes they cut the whole body to pieces, that every one may carry away his share, and shew the marks of his courage at his return. If the Country take the Alarm, so as they cannot quite cut off the Head, they think it enough to cut off the hair, which they carry away as a noble Demonstration of their Victory; which is accounted among them a very considerable one, though that in an exploit of this nature there happens to be but one man kill'd. Sometimes they venture so far as to enter into the Village, and break open some house; but in regard that cannot be done without noise, they go upon such a Design with so much precipitation, that lest they should be intercepted in their return, they kill all they meet, and fly for it. They also use stratagems, and make Ambushes according to their way, and sometimes they engage in the open field, where they fight with great animosity: but the death of one man passes among them for an absolute Defeat, and obliges those who have had that loss, to an immediate Retreat.

The Pikes they use in the Wars are made of a different manner from those they hunt withall: for the Iron at the top hath no Branches nor Hooks, and is made fast enough to the body of the Pike. Their Bucklers are so large, that they almost cover all the whole body, and their Swords on the contrary, are short, but broad. They use also Knives made like those of the *Japonneses*, Bows and Arrows. *Their Arms.*

When several Villages make an Association among themselves to carry on a War jointly against some other Villages, the Command of their Forces is not bestow'd on one Chief, who hath Authority sufficient to force himself to be obey'd: but such among them as have been so fortunate as to cut off divers heads upon several occasions, find Volunteers enough to follow them in their military Exploits, out of no other Consideration, then that of participating of the Glory of their Commander. Sometimes they engage in a War out of a pure frolick, against the Inhabitants of the Island of *Tugin*, which the *Dutch* call the Island of the *Golden Lyon*, upon this account, that the Captain and Master of a Ship, of that name, were there killed by the Islanders. The Inhabitants of *The Island of Tugin,*



1639. this place permit not any strangers to come within their Island; nay they suffer not the *Chineses*, who come thither every year upon the account of their Commerce, to set foot on Land; but they force them to stay in the Road, whither the Islanders bring the Commodities they would truck with them; with so much distrust on their side, that they never let go any thing out of one hand, till they have fast hold of what they would have in the other. The Inhabitants of *Fermosa*, especially those of the Village of *Soulang*, having a Design to surprize them, embarqu'd themselves not long since, to the number of sixty, disguiz'd like *China* Merchants, and being come near the Island of *Tugin*, sent to some of the Islanders to come and meet them with the Commodities of the Countrey: but instead of receiving them from his hands, who presented them therewith, they laid hold of his arm, and drew him aboard their Vessel, where they cut him to pieces. This was a great Victory to them; for they think it enough to bring away the Hair, or haply a Pike of the Enemies, to make a solemn Triumph, and appoint a day of publick Thanksgiving. They carry the Heads in Procession all about the Village, singing Hymns to their Gods, and, in their way, visit their Friends, who make them drink of the best *Arac*, and accompany them to the *Pagode*, where they boil the Head, till there be nothing left but the Bones, on which they sprinkle some Wine, Sacrifice several Swine to their Gods, and feast it for fifteen days together. They do the like when they have brought home only the Hair, or a Pike, which, as also the Bones of their Enemies, they keep as carefully as we do Gold, Silver, or Jewels, inasmuch as when a House is a-fire, they abandon all, to save their Relicks. They tender so great respect to those who have had the good fortune to bring home an Enemies Head, that no person comes near him, but with a certain veneration, for above fifteen days after his doing such an exploit, nor speak to him but with such extraordinary submissions, as that a Sovereign Prince could not expect greater.

*Their Magistracy.*

There is no Lord in all that Island, that hath a Superiority or advantage over the rest. Their condition is equal, save that in every Village there is a kind of Senate, consisting of twelve persons, which are changed every two years. The two years being expir'd, they who are to quit their places pull off their Hair off their Eye brows, and on both sides of their Heads, to shew that they have been Magistrates. The Senators are chosen out of persons much about the same age, which is that of forty years: for though they have no Almanack, and cannot count their years, yet do they remember well enough the course of the Moon, and take particular notice of such as are born within the same Month, and about the same Year.

*Its Authority.*

Not that this Magistrate hath any Authority to force himself to be obey'd, or to put his Commands in execution; for all the power they have, is only to give order for an Assembly to be held, concerning such Affairs as they think of importance, to confer among themselves thereof, and to invite all the Heads of Families, to meet in one of their *Pagodes*, where they propose to them how things stand, discover what they think fit to be done, and endeavour to bring the rest to be of the same judgment with them. All the Senators speak one after another, and use all the Eloquence they have to press their Reasons the more home: I say, *Eloquence*, for they really have of it. For they will speak half an hour together in such high expressions, with so much ease, and with such apt gestures, that what we are taught by Art comes not near what Nature hath bestow'd on these People, who can neither write nor read. While one speaks, all the rest are so exactly silent, that you shall not hear so much as a Cough, though their Assemblies many times consist of a thousand persons. When all the Senators have done speaking, the rest put the business to deliberation, with an absolute freedom of either complying with the judgment of the Senate, or opposing it, after they have considered the good or evil which may accrew to them thereby.

*Their punishments.*

All the power they have consists in causing what their Priestesses command to be put in execution, in preventing ought to be done which may offend the Gods, and in punishing such as do offend them. They also give reparations to private persons who have been injur'd by others: not by causing the offenders to be imprison'd or punish'd with death, or other corporal punishment; but in condemning them to pay a piece of cloth, a Deerskin, a certain quantity of Rice, or a pot of their *Aracque*, by way of satisfaction, according to the quality of the crime. There is a certain season of the year, wherein they go stark naked, and say they do it out of this consideration, that were it not for that, the Gods would not cause it to rain, and the Rice would not grow: infomuch, that if during the said time, the Senators meet with any one that hath ought about his waste, the cloth or whatsoever it be, is confiscated, and he is adjudged to a penalty, which at most, is but two Deer-skins, or a certain quantity of Rice amounting to the same value. Whence it comes, that it is one of the principal Functions of the Senators, to be during that time, morning and evening, about the avenues of the Village, and to punish such as they find Delinquent. There  
are

are other seasons wherein they are permitted to cover that part of the body, (which is never uncovered in other places,) but with this restriction; that the garment, or rather scarf, wherewith it is covered, must not be of Silk; whence it also comes, that the same Senators are to take particular notice of it, confiscate those Silk Garments, and adjudge the offendours to pay a penalty; as they do also the women, who to make the greatest ostentation, upon days of publick Ceremonies, go otherwise then they are permitted to do.

The Senators on the other side, are obliged to observe a certain manner of life, about the time that the Rice grows ripe; for during that time, they are forbidden drinking to excess, the eating of sugar and fat, and chewing of *Areca*; out of a persuasion that the people would not only slight them, but also that the gods would send the Deer and wild Boars into the Rice, to destroy it.

The Magistrate hath no power to punish murder, theft, or adultery; but such as are injured do themselves Justice. When the theft is discovered, he who hath been robb'd, goes accompanied by his Friends, to find out the person who hath robb'd him, and takes out of his house what he thinks sufficient to make him satisfaction, by an accommodation he makes with the other; but if he finds any Opposition, he declares open hostility against him, till such time as he hath made him satisfaction. He who finds himself injured in his reputation, by Adultery committed with his Wife, revenges himself another way; for he takes out of his house who hath had to do with his wife, two or three Piggs, as a satisfaction for the injury he hath received. The Friends and Relations on both sides compose the differences arising between private persons, in the case of murder, and so regulate the civil concernment.

There is among them so great an equality of condition, that they are yet ignorant of the names of *Master* and *Servant*. Yet does not this hinder, but that they render great honour one to another, and express a great respect and submission one towards another: not out of any consideration of a more eminent dignity, or upon the account of wealth, but only upon that of Age; which is so considered among them, that a young man is obliged to go aside, to make way for an old man, and turn his back to him, by way of respect, till he be passed, by continuing in that posture, even though the old man should stand still to speak to him. No young man dares deny the doing of what the other commands him, though he should send him three or four Leagues upon some business of his: They are the ancient men who have the chiefest places, and are the first served at Feasts.

As to their Marriages; the men are not permitted to marry till they be twenty or twenty one years of age, which they call *Saat Cassin mang*. Till they are sixteen or seventeen they are forbidden to wear long hair, so that they cut it even with the tip of the Ear; and in regard they have neither Cisers nor Razors, to do that work, they make use of a *Parring*, which is a kind of little chopping-knife, lay down the hair upon a piece of wood, and cut it as exactly as the most expert Barbers among us. They draw forth the hair of their faces with little Pincers of Brass or Iron, or with the string of a great Cane which they double, and getting the hair fast between it, they turn the string till the hair be taken out. Being come to the seventeenth year of their age, they let their hair grow, and when it is come to its ordinary length, they begin to think of marriage. Maids never cut their hair, and they are married as soon as they are marriageable.

Their marriages are contracted and continued after a pleasant manner. The young gallant who hath an inclination to a Maid, sends his Mother, Sister, or some Kinswoman to the relations of the Maid, to shew them what he intends to bestow on his Mistress. If they receive his addresses kindly, and are satisfied as to his estate, the marriage is immediately concluded, insomuch that the young man may consummate it the night following. The wealth which the most able among them send to their Brides, consists in seven or eight of these scarfs of Silk or Cotton, wherewith the women cover themselves about the waste, so many little waistcoats of the same stuffe, three or four hundred bracelets of Canes, ten or twelve Rings of Latten, or Deers horn, which are so broad that they hide half the Fingers, and so thick, that when the Ladies have them on, they are rather a trouble, then any ornament to them; four or five Girdles of course Cloth, ten or twelve little Vestments, which they call *Ethgrao*, and are made of Dogs-hair, twenty or twenty five *Cangas* or *China* garments, a bag of Dogs-hair as big as a man can well carry, which they call in their Language *Ayam mamiang*, a kind of head-gear, made like a Mitre, of straw and Dogs-hair; and lastly, in four or five pair of stockings of Deer-skin; so that all put together may amount to about forty Crowns at most. Others who are not so rich, give only three or four Bracelets, and certain Garments, all not amounting to above two or three Crowns.

The marriage being thus concluded, the young Gallant goes in the Evening to his Bride at her Fathers house, and endeavours to get in by stealth, shunning both fire and light,

x 63 9. lest he should be seen, and so creeps into the bed, where the marriage is to be consummated. This he does for many years after his marriage, coming thence before day, and returning at night to his Wife, who still continues at her Fathers house, concealing himself so from those of the household, that to call to his Wife for Tobacco or ought else he stands in need of, he only hems, and permits her to return to the company she was in before, as soon as she hath done what he desired. Of this carriage the reason is, that it were a shame for her to leave her Relations, to go to her Husband. Their bedsteads are made of *Bambus* or Canes; a baven serves them for a bolster, and a Dear-skin for bed and all belonging three-to.

The women living thus with their Fathers, till the ground belonging to the Family, while the Husband lives at his own house, and provides only for himself. They never see one another in the day time, unless they appoint it to be in some remote place, where they may not be seen speaking together; or unless the young man goes to the house, when he knows there is none but his Wife at home; yet will he not enter, till he hath sent one to know, whether it may be done without any inconvenience to her. If she think fit he should see her, she comes to the door, and makes him a sign to enter; but if she desires not his company, she sends him away. The children they have remain with the Mother till they are thirteen years of age, and then the Father takes them home. The Women bear no children till they are thirty-five or thirty six years of Age, but destroy in the womb such as they conceive before that time. To procure abortion, they have one of their Priestesses comes to them, who kneeling upon their bellies causes miscarriage, inasmuch that the Fruit of the Womb, is forc'd out before they leave kneeding of them in that manner, with greater pain to the Woman, than if she were naturally delivered. Not that they are wanting in point of kindness to their Children, but prepossessed and besotted with the lewd impression they receive from their Priestesses, that it were a great sin and shame for them to bear Children before that Age.

The Women  
bear no  
children till  
35. years of  
Age.

The men live not with their Wives till they are forty years of Age. Then they take their leave of the *Pagodes* of their quarter, forsake their own houses, and go and live in the *Wives*; but being come to that Age, they spend most of their time in the Fields, retiring in the night time into Huts, that they may be near their work.

Divorce  
lawful a-  
mong them.

Notwithstanding this liberty, which the men have to see their wives when they please themselves, and to divert themselves elsewhere all day long, yet would they have also the conveniency of Divorce. As soon as a man is weary of his wife, he leaves her, and marries another; but with this difference, that if he puts her away without cause, she presents he sent her shall remain hers; but if she be convicted of Adultery, or chance to be so transported with passion, as to revile her husband in words, or affront him otherwise, she is bound to make restitution. Divorce is reciprocally free to both parties, so that Wedlock no more obliges the woman than it does the men; and it often happens that both of them change their conditions. They condemn Polygamy, though some of them marry two or three wives. But in regard there is neither Law nor Magistrate to punish any Crime wherein there is no Civil concernment, this remains unpunished, as well as Adultery; for, provided they conceal it from their own Wives, and her Husband whom they abuse, they may confidently, and without any scandal seek their fortunes elsewhere. A man never finds any incestuous marriages among them, nor that a man takes a wife within the fourth degree of Consanguinity or Affinity. Nor do they care a man should aske after their Wives, as how they do, whether they be handsome or not, of what friends they come, &c.

Boyes, from four years of Age and upwards, nay married men, when they do not lodge with their Wives, lye not at their own houses, but in a *Pagode* or *Mosquite*, where the Males of fourteen or fifteen Families meet in the Evening, and lye there, upon little Couches or Bedsteads of Canes, made as we described before.

Their houses

Their houses are spacious, and fairer than such as are ordinarily seen in the *Indies*. They are all raised five or six foot from the Ground, and have four doors, one towards every quarter of the Heavens. There are some have two of a side, and are three or four stories high. They have no other ornament than what they derive from the heads of Deer and wild-Boars, wherein they are covered both within and without. You find in them only certain stuffs, wherewith they cover themselves, and Deer-skins, which in their trade with the *Chinese*, is to them instead of money. All the household-stuff they have in their houses are only Spades to digg the ground withall, Pikes, Bows, Arrows, and some other Arms. But what they account most precious, are the heads or other Trophies taken from their Enemies. Instead of dishes, they use little troughs of wood, such as among us are set before Swine. Their drinking-pots are of Earth or Cane, and they also boil their Rice in Earthen-pots.

Rice

Rice is their ordinary sustenance; and if they put thereto either fish, or flesh, they eat not of it, till it be corrupted and full of worms. Their drink is not ill, especially to such as have not over-weak stomachs, or know not how it is made; but on the contrary it is wholesome and very pleasant. 1639<sup>a</sup>  
Their sustenance.

They have no set day for either rest or devotion, and celebrate no Festivals, yet do they meet on certain days to be merry, and make good cheer; every quarter meeting, to that purpose, in its own *Pagode*, whither the women also come, dress'd in the richest things they have, and clad after such a manner as we cannot well describe, our Language not having terms to express the odness of their habit. Their richest cloathing is made of Dogs-hair. For as we shear Sheep to make woollen stuffs of; so they have Dogs, whose hair they cut once a year, and dying it red, make stuffs thereof, which they esteem, as we hear do Velvet, or the best Scarlet. Have no Festivals.  
Dogshair-stuffs.

The Ceremonies performed here upon the death of any one are haply as remarkable as any the Reader shall find in this relation. Immediately after the departure of any one, they beat a Drum before his door to acquaint the Village therewith. This Drum is made of the Trunk of a great tree, so that it may be heard at a great distance, and upon that noise all the people come to the door of the deceased. The women bring each of them a pot of their *Arac*, and having sufficiently drunk to the memory of the Deceased, they fall a dancing upon a great empty round Chest, so that their motion, which is not very violent, makes a dull and doleful noise, suitable to the sorrow they would express. There get upon the Chest, eight or ten women at a time, in two ranks, who turn their backs one to another, and gently stirring their armes and feet, they go several times about the Chest, till such time as being weary, they think fit to make way for others; and this exercise lasts about two hours. The next day, or two days after, they begin to think of the body, not in order to *burial*, as we do, nor yet to *burn* it, as some of the fore-mentioned Nations are wont to do; but to dry it. To do that, they make in some part of the house, a Scaffold of Canes, raised five or six foot from the ground, whereto they fasten the body, by the hands and feet, and they make a great fire about it to dry it, killing in the mean time a great many Swine, and feasting it for nine days together. During which time they wash the body every day, yet does not that hinder, but that it infects the whole house, nay indeed the Neighbourhood. After nine days, it is taken thence, to be wrapt up in a Mat, being in which, they place it on another Scaffold, higher then the former, and compassed with several garments like a Pavilion, and then they reiterate their dancing and feasting. The body remains in the posture till the third year, and then they take the bones out of it, and bury them in some part of the house, with the same Ceremonies of feasting and dancing. Their Funerals.  
They neither bury nor burn the dead.

At the Village of *Theosang*, they have a custom, which would hardly be observ'd elsewhere. They fasten a Rope about their necks who suffer much pain in their sickness, raise them up by force to a great height, and let them fall down with as much violence, as if they intended to give them the *strapado*: by which means they are indeed put out of all further pain. A mad remedy 'gainst painful diseases.

As to Religion, it may be said they have not any at all. Of all the Inhabitants, not one can write or read, and yet they have certain Traditions, upon which they have framed a certain shadow of Religion. For they believe the World hath been from all Eternity, and shall last Eternally. They believe the immortality of the Soul, and thence it comes, that when any one dies, they build before his door a little Hut of bows of trees, set Banners at the four corners, and within the Hut a wooden Vessel full of water, with a Cane-spoon, out of a persuasion, that the souls of the deceased return every day to the Hut, to purifie themselves. 'Tis true, most of them do it purely out of compliance with custome, and know not the reason thereof: but aged persons are not ignorant of it. They believe also, that Souls shall find good or evil in the other life, according to what they have done in this, and affirm, that to go out of this World into the other, they pass over a very narrow Bridge of Canes, under which runs a Channel full of all kind of filth and nastiness, into which the wicked being fallen do there languish eternally; but that the good Souls pass into a pleasant and delightful Countrey, of which they speak, much after the same rate the Poets speak of the *Elysian* fields. But there are very few comprehend these mysteries. or think of any other life then the present. Their Religion.

Their sins are much different from ours. Murther, Theft, Adultery, and other Crimes, are not so much as slight offences among them, and they make so little account of simple Fornication, that they only laugh at it, reprove it not in their Children. They are forbidden marrying before Twenty, or twenty one years of age, yet it is lawful for them to cajol and debauch a neighbours Wife, so he know nothing of it. But it is a great Sin among Their Sins.

among them, to have cover'd the privy parts at a certain season of the year; to wear several Garments, or one only of Silk, at a time when they should have worn them of Cotton; not to have destroyed Children in the Mothers wombs; and to have born any before thirty five or thirty six years of Age. These are the sins, which in their judgment deserve eternal pains; all the rest is only toolery.

*Their Gods.* They adore several pretended Divinities, but among others two, one whereof is called *Tamagisanbach*, and the other *Sariabingb*. The former hath his abode in the South, and contributes to the generation of man, who receives from this God, only what is excellent and acceptable, either in his body or mind. They affirm, that his Wife, whom they call *Taxankpanda*, lives in the East, whence she is heard, when it thunders towards that quarter, speaking to her Husband, *Tamasgisanbach*, and chiding him, for suffering the Earth to be too long without Rain, and that thereupon her Husband causes it immediately to Rain. The other God hath his retreat in the North, and destroys all the excellency which *Tamagisanbach* hath bestowed on man, by disfiguring his face with the Small Pox, and sending him several other Inconveniencies. Whence it comes they invoke them both, one, that they may not be injured by him, and the other that he may prevent *Sariabingb* from doing them any mischief. Besides these, they have two other Gods, who have the oversight of War, named *Talafula*, and *Tapaliap*; but they are invocated only by men.

*Women only employed about their Mysteries.* There is not any Nation, that falls within my knowledge at least, but makes use of Men in the Religious Service of their Divinity, only this we now speak of employs only Women. They call them *Inibs*, and all their Worship consists of Prayers and Sacrifices. The Sacrifices and Offerings which they make their Gods, are Swine, Rice, *Areca*, some of their kind of Drink, and Deer, and wild Boars heads. Having fed heartily upon them, the Priestesses rise, and make a long Prayer, during which, a man shall see their Eyes turning in their Heads, they fall to the ground, and make dreadful cries and shrieks. After these efforts, they lie down all along upon the ground, immoveable as Statues, and become so heavy, that five or six persons can hardly raise them. 'Tis while they are in this posture, as they affirm, that their Gods communicate themselves to them, for an hour or better. Then they get up on the top of the *Pagode*, go from one end of it to the other, and there say their Prayers again; which being ended, they strip themselves stark naked, shew their privy parts to their Gods, smiting them with their hands, and call for water to wash themselves, in the presence of a great number of persons. 'Tis true, the men are not guilty of so much devotion as to come often to these Assemblies; and the women, who most frequent them, make a shift to get so drunk, that they hardly perceive what is done before their faces.

*Their devotion (para Quakerism)* Every house hath a particular place appointed for the devotions of the Family, where they invoke the Gods, and where the women make their offerings of what is spent every day in the house: but in case of sickness and some other misfortune, they call the *Inibs* to do that Service, which is performed with many extravagant Ceremonies. They also foretel good and ill fortune, rain and fair weather, and they have the power to drive away the Devil, after a very ridiculous manner. They pursue him with a great noise, having a *Japonesse* Knife in their hand, and affirm, that by that means they drive him away so far, as that he is forc'd to cast himself into the Sea, or at least into some River, where he is drown'd. There are to be seen also at Cross-ways, and upon great Roads, a kind of Altars, loaden with Offerings for their Gods, and many other impertinent Devotions may be observed among them; which the *Dutch* endeavour to abolish by degrees, by introducing Christianity into the Countrey, wherein they have had hitherto good success.

C H I N A.

## C H I N A.

**T**He great and vast Kingdom, which we call *China*, takes up the most Easterly part of all *Asia*. *Marc Paulo* calls it *Mangi*; the *Tartars* term it *Cathay*, and there are some who name it also *Singely*, or *Tame*. The *Chineses* themselves give it the name of *Chunghoa*, or *Chungque*, whereof the former signifies the *Middle Kingdom*, in as much as they believe they inhabit the midst of the Universe; and the other, the *Middle Flower*, or *Garden*, and know not the names given it by Forreigners, save only that they know the *Tartars* call them *Mangin*, that is, *Barbarians*. The Kingdom of China.

We affirm it to be the utmost Province of all *Asia* Eastward; for beyond it there is only the Sea, which the *Chineses* call *Tung*, that is, of the East. It hath towards the North great *Tartary*, from which it is divided by a Mountain of many Leagues extent, and where that fails, the defect is supplied by that admirable Wall, which reaches from the extremities of the Province of *Leaotung*, to the River *Croceus*, upon the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Tibet*, being in length three hundred *German* Leagues. Towards the West, it hath the Kingdoms of *Kiang*, *Vusucang*, and *Bengala*; and towards the South and South-west, the *Conchinchine*, and the Sea. Its Frontiers.

The Kingdom extends it self from the *Tropick of Cancer* to the fifty third Degree of Latitude, and comprehends in its length all the Southern parts, which lie between the hundred and thirtieth, and the hundred and sixtieth Degrees. But that we may speak more pertinently of it, we shall, with them, affirm, that *China* is sixty nine thousand five hundred and sixteen *Diez*, which make three thousand *Spanish* Leagues, in compass, and eighteen hundred in length. This account is made according to their Geometry and their Measures, which they distinguish into *Ly*, *Pu*, and *Cham*. They call *Ly* such a space of ground as is of the extent of a mans voice. Ten of these *Ly's* make a *Pu*, that is, about two Leagues, and ten *Pu's* make a *Cham*, that is, a good dayes journey; and according to this Calculation, they find the number of the *Diez*, which we laid down before. Its extent.

It is divided into fifteen great Provinces, six whereof, to wit, *Peking*, *Xantung*, *Kiangnan*, or *Nanking*, *Chekian*, *Fokien*, and *Quangtung*, are maritime, and the other nine are mediterranean. Of the nine last, those of *Quangsi*, *Kiangsi*, *Huquang*, *Honan*, and *Xansi*, are the more Northerly; and those of *Xensi*, *Suchuen*, *Queicheu*, and *Junnan*, the more Welterly. It hath, besides these, towards the East, those of *Leaotung* and *Corea*; but these do not properly belong to *China*. There are accounted in it a hundred forty and five great principal Cities, and twelve hundred sixty three of a middle sort, such as might pass elsewhere for great Cities; in as much as the difference of the *Chinese* names of *Fu* and *Chen*, which they give their places, proceeds only from their qualities, who have the command of them. For they call *Fu*, such places as have a Governour in chief; and *Chen*, or *Hien*, those, where there is only a simple *Mandarin*; though the places are many times of equal bigness. The Provinces whereof it consists.

The Cities are all built after the same manner, square, with good Brick-walls, plaister'd over with the same Earth as they make the Porcelane of, which in process of time grows so hard, that it will not be broken with a Hammer: which makes them last so long, that it hath been observ'd, some of them have stood above two thousand years; yet is there not the least appearance of any change to be seen in them. The Walls are very broad, and flank'd with Towers, built after the ancient way of Architecture, much resembling the Fortifications of the *Romans*.

Two spacious Streets commonly divide their Cities into a perfect Cross, and they are so straight, that though they reach the whole length of the City, how great soever it be, yet may a man see, from the middle, the four Gates of it. Several other Streets; but upon these in divers places of the City, where they are disposed into Market-places, and other publick conveniences. The Houses are fair and well built, especially those of Persons of Quality, which have their Gardens, Orchards, Groves, Fountains, Conduits, Ducking-ponds, Aviaries and Warrens; and they are painted or whiten'd on the out-side. They have most of them three Doors all on the same side, whereof that which stands in the middle is bigger then the other two, and they are for the most part so neatly wrought, that The Streets

1639. it must be confessed, all we know of Architecture comes not near their excellency in it: and they do all things the more magnificently, in that they want neither excellent Workmen, nor Materials to embellish their Structures.

There is no Kingdom or Commonwealth in the World, where they are so careful, not only of repairing the High-ways, but also in ordering all things so, as that Travellers may not want any convenience, in so much that a man shall find Mountains levell'd, and wayes cut through Rocks, yet more even and incomparably better paved then our Streets, nay then even those of the City of *Xuntien*, the *Metropolis* of this Monarchy, whereof we shall give a short account anon, when we come to the description of its Provinces.

The Province of Peking. Its Frontiers.

The Province of *Peking* is so called, by reason of the City of *Xuntien*, where the Emperour of *China* ordinarily resides; for the word signifies, a *Northerly Palace*, as that of *Nanking*, a *Southerly Palace*, but the true name of it is *Pecheli*. It hath towards the East, the Gulf of *Canghai*, which divides it from *Corea*; towards the North-east the Province of *Leaotung*; towards the North the Wall, which divides it from that of *Tartary* which lies beyond the Deserts of *Xamo*; towards the West, the Province of *Xansi*, from which it is divided by the Mountain of *Heng*; towards the North-west, the Province of *Honan*, and the River of *Croceus*; and towards the South and South-east, the Province of *Xantung*. It hath eight great Cities, to wit, *Xuntien*, *Paoting*, *Hokien*, *Chinting*, *Xante*, *Quanping*, *Taming*, and *Jungping*, which might pass for so many Provinces, since there are under their jurisdiction a hundred twenty and seven Cities of a middle sort. But what most think very strange, is, that though the more Northerly part of this Province reaches not beyond the forty second degree, yet is it so cold there, that from the midst of *November* to *March*, all the Rivers are frozen up.

Its Cities.

The number of its Families.

The Register which the *Chineses* keep of their Country, makes it appear that there are in this Province, a hundred and eighteen thousand, nine hundred eighty nine Families, consisting of above three millions, four hundred and fifty thousand persons, and that it payes yearly to the Emperour, six hundred and one thousand, one hundred fifty and three Bags of Rice, Wheat and Millet; two hundred twenty five pounds of Raw Silk, at twenty ounces to the pound; forty five thousand, one hundred and thirty pieces of Silk-Stuffes; thirteen thousand, seven hundred forty eight pound of Cotton; eight millions, seven hundred thirty seven thousand, two hundred eighty four Trusses of Hay and Straw for the Emperours Stables; and a hundred and eighty thousand, eight hundred and seventy *Quintals* of Salt, accounting a hundred twenty four pound to the *Quintal*; besides the Money which comes in by the Customs: and yet this is one of the less fruitful Provinces of *China*.

Its Revenues.

Xuntien described.

As to the City of *Xuntien*, it is situated at the extremity of the Kingdom, towards the North, about thirty Leagues from the great Wall. It owes its greatness, though in that particular it comes short of *Nanking*, to *Taicung*, who lived at the beginning of the fifteenth Age, and translated the Seat of the Empire from *Nanking* to this City. It is more populous then that of *Nanking*, and must needs be more sumptuous, by reason of the Court, and the great number of Souldiers which the King maintains there, as well for the safety of the City, as that of his own person. On the South-side it is encompassed with a double Ditch, and a double Wall; on the North-side it hath but one. This Wall is much higher then those of any Cities in *Europe*, and so thick, that twelve Horse might ride abreast upon it without touching one another. There is a Guard kept upon it in the night-time, with as much vigilance as if there were an open War; but in the day-time, the Gates are kept only by Eunuchs, who stand there rather to receive the Duties of Entrance, then for any safety of the City. This is the same City which *Marc Paulo* calls *Cambalu*, and whereof the *Tartars* were possessed at that time.

The Palace.

The Streets of it are not paved; so that in Winter a man goes up to the ankles in dirt; and in the Summer, he is cover'd all over with dust: but this inconvenience hath forced them to make use of an invention, whence they derive much greater conveniences. For they all cover themselves with a thin Lawn, from the head to the waste, and by that means, not being known, they are not obliged to salute any they meet; and so dressed they may ride undiscover'd on horse-back all about the City; which yet is not very honourable in Persons of Quality, who, by this convenience, save the charge it would be to them to be carried in Chairs, whereas they may have Horses and Mules to hire at the corner of every Street, at a very easie rate, three or four pence a day.

The Kings Palace is near a League in compass, and fortified with three good Walls, and so many Ditches. It hath four Gates, whereof that on the South-side, which opens upon the great Street of the City, is the fairest. Persons of Quality may go within the first Wall,

Wall, and Lords of the Council go within the second; but within the third there go only Women and Eunuchs who attend about the Kings person. They say this Palace consists, within, of near eighty Halls, and, of those, four, which are the richest in the World; besides the other Apartments, which are almost innumerable.

The Province of *Xansi* is not so great as that of *Peking*, but more delightful, fertile and populous. It bears not much Rice, but in requital, it affords the more Wheat and Millet, and breeds abundance of Cattle. The Word *Xansi* signifies, *Towards the West of the Mountain*. Accordingly, that of *Heng* divides it on the East-side from the Province of *Peking*, as the great Wall of the Kingdom of *Tanyu* in *Tartary* does towards the North. The River *Croceus* divides it, Westward, from the Province of *Xensi*, and, towards the South, and South-east, from that of *Honan*.

It comprehends five great Cities, to wit, *Taiyuen*, which is the Metropolis, *Pingyang*, *Tai-tung*, *Lugan*, and *Fuenchen*, and fourscore and twelve of a middle rate, which contain, disposed into 589959. Families, above five millions of persons. It pays in every year 2274922 Sacks of Grain, 50. pound of raw Silk, 4770. pieces of Silk-stuffs, 3544850. Trusses of Hay and Straw, and 420000. Quintals of Salt.

The Climate and Soil of this Province is fit for the Vine, and the Grape here is excellent; but the *Chineses* make no Wine. And there is one thing particular here, not to be found elsewhere, which is, that as there are in other places Pits and Wells of Water, there are here some of Fire. They dam them up so, as that they leave only some Holes, on which they set their Pots with Meat to be dressed. There are here also good store of Pit-coal, and certain Minerals which serve for Firing.

The Province of *Xensi* is, no doubt, one of the greatest of all the Southern part of *Asia*. It hath on the North, the Deserts of *Xamo*; towards the West and North-west, the Kingdoms of *Cascar* and *Teber*; towards the East, the River *Croceus*, which divides it from the Province of *Xansi*; and towards the South, it is divided from the Provinces of *Honan*, *Suchuen*, and *Huquang*, by a high Mountain: It comprehends, in eight great Cities, and a hundred and seven of middle rate, 831051. Families, and near four millions of persons. The great Cities are *Sigan*, *Fungciang*, *Hanchung*, *Pingleang*, *Cungebang*, *Linyao*, *Kingyang*, and *Jengan*. It pays yearly 1929057. Sacks of Grain, 360. pounds of raw Silk, 9228. pieces of Silk-stuffs, 17172. pounds of Cotton, 128770. pieces of Cotton-cloth, and 1514749. Trusses of Hay and Straw.

There are in this Province some Gold Mines, but there is a Prohibition made by the Laws of this Country, that no search should be made into them, and yet there is abundance of it found in the Rivers and Torrents, especially when the Rain brings down the Earth from the neighbouring Mountains. *Rhubarb* grows here in great quantities, and it is ordered with great care.

This Province affords also Musk, which is nothing but an Imposthume or Botch, fram'd at the Navil of a certain Beast, of the bigness of a wild Goat, which the *Chineses* call *Xe*; whence comes the word *Xehiang* (so they call the Musk) which signifies *Scent of Musk*. The Reader may take this for certain, whatever those may endeavour to perswade people, who have written concerning this Drug.

Though the Wall which divides *China* from *Tartary* enclose the three Provinces we named before, as also that of *Leatoung*, yet is it not of the length our Cosmographers assign it; for from the Gulf, where the River *Yalo* falls into the Sea, and where the Wall begins, to the City *Kin*, where it ends, there are not above twenty Degrees, which make but three hundred *German Leagues*. This miraculous Structure is continued without any interruption, unless it be near the City of *Siven*, in the Province of *Peking*, where an inaccessible Mountain supplies its place, and defends the Kingdom against the invasion of the *Tartars*, as well as the Wall it self. It hath Gates and Sluces for the passage of the Rivers which come out of *Tartary*, and hath Houses, Redoubts and Forts, from place to place, for the quartering of the Souldiers appointed for the keeping of it; in which work the Emperour of *China* employs a million of men. It is about thirty Cubits high, and about twelve, and in some places fifteen thick. The *Chineses* call it *Vanli Ching*, that is, a Rampier, or Wall of ten thousand *Stadia*, rather to express an extraordinary work, then assign the just greatness of it, by any certain measure: since that two hundred and fifty *Stadia* of that Country making a Degree, it would follow that the said Wall must take up forty Degrees, that is, more ground than all *China* does.

They say it was built by *Xiu*, King or Emperour of *China*, chief of the Family of *Cina*, By whom who having usurped the Kingdom from the Princes of the House of *Cheva*, caus'd that Wall to be made, as well to satisfy his own humour, which was to be magnificent in his Buildings, as to prevent the Incurfions of the *Tartars*, over whom he had many Advantages.



1639. vantages. He began it in the year 1215. which was the 22. of his Reign, and employ'd so many men about it, that it was finished in less than five years.
- The Province of Xantung.** The Province of *Xantung*, hath, towards the North, that of *Peking*, and the Gulf of *Cang*; towards the East, the Sea; towards the South, the Province of *Nanking*, from which it is divided by the River *Croceus*, and the Sea; and towards the West, the Channel of *Jun*, which joyns those two Rivers, and hath twenty Sluces, as also the River *Guei*. All these Rivers make this Province so fertile, that they say one year brings forth as much as will sustain it ten years afterwards, and that it may communicate to its Neighbours, the Wheat, Millet, Rice, Barley, and Pulse, which the Inhabitants cannot consume. Poultry and Eggs may be had there in a manner for nothing: *Feafants*, *Partridges*, *Quails*, and *Hares*, are very cheap; and for less than three pence a man may buy ten pound of fish.
- Silke.** But what this Province is most remarkable for, is *Silk*, which here is not got by the pains people take in other places in keeping *Silk-worms*, but it grows in the fields, upon *Trees*, where certain *Worms*, like *Caterpillars*, blow it, not in a *Cod*, but in white threads, which are found upon the *Hedges*, and may be used as advantageously as the ordinary *Silk*, though it be somewhat coarser.
- Its Cities and Families.** It hath six great Cities, to wit, *Cinan*, *Yenchen*, *Fungchaug*, *Cingchen*, *Tengchen*, and *Lai-chen*, seventy two other considerable ones, and comprehends, in 770555. Families, near seven millions of persons.
- Its Revenue.** It contributes yearly 2812179. Sacks of Corn, 54990. pieces of *Silk-stuffs*, 52449. pounds of *Cotton*, and 3824290. Trusses of *Hay and Straw*; besides the duties paid there, which amount to above ten millions of *Gold*.
- The Province of Honan.** The Province of *Honan* derives its name from its situation, it being seated towards the South of the River *Croceus*, for the word *Honan* signifies, towards the South of the River.
- Its Frontiers.** It hath on the East, the Province of *Nanking*; North and North-east, those of *Xantung* and *Peking*; North-west, that of *Xansi*; towards the West, that of *Xensi*; and towards the South, the Province of *Huquang*.
- Its Cities and Families.** This Province lies in the middle of this great Territory, and is so delightful, that the *Chineses* say, it is in *China*, what *Italy* is in *Europe*, and *Tourain* in *France*. It comprehends in eight great Cities, and a hundred less considerable ones, 589296. Families, consisting of above 5000000. of persons. The eight Cities are *Caisang*, *Queite*, *Changte*, *Gueikoei*, *Hoaking*, *Honan*, *Nanyang*, and *Juning*. It contributes yearly 2414477. Sacks of Corn, 23509. pound of raw *Silk*, 9959. pieces of *Silk-stuffs*, 341. pieces of *Cotton-stuffs*, and 288744. Trusses of *Hay and Straw*.
- Its Revenue.** The Province of *Suchuen*, that is, *four waters*, is one of the greatest of all *China*; and in regard it is a Frontier-Province towards the *Indies*, it thence comes, that the Inhabitants are somewhat of the humour of the *Indians*. It hath towards the East, the Province of *Huquang*; towards the South-east, that of *Queichen*; South, that of *Junnan*; West, the Kingdom of *Tibet*; and towards the North and North-west, the Province of *Xensi*, and the people whom they call *Coninguangi*, and *Kiang*.
- The Province of Suchuen.** It hath eight great Cities, which are, *Chingtu*, *Paoning*, *Xunking*, *Sinschen*, *Chun-king*, *Queichen*, *Lunggan*, and *Mahu*, one hundred twenty four lesser Cities, besides other four which are fortified, and contains in 464129. Families, above 2200000. men.
- Its Cities and Families.** It pays 6106660. Sacks of *Rice*, 6339. pound of *Silk*, 749117. *Quintals* of *Salt*.
- Its Revenue.** The true *Radix Sina*, which the *Chineses* call *Folin*, as also the wild kind of it, is found only in the Province of *Suchuen*, and grows there under the Earth, much like *Toad-stools*, or rather as that fruit which the *Indians* call *Patatas*, or *Potatoes*. Some are of opinion, that it is bred of the Gum which falls from the *Pine-trees*, which taking root, forms a fruit of the bigness of the *Indian Nut* (or *Cocos*) having a white meat within, which the *Chineses* use with good success in *Medicine*. This Province brings forth also the best *Rhubarb*, and great store of yellow *Amber*.
- Radix Sina.** The Province of *Huquang*, that is, *extended Lake*, derives its name from the Lake of *Tung-ting*, and hath towards the North, the Province of *Honan*; on the North, that of *Nanking*, towards the East, that of *Kiangsi*; towards the South, that of *Quangsi*; toward the South-west, that of *Queichen*; and towards the West, that of *Suchuen*.
- The Province of Huquang.** It comprehends in fifteen great, and a hundred and eight less considerable Cities, 531686 Families, and near five millions of persons. Its great Cities are, *Vuchang*, *Hanyang*, *Sian-gyang*, *Tegang*, *Hoangchen*, *Kingchen*, *Yochen*, *Changxa*, *Paoking*, *Hengchen*, *Changte*, *Xin-chen*, *Fuchuen*, *Chintbien*, *Chingyang*. It contributes yearly, 2167559. Sacks of *Rice*, and 17977. pieces of *Silk-Stuffs*.
- Its Frontiers.**
- Its Families.**
- Its Revenue.**

The Province of *Kiangsi*, hath towards the East those of *Nanking* and *Fokien*, towards the South, part of the same Province of *Fokien*, and of that of *Quantung*; towards the West, the Province of *Huquang*; and towards the North, part of that of *Nanking*. This Province is so populous, and the people thereof multiplies so strangely, that it in a manner supplies all the Provinces of the Kingdom, for which reason the *Chineses* call them *Kiang-soi*, Rats.

1 6 3 9:  
The Province of Kiangsi:  
Its Frontiers.

It hath twelve great Cities, and sixty seven lesser ones, wherein are numbred above 1136659. Families, and in them above 6550000. persons. Its chief Cities are called, *Nanchang*, *Fochou*, *Quangsin*, *Nankang*, *Kienkiang*, *Kienchang*, *Vuchou*, *Linkiang*, *Xuichou*, *Juvenchou*, *Canchou* and *Nangan*.

Its Cities and Counties.

It contributes yearly 1616600. Sacks of Rice, 3230. pound of raw Silk, and 10:516. pieces of Silk-Stuffs.

Its Revenues.

What is particular to this Province is, that here is made most of the Porcelane, which is carried all over the rest of the world. There is but one Village, and that under the jurisdiction of the City of *Fenleang*, where these Vessels are made, of a kind of Earth brought thither from the City of *Hoeichou*, in the Province of *Kiangnan*, or *Nanking*, yet so, as that the Inhabitants of that place cannot make any Porcelane, or that any reason can be given, why the same Earth should receive, in a strange Province, the form which cannot be given it at home. It is white as Chalk, and it is laid a soaking certain dayes, to be reduced to a PASTE; and to give it a colour, they put thereto some Woad, which grows in abundance, in most of the Provinces of *Cbina*.

Porcelane made in Kiangsi.

The Province of *Nanking*, which hath not been called *Kiangnan*, but since the *Tartars* became the Masters of it, is no doubt the chiefest of all the Provinces of *Cbina*, though the Seat of the Empire was sometime since translated into *Peking*, by reason of the vicinity of the *Tartars*.

The Province of Nanking:

It hath towards the East and North-east, the Sea; towards the North, the Province of *Xangtung*; towards the North-west, that of *Honan*; towards the West, that of *Huquang*; towards the South-west, that of *Kiangsi*; and towards the South, that of *Chekkiang*. It comprehends in its extent fourteen great Cities, to wit, *Kianquing*, which is the Metropolis, *Fungyan*, *Suchen*, *Sungkiang*, *Chancheu*, *Chinkiang*, *Tangcheu*, *Hojaigan*, *Luchou*, *Ganking*, *Taiping*, *Ninke*, *Chicheu*, and *Hoeichou*, and a hundred and ten less considerable ones, wherein there are 1969816. Families, out of which may be taken near ten millions of men. It contributes yearly 5995034. Sacks of Rice, 6863. pound of raw Silk, 28452. pieces of Silk-Stuffs, 2077. pieces of Linnen-cloth; (the Cotton is converted into money) and 705100. Quintals of Salt, and 5804217. Trusses of Hay and Straw.

Its Frontiers.

Its Cities:

Its Families and Revenues.

But what will startle the belief of the Reader, is, that besides all mentioned before, this Province pays in yearly into the Exchequer, above sixty millions of Crowns. This is the Province, if any in the Kingdom, which is most inclined to civility, and where there are most Learned men.

The prodigious Revenue of one Province.

The Province of *Chekkiang*, is the most considerable of all the Provinces of *Cbina*, next the last named, and that of *Peking*. It hath eleven great Cities, to wit, *Hanchou*, *Kiabing*, *Huchou*, *Niencheu*, *Kinhoa*, *Kincheu*, *Cheuchou*, *Xaoing*, *Ningpo*, *Taicheu*, and *Vencheu*, and sixty three of a middle sort.

The Province of Chekiang. Cities.

It hath towards the East, the Sea, and *Japan*; towards the South and South-west, the Province of *Fokien*; and towards the North and North-west, the Province of *Nanking*. The number of its Families amounts to 1242135. and may comprehend 4525470. persons.

Families.

It pays yearly to the Emperour 2510299. Sacks of Rice, 370299. pounds of raw Silk, 2574. pieces of Silk-stuffs, besides such Stuffs as are wrought with Gold and Silver, which are brought thence four times in the year by the Kings Ships, to be distributed among those, whom his Majesty permits by an express privilege to wear thereof; 444769. Quintals of Salt, and 8704421. Trusses of Hay and Straw. Besides all this, it sends into the Exchequer, the yearly sum of above thirty millions.

Its Revenues.

There are in this Province whole Forrests of Mulberry-trees, which maintain such a abundance of Silk worms, that it is only this Province, in a manner, which supplies the Indies, and all Europe, with that kind of Silk which is called *Cbina-Silk*. They cut and order the Mulberry-trees there, as the Vine is dressed in France; the Inhabitants having found it by experience, that the least and tenderest Leaves produce the finest Silk. Nay, they can so well distinguish the Silk of these Worms that have been kept with the first Leaves, from that which comes from the second Leaves, that the price of the one is much below that of the other,

Its abundance in Silk.

1639. In this Province is the City, which *Marc Paulo* calls *Quinsay*. The name of it then *The City of* was *Lingan*, and it is called in the *Chinese* Language *Kingfu*, that is, a *Royal Seat*, upon this *Quinsay*. account, that *Koakungkin*, Emperour of *China*, retreated thither, when he was pursued by the *Tartars*, who were entred his Kingdom. Now it is called *Hangcheu*, and if we correct in some things what the foresaid Author sayes of it, we shall find it comes not much short of the greatness he assigns it.

*Marc Paulo justified.* For what he sayes of the ten thousand Bridges that are to be seen there, is very certain, if we comprehend in that number those which are about the City; as also the triumphal Arches, which in regard of their being vaulted, are numbred among the Bridges. The Lake he speaks of is not properly within the City, but so near it, that there are so many Bridges built thereon, and the sides of it are covered with so many *Pagodas*, and other publick and private Structures, that it may well be accounted part of the City.

*The greatness of the City of Hangcheu.* What the same Author sayes further of the Mountain of *Chinghoangh*, which is within the City; of the Tower, wherein the hours are measured by an Hour-glass, and are marked with Golden letters a foot and a half in length; of its Streets being paved with Freestone; of its situation in a Fenny place; of the great number of its Rivulets, and of the River *Cientang's*, being a *Germane* League in breadth, is very certain; as also what he affirms of its compass, to wit, that it is above a hundred *Italian* Leagues about, taking in all its Suburbs; which included, it may be fifty *Stadia* in length, and so much at least in breadth.

There are numbred within the City at least fifteen thousand Priests, sixty thousand persons, whose Profession it is to work in Silk, and so vast a number of people, that it is reported there are spent there every day ten thousand Sacks of Rice, and above a thousand Hogs, besides the Cows, Goats, Sheep, Dogs, Fowl, and other Creatures; though most of the Inhabitants believe the transmigration of Souls, and abstain from Flesh.

*The Province of Fokien: Its Frontiers. Cities. Families and Revenues.* The Province of *Fokien*, which *Marc Paulo* calls *Fugui*, hath on the East and South, the Sea; on the South-west, the Province of *Quantung*; West and North-west, that of *Kiangsi*; and North, that of *Chekkiang*.

It hath nine great Cities, to wit, *Focheu*, which is the Metropolis, *Civencheu*, *Cancheu*, *Kienning*, *Jenping*, *Tincheu*, *Hinghoa*, *Xaoun*, and *Foning*, and forty eight less considerable ones; 509200. Families, and near two millions of men. It pays yearly 883115. Sacks of Rice, 194. pounds of raw Silk; 600. pieces of Silk-stuffs.

*The Inhabitants of Fokien trade most out of the Kingdom.* But its greatest Revenue consists in the Customs that are paid upon Commodities; it being certain, that excepting only *Macao* in the Province of *Quantung*, where the *Portuguez* drive a great Trade, all the Musk, Precious Stones, Silk, Quicksilver, Silk-stuffs, Linnen-cloth, Cottons, Iron and Steel, and all those other Commodities, which the *Chinese* carry by Sea into *Japan*, *Fermosa*, the *Philippine Islands*, *Celebes*, *Java*, and other places in the *Indies*, come only out of this Province. There is such abundance of Ships in *Fokien*, that it is reported, that heretofore when the Emperour of *China* intended a war against the *Japonneses*, the Inhabitants of this Province proffered to furnish him with as many Boats as would make a Bridge between that Island and the Continent of *China*. Every City almost of this Province hath its particular Language, and that so different from what is spoken in any other City, that they can hardly understand one the other; nay they are ignorant of the common Language of the Country, which all persons of any quality speak in the other Provinces.

*The Province of Quantung. Its Frontiers. Cities. Families. Revenues.* The Province of *Quantung*, is also one of the most Maritime Provinces of all *China*. It hath towards the West-north-west, the Kingdom of *Tunking*; North-west, the Province of *Quangsi*; North, those of *Huquang* and *Kiangsi*; and North-east, that of *Fokien*. All the rest of it lies upon the Sea. It hath ten great Cities, to wit, *Quangcheu*, *Xaocheu*, *Nanhiung*, *Hoicheu*, *Chaocheu*, *Chaoking*, *Kaocheu*, *Kiencheu*, *Luicheu*, and *Kiuncheu*, and seventy two lesser ones, and among the rest that of *Macao*, whereof we shall have somewhat to say elsewhere: There are numbred in it 443360. Families, and near two millions of persons; and it contributes 1017772. Sacks of Rice, and 37380. Quintals of Salt, besides what it payes in ready money.

*The richest Province of China.* The *Chinese* affirm, that there are in this Province three things which are not to be seen elsewhere; to wit, Mountains without Snow, Trees perpetually green, and Men who spit blood, in regard their Spittle is of a reddish colour, occasioned by their continuall chewing of *Bettle* and *Areca*.

*The industry of the Inhabitants* To this may be added, that there is no other Province in all *China* so rich in Gold, Pearls, Precious Stones, Silk, Tin, Quicksilver, Sugar, Copper, Iron, Steel, Saltpeter, *Calambac*-wood, &c. as this is. It hath this further particularity, that the Musket and Pistol barrels made in that Province, never break, though never so much over-charged, but only open, to make way for what cannot get out at the mouth. The

The Inhabitants are more industrious in imitation than invention: but they are so excellent at the former, that no Manufacture or rarity can be brought thither out of these parts, which they will not do as well as the *Europeans*; and among others, they are so great Masters in all Gold-smiths work, that what is done in *Europe* comes not near theirs.

1639.

The City of *Macao* or *Amagao*, that is, *Good Haven*, is famous on this account, that only the *Portuguez* trade thither, excluding all others; and that it is the Episcopal Seat of all those parts. Their particular trading is with the City of *Quanchen*, whither they are permitted to come twice a year to the Fair, at which time they put off thirteen hundred Chests of Silk-stuffs, Sattins, Damasks, &c. Every Chest containing a hundred and fifty pieces, and carry thence for them, two thousand five hundred Wedges of Gold, of ten *Toels* each, that is, a hundred and thirty Crowns; eight hundred pound of Musk, and abundance of Gold Thread, Silk, Pearls, precious Stones, and several other Commodities, which they carry to *Malacca* and *Goa*, to be thence distributed into other parts of the World.

The Province of *Quangsi* is not so large nor so fertile as the forementioned; yet hath it eleven great Cities; to wit, *Queillen*, the Metropolis, *Lieuchou*, *Kingyen*, *Pinglo*, *Guchen*, *Cinchen*, *Nanning*, *Taiping*, *Suming*, *Cbingan*, and *Tienchen*, which have under their jurisdiction ninety nine lesser ones. It hath East and North-east, the Province of *Quantung*; North, that of *Queicheu*; South and South-west, the Kingdom of *Tunking* or *Gunnan*; and West, that of *Junnan*. They number in it 186719. Families, and above 1500000. men; and contributes 431359 Sacks of Rice.

The Province of Quangsi. Its Cities.

Frontiers

Families and Revenue.

The Province of *Queicheu* is the least considerable of all the Provinces of *China*, as containing but eight ordinary Cities; to wit, *Queiang*, *Suchen*, *Sunan*, *Chiniven*, *Xecien*, *Tunggin*, *Liping* and *Tucho*, which have four other lesser Cities under them. It hath but 45305. Families, and about 200000. men. The Country is hilly and uneven; so that it yielding but little Corn, it contributes but 47658. Sacks of Rice, and 5900 pieces of Linnen-cloth. But there is not any Province affords more Quicksilver, or breeds better Horses, than this doth.

The Province of Queicheu. Its Cities. Revenue.

Heretofore this made not a Province by it self, but depended partly on that of *Suchuen*, partly on that of *Huguang*; whereof the one is towards the North and North-west of it, and the other, North-east. The Province of *Quangsi* is its Frontier towards the South and South-east; and that of *Junnan* towards the West.

Frontiers-

The Province of *Junnan* is the most Westerly Province of all *China*; for it hath East and North-east, the Provinces of *Quangsi* and *Quinchen*; North, that of *Suchuen*; North-west, the Kingdom of *Tibet*; South-west, that of *Mien*; and South and South-east, that of *Laos*, and part of *Tunking*. This is, no doubt, one of the richest Provinces of the Kingdom, and there would be more Gold found in it, if the Veins of the Earth were a little more opened. It affords also yellow Amber, Rubies, Saphirs, Agats, Musk, Silk, Benjamin, excellent Horses, Elephants, &c. It hath eleven great Cities, to wit, *Junnan*, *Tali*, *Lingan*, *Cubiung*, *Chinkiang*, *Munghoa*, *Quangnan*, *Quansi*, *Chinisien*, *Jungning*, and *Xunning*, under which are eighty four lesser Cities. There are number'd in it 132958. Families, and about 1433000. men, and it contributes 1400568. Sacks of Rice, and 56965. Quintals of Salt.

The Province of Junnan. Its Frontier. Its wealth. Cities.

Cities.

Families and Revenue.

By the vast extent we have assign'd the Kingdom of *China*, it may be judg'd, that its Provinces lying in so different Climates, it must follow, that the Qualities of its Air and Soil are also different. Accordingly, there is so vast a difference between the Inhabitants of the Island of *Hainan*, which is in the Torrid Zone, and part of the Province of *Quantung*, which comes near it, and those of the Province of *Peking*, which is the more Northerly of all *China*, that a man might take the one for the *Moors* of *Fez* in *Barbary*, and the others for *Germans* or *Suedes*. I speak as to their colour; for these are white, those black; and there are some more or less swarthy, according as the Provinces they live in are more or less Southerly and Northerly.

There are both black and white Chinese.

The same difference is to be observed in the Fruits. For the more Southerly Provinces bring forth *Cocoas*, *Bannanas*'s, and such other Fruits as grow only in hot Countreys; and others bring forth *Figs*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Chestnuts*, and such Fruits as are common in *Europe*. But it may be said in general of *China*, that there is not any other Country more pleasant or more fertile than it. 'Tis true, it is much obliged to Nature, from whose liberality it hath Gold, Silver, precious Stones, Musk, Silk, Salt, and all sorts of precious Gums and Drugs; but it must be confessed withall, that it is the labour and industry of the Inhabitants, and the mildness of its Government, which occasions this abundance of provisions, and consummates the felicity wherein they live.

The difference of Fruits in China.

The

1639. The Country is so populous, that to maintain so strange a number of people, it is but necessary, that all the Ground it takes up should produce somewhat or other. They have a natural aversion for idleness; but if they had not, the Laws have made such provision, in this particular, that there is not any Crime punished with greater infamy then this Vice. Another humour of theirs is, that they are lovers of good Chear, and pride it much in wearing good Clothes, and having their Houses well furnished, so that, to live handsomly, they are obliged to take pains. Hence comes it, that a man shall not see a Mountain but is planted, not a Hill but is cultivated; no Plain, but is sown; no Fen, but some advantage is made thereof; nay, to use the common expression, not an inch of Ground, but brings forth somewhat or other, to requite their labour, who bestow their pains on it.

China Fruits better than ours. Wax and Honey. Sugar. This Country breeds all sort of living Creatures, and brings forth all the Fruits and Simples we have in *Europe*, but all much better in their several kinds then any we have; as may be seen by those Oranges, the Plant whereof was brought thence into *Portugal*, and the Fruit whereof is so highly esteem'd every where. The like may be said of Melons, and other Fruits, especially Plums, which are most excellent there, and so wholesome, that they never burden the Stomack, though a man eat never so many of them. There is such abundance of Honey and Wax, that whole Fleets come thence loaden therewith; and Sugar is so cheap that when it is dearest, the *Quintal*, that is, a hundred twenty four pound, may be bought between twenty four and thirty shillings *sterling*. A man may judge of the quantities of Silk it produces, by the Stuffs which the Provinces pay in yearly to the King, besides the Stuffs and raw Silk which are carried into all other parts of the World. The high Grounds bring forth Wheat, Barly, Oats; and the low Grounds, Rice, but in such abundance, that, when most dear, it is sold at a Crown the Coom, or four *Winchesters*.

Flesh very cheap. Spice: Fowl are sold there by the pound, and when the Feathers are off, the ordinary rate is three half pence a pound, and all other Flesh proportionably: for there is so much Cattel, that a fat Cow is not worth above ten shillings; a Buffler a Crown; a Hog, the flesh whereof is very delicate, twenty pence. Nay, even Spices are so cheap there, that under a Crown a man may buy four hundred Nutmegs, and for half a Crown two pound of Cloves; which proceeds hence, that Provisions yielding in a manner nothing in the Country, the *Chineses* truck them with so much profit to the *Moluccas* and the other neighbouring Islands, that they can afford these Drugs cheaper then they may be had at the places where they grew. The Sea, which encompasses a great part of this vast Territory, and the Rivers which are as it were so many Veins and Arteries to this vast Body, supply it with such abundance of Fish, that it is to be had in a manner for nothing.

Their fishing. For there is hardly any City that hath the convenience of a River, but the Inhabitants keep a great number of Cormorants, which they make use of in order to fishing. They are kept fasting one day, and the next they carry them to the water-side, near several Boats half full of water, whereto they are fastened with a Cord tied under their Wings, and having bound them about their Necks a little above the Stomack, they let them go into the River, where they fill, with Fish, that Skin which stretches like a bag under the Throat, and come and disburden themselves, of what they had taken, in the Boat whereto they are fastened. This they do several times, at least till such time as the Master thinks they have taken enough; and then he unties the String which ties up their Necks, and permits them to go a fishing for themselves, and to feast themselves for two dayes: and by this means they take more Fish then they are able to consume.

How they breed Ducks. How hatched. There is no Creature so common all over *China* as the Duck, in regard they have a way for the breeding of them, not known in other parts. They are kept in great Cages, made of Canes, and set at the Sterns of great Boats, the Cages being so large, as they are able to contain three or four thousand of them, and they hatch the Eggs, in the Summer time, in Cow-dung, or haply in the Dung of the Ducks themselves, which is very hot, leaving them therein, till the generation be complicated, and then they break the Shells one against another, to make way for their young ones to come out, with such a sleight, that it seldom happens that any one of them miscarries.

In the Winter, they heighten the natural heat of the Dung by Fire, making a Bed of Canes, raised three or four foot from the ground, upon which they set the Eggs between two layers of Dung, and there is a Fire made under, to give them that degree of heat which is requisite for the hatching of them. As soon as they are hatched, they dispose them into the Cages, where they keep old Ducks, which receive them under their Wings, and breed them up. When they are grown big enough to shift for themselves, they give them in the morning a little Rice, but only so much as rather sharpens then satisfies the

Appetite,

Appetite, and then they open the Cages, to let them go over a kind of Hurdle of Canes to the shore, where they suffer them to feed among the Rice, out of which they pick the Weeds with so much ease and advantage to the Owner, that he who breeds the Ducks is sufficiently recompenced for his pains. In the evening, he gets all his Ducks together, and makes them return into the Boat, with the noise of a Whistle or little Bell, which they observe so exactly, that, though there are many times twenty or five and twenty thousand of them together, yet will they all get very orderly into their Cages: and by this kind of breeding, they are so cheap, that a man may have two or three for a penny. 1639.

As to the Inhabitants, they are well shaped, and for the most part of a good stature. The Men have large Faces, are small Ey'd, and flat Nosed, wearing little or no Beard. They never cut their Hair, nor pare the Nails of the left Hand, out of a persuasion, that their Nails may be serviceable to them in climbing, when they shall be taken up into Heaven by the Hair. The Inhabitants.

They are all clad after the same fashion, save that in the more Northerly Provinces, they use Furs, and in the more Southerly, they go for the most part in Silk. Persons of great quality have their Cassocks embroidered up to the Waste, but others have only a little Gold or Silver about the extremities: and there is this distinction between married Men and Batchelors, that the latter part their Hair upon the Forehead, and wear higher Caps than the others. Their cloathings.

The Women are very sumptuously clad, having about them a great many Pearls and precious Stones. They also paint, and dress their Heads with as much curiosity and advantage as in any other place of the World. They have a particular affection of having little feet; whence it comes, that the Mothers make it their business, so to straiten their Daughters Feet, from their Infancy, that they are hardly able to go. Some are of opinion, that this Custom was introduced by those who were desirous to accustom Women to a sedentary life, whereto they are as it were condemned even from their birth. They are never seen in the House; and it is very seldom they go abroad, which when they do, it is to visit some of their nearest Relations; and then, they are so attended, and shut up in *Palanquins*, that they cannot be seen. Their Women.

The Men are ingenious enough, and discover, by their Works, that they are not inferior to the *Europeans*. It is no easie matter for a Man to avoid the circumventions of their Merchants, who make use of all imaginable Advantages in their Dealings. At every Door there hangs a Table, containing a Catalogue of all the Commodities that are in the Shop: and in regard all the Merchants of the same Body have their habitations in the same quarter, a man finds, as soon as he comes into it, what is to be sold in all the Street. Are ingenious.

They use Brass-money in no Province but that of *Chekiang*; in all other parts of the Kingdom, only Gold and Silver is current, which yet is received only by weight, without any regard of the mark. Whence it comes, that no *China* Merchant but hath his Weights about him, and such pieces of Money as are full weight, by which that which he receives is to be weighed. Their Money.

I am of opinion, that the provision, which is made in several parts of *Europe*, for the subsistence of the Poor, was derived from *China*. Beggary, which is infamous in those who are reduced thereto, and a shame to such as suffer it, in as much as it is a reproach of their want of Charity, whose care it should be to remedy that inconvenience, is there very severely forbidden; and there is in all Cities a particular Judge appointed for the Poor, who, in order to their relief, takes the following course. The provision for the subsistence of the poor.

The very day he comes into that Employment, he publishes an Order, whereby he commands all those who have any Children, either born weak or imperfect, or become such, through sickness or any other accident, to come and make their cases known, that he may examine whether they are capable of learning any Trade or not; and in case they are not, whether the Parents are able to maintain them. If they are Orphans, and have no other Friends able to keep them, they are disposed into Hospitals, where they are brought up at the Kings charge. The same course is taken with maimed or decrepit Souldiers. They are all lock'd up, and not permitted to go any more abroad. The Houses, where they put up the Poor, have Gardens and Courts belonging to them, where they are permitted to keep Poultry and Swine, as well for their divertisement as advantage, and the King appoints a certain Overseer, who, joyntly with the ordinary Judge, makes a Visitation of the Hospitals twice a year.

They do not put the blind into the number of those Poor who are accounted unable to work; but they are employed in pulling the Bellows at Smiths Forges, and other things which do not much require the help of the sight. Maids that are blind are forced to a Trade, which may be as gainful, but not so honest as some others.

1639. I conceive I may also presume to affirm, that it is to *China* we are obliged for the Myttery of Printing. For it is certain, we have it but since the year 1450. and that the *Chineses* have some Books printed above seven hundred years since.

*Their way of writing.* They have a way of Writing particular to themselves, not only upon this account, that they make use of Figures rather than Characters, in as much as they signifie entire words, and do not represent the Letters; but also upon this, that, in their Writing they observe an order wholly different from that of all other Nations. For these write either from the left hand to the right, as all the *Europeans* do, or from the right to the left, as the *Hebrews*, *Arabians*, and most of the other Nations of *Asia* do; but the *Chineses* write from the top downwards, and in their Writing observe such equal distances, that there cannot be any thing more exact. And to shew, that these Figures stand not for any word that hath any particular signification in their Language, but that they express the same things, it is to be noted, that the *Chineses*, who, when they speak, cannot understand one the other, by reason of the diversity of the Idioms and Dialects that is among the Inhabitants of several Provinces, make use of these Characters, not only to render themselves intelligible one to another, all over the Kingdom, but also in their Commerce with the *Japonneses*, and the Inhabitants of *Corea* and *Conchinchine*, between whose Languages there is no more rapport, than the *English* hath to the *Greek* or *Arabian*.

*Their Paper.* They make their Paper of the Bark of *Bambus*, or Canes, but so thin, that it will bear writing but on one side, though they do not use Pens, but Pencils, as the *Japonneses* do, which only slide along the Paper, so that they write as fast, and cut their Characters lo neatly, that the best Pen-men in *Europe* are not to be preferred before them.

The King is at a vast charge, as well in the maintenance of the Schools, where they are taught to read and write, as also the other Elements and Sciences, as in that of the Universities, where are taught Philosophy, natural and moral, Astrology, and the other Sciences. There passes not a year, but there is a Visitation made, at which the Professors and Scholars are examined; and they who express an inclination to study are recompenced; such as apply not themselves thereto as they ought, are punished.

*The dignity of Loytia.* The Visitor having ended the general *Examen*, makes another particular one for those who aspire to the quality of *Loytia*, a Dignity there like that of our Doctors. True it is, that they give this Title to all nobly descended; but in matter of Learning, it is a Degree, conferr'd, by giving the Graduate a permission to wear a Girdle, by which he is distinguished from others. For the King bestows this quality, as the Princes of our parts confer Honours on those who have deserved them by their services, or are so much in favour, either with them or such as are about them, as to get them by Letters Patents. This promotion of Doctors is done with as great Ceremonies, as in any *European* University.

*The Chineses very ceremonious.* But indeed this Nation is so punctual in point of Ceremony, that it goes beyond any other, even to importunity. The first Lectures they make to Youth are those of Completments, whereof there are whole Books, that they may be sure to have them upon all occasions. If a man hath but once seen a person, he is obliged to salute him, and this is not done with the Hat, but closing the left hand, they put it into the right, and so both to the breast, with a low inclination of the head, accompanied with protestations to confirm what they would express by their gestures.

Persons of Quality meeting in the Street, make a stand, joyn their hands by putting the fingers one within another, and stretching out the arms bow-wise, they do their reverences with low inclinations, and continue a good while in that posture, proffering one another the way. When there is no equality between the persons who meet, the inferiour gives way to the other, does him reverence, and lets him pass by. He who goes to speak about any business to a *Loytia* at his own Lodgings, kneels down as soon as he comes into the Room, and advances, and continues in that posture till he hath done speaking, or delivered his Petition, and having done his business, he retires still kneeling, without turning his back on the *Loytia*.

If a man standing at his own Door, or in the Street, espy a Kinsman, or Friend, coming out of the Country, if he who lives in the City thinks not himself well enough clad to welcome his Friend as he would, he will pretend not to have seen him, go into his Lodging, put on his best Clothes, and then will come and meet his Friend, and salute him, as if he had not seen him before. If he meet him in the Street at some distance from his own House, the first question he makes is, whether he hath din'd or supp'd, if not, he will carry him to the next Tavern, and treat him magnificently with Fish and Flesh; if he hath din'd, he will give him only a Collation of Fruits and Conserves.

They are very sumptuous in their Treatments, and have a custom different from what is done in all other places. They set up as many Tables as there are guests; but instead of cloths, which would hide the beauty of the gilding and painting, wherewith they are enriched, they have only carpets of Damask, Tattata, or some other Silk stuff, which covering only the edges thereof, hang down to the ground. At the four corners of the Table they set a paper of Fruits and Conerves for the Desert, and several figures of Sugar, made and painted to the life, and flowers for the divertisement of the Eye, and they set the meat in the midst.

They use either Silver-plate or Porcelane, and have no Napkins, in regard they make use of their forks so neatly, that they never have any occasion to wipe either their hands or mouths. They drink often, but little at a time, whence it comes their drinking cups are very small; and whereas they serve up many dishes, they are very long at meals: but that the guests might not be weary, they give them all manner of divertisements, as Musick, Plays, tricks of Légerdemain, and Puppet-showes. If it be a person of quality that is invited, they set up in the Hall where the treatment is made, several other Tables, on which are all sorts of tame and wild Fowl, all which are carried away by several servants marching in a file before him, when he returns home, whither having brought them, they, with great Complements, oblige him to suffer them to leave at his own house what he had not contained at their Masters. The treatments they make for a Governour of a Province lasts sometimes fifteen days or three weeks, and costs them a years Revenue who undertake any such thing, what ever their Estates may be. Their entertainments are commonly in the night, making choice of some time about the change of the Moon, especially that of *March*, with which they begin their year.

That day they all spend in merriment, put on their best clothes, hang their houses with the richest stuffs they have, cover the streets with Roses and other flowers, adorn their triumphal Arches with branch'd works, Damask and silk Tapettry, beset with Torches, and plant before the door a tree so enlightned, that though there were but one in a whole street, it might give light to the whole quarter. Their Priests are present at these publick rejoycings, and adde to the solemnities of the day by the Sacrifices they make to their Gods.

Speaking of their *civility*, I shall here give an accompt of that which they have particularly for the Embassadors of Forreign Princes, for whom the *Chineses* have the same veneration and respect, as they might expresse to their own Masters.

They do not look on the occasion of the Embassie, but the quality of the Prince who sends the Embassador, who is received at the entrance of the Kingdom, by the Governour of the first Frontier City, who meets him with all the persons of Quality within his Government. They suffer him not to set his foot on the ground; but as soon as he comes out of the Ship, he is put into an Ivory Chair, and carried by eight men to a house appointed for that purpose, which is furnished at the Kings charge, and so spacious, that several Embassadors may be lodg'd therein at the same time without any inconvenience. The next day, the Governour of the City goes to wait on him, and endeavours to learn of him the occasion of his Embassie, to be communicated to the Governour of the Province, who immediately sends to the Embassador, to desire his Credentials, that he may dispatch them to the Court, and get thence the Pass-port requisite for the prosecution of his journey. This Pass-port is upon Parchment, with the Kings Seal in Gold, which is carried before the Embassador, with the Credentials written upon a board, having over head in Golden letters the name of the Prince who sends him. The Governours of Provinces make provision for his expence by the way, and when he is come near the Metropolis, there meets him the President of the Privy-Council, who receives him in the head of all the Councillors, and most of the Courtiers, and conducts the Embassador to his Lodgings, and as he takes leave of him, he empowers him to create a certain number of *Loyins*, and to set at liberty some Condemnd persons, the number whercof is regulated suitably to the greatness of the Prince who sends him. They allow him a certain time to repose himself, and then the same persons, who met him at his entrance, conduct him to his Audience, which the King gives him as often as he desires it, and is present at all the Propositions he makes.

The entertainments they make at Weddings, are very great, for the Brides Father



**I 639.** gives her no other Portion then what he spends the first day, in treating the relations and *Their wed.* friends of his Son in Law; and the next day, those of the Bride. The Feasting being over, *dings.* the Husband delivers to his Wife, in the presence of her kindred, the Portion he promised her, and she gives it her Father or Mother, as a requital of the pains they had taken in her Education; so that by this means such as have most Daughters are the happiest, especially if they be handfom. Maids are married very young, and the Father may dispose of the Dower given his Daughter, if any necessity oblige him thereto; but if he keep it, it is due to the Daughter, all the other Children being excluded from having any benefit thereof.

*Polygamy*  
*lawful.*

Polygamy is lawful among them, but incest severely forbidden, in a direct line, to infinitie; and in a collateral, to Sisters and Nieces. The first is the only lawful Wife, the rest Concubines, infomuch that they do not only not live in the same Lodgings with the first, but also her eldest Son Inherits as much of the Estate himself, as all the rest put together. If the first wife have no Son, or having any, if he die before the Father, the eldest by the other wives succeeds him in his right, and represents the heir apparent of the Family.

A man seldom hears of any Adulteries committed among them; for the women are kept in such restraint, that they are in a manner inaccessible. The Husband hath the same power, as in other places, to kill the Adulteress and her Gallant, if he take them in the Act: but in regard it is a self-ended and self-conceited Nation, they choose rather to make their advantage otherwise of such an accident, then defame themselves by a severity, which saves their reputation only in appearance.

*The Go-*  
*vernment of*  
*China Mo-*  
*narchical.*

The Government of the King, the Emperour of *China*, is Monarchical, and it may be said to be in some respect despotic, in as much as the Sovereign is so absolute, that no Law checks his Power; and yet his Government is so mild, that there is not any Democracy, where the Inhabitants are less burthen'd then they are in *China*. Nothing is more destructive to a State, and more obliges Princes to have recourse to extraordinary wayes, to the cost of their Subjects, then War. Whence it comes, that the Kings of *China*, considering that no foreign War can be carried on but at the cost of the people, and that by that means the foundations of a House are dig'd up to cover the roof of it, have made it a Fundamental Law, that no War should be made to extend the Frontiers of the Kingdoms. And to the end, their Subjects may give foreigners no occasion of making any War against their Country, they are forbidden upon pain of Death to go out of it, without express permission from the Prince, or Governour of the Frontiers.

*Offensive*  
*Warr be-*  
*come defen-*  
*sive by a*  
*Fundamen-*  
*tal Law.*

They call their Emperour *Tie'neu*, that is, Son of Heaven, or Son of God; not that they believe him descended from Heaven, but being the chiefest of men, they look on him as a gift of Heaven, and a person dear to the Gods. He assumes to himself the quality of *Hoang*, which signifies Emperour of dirt or earth, so to be distinguished, from *Xanbi*, who is the great Emperour of the Universe. They say, that he who first took the name of *Hoangtibir* lived many ages before the birth of our Saviour, and that his successors were desirous to continue the same name, as they did who succeeded *Julius Caesar* in the Empire.

*The Crown*  
*hereditary.*

That dignity is hereditary in the Family of him who now Reigns, so as that the eldest Son only succeeds him, the younger brothers being wholly excluded, who yet have the Title of King, and a Royal retinue, with some City of their demean, where they are lodg'd and treated as Kings, but have so little Authority, that the Governour who hath it wholly himself, suffers them not so much as to go out of the City, nay, lets them have their allowance but quarterly, lest having it paid in altogether, they might employ it in making friends, to the disturbance of the Publick.

*The Coun-*  
*cel of State.*

The Council of State consists of twelve Councillours and a President, who next the King, hath most Authority. Besides this, there are in the City of *Xuntien* six other Councillours, to wit, one for the administration of Justice, which they call *Lyp'u*. The second, for the Revenue, which they call *Hup'u*. The third, for Ceremonies, which are essential in that Kingdom, and is also called *Lyp'u*. The fourth for Military Affairs, and is called *Pingp'u*. The fifth for publick Structures, called *Cungp'u*. And the sixth for criminal affairs, called *Hingp'u*. The Councillours employed in these Counsels, deliberate about those things whereof they are to take Cognizance, and come to some resolution; but they neither publish nor execute any thing without the Emperours express permission, who reserves the decision thereof to himself, as indeed he doth that of all other affairs of the Kingdom.

Once in three years he sends Visitors into all the Provinces, who particularly inquire into the lives and actions of the Governours, and the state of the Provinces; whereof they make him a faithful report; and by this means he perfectly knows what is done all over the Kingdom, though he never stirs out of his place.

The members of that Council of State which they call *Colao*, or *Caifang*, that is, Auxiliary Governours, or Ministers of State, are all Philosophers, and most of them well skill'd in Astrology, inasmuch as it is expected they should fore-see the Events of things, not only by the help of civil Prudence, but also by the course of the Stars, which they think more infallible, than those of reason grounded on experience. The President of this Council, and in his absence, the most ancient Councillour, reports to the King the debates of the Council, speaking to him on his knees, and looking down to the ground, never lifting up his eyes, though the audience should last two hours.

All the Provinces of *China* have a Viceroy, whom they call *Comou*, only *Peking* and *Nanking* excepted, which are Royal Provinces, and have only Governours, whom they call *Insuanto's*, and are as King's Lieutenants, inasmuch as they have the chief Authority in the Province next the Viceroy, yet each within his own jurisdiction, which extends only over the great Cities, where they reside, and the lesser ones which depend on them. These last have also their Governours, whom they call *Tutum*, and the *Portuguez*, *Mandorines*.

They call him who is receiver of the King's Revenue in a Province, *Ponchasi*; him who commands the Soldiery thereof, *Toloc*; The President for the Administration of Justice, *Anchasi*, and the chief of a Council of War *Ayao*. All these Officers have their several Councils, who all meet in the Vice-roys Palace, who takes Cognizance of all Affairs passed therein; and if they be of importance, he sends an Express to give notice thereof to the President of the Council of State.

The most eminent persons next the President, whom they call *Colao*, are the *Cantoc*, that is, the chief Standard-bearer; the *Pochin*, or receiver of the Kings Revenue; the *Pochinsy*, or Lord-keeper of the Great-Seal; and the *Autzat*, who is the chief Judge of the City.

Under this last, there are three Lieutenants, whereof one is called *Hutay*, another, *Tziz*, and the third, *Toutoy*, who sit in Judgment once a week at their own houses, and appoint Commissioners, who have their settled quarters, consisting each of a thousand houses. This is particularly observable, that the Commissioner hath no Authority in the street where he lives, lest he should be byassed in his Judgment by any consideration of neighbour-hood, whence it also comes, that no man is made Vice-roy, Governour or Judge in his own Country, but he is sent to remote Provinces, where he hath no relations.

The Officers are changed every three years, and from the day of their departure from Court, or the place of their ordinary Habitation, the King defrayes all their Charges, leaving it to their choice, whether they will take their allowance in provision or money. While they continue in their employment, they are lodg'd and treated at the Kings charge, and there are lodg'd near the Judges in the same house, the Clerks, Door-keepers, and all the other Officers belonging to their charge, who are also maintain'd and paid by the King, that they may take no bribes or gratifications from the parties.

They are so circumpect in all their proceedings, that there is no Judge but so strictly examines all particulars, as not to fear any reproach of neglect. Debtours are treated with so great rigour, that such as are not able to satisfy their Creditors, had rather be sold to them than endure the cruel fustigations, in the midst whereof, some, who are of a more delicate Constitution, many times expire.

The course taken for the discovery of Crimes, and to prevent several other disorders, is admirable. The Judges coming to the place of their residence, cause a List to be taken of all the houses within their jurisdiction, and having distributed them into Decads, they set a bill on every tenth house, injoyning the Inhabitants to discover such of their Decad as they know hath committed any crimes, upon pain of being responsible for the same themselves; as also to give notice of such of their Decad, as remove from their houses, or intend any great journey, that they may be oblig'd to pay their debts, before they leave the quarter.

They have no mercy on Criminals, yet is there not any person Executed, till the crime be made so apparent, that the criminal can alledge nothing for himself. They endeavour to get out the truth by fair means, and never order any to be tortured, but upon very great presumptions; but then they do it cruelly.

They put their fingers between two sticks, two fingers broad and better, through the ends whereof they draw a strong pack-thred, which they bind so hard, that they break the bones, and make the nails come off. Another torture they have is, to put the feet between

1639. two boards, much after the same manner, as in some parts of *Europe*, they put the Leggs into boots full of hot oyle, save that, there the feet are tormented, and here the leggs.

*Prisons.* Every great City hath several Prisons, which are very strictly kept, but have belonging to them Courts, Gardens, Ponds, and Walks for the divertisement of such as are detained there for slight offences. They have also drinking-houses, for the convenience of the Prisoners, and Shops, wherein are sold such things as the Prisoners make, in order to their better subsistence.

The Sentence of death is not executed till the King hath confirmed it; nay, even that had, it is done with so many Ceremonies, that unless the heynousness of the Crime cry for Vengeance very loud, there are more Condemn'd persons languish in the Prisons, then die by the hand of the Executioner. For there is no Execution, but in presence of the chief Judge of the Province, or Visitor, who being come to the place, calls for the Indictments of such as stand condemned to die, and examine them, and thereupon either confirms or repeals the sentence of the ordinary Judge. Of those whose Sentence is confirm'd, he takes fifty of the greatest offenders, and orders the Goaler to prepare them for their execution. Yet are they not brought out of the Prison, till they are once more examined; and if they can alledge any receivable excuse, they are shut up again, and then they discharge the great Guns, to shew that they are going to Execution. But before they are brought to the place of punishment, they are examined once more, and the Judge presses them to think of themselves, and to find out some pretence that might oblige him to defer it. If they have nothing to alledge, he orders so many Guns to be fired, as there are persons to be executed. Being come to the place of execution, they are set upon heaps of Ashes, where they have somewhat given them to eat, and then begins the last examination: but if, that over, they have no excuse, the Guns are discharged the third time, and the execution is compleated.

*Their punishments.* Their punishments are, to hang up, to empale, to burn; but this last is only for such as are guilty of high Treason.

*That of Thieves.* They have a particular punishment for Thieves. For as they detest Theft above all Crimes, so is its punishment attended with more infamy then the others. They lay the Malefactor upon his belly, with his hands tied behind him, and in that posture, two executioners beat him with all their might upon the calf of the Leg, with great Canes moistned in water, which is so painful a chastisement, that most of the wretches die under their hands. The Judges are present at these executions; but that they may not be moved to compassion, which the Condemned would never be the better for, they spend their time in gaming and drinking, and stop their ears against their cries.

*The Visitors.* But that Governours and Judges may not abuse their power, they are obliged not only to give an account of their actions, at the expiration of their Commissions, before Judges appointed for that purpose, whom they call *Chenes*; but also the King sends into the Provinces a Visitor, whom they call *Leaches*. He goes into the Province *incognito*, takes an exact and secret information of the Actions of the Officers, and having gone round the Province, comes up near the Metropolis of it, towards the time that all the Officers of the Province meet there, which is once a month; he sends to the Viceroy and the Assembly to open the Gate to him, that he may come and acquaint them with the King's pleasure. This message discovers his quality, and yet when he goes into the Assembly, he hath his Commission carried open before him; and as soon as it is read, the Viceroy comes out of his place, and the other Judges out of their seats, and do reverence to the Visitor, who having taken the Viceroy's place, commends those who have done their duty, and tells them, he shall not fail to report the same to his Majesty.

Then turning to those whom he hath found Delinquent, he reproves them, deprives them of the Marks of Magistracy, which are the Hat and Girdle, suspends, or absolutely dispossesses them of their charges, and puts others into them. It is in his power to advance to the greatest dignities such as he judges capable thereof, to brand with infamy those who have neglected their duty, nay, to punish them, but not with death; inasmuch as the Emperour only is Master of the lives of his Subjects.

*The Religion of the Chineses.* As to the Religion of the *Chineses*, it may be said to be *Pagan*, though from the figure of one of their principal Divinities, it might be imagined that they have heretofore had some apprehensions of *Christianity*, and some would infer, that three Heads, which they make coming out of the Body of one of their Idols, represent the *blessed Trinity*, which makes the first and greatest Mystery of *Christian* Religion. They adde hereto, that *St. Thomas* the Apostle Preached the Gospel in *China*, and that there are some Pictures to be found there, wherein may be seen men dressed and shaped as the Apostles are painted among us, and that some have seen their Images representing the *blessed Virgin*, holding the

the Saviour of the World in her Armes. But these are only chimerical imaginations, since that, setting aside the establishments which the *Portuguez* and *Spaniards* have made there some years since, there is not the least track to be seen of the Ancient *Christian* Religion. 1639.

They affirm that all things, visible and invisible, were made by Heaven. And this they express by the first Letter of their Alphabet. They also believe that the Heaven governs the Universe by a Vicegerent, whom they call *Laocon Tzautey*. For him it is they have the greatest veneration next the Sun, and say, it is an eternal Spirit, who was not created. They have the same opinion of another Divinity, whom they call *Cansay*, and to whom they Attribute an absolute power over all Sublunary things. To these three Spirits, they add three principal Ministers, whom they call *Tanquam*, *Teiquam*, and *Tzu-iquam*, whereof the first presides over the Air, and makes it rain; another, over the generation of Men and other Animals, and the production of Fruits; and the third hath the government of the Sea. They also canonize some, whose lives have been eminent for Sanctity, or otherwise, and call them *Pausaos*, that is, Saints; but they do not render them the same Honours they do the Gods before mentioned, or yet the three following Saints, who are also in great veneration among them. Their Divinities.

The first they call *Sichia*, who came into *China* out of the Kingdom of *Toungking*, and is Founder of all the Religious Orders of both Sexes, which are at present in the Kingdom, and whereof there are very great numbers, living in perpetual celibate, and inhabiting in Monasteries. Three China Saints.

The second is called *Quanina*, a Female Saint, and, as they affirm, was the third Daughter of King *Tzonton*, who having married his two elder Daughters, would also have this embrace the same kind of life. But this Princess having made a Vow of Chastity, would not hear of Marriage, and upon that account lost her Fathers favour, who shut her up in a place, where her employment was, to carry Wood and Water, and to weed a great Garden whereof she had the keeping. They have great Legends of the Life of this Saint, and relate several stories of her; among others, that the Apes of the neighbouring Forrest came thither, and carried Water for her; that the Birds weeded the Garden for her; and that several other Creatures brought the wood she was obliged to fetch. The Father imagining this was done by his Daughter's witchcraft, caused the house to be fired, which the Princess seeing, and considering that it was for her sake, would have cut her own throat, with a string of hair; but she immediately found the fire put out by a great shower which then fell, whereupon she went thence and retired into the Deserts of the neighbouring Mountain. The King's impiety was punished with the Leprosie, which spread it self over all his body, wherein it bred so many Worms, that he had been devoured by them, if the Daughter, upon notice given her of it by a voice from Heaven, had not relieved him. The misery he endured had raised in him a great remorse of Conscience; so that finding himself recovered by his Daughter's intercession, he fell down on his knees before her, begg'd her pardon for what was past, and would have adored her, but she refused those honours: yet so as that, it not being in her power to avoid them, she set an Idol before her, and returned to the Desert, whence she came only to cure her Father. She dyed there, and, by an extraordinary austerity of life, acquired so great a reputation of sanctity, that they still honour her with a Religious worship, invoke her, and beg her intercession for the remission of sins. The Fable of Quanina

They have yet a third Saint, of the same Sex, whom they call *Neoma*; and affirm, The Fable of Neoma, she was a Daughter of a Prince of the City of *Yocheu*, in the Province of *Huquang*. The aversion she had conceived against Marriage, obliged her to retire into the Island of *Ingoa*, where they say she wrought many Miracles. They relate, among others, that a Lord named *Compo*, having received orders from the King to go along with a Fleet which lay ready to set sail, it was not in the power of the Mariners to weigh the Anchors. *Compo* was so surpris'd at the accident, that he would needs see himself what might be the cause of it. He found *Neoma* sitting on the Anchor belonging to the Admiral. He told her, the King had commanded him to go and make a War in one of the neighbouring Provinces, and entreated her not to oppose his Design. She made answer, that she would contribute to his gaining the Victory he promised himself in that Expedition, if he would take her along with him: which he was the more inclinable to do, in regard he already knew her by reputation. Accordingly, the Army was no sooner come in sight of the Enemies Countrey, but she dissolved the Charm, whereby the Inhabitants had made all the Sea look as if it had been on fire, and forced the Enemies to render themselves up at mercy. *Compo* thought at first it had been an illusion; whereupon he would have a stronger assurance of *Neoma's* power, and told her, he should make no further question of

1639. of her sanctity, if she could make the stick he had in his hand to flourish, and wax green again; which she did. *Compo* planted his stick at the stern of his Ship, and openly acknowledged, that all the success of his Arms was to be attributed to *Neoma*; and thence it comes, they say, that the *Chineses* set this *Neoma* at the Sterns of their Ships, and make their Addresses to her, for the prosperity of their Voyages.

The *Chineses* use incantations. They express little Devotion and respect for their Idols. For being extremely addicted to consult Incantations and Charms, in all their affairs of great Importance, in so much that they will not undertake a journey, nor marry, nor indeed do any business of consequence, till they have consulted them. If they prove not according to their expectations, they rail at their Gods, call them Dogs, and reproach them with all baseness. But when their indignation is a little over, they change their reproaches into flattery and kindness, ask them pardon, promise them what they least intend to perform, and then return to their Incantations again. If they are otherwise answered then before, they flatter and praise their Gods; but if they are still threatned with misfortune, they give them both ill words and blows, throw them down, tread upon them, beat them, drag them into the dirt, burn them with a candle, or whip them, till the Spell favours them, and then they offer to them Ducks, Geese, Poultry, boild Rice, &c. Their great Sacrifices consist of offering to their Gods the head of a boild Hog, adorn'd with flowers and leaves, and a Jar of Wine.

How they do it.

Their way of Incantation is performed by two pieces of Wood, about the bigness of a Wall-nut, whereof one side is flat, the other round, like a half bowl. These they cast upon the ground, and if it happen that both, or one fall so as that the round side be downwards, they take it for a very ill omen; but they cast them so often, that they must at last fall as they would have them. Another way they have, and that is, by casting into a Pot several pieces of Wood, each whereof hath a certain Character upon it, and they have them drawn out by a Child; and as they are taken out, they turn over a Book, till they come to a Page that begins with the Character drawn out of the Pot, and they accommodate the words they find in the Page, to the thing whereof they would know the event by the said drawing out of the Characters.

They invoke the Devil.

They also invoke the Devil; and the gestures of those who are employed in these Invocations are such, as a man would say they were really possessed; nay, there have been some *Christians* so simple as to believe it.

Their belief concerning the Creation.

The *Chineses* believe, that the Heavens, the Earth, and Water, have been from all eternity, but that heretofore they were so confounded together, that it must be the work of a Divinity to reduce them into order. They call the God who did this, *Tayn*, and affirm that, in the beginning, he, of nothing, created a man whom he called *Panzon*, and a woman, whom he namens *Panzona*; That *Panzon*, in like manner, of nothing, created another man, named *Tanbom*, and his thirteen brethren, and that this *Tanbom* was so learned, that he gave names to all things that were Created: That *Tanbom* and his brethren had diverse Children, but particularly that the second, whom they call *Teyencom*, had twelve sons, and that his eldest, whose name was *Tubucum*, had nine: That their Race hath lived upon the Earth above ninety thousand years; but that, at last, *Tayn* kill'd all the Males for their Rebellion: That at that time, the heaven fell, but that *Tayn* raised it again, and created another man, named *Lotzuzen*, who had two horns in his forehead, out of which came forth a pleasant scent, from whence were begotten males and females, and that all now alive are descended from *Lotzuzan*, who, as they affirm, lived nine hundred years: That the Heaven begot also another man, named *Atzion*, by a very extraordinary production, inasmuch as his Mother, whom they call *Lutim*, was got with child, by looking on the head of the Lyon in the Zodiack, and that she was brought to bed in the City of *Tengcheu*, in the Province of *Xantung*: That many Ages afterwards; one named *Vsao* taught Architecture, and began to build houses, and make cloathes: That *Huntzui*, his successor, found out fire, and taught people how to boil and roast meat, as also how to buy, and sell, and make contracts: That a woman named *Hautzibon*, had conceived, by setting her foot in the step of a man, and brought forth *Ochenteu*, who first made marriages, and invented several musical instruments: That *Ezonlom*, his Son, was the first Teacher of Medicine and Judiciary Astrology, and the first who made use of the Plough and the Spade. They affirm also, that he was wont to feed on a Sallad of seven of the most venomous Herbs could be found, and that instead of receiving any harm thereby, it kept him alive four hundred years, and that he left a son, from whom are descended all the ancient Kings of *China*.

They believe the Immortality of the Soul.

They believe the Immortality of the Soul, and affirm that the Heaven communicates its Eternity thereto, and that, after this Life, it shall enjoy eternal bliss, or be eternally tormented, according to the good or evil done in this World, They

They believe also a kind of Purgatory, and that there is a certain place, where Souls are to be cleansed from the impurities they derived from the bodies which they had informed; and that, as to this particular, the Suffrages of their Friends and Relations may procure them some refreshment. Whence it comes, that, in *August*, they have a Day appointed for Prayers and supplications to be made for the Deceased: but instead of performing these Ceremonies in their *Pagodés*, they do them in the private Houses of such as are inclined to this kind of Devotion: To that end, three of their Religious men go to the House appointed, and exhort the Family to make the Prayers requisite for the purging of those sins which obstruct the Beatitude of their deceased Relations. Of these three Religious men, one carries a little Drum; another certain Images; and the third, a small Bell. Having set the Images upon the Altar, they Incense them, while in the mean time some others are busied in setting, on five or six Tables, certain Dishes of Meat, for the Saints and Souls of the Deceased, and that done, they fall a-dancing, and singing certain Hymns, which the younger of the Religious men writes down on Paper, and afterwards lays on the Altar. As soon as he is returned to his place, they fall a-singing again, till such time as he who says the Service strikes his Image against the Table, whereto the others answer with their heads, and that done, they burn the Images before the Altar. Having spent the night in this kind of Devotion, which is not begun till after Sun set, the Religious men, and those of the House make good cheer with what they find on the Tables, and had been set there for the spirits of the other World: and thus they procure the purgation of the Souls departed.

Most of them do also believe the Transmigration of Souls, but few speak of it with any rational ground. And Me-  
tempy-  
chosis.

They have four Orders of Religious men, whereof some are clad in black, some in white, and some in a dark grey. Every Order hath its General, whom they call *Tricon*, who lives in the City of *Xuntien*. He hath under him Provincials, who make Visitations within their several Jurisdictions, to see that there be an observance of Discipline, and that there be no remission of the rigour required by the Rules of the Order. These have also the nomination of Superiours and Guardians in the several Monasteries. The General continues in that dignity as long as he lives, and when he dies, the King names his successour, making choice of him among those who are most deserving. He is cloth'd in Silk, but of the same colour as is worn by the Religious men of the Order, and never goes out of his own house, without a retinue of four Religious men, who carry him in an Ivory Chair, upon their shoulders. He hath a particular Seal for such affairs as concern his Order, and his Religious men never speak to him but on their knees. The King allows him what may keep a plentiful house, and contributes also to the subsistence of the Monks in the Monasteries; and if they want any thing, it is supplied by the liberality of private persons. The Religious men are all clad in serge, and all after the same fashion, save that they are distinguished by the colour. They all shave their heads and beards. They use beads, and say their Mattens and other Offices, much after the same manner as our Monks in *Europe* do. Those who enter into the Monastery make a feast for all the Monks; but the eldest Son of a Family is not permitted to take the habit; in regard the Laws of the Kingdom forbid it, and would have him to be the comfort and support of the weak and decrepit age of his Father. Their vows are not indispensable, but they may quit the Monastery, and marry. Their Re-  
ligious men

The *Chineses* observe at their Funerals the following Ceremonies. As soon as any person is deceased, they wash the body, put about him his best cloathes well perfum'd, and set him in the biggest Chair they can find in the house: That done, the Wife, Children, Brothers, Sisters, and afterwards all the Relations, kneel down before him, and take their leave of him. That Ceremony over, they put him into a Coffin of sweet-wood well closed, and set him upon a Table, or two tressels, and they cover him with a Hearse-cloath, reaching down to the ground, upon which they draw the Picture of the deceased. They leave him in that posture fifteen days, during which time, in some other Chamber or Hall, there stand constantly set on a Table, Wine, Fruit, and two wax Torches lighted, for the Priests, who spend the night there in singing and praying, according to their way; but especially in making divers enchantments against the evil Spirits, and in burning several Images, and fastning others to the Hearse-cloath, which covers the Coffin, which Images they ever and anon move with their hands, thinking they by that means force the Soul to Heaven. The fifteen days being over, the body is carryed into the Country, where the Priests interr it, and commonly plant a Pine-tree neer the Sepulchre; whence it comes, that they have a particular veneration for that Tree. Funeral Ce-  
remonies.

**1639.** Their mourning is austere enough. Sons continue it for a whole year, and sometimes two, during which time, they are clad in a coarse cloth, cover their heads with a Hat of the same, and tie about their upper Garment with a cord. Nay, some quit the publick employments they have, with the Kings consent, and ever after live privately. Remote kindred go in mourning for some months, and friends put it not off till the body be laid in the ground.

**The present State of China.** From what we said before concerning the Wall which divides *China*, from *Tartary*, it may well be infer'd that the *Chineses* have a dreadful enemy beyond it. It must indeed be acknowledged, that though we have not any Author that hath given a pertinent account of the Eastern part of *Tartary*, which reaches from little *Tartary*, and the Kingdom of *Cascar*, to the Eastern Sea, and the Straights of *Anian* above *Japan*, yet have we it for certain, that out of those parts, and the Kingdoms of *Samabania*, *Taniulth*, *Ninche*, *Niulhin*, &c. came those Nations who over-ran several Provinces of *Europe*, and in a manner all *Asia*, under *Tamerlaine*; and under other Chiefs, possessed themselves of the Kingdom of *China*.

**The Tartars possessed of China.** For in the year 1206, the *Tartars*, whom the *Chineses* called *Tata*, because they do not pronounce the Letter *R*. entred *China* with a powerful Army, and after a War of seventy two years became Masters of it, forc'd thence the Princes of the house of *Sung*, which then Reign'd, and were peaceably possess'd of the whole Countrey, for the space of near seventy years, till a certain Priest's servant named *Chu*, considering that the savageness of the *Tartars* was much abated by the delights of *China*, undertook a War against them, and forc'd them out of *China* in the year, 1368. The aversion the *Chineses* had to be governed by a foreign power soon prevail'd with them to become subject to *Chu*, who assumed the quality of *Hugnus*, that is, Great Warriour; and was the first of the Royal Family of *Teyming*, which reign'd in *China* even to our days.

**And forced thence.** *Chu* not thinking it enough to have forc'd the *Tartars* out of the Kingdom of *China*, entred with an Army into that of *Ninche*, whither the *Tartars* were retreated, and forc'd them to acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Emperour of *China*, and to pay him Tribute.

The *Tartars* divided themselves into seven Colonies, which warred one against the other, till they were reduced into one State, under the name of the Kingdom of *Ninche*, about the year 1600.

**The beginning of the Tartarian War.** About that time Raign'd in *China*. *Vanlie*, who had succeeded his Father in the Empire, in the year 1573. and lived in an absolute peace, when the Governours of the Frontiers, conceiving some jealousy at the great powerfulness of the *Tartars*, would needs hinder their Merchants from trading into *China*, oppos'd the match, which the King of *Ninche* would have made between his Daughter, and the King of *Tanyu*, took him and killed him. The King of *Nyuche*'s son, desirous to revenge his Fathers Death, rais'd an Army, pass'd over the great wall, entred *China* in the year 1616. and took the City of *Gyven*, whence he writ, in very respectful terms, to *Vanlie*, who was then living, and represent'd to him the injury had been done him by the Governours of the Frontiers, proffring to deliver up the City, and go out of the Kingdom, upon condition his complaints might be heard, and Justice done him. *Vanlie*, instead of reflecting on the Justice of this demand, returned the business to the Council of State, where it was not thought fit so much as to answer his Letters. The *Tartar*, on the other side, was so incens'd at this slighting of his Proposals, that he vow'd to sacrifice two hundred Thousand *Chineses* to the *Muses* of his Father.

**Take the Metropolis of Leatung.** Accordingly, having taken the City of *Leaoyang* by assault, though the Metropolis of the Province of *Leaotung*, he put all the *Chineses* to death. He afterwards took the City of *Quamning*, and entred with his Army into the Province of *Peking*. But fearing to be shut up there by the *Chineses*, who had got a vast Army together, he returned to *Leaoyang*, where he caus'd new Fortifications to be made, and there assumed the quality of *Thienming*, and was call'd Emperour of *China*, though he were possess'd only of *Leaotung*; which is so inconsiderable a place, as that it is not so much as number'd among the Provinces of that Kingdom.

This happened in the year 1618. The year following, 1619. the *Chineses*, who had got together an Army of six hundred thousand fighting men, gave battel to the *Tartars*; but they were defeated, and lost, besides the fifty thousand men kill'd upon the place, most of their best Commanders. Upon this Victory, the *Tartars* entred the Province of *Peking*, where they took and ransack'd all; nay would have set upon the City of *Xuntien*, where the Emperour was then in person, had they not been prevented by the Garrison, which consisted of twenty thousand men.

Amidst these distractions, *Vanlie* dies, in the year 1620. *Tayokang*, his Son, succeeded him

him; but he reigning only four moneths, left the Scepter to *Tbienki*, who proved so fortunate, as to force away the *Tartars*, not only out of the Cities they had taken in *Peking*, but also out of *Leaotung*, and all the Province of *Leaoyang*, where their cruelties had made their Government very odious and burthensom. But he enjoyed not long the fruits of that Victory. For the *Tartar* having set all things in order at home, sent into *China* an Army of eighty thousand Horse, which he followed with another Body, and retook the City of *Leaoyang* by assault, there having been before an Engagement between them, wherein both sides had fought very resolutely, for the space of fourty hours.

There were killed in the said Engagement 20000. of the *Tartars*, who were so startled at that resistance, that having fighting work elsewhere, cut them out by *Maovenlung*, General of the *Chinese* Army, even in *Leaotung*, things continued in that posture till the year 1625.

In the said year 1625. they assaulted the City of *Ningiven*, which the *Chinese* had fortified, but were forc'd back, with the loss of ten thousand men, and among others the King of *Tartary's* Son, who to express his resentment of that misfortune, pass'd over with his Army into the Island of *Thaoyven*, where the *Tartars* put all the Garrison to the Sword, but made no further progress.

In the year 1627. died *Tbienki*, Emperour of *China*, and *Tbienning*, King of the *Tartars*. The former was succeeded by *Zungchini* his Brother; the other, by *Tbienzung*, his Son, who taking a different course from his Fathers, and changing his cruelty into mildness, endeavoured by that means to prevail with the *Chinese*, whom he could not overcome by force. Yet was it not either the prudence of *Tbienzung*, or the courage of the *Tartars*, but the disloyalty of the *Chinese*, and the treachery of their Commanders, which proved the final ruine of the Kingdom.

For *Zunchini*, perceiving that the Army which he had sent into *Corea* had been defeated, though the *Tartars* had lost on their side above fifty thousand men, and that he had some ground to fear a Civil War, bestowed the command of an Army on one named *Yuen*, empowering him withall to make a peace with the *Tartars*. This Traytor having received money from the Enemy, took off *Maovenlung* by poyson, and concluded so disadvantageous a Treaty with them, that the Emperour refused to ratifie it. This pretended affront proved the destruction of *Yuen*, who still continued his intelligence with the *Tartars*; but *Zungchini*, having discovered his Treachery, ordered him to be cut in pieces, which was done in the year 1630.

Ever after that time, the *Tartars* only made incursions into the neighbouring Provinces: but *Tbienzung*, King of *Tartary*, dying in the year 1636. *Zungte*, his Son, (who had been brought up in his infancy in *China*, where the manner of living of that Country had been infill'd into him) succeeded him, and by his liberality corrupted most of the Governours and *Chinese* Commanders, who thereupon sided with him; especially when they saw that the distractions which then shook the State, wherein there were eight Armies of *Tories*, or common Rogues, at the same time, were absolutely contrary to the preservation of the Kingdom.

These Armies were disposed, in the year 1641. under two Generals, whereof one was called *Licungzo*, the other *Chanchienchung*, who divided the Provinces between them, so as that the former had the command in *Xensi* and *Honan*, and the other, in *Suchuen* and *Huquang*. *Licungzo* having taken in the chief Cities of these two Provinces, assumed the quality of King, and would be called *Xunnuang*, that is, the fortunate King; and hoping to become Master of the whole Empire, would needs have the Title of Emperour, and that his Family should have the name of *Tbienxun*, that is, obedient to Heaven. And indeed Heaven seem'd to comply with his perfidiousness, by the intrigues which in the mean time were carried on at Court, where all the Grandees were divided into Factionous, through the means of a Favourite, of whom we shall here take occasion to say somewhat.

Under the Reign of *Tbienki*, there was, at Court, an Eunuch, named *Guei*, who was so much in favour with the Emperour, that the latter call'd the other Father. This man, who had been raised to that greatness, in a manner from the Dunghill, abused his Authority, and made his Ministry odious, by the ill treatment they received from him, who had too much courage to become his Courtiers and Adorers. He was so impudent, as to declare himself against the Prince, who was looked upon as Heir apparent to the Crown, in as much as *Tbienki* had no Children, and to oppose his establishment after the Emperours death. This Prince was *Zungchini*, whom we spoke of before, and of whom we shall have occasion to speak hereafter. He prov'd so fortunate as to elude the Artifices of the Eunuch, and got the Crown on his Head, without much contestation, but he had not so

1639.  
Vanlie dies  
and succeeded by  
Tayohang  
He by Thienki.  
Who forces  
away the  
Tartars.  
But they  
re-enter  
Leaotung.

Take the  
Isle of  
Thaoyuen

The Kings  
of China,  
and Tartary  
dye.

The Chinese  
betray their  
Country.

Thienzung King  
of Tartary  
dies.



1639. much power as to smother the Factions, into which the Court was divided by the intrigues of the Favourite. As soon as he came to the Crown, he gave the Eunuch a Commission, very honourable in appearance, but in effect very fatal to him; for he commanded him to go and visit the Sepulchres of his Ancestors, and to give order there should be nothing amiss about them: but as soon as he was gone from Peking, Zunchini sent after him a Messenger, who presented him with a gilt Box, wherein there was a Silken Halter, and told him, that the Emperour had commanded him to bring an account of his death. But this Execution reconciled not those who had engaged either for or against him, during his life, and the aversion which the Emperour openly expressed towards his Abettors, only augmented the number of discontented and treacherous persons, which were on both sides; in so much that most of the Grandees, minding only their private Affairs, they either neglected sending the relief which the Governours of the Provinces required against the Tartars, or maliciously dissembled the need they stood in thereof: and by that means, the Rebels had time to make sure work on their side.

*Lizungzo* so well knew how to make his Advantages of these Distractions, that, having settled all things relating to the Province of *Xenfi*, he without any obstruction crossed the River *Hoangh*, or *Croceus*, and entered the Province of *Xanfi*, where he took the great and rich City of *Kiangchen*. The other Cities of the same Province afterwards came in, save only that of *Thaiyuen*, which was taken by storm, and plunder'd. The Emperour, hearing that the Rebels had passed the River *Hoangh*, and fearing they might beset him in the City of *Xun tien*, would have retreated to *Nanking*; but he was persuaded to the contrary by his Council, it being the intention of some by that means to keep up the reputation of his Armes, of others, to deliver him up to *Lizungzo*; so that he sent against the Rebels a powerful Army, under the Command of the *Colao*, or President of the Council, who prov'd so unfortunate in his business, that, out of despair, he hung himself.

*Lizungzo*, who had his Correspondents in the City of *Peking*, or *Xun tien*, understanding how things stood at Court, sent some of his people into the City, who, under pretence of keeping a Tavern, or opening Shops for Mercery, were to make a Rising, when they heard the Army was advanced near the City. Some affirm, he had corrupted him who had the Command of the City, and that by his Order he found one of the Gates open, at which he entered it, in April 1644. and afterwards became Master of the Palace, before the Emperour had any notice of his coming. The Traitors, who had kept him from hearing of it, prevented him also from getting away: so that perceiving *Lizungzo* was possessed of all the Avenues of the Castle, and thinking it too great a dishonour to submit to the Commander of a sort of Robbers, he with his own hands kill'd an only Daughter he had, so to secure her honour, which she could not have kept with her life; and going into the Garden, he took off one of his Garters, and hung himself at a Plum-tree. The *Colao*, the Queen, and some of his Eunuchs, followed his example, and hung themselves in the same Garden. *Zunchini* left three Sons, whereof the two youngest had their Heads cut off, three dayes after the Fathers death, but the eldest vanish'd, and could not be found, notwithstanding all the diligence *Lizungzo* used to get some account of him.

I shall forbear giving a relation of all the executions which this barbarous person ordered in the City, where he put all the Officers to death; only this I cannot omit, that, among others Persons of Quality, there was an ancient man named *Us*, whose Son commanded the Chinese Army upon the Frontiers of *Leaotung*. *Lizungzo* sent order to this *Us*, that he should write to his Son, to this effect, That if he with his Army would acknowledge him Emperour of *China*, he would divide Fortunes with him; threatening, if he did it not, to put him to death. The Father writ to *Usanguai*, so was his Son called, in such terms, as he might infer from them what condition he was in: but the Son generously made him answer, that he could not own him for a Father, who had been unfaithful to his King; and that if he had so base a Soul as to advise him to be a Traitor, he, for his part, had one so loyal, as to persist in the resolution he had taken, rather to die than obey a Highway-man. Whereupon *Usanguai* immediately sent to the Tartars, to desire them to joyn, and march along with him against that Usurper. The Tartar thought it not amiss to make his advantage of the opportunity he then had, to get into the Heart of the Kingdom, and so marched with his Forces against *Lizungzo*.

This lewd Villain, who had put so many innocent persons to death, trembled at the first notice he received of the March of the Tartars, left the City of *Xun tien*, and retreated into the Province of *Xenfi*, intending to establish the Seat of his pretended Empire at the City of *Sigan*. The Tartars pursued him to the River *Croceus*, or *Hoangh*, defeated

part

*Lizungzo*  
enter. the  
Province of  
*Xanfi*.

Takes the  
City of Pe-  
king.

A Chinese  
calls the  
Tartars to  
his relief  
against the  
Rebels.

*Lizungzo*  
flies

part of the Rear-guard, and had the Plunder of some part of the Baggage, in which were all the Riches which the Emperours of *China*, of the House of *Tayming*, had been two hundred and eighty years getting together. 1639.

The *Tartars* would not cross the River, as well because they would secure the Conquest of the Province of *Peking*, as for that they were without any Prince, ever since the death of *Zungie*, who died when the Army began to march out of the Province of *Lezotung*. He had left only one Son, about six years of age, whom he had recommended to the tuition of the eldest of his three Brethren, who proved so faithful to his trust, that the *Tartars* gave him the name of *Amaban*, that is, Father-King.

*Usanguei*, finding the Province of *Peking* and the Metropolis thereof deliver'd of those Robbers, would have requited the service the *Tartars* had done *China*, and obliged the Foreigners to leave the Kingdom. But he who commanded the *Tartarian* Army told him, that it was too soon to talk of any such thing as yet; that *Lizungzo* was still alive, and might re-enter *Peking*; that there was a necessity of ruining him, so as that it should be impossible for him to recover himself; and that *Usanguei* should go himself with his Army, and some of the *Tartarian* Force, against the Usurper, and put the Rebels to an absolute Defeat. The Tartars will not go out of China.

As soon as the *Tartars* were intreated by *Usanguei* to come into *China*, they sent to invite all the other *Tartars*, from the Eastern Sea to the River *Wolga*, to come and participate of their Conquests; in so much that no Colony of them but sent in some Forces, which coming into *China*, brought along with them that young *Tartar* King, the Son of *Zungie*. As soon as he was come, the *Tartars* discover'd what their intentions were; for they settled him upon the Throne, and caused him to be proclaimed Emperour of *China*, under the Regency of the eldest of his Uncles. He took the name of *Xunchi*, and ordered his Family to be called *Taicing*; and they say, that young Prince made so sensible a discourse at his inauguration, as very much startled those who heard it, and expected no such thing from one so young. And proclaim their King Emperour of China.

The same day that these Ceremonies were performed at *Peking*, they sent away some *Tartarian* Regiments, with Orders to establish *Usanguei* King, to give him the quality of *Pingsi*, that is, Pacifier of the West, and that he should reside in the Province of *Xensfi*. He was the more inclinable to accept what was proffer'd him, since there was no other choice to make; for as to *Lizungzo*, it could never be known, what became of that Villain. Usanguei made King.

*Usanguei's* declaring himself satisfied with what had been proffer'd him by the *Tartars*, facilitated their Conquest of the Provinces of *Peking*, *Xansfi*, *Xensfi*, and *Xantung*, which they possessed themselves of in less than a years time, and settled themselves therein, allowing the Inhabitants their Laws, Magistrates, and manner of life, and reserving only to themselves military employments, and the defence of places.

In the interim, the Southerly Provinces had raised a powerful Army, which they sent to the Emperours relief: but upon the first news brought them of the reduction of *Peking*, and the death of *Zungchini*, they remanded their Army, with all the Boats, which carried the yearly Provisions and Contributions to the Court; and hearing of the Invasion of the *Tartars*, they proceeded to the election of another Emperour, of the House of *Tai-ming*, whom they called *Hungquang*, Nephew to *Vanlie*, and Cousin to *Zungchini*. This man began his Reign with a solemn Embassy which he sent to the *Tartars*, to demand a Peace, and to proffer them the Northerly Provinces of the Kingdom. *Amaban*, whom the *Chineses* call *Amauang*, made answer, that the *Tartars* never received from any one what they were already possessed of; that if the *Chineses* had made choice of an Emperour, it was their business to protect him; and that, for their parts, they would have all or nothing. The Southerly Provinces choose another Emperour.

During the time of this Negotiation, there came into play a Prince, who gave himself out to be the eldest Son of the Emperour *Zungchini*, and was acknowledged to be the same person, by several Grandees of the Court: But *Hungquang* imprisoned him, with an intention to have him strangled, to the great dissatisfaction of those who thence took occasion to revolt: so that the *Tartars* made their advantage of him to get into the Province of *Nanking*. *Hungquang* sent against them a powerful Army, but it ran away, without ever engaging, upon the first sight of the *Tartars*, getting into the Boats to cross the River. Upon that defeat, all the Cities of the Province, on this side the River *Kiang*, submitted, save only that of *Yangchen*, into which *Zu Coloa* was got with some Forces, who made a vigorous resistance, but such as prov'd the destruction of the City, which was burnt, purposely, to bury, in its ashes, their bodies who had been kill'd, for fear of infecting the Air. A Son of Zungchini's.  
The Tartars enter the Province of Nanking.

1639. The *Metropolis* was yet in the power of *Hungquan*, who kept the *Tartars* from crossing the *Kiang*, by a good Fleet he had under the Command of *Hoangchoang*, who had already gain'd many advantages over the *Tartars*, and put them out of all hope of crossing the River, when he was kill'd with an Arrow by one of his own people, named *Thien*, who had been corrupted by the *Tartars*. This may be said to have been *China's* fatal blow, since that upon the General's death, the Army fled, and the *Tartars* passing the River, immediately pursued *Hungquan*, and having taken him, by the treachery of the said *Thien*, they sent him to *Peking*, where they strangled him in June 1644. They also put to death the young man, who pretended himself *Zunchini's* Son, whom they found in prison, and with him all the other Princes of the Royal house of *Tayning*, that fell into their hands.

*Hung-  
quan-  
strangled.*

*Several  
Chinese  
Lords retire  
to Han-  
cheu.  
Another  
Emperour.  
Who is also  
strangled.*

Most of the Lords, who escaped these defeats, met together in the City of *Hangchen*, in the Province of *Chekkiang*, the greatest of any in the whole Country, with a design to give the utmost expression they could of their fidelity and courage. They had chosen Emperour one of the Royal Family, named *Louang*; but ere he had reign'd three dayes, the *Tartarian* Army was come to the Gates of the City; and the Garrison, which was not much inclined to fight, demanded their pay; so that *Louang*, out of all hope to prevent the taking of the City, would preserve it and the Inhabitants, by a voluntary delivery of himself to the *Tartars*, who strangled him, and suffered not that noble City to be plundered. They took in the same Province, the great City of *Xoaking*, and were likely to have made a powerful settlement there, had they not been so imprudent, as to oblige the *Chineses* to shave themselves: but they found them so resolutely bent on the contrary, that the *Chineses*, who had taken the loss of their Country with so much indifference, chose rather to lose their Lives than their Hair. They beat the *Tartars* out of the City of *Xoaking*, forc'd them to repass the River *C'enibang*, and no doubt had retaken the City of *Hangchen*, had they had the courage to pursue them. They thought it enough to entrench themselves on the River side, and own'd the Authority of a Lord of the House of *Tayming*, named *Lu*, who assumed the Quality of *Restaurator of the County*, and refused that of the *Emperour*.

*Another  
Prince in  
the Pro-  
vince of  
Chekiang.  
Another in  
that of Fo-  
kien.*

*This divi-  
sion proves  
the ruine of  
China.*

About this time, the Officers and Souldiers, who retired out of the Province of *Chekkiang* into that of *Fokien*, chose another Emperour, named *Thang*, who writ to *Lu*, that he should own him for his Sovereign, in regard he was the nearer of Kin to the deceased Emperour. This division brought the *Tartars* to be absolute Masters of all *China*: for these two Princes refusing to joyn their Forces together against the common Enemy, the *Tartars* set upon *Lu*, and forc'd him to retire into the Island of *Cheuxan*, over against the City of *Ningpo*, which had hardly been peopled, had it not been for that Defeat.

*The Tar-  
tars reduce  
the Pro-  
vince of  
Fokien.*

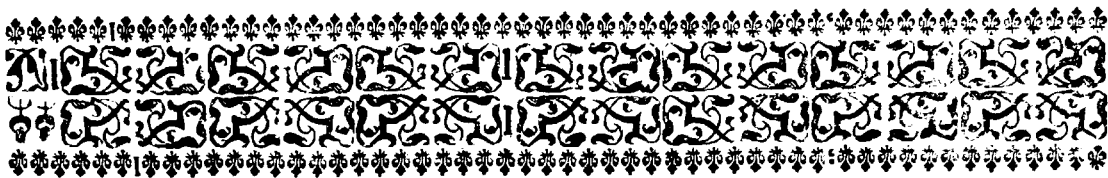
They found it no harder matter to conquer the Province of *Fokien*, though it be divided from those of *Quantung*, *Kiangsi*, and *Chekkiang*, by Mountains, which six thousand men have kept against all the Forces of *Tartary*. The Emperour himself, who had assum'd the name of *Longnu*, that is, warlike Dragon, fled, and was kill'd, as is conceiv'd, by the *Tartars*, who pursued him.

*The trea-  
chery of a  
Chinese  
Pirat.*

They had divided their Army into two Bodies, whereof one was got into *Fokien*, as we said before; the other had passed through the Provinces of *Hungquan* and *Kiangsi*, so that they met, much about the same time in that of *Quantung*, where they again divided, one part being commanded into *Peking*, the other into the Province of *Quantung*. Their easie conquest of *Fokien* proceeded, partly from the good success that attended their designs, where-ever they went, but particularly from the correspondence they held with *Chincilug*, who had the command of *Longnu's* Army in that Country. He had sometime been an Interpreter, and a kind of Broker, to the *Portuguez*, *Castilians*, and *Dutch*, at *Macao*, the *Philippine* Islands, and that of *Fermosa*, under the name of *Iqnon*. Giving over that employment, he turned *Pyrat*, and by that means became so powerful, that having obtained, or rather extorted, an Act of Oblivion from the Emperour of *China*, he forced him to suffer him to carry on the Trade of the whole Kingdom, keeping the Sea with a Fleet of above three thousand Vessels. His design was to get himself proclaimed Emperour of *China*; but knowing he should find too much opposition in the inclinations of the people, as long as there were Princes to be chosen out of the Family of *Tayming*, he was not sorry to see it extirpated by the *Tartars*, with whom he held correspondence, as we said before. Upon the reduction of the Province of *Fokien*, they gave him the Title of King, under the name of *Pingnam*, that is, *Pacific of the South*, treating him highly, and putting him in hopes, that they would leave him the command of the two Provinces of *Fokien* and *Quantung*. But the Prince, who commanded the *Tartarian* Army in the Province, being upon his departure towards the Court, *Chincilug*, who had left his Fleet in

in the Haven of *Focheu*, desirous to accompany him to the place where he was to take leave of all the Officers; the *Tartar* took his advantage of the opportunity, pressed him to go along to *Peking*; and finding him unwilling to do it, secured him, and brought him away by force; and had it not been for his Brothers, who were Masters of the Fleet, the *Tartars* would have put him to death. 1639.

The other Army, which was got into the Province of *Quangsi*, met with so much resistance there, that it was forced to dislodge thence, and retreat into that of *Quaniung*, into which the Viceroy and Governour of the Province pursued them; and to give the greater reputation to their designs, they created an Emperour of the Royal Progeny, who assum'd the name of *Junglie*. After their example, several other Provinces revolted, but all their attempts only confirmed the settlement of the *Tartars*, who after the death of *Kiang*, Governour of the City of *Taitung* in the Province of *Xansi*, who took up Arms against them in the year 1649. and their reduction of the City of *Quangcheu*, in the Province of *Quangsi*, which was taken on the 24. of November, 1650. have been possess'd of that vast Country, without any disturbance; rather through the cowardice of the *Chineses*, then by the number of their own Souldiery; in as much as it is impossible for any Army, how numerous soever, to conquer so powerful a State as that of *China*; if the Inhabitants had ever so little courage to defend themselves. *Xunchi*, the *Tartarian* Emperour of *China*, married the daughter of the King of *Tanyu*, in the Western *Tartary*, in the year of our Lord, one thousand six hundred forty and nine. An Emperour chosen in Quangsi



# MANDELSLO'S TRAVELS INTO THE INDIES.

## The Third Book.

1639.

**W**E gave the Reader an account in the precedent Book, how that the calm, which staid our Ship in a manner in sight of the Island of *Ceylon*, occasioned the digression we have made, wherein we have represented the State of the *Indies*, even to the utmost extremities of *Asia*.

FEBRU-  
ARY.  
*The Voyage  
continued.*

We continued at the Altitude of *Ceylon*, till the 20. of *February*, at which time the North-west-wind oblig'd us to take our course towards South-east. Taking the Latitude about noon, we found we were two minutes beyond the *Æquinoctial* Line. I asked the Master of the Ship, what he thought of their opinion, who affirm, that being under the Line, a man may discover both the Poles: but he made it appear to me, that it was an error, and shewed me clearly, that the *Artick* Pole is not to be seen within six Degrees of the Line, and that the *Artartick* cannot be perceiv'd, till a man comes to the eighth degree. He shew'd me farther, that at eight or ten degrees of the Line, the wind seems to be as changeable, as it is in our Seas on this side of it, inasmuch as that of the North-west reigns there six months together; and that of the South-east blows there as constantly for the other six moneths. So that such as go into the *Indies*, or come thence, may regulate their Voyages accordingly.

Several  
sorts of  
Birds.

In these parts we saw several sorts of Birds, whereof some were white, and not unlike our Pidgeons, save that their Tails are longer and narrower. Others were of sundry colours, and somewhat like wild Ducks. But among others, we saw abundance of those Birds which the *Portuguez* call *Garayos*, or *Rabos foreados*, which are black and white, as Mag-pies, but somewhat bigger, and have their Tails divided like a Taylors pair of Shears. All these Birds live only by the Sea, and feed on a certain flying Fish, which to avoid the pursuit of the *Albocores*, *Bonitos*, and *Dorados*, that continually prey upon them, fly into the Air, where they can abide no longer then while their wings are moist, and where they are caught by these Birds; or if, for want of moisture, they fall back into the Sea, they are devour'd by those Fishes. The *Albocores* are white all over, and have no Scales, no more then the *Bonitos*. The former are much bigger then the latter, and have but one bone in them, which comes from the Head to the Tail. Some of them are so large, that if we may credit report, one, between five and six foot long, hath dined sixty Seamen; but the meat of it being not very good, I conceive they were rather glutted then satisfied. The *Dorado*, which

And Fish.

which the *English* confound with the Dolphin, is much like a Salmon, but incomparably more delicate, and hath smaller Scales. 1639

We also took a certain Fish, which had a mouth like the snout of a Hog; the *Portuguez* call it *Tonina*, and the *French* *Marfouin*, a name, which no doubt is deriv'd from the *German* word, which signifies a Sea-hog. The *Hollanders*, in the Relation of their first Voyage, affirm, that out of curiosity they opened one of them, and that they found within it not only flesh and fat, and the intrails after the same manner as those of a Hog, but also a young Pig in the belly of it, which they cast into the Sea. They are seen alwayes many of them together, and when the Sea is rough, they come near the Vessel, and grunt, as if they desired shelter against the Storm they perceive coming, and whereof the Sea-men look upon them as an infallible sign.

The Sea hath not a more dangerous Fish then those which the *Portuguez* call *Tuberones*, the *Dutch*, *Hayes*, and the *English*, *Shark*. It is a great Fish, and hath much ado to swim; whence it comes, that many times, when the Sea is calm, it is seen floating above water. It is never seen, but there are fastened to the head of it seven or eight other Fish, about the bigness of a Herring, expecting to participate of what he takes. Above all things, they love mans flesh, and there are many sad examples of it, in Sea-men, who have either lost arms or other limbs, or have been devoured by them; for their teeth are as sharp and close as those of a Saw. Their mouth is below the head, so that to take their prey, they lie upon their backs, and so catch it upwards. That we took had the heart in the head, and lived a good while after it was taken out. They are not eaten, and are hunted only for recreation, or to cleanse the Sea of them.

The Fish which the *Portuguez* call *Pesce puerco*, and whereof there is abundance in these Seas, is no bigger then a Bream, and is so called, only because it grunts like a Pig. There are also about those parts great store of *Tortoises*, which lie on their backs, and commonly sleep upon the water, when the weather is calm. The Sea-men, when they see them in that posture, get near them, cast out a hook, which fastning in the shells, they draw them into the Boat. Their meat is as delicate as Veal, and it is one of the greatest refreshments the Sea-men meet with in these great and dangerous Voyages.

February 21. We were at one degree and twenty minutes of the Line, the weather being rainy and tempestuous, and continuing so much longer then we expected it should at that place; for it is so unconstant there, and changes so of a sudden, that many times they have hardly leisure to take in their Sails, to avoid the violence of the Winds, which the *Portuguez* call *Travados*, that is, Whirlewinds.

The 23. died one of our Seamen, who having got the Pox at *Surat*, neglected the taking of timely Remedies for the cure of it.

The 24. being *Sunday*, the President treated all the Officers of the Ship, and among other dishes, had the *Biggel* dressed, and some of the Country Fowl, which the Viceroy of *Goa* had presented to him.

The 25. We were surprized by a Calm, which kept us in the same place all that day; but the night following there rose a Tempest, that put us out of our course, which we could not well have kept, had that not happened: in regard that having the Sun in the Zenith, ever since the 22. we could not take the altitude, but only in the night, by the Stars.

This inconvenience continued till the fifth of *March*, having had the twenty seventh and twenty eighth of *February*, the wind at South-west, which put us in hope, we should soon have the *Manson*-wind whereof we stood in need to bring us to the Cape of *Good Hope*. But the continual changes of the Wind, and Tempests, which obliged the Sea-men to be alwayes about the Malts, lest they should be surprized by the *Travados*, retarded our progress very much. MARCH

March 5. We began to make our Observations by the Sun, and found we were at eight degrees, six minutes Latitude. Our Ship was encompassed by a great number of all sorts of Fish, which seem'd to be our protection against the Whales, by whom they were pursued.

March 10. We were at ten degrees, fourteen minutes, the Wind at West, which turned to a Storm that lasted ten hours. Very changeable weather near the

March 12. and 13. We had a great Storm, accompanied with Lightning and Thunder. But what we thought most strange, was that, though we were not come to the 13. degree, yet we found nothing of the ordinary Wind of the season, which is commonly perceived about the eight or ninth. For the South-wind, which blew constantly, not only retarded the prosecution of our Voyage, but also forced us so much back Eastward, that we were in in some fear, we might be constrain'd to return upon the Coast of the *Indies*. Line.

March

1639

*March 15.* The Wind changed, and came to the South, and at Night, we had it South-east; so that not doubting but it was the *Manson*, we put out all the Sail we could, and made two Leagues an hour, taking our course South-west. During the time the Wind was thus fair for us, we saw a great number of Dolphins, which followed our Ship, and we took as many of them as found us three good Meals.

*March 20.* We were surpriz'd by a Calm, which took off much of our courage; in regard our store of fresh Water being somewhat low, at a time when we knew not what to hope of our Voyage, we were forced to assign every Man his allowance; and to make it last the longer, it was resolv'd, that for some dayes there should be no salt Meat eaten, but that the Swine, and some other Creatures, whereof, having good store, some had died that day upon the eating of Mustard-feed, should be kill'd and consum'd.

Being about this time at sixteen Degrees, we found that the Compass declined thirty Minutes to the West, and it continued so to the four and twentieth Degree. But when the Cape of *Good Hope* is once doubled, the Loadstone draws towards the Earth.

The 21. While we floated up and down, without so much as a breath of wind, our Ship took fire, which might have proved to the ruine of us all.

The Butler, going to remove a Vat which he had filled with *Aqua vita*, set it on fire; whereat he was so startled, that he turned it out about the Cellar, where the fire took in one of the great Vessels, and was going to set thirty more into a flame, had it not been timely prevented with Coverlets. The Ship was so loaden with all sorts of Gums, and other fat Drugs, that it would have been impossible to quench it, had there not been a care taken to smother it, at the beginning.

After that day, we began to make use of the invention of drawing fresh Water out of the Sea; but it was fit only to dress Meat withall, in regard it had so untoward a taste, that the Sea-men would not take it for their ordinary drink.

*March 22.* We made a good dayes sail by the help of the *Manson*, getting above two Leagues an hour. The same Wind continued the 23. 24. and 25.

This last day, a Sea-man was whipt at the Main-mast, for offering to debauch two young Boyes.

*March 26.* The Wind continued still fair; but in regard we had some reason to fear that in case the wind should fail us, as it was likely to do, we should be put to great inconveniences for want of fresh water, a Council was call'd, at which it was resolv'd, that we should endeavour to make for *Maurice Island*, and there take in fresh water. This resolution very much rejoiced the company. The same night, we discovered the Island called *Diego Roiz*, or *Diego Rodriguez*, at twenty degrees, forty five minutes, in so much that we were in hopes the next day to reach *Maurice Island*, as being but sixty Leagues further.

Maurice  
Island de-  
scribed.

This Island, which the *Portuguez* call *Ilha do Cerno*, and the *Dutch* have named *Maurice Island*, from the Prince of *Orange*, who was Admiral of the *United Provinces* at the time of their first Voyage into the *Indies*, lies at 20. degrees, 27. minutes, and is about 15. leagues in compass.

Its Haven.

The Haven of it is very good, as well in regard, that at the entrance of it there is a hundred fathom water, as that it is able to contain above fifty great Vessels, sheltered from all winds. It hath some Mountains, which reaching up to the Clouds are seen at a great distance, and are extremely delightful to the eye, in as much as Nature maintains them in a constant verdure, though some *Cocos-trees*, and *Date-trees*, only excepted, all the other Trees are wild.

And affords  
the best  
Ebony.

In the Vallies there are some Fruit-trees, but such as bear no Fruit are not the less esteem'd for that, for these are they which yield the fairest Ebony in all the East. Some of it is as black as any Jet, and as smooth as Marble; but the yellow and red is of greater value than the other, as being more rare.

There is, as well in the Rivers of it, as the Sea about it, such abundance of Fish, that at one casting of the Net, as many may be taken, as will fill two or three Tun salted.

A prodigi-  
ous Thorn-  
back.

The *Hollanders* in their Relations affirm, that they took a Thornback, which found all in the Ship two good Meals, and that they saw there Tortoyfes so big, that four Sea-men sitting on the back of one of them, it went as well as if it had had no burthen at all. Whereto they add, that they were so large, that ten Men might sit upon ones Shell.

\* The  
Dutch  
have built  
a Fort there  
since the  
year 1640.

The Island is not inhabited; \* whence it comes, that the Birds are so tame, that a man may take them with his hand; and they are commonly killed with Cudgels, especially the Turtles, whereof there is such abundance, that the *Dutch* in less than two hours, took

above

above a hundred and fifty, and might have taken more, if they could have carried them. 1 6 3 9.  
 There is also great store of Hierons, and a kind of Birds, of the bigness of a Swan, which have neither Wings nor Tail, but so hard a flesh, that no heat can either boyl or roast it. There is no four-footed Creature in all the Island : but for other refreshments, and particularly, for the taking in of fresh water, there is not a fitter place any way near it. No four-footed Beasts.

When the *Dutch* came thither in *September, 1601.* they found there a *French Souldier*, who had left his Country some three years before, with three *English Ships*, which were the first in those parts that attempted sailing into the *Indies* upon the account of *Pyracy*. Of these three Ships, one was cast away near the *Cape of Good hope*, and sickness having consumed most of the men, they that remained set fire on the second, in regard for want of men, they were not able to govern it. The third was wrack'd upon the Coasts of the *Indies*, where all the men were lost, seven only excepted, to wit, four *English men*, two *Negroes*, and a *French Souldier*, who attempted to return with some booty, which they disposed into a *Cannow*, wherein they set to Sea, and made a shift to get to *Maurice Island*. The two *Negroes* had a design there to rid themselves of their Camerades, but being discovered, they cast themselves into the Sea, and were drowned. The four *English men* would prosecute their Voyage, but the *French Souldier* chose rather to continue in the Isle, then double the Cape, and expose himself to the mercy of the Sea, in so small a Vessel. Accordingly, of the *English men* there was no more news heard. The *French man* had been twenty moneths in the Island, when the *Dutch* came thither. He was stark naked, in regard that having been in a burning Fever, which heightned into a degree of madness, he had torn his clothes; so that having not had any thing about him ever since his sickness, nor fed on any thing but the raw *Tortoyfes* he took, they were not a little surpriz'd at the sight of him, and conceived it would be no easie matter to restore him to his Senses, though he behaved himself well enough otherwise, and was in very good health. A French man lived 20. moneths in Maurice Island.

We got so near *Maurice Island*, that we clearly saw it; but in regard the wind continued fair, the President called together the chief Officers, and represented to them, that if they put into the Island, they should lose at least ten dayes time, whereas if the wind continued fair, as it then was, we might in that time reach the *Cape of Good hope*, and so avoid the inconveniences of wintering in the Island of *Madagascar*; whereupon it was resolved we should prosecute our Voyage, which we did, and the same day got out of sight of *Maurice Island*. The Ship purs not into the Island.

*March 29.* After Sermon, the President acquainted all the men with the reasons which had obliged him to change his resolution of taking in Water at *Maurice Island*, and made it appear, that if they had gone to refresh themselves in the Island, they must have lost the convenience of that Wind, and the fairest Season of the year, and so the means of finishing their Voyage; exhorting all to take courage, and execute his Orders, and to be content with their allowance, which should be equal to what those had who sate at his own Table.

*March 30.* We passed the Tropic of *Capricorn*, continuing our course towards West-South-West.

*April 1.* We were at 26. degrees, three minutes. The Wind began to abate, and towards the night it rain'd, and blew not at all; yet ere we were so becalm'd, we had made a shift to get forty Leagues in twenty four hours. The next day we saw several Whales, and at night the Wind rose, and in a short time grew into an absolute Tempest. Our course was still to the West-south-west, in order to our gaining the South, which was to bring us to the *Cape of Good hope*. APRIL

The 3. We altered our course a little, taking it more towards the West. We were then at 28. degrees, 30. minutes; and in 24. hours, we got 50. Leagues.

*April 5.* We had but little Wind, and in regard the Compass still varied and declined, we took our course towards the West, instead of taking it to the South, as we should otherwise have done. In these two dayes we made 73. Leagues.

The next day we were at 30. degrees Latitude.

The 7. We began to perceive, that we should not long enjoy the good Wind had attended us some dayes before. Accordingly, the next day, we had a great calm, at 32. degrees Latitude.

The 9. The Wind rising again, put us into some confidence, that within a few dayes we should reach the *Cape of Good hope*, from which we could not be above three hundred Leagues distant.



1639

From that day to the 14. we still advanced somewhat. That being *Easter* day, the President made a great Entertainment, whereof all in the Ship participated.

*Pintados,*  
*a Bird disco-*  
*vering*  
*nearness to*  
*Land.*

The 15. The North-west-wind grew to a great Tempest, and our Sea-men affirm'd, that they smelt Land, being confirm'd in their persuasion, by those Birds which the *Portuguez* call *Pintados*, and which always keep within the distance of forty Leagues of the Land.

The Tempest ceased with the morning of the 16th, and our Sea-men persisted in affirming we were near the Coast, in regard many Birds were seen about the Ship.

The 17. Towards night, there blew a fresh Gale of wind: but the next day, and the night following, we had no wind at all, yet was the Sea as rough as it proved to be afterwards in the Tempest, which surpriz'd us the 19. at night, with the South-west wind, at 35. degrees Latitude. We took in all our Sails, and let down the Yards, preparing our selves by that means against the Tempests, which are very frequent, and in a manner unavoidable, about the Cape of *Good hope*, and we hover'd up and down in that posture all the next day.

*Mangas de*  
*valeudo,*  
*a kind of*  
*Bird.*

*April 20.* We perceiv'd that the Water was somewhat more whitish than it is in the main Sea, and saw abundance of those Birds, which the *Portuguez* call *Mangas de valeudo*, and are a kind of Sea-Mews, being white all over the bodies, and having black wings. They have also this in particular, that in their flight they beat their wings one against the other, whereas the common Sea-Mews seldom do it, but glide through the Air in an uninterrupted and even flight. It is observed, that where these Birds are seen, there is ground within a hundred, or hundred and fifty fathom at most. Accordingly upon trial, we found it at eighty fathom. We saw also the same day, a sort of Black-birds, that had only a little white upon the breast. The *English* affirm, they are Birds presaging misfortune, as being the infallible fore-runners of a great Tempest.

*The Cape*  
*of Agul-*  
*has.*

The same day, we had one, with the West-north-west wind, which on the 24. turn'd to a North-west. During that time we were forc'd to go before the Wind, the Water coming into the Ship with such violence, that it took off our Carpenter; but he was so fortunate, as to lay hold on a Rope was cast him, by which he was got aboard again. We found ground at eighty fathom, and in regard the Earth which stuck to the Plummet was black, we inferred thence, that we were not far from the *Cap d' Agulhas*, which is sixty Leagues from that of *Good hope*.

The 15. The Tempest increased so, that we began to despair of escaping, in regard the current of the Sea forced us towards the Coasts, where we had inevitably been wrack'd, if it had continued. We were at thirty six degrees, twenty minutes beyond the Line; and this day we had like to have been destroyed by fire, occasioned by a Lamp in the Presidents Chamber: but it was soon put out.

*Fish fore-*  
*showing*  
*the change*  
*of weather.*

The Storm continued all the next day. Our Sea-men seeing about the Ship many of those Fish called *Pesce Puercos*, would thence persuade us, that it would not be long ere the weather changed, and that the Wind would blow from the same quarter that those Fishes came. Accordingly, about two in the afternoon, the Wind came to the North-west, and the Tempest ceased, so that we could spread our Sails.

*Trombas.*

The 27. We had no Wind at all, but in the afternoon, it came to the North-west, which obliged us to take our Course to the North-north-west, sailing two Leagues an hour. We saw that day a great number of *Trombas*, from which we inferred we were not far from the Cape of *Good hope*. These *Trombas* are a kind of great Canes, about the bigness of a mans arm, and three or four foot long, which stote upon the water with their roots, as if the Sea had forced them away from the neighbouring Coast; yet can it not be said whence they come, nor that they are seen any where but about that Cape.

*April 28.* We discovered the Coast, which before us reach'd from North to West. Some thought at first it was *Cabo-Falso*, or the Cape of *Good hope*; but finding ground at forty Fathom, and at thirty four degrees, forty minutes, they were soon convinced, that it was the *Cap d' Agulhas*, whence it came that we went all that day laveciring with a North-west wind.

The 29. The Wind came to the South-east, so that we continued our course to the North-west, keeping still in sight of the Land. That day we took as many Fish as found the whole company two or three good meals. The night following the Wind changed, and came to the North-west, obliging us to lavecir; but being in a manner directly contrary, we advanced but little. Taking the Altitude of the Sun that day, we found our selves at 34. degrees, 27. minutes, and consequently, that we wanted 24. Leagues of being at the Altitude of *Cap d' Agulhas*.

*April 30.* We continued laveciring along the Coast, the Wind being still contrary;

*May*

May 1. The wind coming to the North-east by East, we kept along the Coast, and perceived a very high shore, which was at last known to be *Cabo Falso*, which is within seven Leagues of that of *Good hope*. It is called *Cabo Falso*, because it is seen at a great distance, extending it self into the Sea much after the same manner as the other, though it be not so high.

The 2. A North-east wind brought us in sight of the Cape of *Good hope*; but turning immediately to the North-west, we could not possibly enter the Bay, which obliged us to make off the Coast, and get into the main Sea, taking our course towards the South.

The next day, with a North-west wind, we had a great tempest, which yet hindered us not from getting somewhat nearer the Coast. That day we cast one of our Sea men over-board, with the ordinary Ceremonies used at funerals upon such occasions. This was the third man died out of our Ship, since our departure from *Goa*.

May 4. We doubled one of the points of the Cape of *Good hope*, which is about ten Leagues distant from the Road or Bay, and much about the same time we discovered the Mountain, which the *Dutch*, in the year 1601. named the *Tafelberg*, being flat and square at the top like a Table. It was our intention to get into the Bay, which is at the foot of the Mountain, and at 34. Degrees, four Minutes, within fifteen Leagues of the Cape; but the wind being contrary, obliged us to keep along the Coast, endeavouring to make the best advantage we could of it.

The 5. At Sun-rising, we were out of sight of Land; whereupon we changed our course, taking it North-east, and turning the prow of the Ship towards the Coast, which we discovered about noon. About two in the afternoon, we passed in sight of the Island called *St. Elizabeth*, which is inhabited, and at night we got into the Bay, and cast anchor at seven fathom water.

This Promontory of the Continent of *Africk*, which extends it self into the Sea towards the South, at 36. Degrees beyond the Line, was named *Cabo de bon' Speranza*, by *John II. King of Portugal*, under whom it was discovered, by *Bartholomew Dias*, about the year 1493. That Prince would needs call it so, out of the hopes he conceived to discover afterwards the wealth of the *East-Indies*; and other Nations have continued that name, upon this account, that having once doubled the Cape, there is some assurance of completing the Voyage, whereof the Cape makes one half, as lying in a manner at the equal distance of two thousand five hundred Leagues between *Europe*, and the most Easterly Coast of the *Indies*.

Most Ships take in refreshments at this place, and the *Dutch* are wont to leave there under a Stone at the entrance of the Haven, some Letters, wherein they acquaint the Ships that are coming after them, with whatever had hapned to them in their Voyage, and the course they take at their departure thence. The water there is excellent good, and so easie to come at, that the taking of it in, is without any trouble. Cattle are very cheap; their Oxen are large, and have bunches on their back, as those of the *Indies*; and there are some Sheep, whose flesh is extremely delicate; they have long ears, and their tails are as big and weighty, as a good hind quarter of Mutton.

They have also all sorts of wild Fowl, and those Creatures that are hunted, Deer, wild Boars, Partridges, Quails, &c. and among the rest, a kind of Geese, which they call *Pinguins*, which have no wings, but stumps, and consequently cannot raise themselves off the ground. It is an amphibious Animal, and with those stumps makes a shift to swim. A man may take them up with his hands, but the flesh of them is not edible, it is so hard and insipid. There are also Dogs, or rather Sea-bears, Camels, Tygres, Lyons and Lynxes.

The Inhabitants are of low Stature, ugly and ill-shap'd, living more like Beasts, than men. Their faces are wrinkled, their hair full of grease and nastiness, and they stink so, that they are smelt as soon as they are seen; which proceeds not only hence, that they rub their bodies with train Oyl, but also from their constant eating of raw flesh. They never kill a beast in order to the eating of it, but feed on them only when they die of any disease. A dead Whale cast up by the Sea upon the shore, is an excellent dish of meat with them; as is also the hot entrails of some beast, which they eat with all the filth about them, having only taken out the excrements, wherewith some rub their faces.

They go naked, save that both men and women cover their privy parts with a triangular piece of skin, which they fasten with leathern girdle about the waite: Some of the men cover their buttocks and thighs with a Lyons skin, or Oxe hide, drawing up the taile between their legs, so that it covers not what they intend should not be seen. Nay, there are some, who wear a skin, which comes down from the shoulders to the waste, and cut their faces, arms and thighs, in which they make divers strange incisions and characters, which though they were ugly enough before, adds somewhat to their deformity. The women wear



They discovered the Cape of Good hope

The Cape of Good hope

Pinguins a kind of Fowl

The Inhabitants about the Cape of Good hope

Their clothing.

1639. about their Arms and Leggs, rings of Iron or Brass, which they receive from strangers for their Cattle.

*Their food.* They who live near the Sea-coast feed only upon Oysters, Fish, such Herbs as Nature produces thereabouts, and the Whales cast up by the Sea: but such as inhabit further within the Countrey, and are called *Soltanimans*, live a little better, though they are no less barbarous and savage then the others.

*Use no husbandry.* They do not cultivate the Ground, though it be excellent good and very fertile, nor do they understand any thing of improving and ordering the fruit which Nature bestows on them. They all live in little Huts, or in the same place with their Cattel, without Beds, Stools, or any such superfluous pieces of household stuff: Their way of resting themselves is to sit upon their heels. They are never seen near the Sea, but only when they think to drive some Trade, in trucking their Cattle, Ox-hides, Lions, Leopards, Tigers-skins, and Ostritch Feathers, for Knives, Looking-glasses, Nails, Hammers, Hatchets, and other pieces of old Iron, to their great advantage who come thither.

*Know neither God nor the Devil.* They have no knowledg at all of God, nor never heard any talk of the Devil; but all the mischief they fear, is, what may be done them by the Lyons, against whom they are forc'd to fortifie themselves in the night time by great fires, which they make all about their quarters.

*Lions their only enemies.* May 10. Having fill'd all our Vessels with fresh water, and bought two Oxen of the *Soltanimans*, who were unwilling to sell any more, we re embarked, intending to get out of the Bay that day, but the contrary wind would not permit us. The next day, we sent our Boat to bring aboard us fifteen persons, to wit, four men, eight women, and three children, to be transported into the Island of *Pingui*, which is at the entrance of the Bay, where those poor people were in hopes to live more at their ease upon the Carcasses of Whales, which the Sea is wont to cast ashore there, and to be free from the persecutions of the *Soltanimans*. The Boat returned in the Evening, loaden with all sorts of Birds, especially *Pinguins*, which had been all kill'd with sticks.

May 12. Being Sunday, we weigh'd Anchor before day, and got out of the Bay with a North-east Wind, taking our course Westward. The next day it came to North-north-east, and afterwards to the North, and in the afternoon, we had not any at all: So that we continued all the remainder of the day in sight of the coast. At night it came to the South, but in less then two hours, it returned again to the North, and about midnight we had such a Tempest, that we were forc'd to take in all our Sails.

The 17. The Tempest which had continued ever since the 12. grew so high, that had not our Ship been very sound, and of great burthen, it could not possibly have resisted the violence of the winds and waves, which so covered it sometimes, that all upon the Deck were wet to the skin.

The next day the Skie cleared up, and the wind was something allayed, but still contrary. We took the elevation, and found our selves, at 34. Degrees, 40. Minutes; whence we concluded, that we were between *Cabo Falso*, and the Cape of *Good hope*, and consequently, that the Wind had forc'd us back 25. or 30. Leagues, yet in the evening we had in a manner recover'd what we had lost; but the night following, the wind was so violent, as if the Elements had been near their resolution into their first Chaos.

*Hurricans.* These extraordinary winds are called *Hurricans*, and they come not with such fury, but once in seven years, though the Sea in those parts be ordinarily tempestuous. We lost in that tempest two of our best Sea men, who fell from the Scuttle into the Sea, where one was immediately swallowed up; the other had so much strength as to lay hold on the rope was cast out to him, and got into the Ship; but falling on the sides of the Ship, he had so bruised himself, that he died within an hour after. The contrary wind forced us into the main Sea, and reduc'd us to such extremities, that we were not so much concern'd in the prosecution of our Voyage, as the saving of our lives; in as much as had the Sea made the least breach in the Ship, it had been impossible for us to escape.

The next day, the contrary wind continuing in the same violence, we were still in the same danger, having no other hope, but what the next change of the Moon gave us. But though she appeared the next day above the Horizon, yet the tempest was nothing abated, till the rain somewhat allay'd the wind the 22. so that we could make use of our sails, endeavouring to keep our course Westward.

May 23. We had a calm, during which the Ship stirr'd not from the same place. We discovered the Coast North-east of us; and in regard we were then at 37. Degrees, six Minutes, we imagined ourselves to be in the same Altitude with the Coast which

lies between *Cabo Palso*, and that of *Agulhas*. In the evening the wind increased, and brought with it a tempest, from the West-north-west, which forc'd us to put off from the Coast. 1639.

The 24. The wind continued still contrary, and in the evening there rose such a tempest, as forced us to go all night before the wind.

The 25. We resum'd our course with a West wind, taking it South-west. We were that day at 36. Degrees Latitude.

The 26. With the Sun-rising, we had the North-east wind, which made us put out all our Sails, taking our course West, and sayling after the rate of two Leagues an hour. But in the evening, the wind turned to the North-west, with so great likelihood of a tempest, that it was thought fit to take in part of our Sails. Accordingly, the wind increased so by degrees, that we were forc'd to take in all but the main Sail, which was not taken in till the wind grew so violent, as if it would have confounded all the Elements, to have swallowed us up in the disorder. Nay, its fury was such, that our Ship which had resisted all before, as a Rock, was tossed by the waves like a little boat. I must confess it was through Gods infinite mercy to us, that we escaped that danger, wherein we were in all likelihood, to perish, since it was a kind of Miracle, that the Masts stood, considering the violence of the winds was such, as might have rooted up the strongest Trees. This dreadful Tempest continued the 28. and 29. with so little intermission, that we began to despair of prosecuting our Voyage, inasmuch as the first quarter of the Moon had brought no change of weather: whereupon it was taken into consideration whether it were not our safest course to go and pass over the Winter in the Island of *Madagascar*. It was urged, that the Ship, having been much batter'd by the waves, would not be able to hold out much longer, and that though it should, our provisions would not, and so it would be impossible for us to compleat our Voyage. This proposal was generally approved; but when it was considered on the other side, that that delay, which must have been at least six moneths, would be an inconvenience equal to the imminent danger we were in, it was thought the best course to prosecute the Voyage.

But *May 30.* The President having called all the Officers together, and represented to them the condition of the Ship, and the little likelihood there was of compleating the Voyage; Nay, on the contrary, that the wind might be more violent, as the Moon increased, and that coming in *September*, or *October* upon the Coasts of *England*, the danger would be as great as that they were then in upon those of *Africk*, it was resolved, that to preserve the Ship, we should put into the Island of *Madagascar*, and stay there till *September*, inasmuch as within that time there would come thither some *English* Vessels, which might supply us with things necessary for the prosecution of our Voyage.

According to this resolution, we tack'd about at two in the afternoon, the weather so tempestuous, that we could bear but two Sails. We saild two Leagues an hour, but the Sea was so rough, that many times the waves came over the Ship. This tempest continued till the next day, but about noon it ceased.

*June* the first, We saild on, with a West wind, taking our course East-ward; 70 N E. We put out all our Sails, so that in 24. hours, we got forty Leagues.

The next being *Whitsunday*, the Tigre we brought from *Suras* bit the President in the hand, and had forc'd it off, had not I and some others come seasonably in. About 11. at night, the wind changed, and came to South-south-east, which was the best point we could have wished it in for our return; insomuch that we immediately chang'd our resolution, and set things in order to our return to the Cape of *Good hope*, with an intention, to take in fresh water at the Island of *Saint Helene*.

The same wind continued the third of *June*, insomuch that about noon, we were got to 35. Degrees, 8. Minutes.

*June 4.* We saw abundance of the *Mangas de Valudo*, but the wind changed, so that we had much ado to keep on our course to South-south-west, and afterwards to North-north-west towards the Coast. We saw also abundance of *Trombas*, whence we inferred we were not far from the Cape of *Good hope*.

The 6. We had no wind at all, so that we spent the day in fishing. We found sometimes, 43. and 48. sometimes 54. and 63. fathome water. Towards night, we had a good North-west wind.

The 7. The wind came to West; and at night we had so great a tempest, that we were forc'd to take in all our Sails.

*June 8.* The Tempest continuing with the same violence, we could advance but little. About

1639. About midnight, it came North, and we took our course Northwest.

The 9. The wind ceased, and having taken the Altitude, we were at 35 Degrees, 30. Minutes. In the afternoon we had a North-west wind, with a dreadful Tempest, which forced us to take in all our Sails, and go before the wind, in some danger of running upon the coast. This was the saddest night we had in all our Voyage. For the Master of the Ship fearing the reproaches of his superiours, if he came not to *England* within the year, endeavoured all he could to prosecute the Voyage; but finding at last, all was to no purpose, he acknowledged there was no other way to save the Ship and the persons in it, but to put in somewhere. Whereupon it was immediately resolv'd we should go and winter in *Madagascar*; and so we presently changed our course.

The 11. The weather was fair; but about midnight the sky was so overcast, that it was not doubted but a Tempest was coming, as indeed it did, and continued the three next dayes.

The 15. It ceased, and the wind being VWest-north-west, we took our course to the North-east, and in 24. hours, got 33. Leagues.

The 16. We got 44 Leagues. The 17th. 50. with an East-south-east wind, taking our course to the North-east.

The 18. VVe got 30. with a VWest-south-west wind; the 19th. 40. and the 20th. having sailed 30. Leagues, we were at 31. Degrees 15. Minutes Latitude.

The 23. At break of day, we discovered a Vessel, which soon came up to us. It was a Ship belonging to the new Company, of 500. Tun burthen, and came out of *England* some four moneths before, under the command of Captain *Hall*, who being sick, and not able to stir, sent to the President to desire him he would honour him so far as to come aboard his Vessel, which he did, taking along with him the Physitian and my self. He not only treated us kindly, but also proffer'd to supply us with Cordage and Sails, in case we met not with any Vessels of the old Company at *Madagascar*: whither it was resolv'd they should make all the haste they could; Captain

7 V L T. *Hall's* Ship being less, and not so loaden as ours, going before, with a South-east wind.

They discover *Madagascar*.

The first of *July*, he was got out of sight, and in the evening we discovered the Coast. VVe doubted not but it was *Madagascar*, and so had a watch set in the night, to see we came not too near it, as also that we put not off too far from it: It being on the one side hard to approach, it having once lost the Altitude, and on the other, dangerous to approach it in the night time, by reason of the Rocks that are at the point of the Island, and especially by reason of the little Island, at the entrance of the Bay.

Arrive there

The 2. We arrived at *Madagascar*, and got into the Bay of Saint *Augustine*, finding no bottom, till within a quarter of a League of Land, where we cast Anchor, at 25. fathom water, glad we were got into a Harbour, after so many dangers escaped.

Our joy was heightned by our finding in the Bay two *English* ships, belonging to the same Company, one whereof was upon her return for *England*; the other bound for the *Indies*. It was but three months since the latter came from *England*; commanded by Captain *Willis*, being 1400. Tun burthen. Her name was the *London*, and she was one of the noblest Vessels I ever saw. The Captain came immediately aboard us, accompanied by a young Merchant, and proffer'd the President to supply him with all things necessary for the prosecution of his Voyage.

The 3. The Officers of all the three ships had a meeting aboard ours, to consider what course they should take with the Inhabitants, that they might not hold their provisions at too dear a rate; and it was resolv'd, that what ever were bought should be bought upon a common account; and to that end, every one should bring out the commodities they were willing to truck, which should be put off by the Secretaries of the three Ships.

What Commodities go off at *Madagascar*.

The Glas-bracelets, beads and Agats, we had brought from the *Indies* were incomparably beyond what they were laden with, out of *Europe*; so that it was resolv'd ours should not be produced, till the others were sold. By this means, we bought every day four Oxen for forty pair of Glas-bracelets, which the Inhabitants call *Rangus*; a Sheep for two, and a Calf for three *Rangus*; and for a brass ring, ten or twelve inches about, a man might have an Oxe worth here six or seven pound.

The 4. The President, Captain *Willis*, and Captain *Hall*, went up the River to discover the Countrey, and to see what Cattle was brought down to the Bay. We found neer Captain *Willis's* Tent about thirty men, and some women, who had brought milk to sell. They had brought also about twenty Oxen, Sheep, and Goats: but hearing there was a greater number coming after them, we provided our selves only for three dayes.

The 6. The President invited the two Captains and all the Officers of both the other Ships to dinner; and some dayes after Captain *Willis* treated the whole Company. In the afternoon he entertain'd us with a Comedy, which lasted above three hours. 1639.

The 14. Captain *Hall* went on his Voyage towards the *Indies*, and the 16. Captain *Willis* went away also, having supplied us with all things necessary for the prosecution of ours. He intended to touch at the *Maldives*, and stay there till the 20. of *August*, that he might arrive at *Surat* in the *Winter*. We accompanied him to the Island, at the entrance of the Bay, and having taken leave of him, went into the Island, where we found abundance of odd Shells of divers forms, several sorts of Fish cast up there by the Sea, and rotted Cocon, which the *Wind* had forced thither from the Eastern Coast of *Madagascar*, where some grows, but not from the Coast of the Saint *Augustines* Bay, which is opposite to the *West*.

The 21. The President took up his Lodging in the Tent pitched for him on the Sea-side, intending to continue there, till he imbarck'd in order to our return. They made there also certain Huts, for the Souldiers that were about him, as also for such as were repairing some things belonging to the Ship, and for the Butchers, who kill'd and salted the Beef for the Provision of the Ship: but on Sundayes all came aboard, where there was a Sermon.

About four Leagues from the Haven, there lives a Lord, who had three Sons, the eldest of whom was named *Massar*. They came all three to see us, with a retinue of about a hundred men, arm'd with a kind of Pikes. They brought along with them about three hundred Oxen, some Sheep, Goats, Poultry, Citrons, and Oranges, to truck for our Commodities. Being come near the President, they made a little halt, to observe what posture we were in, and at last the eldest of the three Brothers came up, and bestowed on the President twelve Goats, and his two Wives gave him, each of them, a fat Capon. The President presented him with three Strings of Glass Coral, each of his Brothers with two, and each of the Wives with a Bracelet. This signified but very little to us; but they highly valued them. They planted a great Pole in the ground, as a mark of the Alliance they made with us, promising severely to punish such as should injure us, and desiring us to take such a course, as no disorder might happen on our side. They desired to hear our Musick, and seem'd to be much pleas'd with it. They sold us ten fat Oxen, some Sheep, Goats and Poultry. They sold us a fat Sheep, the Tail whereof weigh'd twenty or twenty four pound for seven or eight grains of Coral or Agat, and a Capon for three or four grains of counterfeit Coral. They would not meddle with our money, as being so happy as not to know the value of a thing which occasions the misery of other parts of the *World*. *The Lord of those parts*

During the six weeks we staid in the Island, most of our diversion was shooting at Buts, or fishing with the Angle-rod. We took good store of Fish, and some Oysters, which the Inhabitants call *Oring*. These stick to the Trees and Bushes that are upon the Sea-side, being at high-water cover'd with the Tide. They are large, and as delicate as any *England* affords. *Makes an alliance with the English*

From the fifth to the eighth of *August*, there were such abundance of Grasshoppers, that they deprived us of the sight of the Sun. The Inhabitants eat them, but they look on them as fore-runners of famine and mortality of Cattle. One small shower of Rain dispersed them all. *AUGUST*

As for the Island of *Madagascar*, which the *French* call the Island of *St. Laurence*, (either from its being discovered by *Laurence*, Son of *Francisco Almeyda*, General of the King of *Portugal's* Army in the *Indies*, or from its being done upon Saint *Laurence* his day, in the year 1506.) It lies in the *torrid Zone*, reaching from North to South, from the tenth to the twenty sixth degree. 'Tis certainly one of the greatest Islands in the *World*, since it is above 150. Leagues in length, and 180. in breadth, and hath many good Harbours, whereof the chiefest are, *St. Augustine's* Bay, where we put in, *St. Jago*, *Anton Gil*, *Antipera*, *St. Julian's*, *St. Maries*, *St. Sebastians*, *St. Romanus* and *Manatenga*. Its Mountains are for the most part covered with Citron-trees and Orange-trees; and if any are bare and rocky, that Rock is an excellent white Marble, out of which issues forth the best Water in the *World*. Some of them are covered with a kind of Trees, the Wood whereof is of all sorts of colours, (but especially, such as afford Ebony, and a certain Wood, which in colour comes near that of *Brasil*, whereof they make their Lances or Pikes) and Date-trees, which gives shelter to an infinite number of Apes and Birds, and among others, a kind of Hens, as big as Turkeys, save that they were black all over the body, but marked with little white spots. Their heads are between a red and blew colour, and in their foreheads they have a yellow horn. They feed in the Woods whole hundreds of them together. *Madagascar described. Its greatness. Its Harbours.* There

1639. There is also great store of that Gum, which the Druggists call *Dragons-bloud*, which is drawn out of the flower of a Tree, about the bigness of a Pear-tree, but much more branchy, and not so full of leaves. Its leaves are longer, but narrower then those of Lawrel, and the flower is taken off in order to the extracting of the juyce, and put into hollow Canes, wherein it is reduced to that form, in which it is brought into *Europe*.

**Aloes.** This Island affords also some *Aloes*, a Commodity we have before given an account of, in the description of the Island of *Zocotora*. That which grows in *Madagascar*, is not so good as the other, in regard it is wild; yet it is used in Medicine, nay, many times instead of the other. They have also Cotton and Indico, but they make it not into a paste, as they do in *Indosthan*, and elsewhere.

**The Island rich in Cattle.** Their greatest wealth consists in Cattel. For where they do till the ground, it is only to get a little Rice, which is excellent good there, as also for Beans, Pompions, and that kind of Melons, which the *Persians* call *Harpus*. There are also several sorts of Citron-trees, and Orange-trees, which bring forth twice a year, Date-trees, *Cocos*-trees, and *Bananas*. No House but hath some Hives of Bees about it; but they have not yet the invention of making Wax, nor using their Honey, otherwise then in making a certain Drink of it with Rice, which serves them instead of Wine. The ground yields Salt, and Saltpeter, and upon the Sea-coasts there is found abundance of Ambergreece. It is reported also, that there are mines of Gold and Silver; but the Inhabitants making no use of these Metals, and valuing Tin above Silver, have not yet search'd into them.

**Its Inhabitants.** *Madagascar* is very populous, and the Inhabitants are for the most part Negroes, of a good stature, and well shap'd. All the clothing they wear is only a piece of Cotton-cloth, of several colours, which they so fasten about their Waste, that one of the ends hangs down to the Knee before, and the other to the Ham behind; and in the night they take it off, and make it serve for a Coverlet. They lie upon Mats, and in regard their Huts are made only of the branches of Trees, (those little wooden Houses only excepted which they make for their Princes) they make a fire of all sides of them, against the Mill-dew, which it seems is there very dangerous. Some wear above their Navels a row of Glass-beads of several colours, and several Bracelets of them about their Necks, their Arms, or above the Elbow, and about their Legs under the gartering place. Both Men and Women have their Ears bored through, and put into them Copper Rings, somewhat like, but not so large as those they wear about their Wrists, and the small of the Leg. Their Hair is black, but not equally curled all over the Country, and they dispose it into several tresses, but it grows not much, though they grease it perpetually, and do all they can to get long Hair. There is little difference between the clothing of the Men, and that of the Women, save that the Women wear also a kind of sleeveless long Coat, and that the Cloth wherewith they cover themselves is so large, that it hides all their Thighs almost down to the Knee. In this Cloth they carry their Children upon their Backs, so as that putting their Legs under the Mothers Arms, they seem to be in a manner fastned together, and yet as she carries them, a Man would think, they should fall backwards, and break their back-bones.

The fidelity of Wives towards their Husbands is here exemplary, and the Men think it no disparagement to take their advice. No Man but hath at least two Wives, but dispos'd into several Huts. For the more aged of the two he hath most compliance, though he undertakes no business, nor concludes any bargain, till he hath consulted both. These they buy of their Parents, or rather Relations, for a certain number of Oxen, Pikes, or other Arms. Adultery and Fornication is punished with death; but they do not easily suspect one another. They are very free in their conversation, and there is no familiarity so great as to raise any jealousy in them.

Some young Women made no difficulty to come into our Tent; nay, one of them made not any to take one of my Shirts from the President, who intreated her to wear it for my sake. She accordingly wore it two dayes, but afterwards tore it to pieces, to be used about other things.

**The men are courageous.** The Men are couragious, and well skill'd in the use of their Lances, Darts, and Pikes, which they carry along with them where ever they go. When they are at work, their Arms lie not far from them, and they are accustomed to them from the eighth or ninth year of their age.

**Their Arms.** Some Persons of Quality have a bundle of twenty five or thirty of these little Pikes carried after them. They use also Bows and Arrows, and their Bowes are at least five or six foot long, the String being very loose, yet have they a sleight of shooting with a miraculous swiftness and strength. When they cast their Pikes or Javelings, they make several postures,

postures, and are so expert at this exercise, that at the distance of forty paces they will not miss a bird. 1639.

The Inhabitants of *Madagascar* are divided into several Tribes, which consist of Cantons of a 100. 200. and 300. persons, and live like *Tartars*, under a Chief, whom they call *Isebich*, that is, King, or Lord. There were two of these Princes lived in a wood near our Tent, where they had built them huts under Date-trees. When their cattle multiplies so as that the grass falls short, they engage in a kind of a war among themselves, and endeavour to get what they can from their neighbours. King *Massar*, whom we named before, told us, that he had joyn'd with two other Kings, named *Machicore*, *Schich Tango*, and *Andiam Palola*, with whom he made account to get together a body of 500. men, and to set upon some of their neighbours, who had better pastures than theirs. These Princes have an absolute power over their Subjects, and severely punish the crimes committed within their jurisdictions, especially such as tend to the disturbance of the Publick peace: but this dignity is not so continued in the same Family, but that upon the Prince's death, the strongest is advanced to this pretended Crown.

Their Chief

It were a hard matter to say what Religion they are off, save that as I have been informed, they believe there is one God, who hath made Heaven and Earth; and will one day punish bad Actions, and reward the good. I saw one among them, who was certainly their Priest, getting up a tree, and speaking to the People, for above half an hour: but not one of us understanding their Language, I know not what discourse he made to them, nor yet what difference there is between their Priests and the others; save that I observ'd, they carried at the end of a Cane a piece of a Cowes-tail, and that one of them suffered the nails of the two fore-fingers of his right hand to grow to the length of Eagles claws. Every Canton hath its Priest, who would also be accounted Sorcerers, and have it thought they can binde the Devil, and force him to do what they please.

Their Religion.

The *Portuguez* of the Island of *Mozambique*, which is but half a league from the Continent of *Africk*, drive a considerable trade here in Aloes, Dragons-blood, Ebony, and other Drugs. For the Captain, who under the King of *Portugal* hath the command of this little Island, which is but half a league in compass, and who, in the three years of his Government, gets a hundred and fifty thousand pounds sterling, is not a little obliged to the Neighbour-hood of *Madagascar*, though the greatest part of his wealth comes from *Soffola*, where he hath his Factor, and where the *Portuguez* have built a Fort.

Mozambique.

*Hieronimus Osorius*, in his History of the Life and Actions of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, affirms, that when the *Portuguez* discovered the Island of *Madagascar*, in the year 1506. there came aboard their Ship as many Negroes as a boat could well carry. They were kindly receiv'd, and had several little Presents made them; but they ill requir'd civility, for as soon as they were got into their own boat, they shot so many Arrows at the *Portuguez*, that they were forc'd to answer them with Cannon and Musket-shot. The same year another *Portuguez* Captain, named *Rodrigo Pereira*, being cast by a tempest upon the Eastern Coast of this Island, he sent word to the Inhabitants, by an *African Moor*, who understood somewhat of their Language, that the design of his coming thither, was to enter into an alliance with them, and to settle an advantagious Commerce for both. The Islanders seem'd to approve of this Proposal, and told the *Moor*, they would carry him to their King, that he might conclude with him the Treaty desired by the *Portuguez*; but being got off a little from the others, they fell upon him, and had kill'd him, had they not discharg'd some Muskets at them, whereby some fell, and the rest were forc'd to let go the *Moor*. The *Portuguez* Captain having got him again, landed at another place, where he surpriz'd the Inhabitants, and took their King Prisoner: but treated him so well, that he proffer'd to bring them to a place, where they should find a good Haven for their Ship. He brought the *Portuguez* Captain to a Bay, at the entrance whereof there was a very populous Island, whereat the Inhabitants were frightned, and fled into the great Island, forsaking Wives and Children, nay even their King: so that it proved no hard matter for the *Portuguez* to possess themselves of the Island; whence they sent to the Inhabitants, inviting them to return, and to permit their planting among them, since they desired only their friendships. They returned, and presented the Captain with 50. Oxen, and 20. Goats; but, to be rid of their Guests, they represented to them, that there were greater advantages to be made in the Port of *Matatana*, inasmuch as there they would find Silver and several Drugs to truck for. The Captain would have gone thither, but the current of the Sea having forc'd one of his Ships upon the Coast, he retired with the other to the Island of *Mozambique*. The same Tempest which had cast that Captain upon the Eastern Coast of the Island, forc'd another Ship of the same Fleet into the Port of *Matatana*, whither there presently came one of the boats

When discovered by the Portuguez.



1639. of the Country, into which he sent the Master of his Vessel, who by the many Voyages he had made upon the Coasts of *Africk*, and learnt the Language of the Countrey. The *Negroes* having him in their boat, made all the haste they could ashore, which obliged the *Portuguez* to put out their Shallop, with fourscore men in it, to overtake them; but the *Negroes* were too quick for them, and carried away the man. The Shallop coming near Land, the *Portuguez* saw their Master, who told them he had been brought to their King, and civilly received by him, and that he was desirous to speak with the Captain, and enter into friendship with him. The Captain made no difficulty to go ashore, where the King received him kindly, and treated him magnificently, according to the custom of the Country: but thinking to return in the Evening, there rose so great a tempest, that it was impossible for him to get aboard. The tempest continued four dayes, so that those who were in the Ship, believed that their Captain had been kill'd by the *Barbarians*, weigh'd Anchor, and returned to *Mozambique*. The Captain finding the Ship gone, and that there was little likelihood of ever getting out of the Island, grew so discontented that he died of it. Eight other Persons of his retinue died also, and they who remained embarked in the Shallop, choosing rather to expose themselves to the uncertain event of a dangerous Navigation, than stay in a place where they must perish within a few days; and they were so happy as to meet with a Vessel commanded by the Captain *John Fonseca*, who received them aboard, and carried them into *Africk*.

The first landing of the Dutch at Madagascar.

The first landing of the *Dutch* in this Island, was in August 1595. at which they met with as great difficulties as the *Portuguez* had done. Their design was only to refresh themselves there, upon this account; that, in those first Voyages, they had so little knowledge of the disease called the Scurvy, and the remedies now used for the cure of it, that most of their men being not able to perform their labour, they were forced to touch there in order to some relief for their diseased: but ere they could meet with any refreshment, there died above 70. persons out of the four Vessels whereof their Fleet consisted, whom they buried in a little Island, which upon that occasion they called, The *Dutch-Chureh-yard*. The description they make of this Island is very short, and for the most part, taken out of the Relation of *Mark Paulo Venero*, which is none of the most exact. That of *Francois Cauche* of *Rouen*, Printed by the means of the late *M. du Puy*, is so exact, that that of the *Dutch* cannot compare with it. What these last relations have in particular, is, that the Inhabitants of *Madagascar* are circumcised, though there be nothing otherwise that evinces them to be *Mahometans*, since they have no *Mosques*, nor any exercise of Religion, nor appearance of Devotion in all their De-meanour.

Having passed over the Winter on the other side of the *Æquinoctial* Line, we began to set things in order for the prosecution of our Voyage, and bought the 19. of August, of King *Masiar*, and two other neighbouring Princes, *Ischich Tanga*, and *Andiam Palola*, twenty five fat Oxen more, and about a hundred Sheep and Goats, besides the hundred and fifty Oxen we had bought during our aboad in the Island, all which we put aboard the 20. that we might not want fresh meat during our Voyage. The same day we embarked our baggage, and the next day we got out of the Bay of *St. Augustine*, and left the Island, of *Madagascar*, with a South-west wind, which continuing all the night following, we soon got out of sight of the Island.

The 22. The *Manson*, which we could not yet have hoped for, came unexpectedly upon us, and advanced our progress very much, taking our course to West-south-west.

The 23. The wind came to the East, so that having it full behind us, we went on merrily, taking our course the more towards the South, to avoid the Cape of *Good hope*, where we intended not to touch at all.

The 24. and 25. the wind was somewhat abated; but the 26. it blew so fresh a gale, that we made a great progress. We were that day at 27. degrees, 27. minutes Latitude; and the 28th. at 28. degrees, 12. minutes.

The 29. We had the wind East-south-east, with those storms which the *Portuguez* call *Travados*: They were immediately over. We saw that day, being at 31. degrees, 15. minutes Latitude, a great number of the Fishes called *Pesce puercos*, which leaped three or four foot above water, as if it had been their design to find us sport. The next day we had a Tempest, yet such as hindered not our getting somewhat forward; so that the last of August, we were at 33. degrees, 34. minutes.

SEPTEMBER. September the first, the wind grew so violent, that we were forc'd to take in part of our sails, yet we made a shift to get 50. Leagues in 24. hours. The next day, we got but 30. the wind being South-west.

The 3. The Sea being very calm, we kill'd one of the Cowes we had bought in *Madagascar*, and

and found three Calves in the belly of it; as also a Goat, that had four young Kids with- 1639.  
in it; from which a man may judge of the fruitfulness of the Country.

At night we saw up and down certain Lights, like flames; but we could not judge whether they were the Fishes, which the *Spaniards* call *Dorados*, and the *English* *Blubbers*, or those Meteors, which the *Spaniards* call *Cuerpos sanctos*. In ancient time, when there appear'd two, they were called *Castor* and *Pollux*, *Dioscures*, and *Tyndarides*, and when but one, it was called *Helene*. Some have not shaken off the superstition of believing, that their fire presages a Tempest. But, on the contrary, we had a great calm, the next day, and saw infinite multitudes of little Sea-birds. About two in the afternoon, we had a North-east wind, which continuing fair all the next day, we sail'd above two Leagues an hour.

September 6. We had a great tempest; It continued all night, and shook the Ship so, that the water coming in at several places, we were forc'd to pump four times an hour. The same day we came 35. degrees Latitude.

The 7. The weather was somewhat fair, so that we made use of our Sails, taking our course West-north-west. The Sea was very rough, and forc'd us towards the Coast, from which we thought our selves forty Leagues distant, and from the Cape of *Good hope* 130. The 8. and 9. the wind South, and it proved rainy weather.

The 10. We had but little wind, yet got 40 Leagues in 24 hours; we saw many of the *Mangas de Valido*; whence it was inferred we could not be far from the Cape d' *Agnibas*:

The 11. We made but a small progress, with an East wind. Casting the plummet, and finding a sandy bottoime, one hundred and twenty fathom water, we are confirm'd in the opinion we had before, of our being near Cape d' *Agnibas*.

The 12. The contrary wind forc'd us to lavouring to the North-north-west, and South-west, going either further from, or neerer to the Coast, which yet they could not discover. In the afternoon, we resumed our course to the West-north-west, with a South-west wind, and at night we found a yellowish sand, at 190. fathom water.

The 13. Our course was to the West-north-west, with a South-east wind. About 10. we saw a dead Whale floating upon the water; and being then at 35. degrees latitude, we conceiv'd we might be at the altitude of the Cape of *Good hope*, where many of these creatures are ordinarily seen.

The 14. we found at Sun-rising, that the Compass declin'd four degrees, 50. minutes to the East, whence we inferr'd, that we had compass'd the Cape of *Good hope*.

The next day, we had the wind so full a Stern, that had it been contrary, it would have forc'd us once more to think of putting into some place, or at least put us to the same extremities we had been in before near the Cape. We therefore found the declination of the Load-stone to be one degree, fifty minutes, and presently after, the declination of it near the Cape of *Good hope*, is four degrees, though otherwise it doth not decline so much. As soon as the Cape is past, the Compass still varies towards the East, in regard the Needle draws to the Earth, where no doubt there is Iron, and other Load-stones that draw it: but the declination on that Coast never exceeds eight degrees.

About 20. Leagues on this side the Cape of *Good hope*, and at 33. degrees, 15. minutes, lies the Island of *St. Elizabeth*. It is not above two Leagues distant from the Coasts of *Africk*, and hath a very good Haven towards the Continent, at 16. fathome water. The Coast of the Isle is but one continued Rock, but there grows such abundance of delicate Herbs in the Island, that it may be presum'd it would afford as great conveniencies and refreshments as that of *St. Helene*, if it were planted with Citron-trees, and Orange-trees, and stock'd with Cattle. 'Tis true, it hath no fresh water, but what falls from the sky, which in all likelihood is the reason that seldom any touch at it, though there come thither such store of Sea-wolves, that in a few dayes there might be as much fat gotten, as would load a Vessel of 600 Tun.

These creatures are called *Sea-wolves*, though they are more like Bears, both in colour, and the making of their heads, save that the snout of these is somewhat sharper. They have only two paws under the breast, and draw the lower part of the body after them, as if it were a taile, yet are they so swift, that it is as much as a man can do to overtake them running.

It is a cruel and fierce beast, which fears not to set upon two or three men together; and his teeth are so close and strong, that he can therewith easily break the handle of a Patience.

There is also in the same place a kind of *Badger*, the flesh whereof is as delicate and whole as that of Lambs; the birds call'd *Pinguins*, are there better and more tender then any where else: and in regard few Ships come thither, these birds and some others, are

1639. so tame and so little afraid of a man, that he needs only put out his hand to take them.

The 16th. The wind was contrary, we being at 32. degrees Latitude. The next day, and the 18. with a North-north-west, and South-west wind, we got 64. Leagues, and came to 29. degrees, 16. minutes Latitude.

The 19. With a good South-south-west vwind, vve got 40 Leagues to the North-west, and were at 28 degrees Latitude.

The 20. With a South-east wind, we got 34 Leagues, continuing the same course to the North-west.

The 21th. 28 Leagues, with the same wind, and keeping on the same course.

The 22th. 20 Leagues, with the same wind, and in the same course.

The 23th. 24 Leagues, with the same wind, taking our course West-north-west.

The 24th. We got with the same vwind, 30 Leagues, continuing our course to the West-north-vest.

The 25th. We had so great a calm, that vve advanced not any thing at all.

The 26th. We got but 20 Leagues, vwith a little East-south-east vwind, continuing the same course.

The 27th. We got 36. Leagues, vwith a North-east vwind, pursuing the same course, and vverecome to 21 degrees Latitude.

The 28th. With the same vwind, and holding the same course, vve got 46. Leagues, and vvere at 20 degrees Latitude.

29th. With an East-north-east vwind, vve got 20 Leagues, continuing the same course.

The 30. Keeping the same course, to the North-vest, vve advanced 25 Leagues.

OCTOBER October the first, a South-vest vvinde put us forward 25 Leagues; keeping our course to North-vest, and vve got that day to 17 degrees Latitude.

The 2. With the same vwind, vve got 25 Leagues, keeping on in the same course, till vve vvere come to sixteen degrees, sixteen minutes Latitude.

The 3d. With the same vwind, and in the same course, 28 Leagues.

The 4th. With the same vwind, taking our course to the vest 20 Leagues.

The 5th. In the same course, 16 Leagues.

St. Helen's Island. The 6th. We got 15 Leagues vwith a South-east vwind, and came that day to the Island of St. Helene.

This Island lies at 16. degrees, 12 minutes, beyond the *Æquinoctial*, and vvas so called by the *Portuguez*, upon its being discovered the one and tvventieth of *May*, on vvhich day is celebrated the memory of *Saint Helene*, Mother to *Constantine the Great*. It is distant from the Coast of *Angola* 350. Leagues, from that of the *Cape of Good hope* 550. and from that of *Bresil* 510. So that it is somevwhat strange, that at so great a distance from the continent, the Sea should start out an Island about 7 Leagues in compass. It is so fertile, that there is not any Province in *Europe* affords such plenty of excellent fruits, and breeds so many creatures as this Island.

Some affirm, it afforded neither, vwhen it vvas first discovered by the *Portuguez*, and that the fevv Trees they planted, and the little stock of Cattle they left there, hath so furnished it, that it is able sufficiently to refresh all the fleets that come thither. At this place, a man may have at any time of the year, *Figs*, *Pomegranats*, *Citrons* and *Oranges*, and there are *Goats*, *Swine*, *Barbary-Hens*, *Feasants*, *Partridges*, *Quailes*, *Peacocks*, *Pigeons*, and great store of all sorts of Birds, as also salt for the keeping of them; so that Ships might be sufficiently provided with all things, if they would stay there any time. The Sea supplies it with more Fish than can be consumed; and the Earth brings forth so many excellent Herbs, that the *Portuguez*, unwilling to retard their Voyage, leave at this place their sick men, who recover their health within a few days, and having only a little Oyl, Rice, Bisket and Spice, make a shift to live there till the Ships come thither the next year. Its Mountains are so high, that they reach above the Clouds, and are seen at Sea, at the distance of 14 Leagues. The Trees wherewith they are covered bring forth no Fruit, and are fit only for firing, but the Valleys are extremely pleasant. The King of *Portugal* would not have any establishment to be made there upon these reflections; that all Ships passing that way might find refreshment there, and that it would be a hard matter to keep the said Island against all the other Nations, who are concerned in its being still free, inasmuch as were it not for that, Vessels many times, would be forc'd upon the Coasts of *Guiny*, where water is not to be had at all times, and where they should be obliged to stay for Rain, which would be so great an inconvenience that many of the men would in the mean time droop and die.

The fertility of this Island proceeds chiefly from the daily rain which falls there: but they are transient shows soon over, so that the Sun shining presently after, and that by intervals; it must needs very much advance the maturation of all things. 1639.

There are three places where fresh water may be taken in, to wit, where the three Rivers, which come out of the Mountain fall into the Sea. They breed abundance of Snakes; but the *Dutch* eat them, and prefer them before Eels.

At 190 Leagues, North-west of the Island of Saint *Helene*, is that of the *Ascension*, so called by the *Portuguez*, upon its being discovered upon *Ascension-day*. It lies at 8. degrees, 30. minutes South of the Line, and hath also very high mountains; but it affords no fresh water, nor any other refreshment; nay, it hath not so much as any verdure; only what may be particularly said of it, is that upon the Coasts of it, there are more Fish than upon those of Saint *Helenes*, which occasions the coming thither of abundance of Birds, that live only upon the said Fish. These Birds are somewhat like Geese, at least as the Relations describe them. As soon as a Vessel comes near, there flie such numbers thereof into it, that they are easily kill'd with sticks, but the meat of them is not good. The Earth of its Mountains is of a reddish colour, much like that which the *Spaniards* call *Almagro*, from the name of a City, where there is much of it found. Ascension Island.

October 9. The South-east wind continued, but so weakly, that we got that day but 15. Leagues, holding our course to the South-west, and we were at 16. degrees, 11. minutes Latitude.

The 10. We had a great calm, with insupportable heats, so that we got that day but 8. Leagues, keeping the same course.

The 11. With an Easterly wind, and keeping on the same course, we got 15. Leagues.

The 12. We got 21. Leagues with the same wind, taking our course to the North-north-west.

The 13. The wind came to North-east, and helped us forward 25. Leagues to North-north-west, to 14. Degrees, 25. minutes Latitude.

The 14. With the same wind, keeping on the same course, we advanced 22. Leagues.

The 15. The wind came to South-east, and keeping on the same course, we advanced 44. Leagues.

The 16. The wind continued South-east, and we got 46. Leagues; we had that day the Sun in the *Zenith*, so that we could not observe the Elevation. The heats were very great.

The 17. We got 40. Leagues, with the same wind.

The 18. With the same wind, we got 42. Leagues, to the fifth degree of Latitude. That day we saw Millions of flying fishes, and abundance of those birds the *Portuguez* call *Mangas de Veludo*. The heats were excessive.

The 19. With a South-east wind, we got 40. Leagues, and got to 3. Degrees, 19 minutes Latitude.

The 20. With the same wind, we got 40. Leagues further, and at one degree, 18. minutes Latitude.

The 21. With the same wind, we got 35. Leagues, and passed under the *Æquinoctial Line*. At one degree beyond the Line lies the *Cape de Lope Gonsales*, upon the Coasts of *Guiny*, the Road whereof is very good. There Vessels take in refreshments, in case they had not done it at Saint *Helene's* Island.

The Island of Saint *Thomas*, so called by the *Portuguez*, from its being discovered on 21th. of December, lies under the Line. Though there be no talk of any Plague at that place, yet is the air thereof very unwholsome, and prejudicial to strangers, who cannot well bear the excessive heats predominant there; Whence it comes, there are few gray-beards seen there, and few *Christians* reach 50. years of Age, though the Inhabitants of the Country live to above a hundred. Day and Night are of an equal length there all the year long, and it rains only in *March* and *September*: but all the remainder of the year, the Earth is moistened by a certain Dew, which brings forth all sorts of fruits. They who discovered the Island found it overgrown with a kind of trees, the branches whereof were all streight. Heretofore there grew Sugar there, in such quantities, as that there was enough to load thence yearly above forty Ships: but it is now sometime since that there bred there a kind of Worms, which so gnaw the Canes, that the Island can hardly furnish six Ships therewith. It affords much Wheat, and Wine, Millet, Rye, Barley, Melons, Cowcubers, Figs, Ginger, red-Parfnips, Cabbages, Navews, Lettice, Parsly, all sorts of Roots, Pulse, and Pot-herbs, and among others, a certain Root named *Ignaman*, accounted a very delicate dish by the Inhabitants. It is a kind of Toad-stool, St. Thomas Island.

1639. stool, the rinde whercof is black, and the meat white, about the bigness, and not unlike the *French Navel*, save that it casts forth several branches below. It is baked in the Embers, and tastes somewhat like, but much better then a great Chestnut. The *Spaniards* have planted Olive-trees there, as also Peach-trees, and Almond-trees, which grow well enough, but bear no Fruit.

Land-Cre-  
wishes.

Among the living Creatures, particularly to this Island, there is a kind of Crevisses, which live within the ground, and work like Moles. There is also abundance of Partridges, Quails, Black-birds, Parrats, and other Birds: but particularly great store of excellent fish, especially VWhales, which are of a monstrous bulk, upon the Coasts of this Island.

In the midst of the Island, there is a Mountain covered with Trees, and over-spread with a Cloud, which supplies it with fresh water, and that abundantly enough to water the Sugar Canes: but what is most remarkable is, that the higher the Sun comes over the Horizon, the more water falls from the said Cloud.

The Inhabi-  
tants.

The natural Inhabitants of it are *Negroes*, but Forreigners continue white to the third and fourth Generation; and it is reported, that the lice and fleas, wherewith the *Negroes* are extremely troubled, meddle not with the white people, inasmuch as the skins of the former are much more delicate then those of the latter.

Rolles-  
Island.

VWithin 35. Leagues of *St. Thomas* Island, South-ward, there is another Island, which the *Portuguez* call *Rolles Island*, wherein there are Oranges, Citrons, *Bananas*, *Ananas*, Ginger, Poultry, Swine, and other refreshments, in such plenty, that having besides a very good Haven at ten Fathom water, it is a more commodious place then the *Cape de Lope Gonzales*.

Carisco-  
Island

The Island of *Carisco*, which lies 30. minutes on this side the Line, hath no other refreshment but fresh-water, and is so near the Continent, that seldome any Ships Anchor there, but in great extremity.

October 22. VWith a South-west wind, we got 33. Leagues, and about noon, were at one degree, 35. minutes Latitude, North from the Line, having very fair weather.

The 23. The same wind brought excessive heats, and advanced us 26. Leagues and 3. degrees, one minute Latitude.

The 24. VVe got but 22. Leagues, having continual thunder and lightning, which lasted till night.

The 25. The same South-east wind carried us 32. Leagues, taking our course North-north-west; The weather was rainy, with storms, and those winds which the *Portuguez* call *Travados*, which are very ordinary towards the Coasts of *Guiny*, from which we conceived our selves to be then distant about 150. Leagues.

The 26. The wind continuing South-east, we got 25. Leagues, and were at seven degrees Latitude. The heat was much greater here, then it had been on the other side of the *Equinoctial*, though the Sun were ten degrees further from our Hemisphere, in as much as the Sun, which had so lately warmed the Septentrional Hemisphere, had not yet had time to warm the Meridional.

The 27. The wind changed and came to North and by East, which obliged us to change our course. We got that day but 13. Leagues, and about noon, were at seven degrees, 50. minutes Latitude. And as we came further off from the Coasts of *Guiny*, we accordingly removed out of the bad weather, which had much incommodated us before.

The 28. The wind came to North-east, which is ordinary in those parts within the 10th. and 20th. degrees, whereas from thence it changes, as it does on our Seas on this side. We got that day 30. Leagues.

The 29. The same wind carried us 31. Leagues; and at noon, we were got to 10 degrees Latitude. The next day, with the same wind, and keeping on the same course, we got 28 Leagues, to 11. degrees, 13. minutes Latitude. The next, with the same wind, the weather rainy, 23. Leagues.

November 1. The same wind continuing, we advanced 26. Leagues.

The 2. The wind North-east, we got 24. Leagues, holding our course to the North-west.

November.

The 3. We kept on, with the same wind, the same course, and were, about noon, at 14. degrees, 40. minutes, and consequently near the Latitude of *Capo Verde*, which is a point of the Land reaching from the Continent of *Africk* into the Sea, between the Rivers of *Gambia* and *Sanaga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Promontorium Arsinarium*.

Capo Ver-  
de.

Its Inhabi-  
tants.

The Inhabitants are black, bulky and well-shaped, but mischievous and dangerous. They are for the most part *Pagans*, whereof some invoke the *Moon*, and others adore the Devil, whom they call *Cammaté*. Some among them profess themselves to be *Mahumetans*; but all they have of that Religion is only the name and Circumcision.

They

They are in perpetual wars with their Neighbours, and are expert enough at the management of their Horfes, which are brought them out of *Barbary*, and very swift. Their Arms are the Bow, and a kind of Lance or light Pike, which they handle very advantageously. The most illustrious marks of their Victories are the Privy parts, which having cut off from their Enemies, they present them to their Wives, who dispose them into Neck-laces, and account them a greater Ornament then Pearls.

1639.  
their Arms

They marry several Wives, whom they force to work like Slaves, as well in the fields as at home, where the Husband is served up alone, with what his Wife hath provided for him; and as soon as he hath din'd, he reassumes his Arms, and goes either a hunting, or about his business. The Women are accustomed to such hardness, that as soon as they are delivered, they go and wash the Child, either in the Sea, or the next River.

The women  
do all the  
work

The Men are for the most part much subject to drunkenness, and such lovers of Wine, that some have been seen to take off a Bottle of *Aqua vite* at a draught. Their times of debauches are, at the Funerals of their Friends, at which they spend four or five dayes together in weeping and drinking by intervals, so that they seldom part ere they get their Skins full of Drink. The Entertainments are performed with the Drum and Pipe, and there is set at the head of the deceased a Pot of Wine or Water, which is changed twice a day, and that for several years afterwards.

The men  
drunkards.

They believe the dead will rise again, but that they shall be white, and trade there as the Europeans do. The French, Spaniards and Dutch, trade much there in the Hides of Oxen, Buffers, and Elks, Elephants teeth, Wax, Rice, Ambergreece, which is excellent there. Here it was that *Peter de la Brouck*, a Dutch Merchant, bought in the year 1606. a piece of Amber of eighty pound weight.

Believe the  
immortality  
of the soul.

We shall here say by the way, that the Portuguese began their discoveries of this Coast of *Africk*, in the year 1417. in the reign of *John I.* who had been Master of *Avis*, under the direction of the Infanto *D. Eurique* his third Son. These first Voyages had not the success he expected, till that in the year 1441. *Anthony Gonsales*, having discovered the Cape del *Cavellero*, brought away with him certain Negroes, whom the Infanto sent to *Pope Martin V.* desiring him to promote the Zeal he had for the advancement of *Christian Religion*, and to bestow on him the places he should discover upon those Coasts, which he pretended were possessed by such as had no right thereto.

D. Eurique  
discovers  
Guiny.

The Pope was pleased to make him a Present of what cost him nothing, and gave him all he should discover in *Africk*, especially in those parts towards the *Indies*, upon condition, that at his death he left them to the Crown of *Portugal*. The Infanto had discovered all the Coast between *Capo de Naom*, as far as a hundred Leagues beyond *Cabo Verde*, and died in the year 1453. King *Alfonso V.* in the year 1457. bestowed all these Conquests on *D. Ferand*, Duke of *Viseo*, Heir to the Infanto *D. Eurique*, and in 1461. the same King ordered the building of a Fort in the Island of *Arguin*, for the safety of Commerce, by *Saero Mendez*, which the King *D. John II.* caused to be rebuilt, before his coming to the Crown, as Lord of those Conquests, and the Commerce of *Guiny*, by gift from the King his Father. This Prince, in the year 1461. farm'd it out to one named *Ferdinand Gomez*, upon condition he should every year discover a hundred Leagues of the Coast; so that in the year 1479. they had discovered the Islands of *Fernando del Po*, *St. Thomas*, *Anno Bueno*, those of *del Principe*, and the Cape of *St. Katherine*. The wars which happened between the King *D. Alfonso*, and the Crown of *Castile*, hindered him from spending his thoughts on these Conquests; but the King *D. John II.* being come to the Crown, sent away in December 1481. *Diego d Azambuja*, who came to *Mina*, *January 19. 1482.* to a place called then *Aldea de dos partes*, and where reigned at that time a King, or Prince, named *Caramansa*.

This place, on which the Portuguese bestowed the name of *Mina*, by reason of the abundance of Gold found there, is seated upon the Coast of *Guiny*, five degrees, forty minutes South of the *Equinoctial Line*, between the Kingdoms of *Axen* and *Cara*, where within the space of fifty Leagues is carried on the trade of almost all the Gold in those parts. It hath on the North-west *Comana*, and on the North-east *Afuto*, small Countries, subject to those of *Abarambues*. The Fort is built upon an ascent, which the situation of the Country makes by little and little at the end of a skirt of Land, which advances into the Sea like a *Peninsula*, having on the North-side the *Ethiopian Sea*, and on the South a little River, which serves it for a Ditch. It may be easily kept by five hundred men, and the Town, which is at the foot of the Fort, hath about eight hundred Inhabitants. But this place is so fenny and barren, that such as have settled themselves there upon the account of Traffick, are forc'd to buy Provisions of those of *Camana* and *Afuto*.

The situa-  
tion of  
Mina.

The

1639. The Inhabitants are docile enough, and better natured then the *Negroes*, though not so rational as to matter of Religion. They make Divinities of all they see, that's new and extraordinary. They had at that time enclosed with a Wall a great Tree, which they adored, and to which, on certain dayes, Water and Meat was served up by one of their Priests, whom they call *Soso*. They had also a veneration for the Bones of a Whale, and religiously worshipped a certain Rock, for this reason, that it was higher then any other near it. No Nation in the World is more superstitious about groundless Divinations and Augury, then this is. They take certain pieces of Straw into their mouths, and according to their falling to the ground they judge of the event of things. They all affirm, that they speak to the Devil, and they have a particular respect for such as have the reputation of Sorcerers, but indeed are only Cheats and Impostors, who make their advantages of the weakness of the besotted multitude.

Their Superstition. They are very religious in the observance of their Oaths, as being perswaded, that such as violate them shall dye suddenly, and alledge to that purpose, the examples of some of their Nation, who having broke the Oath they had taken, not to injure some holy persons, who preach'd the Gospel in those parts, were all destroyed. From this sincerity, there arises an advantage not known elsewhere; which is, that Law-suits and differences are decided in a few hours, upon the pure affirmation of the parties. No Crime so heynous, but a man may redeem his life with money, unless he be so lost to goodness, as to fall several times into the same offence.

Their Clothing. They go naked, and cover only those parts which are not with decency to be named; and they do it with Ape-skins, or pieces of Cloath of divers colours, which they make of their Date-trees. The Ornament they most affect is, to make their Bodies shine by frequent rubbing them with Oyl, or Fat. Persons of Quality wear Bracelets of Gold about their Armes and Legs, and tye up their Hair and Beards with small Chains of the same Metal.

Their Arms. In their wars, they observe neither Order nor Discipline, and the Instruments they make use of, are fitter rather to excite laughter, then animate them to fighting. Their defensive Arms are made of Lions, Tigers, or Leopards skins, and the offensive are Darts, and short Lances. Their *Hidalgos*, when they go to the wars, are attended by two Pages, whereof one carries the Buckler, and the other a little Stool, on which the Master rests himself when any halt is made.

They regulate the number of their Wives according to their Revenue; and they contract Marriages without any Ceremonies, giving the Brides Father only ten Rials for his Wine, which they are such lovers of, that many times they take of it, till they have lost their Senses and Understanding.

The Settlement of the Dutch in Guiny. The Dutch have there the Fort called *Boure*, within four Leagues of *Mina*. They have also their Factors at *Cara*, *Coromantin*, and *Aldea del Tuerto*, and they quietly drive on the trade of *Mina*, where they return yearly above two millions of Gold, and by that means get out of the *Fazans*, and other Inhabitants of *Aethiopia*, great quantities of Gold; especially since their settling at this place occasioned the *Portuguez* to attempt what they did at *Brazil*, contrary to the Treaty they had made with the States of the *United Provinces*. The Dutch had already destroyed the trade of the *Portuguez* there, upon this score, that they were content with a moderate profit, and treated the *Negroes* with so much mildness, that they brought them to some liking of their Religion, which hath made a considerable progress among them.

*Christopher Colombo*, perceiving King *John II.* to be much inclined to those Voyages went to the Court of *Portugal*, to proffer his service, for the discovery of the *West-Indies*. But the business being taken into consideration at the Council, they thank'd *Colombo*, and resolv'd to prosecute their Conquests in the East. In pursuance of this resolution, the King sent away two of the best Pilots in the Kingdom, named *Diego Can*, and *Juan Alonso d' Avero*.

*Diego Can* discovers the Kingdom of Congo. The former took his course to *Mina*, and arrived at the *Cape de Lope Consales*, and afterwards doubling that of *St. Katharine*, he entred the River *Zaire*, seven degrees South of the Line, and there took possession of the Kingdom of *Congo*.

The Kingdom of Congo. This Kingdom reaches from the Cape of *St. Katherine* Southward, as far as *Cape de Ledo*, and hath on the West, the *Aethiopian* Sea; on the South, the Mountains of the Moon, and the *Cafres*; on the East, the *Mantabas*; and on the North, the Kingdom of *Beny*, being in length about a hundred and sixty Leagues, from the second degree, 30. minutes, to the 13. degree beyond the Line. It consists of six great Provinces, named, *Bamba*, *Songo*, *Sunda*, *Pango*, *Batta* and *Pambu*.

its Provinces

The Province *Bamba* reaches along the Coast, from the River *Ambrisi*, to that of *Coanfè*; 1639. the Metropolis, *Bamba*, lying between the Rivers of *Lofa* and *Ambrisi*, 30. Leagues from *Bamba*. the Sea.

The Province of *Songo* lies upon the Rivers of *Zaire* and *Loango*, reaching from the River *Ambrisi*, to the Mountains which divide it from the Kingdom of *Loango*. The Metropolis is of the same name.

The City of *Sunda* does also derive its name to the Province, whereof it is the Metropolis. It is 8. Leagues in compass, and comprehends under its jurisdiction all the Country, which is near the City of *Congo*, ( by the *Portuguez* named *St. Salvador* ) as far as the River *Zaire*.

The Province of *Pango*, which had heretofore its particular King, hath on the North, the Province of *Sunda*; on the South, that of *Batta*; on the West, the City of *Congo*; and on the East, the Mountains of the Sun. The Metropolis, from which it hath the name, lies upon the River *Barbella*, which hath its Source common with that of the *Nile*.

The Province of *Batta* lies North-eastward, between that of *Pango*, and the River *Barbella*, and reaches to the burnt Mountains.

The City of *Congo*, is the Metropolis of the Province of *Pamba*, and lies upon a Mountain fifty Leagues from the Sea. There is in the same Province, another Mountain which is above six Leagues in length, and hath on it so many Villages and Hamlets, as find Habitations for above a hundred thousand persons.

*Duarte Lopez*, who lived several years in those parts, and made a particular description of the Kingdom of *Congo*, which *Augustinus Cassiodorus* hath taken the pains to translate into the *German* language, affirms, that the Air is so temperate there in Winter, as it is in *Rome* in *October*; and that the greatest annoyance to the *Europeans*, is the Rain, which falls there every day, for two hours before, and as many in the afternoon, as being rather burning than hot. Their Winter begins the 15. of *March*, and their Summer the 15. of *September*, and during the months of *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, not a day passes, but it rains, so that there is hardly a fair day in five months. But the dayes and nights are of equal length in all seasons of the year. The Air of the Country

The River *Zaire*, which rises out of the same Lake, where the *Nile* hath its Source, is certainly the greatest River of any in *Africk*, in as much as having received into its Channel, the waters of the *Vambo*, and the *Barbella*, it is 28. leagues broad at the mouth. The River *Goanze* is a common Frontier between the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola*; and in the *Lelonda*, there are abundance of Crocodiles and Sea-horses. The River Zaire.

This last Creature is of a dusky colour, and hath very little hair; It is in the head like a Cartal, without ears, hath broad nostrils, and in his jaws two teeth, like the Tusks of a wild Boar. Its hoof hath the form of a three-leav'd-grass, and he neighs like a Horse, and runs very swiftly. The *Dutch* in their Relations, affirm, that the *Africans* make use of them, but avoid watering of them in Rivers, lest they should overthrow their Riders. Sea-horses.

From the hot Rains we spoke of proceeds the fruitfulness of the Country, which brings forth Herbs, Fruit and Corn in so great plenty, that if the Inhabitants would but cultivate the Ground, the World would not afford a better place.

The Mountains in the Province of *Pamba* afford Gold, and the Forrests thereof are full of Elephants, which are so big, that some teeth have weighed two hundred pounds a piece. There is also among others, a certain Creature called *Sebra*, which is like a Mule, save that it is capable of engendring, and from the back-bone down to the belly, it hath three bars, each of about three fingers breadth, whereof one is black, another white, and the third yellow. This Creature is so swift, that the *Portuguez*, to express extraordinary swiftness, instance in the *Sebra*. Gold Mines.

The *Empalenges* is a kind of Oxe, but less and more fierce. The Forrests there are also stored with Wolves, Foxes, wild Bufflers, wild Goats, Deer, and Conies, whereof there must be abundance, in regard they are never hunted, nor indeed any, but the Civet-cats, which they tame and keep, for the advantage made of them. It is reported there are also Serpents fifteen foot in length, which have such wide throats, that they swallow down Creatures entire. There are *Amphybia*, but not venomous, for the Inhabitants eat of them, and prefer their flesh before any Venison. There are others on the contrary, so dangerous, that such as are stung by them die within twenty four hours. Serpents.

They have also all sorts of Birds, as Pheasants, Partridges, Hens, Turkey-cocks, Ducks, Geese, Turtles, Pidgeons, and all kinds of Hawks and Eagles.

The Mountain of the Province of *Pamba* brings forth all sorts of Fruits, and very clear



1639. and wholsom Waters, and the Country thereabouts affords a kind of Wheat called *Leuco*, not much bigger then Mustard-seed, but makes better Bread then any in our parts. It is accordingly more esteemed, then that made of Rice or *Turkey-wheat*, which is left to the poorer sort; Citrons, Oranges, and *Bananas*, are as common there, as in the *Indies*; but the Tree yields them most Fruit is the Date-tree.

**Cocos.** There are two kinds of it, for some bear Dates, other *Cocos*, whereof they make Butter, Oil, Wine, Vinegar, Fruit and Bread, and yet they have withall their use in Physick, since the juyce extracted from them is so great a cleanser of the Reins, that no person of this Country ever complained of the Stone or Gravel.

All Simples are incomparably better there then in any of our parts, as are also the Melons, Cowcumbers and Pulse, which the Country brings forth in great plenty.

No Mountain but is planted with a great number of Fruit-trees, and several others, which keep on their verdant Liveries all the year long: or if they are barren without, they fail not of yielding somewhat within, as Marble, Alabaster, Jasper, Porphyry, nay, some Hyacinths, and particularly that white kind of Marble, which was heretofore so highly esteemed by the *Romans*.

The Inhabitants of the Country are *Negroes*, but the Women not so black as the Men. Their Hair curls, but they have not so great Lips, nor such flat Noses, as the other Moors. It is particularly affirmed of those of *Bamba*, that they are so strong, they will at one blow strike off the head of an Oxe, or cut a Slave in the middle.

**Their houses.** Their Houses are low, narrow, and ill built, not for want of Materials, but Work-men, in as much as there is neither Mason nor Architect among them, unless a man may say, there is not any place in the World hath more, since every man builds his own House.

**They are all Architects and Physicians.** The same may be said of Physicians, They all understand *Medicine* and *Botanicks*, at least as much as they think necessary for the preservation or recovery of their health. They cure Feavers with a little Sandall-wood beaten to powder, the Head-ach by bleeding, and the Purge they take is only the Powder made of the Bark of a certain Tree.

**Their Clothing.** They go most bare-headed, save that some wear a kind of Hats made of Nut-shells, or the Barks of Trees. Some also wear Plumes of Feathers, which they fasten to their hair with a piece of Packthread; and as well Men as Women, put into their Ears very weighty Rings of Gold, with Stones in them, and wear Iron, Tin, or Brass Rings or Plates, about the Arms or Legs, though most of quality are clothed after the *Portuguez* fashion. They sleep on Mats, and eat upon the Ground, sometimes shuffling flesh, and fish, and fruits together all into the same dish; but persons of quality are otherwise serv'd, and eat alone, having Mats laid under the meat. They never do their necessities, but they lay a stick cross a pit, upon which they sit for their greater ease.

**The wealth of the Country.** A man may guess at the Wealth of the Country, by the abundance of Gold, Silver, Copper, Cristal, Iron, and other Metals, which their Mines afford, but especially by the prodigious quantity of Ivory sold there. There is also a great trade driven in Civet, and the *Portuguez* and *Spaniards* buy there a great number of Slaves, whom they set at work in the Mines of *Peru*, or the Sugar-mills at *Bresil*.

**Their money.** Instead of Money, they use shells; whence it comes, that the King of *Congo* hath a Governour in the Island of *Londa*, who hath the oversight of the fishing there, which is of so much the greater importance, in that men find there, what is here sought, though under another name, many times with the hazard of life, and the loss of honour and conscience.

**The absolute power of the King of Congo.** The King of *Congo* is so absolute, that he doth not only dispose of the lives and estates of his Subjects, but also, there is not a person in all his Country can pretend a propriety to any thing; so that if he were not yearly paid the tribute due to him, he might take all and fastish himself. He hath his Governours in all the Provinces, who have their residence in the chief Cities. The Governour of *Batta*, being of the Blood-royal, is the first, not only of all the Governours, but also of all the Ministers of State: and in that qualification, his authority is so great, that none of the Council will contradict any thing he proposes. The King sometimes permits him to eat at his own Table, a priviledge he allows not his own Sons; but when he receives that honour, he does not sit down, but stands all the time. He hath also his Pipers and other Musicians, as the King hath, and he hath only the priviledge of having within his Government, such Guards as make use of Fire-arms. He employes them particularly against the *Giaques*, a people living upon the *Nile*, which makes incurSIONS into the Kingdom, and against which an Alarm is given in the Country, by discharging of a Musket.

The Province of *Bamba* is as it were a Cittadel to the whole Kingdom, in regard thence i 639. come the best Souldiers. It can raise above forty thousand able men, with whom, yet those of *Batta*, where they may raise above seventy thousand; are not to be compared; their words which are brought them by the *Portuguezs*, are as big as those of the *Swiffes*, yet they are so expert in the handling of them, as some among us are in handling ordinary Swords. They also use Darts, and make their Bucklers of the barks of Trees.

Their Armies consist only of foot, and fight all at the same time, or if they be divided into several Batallions, the General keeps in the midst of the Army, and commands, by means of divers instruments, by which the other Commanders, whom they call *Mani*, understand whether they are to advance or retreat, close, or open, turn to the right or left, fight on, or desist. They have a kind of wooden Trumpets, which make a dreadful noise, as do also their Drums, which are made of barks of trees, and covered with a skin, which they beat with great sticks of Ivory. Their Ar-  
mies and  
manner of  
fighting.

They have also an Instrument, made of plates of Iron disposed triangle-wise, which they beat with ordinary sticks; and Elephants teeth made hollow, the noise whereof very much animates them to fighting. The General causes to be brought into the Army a great many of these Instruments, which he distributes among the inferiour Officers, who thereby answer the Signal given them by the General.

*Christian Religion* was introduced into the Kingdom of *Congo*, by occasion of an Em- How Chr-  
istian Reli-  
gion was  
introduced  
there. bassie, which King *Caramansa* sent to *D. John II.* King of *Portugal*, at the second Voyage made by *Diego Can* into those parts. The chief Embassadour, whose name was *Casuta*, being baptized in *Portugal*, the King sent him back with a Convoy of three Ships, under the command of *Gonsalo de Sousa*, who being come to *Cabo Verde*, died there of the Plague; as did also *Casuta*. *Ruy de Sousa*, who succeeded his Uncle in the charge of General, was forced to put in at the *Poort of Pinda*, in the Province of *Songo*, where the *Dutch* have now a Factory, and where the Lord or Governour of the place, who was Uncle to the King, was baptized with his Son, and all his Family. The King and Queen followed their example, and were called *John* and *Eleanor*.

This design was prosecuted by King *Emanuel*, in the year 1504. but the discovery of the *Indies*, and the advantages made in those parts, having occasioned the discontinuance of the Voyages upon the Coasts of *Africk*, those foundations of Religion were neglected, and the *Dutch* made their advantages thereof, to introduce the *Protestant Religion* into that Country.

Let us now see, what became of *Juan Alonso d' Avero*, who left *Portugal* with *Diego* The King-  
dom of Bé-  
ny *Can*. He discovered upon the same Coast of *Africk*, the Kingdom of *Beny*, between the *Mina*, and the Kingdom of *Congo*. It is about fourscore Leagues in length, and forty in breadth, and about twelve Leagues or thereabouts from the Sea, a man may see the City of *Hugatoo*, upon the River which the discoverers of it named *Rio Fermofo*: a little further within the Countrey, the Metropolis, which derives its name to the whole Kingdom. *Juan Alonso* was no sooner arrived there, but the King of *Beny* made a Treaty with him, and promised he would be baptized. But this Conversion, being without any motive either of Faith, or knowledge of the Religion he was to embrace, it accordingly came to nothing, as did also the Trade they intended to establish there; for it was soon quitted for that of the *Indies*.

As to *Cabo Verde*, which *Ptolomey* calls *Promontorium Arsinarium*, and puts at ten degrees, Cabo Ver-  
de descri-  
bed. forty minutes, on this side the Line, we affirm it for certain, that it is at fourteen degrees, twenty minutes, and lies between the Rivers of *Zanaga*, and *Gambra*, or *Gambia*, which *Ptolomey* seems to call *Durago* and *Stachiris*. It is called also *Promontorium Hesperium*, from its being so much towards the West, and lying over against the Islands, which the Ancients called *Hesperides*: and it is called *Cabo Verde*, from the Trees and verdure, for which it is remarkable: But though *Ptolomey* affirms these Rivers to be very little ones, and that their Sources are hardly known, yet it is certain they rise out of two Lakes, whereof one is called by *Ptolomey*, *Paulus Chelonides*, now the Lake of *Goaga*, and the other that of *Naba*. The Inhabitants believe they have their rise from the *Nile*, but there is little likelihood they should.

*Ptolomey* gives no account of their falling into the Sea; but it hath been found since, that the River *Gambra*, which runs throughout the Province of *Mandiga*, having received into its Channel the waters of several other Rivers, which cross that Province, falls into the Ocean, at thirteen degrees, thirty minutes: And that the *Zanaga*, changing its name several times, though its course be not so long, but streight from East to West, loses it quite, at fifteen degrees and a half, where it falls into the River *Geny*, which derives its name to the Country we now call *Guiny*.

1639. *The Inhabitants of the Cabo Verde.* Ptolomey's Tables discover, that he knew nothing of the people who live between these two Rivers, so that to speak pertinently of them, we are to credit the modern Relations, which affirm, that the people called *Budumeyes* are possessors of the Eastern part of the Country, and reach as far as *Cabo Verde*: The *Foules*, and *Berbecines*, are quarter'd further within the Country, upon the River *Zanaga*, and more Northerly than the *Jaloses*, whereof some are subject to the *Foules*, others to the *Budumeyes*. They call their King *Breque*, and their Country is plain and fenny, but very fertile in Cattel, Wine, Cotton, Ivory, wild Fowl, and Horses, by reason of the frequent inundations of the River. They have neither Gold nor Silver, but abundance of Iron, whereof they make all sorts of Instruments, and Utensils. The Air there is very wholesom, though there be no great change of Seasons. The Inhabitants of *Cabo Verde* are accounted couragious, and they have learnt of the *Zene-guezes*, their Neighbours, the Art of manning Horses, as they have also *Paganisme*, which they profess.

*Are Pagans.*

They have this advantage over their Neighbours, that Justice is better administered among them than elsewhere; that they proceed with greater prudence and secrecy about publick Affairs, which concern the greatness and safety of the State; and that they impartially dispose punishments and rewards. The Prince, when he makes choice of any for his Council, regards principally their Age, and he bestows the place of Judicature on such among them as have most experience, and are best acquainted with Affairs. These sit every day to hear Causes, and decide Differences.

*Their way of raising forces.*

They know nothing of our Military discipline, but their way of making war hath something particular in it, which is this: All that are able to bear Arms, are disposed into several Regiments, and lodged in Quarters appointed for that purpose, under their Colonels, whom they call *Jugarafes*; so that as soon as there is any occasion, the Orders are dispatched from Quarter to Quarter, and by that means a powerful Army is raised in a few dayes, without any need of making new Levies; in as much as the places are kept for the Sons of the Souldiers, who succeed their Fathers, and put the Prince to no charge, but what he allows them by way of salary, since they bring their provisions and baggage along with them.

The names of buying and selling are not yet known among them: for having neither Gold nor Silver coined, they truck and exchange all, as well among themselves as with Forreigners. Their greatest Commerce consists in trucking of Hides and Slaves. Of these they have only such as they take in war, which being many times civil among themselves, they make the best advantage they can of them.

*Their Nobility.*

They have among them some distinction of Nobility and Peasantry, and call the former *Sabibibos*, who are a kind of Knights, for whom they have a great respect, but not so much as they bear the *Grandees*, whom they call *Tubalats*, out of which rank they chuse their King, provided he be full thirty years of age.

*The state of the Country when first discovered.*

When the *Portuguez* discovered the Country of the *Jaloses*, there reign'd a very powerful Prince, named *Brabiran*, who dying left three Sons, by two several Wives. By the former, he had *Cibitan* and *Camba*, and by the second, who was the Widow of another Prince, Father of *Beomi*, *Biran*, who was chosen King after the Fathers death. His two elder Brethren, envying the greatness of that Prince, declared themselves so openly against him, that *Biran*, who had great assurances of the affection and fidelity of *Beomi*, his Brother by the same Mother, took him so much into favour, that he seem'd to have reserved to himself only the name of King. But that extraordinary favour prov'd fatal to both; for *Biran* was kill'd by his Brethren, and *Beomi*, who thought to make his advantage of that Fratricide, to get himself chosen, took up Arms against the two Brethren. He got together a considerable Army; but being afterwards forsaken by his Friends, he was forc'd to apply himself to *Portugal* for relief. King *John II.* having got him instructed in the *Christian Religion*, had him baptized with all his Family, and sent him back with a considerable Fleet, under the conduct of *Pedro Vaz de Coyna*, whom he ordered to build a Fort at the mouth of the River *Zmaga*, it being his design to get further into *Africk*, as far as the Country of *Prestor John*, whereof he had but a confused knowledge. But that great design proved abortive, and miscarried at the beginning, through the cowardice of *Pedro Vaz*, who minding his convenience more than his honour, demolished the Fort he had newly built, and not able to endure the just reproaches which *Beomi* made him upon that occasion, he kill'd him with his own hands, the King of *Portugal* not expressing the least resentment of so base an action.

*The Green Islands.*

The Islands, which the *Portuguez* call *As Ilhas Verdes*, and the *Dutch*, the *Salt-Islands*, lye over against *Cabo Verde*, and were not discovered by the *Portuguez* till the year 1472. Some are of opinion, they are the *Gorgonides* of *Ptolomy*: but I dare not affirm, that that great

great Person, who hath left us so confused an account of that Coast of *Africk*, knew any thing of these Islands, whereof the nearest is 70. and the most remote 160. Leagues distant from the Continent. They reach from the 15. to the 19. degree, and are in number ten, to wit, *St. Jago*, *St. Antonio*, *Santa Lucia*, *Sant. Vincente*, *St. Nicholas*, *Ilha blanca*, *Ilha de Sal*, *Ilha de Mayo*, *Ilha de Fogo*, and *Ilha da Boa Vista*. It is probable, the *Portuguez* gave them the general name of *Ilhas Verdes*, or the *Green-Islands*, either from the Capé we spoke of before, or from the verdure which floats upon the water in those parts, and which the *Portuguez* call *Sargasso*, from its resemblance to Water-creffes. The Sea is so covered therewith, from the twentieth to the twenty fourth degree, that they seem to be floating Islands, intended to block up the passage of Ships. Nay, this Herb is so thick thereabouts, that, without a pretty strong Gale of wind, it would be no easie matter to pass that way. Yet can it not be said whence the said verdure comes to that place, where the Sea hath no bottom, there being not any but in those parts, at above a hundred and fifty Leagues from the Coasts of *Africk*. They were desert and not inhabited, when the *Portuguez* discovered them; but now they are cultivated, and bring forth plenty of Rice, Millet, *Abruin*, or *Turkish wheat*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Bannanas*, *Annanas*, *Ignanes*, *Potatoes*, *Melons*, *Citruls*, *Cowcubers*, *Figs* and *Raisins*, twice a year. The Islands of *Mayo de Sal*, and *de Boa Vista*, are so stored with Cattle, that they load whole Ships thence for *Brazil*. The same Islands yield also such abundance of Salt, that the *Dutch* have taken occasion thence to name them the *Salt-Islands*. The same *Portuguez* brought thither *Barbary*, and common Hens, Peacocks and Pidgeons, which are so increased there, that with the *Partridges*, *Quails*, and other smaller Birds, whereof there is plenty, people may fare very well, at an easie rate.

There are also among others, a kind of Birds, which the *Portuguez* call *Flamencos*, that are white all over the body, and have wings of a lively red, near the colour of fire, and are as big as Swans. They have, above all, abundance of Conies; and the Sea supplies them with so much Fish, that, at all times, a man may find there many *Portugal Vessels*, fishing for the provision of *Brazil*. Whence it may be inferred, they lie very conveniently for the refreshing of such Ships as are bound for the *Indies*, in as much as going thither they may easily put in at the Island of *Mayo*, and coming thence, at that of *St. Anthony*, so as the *Portuguez* who live there cannot hinder them.

The Island of *St. Jago* is the chiefest of them, as being the residence of the Governour and Archbishop, whose spiritual jurisdiction extends not only over these Islands, but also over all the *Portuguez* are possessed of, upon the Coasts of *Africk*, as far as the *Cape of Good hope*.

November 4. With a North-east wind we got 24. Leagues, keeping our course to the North-north-west, and were got to 16. Degrees, one minute Latitude. *The Voyage continued.*

The 5. With the same wind 31. Leagues, to 17. degrees, 27. minutes.

The 6. With the same wind, and in the same course, 34. Leagues, to 19. degrees, 10. minutes.

The 7. The wind continuing North-east, we got 36. Leagues. Not that we had still the advantage of the *Monson*, at the Latitude; but it is to be observed, that the North-east wind reigns in those parts all the year long, and brings Vessels as far as the *Artick Tropick*.

The 8. The wind came East-north-east, and we run 32. Leagues, and were got to 22. degrees, 35. minutes Latitude. Here we met with abundance of *Sargasso*, which I really found like *Creffes*, save that it was of a more yellowish green, and had little seeds, like those of green *Goosberries*. Some are of opinion, that the wind forces it from the Rocks upon the Coasts of the *West-Indies*; but this is the more unlikely, in that the North-east wind reigns there all the year long, as we said before.

The 9. The same wind continuing, we got 33. Leagues, taking our course to the North, and were at 24. degrees, 32. minutes Latitude.

The 10. With the same wind, 25. Leagues, taking our course to North-north-west, at 25. degrees, 40. minutes Latitude.

The 11. The wind came to East-south-east, and afterwards to South, and towards evening, to North-west, with a great Calm; so that we got that day but eight Leagues, changing our course from North to West, at twenty six degrees, forty minutes Latitude. That day we took one of those Fish the *Dutch* call *Haye*, which are very common in the *Indies*; but our Sea-men affirmed they had never seen any of them in that Sea.

The 12. We got 11. leagues with a North-east wind, keeping our course to the North-west.



**1639.** The 13. With a North-north-east wind, we got 21. leagues, taking our course West-north-west.

The 14. With the same wind, and in the same course, we got 22. leagues.

The 15. The wind North-east, we got 20. leagues to North-west, at 27. degrees, 30. minutes latitude.

The 16. and 17. With the same wind, keeping the same course, we got these two dayes 32. leagues.

The 18. The wind South-east, we run 21. leagues, to the North-west, at 29. degrees, 20. minutes latitude.

The 19. The wind chang'd, and came to South-south-west, and brought with it Rain, which lasted all day; yet so as we advanced 37. Leagues, taking our course North-east.

The 20. The wind, North-west, we got 12. Leagues, in the same course.

The 21. The same wind carried us 22. Leagues.

The 22. The wind West-south-west, we got 40. Leagues to North-north-east, at 35. degrees, 20. minutes Latitude.

The 23. With a South-west wind, we got 34. Leagues, to the East-north-east.

The 24. the same wind, and course, 35. Leagues.

The 25. With a North-west wind, we got 33. Leagues, to North-east, and were at 38. degrees, ..... minutes Latitude.

The 26. Being calm weather, we got but 29. Leagues.

The 27. We got but 12. Leagues, taking our course East-north-east, at 38. degrees, 48. minutes Latitude.

The 28. The wind came to South-south-east, and carried us 27. Leagues, taking our course East-south-east.

The 29. The wind South-south-east, we were at noon, at 33. degrees, 30. minutes. We saw the Islands of *Corvo*, and *de Flores*, which some number among the *Affores*; and we got that day 24. Leagues, taking our course East-south-east.

The *Affores*,

The Islands of *Corvo* and *Flores*, are not to be numbred among those which the *Spaniards* call the *Affores*, by reason of the many Hawks found there, when they were discovered. The *Dutch* call them the *Flemmings Islands*, hence, that the first Inhabitants of the Island of *Fajal*, which is one of the seven *Affores*, were *Flemmings*, either born in *Flanders*, or some other Province of the Low-Countries, where they speak *Low-Dutch*. The Posterity of those *Flemmings* live there still, and observe the Customs of their own Country, and have their habitations on the little River rising out of the Mountains, which the *Portuguez*, upon that occasion, call *Ribera dos Flamencos*.

*Tercera*,

The seven Islands called the *Affores*, are *Tercera*, *St. Michael*, *Santa Maria*, *Sau*, *Georges*, *Gratiosa Pico*, and *Fajal*. *Tercera* is the biggest of them all, as being fifteen or sixteen Leagues in compass. The Country is mountainous, and all the Island is so encompassed with Rocks, that it is in a manner inaccessible.

It hath no Haven, but that at the City of *Angra*, which is the Metropolis, not only of *Tercera*, but also of all the other Islands, and that no Rode where Vessels might safely ride.

The Port of *Tercera* is like a Crescent between two Promontories, whereof one hath two Mountains advancing so far into the Sea, that they seem to be quite loosned from the Island.

They are called *Bresil*, and so high, that a man may from thence discover twelve or thirteen Leagues into the Sea. The Governours of the *Affores*, and the Bihop of all those Islands, live in the City of *Angra*, within three Leagues whereof lies that which they call *Villa da Praya*, which is well built, but not very populous, in as much as it is a place of no Commerce, by reason of a flat shore or strand thereabouts, which occasioned the name of the City.

*Angra*

The City of *Angra* is so called from the manner of its scituation, it being a term whereby the *Portuguez* would express the Figure of the Mount when it is half open, or the New-moon. It hath two Forts, whereof one which is towards the Mountains, serves it for a Cittadel; and the other, called the Castle of *Saint Sebastian*, is built upon one of the points, which shut up the Port, which it defends with the Artillery. On the other point which is forked, there are two Towers, whence they give the signal, as soon as they discover any Vessels at Sea, either from *Bresil*-side, or from *Europe*.

These Islands belong to the Crown of *Portugal*; but during the last troubles of that Kingdom, there was a *Castilian* Garrison there, under the Command of *D. A. Alvaro de Vizeiros*; from whom the *Portuguez* soon took the Castle of *Saint Sebastian*; but he kept

kept the Cittadel, till famine, and the utmost extremity forced him to deliver it up, on composition, *May 6. 1642.* After the relief which had been sent from *Saint Lucars, Corogno,* and *Dunkirk,* had proved ineffectual, partly through the treachery of the *Portuguez,* who served in the Fleet, and partly by their vigilance, who had possess'd themselves of the *Avenues* of the Island.

The soil of it is very good, nay the very Rocks yield Wine, though they are in some places so steepy, that it is almost a miracle how the Rock should thrust out of its Veins, which are not covered with Earth, the Vine-stock, which does not thrive so well in the best parts of the Valley. 'Tis true, the Wine is none of the most excellent, and that such as are able to get better, have it brought from *Madera,* or the *Canaries*: but this hinders not, but it may be affirmed, that Salt and Oyl only excepted, which are brought thither from *Portugal,* this Island hath not only what is necessary, but also what may be accounted delicacy, since that, besides the Wheat whereof, there is sufficient to maintain all the Inhabitants, they have Apples, Pears, Citrons and Oranges, but especially plenty of Peaches, and of all the kinds thereof. They have also Cherries, Plums, Walnuts, and Chestnuts, but not such quantities thereof, as of other Fruits. Nor do they want any Pulse, or Pot-herbs.

*They have good Fruit.*

They have also a Fruit they call *Battatas,* which spreads its root just under the uppermost Superficies of the Earth, as the Vine does, and brings forth a Fruit much like a Rad-dish, save that it is much bigger, there being some Roots that weigh a pound or more. It is much esteemed in *Portugal,* but in the Island it is of no account, so that only the poorer sort live on it. They have also a certain Plant which grows up five or six foot high, and is fastned to the Earth by an infinite number of Roots, yellow as Gold, and as small as the Hair of a Mans Head. The Inhabitants use it instead of Wooll and Feathers, to fill their Beds and Mattresses withall: but would they take the pains to spin it, they might make very good Stuffs thereof.

*Battatos of Potatoes.*

Cattle is extremely multiplied there, as also all the several sorts of Poultry brought thither, and there are abundance of Quails, and such multitudes of little Birds, like the *Canary Bird,* that some of the Inhabitants trade in nothing else. But there is neither wild Fowl nor Venison, and consequently no hunting, nor any divertisement of that kind, though there be Forrest enough, which might be sufficiently stored in a short time.

The Wheat there is very good, but will not keep, in so much, that they are forc'd to put it under ground, to preserve it to the end of the year. Whence it comes, that every Family hath a pit in some part of the City, the entrance whereof was so big, that a man may go in, into which they dispose their Wheat, seal it with the mark and seal of the Owner, and leave it there till *Christmas,* and then they have it conveyed to their Houses, and put it into Chests of Bull-rushes, where it keeps the remainder of the year, so as that there is no need of ever stirring it.

*Their Wheat will not keep.*

There is no Province in *Europe,* where Oxen are so fair, and so strong, as in the Island of *Tercera,* or have fairer and larger Horns; and they are withall so tame, that they impose names upon them, as we do on Dogs, that they may go or come when they are called.

*Tercera Oxen very large.*

To hear the noise which the Rocks make when people go over them, as if they were going over a Cellar, a man would think the Island were all hollow; and its probable, that the Air which is rarified in its Concavities, occasions the frequent Earthquakes, whereto it is subject, as are also most of the other Islands. There happened so great a one in this of *Tercera,* on the 24. of *May, 1614.* that it overturn'd, in the City of *Angra,* eleven Churches, and nine Chappels, besides private houses; and in the City of *Praya,* it prov'd so dreadful, that there was hardly a house left standing: and the 16. of *June 1628.* there happened so horrible an Earthquake in the Island of *Saint Michael,* that not far from it, the Sea opened, and thrust forth at a place, where there was above a hundred and fifty fathom water, an Island above a League and a half in length, and above sixty fathom high.

*Is subject to Earth-quakes.*

*An Island: flamed of a sudden.*

There are also, in these two Islands, certain places, out of which there issues forth a sulphurous smoak, whence it may be inferred, there is fire hidden under the earth, that gives heat to the Springs of scalding water, which are to be seen thereabouts.

There is a Spring within three Leagues of *Angra,* which petrifies Wood; whereof there is an evident demonstration in a Tree, the root whereof is absolutely petrified, as far as it was covered by the water, whereas otherwise it is not changed at all.

*A Spring that petrifies wood.*

In the Island of *Pico,* there is a certain Wood called *Texio,* which is as hard as Iron, and being cut, is full of Waves like Chamlet, and as red as any Scarlet. The

*A kind of wood hard as Iron. Cabinets*

1639. Cabinets made of this Wood are so highly esteemed, that the Wood is kept for the Kings use.

*Cedar.* Cedar is so common, that they do not only make all sorts of Household-stuffe thereof, but also Waggons and Boats; Nay, sometimes it serveth for firing.

The Trade of these parts is not very great; for, *Wood* only excepted, whereof they make great quantities in these Islands, the Inhabitants have few other Commodities to Trade withall; unless it be some provisions, which they sell to the Ships that are bound for the *East-Indies*, and take in refreshments at these places, in their way.

*St. Michael's Island.* The Island of Saint *Michael*, whereof we spoke before, lies at twenty seven or twenty eight Leagues, South-east, from the Island of *Tercera*, and is above twenty Leagues in length.

Its Metropolis is called *Punta Delgada*, and its Soil is incomparably more fertile then that of the other, and produces such plenty of Wheat, that it is able to relieve its Neighbours. There are made yearly in this Island above two hundred thousand *Quintals* of *Wood*, wherewith the Inhabitants drive a great trade, though it hath neither Haven nor Road, where Ships may ride secure from all wind.

*St. Maries Island.* Twelve leagues South from that of Saint *Michael*, lies the Island of Saint *Mary*, which is about ten or twelve leagues in compass, and affords only Provisions, and Potters-earth, wherewith the Inhabitants trade into the neighbouring Islands.

*Gratiosa Island.* The Island *Gratiosa* is not above five or six Leagues in compass, and lies North-north-east from that of *Tercera*, from which it is about seven or eight leagues distant. The pleasantness of it, and the Fruits which grow there in great abundance, occasioned its having that name given it.

*St. Georges Island.* The Island of Saint *George* lies about eight or nine Leagues North-west from that of *Tercera*, and is twelve leagues in length, and two or three in breadth. It affords plenty of Provisions, but little *Wood*. The Country is rough and full of Mountains, which yield great store of Cedar, wherein the Inhabitants drive a considerable Trade, with the Joyners of *Tercera*, where most Tradersmen have settled themselves, in regard there it is the Ships put in, and that they can best put off their Commodities.

*Fayal Island.* Seven leagues from Saint *Georges* Island, to the South-west, lies the Island of *Fayal*, which is seventeen or eighteen Leagues in compass, and is no doubt the best of all the *Affores*, next those of *Tercera*, and Saint *Michael*. The Inhabitants drive a considerable Trade in *Wood*, as also in Provisions and Fish, whereof they carry whole *Caravels* loaden, to the Island of *Tercera*, where they are distributed among the Fleets which put in there. Its Metropolis is called *Villa Desta*, where live those who are Originally *Flemmings*, as we said before.

*Pico Islands.* *Pico* Island, which hath its name from the high Mountain within it, called *Pico*, and which is conceived to be as high as that of the great *Canary*, whereof we shall speak anon, lies three Leagues South-east from the Island of *Fayal*, four South-west of that of Saint *George*, and twelve West-south-west of that of *Tercera*. The Inhabitants live by their Cattle and Tillage, the earth answering their expectations, and requites the pains they bestow on it, as being more fertile here, then in any of these seven Islands.

*The Island de Flores.* The Island *de Flores*, whereof we spoke before, and which we discovered the 29. of November, is seventy Leagues distant from that of *Tercera*, more to the West, and consequently so far from these Islands, that it is unjustly numbred among the *Affores*, or *Flemmish* Islands, as is also that of *Coruo*, which is distant from that of *Flores*, about a League to the North; though both are subject to the Crown of *Portugal*, and submit to the Governour of *Tercera*. *Flores* Island is about seven Leagues in compass, and affords some *Wood*, but not much.

*The convenience of these Islands.* The *Portuguez* are so much the more jealous of the preservation of these Islands, the more convenient they lye, for the relief and accommodation of such Ships, as are bound for the *East-Indies* and *Brasil*. Whence it comes they permit not Strangers to compass the Island of *Tercera*, which serves for a Cittadel to all the rest, (which have no Haven, where Vessels may ride secure as to all winds, nor any fortified place for a retreat) lest they should discover the weakness of the Island, and take notice of those places where people might land. Before the *English* became Masters of *Jamaica*, their Ships kept for the most part between the *Affores* and the Island of *Flores*, and there waited for the Fleet, which comes every year from the *Havanna* for *Spain*.

*The Air very sharp in the Affores.* The Air is very healthy in all these Islands, but so piercing, that in very few years it consumes Iron and Stones. Whence it comes that ordinarily they use in their buildings, the Flints, which they find by the Sea-side, under water, in regard they better bear the sharpness of the Air.

The wind coming to the South, we kept on our course to the North-east, leaving the 1640. Islands of *Flores* and *Corvo* East of us, so that we soon lost sight of them.

But ere we prosecute our Voyage, we shall here take occasion by the way to speak a *The Gen* word or two of the *Canary* Islands, which lye upon the Coast of *Africk*, near the *rics*. Straights of *Gibraltar*.

They were discovered in the year 1342. The Ancients called them *Insula Fortunata*, *Whendisco* by reason of the wholesomeness of the Air, and fertility of their soil. They are seven, to *wered*. wit, *Lanzarotta*, *Fortventura*, the *Great Canary*, *Teneriffa*, *Gomeza*, *Fierro* and *Palma*, and reach in a manner upon the same Line, from East to West.

They who affirm that the Discoverers thereof gave them the name of the *Canaries*; from their finding many *Canes* or *Dogs* there, are mistaken. For it is certain, that as well *Pliny* and *Solinus*, as *Ptolomey*, name one of these fortunate Islands *Canaria*, though the two former give the others very different names from those we find in *Ptolomy*.

So that it may probably be said, that *Canaria* being the biggest of all the *Fortunate Islands*, derived its name to all the rest of them, as that of *Tercera* communicates its name to all the *Affores*; and *Flanders* its name to all the *Low-Countries*; and *Holland* its, to all the *United Provinces*, under the States General.

About the year 1348. *Lewis*, Count of *Clermont*, Son of *D. Alonso dela Cerda*, fir- *Lewis* named the *Disinherited*, made ready a Fleet upon the Coasts of *Catalonia*, under the *Count of* protection of *Alphonso* King of *Aragon*, with a design to go and take possession of the *Canary* Islands, which the Pope had bestowed on him, conditionally he would *Clermont* cause the Gospel to be preached to the *Barbarians*, by whom those Islands were in- *conquers* habited. *them*.

He could not go along with them himself, by reason of the Wars in *France*, and the battel of *Creey*, at which he was in the service of *King Philip* of *Valois*; Yet so as this hundred not, but that the Conquest of them was made in his name, and he was called the *Fortunate Child*.

About the end of the same Age, the *Besques*, and *Adaluzians*, having made an agreement among themselves, for the division of these Islands, which had been forsaken ever since the death of *D. Lewis de la Cerda*, set forth certain Vessels, and surprized the Island of *Lanzarotta*, whence they brought so much wealth, that the King of *Castile* had even then attempted the Conquest of these Islands, had not the Wars, he was engaged in with his Neighbours, hindered him.

Some time afterwards, *John de Betancourt*, a *French* Gentleman, made a Voyage thither, with a Commission from *Henry III.* King of *Spain*; provided, that after the Conquest thereof, he should acknowledge the Kings protection, and do homage for the same to the Crown of *Castile*. He took the five lesser Islands, but the Inhabitants of the two greater ones defended themselves so well, that he was forc'd to sit down with his former Conquests. The King of *Castile* being thus Sovereign thereof, sent thither a Bishop, to instruct the Islanders in the *Christian Religion*; but *Betancourt's* Nephew, who had succeeded his Uncle, not able to brook any Authority that might eclipse his own, would needs drive him thence, and grew so high, that the King was forc'd to interpose in their difference. He sent thither, one named *Pedro Barba*, who became Master of them, to his use, and sold them afterwards to one named *Peraza*, who gave them upon a Contract of Marriage, to his Son-in-law, named *Herrera*. This last assumed the quality of King of the *Canaries*; but not able to conquer the two greater Islands, he sold four of them to *Ferdinand*, King of *Aragon*, surnamed the *Catbolick*, and reserved to himself only the Island of *Gomeza*, with the quality of Count. King *Ferdinand*, who *Belong to* was the most fortunate of any Prince in his time, sent a Fleet thither, and conquered al- *the Crown* so the two greater Islands, for the Crown of *Castile*, whereto they have belonged ever *of Castile* since.

The *Great Canary* hath above nine thousand Inhabitants, and among others a Bishop, *Great Ca-* the *Inquisition*, and the Council, which governs all the other Islands. From the excel- *nary*. lence of its Wine, which is much beyond that of *Spain*, a man may judge of the fruitfulness of the Country, which produces Wheat, Barley, Honey, Wax, Sugar-Canes, Cheese and Wood in great abundance, and breeds such plenty of Cattel, that the Leather sold there is not one of the least Commodities the Inhabitants trade in, not only with those of *Sevil*, and several other Cities of *Spain*, but also with the *English*, *Dutch*, *Hamburgers*, and other Nations of *Europe*, especially the *Spaniards*, who bound for the *West-Indies*, take the most of their refreshments at this place.



**1640. Teneriffe.** In the Isle of *Teneriffe* there is a Mountain, called *El Pico de Terraira*. It is certainly the highest Mountain in the World, since that a man cannot get it up in less than three dayes, and that must be too either in *July* or *August*, in as much as all the year besides, it is covered with Snow, though there never fall any in those Islands. It is so high, that it may be seen at the distance of sixty Leagues, and from the top of it, a man may discover, and easily count all the other *Canary Islands*, though some of them be above fifty leagues distant from this.

**Fierro Island.** The Island of *Fierro* is also one of the most considerable of all the *Canaries*, and I conceive that name to be given it upon this account, that its soil, not affording so much as a drop of fresh water, seems to be of *Iron*. And indeed there is in this Island, neither River, nor Rivulet, nor Well, nor Spring, save that towards the Sea-side there are some Wells, but they lie at such a distance from the City, that the Inhabitants can make no use thereof. But the great Preserver, and Sustainer of all, remedies this inconvenience by a way so extraordinary, that a man will be forced to sit down and acknowledge, that he gives, in this, an undeniable Demonstration of his Goodness and infinite Providence.

**A miraculous Tree.** For, in the midst of the Island, there is a Tree, which is the only one in its kind, in as much as it hath no resemblance to those mentioned by us in this Relation, nor to any other known to us in *Europe*. The leaves of it are long and narrow, and continue in a constant verdure, Winter and Summer, and its branches are covered with a Cloud, which is never dispelled, but resolved into a moisture, which causes to fall from its leaves, a very clear Water, and that in such abundance, that the Cisterns, which are placed at the foot of the Tree, to receive it, are never empty, but contain enough to supply both men and beasts.

Some affirm, that above a hundred leagues West of the *Canaries*, there is sometimes seen an Island, called *St. Borondon*, which, they say, is very delightful and fertile, and inhabited by *Christians*; yet can it not be said, what Language they speak, nor how the Island came to be peopled. The *Spaniards* of the *Canaries* have often endeavoured to find out the said Island; but whether it be that it is alwayes covered with a thick mist, which hinders it from being discovered, or that the current of the water thereabouts was so strong, that it is a hard matter to land thereat; certain it is, that as yet, it subsists only in the opinion wherewith most Sea-men are prepossessed, that, certainly there is an Island in those parts.

**The Voyage continued.** The 30th. of *November*, the wind South-south-west, we got 31. leagues to the North-east, and were at noon got to 40. degrees, 32. minutes Latitude.

**DECEMBER.** December 3. With the same wind we got 34. Leagues, taking our course North-east.

The 4. The wind North-east, carried us twenty seven Leagues, to East-north-east.

The 5. The wind came to South-west, and continuing the same course, we got 34. leagues. This day it was just eleven moneths that we had been tossed up and down the Sea; for we left *Surat* the 5. of *January*, though our Voyage had been prosperous enough ever since our departure from the Island of *Madagascar*.

The 6. The same wind was heightned into a tempest; but having it Easterly, we got 50. leagues that day.

**The West-wind reigns from the Azores to England.** When a man is once come to the *Azores*, he may assure himself all the year after of a West-wind, which will bring him into *England*, and never almost turns to South or North, though it may sometimes vary some points of the Compass from one side to the other.

The 7. The wind came to the North-west, and we got 39. Leagues to East-north-east.

The 8. The wind turn'd to South-west, and was so high, that we got 47. leagues, keeping on the same course.

The 9. The wind South-south-west, we got 31. leagues, to North-north-east. We were this day at 49. degrees, 13. minutes. It was very cold, and we found bottom at 68. fathom, the Sand very white.

In the evening we sounded again, and found some change in the Sand, which was yellower than that in the morning, at fifty three fathom water. The wind changed at night, and coming to North-east, was just in our teeth.

The 10. About noon, the wind came to South-west, and we found we had got 22. Leagues.

The 11. At break of day we saw two *English* Vessels, and soon after, we discovered on our left hand, that point of *England* which is called *The Lands end*, and in the County of *Cornwal*. The wind was against us, which oblig'd us to endeavour doubling the point by Laveering. We made shift to get that day 16. Leagues. 1640

The 12. The wind still contrary, we continued Laveering. We saw another *English* Vessel, but could not come near it.

The 13. The wind South-west, and South-south-west; we continued our course to East-south-east, and to East, with a point towards the South. We got that day 64. Leagues, and were at 49. degrees Latitude.

Then we chang'd our course, taking it to East-north-east, to get into the channel which divides *England* from *France*. Come into the channel

The 14. we saw two *Scotch* Ships, and a *Dunkirker*. We came somewhat near them, but the Sea made such a noise, that we could not possibly hear one the other.

The 15. We continued our course to East-north-east, and met three *Dutch* Ships bound for *Bresil*.

That day we passed in sight of the *Isle of Wight*, which lies at 50. degrees, 36. minutes Latitude, and at 19. degrees, and 4. minutes Longitude. The Isle of Wight.

The 16. About 10. in the morning we passed in sight of *Dover-Castle*, and at noon came to the *Downs*. We cast Anchor near three men of war which lay at Anchor in the same Road; and thus we compleated our Voyage, in the 12. month after our departure from *Surat*. Dover.

There were in the same Road above a hundred other ships lying at Anchor, in expectation of some change of weather, which was then so boylstrous, that for two days we could not get out of our Ship. The Lord Admiral who commanded the Men of War, ventured to send his Snaip to our Ship, to congratulate the Presidents safe return.

The 19. The wind being somewhat laid, the Admiral invited the President to dinner. I went along with him, and participated of the civility wherewith he received him. I must confess, I was somewhat surpris'd; to see upon the Sea such a prodigious quantity of silver Plate; and a Table as well furnished, as that I may boldly say, the King was not better served at *London*, then the Admiral was in his Vessel. We were so well treated there, that night began to draw on ere we got away.

Our Ship was not above a Musket shot from the Admiral's but we were no sooner got into our boat, ere there rose such a Tempest, as not only hindred us from getting aboard, but forced us to Sea, the waves so filling our little Vessel, that we were forced to cast out the water with our hats. The President and Mandell's like to be cast away in the Haven.

In the precedent part of this Relation, the Reader may have observed, that we had been in many great dangers ere we got to the Coasts of *England*; but certain it is, that we were then in, was far greater then any we had escaped; since we were in all probability to perish in sight of our dear Country, and to be wrackt in the Port, whereto we were already arriv'd. We were above four hours in these extremities, and at last we discovered a little Vessel, which had lost all its Anchors but the last, which was not so fastned, but that the wind forc'd it towards the Sea. We were in water up to the waste, but that hindred us not from setting our selves to the Oars, so that with much adoo we got to the said Vessel. As soon as we were got into it, we found that it was as unsafe to be there, as to continue in our own; in regard the Anchor being not able to stay it, we were in danger of being cast on a certain bank, which is one of the most dangerous of any about that Coast. And indeed, we should hardly have recovered our selves out of that fear, had we been in a condition to reflect on the danger we were in: but the cold we had endured, the good cheer we had made, the salt water we had swallowed down in our boat, and the violent and extraordinary motion of that little Vessel, put us so out of order, that we were better then half dead, when we were brought the next day to our Ship, where we were received as persons risen from the dead, inasmuch as all who had seen our boat carried away by the violence of the winds, had given us over for irrecoverably lost; nay, so far did they despair of ever seeing us again, that they had already bewailed our death.

December 24. There rose so dreadful a Tempest, that in the same Road, which is accounted one of the safest and best in the World, 24. Ships, were forc'd to cut off their Masts. We were our selves put to the same extremity, but not so much by reason of the violence of the winds, as to avoid the running upon us of two men of War, which were got loose from their Anchors, and would otherwise have run foul upon ours. Another tempest. Canterbury.

1640. The 26. We got ashore, and reach'd that night to *Canterbury*, the Cathedral where-  
 Canterbury- of is without doubt the noblest of any in *England*, and may be compared with the best  
 sy. structures in the World.

Come to  
 London.

The 27. We came to *Gravesend*; the 28. to *London*, where certain Deputies of the  
*East-India* Company expected the President in eight Coaches at *Black-wall*. There came  
 along with them the President's Lady, whom he had not seen in seven years before. He  
 would needs have me salute her, according to the *English* way, and obliged me to take up  
 my lodging at his own house, and to participate of all the honours done him upon his  
 arrival.

December 30. I went to see the *East-India* House, and thank'd the Overseers there for  
 all the civilities I had receiv'd from the President. They invited me to the entertainment  
 which they made that day for him.

1640.  
 7 JANU.  
 S. Edmund  
 Wright.

The next day, and the 1. of *January*, we were at other treatments, and *January* 2. the  
 Lord Major sent to invite us. He was so pleas'd with the Presidents discourse, that he  
 prevail'd with him to come again the next day. The Lord Major was indeed himself very  
 excellent for discourse, and having heard what dangers he had escap'd in that great  
 Voyage, he would shew us that they were not to be compar'd with such as some others  
 had been in. He gave us the story of a *Dutch* Sea-man, who being condemn'd for a crime,  
 his punishment was changed, and he was order'd to be left in *St. Helens's* Island, a place  
 we have spoken of before. This unhappy person representing to himself the horrour of  
 that solitude much beyond what it really was, since it came not near that we shall have oc-  
 casion to speak of anon, fell into a despair, that made him attempt the strangest Action  
 that ever was heard of.

A strange  
 attempt of a  
 Dutch mar-  
 riner.

There had that day been interr'd in the same Island an Officer of the Ship: This Sea-  
 man took up the body out of the Coffin, and having made a kind of rudder of the up-  
 per board, ventured himself to Sea in it. It hapned fortunately to him, to be so great a  
 calm, that the Ship lay as it were immoveable, within a League and half of the Island;  
 but his companions seeing so strange a kind of boat floating on the water, imagin'd they  
 saw a Spectre, and were not a little startled at the resolution of the man, who durst ha-  
 zard himself upon that Element, in three boards slightly nail'd together, which a small  
 wave might have overturned, though he had no confidence to be received by those, who  
 had so lately sentenc'd him to death. Accordingly it was put to the question whether  
 he should be received or not, and some would have the sentence put in execution; but  
 at last, they concluded in *mittiorem*, and he was taken aboard, and came afterwards to  
*Holland*, where he lived in the Town of *Horn*, and related to many, how miraculously  
 God had delivered him.

Whereto the Lord Major added, that it was a great mistake in the said Sea-man, to take  
 so desperate a resolution, upon pure thoughts of the solitude of that Place; since the  
*Spaniards* leave their sick there from year to year, to recover themselves of the inconveni-  
 ences of their long Voyages, and that he could give them an example, which condem-  
 ned the fortunate temerity of that man, whom fear caus'd to do what the most resolute  
 courage would never have attempted.

An example  
 of a dread-  
 ful solitude.

In the year 1616. a *Flemming* named *Pickman*, well known in *England* and *Holland*,  
 for the Art he had in getting out of the Sea the great Guns of that *Spanish* Fleet, which  
 was forc'd upon the Coasts of *Ireland* and *Scotland*, in the year 1588. coming from  
*Dronthem* in *Norway*, with a Vessel loaden with boards, was overtaken by a calm, during  
 which, the current of the Sea carried him upon a Rock or little Island, towards the ex-  
 tremities of *Scotland*, where he was in some danger to be cast away. To avoid a wrack,  
 he commanded some of his men to go into the Shallop, and to tow off the Ship. These  
 having done so, would needs go up into a certain Rock to look for Eggs; but as soon as  
 they were got up into it, they at some distance perceived a man, whence they imagine  
 there were others lay lurking therabouts, and that he had made his escape thither to  
 avoid some Pirats which might surprize their Ship: so that they made all the haste they  
 could to their Shallop. and returned to their Ship. But the calm continuing, and the  
 current of the Sea, driving the Vessel against that Island, they were forc'd to get into  
 the long boat, and tow her off again. The man they had seen before was in the mean  
 time come to the brink of the Island, and made signs to them with his hands, intreating  
 them to come nearer, and falling on his knees, and joyning his hands together, begg'd  
 relief from them. At first, there was some difficulty made; but coming nearer the Island,  
 they saw something, which was more like a Ghost, then a living person, a body stark  
 naked, black and hairy, a meagre and deformed countenance, and hollow and distorted  
 eyes, which rais'd such compassion in them; that they proffer'd to take him into the

boat

boat, but the Rock being so steepy thereabouts, that it was impossible to land, they went about the Island, and came at last to a flat shore, where they took the man aboard. They found nothing at all in the Island, nor grass, nor tree, nor ought whence a man could derive any substance, nor any shelter, but the ruins of a boat, wherewith he had made a kind of Hut, under which he might lye down, and shelter himself from the rain and injuries of the weather. 1640.

The Sun was set ere they got to the Ship, and immediately, there rose a wind, which forc'd them off from the Island; whence they imagined that what they had brought with them was not a man, since he had not the Figure of one; whereupon they would know of him who he was, and how he came to that uninhabitable place. He made answer, *He was an English-man, and that about a year before, being to pass in the ordinary passage boat from England to Dublin in Ireland, they were taken by a French Pirate, who being forced by the Tempest which immediately rose, to let go the passage boat, left us to the mercy of the waves, which carried us between Ireland and Scotland into the main Sea, expecting to be cast away every minute, as at last we were. For the bark being split against the Rock, where you took me in, I escap'd with one of my comrades into the Island, in a more wretched condition, than if being swallowed up by the Sea, we had been delivered out of the extremities we were in for want of meat and drink.*

Of some of the boards of our boat, we made the Hut you saw, and we took some Sea-mews, which we set a drying in the wind and Sun, and so eat them raw. We found also, in the crevices of the Rock, upon the Sea-side, some Eggs, and thus had we wherewithal to subsist, as much as served to keep us from starving; but what we thought most insupportable, was thirst, in regard the place affording no fresh water, but what fell from the sky and was left in certain pits, which Time had made in the Rock, we could not have of it at all seasons, by reason the Rock being small, and lying low, the waves came over the Island, and fill'd the pits with salt-water. We lived in that condition six weeks, comforting one another, and finding some ease in our common misfortune, till that being left alone, it began to grow insupportable to me. For one day awaking in the morning, and missing my comrade, I fell into such a despair, that I had some thoughts of casting myself down headlong, and so putting a final period to that affliction, whereof I had endured but the one half, while I had a friend divided it with me. I know not what became of him, whether despair forc'd him to that extremity; or whether getting up in the night, not fully awake, he fell into the Sea; but I am of opinion, he fell in through carelessness, as he looked for Eggs in the crevices of the Rock, which as you saw was very steepy, on that side; Inasmuch as having observed no distraction in him, I cannot imagine, he should of a sudden fall into that despair, against which he had fortified himself by continual and earnest prayers. I lost, with my comrade, the knife wherewith we killed the Sea-dogs, and the Mews, upon which we lived; so that not able to kill any more, I was reduced to this extremity, to get out of one of the boards of my Hut a great nail, which I made a shift so to sharpen upon the Rock, that it served me for a knife. The same necessity put me upon another invention, which kept me the last winter, during which I endured the greatest misery imaginable. For finding the Rock and my Hut so covered with Snow, that it was impossible for me to get any thing abroad, I put out a little stick at the crevice of my Hut; and baiting it with a little Sea-dogs fat, I by that means got some Sea-mews, which I took with my hand from under the Snow, and so I made a shift to keep my self from starving.

I lived in this condition and solitude above eleven months, and was resolved to end my days in it, when God sent you hither to deliver me out of the greatest misery that ever man was in.

The Sea-man having ended his discourse, the Master of the Ship treated him so well that within a few dayes he was quite another creature. He set him ashore at Derry in Ireland, and saw him afterward at Dublin, where such as had heard what hapned to him, gave him wherewithal to return into England.

Thus the Lord Major made us acknowledge, that in all we had suffered, there was nothing extraordinary, and that long Voyages, are never without great dangers and inconveniences. He urged it to us, that as Ships are now built, and considering the knowledge men have of the course taken for the Indies, there is no more danger in those long Voyages, then in such as are made in the sight of Land, which Sea-men fear most.

To this purpose he related a story, wherein we could no less admire the strange Resolutions of two men, then the goodness of God in their deliverance beyond all expectation.

Four Christian slaves being in the Ship of an Algire-pirate, resolved to make their escape in a boat, which one of them, who was a Carpenter, undertook to build. The Carpenter set himself on work about making on wooden Pins, and other pieces necessary for the fastning of the boards, whereof the boat was to consist. A strange resolution of two Slaves  
The

1640.

The *Turkish* Captain asked him one day what he did, and was satisfied with the Answer the other made him, that it was only to avoid being idle, and to have things in readiness to mend the long boat, when need were. Having appointed a time for the execution of their design, they took off five boards from the room, where the provision was kept, whereof they used two for the bottom, two others for the sides, and the fifth for the prow and the poop, and so made up somewhat that was more like a trough than a boat. Their quilt served them for tow, and having pitcht the boat well, they set it into the water: but when they would have got into it, they found that two men loaded it so, that being in danger of sinking, two of the four desisted from an enterprise, wherein they thought to meet with more danger, then in staying a while longer among the *Turks*, so that only two, one *English* man, the other a *Dutch*-man, ventured themselves in it. All the tackling they had was only two oars, and a little Sail; all the provisions, a little bread and fresh water; and so they put to Sea, without either Compass or Astrolabe; insomuch that being the first day overtaken by Tempest, which at every wave fill'd their boat, they were forc'd to go as the wind drove them, without keeping any course. They were continually employ'd in casting out the water; the Sea had spoiled their bread; and they were almost quite spent, inasmuch as they could not take any rest, when they were cast upon the Coasts of *Barbary*. There they found a little wood, wherewith they somewhat enlarg'd their boat; but they narrowly escap'd being taken and kill'd by the *Moors*, and had much ado to get to Sea again. What troubled them most, was thirst; but they made some shift for that, with the blood of some Tortoises they took, and at last, after ten days floating up and down, they arrived upon the Coasts of *Spain*, at the Cape of *St. Martin*, between *Alicant* and *Valencia*. Those of the Country seeing them at a distance, sent a boat to meet them, carried them bread and wine, treated them very civilly, and found them passage for *England*.

The sixth of *January*, being *Twelfth-day*, the King of *England* touched many that were troubled with the *Evil*. The Ceremony ended, my Lord of *Strafford* brought me to his Majesty, who was pleased to honour me with the kissing of his hand. The next day, the same Lord procured me the like Honour from the Queen; besides which he did me several other extraordinary favours, upon all occasions. Afterwards I went often to Court, where their Majesties were pleased I should entertain them with some particulars of my Travels; especially as to what I had observed in *Muscovy* and *Persia*.

I continued at *London* near three months, partly to refresh my self after so long a Voyage, and partly in expectation of some money from my own Prince, that I might make some acknowledgments of my Obligations to those who had treated me so kindly, from the day of my arrival at *Surat* to that time, and set my self in a posture of returning into my own Country. Of the time of my abode in *England*, I spent some at Court, where I had made several acquaintances, and some in viewing the publick and private Structures of the famous City of *London*; as also several places near it; as among others, *Enfield*, *Tibulls*, *White-Hall*, *Saint James's*, *Hampton-Court*, *Windsor*, *Westminster-Hall*, and the *Abbey*, the *Tower*, *Greenwich*, &c.

[Of the places above mentioned here in *England*, as also some of those he passed through in the *Low-Countries*, the Author gives a short description. But in regard what he says of the former, is known to most *English*-men, who are in any measure acquainted with the things remarkable in their own Country; and what he delivers of the latter affords no extraordinary satisfaction to the curious, for whose diversion works of this nature are intended; we thought fit to forbear the insertion thereof, that we might make the more haste to bring him to the end of his Travels, which shall be done according to his ordinary method.]

MARCH.  
Mandello  
leaves Lon-  
don.

March the 20. I left *London*, taking water at *Graves-end*, whence I went to *Rockester*; and so came the twenty fourth to *Dover*. The next day, I embarked thence for *Dunkirk*, whither I got the same day.

The next, I embarked thence for *Newport*, where I stayed only one night, and got the next day to *Bruges*. 1640

The 29th. I came to *Gaunt*, which I left the first of *April*, and got that night to *Brussels* the chief city of the Dutchy of *Brabant*.

At *Brussels* I staid two dayes, and came the fourth to *Louvain*, which I left the fifth, and got the same day to *Macchlin*, about four Leagues distant from *Louvain*.

The 6th. I left *Macchlin*, and came to *Anwerp*, where having staid two dayes, and leaving it the ninth, I got the next day to *Breda*, where I stayed only the remainder of it, and went the next day to *Bois-le-due*, or *Boldue*, five Leagues from *Breda*.

*April* the twelfth, I went to *Saint Gertrudenberg*, with an intention there to take boat for *Rotterdam*, as I did the same day.

The thirteenth I came to *Rotterdam*, whence I went the same day to *Delf*; thence to the *Hague*, thence to *Leiden*, and thence to *Haerlem*.

This City is the biggest of any in *Holland*; next *Amsterdam*, and pretends to the invention of *PRINTING*, and would have the Glory of it due to one of its Citizens, named *Laurence Coster*, who in the year *M. CCCC. XX.* framed the first Characters of *Beech-wood*, and afterwards found out the *Ink*, now used by *Printers*, nay, changed the *Wooden Characters* into *Leaden ones*, and afterwards those into *Tinne*; in so much, that in the year *1440.* the *Mystery* was almost in its perfection.

They are so fully perswaded, as to this in the City of *Haerlem*, that the Senate would Eternize the Memory of *LAURENCE COSTER*, by the Inscription set upon the House he lived in.

Which is this;

MEMORIÆ SACRUM!  
 TYPOGRAPHIA  
 ARS ARTIUM OMNIUM  
 CONSERVATRIX,  
 NUNC PRIMUM INVENTA  
 CIRCA ANNUM  
 CIO. CCCC. XL.

I left *Haerlem*, about six in the Evening, and came at nine the same night, to *Amsterdam*. Of this place I had heard so much, even in the *Indies*, that I had framed to my self, a certain *Idæa* of its greatness: but what the more surpris'd me, was, That going out of my Lodging the next morning, I had much ado to get through the throng of people,

1639. ple, walking up and down the Streets, in such numbers, as if there had been some Fair. All the other parts of the World seem'd to have sent their Factors thither, and that the East and North had brought thither all their Commodities; whereof there were in the shops but the Patterns, whereas the main Stock was disposed into Store-houses, publick Weighing-places, upon sledges in the streets, upon the Kayes, in the flat-bottomed boats, which unload the great Ships, and others which serve for Store-houses for the Wheat. I was at some loss, which I should rather admire in that great City, whether the Commerce of it, which is greater then that of all the other Cities of the Low-Countries put together; the neatness of its Streets, especially that of the New City; the sweetness and cleanliness of its houses; the Magnificence of its publick and private Structures; the abundance of Ships and Barks, which come thither, and go thence every day; the largeness of its Port, wherein there are at all times seven or eight hundred Ships; or the Order and Policy observed by the Magistrate, in all things relating to the quiet of the City, the well-fare of its Inhabitants, and the improvement of Trade, by which only the City subsists, and causes to subsist that powerful State, whereof it is a considerable part.

As to its Commerce there is no City in the world, where the Inhabitants of *Amsterdam* have not their Factors and correspondents. All the maritime towns of *England*, *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, are full of them, as are also those of the *Baltick-Sea*, and *Muscovy* it self. It is in a manner impossible to number the Ships it sends away every year to *Archangel*, *Rensel*, *Riga*, *Koningsberg*, *Dantzick*, to the Coasts of *Pomerania*, and into *Norway* where they put off their Spices and Silk, and Woolen stuffs; for *Wheat*, *Timber*, *Pitch*, *Ashes*, *Wax*, *Furs*, and other things they stand in need of, either for the building of their ships and houses, or the carrying on of their Trade in the other parts of the world. These Fleets go away commonly twice or thrice a year; but there go some every day West-ward, and every hour, for the other Cities of *Holland*, and the Neighbouring Provinces; yet does not all this hinder but that its Ports and Channells are so covered with boats and ships, that it may be questioned, whether the water be not there as much inhabited as the land, and whether there be more people in the houses or the ships. There is such abundance of *Wheat*, *Wine*, *Hemp*, *Flax*, *Wood*, and *Spices*, as if all other Provinces of the world were emptied of their wealth, to make *Amsterdam* a publick Treasury of all they produce: so that it may be said, it is in this City properly, that a man may see those Miracles, which the famous *Scaliger* attributes to all *Holland*.

Though a man should consider only the House belonging to the *East-India* Company, he would be forc'd to confess, that every Trade were enough to enrich all its Inhabitants. I had seen some Ships loaden at *Surat*, but when I saw the Store-houses, and Magazens reaching at a great distance, from the *East-India* House, full of Spices, Silk, Stuffs, Purcelane, and what ever *China* and the *Indies* afford that is most rare, I thought *Ceylon* had sent thither all its *Cinnamon*; the *Moluccas* all their *Cloves*; the *Islands of Sumatra* and *Java*, all their Spices, *China* all its rich stuffs; *Japan* its excellent works of several kinds, and the rest of the *Indies* its *Pepper* and *Silk*. Nay, it may be said this Company is a kind of particular Common-wealth in that little world; since its Magistrates, Officers, Armies, Fleets, Generals, Governours of Provinces and Cities, and its subjects, seem to have no other dependance on this City, then a particular State hath on the Universe.

It is since the year 1595: that the *Dutch* have made Voyages into the *Indies*, upon the instigation of a Merchant named *Cornelius Houtman*, who living at *Lisbon*, informed himself, from the *Portuguez*, of all the particulars of those Voyages, and prevailed so far with some Merchants of *Amsterdam*, that in the year 1595. they sent out four Ships, which they sent along the Coasts of *Africk*, and the *Cape of good Hope* into the *Indies*; inasmuch as the design, which some others had to find out a passage Northward, had not proved effectual. About two years and four months after these Ships returned to *Amsterdam*; and though the profits of this first Voyage answered not the expectations of the persons concerned, yet were they such as engaged several other Merchants in the same design; so that in the year 1598. they sent thither a second Fleet, consisting of eight great Ships. They would not stay the return of this Fleet, but in the year 1599. set forth another, and much about the same time some other Merchants made up a new Company, and set out a particular Fleet, inasmuch as to prevent the destruction of Trade likely to be occasioned by many different interests, the States of the *United Provinces*, in the year 1602. brought the persons concern'd to an agreement among

among themselves, and reduced them into one common Company, under their Authority, and the direction of the Prince of *Orange*, as Admiral of those Provinces. 1640.

By this Agreement, thus authorized by a Grant of the States for one and twenty years, there was a regulation made, according to which the oversight of all that trade was put into the hands of the chiefest persons concern'd therein, divided into six Chambers or Courts, which were settled at *Amsterdam*; *Middleborough* for *Zealand*; at *Delf* and *Rotterdam* for the *Meuse*; and at *Horn* and *Enckhuisen* for *West-Friesland*.

The first consisted of twenty Directors; that of *Middleborough* of twelve, and the four others of seven a piece, so that in all charges, that of *Amsterdam* bore the one half, that of *Zealand* a quarter part; those of *Meuse* and *West-friesland* each a half quarter. It was also ordered, that to General Assemblies, that of *Amsterdam* should send eight Deputies, that of *Zealand* four, and those of the *Meuse* and *West-friesland*, each of them two, with a supernumerary for a casting voice, which was to be appointed by the Chambers of *Zealand*, the *Meuse*, and *West-friesland* alternately.

The Stock of this Company amounted to six Millions six hundred *French Livres*, which was laid out in the setting forth of several Fleets; and the first Voyages proved so fortunate, that it was found in the year 1613. that the money of the persons concern'd had gain'd two hundred and sixty upon the hundred. But the profits were much greater the year following, as may be seen by the Dividends which have been made from time to time.

In the house belonging to the same Company, I saw also all the Drugs, all the Fruits, and all the living Creatures which I had seen before in the *Indies*.

It were impossible to imagine any thing more delightful, or more regularly disposed than the Streets, Water-channels, and Houses of this City. All the Rivulets are bordered with Line-trees, and the Quays pav'd at the extremities with Brick, and in the midst with Flint. The Houses, especially those of the new City, are so many Palaces; so neat without, that painting could add nothing thereto, and so well furnish'd within, that there are some, whereof only the Pictures were enough to enrich a man. But what most speaks the cost employ'd about them is least seen: For all the Houses being built on piles, it must be confessed, the foundations are no less precious than the rest of the Structure, and that there is not so noble a Forrest in the World as that which the City of *Amsterdam* hath under its houses.

Among the publick Structures the Churches are remarkable; and among others, those called the *Old* and the *New*, and the three others built some years since by the Magistrate. In the former is the Epitaph of *Jacob de Heemskerck*, who, having made two Voyages to *Nova Zembla*, and the *Indies*, was kill'd at the Streights of *Gibraltar*, where he set upon the *Spanish Fleet*, within reach of the great Guns of the Fort.

What a noble and neat place is the Hospital and Convent of *St. George*, where there are now received great numbers of Aged persons of both Sexes, who are maintained there? What more charitable, than the care and tenderness wherewith distracted persons are treated? And what severity do they not exercise in the ordering of incorrigible persons; the men in a House, over the door whereof there is in golden Letters,

## VIRTUTIS EST DOMARE, CUNCTI PAVENT.

Where they are constantly employ'd in sawing *Brasil* with inexpressible pains, or some other work, according to the nature of the Crime for which they were sentenced to that punishment; and the women in another house by themselves? But there is not any thing so miraculous as the order observed there for the education of poor Orphans, who are very well kept, maintain'd, and taught; as also in the administration of their Estates who are under Guardians; these being obliged to give an account thereof to the Magistrate.

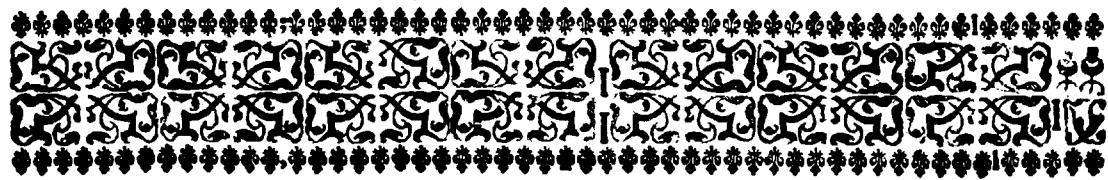


1640. The Exchanges of *London* and *Antwerp* are indeed noble places ; but there is something more magnificent in that of *Amsterdam* ; at least this may be affirm'd of it, that for the number of Merchants daily resorting thither at noon, neither of the other two is to be compared to it.

I may put also among the publick Structures, the Weighing places, the Gates of the City, the three Sluces, which have not their like in the World ; the publick School, or Colledge, which the Magistrate hath opened there some years since ; The Arsenal, the Theatre for Playes, the Anatomy-Hall, the places appointed for shooting with Long-bow, Cross bow, and the Arquebuse ; and if I may be allowed to speak of a thing which is not yet, but no doubt will be within a few years, and whereof I have seen the draught, I mean the Town-house, or Guild-hall, I may boldly say there is not any in *Europe* comes near it.

*MAT.* I stayed at *Amsterdam* eight dayes, and finding something in that City which pleased my fancy beyond what I had observed in any I saw before, I was unwilling to see any more, but having my imagination full of it, I took shipping the twenty third of *April* for *Hamborough*, whither I reach'd the twenty eighth following. I rested my self there one day, and got the first of *May* to *Gottorp*, where I presented my self to their Highnesses the Duke and Dutchess of *Holstein*, and so put a period to my long and toilsome TRAVELS.

FINIS.



A  
**JOURNAL**  
 OF THE  
**TRAVELS**  
 OF  
**JOHN ALBERT**  
 De **MANDELSLO,**  
 FROM  
**PERSIA**  
 INTO THE  
**EAST-INDIES,**  
 And thence back into  
**GERMANY.**

M. DC. XXXVIII.

JANUARY.

**T**He 16. Mandelso leaves  
 Ispahan, the Metropolis of  
 Persia, and came to Schiras  
 the 28. 97. Leagues in 13.  
 dayes. Pag. I

The Sepulchre of Maderre Soliman, which  
 the Persians believe to be that of Solomon's

Mather, but is indeed the Sepulchre of Scach  
 Soliman Calife; Tzimirar, or the Castle of  
 forty Pillars; the opinion of the Persians  
 concerning it; its description as now it is.

P. 2

A description of Schiras, Metropolis of the  
 Province of Fars; Schiras-wine, the best of  
 any in Persia; the fertility of the Country;  
 Schiras women the handsomest of any in the  
 Kingdom.

P. 3

He continuës at Schiras 7. dayes.

H h h h 2

F E.

# The TABLE.

## FEBRUARY.

The 5. He leaves Schiras, and comes the 10. to the City of Laar; 48. Leagues in 6. dayes.

A dangerous way, where the Author was like to lose his life. *ibid.*

A description of the City of Laar, its houses, Cittadel; a kind of Worm breeding between the flesh and the skin, about an ell long; how Laar came to be united to the Crown of Persia: Well-water Salt. *ibid.*

Leaves Laar the 12. and comes the 23. to Gamron, where he stays five weeks. *p. 5*

The Authors indisposition; his treatment by the Sulthan; a King of Gekenda would marry his own Daughter. Mandelso's distrust of the Dutch. *ibid.*

## MARCH.

An English Vessel comes to Gamron, from Surat; The 11. the Persians celebrated their Naurus. *ibid.*

The King of Persia pays the English 30000. Tumains; Arbola de Rays, or the Indian Fig-tree; the Sepulchre of a Benjan Saint. *p. 6*

## APRIL. MAY. JUNE. JULY. AUGUST. SEPTEMBER.

The 1. Comes to Gamron, an Envoy, to assure the Sulthan of Schach Sefi's favour. *ibid.*

A description of the City of Gamron; the error of some Geographers; as to the situation of Persia; The situation of Gamron; its houses, streets. *p. 7*

The Island of Kitsnich, its extent, fruits, abundance in fish and Cattel; how the Inhabitants live; their cloathing; nature of the climate; the commerce, particularly that of the English, and Dutch. *ibid.*

Their Money, Weights, Pearls, the manner of fishing for them, the King of Persia's Officers at Gamron; the priviledges of the English there. *p. 8*

Persian Horses much esteemed among the Indians; the City of Ormus described; taken by the Portuguez. *p. 9*

Recover'd out of their hands by the Persians, with the assistance of the English, who are granted an absolute exemption for that service. *ibid.*

The 6. He embarks at Gamron, and arrives at Surat the 25. following, above 250. German Leagues in nineteen dayes. He continues there 3. months. *p. 10*

The course from Ormus to Surat; the description and situation of the Island Zocotora;

its inhabitants, their commerce, which consists in Aloes. *p. 11*

Their Armes, their Religion; the Qualities of the Climate of Surat; the year hath but three seasons there. *p. 12*

The Presidents reception of the Author; how the English live at Surat; their diversions; their respect for the President. *p. 13*

A general description of Indosthan; its Provinces; Candahar. *ibid.*

Kabul Multan, &c. *p. 14, 15*

The extent of the Mogul's Country, a description of the Kingdom of Guzurnata; its extent. *p. 16*

Its principal Cities, Rivers, Ports, its fertility. *ibid.*

## MAY.

There came news to Surat, that the Governour of Candahor had revolted, and delivered the place to the Mogul. *p. 17*

The City of Reniel described; Terry or Palm-wine; Surat described; its Houses, Cattle; the Kom or Country. *ibid.*

Surat the General Factory of the English Trade; the places about Surat. *p. 18*

The 14. Two English Ships arrive at Surat. *ibid.*

A Dutch Vessel of 1400. Tuns comes to Surat; The Rasboutes, what kind of people they are. *p. 19*

September the last, the Author leaves Surat, and comes the 12. of October to Amadabath, 29. Leagues, in 13. dayes. *ibid.*

He continues there 8. dayes. Broitchia described; Indico, the Sepulchre of a Maktumetan Saint. *p. 20*

## OCTOBER.

The 7. He comes to Brodra, which is described; where the best Lacque is made; the Sepulchres of divers Mahumetan Saints. *p. 21*

The 11. Comes to Mamadebath. *p. 22*

The Indian Oxen as metalsome as our Horses; the Maidan of Amadabath. *ibid.*

The Castle; a Benjan Misquay; Amadabath described. *p. 23*

The principal Commodities there; a piece of Ambergreece that weigh'd eighty pound Musk. *p. 24*

Merchandises pay no Custom at Amadabath; the Revenue of the City; the Sepulchre of Kasia; that of a mischievous Father. *p. 25*

Princes

# The TABLE.

Princes not subject to the Mogul; Schachbag-Garden; an Alley. *ibid.*  
 Leagues in length. p. 26.  
 Parrots, Cormorants, &c. *ibid.*  
 Crocodiles and other Creatures; Amadabat maintains twelve thousand Horse; the Governours wealth. p. 27  
 His Court and Expence; the Authors visit to the Governour; their discourse; a second visit. p. 28.  
 The use of Opium. *ibid.*  
 A Character of the Governour of Amadabat. p. 30  
 His cruelty. *ibid.*  
 The 21. He leaves Amadabat, and comes the 23. to Cambaya, 16. Leagues in three dayes. *ibid.*  
 Tschitbag-Garden, where Sulthan Mahomet Bergeran was defeated. Cambaya described. p. 31  
 Its Markets, Inhabitants, Commerce, and Gardens; an Indian widow burnt with her own consent. *ibid.*  
 How that custom came up. p. 32  
 The civility of an Indosthan Mahumetan; Bettele, Areca, described; much used by the Indians. p. 33  
 Leaves Cambaya the 25. and returns to Amadabat the 27. *ibid.*  
 Comes to the Village of Serguntra, what they feed travelling Cattle with. p. 34  
 Tschitbag-Garden described. *ibid.*  
 Leaves Amadabath the second time, the 29. and comes to Agra, 160. Leagues. p. 35  
 Agra described, its Market-places, Caravanseras, Mosqueys; the Sepulchre of a Giant. *ibid.*  
 Its Sanctuaries, Baths; the Mogul's Palace described. p. 36  
 The Mogul's Throne, the Seraglio, Treasury; a sort of Money of eight thousand Crowns the piece; An Inventory of the Mogul's Treasure. p. 37  
 No hereditary dignity in the Mogul's Country: the chief Officers, the Mogul's Revenue. p. 38  
 The Armes of the Cavalry; they observe no order in fighting; their Artillery, the order of their Armies. p. 40  
 The Mogul's Guard, the dignity of the Rajas, the Mogul's ordinary Retinue; he changes the place of his abode according to the seasons. p. 41  
 How the Mogul celebrates the first day of the year: the Mogul's birth-day: another Mahumetan Feast. p. 42  
 The Mogul descended from Tamerlane: a pleasant story of him. *ibid.*  
 The Mogul's divertisement, a combat between a Lyon and a Tiger, another between a

Lyon and a Man, armed only with Sword and Buckler. p. 43  
 Another between a Man and a Tiger; Mandello discovered to have killed an Indosthan at Ispahan. p. 44  
 He leaves Agra, and comes to Lahor, 70. Leagues. p. 45  
 All the way from Agra to Lahor is planted on both sides with Trees, which are full of Parrots and Apes. Lahor described; the Baths of the Mahumetans. *ibid.*

## DECEMBER.

The 19. He leaves Amadabath with a Caravan of a hundred Waggons, and comes to Surat the 26. p. 46  
 Persons of Quality have Banners carried before them; an engagement with the Country people. *ibid.*  
 Another with the Rasboutes; the English President resigns his charge. p. 47  
 The Sulthan's entrance into Surat; how the Mogul came to unite the Kingdom of Guzurratta to his Crown. p. 48  
 The Governour of Amadabath is Vice-roy of Guzurratta; disposes of the Revenue of the Kingdom; what the Revenue of Guzurratta amounts to. *ibid.*  
 The administration of Justice; the other Cities of Guzurratta. p. 49  
 The Inhabitants of Guzurratta; their cloathing. p. 50  
 Their Women; their Cloathing; they account black teeth a piece of beauty. p. 51  
 The Benjans are ingenious; their ceremonies of marriage; Polygamy lawful; their Religion; they worship the Devil. p. 52  
 Their Mosqueys; Purification; their God Brahma; their opinion concerning the Creation of the World. *ibid.*  
 Brahma's Lieutenants; the authority of the Bramans. p. 53  
 They believe the immortality and transmigration of Souls; a strange employment of the Bramans among the Malabars: the Sect of the Benjans: their cloathing: their belief. p. 54  
 Their Mosqueys; their extraordinary abstinences: their publick Assemblies: the Sect of Samarath. *ibid.*  
 Their God, and his Substitutes: a particular ceremony about the dead: the Women burn themselves at their Husbands death: The sect of Bilnow: their God. p. 55  
 Their manner of life: their firing: their Wives are not burnt: the Sect of the Goeghys: their God. p. 56  
 Their belief: hold not the transmigration of Souls: a strange manner of life: the superstition of the Benjans. p. 57  
 The

# The TABLE.

The Rasboutes: their belief: a story of five Rasboutes: their charity towards Birds: they marry their Children young: a remarkable story. p. 58

The Parfis: their manner of life: the seven Servants of God, twenty six other Servants of God. p. 59

They have no Mosqueys. p. 60

The Badge of their Religion: their houses: five accounted sacred among them: they severely punish adultery: their manner of burial. ibid.

The Indous, Jentives: their belief: the Theers. p. 61

The Marriage ceremonies of the Indian Mahumetans: the effect of Opium: Divorce lawful. p. 62

The education of their children: their interments: are called Mussulmans: their stature and complexion. p. 63

Their habit: their houses: the ceremonies of their visits: their expence. ibid.

Their Domesticke: the condition of Tradesmen: their Houses: Merchants: p. 64

The several Sects of the Mahumetans: no Inne in Guzuratta: their expertness at the Bow: they have of Aristotle and Avicenna's works. p. 65

Their Language: the Diseases of the Country: Winter begins in June: the Commerce of Guzuratta: the manner of making Indico. p. 66

Salt-peter, Borax, Asfa foetida, Opium. p. 67

The Drugs of Guzuratta: precious Stones, Weights, Measures, Money: much counterfeit money in the Indies. ibid.

The fertility of Guzuratta: their way of making Bread: no Oats in the Indies: their Seed-time and Harvest: the Mogul Proprietor of the whole Country: their Gardens, Trees, Horses, Beef, Mutton. p. 68

Their Fowl, Fish, Ships: their trade to the Red-sea: to the Persian Gulf: to Achin: the Commerce of the Malabars in Guzuratta. p. 69

The Commerce of the Portuguez. p. 70

M. DC. XXXIX.

JANUARY.

The first he leaves Surat, takes shipping for England, and comes to Goa the eleventh following. p. 71

The way from Goa to Visiapour: the names and scituation of several Cities of Decam. p. 72

Visiapour described: the way from it to Dabul. p. 73

The City of Dabul described: the City of Rasiapour. p. 74

The Inhabitants of Decam: the Money of Decam. p. 75

The King of Decam tributary to the Mogul: the History of Chavas-chan: he is made Regent of the Kingdom: engages the State in a war: the King implores the assistance of his Grandees against him. ibid.

He attempts the life of his Prince, but is prevented and kill'd. p. 76

His friends would revenge his death: his ingratitude: the Mogul concerns himself in Mustapha's fortunes; the King of Decam able to raise two hundred thousand Men. p. 77

His Artillery. ibid.

The English President visits the Governour of Goa. p. 78

The Jesuits of Goa treat him; a Feast at the profess'd House of the Jesuits there; with a Ball. p. 79

The advantage the Jesuits make of those diversities, in order to the propagation of Christian Religion. Another Feast at the Jesuits Colledge; the Sepulchre of St. Francis Xaverius. p. 80

The Hospital of Goa: the Monastery of the Augustines; the Portuguez pay the English 45000. Crowns. p. 81

The Viceroy's Presents to the President; those of the General of the Gallions and the Jesuits. ibid.

He leaves Goa the 20. and comes the 29. near Ceylon.

Goa described; how taken by the Portuguez. p. 82

Its Inhabitants.

Winter begins in June; the Diseases of those parts; the Women of Goa love white men; the Herb Doutry, and its use; the Women go not abroad. p. 83

The jealousy of the Portuguez; the Portuguez Souldiers; their Marriages and Christnings, their Slaves. p. 84

The Inhabitants of the Country, and their Houses, the Decanins excellent Gravers, &c. p. 85

Their Women deliver'd without pain; they live in perfect health to a hundred years of age; the Jews of Goa; the Mahumetans; their Money; the Customs upon forreign Commodities. p. 86

The Viceroy of Goa; a character of him; his power, revenue. ibid.

The Malabars; Zamorin Emperour of Calicut and Cananer. p. 78

The priviledges of the Nayres; the writing of the Malabars; the order of succession in Calicut; p. 85

# The TABLE.

- Calicut; Cochim described; the power of the King of Cochim; a great privilege of the Bramans. p. 88
- The Zamorin of Calicut sometime Emperour of the Malabars; the Cape of Comory; the Isle of Ceylon. p. 89
- When discover'd by the Portuguez; the History of Fimala Derma King of Candy, he murders his Father and three Brothers; declares against the Portuguez. p. 9
- The treason of a Portuguez Renegado, p. 91
- The Dutch ill treated in the Island of Ceylon: the Kingdom of Candy; its Inhabitants, their Religion. ibid.
- Kings tributary to the Portuguez; Mines of Gold and Silver. p. 92
- The Maldives; the Coast of Coromandel; the Inhabitants thereabouts Christians; a story of St. Thomas. p. 93
- He is martyr'd at Edefa; the City of Meliapour. p. 94
- Bengala, its Inhabitants: their superstitions. ibid.
- Pegu, the Palace Royal: the Guard p. 95
- The Kings force, he makes war upon, his Uncle, King of Auva; a just Execution, but so severe: a Combat betwixt two Kings; the Pagodes of Pegu. ibid.
- The Peguans Armes: they are Pagans: adore the Devil: their Feasts; how the Kings Corps are burnt: their Ecclesiasticks. p. 96
- A third part of all mens estates falls to the King: a strange Sawce: other peculiar Customs: the Commodities of Pegu. p. 97
- The River Menan overflows as the Nile; India, its houses. p. 98
- The King of Siam of a very ancient Family: is absolute; his manner of life; hath but one Wife. p. 99
- A magnificent Procession: a Procession upon the River: the Revenue of the King of Siam. p. 100
- His Expences: their Punishments: manners of justification: the Militia of Siam: p. 101
- Their Arms; both the Kings of Siam and Pegu pretend to Sovereignty: the King of Siam a friend to the Dutch. ibid.
- Elephant-hunting: the occasion of the War between the Kings of Pegu and Siam: Raja Hapi, King of Siam. p. 102
- The King of Siam a Pagan; a Hierarchy; Beguins a kind of religious women, the belief of the Inhabitants, lights in the Mosqueys, Prayers for the dead. p. 103
- The Siameses invoke the Devil, their qualities, habits, houses, marriages, education of children. ibid.
- The traffick of the City of India, the King a Merchant, the money of Siam, the settlement of the Dutch in Siam. p. 104
- The Kingdom of Cambodia, the Palace-Royal, the Lords of Cambodia, the Portuguez keep out the Dutch. p. 105
- Malacca when discovered. p. 106
- A description of Patana, its Inhabitants. p. 107
- The Air of Patana, Mahumetans. p. 108
- Batufabar, Metropolis of Patana, its Inhabitants, the Language of the Malayans, the Island of Sumatra. p. 109
- Was sometime divided into many Kingdoms: the King of Achim, the City of Achim, the Inhabitants. p. 110
- Their Religion, food, the mournful tree, Coccoes. ibid.
- How they make Wine, their Paper, Bananas, what. p. 111
- Pepper, how planted: the Island of Java, its Inhabitants: the King of Bantam. p. 112
- A sulphureous Mountain, the names of several Cities of those parts. ibid.
- The Kings Palace, the Guard of the City, its Market-places, Armourers. p. 113
- The City of Tuban described, the Kings Palace, its commerce. p. 114
- The Javians Mahumetans, their Fasts, they marry their daughters very young, the ceremonies of their marriages, Women of Quality are kept in restraints. p. 115
- The Magistrates of Bantam, the Kings Council, the train and state of the Nobility, the qualities of the Javians, they are good Soldiers. p. 116
- The Javians sophisticate their Wares, how they employ their Slaves. ibid.
- The Commerce of Forreigners there, the trade of China, the money of Java. p. 117
- The Portuguez commerce, Oysters of three hundred pound weight, Crocodiles, Civet, Hens, the Rbinocerot, Ants. p. 118.
- The Fruits of Java, Areca, Mangas, Ananas, Samaca, described. p. 119.
- Tamarinds, Tabaxir, Canes so big that Boats are made of them, a fruit called Duriaons, its qualities. ibid.
- The Lantor-tree, Cubebs, Mangosthan, Talasse, Jaca, wild Cinnamon, Carcapuli, Coffus Indicus. p. 120
- Zerumbet, Galanga, Benjamin, Sandal, Ginger, Anacardium, Pala de cuebra, Calamba. p. 121
- Lacque, other Drugs of Java, the Dutch fortifie in Jacatra. p. 122
- They give it the name of Batavia: Madura a place of no trade; the Isle of Baly, its situation, Inhabitants. p. 123
- It abounds in Rice, Fowl, Drugs, Fish, hath Gold mines, the King of Baly, the Island of Borneo, its Metropolis, the Bezoar Stone. p. 124
- The

# The TABLE.

*The Haven, the Dutch treat with the King of Sambas about the trade of Diamonds, the Island Celebes; its Metropolis; its Inhabitants are Cannibals.* p. 125

*The Isle Gilolo, its Inhabitants and Fruits, Amboyna its Inhabitants, discovery.* p. 126

*The Dutch take Amboyna Castle, the Religion of the Inhabitants, their superstitions.* ibid.

*Their circumcision, marriage, oaths; their qualities.* p. 127

*Banda, its Inhabitants, their Armes, they live long.* p. 128

*Nutmegs, Mace, Oyl of Nutmeg; the Dutch Forts in Banda, prodigious Serpents, the Moluccas.* p. 129

*Sagu, How Bread made of it, how Wine; the Inhabitants of the Moluccas.* p. 130

*Are partly Mahumetans, a particular piece of policy; the Clove trade, the Portuguez seize it, are dispossess'd thereof by the Dutch; a difference between the Castilians and the Portuguez about the Moluccas, grounded on a false supposition.* p. 131

*Magelan finds a new passage; the Isle Ternate, what Cloves it affords.* ibid.

*The Clove-tree grows without planting; Avicenna's error, what Cloves the Moluccas yield yearly, the Mountain of Ternate, but one season in the Moluccas.* p. 132

*A Wood incombustible, leaves turned to Butterflies, Birds of Paradise; the King of Bachiam, the Isle of Machiam.* p. 133

*The Philippine Islands, the hunting of Crocodiles.* p. 134

*The commerce of the Chineses and Spaniards in the Philippines, the Archbishop of Manilla is Viceroy, a description of the said City.* p. 135

*Whether Japan be an Island or part of the Continent, the names and revenues of the great Lords of Japan.* p. 136

*The revenue of the Ministers of State.* p. 141

*The Emperour of Japan's policy; the Lords have three names.* p. 142

*Slaves die with their Masters, their manner of ripping up their bellies; their Mesquites: the Cities of Japan, not walled: no taxes in Japan.* p. 143

*The power of Masters over their Servants: Gaming criminal: all the relations of Offenders die with them: a particular punishment for theft.* p. 144

*The crimes for which all the kindred of a criminal are put to death; an example of it.* ibid.

*Lying punished with death: the Emperours expence: Jedo Castle: the Palaces of the Kings.* p. 145

*The Emperours retinue; the Dayro; the Emperours magnificence.* p. 146

*His Treasures: the Emperour of Japan, a Viceroy: confines his Wife to a Castle* p. 147

*How the Emperour of Japan came to the Crown: Ceremonies at the choice of a Nurse for the Dayro's Son.* p. 148

*A revolution in Japan: a Souldier of Fortune gets to be General of the Army, and Sovereign, is poysoned.* ibid.

*Bestows the Regency on one of the Lords, who put to death the Heir of the Crown; the Emperour of Japan raises his Armies upon the charge of his Subjects: is able to raise three hundred sixty eight thousand foot, and thirty eight thousand eight hundred Horse.* p. 149

*Their Arms: their Companies and Regiments: the Council of State; the expence of great Lords.* p. 150

*The magnificence of the Lords in their buildings: three years requisite to provide an entertainment for the Emperour: the Emperour marries all the great Lords: Women kept in restraint.* p. 151

*Women never talk of business: the generosity of a Japonneze wife.* p. 152

*An example of modesty in a Maid; the reservedness of their Conversation: the men jealous.* ibid.

*Adultery severely punished: fornication permitted; they have no devotion: their Pagodes and Priests.* p. 153

*The Ecclesiasticks divided into several sects, the death they are put to for breach of Vow, their opinion concerning the Soul, no disputes about Religion.* p. 154

*They hate Christians, their diabolical inventions to put them to death.* p. 155

*Their houses, their civility.* p. 156

*No drinking houses in Japan; their Musick, Wine; Tea, how prepared; their marriages, and education of children.* ibid.

*They go not to school till seven or eight years of age; are not swath'd; the Japonneses tender in point of honour.* p. 157

*What Forreigners trade thither; the occasion of the rupture between the Chineses and Japonneses; Japan was not peopled by Chineses.* p. 158

*No Custom paid in Japan: no correspondence between the Emperour of Japan and other Princes: their Arithmetick: the Dayro writes the History of the Country.* p. 159

*The money of Japan: its store of Cattel and Fowl, several sorts of Mineral waters.* p. 160

*Their Physicians: the riches of Japan: a particular way of melting Iron: the Roman Catholick Religion planted in Japan: the Spaniards banish'd it; the Dutch establish there: the Air of Japan.* p. 161

# The TABLE.

The Japonneses distinguished into five Orders: the principal Ministers of Japan; the procession of the Dayro and the Emperour; the Dayro's baggage: the Ladies of Honour. *ibid.*

Twenty seven Lords of the Dayro's Retinue; twenty four Gentlemen; the Dayro's three Wives: the chief servants of those Ladies: threescore and eight Gentlemen. p.162

The Emperour and his Ward: the greatest Lords of Japan; the Dayro's Concubines: his Secretary. p.163

His Musick: the Dayro himself: the Emperours Presents to him. p.164

The Isle of Tayovang: the Dutch settle there, and call it New Zealand: the Government is absolutely anarchical. p.165

The places possess'd there by the Dutch: the Inhabitants of Fermosa, are civil, good-natur'd, ingenious: its Fruits. *ibid.*

Their Wine; the Women go a fishing: How the Men live: their hunting. p.166

The manner of their War; their Armes; the Island Tugin. p.167

Their Magistracy, and its authority: their punishments. p.168

The Magistrate hath no power: their respect for old age. *ibid.*

Their marriages, a pleasant kind of married life, the women not permitted to bear children till thirty five years of age. p.170

Divorce lawful among them: their houses, their sustenance, have no Festivals, Dogs-hair Stuffer, their Funerals. p.171

They neither bury nor burn the dead; a sure remedy in painful diseases, their Religion, their sins. *ibid.*

Their Gods, women only employ'd about Religious Mysteries, their Devotion. p.172

The Kingdom of China, its Frontiers, Extent, Provinces. p.173

The Province of Peking, its Frontiers, Cities, Families, Revenue; Xuntien described, &c. p.174

The Palaces, the Provinces of Xanli, and Xenli, their Frontiers, &c. p.175

The great Wall, by whom built, the Province of Xantung, its Frontiers, Cities, &c. p.176

The Provinces of Honan, &c. the Province of Suchuen, &c. Radix Sina; the Province of Huguang, &c. the Province of Quangsi; its Frontiers, &c. *ibid.*

Porcelane made at Kiangsi, the Province of Nanking, &c. the Prince of Checkiang, &c. p.177

The City of Quinsay, Mark Paulo vindicated, the greatness of the City of Huncheu, the Province of Fokien, &c. the Inhabitants of Fokien trade most out of the Kingdom. p.178

The Province of Quantung, &c. the industry of the Inhabitants, the Province of Quangsi, its Cities, &c. the Province of Quieucheu, its Cities, &c. p.179

The Province of Junan, &c. both black and white Chineses, the difference of Fruits in China; the Chineses hate idleness: China Fruits better then ours, Wax, Honey, Sugar. p.180

Flesh cheap, their Fishing, how they breed Ducks. *ibid.*

The Inhabitants, their cloathing, their women, their money, the provision made for the subsistence of the poor. p.181

Printing in China before we had it: their way of writing, their paper, the dignity of Loytia, the Chineses very Ceremonious. p.182

Their Feasts, their Plate, their New-years day, the honour they do Embassadors. p.183

Their Weddings, Polygamy lawful, the Government of China Monarchical. p.184

Offensive war made defensive by a fundamental Law, their King called Son of Heaven; the Council of State; Astrology requisite in Councillors of State, Viceroy and Governours. *ibid.*

Other Officers of Provinces, Officers of the Crown, Debtors how treated, an admirable Order, their tortures, Prisons. p.185

Their punishments, the Visitours. p.186

The Religion of the Chineses, their Divinities, three China Saints, the Fable of Quanna. p.187

The Fable of Neoma, the Chineses use incantations, they invoke the Devil. *ibid.*

Their belief concerning the Creation, they believe the immortality of the Soul, Purgatory. p.188

They believe the Metempsychosis, their Religious men, they use beads, funeral Ceremonies, their mourning, the present state of China. p.189

The Tartars possess'd of China, forced thence, the Origine of the Royal House of Teimings: the beginning of the Tartarian war, Leaotung taken. p.190

Vanlie dies, and is succeeded by Tayohang, who forces away the Tartars: but they re-enter Leagtung, the Kings of China and Tartary die, the Chineses betray their Country; Thienzung King of Tartary dies. p.191

Lizungzo enters the Province of Xanli, takes the City of Peking. p.192

A Chinesse calls the Tartars to his relief against the Rebels, the Tartars will not depart China. p.193

They proclaim their King Emperour of China; Ufanguai made King, the Southerly Provinces chose another Emperour, the Tartars enter the Province of Nanking; Hung-quang strangled. *ibid.*



# The TABLE.

Several Chinese Lords retire to Hang-chou; Another Emperour, who is also strangled; other Princes; this division proves the ruine of China; the Tartars reduce the Province of Fokien, the treachery of a Chinese Pirate.

An Emperour chosen in Quangsi; the Tartars absolute Masters of China.

## FEBRUARY.

He leaves Ceylon the 20. and comes the second of July following to the Island of Madagascar; where they stay six weeks.

The Voyage continued; several sorts of Birds.

Several sorts of Fish.

Very changeable weather near the Line.

Maurice Island discover'd; its Haven; a prodigious Thorn-back; No four-footed beasts in the said Island; the story of a French-man, who liv'd 20. months in Maurice Island.

The Ship puts not into the Island; Pintados, a Bird discovering nearness to Land.

Mangas de Veludo, a kind of Bird; the Cape of Agulhas; Fish foreshewing change of weather.

Trombas, what.

Cabo falso; the Cape of Good Hope discovered; Pinguins a kind of Fowl.

The Inhabitants about the Cape of Good Hope; their cloathing, food; know neither God nor Devil; Lions their only enemies.

Hurricanes.

Madagascar discover'd; they put in there; what Commodities go off there.

The Lord of those parts; makes an alliance with the English; Madagascar described.

Dragons-bloud, Aloes; the Island abounds in Cattle; its Inhabitants.

The Men are couragious; their Armes; Chief; Religion; Mozambique.

When discover'd by the Portuguez.

The first landing of the Dutch at Madagascar.

## AUGUST.

He leaves Madagascar the 21. and arrives in England the 16. of December following.

Declination of the Load-stone; the Isle of St. Elizabeth; Sea-wolves.

Badgers; St. Helens Island; planted by the Portuguez.

Ascension Island.

St. Thomas Island; Land Crevices; the Inhabitants, Rolles Island.

Carisco Island; Capo Verde; its Inhabi-

tants; their Armes; the Women do all the work.

The men drunkards; believe the immortality of the Soul; D. Enrique discovers Guiny; the scituation of Mina.

The Religion of the Inhabitants; their superstition; are religious in their Oaths; their cloathing, Armes; the settlement of the Dutch in Guiny.

Diego-Can discovers the Kingdom of Congo; its Provinces, Air, the River Zaïre; Sea-horses.

Gold Mines, Serpents, Cocos; their houses.

They are all Architects and Physitians; their cloathing; the wealth of the Country; their Money; the absolute power of the King of Congo; the Governour of Batta, Minister of State; his Priviledges; their Armes and manner of fighting.

How Christian Religion was introduced there; the Kingdom of Beny; Cabo Verde described; Ptolomy knew nothing of these people; the Rivers Gambra and Zanaga.

The Inhabitants about the Cape are Pagans; their way of raising forces; their Nobility; the state of the Country when first discover'd; the story of Doomi; who is baptized.

The green Islands; peopled by the Portuguez; Flamencos, a kind of Bird; St. Jago Island; the Voyage continued.

The Azores: their number; they have good fruit.

Potatoes: Their Wheat will not keep; Tercera, Oxen very large, the Island subject to Earthquakes, an Island started of a sudden; A Spring that petrifies wood; a kind of wood hard as iron, Cedar.

St. Michael's Island, St. Mary's Island, Gratiosa Island, St. Georges Island, Fayal Island, Pico Island, the Island of Flore.

The convenience of these Islands, the Air very sharp in the Azores. The Canaries when discovered; Lewis Earl of Clermont conquers them; a French Gentleman conquers them, by Commission from the King of Castile.

They belong to the Crown of Castile, great Canary, Teneriffe, Fierro Island, a miraculous Tree.

The Voyage continued, the West wind reigns from the Azores to England, they come into the Channel.

The Isle of Wight, the Downs; the President and the Author like to be cast away in the Haven, another Tempest.

The Author comes to London.

# The TABLE.

M. DC. XL.

## JANUARY.

*The first he is treated by the Lord Mayor ; a strange attempt of a Dutch Marriner ; an example of dreadful solitude.* p. 226

*A strange resolution of two Christian Slaves.* p. 227

*The King of England touches some of the Evil.* p. 283

*The Author having continued at London near three moneths, leaves it the 20. of March, in order to his return for Holstein.* p. 228

*A description of Haerlem, where the Mystery of Printing was first invented.* p. 229

*The Inscription put upon the house of the first Inventor thereof.* ibid.

*He comes to Amsterdam, a description of it, its commerce.* p. 230

*The first Voyages of the Dutch to the East-Indies.* ibid.

*An account of several other places in Amsterdam.* p. 231

## MAY.

*The first, the Author comes to Gottorp, where he put an end to his Travels.* p. 232

FINIS.